

# What's new in XenMobile Server 10.5

Apr 04, 2017

This PDF contains the entire set of product documentation for XenMobile Server 10.5. For product documentation on the current release, see [XenMobile Server](#).

For information about upgrading, see [Upgrade](#). To access the XenMobile management console, use only the XenMobile Server fully qualified domain name or the IP addresses of the node.

## Important

To access the XenMobile management console, use only the XenMobile Server fully qualified domain name (FQDN) - the enrollment FQDN - or the IP addresses of the node. Console access directly through a load balancing virtual IP address or a NAT'd IP address is no longer available, unless you install XenMobile Server 10.5 rolling patch 1 released on March 22, 2017. For details, see <https://support.citrix.com/article/CTX221304>.

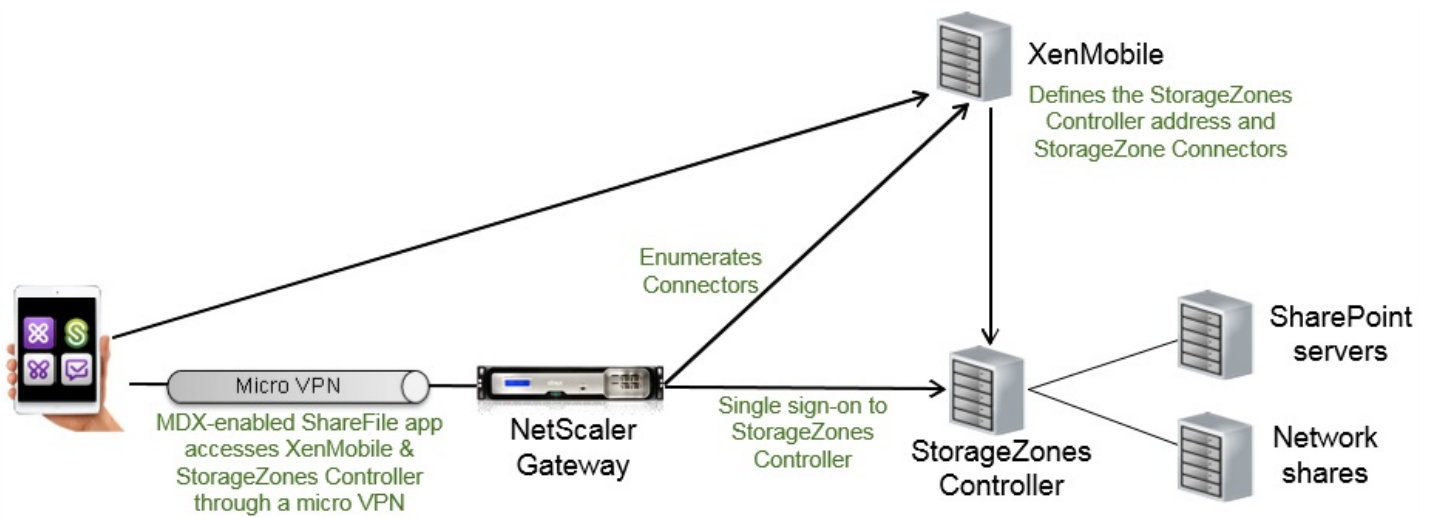
XenMobile Server 10.5 includes the following new features. For information about bug fixes, see [Fixed issues](#).

## Simplified management and deployment of ShareFile StorageZone Connectors

You can now use the XenMobile console to configure StorageZone Connectors. Offered as an alternative to using XenMobile with ShareFile Enterprise, the option to use XenMobile with StorageZone Connectors:

- Provides secure mobile access to existing on-premises storage repositories, such as SharePoint sites and network file shares. Doesn't require that you set up a ShareFile subdomain, provision users to ShareFile, or host ShareFile data.
- Provides users with mobile access to data through the ShareFile XenMobile Apps for iOS. Users can edit Microsoft Office documents. Users can also preview and annotate Adobe PDF files from mobile devices.
- File access is limited to the connectors. Users don't have access to other ShareFile functionality such as data sharing or syncing.
- Complies with security restrictions against leaking user information outside of the corporate network.
- Provides simple setup of StorageZone Connectors through the XenMobile console. If you later decide to use the full ShareFile functionality with XenMobile, you can change the configuration in the XenMobile console.
- Requires XenMobile Enterprise Edition.

The following diagram shows the high-level architecture for XenMobile use with StorageZone Connectors.



On your first visit to the **Configure > ShareFile** page, a description of the differences between using XenMobile with ShareFile Enterprise and with StorageZone Connectors appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** administrator

Device Policies Apps Actions **ShareFile** Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

Choose a method for integrating ShareFile with XenMobile or learn more about which mode to select.

	ShareFile Enterprise	StorageZone Connectors Only
Access network shares and SharePoint data from mobile devices	✓	✓
Edit Microsoft Office documents from mobile devices	✓	✓
Preview and annotate Adobe PDF files from mobile devices	✓	✓
Store data in Citrix-managed or customer-managed StorageZones or both	✓	
Securely share files with people inside and outside the enterprise	✓	
Sync files and data across multiple devices	✓	
Access files through the ShareFile website	✓	
Access Office 365 content and Personal Cloud connectors from mobile devices	✓	
Use auditing and reporting capabilities	✓	

Configure ShareFile Enterprise Configure Connectors

If you click **Configure Connectors**, you provide information about the connectors and the StorageZones Controller.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** administrator

Device Policies Apps Actions **ShareFile** Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### StorageZone Connector

- Connector Info
- Delivery Group Assignment (Optional)
- Summary

#### Connector Info

Configuring a connector will allow end users to connect to their existing SharePoint sites and CIFS (Common Internet File System) based on their authorizations.

Connector Name\*

Description

Type\* SharePoint

StorageZone\* iosDev [Manage StorageZones](#)

Location\*

### Manage StorageZones

[Add New](#)

Name\*

FQDN\*

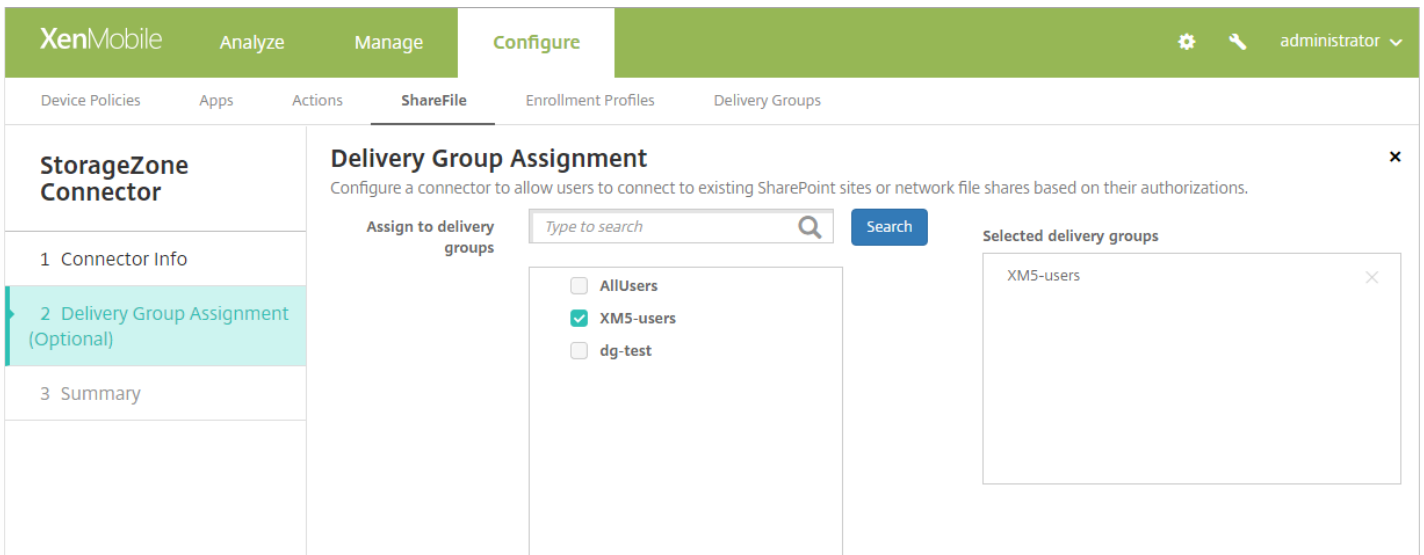
Port\*

Secure Connection

Administrator user na...\*

Administrator passw...\*

You can associate connectors with delivery groups when you create the connector.



You can also associate connectors with delivery groups by using the **Configure > Delivery Groups** page.

For more information about integrating StorageZone Connectors with XenMobile, see [ShareFile use with XenMobile](#).

## Renamed client properties

XenMobile client property names related to Citrix PIN have changed:

Old property name	New property name
Enable Worx PIN Authentication	Enable Citrix PIN Authentication
Worx PIN Type	PIN Type
PIN Strength Requirement	PIN Strength Requirement
Worx PIN Length Requirement	PIN Length Requirement
Worx PIN Change Requirement	PIN Change Requirement
Worx PIN History	PIN History

The property keys remain the same, as shown in the following sample:

Settings &gt; Client Properties

## Client Properties

To change a property, select the property and then click Edit.



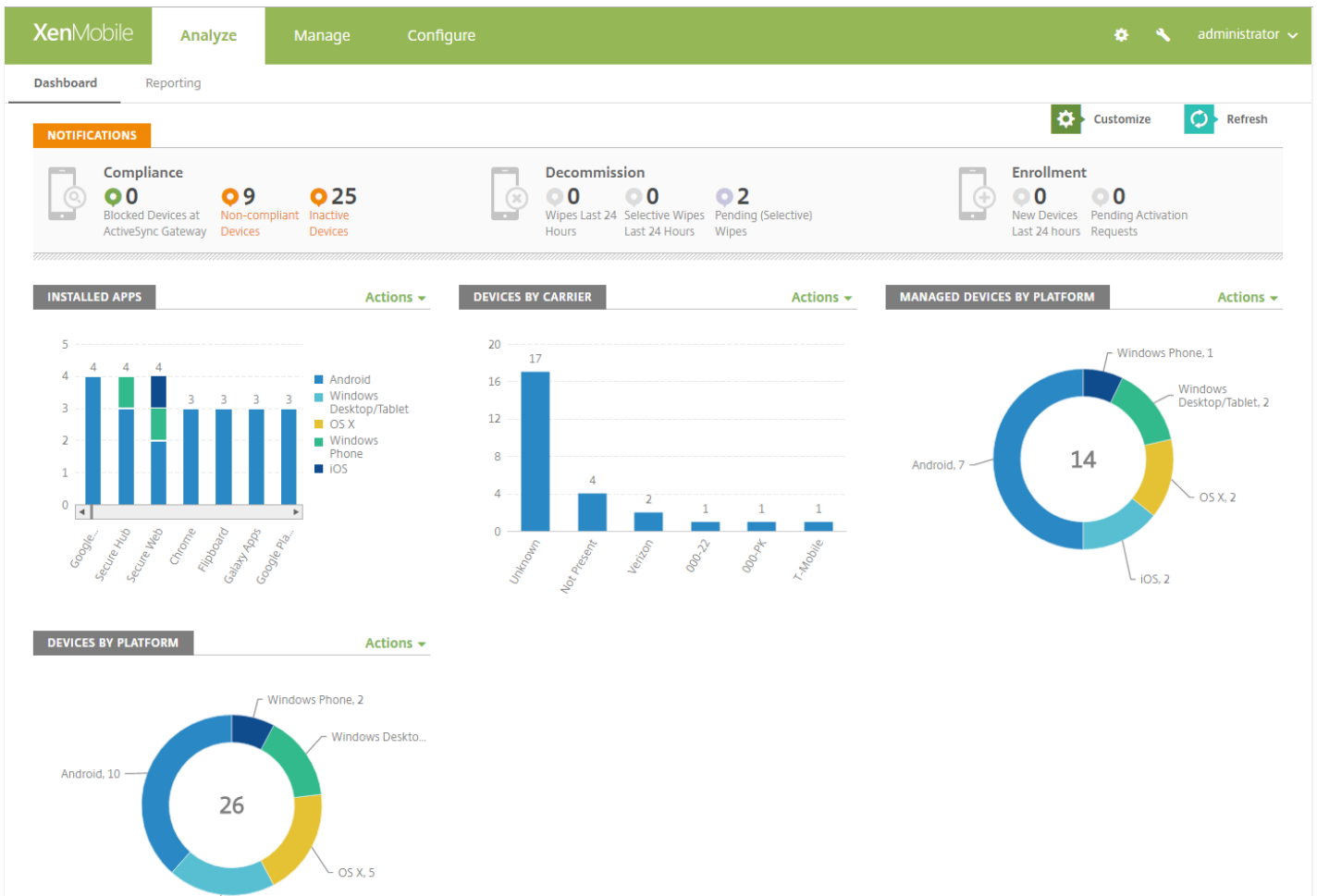
Add

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Key	Value	Description	▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enable Citrix PIN Authentication	ENABLE_PASSCODE_AUTH	false	Enable Citrix PIN Authentication	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enable User Password Caching	ENABLE_PASSWORD_CACHING	false	Enable User Password Caching	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Encrypt secrets using Passcode	ENCRYPT_SECRETS_USING_PASSCODE	false	Encrypt secrets using Pin or AD password	
<input type="checkbox"/>	PIN Strength Requirement	PASSCODE_TYPE	Numeric	PIN Strength Requirement	
<input type="checkbox"/>	PIN Type	PASSCODE_STRENGTH	Medium	PIN Type	
<input type="checkbox"/>	PIN Length Requirement	PASSCODE_MIN_LENGTH	6	PIN Length Requirement	
<input type="checkbox"/>	PIN Change Requirement	PASSCODE_EXPIRY	90	PIN Change Requirement	
<input type="checkbox"/>	PIN History	PASSCODE_HISTORY	5	PIN History	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Inactivity Timer	INACTIVITY_TIMER	15	Inactivity Timer	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enable FIPS Mode	ENABLE_FIPS_MODE	false	Enable FIPS Mode	

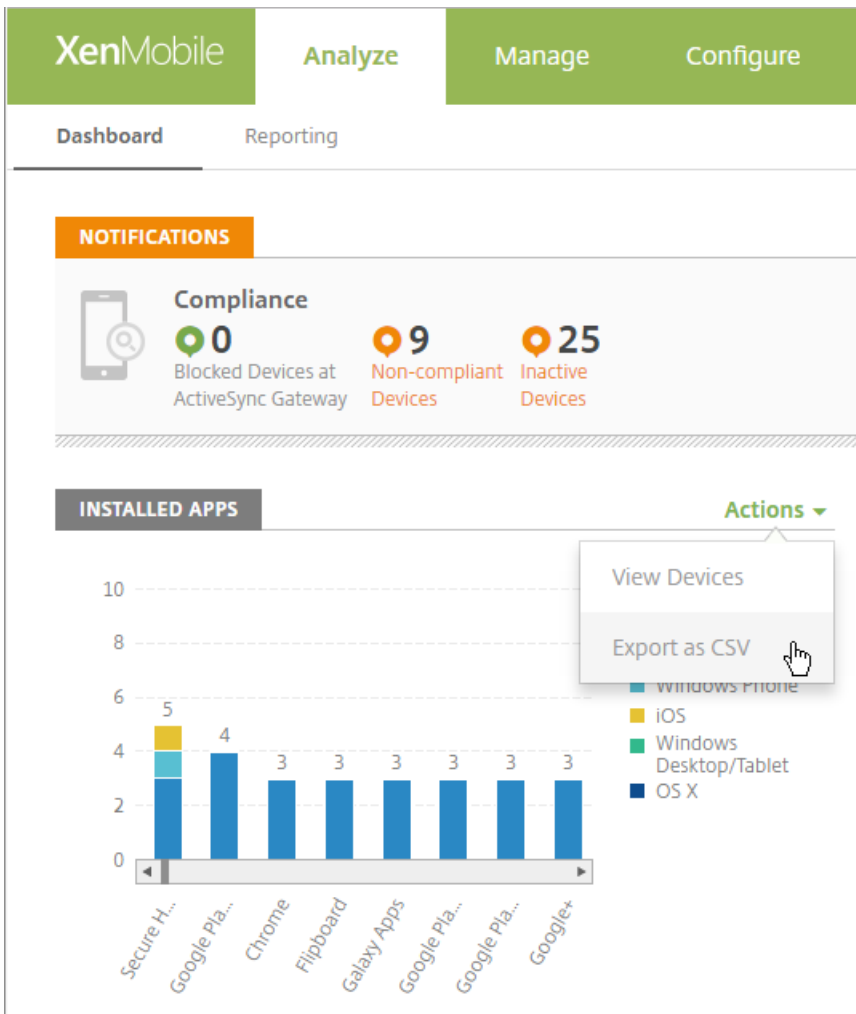
## Dashboard improvements

The XenMobile **Analyze > Dashboard** page has a responsive design for improved viewing on smaller devices. Other improvements include:

- The Installed Apps widget now shows the top 10 apps. To view other apps, use the search bar.
- To export Installed Apps as a CSV file:
  - Choose an app and then export it to get a report for that app only.
  - Choose no apps to get a report for all apps.
  - The reports include the following information for an app: Name, Owner, Version, Size, ID, and Install time.
- The VPP Apps License Usage widgets now show all apps from the software inventory. You no longer have to search for an app.

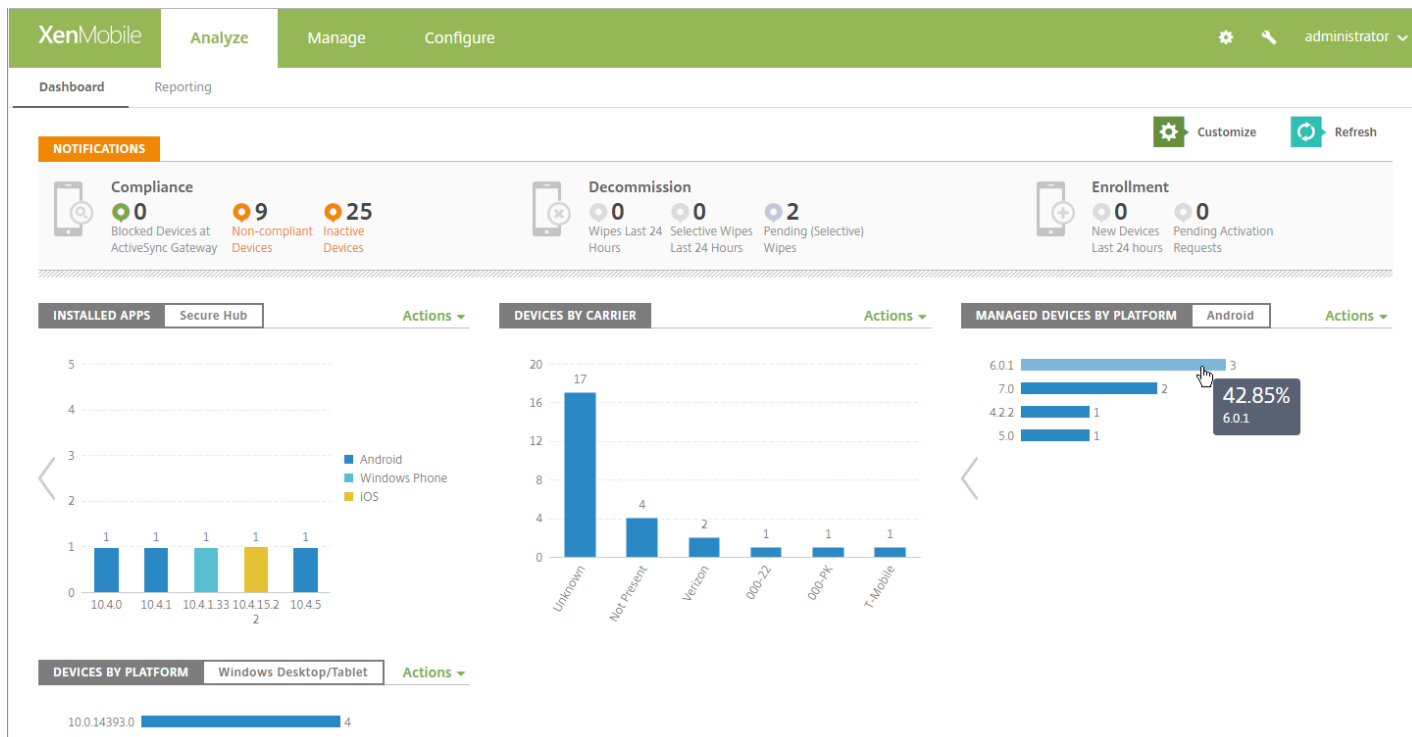


- The charts show counts in descending order.
- Each widget uses the best chart type for the information.
- The actions available for each widget appear in an **Actions** menu, which now includes only the actions most commonly performed from the dashboard:
  - **View Devices** - Opens the **Manage > Devices** page.
  - **Export as CSV** - Saves the data to a CSV file.



- The Export as CSV action exports the following information for each installed app:
  - Name
  - Version
  - Owner
  - Size
  - ID
  - Install time
- You can drill down to two levels of details for the following charts: Click a platform to see a bar chart for the version counts and then click a version to open the **Manage > Devices** page.
  - Devices By Platform
  - Managed Devices By Platform
  - Unmanaged Devices By Platform
  - Installed Apps
- To open the **Manage > Devices** page, click any of these charts:
  - Devices By Carrier
  - Devices By ActiveSync Gateway Status
  - Devices By Ownership
  - Android TouchDown License Status

Failed Delivery Group Deployments  
 Devices By Blocked Reason  
 VPP Apps License Usage



## Test Connection buttons added to XenMobile console

The XenMobile console now includes a **Test Connection** button on these pages:

- **Configure > ShareFile:** You can use the **Test Connection** button to verify that the user name and password for the ShareFile administrator account authenticate to the specified ShareFile account.



XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure**

Device Policies Apps Actions **ShareFile** Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### ShareFile

Configure settings to connect to the ShareFile account and administrator service account for user account management.

Domain\*

Assign to delivery groups

AllUsers

Selected delivery groups

AllUsers

### ShareFile Administrator Account Logon

User name\*

Password\*

User account provisioning  OFF

### SAML certificate

Name XMS.example.com

Advanced ShareFile Configuration

- **Settings > XenApp/XenDesktop:** You can use the **Test Connection** button to verify that XenMobile can connect to the specified XenApp and XenDesktop server.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure**

Settings > [XenApp/XenDesktop](#)

### XenApp/XenDesktop

Allows users to add XenApp and XenDesktop through Secure Hub.

Host\*

Port\*

Relative Path\*

Use HTTPS  OFF

Connection succeeded

# Windows Defender device policy for Windows 10 for desktop and tablet

Windows Defender is malware protection included with Windows 10. You can use the XenMobile device policy, Defender, to configure the Microsoft Defender policy. To add the Defender policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**, click **Add**, start typing **Defender**, and then click that name in the search results.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for the 'Defender' device policy. The interface is divided into a left sidebar and a main content area. The sidebar contains a navigation menu with the following items: 'Defender', '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', '3 Assignment', and 'Windows Desktop/Tablet' (which is currently selected and highlighted in teal). The main content area is titled 'Defender' and includes a sub-header 'This policy configures Windows Defender settings in Windows 10 for desktop and tablet.' Below this, there are several configuration options, each with a toggle switch or a text input field: 'Allows scanning of archives' (OFF), 'Allows cloud protection' (ON), 'Allows a full scan of removable drives' (ON), 'Allows Windows Defender Real-time Monitoring functionality' (ON), 'Allows scanning of network files' (ON), 'Allows user access to the Windows Defender UI' (ON), 'Excluded extensions' (text input field with a help icon), 'Excluded paths' (text input field with a help icon), 'Excluded processes' (text input field with a help icon), and 'Submit samples consent' (dropdown menu set to 'Send safe samples'). At the bottom of the main content area, there is a section for 'Deployment Rules' with a right-pointing arrow.

For more information, see [Defender device policy](#).

## WiFi device policy support for Windows 10

The WiFi device policy now includes support for Windows 10, enabling you to use client certificate authentication for your WiFi network. To update WiFi device policies, go to **Configure > Device Policies**.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure**

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### WiFi Policy

1 Policy Info

2 Platforms

- iOS
- Mac OS X
- Android
- Windows Phone
- Windows Desktop/Tablet
- Windows Mobile/CE

3 Assignment

### WiFi Policy

This policy lets you configure a WiFi profile for devices.

**Network name\***  ?

**Authentication**

**Encryption**

**EAP Type**

**Connect if hidden**  OFF

**Connect automatically**  ON

**Push certificate via SCEP**  ON

**Credential provider for SCEP\***

**Proxy server settings**

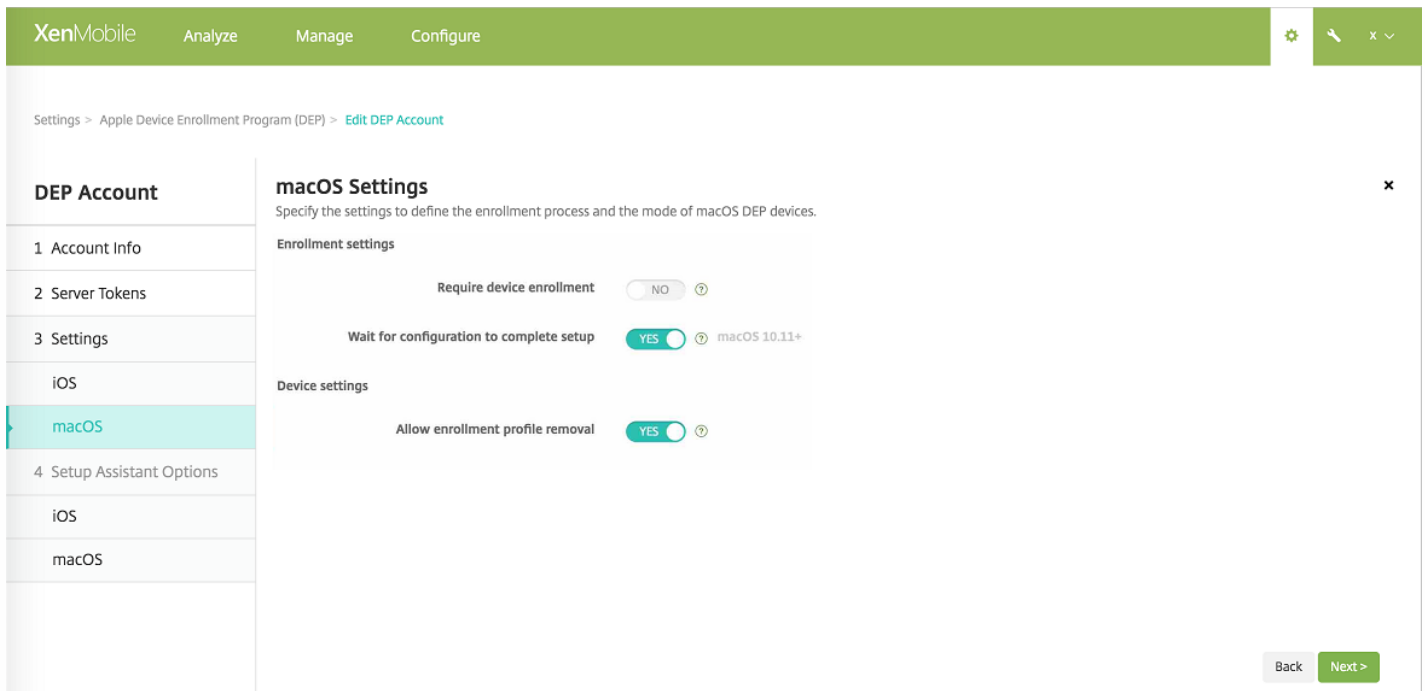
**Host name or IP address**

**Port**

For more information, see [WiFi device policy](#).

## Bulk enrollment of macOS devices

The Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) setting in XenMobile now supports macOS devices running OS X 10.10 or later. You follow the same process as described in [Bulk enrollment of iOS and macOS devices](#). If you add a DEP account from **Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)**, the **Settings** and **Setup Assistant Options** now includes a page for macOS.

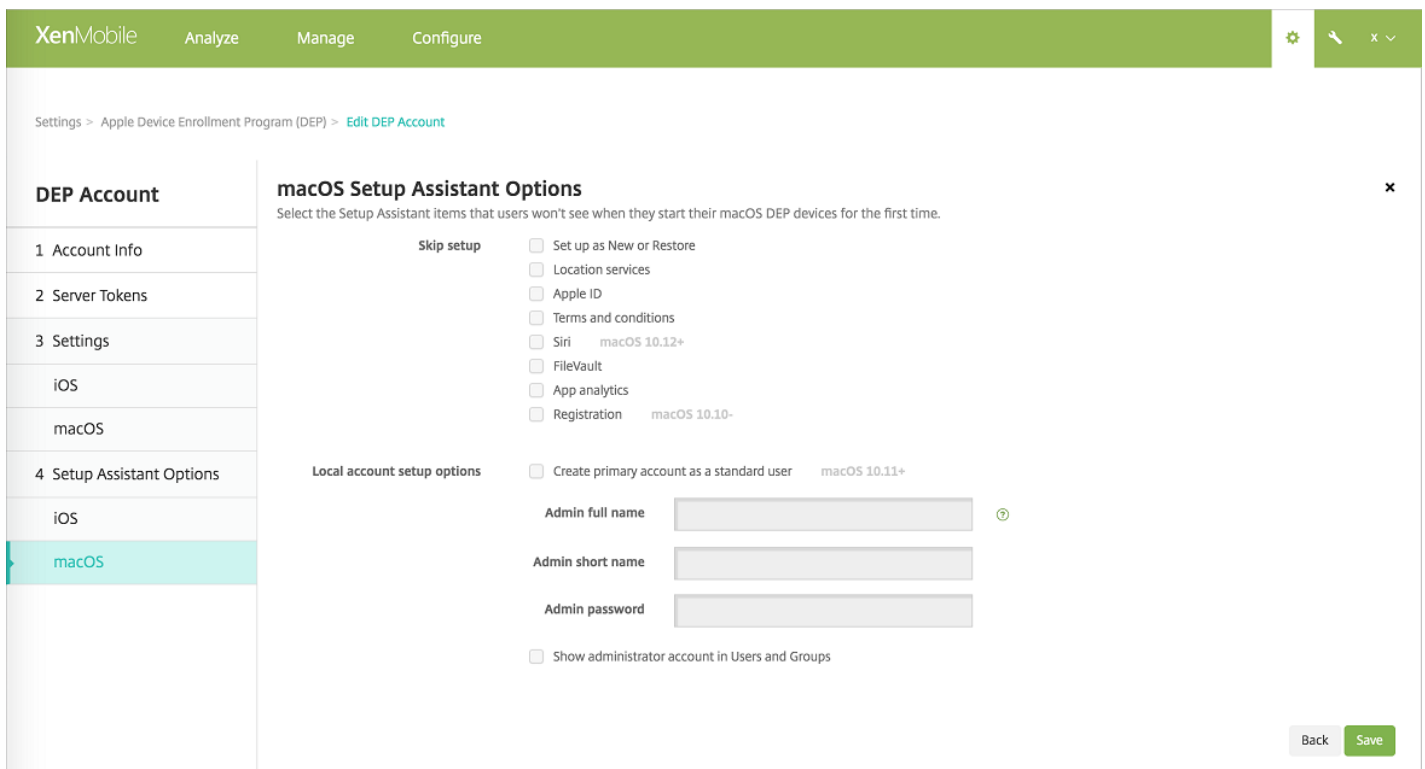


## Enrollment settings

- **Require device enrollment:** Whether to require users to enroll their devices. The default is **Yes**.
- **Wait for configuration to complete setup:** If you enable this setting, the macOS device doesn't continue in the Setup Assistant until the MDM resource passcode deploys to the device. The MDM resource passcode deployment occurs before the local account is created. This setting is available for macOS 10.11 and later devices. The default is **No**.

## Device settings

- **Allow enrollment profile removal:** Whether to allow devices to use a profile that you can remove remotely. The default is **No**.



- **Set up as New or Restore:** Set up the device as new or from an iCloud or iTunes backup.
- **Location services:** Set up the location service on the device.
- **Apple ID:** Set up an Apple ID account for the device.
- **Terms and conditions:** Require users to accept terms and conditions for use of the device.
- **Siri:** Use or not use Siri on the device.
- **FileVault:** Use FileVault to encrypt the startup disk. XenMobile applies the FileVault setting only if the system has a single local user account that is signed in to iCloud.

You can use the macOS FileVault Disk Encryption feature to protect the system volume by encrypting its contents. See the Apple support article, <https://support.apple.com/en-us/HT204837>. If you run the Setup Assistant on a late-model portable Mac on which FileVault is off, you might be prompted to turn on this feature. If the system meets the following requirements, the prompt appears on new systems and on systems upgraded to OS X 10.10 or 10.11:

- The system has a single local administrator account
- That account is signed in to iCloud
- **App analytics:** Set up whether to share crash data and usage statistics with Apple.
- **Registration:** Require users to register their device.

Registration information setup was available through OS X 10.9. The registration process enabled you to send system registration information to Apple. This information associated your contact information with the Mac hardware. Apple primarily used the information to assist Apple support. If you previously specified an Apple ID, Setup Assistant optionally submitted the registration based on your Apple ID account. If you didn't specify an Apple ID, you can manually type your contact information.

- Under **Local account setup options**, specify the settings to create an administrator account, which is required for macOS. XenMobile creates the account, using the specified information.

# Support for multiple Apple Device Enrollment Program accounts for iOS and macOS devices

You can now define multiple Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) accounts. This feature enables you to use different enrollment settings, device settings, and Setup Assistant options. You can specify those settings and options by country, department, and other structures. You then associate DEP accounts with different device policies and different apps through deployment rules.

For example, you might centralize all your DEP accounts from different countries on the same XenMobile Server. You can then import and supervise all DEP devices. By customizing enrollment settings per country or other structure, you ensure that policies provide appropriate functionality across your organization. By customizing Setup Assistant options per country or other structure, you ensure that device users receive the appropriate setup assistance.

To accommodate support for multiple DEP accounts, the following pages replace **Settings > iOS Bulk Enrollment**:

- **Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)**: Use this page is to:
  - Create DEP accounts.
  - Configure enrollment settings, iOS and macOS device settings, and Setup Assistant options per each account.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface for the 'Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)' settings. The navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The breadcrumb trail is 'Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)'. The main heading is 'Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)'. Below the heading is a descriptive paragraph: 'Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) streamlines the enrollment and management of iOS and macOS devices in XenMobile. The DEP notifies Apple servers about a device profile, which customizes the setup assistant experience and assigns the profile to specific devices. These steps assume an Apple ID for the organization has already been created, as outlined in the Device Enrollment Program Guide.' The page is divided into three numbered steps, each in a light gray box with a green button at the bottom:

- 1. Download Public Key**  
A Public Key will be automatically generated for you and signed by Citrix.  
[Download](#)
- 2. Create a Server Token file**
  - Sign in to [Apple Deployment Programs Portal](#) with your corporate Apple ID.
  - Navigate to Device Enrollment Program > Manage Servers. Click [Add MDM Server](#).
  - Enter a MDM Server Name, then click [Choose File...](#) and upload your Public Key.
  - Download the Server Token file provided.
- 3. Add DEP Account**  
Follow the wizard to add the account.  
[Add](#)

**Settings > Apple Configurator Device Enrollment**: Used to prepare iOS and macOS devices and to configure policies.

Settings > [Apple Configurator Device Enrollment](#)

## Apple Configurator Device Enrollment

Use Apple Configurator to mass configure and deploy iPhone, iPad or iPod Touch.



Export anchor certificates

- Enable Apple Configurator device enrollment  YES
- Enrollment URL to enter in Apple Configurator <https://example.domain.net:8443/zdm/ios/otae/dobulkenrollment>
- Require device registration before enrollment  NO
- Require credentials for device enrollment  YES iOS 7.1+

Cancel

Save

For more information, see [iOS device deployment through Apple DEP](#).

## iOS Home screen layout

Use the new Home Screen Layout device policy to specify the layout of apps and folders for the iOS Home screen. This policy is supported on iOS 9.3 and later supervised devices. To add the policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 administrator

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### Home Screen Layout Policy

This policy defines a layout of apps and folders for the home screen. It is supported only on iOS 9.3 and later supervised devices. For an application you should enter the bundle identifier as value. For a folder, you should enter a list of bundle identifiers separated with a comma.

**1 Policy Info**

**2 Platforms**

iOS

**3 Assignment**

**Home Screen Layout Policy** ✕

Dock

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Add
			+

Page 1

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Add
			+

Page 2

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Add
			+

Page 3

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Add
			+

Page 4

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Add
			+

Page 5

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Add
			+

Policy Settings

Remove policy  Select date  Duration until removal (in days)

📅

Allow user to remove policy Always ?

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 administrator

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### Home Screen Layout Policy

This policy defines a layout of apps and folders for the home screen. It is supported only on iOS 9.3 and later supervised devices. For an application you should enter the bundle identifier as value. For a folder, you should enter a list of bundle identifiers separated with a comma.

**1 Policy Info**

**2 Platforms**

iOS

**3 Assignment**

**Home Screen Layout Policy** ✕

Dock

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Save	Cancel
Application	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Save	Cancel

Page 1

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Add
			+

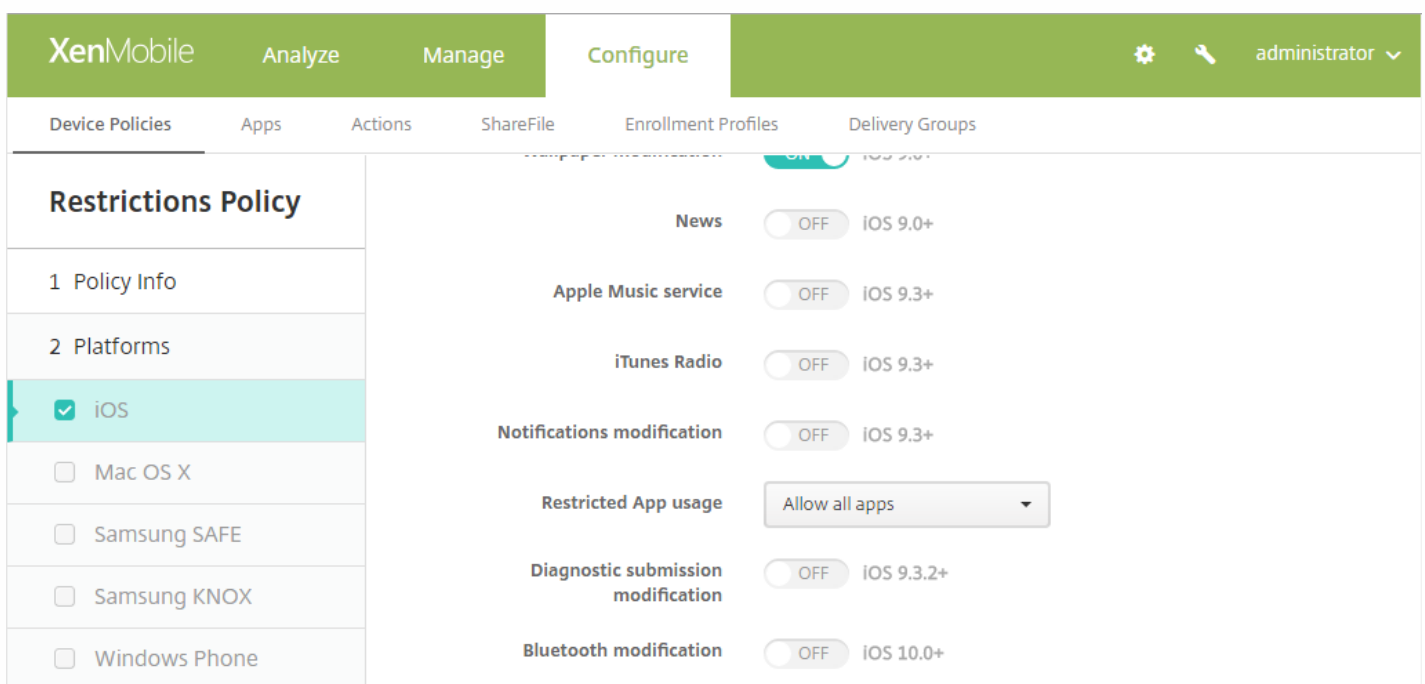
For more information, see [Home screen layout device policy](#).

## More feature restriction options for iOS devices



The Restrictions Policy for iOS now includes these additional restriction options:

- **News:** Allow users to use the News app (available in iOS 9.0 and later). Applies only to supervised devices.
- **Apple Music service:** Allow users to use the Apple Music service (available in iOS 9.3 and later). If you don't allow Apple Music service, the Music app runs in classic mode. Applies only to supervised devices.
- **iTunes Radio:** Allow users to use iTunes Radio (available in iOS 9.3 and later). Applies only to supervised devices.
- **Notifications modification:** Allow users to change notification settings (available in iOS 9.3 and later). Applies only to supervised devices.
- **Restricted App usage:** Allow users to use all apps or only the apps allowed or denied by bundle ID (available in iOS 9.3 and later). Applies only to supervised devices.
- **Diagnostic submission modification:** Allow users to change the diagnostic submission and app analytics settings in the Diagnostics & Usage pane in Settings (available in iOS 9.3.2 and later). Applies only to supervised devices.
- **Bluetooth modification:** Allow users to change Bluetooth settings (available in iOS 10.0 and later). Applies only to supervised devices.



## More feature restriction options for macOS devices

The Restrictions Policy has the following added restriction options for macOS 10.12 and later. By default, XenMobile allows these features.

- Allow Apple Music: If you don't allow Apple Music service, the Music app runs in classic mode. Applies only to supervised devices.
- Allow iCloud Keychain Sync
- Allow iCloud Mail
- Allow iCloud Contacts
- Allow iCloud Calendars
- Allow iCloud Reminders

- Allow iCloud Bookmarks
- Allow iCloud Notes

The screenshot displays the XenMobile configuration interface for a Restrictions Policy. The left-hand navigation pane is titled 'Restrictions Policy' and includes sections for '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', several operating systems are listed with checkboxes: iOS, Mac OS X (highlighted), Samsung SAFE, Samsung KNOX, Windows Phone, Windows Desktop/Tablet, Amazon, and Windows Mobile/CE. The main configuration area, labeled 'Policy Settings', contains the following settings:

- Allow Look Up:** OFF (OS X 10.11.2+)
- Allow use of iCloud password for local accounts:** ON
- Allow iCloud documents & data:** ON
- Allow iCloud Keychain Sync:** ON (macOS 10.12+)
- Allow iCloud Mail:** ON (macOS 10.12+)
- Allow iCloud Contacts:** ON (macOS 10.12+)
- Allow iCloud Calendars:** ON (macOS 10.12+)
- Allow iCloud Reminders:** ON (macOS 10.12+)
- Allow iCloud Bookmarks:** ON (macOS 10.12+)
- Allow iCloud Notes:** ON (macOS 10.12+)
- Remove policy:** Select date (selected), Duration until removal (in days)
- Allow user to remove policy:** Always
- Profile scope:** User (OS X 10.7+)

## Support for iOS 9.3 Managed Lost Mode

In iOS 9.3 or later, you can use Apple MDM to place a supervised device into Managed Lost Mode, a dedicated mode. You can use Managed Lost Mode to block or locate supervised devices that are lost or stolen.

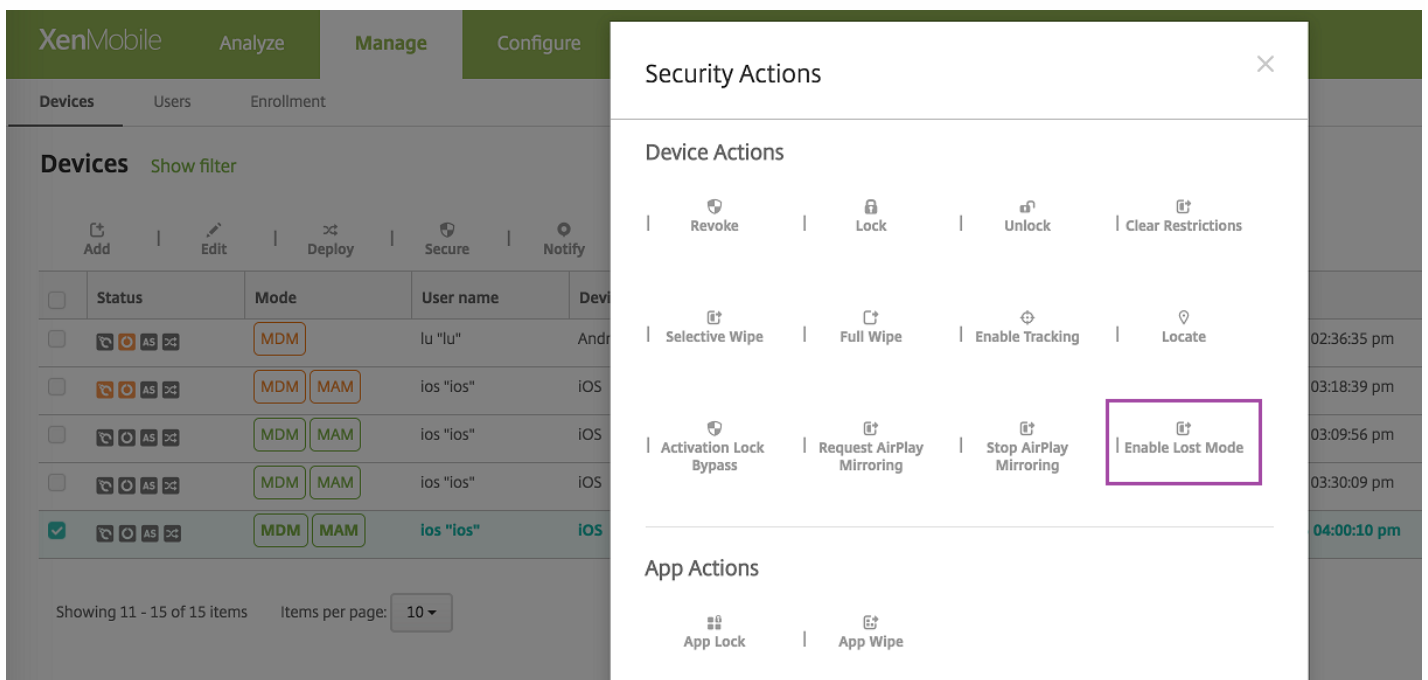
XenMobile now has a Lost Mode device property. Unlike Apple Managed Lost Mode, XenMobile Lost Mode doesn't require a user to perform either of the following actions to enable locating their device: Configure the Find My iPhone/iPad setting or enable the Location Services for Citrix Secure Hub.

The XenMobile Lost Mode feature is similar to the XenMobile device lock feature. However, in XenMobile Lost Mode, only the XenMobile Server can unlock the device. By using device lock, users can unlock the device directly by using a PIN code provided by their administrator.

### Note

In iOS 7 and later, you can also use iOS Device Lock to lock lost or stolen supervised or unsupervised devices remotely. Apple recommends that you avoid using iOS Device Lock for other purposes.

To enable or disable lost mode: Go to **Manage > Devices**, choose a supervised iOS device, and click **Secure**. Then, click **Enable Lost Mode** or **Disable Lost Mode**.



Use any of the following methods to check Lost Mode status:

- In the **Security Actions** window, verify if the button is **Disable Lost Mode**.
- From **Manage > Devices**, on the **General** tab under **Security**, see the last Enable Lost Mode or Disable Lost Mode action.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure

Devices Users Enrollment

### Device details

- 1 General
- 2 Properties
- 3 Assigned Policies
- 4 Apps
- 5 Actions
- 6 Delivery Groups
- 7 iOS Profiles
- 8 iOS Provisioning Profiles
- 9 Certificates
- 10 Connections

---

**Device Ownership**

Corporate

BYOD

---

**Security**

**Strong ID** MEMTQQYJ

**Full Wipe of Device** No device wipe.

**Selective Wipe of Device** No device selective wipe.

**Lock Device** No device lock.

**Device Unlock** No device unlock.

**Device Disown** No device disown.

**DEP Activation Lock** No DEP device activation lock.

**Activation Lock Bypass** No device activation lock bypass.

**Device Clear Restrictions** No Clear Restrictions.

**Request AirPlay Mirroring** No request AirPlay mirroring.

**Stop AirPlay Mirroring** No stop AirPlay mirroring.

**Enable Lost Mode** No lost mode enabled.

**Disable Lost Mode** No lost mode disabled.

- From **Manage > Devices**, on the **Properties** tab, verify the value of the setting **MDM lost mode enabled**.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below these, there are sub-tabs for 'Devices', 'Users', and 'Enrollment'. The main content area is titled 'Device details' and has a sidebar with a list of categories: 1 General, 2 Properties (highlighted), 3 User Properties, 4 Assigned Policies, 5 Apps, 6 Actions, 7 Delivery Groups, 8 iOS Profiles, 9 iOS Provisioning Profiles, 10 Certificates, and 11 Connections. The main content area displays a table of device properties:

Personal Hotspot activated	No
Voice roaming allowed	No
<b>- Security information</b> <span style="float: right;">Add</span>	
Activation lock enabled	No
Hardware encryption capabilities	Block and file levels encryption
Internal storage encrypted	Yes
Jailbroken/Rooted	No
<b>MDM lost mode enabled</b>	No
Passcode compliant	Yes
Passcode compliant with configuration	Yes
Passcode present	Yes
Supervised	No
<b>+ Storage space</b> <span style="float: right;">Add</span>	
<b>- System information</b> <span style="float: right;">Add</span>	
Active iTunes account	Yes
Baseband firmware version	1.60.00
Cloud backup enabled	No

At the bottom right of the device details page, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

If you enable XenMobile Lost Mode on an iOS device, the XenMobile console also changes as follows:

- In **Configure > Actions**, the **Actions** list doesn't include these automated actions: **Revoke the device**, **Selectively wipe the device**, and **Completely wipe the device**.
- In **Manage > Devices**, the **Security Actions** list no longer includes the **Revoke** and **Selective Wipe** device actions. You can still use a security action to perform a **Full Wipe** action, as needed.

For iPads running iOS 7 and later: iOS appends the words "Lost iPad" to what you type in the **Message** box of the **Security Actions** dialog box. For iPhones running iOS 7 and later: If you leave the **Message** box empty and provide a phone number, Apple displays the message "Call owner" on the device lock screen.

## SmartAccess for HDX apps

The SmartAccess feature allows you to control access to HDX apps based on device properties, user properties, or installed applications. You can control access by using automated actions to mark the device as out of compliance. To use SmartAccess, configure HDX apps in XenApp and XenDesktop with a SmartAccess policy that denies access to out-of-compliance devices. XenMobile communicates device status to StoreFront using a signed, encrypted tag. StoreFront allows or denies access based on the access control policy of the app.

For more information, see [SmartAccess for HDX apps](#).

# Other improvements

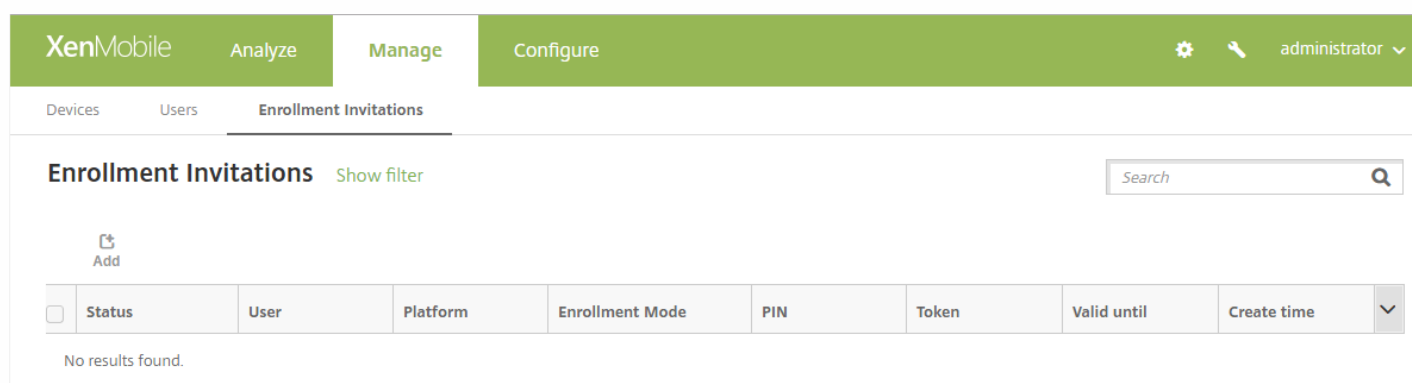
- **More languages supported.** The XenMobile console is now available in Japanese. Secure Hub is now available in Arabic and Russian.
- **WiFi device policy.** The WiFi device policy now includes support for Windows 10, enabling you to use client certificate authentication for your WiFi network. To update WiFi device policies, go to **Configure > Device Policies**.
- **Test Connection button added to the PKI Entities page.** When you add a Microsoft Certificate Services entity, you can test the connection to ensure that the server is reachable.
- **Improved stability** through database optimizations.
- **Last access time changes for MAM-only devices.** Previously, the device statistics for devices registered in MAM mode used the device registration time as the last access time. XenMobile now uses the most recent of the last online authentication or last activity for the last access time. The **Manage > Devices** page now includes the last access time.
- **Managed Domains policy now includes Safari password autofill domains.** For iOS 9.3 and later supervised devices, you can now specify the URLs from which users can save passwords in Safari. To do that, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. Then, add or open the **Managed Domains Policy**, and complete the settings under **Safari Password AutoFill Domain**.

The screenshot displays the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is active, and the 'Device Policies' sub-tab is selected. The main content area shows the 'Managed Domains Policy' configuration for iOS. The policy description states: 'This policy lets you define managed domains that apply to the Safari browser. The policy is supported only on iOS 8 and later devices.' The configuration is divided into three sections: 'Managed Domains' (Unmarked Email Domains), 'Managed Safari Web Domains', and 'Safari Password AutoFill Domains'. Each section has a text input field and an 'Add' button. Below these sections is the 'Policy Settings' area, which includes a 'Remove policy' section with radio buttons for 'Select date' (selected) and 'Duration until removal (in days)', a date picker, and an 'Allow user to remove policy' dropdown menu set to 'Always'. A 'Deployment Rules' section is partially visible at the bottom. The bottom right corner of the page has 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

- **TLS 1.2 required for Secure Hub.** Apple now requires App Transport Security (ATS) for all apps submitted to the Apple

App Store. ATS uses the Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol version 1.2, which is now the required server protocol for Secure Hub.

- **Console interface improvements for managing enrollment invitations.** To clarify the terminology, the XenMobile console has the following improvements:
  - The page **Manage > Enrollments** changed to **Manage > Enrollment Invitations**.
  - The **Enrollment Status** column changed to **Status**. As before, that column contains enrollment invitation status, not enrollment status.
  - The terminology used when you manage an enrollment invitation now matches the terminology used when creating the invitation. We changed these labels:
    - The **Type** column is now **Platform**.
    - The **Mode** column is now **Enrollment Mode**.
  - In the filter, the **Invitations Status** is now **Status**.
  - In the filter, the **Invitations Mode** is now **Enrollment Mode**.
  - The value labels in the **Mode** column are now the same labels used when you create an invitation. For example, the **Mode** column now shows "User name" instead of "classic".



The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a green navigation bar with the XenMobile logo and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Manage' tab is selected. Below this, there are sub-tabs for 'Devices', 'Users', and 'Enrollment Invitations'. The 'Enrollment Invitations' sub-tab is active. The main content area displays 'Enrollment Invitations' with a search bar and a table. The table has columns: Status, User, Platform, Enrollment Mode, PIN, Token, Valid until, and Create time. Below the table, it says 'No results found.'

- **New server property to set the VPP license baseline minimum interval.** XenMobile periodically reimports VPP licenses from Apple to ensure that the licenses reflect all changes. Such changes include when you manually delete an imported app from VPP. By default, XenMobile refreshes the VPP license baseline a minimum of every 720 minutes. You can now change the baseline interval through the new server property, **VPP baseline interval** (vpp.baseline).

If you have more than 50,000 VPP licenses installed, Citrix recommends that you increase the baseline interval to reduce the frequency and overhead of importing licenses. If you expect frequent VPP license changes from Apple, Citrix recommends that you lower the value to keep XenMobile updated with the changes. The minimum interval between two baselines is 60 minutes.

In addition, XenMobile performs a delta import every 60 minutes, to capture the changes since the last import. Setting the VPP baseline minimum interval to 60 minutes might delay the interval between baselines up to 119 minutes.

- The **Certificates** tab for **Manage > Devices** now includes the number of days before NetScaler Gateway certificates expire.

XenMobile Analyze **Manage** Configure administrator

Devices Users Enrollment Invitations

**Device details** km1user1@test.net | ✕

1 General  
2 Properties  
3 User Properties  
4 Assigned Policies  
5 Apps  
6 Actions  
7 Delivery Groups  
**8 Certificates**  
9 Connections  
10 TouchDown

**Valid certificates**

Type	Provider	Issuer	Serial number	Days to expire	Valid to
SHTP agent		CN=Devices Certificate Authority	10252	638	11/01/2018 04:02:52 pm
NetScaler Gateway Credentials		CN=tes-TEST-CA, DC=tes-DC=net	278759315087171164297948754067905	2	02/03/2017 02:52:15 pm

Showing 1 - 2 of 2 items

**Expired or revoked certificates**

Type	Provider	Issuer	Serial number	Days to expire	Valid to
No results found.					

- The **Manage > Devices** page and the **Properties** tab for devices now include the XenMobile agent revision and version numbers.

XenMobile Analyze **Manage** Configure administrator

Devices Users Enrollment Invitations

**Devices** Show filter

Add Import Export Refresh

<input type="checkbox"/>	Status	Mode	Device platform	Operating system version	Device model	XenMobile agent revision	XenMobile agent version
<input type="checkbox"/>		MDM MAM	iOS	10.1.1	iPhone	184	10.4.5
<input type="checkbox"/>		MDM MAM	iOS	8.4.1	iPhone	22	10.4.15
<input type="checkbox"/>		MDM MAM	Android	6.0.1	Nexus 5	382546	10.4.0
<input type="checkbox"/>		MDM MAM	Android	7.0	Nexus 9	381553	10.4.0



XenMobile Analyze **Manage** Configure ⚙️ 🔍 administrator ▾

Devices Users Enrollment Invitations

### Device details

- 1 General
- 2 Properties**
- 3 User Properties
- 4 Assigned Policies
- 5 Apps
- 6 Actions
- 7 Delivery Groups
- 8 Certificates
- 9 Connections
- 10 TouchDown

<b>+ Screen</b>		<b>Add</b>
<b>+ Security information</b>		<b>Add</b>
<b>+ Storage space</b>		<b>Add</b>
<b>+ System information</b>		<b>Add</b>
<b>- XenMobile Agent</b>		<b>Add</b>
Amazon MDM API available	False	
HTC MDM API available	False	
NitroDesk TouchDown installed	False	
Samsung KNOX API available	False	
Samsung KNOX API version	1.0	
Samsung SAFE API available	True	
Samsung SAFE API version	4	
Sony Enterprise API available	False	
XenMobile agent ID	com.zenprise	
XenMobile agent revision	378981	
XenMobile agent version	10.3.10	

- The **Troubleshooting and Support** page has been rearranged to improve usability.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure ⚙️ 🔍 administrator ▾

## Troubleshooting and Support

<h3>Diagnostics</h3> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NetScaler Gateway Connectivity Checks</li> <li>XenMobile Connectivity Checks</li> </ul>	<h3>Support Bundle</h3> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create Support Bundles</li> </ul>	<h3>Links</h3> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Citrix Product Documentation</li> <li>Citrix Knowledge Center</li> </ul>
<h3>Log Operations</h3> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Logs</li> <li>Log Settings</li> </ul>	<h3>Advanced</h3> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cluster Information</li> <li>Garbage Collection</li> <li>Java Memory Properties</li> <li>Macros</li> <li>PKI Configuration</li> <li>Anonymization and De-anonymization</li> </ul>	<h3>Tools</h3> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>APNs Signing Utility</li> <li>Citrix Insight Services</li> <li>Device NetScaler Connector Status</li> </ul>

- **Log messages.** Log messages generated when a user can't be found now include the possible reasons. For example: Invalid credentials, LDAP configuration, or user missing from the LDAP domain or user base DN.
- **List pagination.** Lists on **Manage > Devices**, **Manage > Enrollment Invitations**, **Manage > Users**, **Configure > Device Policies**, **Configure > Apps**, **Configure > Actions**, **Configure > Enrollment Profiles**, and **Configure > Delivery Groups** are now paginated. You can choose the number of items to show on a page.

The screenshot shows a table with three rows of application data. A dropdown menu is open over the 'Items per page' field, showing options for 10, 15, 25, 50, and 100 items. The table columns include checkboxes, application icons and names, app store type, profile name, and two date columns.

Application	App Store	Profile	Created	Last Modified
<input type="checkbox"/> Microsoft OneDrive - CS	Public App Store	Default	11/15/16 2:30 AM	11/15/16 2:30 AM
<input type="checkbox"/> Microsoft PowerPoint - CS	Public App Store	Default	11/15/16 2:30 AM	11/15/16 2:30 AM
<input type="checkbox"/> GoToMeeting - CS	Public App Store	Default	11/15/16 2:30 AM	11/15/16 2:30 AM

Showing 76 - 96 of 96 items    Items per page: 25 ▾    Page 4 of 4 < >

- **Additions to the XenMobile Public API for REST Services.** The REST API now sends all device properties in a device call that uses a filter. The API wraps device properties in a JSON object and includes the properties as part of the response.

The REST API now includes calls for ShareFile Enterprise, ShareFile StorageZones, and ShareFile StorageZone Connectors.

For more information, see the [XenMobile Public API for REST Services PDF](#).

## Deprecated items

**Windows 8.1 tablets are no longer supported.** XenMobile Server no longer supports Windows 8.1 tablets.

**Device policies for Windows 8.1 tablets are removed.** The Sideload key and Signing certificate device policies are deprecated.

# Fixed issues

Apr 24, 2017

XenMobile 10.5 includes the following fixed issues. Fixed issues for the Upgrade Tool appear in [XenMobile Upgrade Tool](#) in this article.

For fixed issues related to XenMobile Apps, see [Fixed issues](#).

For iPhone6 devices, when users try to enroll devices using one-time password invitations that are bound to the device IMEI/MEID, the first profile installs successfully. The second MDM profile installation fails with the error message, "Profile Installation Fails. A connection to the server could not be established." On iPhone devices, the one-time password binds to the MEID number instead of the IMEI number. [#606162]

You cannot locate your Android ID by typing **\*\*\*#8255\*\*\*** on your phone, as instructed on the **Settings > Google Play Credentials** page. Use a device ID app from the Google Play store to look up your device ID. [#633854]

After upgrading to XenMobile Server 10.4:

- If you open a **ShareFile** tab, the page might not load and the information does not appear.
- If you attempt to add or edit a delivery group, the following error message might appear: 500 Internal Server error. [663344, 663788, CXM-19085]

After using the MDX Toolkit to wrap an app that was developed using the Mowbly framework, the app navigation buttons no longer work. [#654962]

Accessing aggregated HDX apps in Secure Hub might fail with the error message, Failed to get application detail, please try again later. [#658058]

When Citrix Launcher is deployed to devices, apps don't appear under background tasks. [#680978]

If the web proxy JSON file for App Controller 9.0 includes an unescaped backslash character in the web proxy user name, XenMobile Server can't start. [CXM-13721]

In clustered XenMobile deployments managed by Hazelcast, a node in the cluster might intermittently fail to appear in the Hazelcast member list. [CXM-16537]

If you configure an IPsec VPN device policy, the group name and shared secret isn't saved and is missing on the device. [CXM-17002]

After an upgrade to 10.3.6, devices with multiple valid identities can't renew. If there are many renewal failures, XenMobile might crash repeatedly. [CXM-17358]

An issue might occur with an intermediate CA certificate used for client certificate authentication. The issue causes a network access error to appear on Android devices. [CXM-17401]

Issues might occur with SQL database configuration when updating XenMobile from version 10.3.5 to 10.3.6. [CXM-17565]

The on-premises version of XenMobile periodically synchronizes the license server with licenses that XenMobile checked out. The synchronization ensures that the count matches the number of devices and users. In this way, if XenMobile detects a mismatch, the issue is resolved within 24 hours. [CXM-18129]

The XenMobile console requires that you specify a password for the WiFi policy, although a password is optional. [CXM-18249]

XenMobile isn't deploying user profiles because the date format has the wrong format. [CXM-18250]

If using the XenMobile console with an Internet Explorer 11 browser, you cannot add or edit an LDAP configuration. [CXM-18324]

If you create an Exchange policy for all device types, and the policy includes a macro for the domain **\$user.dnsroot**, the policy doesn't deploy. [CXM-18545]

If a delivery group name includes an ampersand (&), assigning a policy to that delivery group results in an error. [CXM-18768]

After configuring DEP settings for the first time in **Settings > iOS Bulk Enrollment**, this error appears when you click **Save**: Resources bag (container) with name 'Worx Home by Citrix' doesn't exist. To work around this issue, create a delivery group (**Configure > Delivery Groups**) after you configure the DEP settings and click **OK** on the error page. The delivery group must include the following:

- The user group named **Device Enrollment Program Group**
- The policy **DEP Software Inventory**
- The required app **Secure Hub by Citrix**

This issue doesn't affect existing enrollments if DEP was configured before Citrix Secure Hub appeared in the Apple Store on October 6, 2016. [CXM-19158]

For Enrollment Invitation or Enrollment PIN templates: If the message in a template includes certain macros, the message sent to users includes the macro instead of the user information. Those macros are enrollment URL (`{enrollment.url}`) and enrollment PIN (`{enrollment.pin}`). [CXM-19210]

Sometimes you can't upload an Enterprise app because XenMobile is unable to find the application icon although the icon is available. [CXM-19213]

In the **Settings > PKI Entities > Discretionary CA** page, you can view only the first page of CA certificates if there are multiple pages of certificates. [CXM-19736]

For a delivery group deployed to multiple devices: If you click a delivery group on **Configure > Delivery Groups**, and then click a button under **Deployment**, the **Manage > Devices** page shows an incorrect device list. [CXM-19737]

If a XenMobile App update is available in the iOS App Store or the Google Play Store: Prompts for app updates don't appear in the XenMobile Store after a user opens the app. [CXM-19927]

A XenMobile macro that includes `$user.dnsroot` does not resolve for domains where the parent and child domains are in a tree-root trust relationship. [CXM-20366]

If the `sAMAccountName` differs from the name portion of the UPN, macro resolution for the client property `SEND_LDAP_ATTRIBUTES` fails. For example: The `sAMAccountName` is **samplename** and the UPN is **sample@example.com**. [CXM-20414]

If XenMobile is in MDM mode and you're using DEP enrollment with user credentials supplied during the DEP phase: If a user removes Secure Hub from the device within a short interval after enrollment, the server gets into an inconsistent state. A short interval might be one hour. [CXM-20924]

A device doesn't automatically go into compliance after an automated action. [CXM-21006]

For RBAC administrators in a custom RBAC role that includes some user group restrictions: If Active Directory users in user groups have some devices enrolled, the **Manage > Devices** page opens slowly. [CXM-21007, CXM-21009]

After upgrading to XenMobile 10.3.6, administrators with custom RBAC role access can see enrolled devices from other domains even if the RBAC configuration restricts that access. [CXM-21008]

XenMobile cluster members might not respond to some HTTP requests, which prevents users from enrolling because of the **Company network not available** errors. [CXM-21010]

If the iOS bulk enrollment settings have **Require credentials for device enrollment** enabled, any type of invitation for a DEP enrollment causes XenMobile Server errors. The errors include error messages in Secure Hub, error messages in the XenMobile console, and loss of MDM functionality for all devices. To work around this issue, delete all enrollment invitations for the affected users on the **Manage > Enrollment** page. Then, restart the XenMobile Server. [CXM-21500]

Automatic actions that the XenMobile Lost Mode triggers fail for iOS devices configured with a passcode. This issue applies to all available actions triggered by Lost Mode: **App wipe**, **App lock**, **Mark the device as out of compliance**, and **Send notification**. [CXM-21579]

The Devices & Apps report generated from **Analyze > Reporting** shows an incorrect app install count for each device. [CXM-21773]

When you add the Skype for Business public app on XenMobile Console, the icon might not appear. However, you can search and add the app on the console and the app can be installed on the device. [CXM-21774, #668341]

Some Enterprise apps for Android don't upload to a XenMobile console configured in MDM or XME mode. [CXM-22377]

Deploying resources based on dynamic device properties, such as Current mobile country code, don't work. XenMobile ignores the rules and allows the resources (such as device policies, apps, and actions) to deploy on the device. [CXM-22565]

You can't create a support bundle by using the XenMobile CLI. As a workaround, use the XenMobile console: Go to **Support > Create Support Bundles** and then click **Create**. [CXM-23091]

After an upgrade to XenMobile 10.3.6, Secure Hub no longer includes HDX apps. Logs include the entry, Unable to get the Config xml data Host name. [CXM-23177]

If you edit only the platform details for a device policy: The edits don't trigger a change to the **Last updated on** time on **Configure > Device Policies**. The last update time does change after you add or remove platforms. [CXM-23178]

If your browser language is set to French, you can't create or edit the WiFi device policy in the XenMobile console. [CXM-23180]

The **Manage > Devices** page shows iOS devices as inactive although the devices are active and communicating with XenMobile Server. This issue appears in logs as follows:

```
java.lang.IllegalStateException: Cannot load backing target entity: has been deleted. [CXM-23181]
```

If the server property **StorageZone Connectors supported value** is **NOT SUPPORTED** and you configure ShareFile: After you navigate to a different console page and then return to **Configure > ShareFile**, the **ShareFile** page doesn't show the configuration although the configuration is saved. To work around this issue, change the server property, **ShareFile configuration type**, to **ENTERPRISE**. [CXM-23337]

When a DEP device is deleted and then re-enrolled, the re-enrollment might fail with the error, Invalid profile. [CXM-24078]

This release contains a defense-in-depth measure for CVE-2016-5195, also known as Linux Dirty Cow.

## XenMobile Upgrade Tool

If your deployment in XenMobile 9 includes a `gpsstats.apk` enterprise app, the upgrade to XenMobile 10.4 might fail. [CXM-17992]

After an upgrade from XenMobile 9 to XenMobile 10.4, Windows and iOS devices are in MDM mode instead of in MAM+MDM mode. In addition, the XenMobile Store does not open. As a workaround, users can reenroll a migrated device. [CXM-18532, CXM-23408]

After an upgrade from XenMobile 9 to XenMobile 10.4, XenMobile has duplicate, inactive MAM-only records from prior re-enrollments. That issue occurs even if XenMobile 9 required Device Manager enrollment. [CXM-18544]

During an upgrade from XenMobile 9.0 to XenMobile 10.4.x: The Upgrade tool doesn't update the device name in the device property table for devices that are enrolled in XME (MDM+MAM) mode. [CXM-20821]

If the App Controller database contains users in the data format **username**, an upgrade from XenMobile 9.0 to XenMobile 10.x fails. Instead, use the data format **domain\username** or **username@domain**. [CXM-21072]

If the case of the path to the .p12 server certificates differs for HTTP and HTTPS, an upgrade from XenMobile 9.0 to XenMobile 10.4.x fails. For example, if the HTTP path is `Certificates\MDM.p12` and the HTTPS path is `certificates\MDM.p12`. [CXM-21581]

After an upgrade from XenMobile 9 to 10.x, XenMobile Store doesn't include apps. Also, XenMobile doesn't assign local groups to delivery groups. This issue occurs if a local user is part of a local group and the local user enrolls the device. [CXM-23375]

If Device Manager has two records for an Active Directory user and those records don't match as follows, an upgrade fails:

- The records have different UPNs. For example, one user record has a UPN of `john.smith@eng.domain.com`. The other record has `john.smith@domain.com`.
- The records have case differences in the `sAMAccountName`. For example, one user record has a `sAMAccountName` of `johns`. The other record has `JOHNS`. [CXM-23382]

After an upgrade from XenMobile 9 to XenMobile 10.x: You cannot edit in the upgraded XenMobile console a configuration policy that you customized in Device Manager by using the iPhone Configuration Utility or Apple Configurator. [CXM-23942]

# Known issues

May 11, 2017

XenMobile 10.5 includes the following known issues. Fixed issues for the Upgrade Tool appear under the heading "XenMobile Upgrade Tool" in this article.

For known issues related to XenMobile Apps, see [Known issues](#).

With NetScaler 12.0.41.16, when Secure Mail is configured with STA, mail sync fails on iOS and Android devices. The issue is fixed in NetScaler 12.0 build 41.22. For details and updates, see this [Support Knowledge Center](#) article. [#685075]

When you integrate StoreFront with XenMobile and deploy HDX apps, after you change an Active Directory password, the HDX apps disappear from the XenMobile Store. [CXM-9859]

After you upgrade to XenMobile 10.4.2, Android for Work apps don't appear on the device for a user in a nested Active Directory group. [CXM-19930]

An upgrade from XenMobile 10.3.6 to XenMobile 10.5 might change the device owner to "anonymous" for enrolled devices running Android for Work. [CXM-19933]

Users can renew certificates even if **Renew certificates when they expire** is **OFF** in your XenMobile configuration. [CXM-20923]

For Active Directory users in a group with permissions for StorageZone Connectors: If you move users out of the group, ShareFile for iOS users can still access Network shares associated with those connectors. To work around this issue, reinstall the ShareFile for iOS app. [CXM-21859]

If you move a StorageZone Connector from delivery group A to B, ShareFile for iOS users in delivery group A can continue to use the connector. [CXM-21860]

If XenMobile uses self-signed certificates, users can't enroll iOS 10.3 devices into XenMobile. This limitation results from a change in iOS 10.3. To enroll devices running iOS 10.3 or later into XenMobile, you must use trusted SSL certificates in XenMobile. [CXM-24120]

When deploying apps, a prompt tells users to install the app if it is already installed on the device but has never been opened. As part of a fix for this issue, if an app is updated on the server, it is not updated on the user's device until they launch the app. [CXM-32193]

## XenMobile Upgrade Tool

After you upgrade to XenMobile 10.4 from XenMobile 9, some policies for Windows devices appear in the XenMobile console, even after XenMobile deploys them. Specifically, the policies remain on the **Pending** tab of the **Assigned Policies** page of **Manage > Devices**. As a workaround, edit and then redeploy any policies shown as pending. That action clears the policies for Windows phones from the **Pending** tab. The Webclip policy for Windows tablets remains on the **Pending** tab although it works properly on the devices. [CXM-21769]

# Architecture

Apr 13, 2017

The XenMobile components in the XenMobile reference architecture you choose to deploy are based on the device or app management requirements of your organization. The components of XenMobile are modular and build on each other. For example, to give users in your organization remote access to mobile apps and to track user device types, you deploy XenMobile with NetScaler Gateway. XenMobile is where you manage apps and devices, and NetScaler Gateway enables users to connect to your network.

Deploying XenMobile components: You can deploy XenMobile to enable users to connect to resources in your internal network in the following ways:

- Connections to the internal network. If your users are remote, they can connect by using a VPN or micro VPN connection through NetScaler Gateway. That connection provides access to apps and desktops in the internal network.
- Device enrollment. Users can enroll mobile devices in XenMobile so you can manage the devices in the XenMobile console that connect to network resources.
- Web, SaaS, and mobile apps. Users can access their web, SaaS, and mobile apps from XenMobile through Secure Hub.
- Windows-based apps and virtual desktops. Users can connect with Citrix Receiver or a web browser to access Windows-based apps and virtual desktops from StoreFront or the Web Interface.

To achieve any of those capabilities for an on-premises XenMobile Server, Citrix recommends deploying XenMobile components in the following order:

- NetScaler Gateway. You can configure settings in NetScaler Gateway to enable communication with XenMobile, StoreFront, or the Web Interface by using the Quick Configuration wizard. Before using the Quick Configuration wizard in NetScaler Gateway, you must install one of the following components to set up communications: XenMobile, StoreFront, or the Web Interface.
- XenMobile. After you install XenMobile, you can configure policies and settings in the XenMobile console that allow users to enroll their mobile devices. You also can configure mobile, web, and SaaS apps. Mobile apps can include apps from the Apple App Store or Google Play. Users can also connect to mobile apps you wrap with the MDX Toolkit and upload to the console.
- MDX Toolkit. The MDX Toolkit can securely wrap mobile apps created within your organization or outside the company, such as XenMobile Apps. After you wrap an app, you then use the XenMobile console to add the app to XenMobile and change the policy configuration as needed. You can also add app categories, apply workflows, and deploy apps to delivery groups. See [About the MDX Toolkit](#).
- StoreFront (optional). You can provide access to Windows-based apps and virtual desktops from StoreFront through connections with Receiver.
- ShareFile Enterprise (optional). If you deploy ShareFile, you can enable enterprise directory integration through XenMobile, which acts as a Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) identity provider. For more information about configuring identity providers for ShareFile, see the ShareFile support site.

XenMobile provides device management and app management through the XenMobile console. This section describes the reference architecture for the XenMobile deployment.

In a production environment, Citrix recommends deploying the XenMobile solution in a cluster configuration for both scalability and server redundancy. Also, using the NetScaler SSL Offload capability can further reduce the load on the XenMobile Server and increase throughput. For more information about how to set up clustering for XenMobile by



configuring two load balancing virtual IP addresses on NetScaler, see [Clustering](#).

For more information about configuring XenMobile for a disaster recovery deployment, see the Deployment Handbook [Disaster Recovery](#) article. That article includes an architecture diagram.

The following sections describe different reference architectures for the XenMobile deployment. For reference architecture diagrams, see the XenMobile Deployment Handbook articles, [Reference Architecture for On-Premises Deployments](#) and [Reference Architecture for Cloud Deployments](#). For a complete list of ports, see [Port requirements](#) (on-premises) and [Port requirements](#) (cloud).

### **Mobile device management (MDM) mode**

XenMobile MDM Edition provides mobile device management. For platform support, see [Supported device operating systems](#). If you plan to use only the MDM features of XenMobile, you deploy XenMobile in MDM mode. For example, if you want to do the following.

- Deploy device policies and apps.
- Retrieve asset inventories.
- Carry out actions on devices, such as a device wipe.

In the recommended model, the XenMobile Server is positioned in the DMZ with an optional NetScaler in front, which provides more protection for XenMobile.

### **Mobile app management (MAM) mode**

MAM, also called MAM-only mode, provides mobile app management. For platform support, see [Supported device operating systems](#). If you plan to use only the MAM features of XenMobile without having devices enroll for MDM, you deploy XenMobile in MAM mode. For example, if you want to do the following.

- Secure apps and data on BYO mobile devices.
- Deliver enterprise mobile apps.
- Lock apps and wipe their data.

The devices cannot be MDM enrolled.

In this deployment model, XenMobile Server is positioned with NetScaler Gateway in front, which provides more protection for XenMobile.

### **MDM+MAM mode**

Using MDM and MAM modes together provides mobile app and data management and mobile device management. For platform support, see [Supported device operating systems](#). If you plan to use MDM+MAM features of XenMobile, you deploy XenMobile in ENT (enterprise) mode. For example, if you want to:

- Manage a corporate-issued device by using MDM
- Deploy device policies and apps
- Retrieve an asset inventory
- Wipe devices
- Deliver enterprise mobile apps
- Lock apps and wipe the data on devices

In the recommended deployment model, the XenMobile Server is positioned in the DMZ with NetScaler Gateway in front,

which provides more protection for XenMobile.

**XenMobile in the internal network** - Another deployment option is to position an on-premises XenMobile Server in the internal network, rather than in the DMZ. This deployment is used if your security policy requires that only network appliances can be placed in the DMZ. In this deployment, the XenMobile Server is not in the DMZ. Therefore, there is no requirement to open ports on the internal firewall to allow access to SQL Server and PKI servers from the DMZ.

# System requirements and compatibility

Mar 31, 2017

For more requirements and compatibility information, see the following articles:

- [XenMobile compatibility](#)
- [Supported device operating systems](#)
- [Port requirements](#)
- [Scalability](#)
- [Licensing](#)
- [FIPS 140-2 compliance](#)
- [Language support](#)

To run XenMobile 10.5, you need the following minimum system requirements:

- One of the following:
  - XenServer (supported versions: 6.5.x or 7.0); for details, see [XenServer](#)
  - VMware (supported versions: ESXi 5.5 or ESXi 6.0); for details, see [VMware](#)
  - Hyper-V (supported versions: Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, or Windows Server 2012 R2); for details, see [Hyper-V](#)
- Dual core processor
- Four virtual CPUs
- 8 GB of RAM for production environments; 4 GB of RAM for proof of concept and test environments
- 50 GB of disk space

XenMobile version 10.5 requires the 11.12.1 Citrix License Server or later.

## NetScaler Gateway System Requirements

To run NetScaler Gateway with XenMobile 10.5, you need the following minimum system requirements:

- One of the following:
  - XenServer (supported versions: 6.5 or 7.0)
  - VMWare (supported versions: ESXi 4.1, ESXi 5.1, ESXi 5.5, ESXi 6.0)
  - Hyper-V (supported versions: Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, or Windows Server 2012 R2)
- Two virtual CPUs
- 2 GB of RAM
- 20 GB of disk space

You also must be able to communicate with Active Directory, which requires a service account. You only need query and read access.

## XenMobile 10.5 Database Requirements

XenMobile requires one of the following databases:

- Microsoft SQL Server

The XenMobile repository supports a Microsoft SQL Server database running on one of the following supported versions. For more information about Microsoft SQL Server databases, see [Microsoft SQL Server](#).

Microsoft SQL Server 2016  
Microsoft SQL Server 2014  
Microsoft SQL Server 2012  
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2  
Microsoft SQL Server 2008

XenMobile 10.5 supports SQL AlwaysOn Availability Groups and SQL Clustering for database high availability.

Citrix recommends using Microsoft SQL remotely.

**Note:** Ensure that the service account of the SQL Server to be used on XenMobile has the DBcreator role permission. For more information about SQL Server service accounts, see the following pages on the Microsoft Developer Network site. These links point to information for SQL Server 2014. If you are using a different version, choose your server version from the **Other Versions** list:

[Server Configuration - Service Accounts](#)

[Configure Windows Service Accounts and Permissions](#)

[Server-Level Roles](#)

- PostgreSQL

PostgreSQL is included with XenMobile. You can use it locally or remotely.

**Note:** All XenMobile editions support Remote PostgreSQL 9.5.2 and 9.3.11 for Windows with the following limitations:

- Support for up to 300 devices
- Use on-premises SQL Server for more than 300 devices.
- No support for clustering

## StoreFront Compatibility

StoreFront 3.9  
StoreFront 3.8  
StoreFront 3.7  
StoreFront 3.6  
StoreFront 3.5  
StoreFront 3.0  
Web Interface 5.4  
XenApp and XenDesktop 7.13  
XenApp and XenDesktop 7.12  
XenApp and XenDesktop 7.11  
XenApp and XenDesktop 7.9  
XenApp and XenDesktop 7.8  
XenApp and XenDesktop 7.7  
XenApp and XenDesktop Long Term Service Release (LTSR)  
XenApp and XenDesktop 7.6  
XenApp and XenDesktop 7.5

XenApp 6.5

## XenMobile 10.5 Mail Server Requirements

XenMobile 10.5 supports the following mail servers:

- Exchange 2016
- Exchange 2013
- Exchange 2010

# XenMobile compatibility

Jun 05, 2017

## Important

- Citrix supports both enterprise distribution and public app store distribution for XenMobile productivity apps until December 31, 2017. For details, see the [Citrix product matrix](#). You must move to the public app store apps before this date. After that, only public app store distribution is supported. For more information about the in-app guide for moving from the enterprise versions of XenMobile Apps to the public store versions, see [In-app guide for migrating to public store apps](#). The MDX Toolkit continues to support enterprise wrapping for app developers.
- As of version 10.4, Worx Mobile Apps are renamed XenMobile Apps. All XenMobile Apps are renamed. For details, see [About XenMobile Apps](#).

This article summarizes the versions of the supported XenMobile components that you can integrate. Those components include NetScaler Gateway and the version of the MDX Toolkit required to wrap, configure, and distribute XenMobile Apps.

## Supported versions and upgrade paths

For the XenMobile Server and apps, Citrix supports the current and prior two versions of XenMobile. For example, if the current version is XenMobile Server 10.5, Citrix also supports versions 10.4 and 10.3.6. A version includes both releases and service packs. XenMobile 10.4 is a service pack rather than a full release.

Maintenance has ended for XenMobile 9. For more information, see the [Product Matrix](#). Citrix supports upgrades from XenMobile 9 to the latest version of XenMobile 10.

	Upgrade support statement	Latest version	Upgrade from
Enterprise wrapped apps (such as Secure Mail and Secure Web)	Last two versions	10.4.5 (iOS), 10.4.6 (Android)	10.3.10 or 10.4
Public store apps (such as Secure Hub, Secure Mail, and Secure Web)	Last two versions  Users who have automatic updates enabled receive the latest version from the app store.  The latest app supports the previous two MDX files.	10.5.20 (Secure Hub)  10.5.20 (Secure Mail)  10.5.20 (Secure Web)	10.5.10 or 10.5.15 (Secure Hub)  10.5.10 or 10.5.15 (Secure Mail)  10.5 and 10.5.10 (Secure Web)  For example, a 10.5.20 version of Secure Mail is

			compatible with a 10.5.15 or 10.5.10 MDX file.
MDX	Previous version	10.4.10	10.4.5
Server (on-premises)	Last two versions and upgrades from XenMobile 9 RP5	10.5	10.4, 10.3.6, XenMobile 9 RP5

## XenMobile compatibility

To use new features, fixes, and policy updates, Citrix recommends that you install the most recent version of the MDX Toolkit, Secure Hub, and XenMobile Apps.

- Apps, MDX Toolkit, and Secure Hub for enterprise distribution:
  - The latest version of the apps and MDX Toolkit requires the latest version of Secure Hub.
  - The latest version of the MDX Toolkit is required for the latest version of the apps.
  - The previous two versions of the apps and the previous version of the MDX Toolkit are compatible with the latest Secure Hub.
- Client and server: The latest versions of Secure Hub, MDX Toolkit, and XenMobile Apps are compatible with the latest version, plus the two prior versions, of XenMobile Server.
- The public store apps are only compatible with XenMobile 10.4 and later.
- The Enterprise wrapped apps are compatible with XenMobile 9 until XenMobile 9 reaches End of Life in June 2017.

Supported NetScaler Gateway versions:

- 11.1.x
- 11.0.x
- 10.5.x

### Important

XenMobile currently doesn't support NetScaler 12.0.41.16. The issue is fixed in NetScaler 12.0 build 41.22. For details and updates, see this [Support Knowledge Center article](#).

MDX Toolkit for iOS and Android versions	Compatible Secure Hub versions	
	Android	iOS
10.4.10	10.5.20	10.5.20
10.4.5	10.5.15	10.5.15

MDX Toolkit for Windows Phone	Compatible Secure Hub versions
10.3.9	10.3.5
10.3.1	10.3

## Note

XenMobile 10.1 doesn't support Windows Phone 10.

For XenMobile 9, you must install a patch for apps to work properly. For details, see [CTX217942](#).

## Apps available on public app stores

	Android	iOS
Secure Hub	10.5.20	10.5.20
Secure Mail	10.5.20	10.5.20
Secure Web	10.5.20	10.5.20
Secure Notes	10.4.5	10.4.5
Secure Tasks	10.4.5	10.4.5
QuickEdit	6.10	6.10
ShareFile	5.4	5.3
ShareConnect		3.3
ScanDirect		1.2.2

## Apps available for enterprise distribution

XenMobile 10.x and 9 support the Worx Mobile/XenMobile Apps versions listed in the following table.

--	--	--	--



<b>App</b>	<b>Android</b>	<b>iOS</b>	<b>Windows Phone<sup>1</sup></b>
Secure Hub	10.5.15 10.5.10	10.4.10 10.4.5	
Worx Home	10.3.10 10.3.9	10.3.10 10.3.9	10.0.3 10.0.0
Secure Forms		10.4.5 10.4.1	
Secure Mail	10.4.6 10.4.5	10.4.5 10.4.0.19	
WorxMail	10.3.10 10.3.9	10.3.10 10.3.9	10.2 10.0.7
Secure Notes	10.4.5 10.4.1	10.4.5 10.4.1	
Worx Notes	10.3.10 10.3.9	10.3.10 10.3.9	
Secure Tasks	10.4.5 10.4.1	10.4.5 10.4.1	
WorxTasks	10.3.10 10.3.9	10.3.10 10.3.9	
Secure Web	10.4.5 10.4.1	10.4.5 10.4.1	
WorxWeb	10.3.10	10.3.10	10.2

	10.3.9	10.3.9	10.0.3
QuickEdit <sup>2</sup>	6.10	6.10	
ScanDirect		1.2.2	
ShareConnect	3.2.341	3.3	
ShareFile	5.4	5.3	

<sup>1</sup> XenMobile 10.1 doesn't support Windows Phone 10.

<sup>2</sup> XenMobile supports only the most recent versions of QuickEdit, ShareConnect, and ShareFile.

### Browser support

XenMobile 10.x supports the following browsers:

- Internet Explorer, though not versions 9 or earlier
- Chrome
- Firefox
- Safari on mobile devices for use with the Self Help Portal

XenMobile 10.x is compatible with the most current version of the browser and one version before the current version.

# Supported device operating systems

Jun 05, 2017

XenMobile supports devices running the following platforms and operating systems for enterprise mobility management, including app and device management. Because of platform restrictions and security features, XenMobile doesn't support all functionality on all platforms.

To support older versions of mobile operating systems, such as Android 4.1 and iOS 7, see [article CTX204192](#) in the Citrix Knowledge Center.

The supported device platform information in this article also applies to XenMobile Mail Manager and XenMobile NetScaler Connector.

## Note

- Citrix supports, at a minimum, the current and prior version of each major operating system platform. Not all features of the newer version of XenMobile work on older platform releases. This article details what Citrix supports for each operating system. This article also includes device models that Citrix tested. For issues with other device models, contact Citrix support.
- As of version 10.4, Worx Mobile Apps are renamed to XenMobile Apps. All XenMobile Apps are renamed. For details, see [About XenMobile Apps](#).

## Android

### XenMobile 10.x

Operating systems supported for all modes: Android 4.4.x, 5.x, 6.x, 7

Operating systems supported for MDM-only mode: Android 4.1.x, 4.2.x, 4.3

Worx Home/Secure Hub is supported on x86-based Android devices for MDM capabilities. On XenMobile 10 and 10.1, app management is only available on Android devices with ARM-based processors. MDX-wrapped applications are not supported on Android x86-based devices.

MDX-wrapped Worx apps/XenMobile Apps are supported on Android x64-based devices.

### Android devices and operating systems tested specifically on XenMobile 10.x in MDM+MAM (enterprise) mode

- Google Nexus 7 Tablet (operating system 4.4.4)
- Google Nexus 9 Tablet (operating system 7.0)
- Google Nexus 5 (operating system 6.0.1)
- Google Nexus 5X (operating system 7.1.1)
- Google Pixel
- Galaxy S4 model GT-I9500 (rooted) (operating system 4.2.2)
- Galaxy S7 (operating system 7.0)
- Galaxy S6 (operating system 6.0.1, 5.0)

- Galaxy Tab A (operating system 6.0)
- Galaxy Note3 model SM-N900 (operating system 5.0)
- Galaxy S4, GT-I9500 (operating system 5.0.1)
- Galaxy S3 model GT-I9305 (operating system 4.4.4)
- Galaxy S4 GT-I9505 (operating system 4.3)
- Moto Turbo (operating system 6.0.1)
- Nexus 9 Tab (operating system 5.0.1)
- Nexus 9 Tab (operating system 5.1.1)
- Nexus 7 (operating system 4.4)
- Nexus 6P OS version 7.1.1
- Nexus 5 (operating system 5.0.1)
- Galaxy S6 Edge, SM-G925F (operating system 6.0.1)
- Huawei Nexus 6 (operating systems 6.0.1 and 7.0)
- Sony Xperia, Model: SGP311 (operating system 5.0.1)
- Galaxy S5 SM-G900F (operating system 6.0.1)
- Galaxy S5 SM-G900H (operating system 6.0.1)
- HTC One M8 (operating system 4.4.2)

#### **Android devices and operating systems tested specifically on XenMobile 10.x in MDM-only mode**

- Google Nexus 7 tablet (operating system 4.4.4)
- Google Nexus 9 tablet (operating system 7.0)
- Google Nexus 5 (operating system 6.0.1)
- Google Nexus 5X (operating system 7.1.1)
- Google Pixel
- Galaxy S7 (operating system 7.0)
- Galaxy S6 (operating system 6.0.1, 5.0)
- Galaxy Tab A (operating system 6.0)
- Galaxy S4 model GT-I9500 (rooted) (operating system 4.2.2)
- Galaxy Note3 model SM-N900 (operating system 5.0)
- Galaxy S4, GT-I9500 (operating system 5.0.1)
- Galaxy S3 model GT-I9305 (operating system 4.4.4)
- Galaxy S4 GT-I9505 (operating system 4.3)
- Nexus 9 Tab (operating system 5.0.1)
- Nexus 9 Tab (operating system 5.1.1)
- Nexus 7 (operating system 4.4)
- Nexus 5 (operating system 5.0.1)
- Galaxy S6 Edge, SM-G925F (operating system 6.0.1)
- Huawei Nexus 6 (operating systems 6.0.1 and 7.0)
- Sony Xperia, Model: SGP311 (operating system 5.0.1)
- Galaxy S5 SM-G900F (operating system 6.0.1)
- Galaxy S5 SM-G900H (operating system 6.0.1)
- HTC One M8 (operating system 4.4.2)

In addition, the following device types are tested with Secure Mail.

**Device type**

**Operating system**

Samsung S7	7.0
Samsung S6	6.0.1
Samsung S5	5
Samsung tab A	6.0.1
Nexus 7	4.4.4

## SAFE and KNOX

On compatible Samsung devices, XenMobile 10.x supports and extends both Samsung for Enterprise (SAFE) and Samsung KNOX policies. XenMobile requires that you enable the SAFE APIs before you deploy SAFE policies and restrictions. To do that, deploy the built-in Samsung Enterprise License Management (ELM) key to a device. To enable the Samsung KNOX API:

1. Purchase a Samsung KNOX license by using the Samsung KNOX License Management System (KLMS).
2. Deploy the Samsung ELM key.

For HTC-specific policies, XenMobile supports HTC API version 0.5.0. For Sony-specific policies, XenMobile supports Sony Enterprise SDK 2.0.

## iOS

### Note

iOS 10.3 devices don't support self-signed certificates. If XenMobile uses self-signed certificates, users can't enroll iOS 10.3 devices into XenMobile. To enroll devices running iOS 10.3 or later into XenMobile, you must use trusted SSL certificates in XenMobile.

All Worx apps/XenMobile Apps are compatible with iOS 10, starting with versions 10.3.10 or later. Use the MDX Toolkit 10.3.10 or later to wrap mobile or enterprise apps to ensure proper compatibility with iOS 10. If users upgrade to iOS 10, they must also upgrade to Worx Home 10.3.10 or later (Secure Hub) to use MDX apps. For details, see this [Knowledge Center article](#).

### XenMobile 10.3.x, 10.4, and 10.5

- iOS 10.x
- iOS 9.x
- iOS 8.x (Worx Home/Secure Hub only in MDM-only deployments)

Some iOS devices that XenMobile 10.3.x and 10.4 support:

- iPhone 7+ 10.2.1 (XenMobile 10.5 and later)
- iPhone 6, 6+, 6S, 6S+, 5s, 5, 5c
- iPad 2, 3
- iPad Air, iPad Air-2, iPad Mini-4, Mini-3, Mini-2
- iPad Pro
- Mac OS X
  - MacBook, Air, Mini, Mini Retina 10.9.5, 10.10, 10.11

### **XenMobile 10 and 10.1**

- iOS 10.x
- iOS 9.x
- iOS 8.x (Worx Home only in MDM-only deployments)

Some iOS devices that XenMobile 10 and 10.1 support:

- iPhone 5, 5s, 5c, 6, 6+
- iPad2, 3, Mini, Air, Air2, Mini Retina

## Windows Phone and Tablet

### **XenMobile 10.5**

- Windows 10 Phone and Tablet
  - Not supported if XenMobile is in MAM-only mode.
- Windows Phone 8.1 compatibility with Worx Home.
  - If XenMobile is in Enterprise mode: Worx Home 10.0.
  - If XenMobile is in MDM-only mode: Worx Home 9.1.0.
- Windows Mobile/CE
  - Not supported if XenMobile is in MAM-only mode.

### **XenMobile 10.3.x and 10.4**

- Windows 10 RS1, 8.1 tablet
  - If XenMobile is in MAM-only mode, Windows 10 tablet is not supported.
- Windows Tablet Surface Pro 3, Surface 2, RT
- Windows Phone 10, 8.1
  - For Windows Phone 10, you must install a patch from the [XenMobile downloads page](#).
  - Not supported if XenMobile is in MAM-only mode.
- Windows Phone 8.1 compatibility with Worx Home:
  - Worx Home 10.0 if XenMobile is in Enterprise mode.
  - Worx Home 9.1.0 if XenMobile is in MDM-only mode.
- Windows 8.1 Pro and Enterprise editions (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows RT 8.1
- Windows Mobile/CE
  - Not supported if XenMobile is in MAM-only mode.

Some Windows devices that XenMobile 10.3 supports:

- Windows Tablet 10, 8.1
- Windows Phone 10, 8.1
- HTC (Windows Phone 8.1)
- Nokia 920, 925, 1020, 1520 (Windows Phone 8.1)
- Windows Tablet Surface Pro 3
- Windows Tablet Surface 2
- Windows Tablet RT

### **XenMobile 10 and 10.1**

- Windows 10 RS1 tablet
- Windows Phone 8.1 / 10:
  - If XenMobile is in MAM-only mode, Windows Phone 8.1 is not supported.
  - Windows Phone 10 is supported on XenMobile 10.3 and later.
  - Windows Phone 10 is supported on XenMobile 9, but you must install a Device Manager rolling patch, as discussed in this [Knowledge Center article](#). Also, take note of the patch for the Windows 10 Anniversary Update Version 1607 for Windows phones. For details, see this [Knowledge Center article](#).
- Windows Phone 8.1 compatibility with Worx Home:
  - Worx Home 10.0 if XenMobile is in Enterprise mode
  - Worx Home 9.0.3 if XenMobile is in MDM-only mode
- Windows 8.1 Pro and Enterprise editions (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows RT 8.1
- Windows Mobile: XenMobile 10.1 does not support Windows Mobile devices. Users who have devices running Windows Mobile or Windows CE must continue to use XenMobile 9.

Some Windows devices that XenMobile 10 and 10.1 support:

- Windows Tablet 8.1
- HTC (Windows Phone 8.1)
- Nokia 920, 925, 1020, 1520 (Windows Phone 8.1)
- Windows Tablet Surface Pro 3
- Windows Tablet Surface 2
- Windows Tablet RT

Management of Windows Phone 7 is provided through XenMobile Mail Manager. For details, see [Installing XenMobile Mail Manager](#).

## Symbian

### **XenMobile 10.3.x, 10.4, and 10.5**

XenMobile 10.3.x, 10.4, and 10.5 do not support Symbian.

### **XenMobile 10 and 10.1**

The following list includes some of the Symbian devices XenMobile 10.1 and 10 support. In XenMobile 10, they're supported for device management only:

- Symbian 3
- Symbian S60 5th Edition
- Symbian S60 3rd Edition, Feature Pack 2
- Symbian S60 3rd Edition, Feature Pack 1
- Symbian S60 3rd Edition
- Symbian S60 2nd Edition, Feature Pack 3
- Symbian S60 2nd Edition, Feature Pack 2

## BlackBerry

Management of BlackBerry devices is provided through XenMobile Mail Manager. For details, see [Installing XenMobile Mail Manager](#).



# Port requirements

May 22, 2017

To enable devices and apps to communicate with XenMobile, you open specific ports in your firewalls. The following tables list the ports that must be open. For port requirements for XenMobile Service, see [Port requirements](#).

## Open ports for NetScaler Gateway and XenMobile to manage apps

Open the following ports to allow user connections from Citrix Secure Hub, Citrix Receiver, and the NetScaler Gateway Plug-in through NetScaler Gateway to the following components:

- XenMobile
- StoreFront
- XenDesktop
- XenMobile NetScaler Connector
- Other internal network resources, such as intranet websites

To enable traffic to Launch Darkly from NetScaler, you can use the IP addresses noted in this [Support Knowledge Center article](#).

For more information about NetScaler Gateway, see [Configuration Settings for your XenMobile Environment](#) in the NetScaler Gateway documentation. For more information about IP addresses owned by NetScaler, see [How a NetScaler Communicates with Clients and Servers](#) in the NetScaler documentation. That section includes information about NetScaler IP (NSIP) virtual server IP (VIP) and subnet IP (SNIP) addresses.

TCP port	Description	Source	Destination
21 or 22	Used to send support bundles to an FTP or SCP server.	XenMobile	FTP or SCP server
53 (TCP and UDP)	Used for DNS connections.	NetScaler Gateway XenMobile	DNS server
80	NetScaler Gateway passes the VPN connection to the internal network resource through the second firewall. This situation typically occurs if users log on with the NetScaler Gateway Plug-in.	NetScaler Gateway	Intranet websites

80 or 8080	XML and Secure Ticket Authority (STA) port used for enumeration, ticketing, and authentication.	StoreFront and Web Interface XML network traffic	XenDesktop or XenApp
443	Citrix recommends using port 443.	NetScaler Gateway STA	
123 (TCP and UDP)	Used for Network Time Protocol (NTP) services.	NetScaler Gateway XenMobile	NTP server
389	Used for insecure LDAP connections.	NetScaler Gateway XenMobile	LDAP authentication server or Microsoft Active Directory
443	Used for connections to StoreFront from Citrix Receiver or Receiver for Web to XenApp and XenDesktop.	Internet	NetScaler Gateway
	Used for connections to XenMobile for web, mobile, and SaaS app delivery.	Internet	NetScaler Gateway
	Used for general device communication to XenMobile Server	XenMobile	XenMobile
	Used for connections from mobile devices to XenMobile for enrollment.	Internet	XenMobile
	Used for connections from XenMobile to XenMobile NetScaler Connector.	XenMobile	XenMobile NetScaler Connector
	Used for connections from XenMobile NetScaler Connector to XenMobile.	XenMobile NetScaler Connector	XenMobile
	Used for Callback URL in deployments without certificate authentication.	XenMobile	NetScaler Gateway
514	Used for connections between XenMobile and a syslog server.	XenMobile	Syslog server
636	Used for secure LDAP connections.	NetScaler Gateway	LDAP authentication server or Active Directory

		XenMobile	
1494	Used for ICA connections to Windows-based applications in the internal network. Citrix recommends keeping this port open.	NetScaler Gateway	XenApp or XenDesktop
1812	Used for RADIUS connections.	NetScaler Gateway	RADIUS authentication server
2598	Used for connections to Windows-based applications in the internal network using session reliability. Citrix recommends keeping this port open.	NetScaler Gateway	XenApp or XenDesktop
3268	Used for Microsoft Global Catalog insecure LDAP connections.	NetScaler Gateway XenMobile	LDAP authentication server or Active Directory
3269	Used for Microsoft Global Catalog secure LDAP connections.	NetScaler Gateway XenMobile	LDAP authentication server or Active Directory
9080	Used for HTTP traffic between NetScaler and the XenMobile NetScaler Connector.	NetScaler	XenMobile NetScaler Connector
9443	Used for HTTPS traffic between NetScaler and the XenMobile NetScaler Connector.	NetScaler	XenMobile NetScaler Connector
45000 80	Used for communication between two XenMobile VMs when deployed in a cluster.	XenMobile	XenMobile
8443	Used for enrollment, XenMobile Store, and mobile app management (MAM).	XenMobile NetScaler Gateway Devices Internet	XenMobile
4443	Used for accessing the XenMobile console by an administrator through the browser.	Access point (browser)	XenMobile
	Used for downloading logs and support	XenMobile	XenMobile

	bundles for all XenMobile cluster nodes from one node.		
27000	Default port used for accessing the external Citrix License Server	XenMobile	Citrix License Server
7279	Default port used for checking Citrix licenses in and out.	XenMobile	Citrix Vendor Daemon

## Open XenMobile ports to manage devices

Open the following ports to allow XenMobile to communicate in your network.

TCP port	Description	Source	Destination
25	Default SMTP port for the XenMobile notification service. If your SMTP server uses a different port, ensure that your firewall does not block that port.	XenMobile	SMTP server
80 and 443	Enterprise App Store connection to Apple iTunes App Store (ax.itunes.apple.com), Google Play (must use 80), or Windows Phone Store. Used for publishing apps from the app stores through Citrix Mobile Self-Serve on iOS, Secure Hub for Android, or Secure Hub for Windows Phone.	XenMobile	Apple iTunes App Store (ax.itunes.apple.com and *.mzstatic.com)  Apple Volume Purchase Program (vpp.itunes.apple.com)  For Windows Phone: login.live.com and *.notify.windows.com  Google Play (play.google.com)
80 or 443	Used for outbound connections between XenMobile and Nexmo SMS Notification Relay.	XenMobile	Nexmo SMS Relay Server
389	Used for insecure LDAP connections.	XenMobile	LDAP authentication server or Active Directory
443	Used for enrollment and agent setup for Android and Windows Mobile.	Internet	XenMobile

	Used for enrollment and agent setup for Android and Windows devices, the XenMobile web console, and MDM Remote Support Client.	Internal LAN and WiFi	
1433	Used by default for connections to a remote database server (optional).	XenMobile	SQL Server
2195	Used for Apple Push Notification service (APNs) outbound connections to gateway.push.apple.com for iOS device notifications and device policy push.	XenMobile	Internet (APNs hosts using the public IP address 17.0.0.0/8)
2196	Used for APNs outbound connections to feedback.push.apple.com for iOS device notification and device policy push.		
5223	Used for APNs outbound connections from iOS devices on Wi-Fi networks to *.push.apple.com.	iOS devices on WiFi networks	Internet (APNs hosts using the public IP address 17.0.0.0/8)
8081	Used for app tunnels from the optional MDM Remote Support Client. Defaults to 8081.	Remote Support Client	Internet, for app tunnels to user devices (Android and Windows only)
8443	Used for enrollment of iOS and Windows Phone devices.	Internet  LAN and WiFi	XenMobile

### Port requirement for Auto Discovery Service connectivity

This port configuration ensures that Android devices connecting from Secure Hub for Android can access the Citrix Auto Discovery Service (ADS) from within the internal network. The ability to access the ADS is important when downloading any security updates made available through the ADS.

**Note:** ADS connections might not support your proxy server. In this scenario, allow the ADS connection to bypass the proxy server.

If you want to enable certificate pinning, do the following prerequisites:

- **Collect XenMobile Server and NetScaler certificates.** The certificates must be in PEM format and must be a public certificate and not the private key.
- **Contact Citrix Support and place a request to enable certificate pinning.** During this process, you are asked for

your certificates.

Certificate pinning requires that devices connect to ADS before the device enrolls. This requirement ensures that the latest security information is available to Secure Hub for the environment in which the device is enrolling. For Secure Hub to enroll a device, the device must reach the ADS. Therefore, opening up ADS access within the internal network is critical to enabling devices to enroll.

To allow access to the ADS for Secure Hub for Android, open port 443 for the following FQDN and IP addresses:

<b>FQDN</b>	<b>IP address</b>
	54.225.219.53
	54.243.185.79
	107.22.184.230
	107.20.173.245
discovery.mdm.zenprise.com	184.72.219.144
	184.73.241.73
	54.243.233.48
	204.236.239.233
	107.20.198.193

# Scalability and performance

Jun 26, 2017

## Note

For the most recent XenMobile scalability and performance guidelines, see [Scalability and performance](#).

Understanding the scale of your XenMobile infrastructure plays a significant role in how you decide to deploy and configure XenMobile. This article contains data from scalability tests and guidance on determining infrastructure requirements for performance and scalability for small- to large-scale, on-premises XenMobile enterprise deployments.

Scalability is defined here in terms of the ability of devices already enrolled in the deployment to reconnect to the deployment at the same time.

- *Scalability* is defined as the maximum number of devices enrolled in the deployment.
- *Login Rate* is defined maximum rate at which existing devices can reconnect to the deployment.

The data in this article are derived from testing on deployments ranging in size from 10,000 to 60,000 devices. The tests comprised mobile device using known workloads.

All testing was done on XenMobile Enterprise edition.

Testing was done using the NetScaler Gateway 8200. NetScaler appliance with similar or greater capacity can be expected to produce similar or greater scalability and performance.

This table summarizes the scalability test results:

Scalability	Up to 60,000 devices	
Login rate	Reconnection rate of existing users	Up to 7,500 devices per hour
Configuration	NetScaler	MPX 8200
	XenMobile Enterprise Edition	XenMobile Server 5-node cluster
	Database	Microsoft SQL Server external database

## Test results by device population and hardware configuration

This table provides scalability test results for deployment device populations and hardware configurations tested.

<b>Number of devices</b>	10,000	30,000	60,000
<b>Reconnection rate of existing devices per hour</b>	1,250	3,750	7,500
<b>XenMobile Server - mode</b>	Standalone	Cluster	Cluster
<b>XenMobile Server - cluster</b>	N/A	3	5
<b>XenMobile Server - virtual appliance</b>	Memory = 8 GB RAM vCPUs = 4	Memory = 16 GB RAM vCPUs = 8	Memory = 24 GB RAM vCPUs = 8
<b>Active Directory</b>	Memory = 4 GB RAM vCPUs = 2	Memory = 8 GB RAM vCPUs = 4	Memory = 16 GB RAM vCPUs = 4
<b>Microsoft SQL Server external database</b>	Memory = 8 GB RAM vCPUs = 4	Memory = 16 GB RAM vCPUs = 8	Memory = 48 GB RAM vCPUs = 24

## Scalability profile

These tables summarize the test profile used derive the data in this article:

<b>Active Directory Configuration</b>	<b>Profile used</b>
Users	100,000
Groups	200,000
Levels of nesting	5

<b>XenMobile Server Configuration</b>	<b>Total</b>	<b>Per user</b>
Policies	20	20



Apps	270	50
Public app	200	0
MDX	50	30
Web and SaaS	20	20
Actions	50	
Delivery groups	20	
Active Directory groups per delivery group	10	

<b>SQL</b>		
Number of databases		1

## Device connections and app activities

These scalability tests collected data on the ability of devices enrolled in a deployment to reconnect over an 8-hour period.

The tests simulated a reconnect interval during which reconnecting devices obtain all entitled security policies, subjecting XenMobile Server nodes to higher than normal load conditions. During subsequent reconnections, only changed or new policies are pushed to iOS devices, lessening the load on the XenMobile Server nodes.

These tests used a mix of 50 percent iOS devices and 50 percent Android devices.

These tests assume the reconnecting Android devices have received prior GCM notifications.

During the 8-hour test interval, the following app-related activities occurred:

- Secure Hub was opened once to enumerate entitled apps
- 2 SAML web apps were opened
- 4 MAM apps were downloaded
- 1 STA was generated for use by Secure Mail
- 240 STA ticket validations, one for each Secure Mail reconnect event over a micro VPN, were performed.

## Reference architecture

For the reference architecture for deployments used in these scalability tests, see "Core MAM+MDM Reference

Architecture" in [Reference Architecture for On-Premises Deployments](#).

## Caveats and limitations

Note the following when considering the scalability test results in this article:

- Windows platform was not tested.
- Policy push was tested for iOS and Android devices.
- Each XenMobile Server node supports a maximum of 10,000 devices simultaneously.

# Licensing

Apr 13, 2017

Licensing differs for XenMobile Service and XenMobile Server:

- Citrix Cloud Ops handles licensing for XenMobile Service.
- XenMobile Server and NetScaler Gateway require licenses.

For more information about NetScaler Gateway licensing, see [Licensing](#) in the NetScaler Gateway documentation. XenMobile uses Citrix Licensing to manage licenses. For more information about Citrix Licensing, see [The Citrix Licensing System](#).

When you purchase XenMobile Server, you receive an order confirmation email message containing instructions for activating your licenses. New customers must register for a license program before placing an order. For more information about XenMobile licensing models and programs, see [XenMobile licensing](#).

For a data sheet that shows which XenMobile features are available in each XenMobile edition, see this [PDF](#).

You must install Citrix Licensing before downloading your XenMobile licenses. The name of the server on which you installed Citrix Licensing is required to generate the license file. When you install XenMobile, Citrix Licensing is installed on the server by default. Alternatively, you can use an existing Citrix Licensing deployment to manage your XenMobile licenses. For more information about installing, deploying, and managing Citrix Licensing, see [Licensing Your Product](#).

## Note

The latest version of XenMobile requires the 11.12.1 Citrix License Server or later. Older license server versions do not work with the latest version of XenMobile.

## Important

If you intend to cluster nodes, or instances, of XenMobile, you must use Citrix Licensing on a remote server.

Citrix recommends that you retain local copies of all license files you receive. When you save a back-up copy of the configuration file, all license files are included in the backup. If, however, you reinstall XenMobile without first backing up the configuration file, you need the original license files.

## XenMobile licensing considerations

In the absence of a license, XenMobile operates fully featured in trial mode for a grace period of 30 days. This trial mode can be used only one time, with the 30-day period beginning when you install XenMobile. Access to the XenMobile web console is never blocked, regardless of whether a valid XenMobile license is available. In the XenMobile console, you can see how many days are left in your trial period.

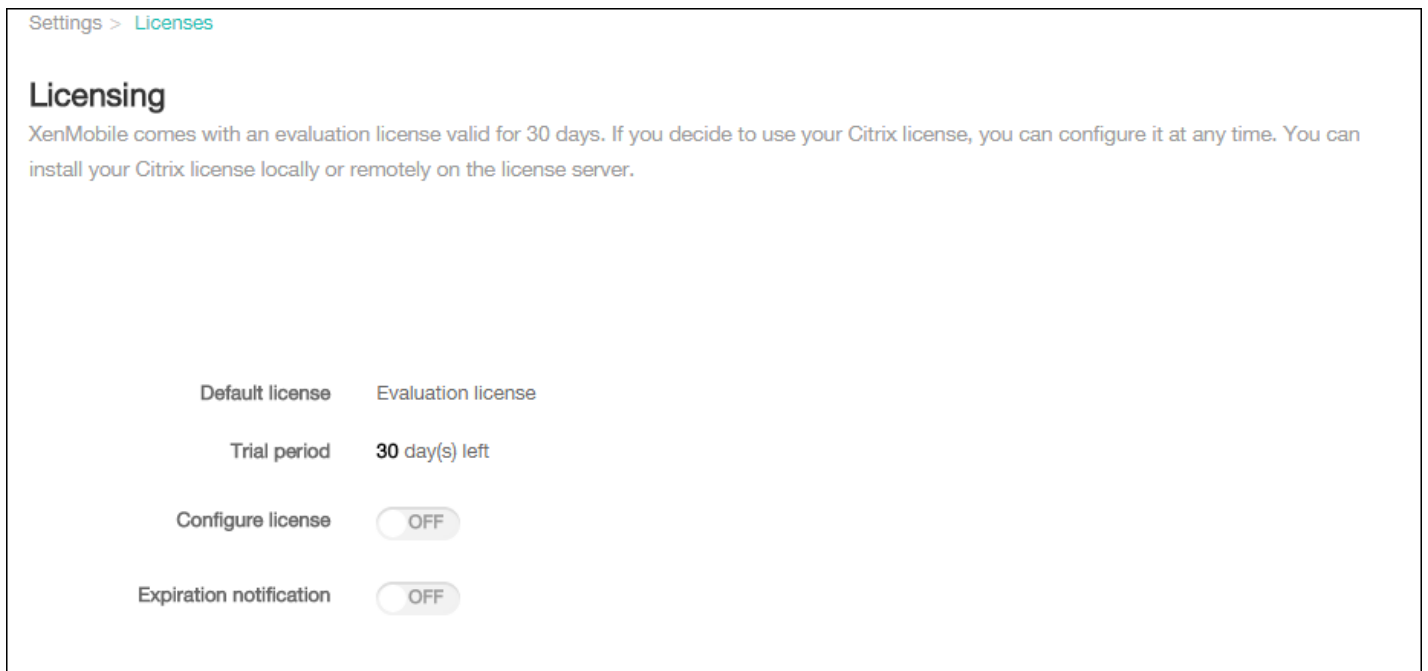
Although XenMobile allows you to upload multiple licenses, only one license can be activated at a time.

When a XenMobile license expires, you can no longer perform any device management functions. For example, new users or

devices cannot be enrolled, and apps and configurations deployed to enrolled devices cannot be updated. For more information about XenMobile licensing models and programs, see [XenMobile licensing](#).

To find the Licensing page on the XenMobile console

When the **Licensing** page first appears after you install XenMobile, the license is set for the default 30-day trial mode and is not yet configured. You can add and configure licenses on this page.



1. On the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper right-hand corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Click **Licensing**. The **Licensing** page appears.

To add a local license

When adding new licenses, they appear in the table. The first license added is automatically activated. If you add multiple licenses of the same category, such as Enterprise and type, these licenses appear in a single row of the table. In these cases, the **Total number of licenses** and **Number used** reflect the combined amount for the common licenses. The **Expires on** date shows the latest expiration date among the common licenses.

You manage all local licenses through the XenMobile console.

1. Get a license file from the Simple License Service, through the License Administration Console, or directly from your account on Citrix.com. For details, see [Obtain your license files](#).
2. On the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper right-hand corner. The **Settings** page appears.
3. Click **Licensing**. The **Licensing** page appears.
4. Set **Configure license** to **On**. The **License type** list, the **Add** button, and the **Licensing** table appear. The **Licensing** table contains licenses you have used with XenMobile. If you have not added a Citrix license yet, the table is empty.

## Licensing

XenMobile comes with an evaluation license valid for 30 days. If you decide to use your Citrix license, you can configure it at any time. You can install your Citrix license locally or remotely on the license server.

Default license Evaluation license

Trial period 30 day(s) left

Configure license

License type Local license

  
Add

Product Name	Active	Total number of licenses	Number used	Type	Expires on	
--------------	--------	--------------------------	-------------	------	------------	--

No results found.

Expiration notification

5. Ensure that **License type** is set to **Local license** and then click **Add**. The **Add New License** dialog box appears.

### Add New License ✕

License File  No file chosen

6. In the **Add New License** dialog box, click **Choose File** and then browse to your license file location.

7. Click **Upload**. The license is uploaded locally and appears in the table.

License type: Local license

Add | Delete All

Product Name	Active	Total number of licenses	Number used	Type	Expires on
Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition[Device]	✓	15002	0	Retail	01-DEC-2015

Showing 1 - 1 of 1 items

Expiration notification: OFF

8. When the license appears in the table on the **Licensing** page, activate it. If the license is first in the table, the license is activated automatically.

To add a remote license

If you are using the remote Citrix Licensing server, you use the Citrix Licensing server to manage *all* licensing activity. For details, see [Licensing Your Product](#).

1. On the **Licensing** page, set **Configure license** to **On**. The **License type** list, the **Add** button, and the **Licensing** table appear. The **Licensing** table contains licenses you have used with XenMobile. If you have not added a Citrix license yet, the table is empty.

3. Set **License type** to **Remote license**. The **License server** and **Port** fields and the **Test Connection** button replace the **Add** button.

License type: Remote license

License server\*:

Port\*: 27000

Test Connection

Product name	Active	Total number of licenses	Number used	Type	Expires on
		1001	0	Retail	01-DEC-2015

4. Configure these settings:

- **License server:** Type the IP address or fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of your remote licensing server.
- **Port:** Accept the default port or type the port number used to communicate with the licensing server.

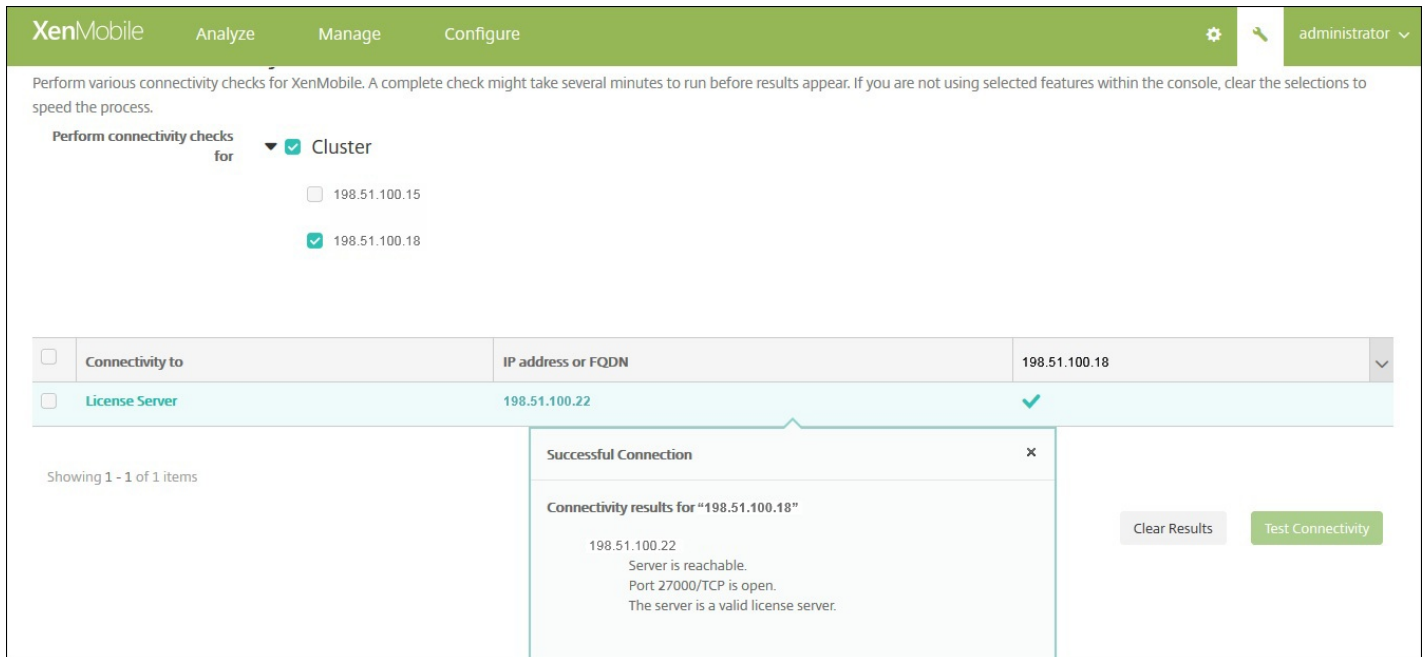
5. Click **Test Connection**. If the connection is successful, XenMobile connects with the Licensing server and the Licensing table is filled with available licenses. If there is only one license, it is activated automatically.

When you click **Text Connection**, XenMobile confirms the following:

- XenMobile can communicate with the license server.

- Licenses on the license server are valid.
- The license server is compatible with XenMobile.

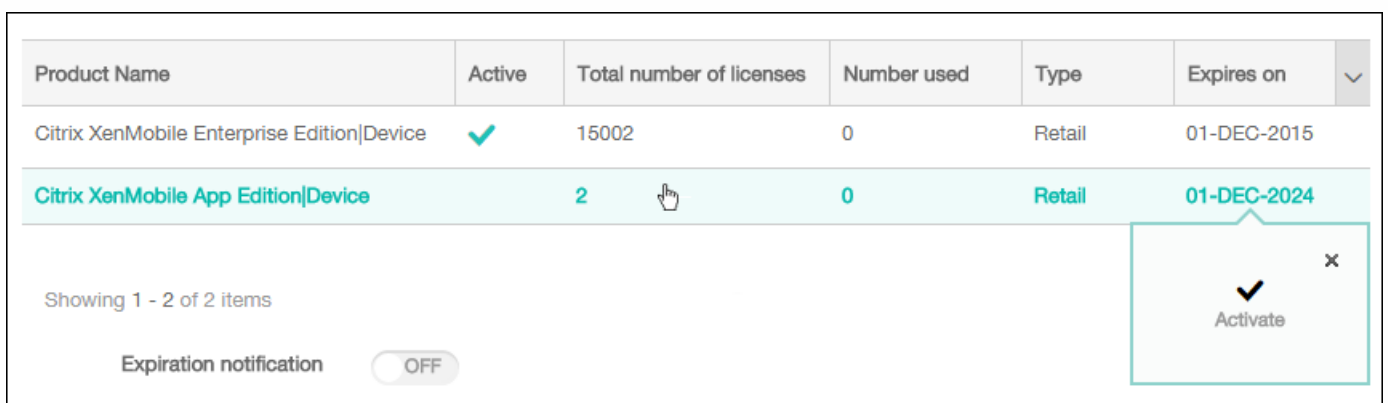
If the connection is unsuccessful, review the displayed error message, make the necessary corrections, and then click **Test Connection**.



To activate a different license

If you have multiple licenses, you can choose the license you want to activate. You can have only one license active at a time, however.

1. On the **Licensing** page, in the **Licensing table**, click the row of the license you want to activate. An **Activate** confirmation dialog appears next to the row.



2. Click **Activate**. The **Activate** dialog box appears.

3. Click **Activate**. The selected license is activated.

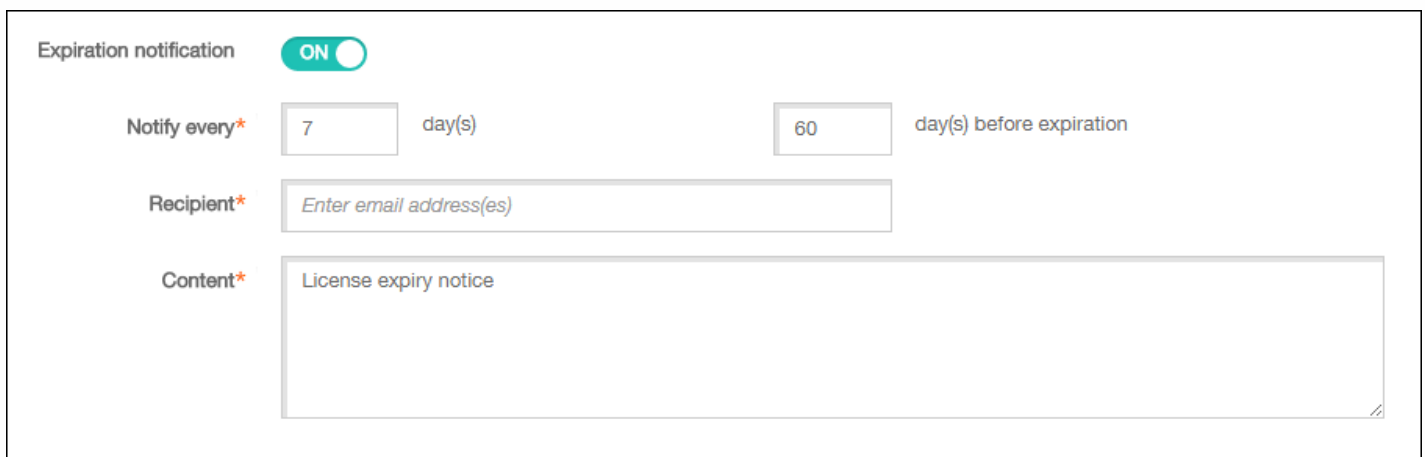
## Important

If you activate the selected license, the currently active license is deactivated.

To automate an expiration notification

After you have activated remote or local licenses, you can configure XenMobile to notify you or a designate when the license expiration date approaches.

1. On the **Licensing** page, set **Expiration notification** to **On**. New notification-related fields appear.



The screenshot shows the 'Expiration notification' configuration interface. At the top, there is a toggle switch labeled 'Expiration notification' which is currently turned 'ON'. Below this, there are three main fields:

- Notify every\***: A text input field containing the number '7', followed by the text 'day(s)'. To its right is another text input field containing the number '60', followed by the text 'day(s) before expiration'.
- Recipient\***: A text input field with the placeholder text 'Enter email address(es)'.
- Content\***: A large text area containing the text 'License expiry notice'.

2. Configure these settings:

- **Notify every:** Type:
  - The frequency with which the notifications are sent, such as every **7** days.
  - When to begin sending the notification, such as 60 days before the license expires.
- **Recipient:** Type your email address or the email address of the person responsible for the license.
- **Content:** Type an expiration notification message that the recipient sees in the notification.

3. Click **Save**. Based on your settings, XenMobile begins sending email messages containing the text you typed in **Content** to the recipient you typed in **Recipient**. The notifications are sent with the frequency you set.



# FIPS 140-2 compliance

Feb 27, 2017

The Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS), issued by the US National Institute of Standards and Technologies (NIST), specifies the security requirements for cryptographic modules used in security systems. FIPS 140-2 is the second version of this standard. For more information about NIST-validated FIPS 140 modules, see <http://csrc.nist.gov/groups/STM/cmvp/documents/140-1/140sp/140sp1747.pdf>.

Important: FIPS support is available only for on-premises installations of XenMobile Server. You can enable XenMobile FIPS mode only during initial installation.

Note: XenMobile mobile device management-only, XenMobile mobile app management-only, and XenMobile Enterprise are all FIPS compliant as long as no HDX apps are used.

All data-at-rest and data-in-transit cryptographic operations on iOS use FIPS-certified cryptographic modules provided by the OpenSSL and Apple. On Android, all data-at-rest cryptographic operations and all data-in-transit cryptographic operations from the mobile device to NetScaler Gateway use FIPS-certified cryptographic modules provided by OpenSSL.

All data-at-rest and data-in-transit cryptographic operations for Mobile Device Management (MDM) on supported Windows devices use FIPS-certified cryptographic modules provided by Microsoft.

All data-at-rest and data-in-transit cryptographic operations at XenMobile Device Manager use FIPS-certified cryptographic modules provided by OpenSSL. Combined with the cryptographic operations described above for mobile devices, and between mobile devices and NetScaler Gateway, all data-at-rest and data-in-transit for MDM flows use FIPS-compliant cryptographic modules end-to-end.

All data-in-transit cryptographic operations between iOS, Android, and Windows mobile devices and NetScaler Gateway use FIPS-certified cryptographic modules. XenMobile uses a DMZ-hosted NetScaler FIPS Edition appliance equipped with a certified FIPS module to secure these data. For more information, see the NetScaler [FIPS](#) documentation.

MDX apps are supported on Windows Phone and use cryptographic libraries and APIs that are FIPS-compliant on Windows Phone. All data-at-rest for MDX apps on Windows Phone and all data-in-transit between the Windows Phone device and NetScaler Gateway are encrypted using these libraries and APIs.

The MDX Vault encrypts MDX-wrapped apps and associated data-at-rest on both iOS and Android devices using FIPS-certified cryptographic modules provided by the OpenSSL.

For the full XenMobile FIPS 140-2 compliance statement, including the specific modules used in each case, contact your Citrix representative.

# Language support

Apr 05, 2017

XenMobile Apps and the XenMobile console are adapted for use in languages other than English. The support includes non-English characters and keyboard input even when the app is not localized in the preferred language of a user. For more information about globalization support for all Citrix products, see <http://support.citrix.com/article/CTX119253>.

This article lists the supported languages in the latest release of XenMobile.

## XenMobile console and the Self Help Portal

- French
- German
- Japanese
- Korean
- Portuguese
- Simplified Chinese

## XenMobile Apps

An X indicates that the app is available in that particular language. The Secure Forms app is currently available in English only.

**Note:** As of the release of version 10.4, Worx Mobile Apps are renamed to XenMobile Apps. Most of the individual XenMobile Apps are also renamed. For details, see [About XenMobile Apps](#).

## iOS and Android

	Secure Hub	Secure Mail	Secure Web	Secure Notes	Secure Tasks	QuickEdit
Japanese	X	X	X	X	X	X
Simplified Chinese	X	X	X	X	X	X
Traditional Chinese	X	X	X	X	X	X
French	X	X	X	X	X	X
German	X	X	X	X	X	X
Spanish	X	X	X	X	X	X
Korean	X	X	X	X	X	X

Portuguese	X	X	X	X	X	X
Dutch	X	X	X	X	X	X
Italian	X	X	X	X	X	X
Danish	X	X	X	X	X	X
Swedish	X	X	X	X	X	X
Hebrew	X	X	X	X	X	iOS only
Arabic	X	X	X	X	X	X
Russian	X	X	X	X	X	X
Turkish	X	X	Android only			

## Windows

	Secure Hub	Secure Mail	Secure Web
French	X	X	X
German	X	X	X
Spanish	X	X	X
Italian	X	X	X
Danish	X	X	X
Swedish	X	X	X

### Right-to-left language support

The following table summarizes support for text in Middle Eastern languages for each app. An X indicates that the feature is available for that platform. Right-to-left language support is not available for Windows devices.

	<b>iOS</b>	<b>Android</b>
Secure Hub	X	X
Secure Mail	X	X
Secure Web	X	X
Secure Tasks	X	X
Secure Notes	X	X
QuickEdit	X	X

# Install and configure

Feb 27, 2017

## Before you start:

You can use the following preinstallation checklist to note the prerequisites and settings for installing XenMobile. Each task or note includes a column indicating the component or function for which the requirement applies.


Planning a XenMobile deployment involves many considerations. For recommendations, common questions, and use cases for your end-to-end XenMobile environment, see the [XenMobile Deployment Handbook](#).

For installation steps, see the [Installing XenMobile](#) section later in this article.

## Preinstallation checklist

### Basic Network Connectivity

The following are the network settings you need for the XenMobile solution.

 Prerequisite or setting	Component or function	Note the setting
Note the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) to which remote users connect.	XenMobile NetScaler Gateway	
Note the public and local IP address. You need these IP addresses to configure the firewall to set up network address translation (NAT).	XenMobile NetScaler Gateway	
Note the subnet mask.	XenMobile NetScaler Gateway	
Note the DNS IP addresses.	XenMobile NetScaler Gateway	
Write down the WINS server IP addresses (if applicable).	NetScaler Gateway	

<p>Identify and write down the NetScaler Gateway host name.</p> <p>Note: This is not the FQDN. The FQDN is contained in the signed server certificate that is bound to the virtual server and to which users connect. You can configure the host name by using the Setup Wizard in NetScaler Gateway.</p>	<p>NetScaler Gateway</p>	
<p>Note the IP address of XenMobile.</p> <p>Reserve one IP address if you install one instance of XenMobile.</p> <p>If you configure a cluster, note all of the IP addresses you need.</p>	<p>XenMobile</p>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One public IP address configured on NetScaler Gateway</li> <li>• One external DNS entry for NetScaler Gateway</li> </ul>	<p>NetScaler Gateway</p>	
<p>Note the web proxy server IP address, port, proxy host list, and the administrator user name and password. These settings are optional if you deploy a proxy server in your network (if applicable).</p> <p>Note: You can use either the sAMAccountName or the User Principal Name (UPN) when configuring the user name for the web proxy.</p>	<p>XenMobile</p> <p>NetScaler Gateway</p>	
<p>Note the default gateway IP address.</p>	<p>XenMobile</p> <p>NetScaler Gateway</p>	
<p>Note the system IP (NSIP) address and subnet mask.</p>	<p>NetScaler Gateway</p>	
<p>Note the subnet IP (SNIP) address and subnet mask.</p>	<p>NetScaler Gateway</p>	
<p>Note the NetScaler Gateway virtual server IP address and FQDN from the certificate.</p> <p>If you need to configure multiple virtual servers, note all of the virtual IP addresses and FQDNs from the certificates.</p>	<p>NetScaler Gateway</p>	
<p>Note the internal networks that users can access through NetScaler Gateway.</p> <p>Example: 10.10.0.0/24</p> <p>Enter all internal networks and network segments that users need access to when they connect with Secure Hub or the NetScaler Gateway Plug-in when split tunneling is set to On.</p>	<p>NetScaler Gateway</p>	

Make sure that the network connectivity between the XenMobile server, NetScaler Gateway, the external Microsoft SQL Server, and the DNS server are reachable.	XenMobile NetScaler Gateway	
---	-----------------------------------	--

## Licensing

XenMobile requires you to purchase licensing options for NetScaler Gateway and XenMobile. For more information about Citrix Licensing, see [The Citrix Licensing System](#).

•	Prerequisite	Component	Note the location
	Obtain Universal licenses from the <a href="#">Citrix web site</a> . For details, see <a href="#">Licensing</a> in the NetScaler Gateway documentation.	NetScaler Gateway  XenMobile  Citrix License Server	

## Certificates

XenMobile and NetScaler Gateway require certificates to enable connections with other Citrix products and app and from user devices. For details, see the [Certificates and Authentication](#) section in the XenMobile documentation.

✓	Prerequisite	Component	Notes
	Obtain and install required certificates.	XenMobile  NetScaler Gateway	

## Ports

You need to open ports to allow communication with the XenMobile components.

✓	Prerequisite	Component	Notes
	Open ports for XenMobile	XenMobile  NetScaler Gateway	

## Database

You need to configure a database connection. The XenMobile repository requires a Microsoft SQL Server database running on one of the following supported versions: Microsoft SQL Server 2014, SQL Server 2012, SQL Server 2008 R2, or SQL Server 2008. Citrix recommends using Microsoft SQL remotely. PostgreSQL is included with XenMobile and should be used locally

or remotely only in test environments.

✔	Prerequisite	Component	Note the setting
	<p>Microsoft SQL Server IP address and port.</p> <p>Make sure the service account of the SQL Server to be used on XenMobile has the DBcreator role permission.</p>	XenMobile	

### Active Directory Settings

✔	Prerequisite	Component	Note the setting
	<p>Note the Active Directory IP address and port for the primary and secondary servers.</p> <p>If you use port 636, install a root certificate from a CA on XenMobile, and change the Use secure connections option to Yes.</p>	<p>XenMobile</p> <p>NetScaler Gateway</p>	
	<p>Note the Active Directory domain name.</p>	<p>XenMobile</p> <p>NetScaler Gateway</p>	
	<p>Note the Active Directory service account, which requires a user ID, password, and domain alias.</p> <p>The Active Directory service account is the account that XenMobile uses to query Active Directory.</p>	<p>XenMobile</p> <p>NetScaler Gateway</p>	
	<p>Note the User Base DN.</p> <p>This is the directory level under which users are located; for example, cn=users,dc=ace,dc=com. NetScaler Gateway and XenMobile use this to query Active Directory.</p>	<p>XenMobile</p> <p>NetScaler Gateway</p>	
	<p>Note the Group Base DN.</p> <p>This is the directory level under which groups are located.</p> <p>NetScaler Gateway and XenMobile use this to query Active Directory.</p>	<p>XenMobile</p> <p>NetScaler Gateway</p>	

### Connections between XenMobile and NetScaler Gateway

✔	Prerequisite	Component	Note the setting
---	--------------	-----------	------------------



	Note the XenMobile host name.	XenMobile	
	Note the FQDN or IP address of XenMobile.	XenMobile	
	Identify the apps users can access.	NetScaler Gateway	
	Note the Callback URL.	XenMobile	

### User Connections: Access to XenDesktop, XenApp, and Citrix Secure Hub

Citrix recommends that you use the Quick Configuration wizard in NetScaler to configure connection settings between XenMobile and NetScaler Gateway and between XenMobile and Secure Hub. You create a second virtual server to enable user connections from Citrix Receiver and web browsers to connect to Windows-based applications and virtual desktops in XenApp and XenDesktop. Citrix recommends that you use the Quick Configuration wizard in NetScaler to configure these settings as well.

	Prerequisite	Component	Note the setting
•	Note the NetScaler Gateway host name and external URL. The external URL is the web address with which users connect.	XenMobile	
	Note the NetScaler Gateway callback URL.	XenMobile	
	Note the IP addresses and subnets masks for the virtual server.	NetScaler Gateway	
	Note the path for Program Neighborhood Agent or a XenApp Services site.	NetScaler Gateway XenMobile	
	Note the FQDN or IP address of the XenApp or XenDesktop server running the Secure Ticket Authority (STA) (for ICA connections only).	NetScaler Gateway	
	Note the public FQDN for XenMobile.	NetScaler Gateway	
	Note the public FQDN for Secure Hub.	NetScaler Gateway	

# Install XenMobile

The XenMobile virtual machine (VM) runs on Citrix XenServer, VMware ESXi, or Microsoft Hyper-V. You can use XenCenter or vSphere management consoles to install XenMobile.

## Note

Ensure that the hypervisor is configured with the correct time – either using an NTP server or a manual configuration - because XenMobile uses that time.

**XenServer or VMware ESXi prerequisites:** Before installing XenMobile on XenServer or VMware ESXi, you must do the following. For details, refer to your [XenServer](#) or [VMware](#) documentation.

- Install XenServer or VMware ESXi on a computer with adequate hardware resources.
- Install XenCenter or vSphere on a separate computer. The computer that hosts XenCenter or vSphere connects to the XenServer or VMware ESXi host through the network.

**Hyper-V prerequisites:** Before installing XenMobile on Hyper-V, you must do the following. For details, refer to your [Hyper-V](#) documentation.

- Install Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, or Windows Server 2012 R2 with Hyper-V enabled, role enabled, on a computer with adequate system resources. While installing the Hyper-V role, be sure to specify the network interface cards (NICs) on the server that Hyper-V will use to create the virtual networks. You can reserve some NICs for the host.
- Delete the file Virtual Machines/<build-specific UUID>.xml
- Move the file Legacy/<build-specific UUID>.exp into Virtual Machines

If you install Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows Server 2012, do the following:

These steps are necessary because there are two different versions of the Hyper-V manifest file representing the VM configuration (.exp and .xml). The Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows Server 2012 releases support only .exp. For these releases, you must have only the .exp manifest file in place before installation.

Windows Server 2012 R2 does not require these extra steps.

**FIPS 140-2 mode:** If you plan to install XenMobile server in FIPS mode, you need to complete a set of prerequisites, as discussed in [Configuring FIPs](#).

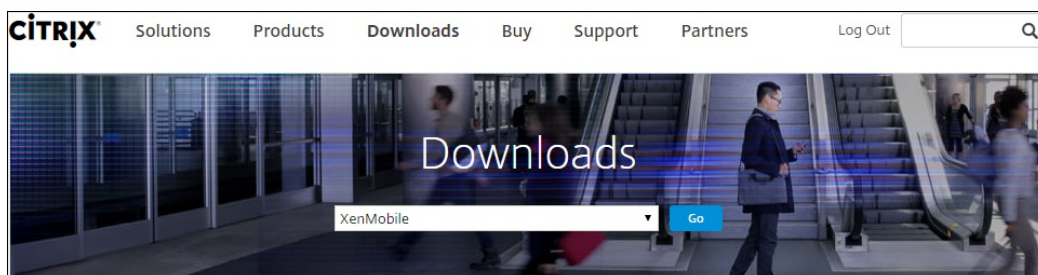
## Download XenMobile product software

You can download product software from the [Citrix web site](#). You need to log on to the site first and then use the Downloads link on the Citrix web page to navigate to the page containing the software you want to download.

## To download the software for XenMobile

1. Go to the [Citrix web site](#).
2. Next to the Search box, click Log On and log on to your account.
3. Click the Downloads tab.

4. On the Downloads page, from the select product list, click XenMobile.



5. Click Go. The XenMobile page appears.
6. Expand XenMobile 10.
7. Click XenMobile 10.0 Server.
8. On the XenMobile 10.0 Server edition page, click Download next to the appropriate virtual image to use to install XenMobile on XenServer, VMware, or Hyper-V.
9. Follow the instructions on your screen to download the software.

## To download the software for NetScaler Gateway

You can use this procedure to download the NetScaler Gateway virtual appliance or software upgrades to your existing NetScaler Gateway appliance.

1. Go to the [Citrix web site](#).
2. If you are not already logged on to the Citrix web site, next to the Search box, click Log On and log on to your account.
3. Click the Downloads tab.
4. On the Downloads page, from the select product list, click NetScaler Gateway.
5. Click Go. The NetScaler Gateway page appears.
6. On the NetScaler Gateway page, expand the version of NetScaler Gateway you are running.
7. Under Firmware, click the appliance software version you want to download.  
Note: You can also click Virtual Appliances to download NetScaler VPX. When you select this option, you receive a list of software for the virtual machine for each hypervisor.
8. Click the appliance software version you want to download.
9. On the appliance software page for the version you want to download, click Download for the appropriate virtual appliance.
10. Follow the instructions on your screen to download the software.

### Configure XenMobile for First-Time Use

1. Configure the IP address and subnet mask, default gateway, DNS servers, and so on for XenMobile by using the XenCenter or vSphere command-line console.

#### Note

When you use a vSphere web client, it is recommended that you do not configure networking properties during the time you deploy the OVF template on the **Customize template** page. By doing so, in a high availability configuration, you avoid an issue with the IP address that occurs when you clone and then restart the second XenMobile virtual machine.

2. Access the XenMobile management console only through the XenMobile Server fully qualified domain name or the IP addresses of the node.
3. Log on and then follow the steps in the initial logon screens.

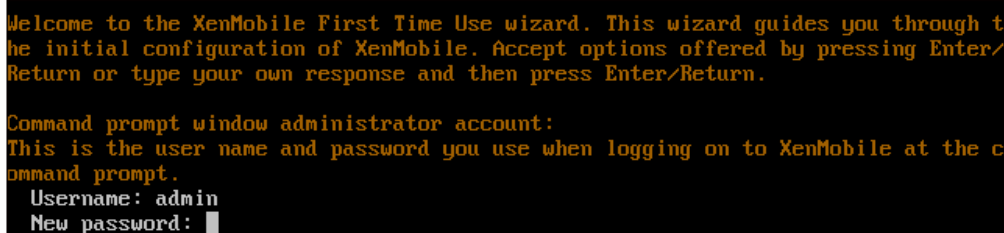
## Configure XenMobile in the Command Prompt Window

1. Import the XenMobile virtual machine into Citrix XenServer, Microsoft Hyper-V, or VMware ESXi. For details, see [XenServer](#), [Hyper-V](#), or [VMware](#) documentation.
2. In your hypervisor, select the imported XenMobile virtual machine and start the command prompt view. For details, see the documentation for your hypervisor.
3. From the hypervisor's console page, create an administrator account for XenMobile in the command prompt window by typing the administrator user name and password.

Important:

When you create or changed passwords for the command prompt administrator account, Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) server certificates, and FIPS, XenMobile enforces the following rules for all users except Active Directory users whose passwords are managed outside of XenMobile:

- The password must be at least 8 characters long and must meet at least three of the following complexity criteria:
  - Uppercase letters (A through Z)
  - Lowercase letters (a through z)
  - Numerals (0 through 9)
  - Special characters (such as, !, #, \$, %)



```
Welcome to the XenMobile First Time Use wizard. This wizard guides you through the initial configuration of XenMobile. Accept options offered by pressing Enter/Return or type your own response and then press Enter/Return.

Command prompt window administrator account:
This is the user name and password you use when logging on to XenMobile at the command prompt.
Username: admin
New password: █
```

Note: No characters, such as asterisks, are shown when you type the new password. Nothing appears.

4. Provide the following network information and then, type y to commit the settings:
  1. IP address of the XenMobile server
  2. Netmask
  3. Default gateway, which is the IP address of the default gateway in the DMZ
  4. Primary DNS server, which is the IP address of the DNS server
  5. Secondary DNS server (optional)



```
Network settings:
IP address: 192.0.2.0
Netmask: 225.225.225.128
Default gateway: 203.0.113.3
Primary DNS server: 192.0.2.4
Secondary DNS server [optional]: 192.0.2.5

Commit settings [y/n]: y█
```

Note: The addresses shown in this and following images are non-working and are provided as examples only.

5. Type `y` to increase security by generating a random encryption passphrase or `n` to provide your own passphrase. Citrix recommends typing `y` to generate a random passphrase. The passphrase is used as part of the protection of the encryption keys used to secure your sensitive data. A hash of the passphrase, stored in the server file system, is used to retrieve the keys during the encryption and decryption of data. The passphrase cannot be viewed.

**Note:** If you intend to extend your environment and configure additional servers, you should provide your own passphrase. There is no way to view the passphrase if you selected a random passphrase.

```
Encryption passphrase:  
Generate a random passphrase to secure the server data? [y/n]: y
```

6. Optionally, enable Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS). For details about FIPS, see [FIPS](#). Also, be sure to complete a set of prerequisites, as discussed in [Configuring FIPS](#).

```
Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) mode:  
Enable (y/n) [n]:
```

7. Provide the following information to configure the database connection.

```
Database connection:  
Local or remote [l/r]: r  
Type (Microsoft SQL, PostgreSQL or MySQL) [mi/p/my]: mi  
Use SSL [y/n]: n  
Server: 198.0.2.10  
Port: 5432  
Username: postgres  
Password:
```

1. Your database can be local or remote. Type `l` for local or `r` for remote.
2. Select the database type. Type `mi` for Microsoft SQL or type `p` for PostgreSQL.  
Important:
  - Citrix recommends using Microsoft SQL remotely. PostgreSQL is included with XenMobile and should be used locally or remotely only in test environments.
  - Database migration is not supported. Databases created in a test environment cannot be moved to a production environment.
3. Optionally, type `y` to use SSL authentication for your database.
4. Provide the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) for the server hosting XenMobile. This one host server provides both device management and app management services.
5. Type your database port number if it is different from the default port number. The default port for Microsoft SQL is 1433 and the default port for PostgreSQL is 5432.
6. Type your database administrator user name.
7. Type your database administrator password.
8. Type the database name.
9. Press **Enter** to commit the database settings.
8. Optionally, type `y` to enable clustering XenMobile nodes, or instances.  
Important: If you enable a XenMobile cluster, after system configuration is complete, be sure to open port 80 to enable real time communication between cluster members. This must be completed on all cluster nodes.
9. Type the XenMobile server fully qualified domain name (FQDN).

```
XenMobile hostname:  
Hostname: justan.example.com
```

10. Press **Enter** to commit the settings.
11. Identify the communication ports. For details on ports and their uses, see [Port Requirements](#).  
**Note:** Accept the default ports by pressing **Enter** (Return on a Mac).

```
HTTP [80]: 80  
HTTPS with certificate authentication [443]: 443  
HTTPS with no certificate authentication [8443]: 8443  
HTTPS for management [4443]: 4443
```

12. Skip the next question about upgrading from a previous XenMobile release because you are installing XenMobile for the first time.
13. Type y if you want to use the same password for each Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) certificate. For details on the XenMobile PKI feature, see [Uploading Certificates](#).

```
The wizard will now generate an internal Public Key Infrastructure (PKI):  
- A root certificate  
- An intermediate certificate to issue device certificates during enrollment  
- An intermediate certificate to issue an SSL certificate  
- An SSL certificate for your connectors  
Do you want to use the same password for all the certificates of the PKI [y]:  
New password:  
Re-enter new password:
```

Important: If you intend to cluster nodes, or instances, of XenMobile together, you must provide the identical passwords for subsequent nodes.

14. Type the new password and then, re-enter the new password to confirm it.  
Note: No characters, such as asterisks, are shown when you type the new password. Nothing appears.
15. Press **Enter** to commit the settings.
16. Create an administrator account for logging on to the XenMobile console with a web browser. Be sure to remember these credentials for later use.

```
XenMobile console administrator account:  
This is the user name and password you use when logging on to the XenMobile console through a web browser.  
Username [administrator]: administrator  
Password:  
Re-enter new password:
```

Note: No characters, such as asterisks, are shown when you type the new password. Nothing appears.

17. Press **Enter** to commit the settings. The initial system configuration is saved.
18. When asked if this is an upgrade, type n because it is a new installation.
19. Copy the complete URL that appears on the screen and continue this initial XenMobile configuration in your web browser.

```
Writing iptables configuration...
Restarting iptables...

Initial system configuration complete!

Upgrade:
Upgrade from previous release (y/n) [n]:

Stopping configuration app... [ OK ]
Starting configuration app...
  application started successfully [ OK ]
Stopping main app... [ OK ]
Starting main app...
  this may take a few minutes.....
.....
  application started successfully [ OK ]

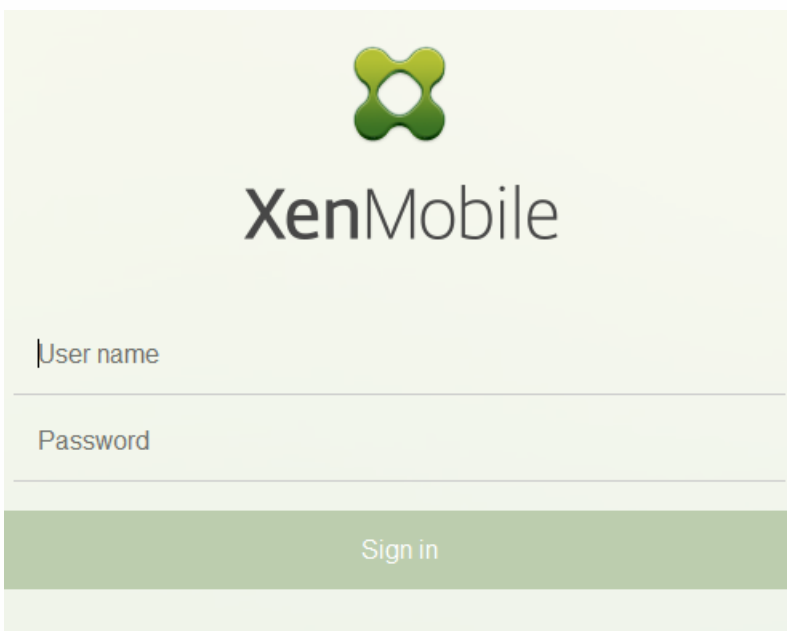
To access the console, from a web browser, go to the following location and
log on with your console credentials:
https://203.0.113.8:4443/

Starting monitoring... [ OK ]
```

### Configure XenMobile in a web browser

After completing the initial portion of the XenMobile configuration in your hypervisor command prompt window, complete the process in your web browser.

1. In your web browser, navigate to the location provided at the conclusion of the command prompt window configuration.
2. Type the XenMobile console administrator account user name and password you created in the command prompt window.



3. On the Get Started page, click Start. The Licensing page appears.
4. Configure the license. If you don't upload a license, you use an evaluation license valid for 30 days. For details on adding and configuring licenses and configuring expiration notifications, see [Licensing](#).

Important: If you intend to use XenMobile clustering by adding cluster nodes, or instances, of XenMobile, you need to use the Citrix Licensing on a remote server.

5. On the Certificate page, click Import. The Import dialog box appears.

6. Import your APNs and SSL Listener certificate. If you manage iOS devices, you need an APNs certificate. For details on working with certificates, see [Certificates](#).

Note: This step requires restarting the server.

7. If appropriate to the environment, configure NetScaler Gateway. For details on configuring NetScaler Gateway, see [NetScaler Gateway and XenMobile](#) and [Configuring Settings for Your XenMobile Environment](#).

Note:

- You can deploy NetScaler Gateway at the perimeter of your organization's internal network (or intranet) to provide a secure single point of access to the servers, applications, and other network resources that reside in the internal network. In this deployment, all remote users must connect to NetScaler Gateway before they can access any resources in the internal network.
- Although NetScaler Gateway is an optional setting, after you enter data on the page, you must clear or complete the required fields before you can leave the page.

8. Complete the LDAP configuration to access users and groups from Active Directory. For details on configuring the LDAP connection, see [LDAP Configuration](#).

9. Configure the notification server to be able to send messages to users. For details on notification server configuration, see [Notifications](#).

**Post-requisite:** Restart the XenMobile server to activate your certificates.



# Configure FIPS with XenMobile

Feb 27, 2017

Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) mode in XenMobile supports U.S. federal government customers by configuring the server to use only FIPS 140-2 certified libraries for all encryption operations. Installing your XenMobile server with FIPS mode ensures that all data at rest and data in transit for both the XenMobile client and server are fully compliant with FIPS 140-2.

Before installing a XenMobile Server in FIPS mode, you need to complete the following prerequisites.

- You must use an external SQL Server 2012 or SQL Server 2014 for the XenMobile database. The SQL Server also must be configured for secure SSL communication. For instructions on configuring secure SSL communication to SQL Server, see the [SQL Server Books Online](#).
- Secure SSL communication requires that an SSL certificate be installed on your SQL Server. The SSL certificate can either be a public certificate from a commercial CA or a self-signed certificate from an internal CA. Note that SQL Server 2014 cannot accept a wildcard certificate. Citrix recommends, therefore, that you request an SSL certificate with the FQDN of the SQL Server.
- If you use a self-signed certificate for SQL Server, you will need a copy of the root CA certificate that issued your self-signed certificate. The root CA certificate must be imported to the XenMobile server during installation.

## Configuring FIPS mode

You can enable FIPS mode only during the initial setup of XenMobile server. It is not possible to enable FIPS after installation is complete. Therefore, if you plan on using FIPS mode, you must install the XenMobile server with FIPS mode from the start. In addition, if you have a XenMobile cluster, all cluster nodes must have FIPS enabled; you cannot have a mix of FIPS and non-FIPS XenMobile servers in the same cluster.

There is a **Toggle FIPS mode** option in the XenMobile command-line interface that is not for production use. This option is intended for non-production, diagnostic use and is not supported on a production XenMobile server.

1. During initial setup, enable **FIPS mode**.
2. Upload the root CA certificate for your SQL Server. If you used a self-signed SSL certificate rather than a public certificate on your SQL Server, choose **Yes** for this option and then do one of the following:
  - a. Copy and paste the CA certificate.
  - b. Import the CA certificate. To import the CA certificate, you must post the certificate to a website that is accessible from the XenMobile server via an HTTP URL. For details, see [Uploading the certificate to XenMobile](#).
3. Specify the server name and port of your SQL Server, the credentials for logging into SQL Server, and the database name to create for XenMobile.

**Note:** You can use either a SQL logon or an Active Directory account to access SQL Server, but the logon you use must have the DBcreator role.
4. To use an Active Directory account, enter the credentials in the format domain\username.
5. Once these steps are complete, proceed with the XenMobile initial setup.

To confirm that the configuration of FIPS mode is successful, log on to the XenMobile command-line interface. The phrase **In FIPS Compliant Mode** appears in the logon banner.

## Importing Certificates

The following procedure describes how to configure FIPS on XenMobile by importing the certificate, which is required when you use a VMware hypervisor.

## SQL Prerequisites

1. The connection to the SQL instance from XenMobile needs to be secure and must be SQL Server version 2012 or SQL Server 2014. To secure the connection, see [How to enable SSL encryption for an instance of SQL Server by using Microsoft Management Console](#).
2. If the service does not restart properly, check the following:Open **Services.msc**.
  - a. Copy the logon account information used for the SQL Server service.
  - b. Open MMC.exe on the SQL Server.
  - c. Go to **File > Add/Remove Snap-in** and then double-click the certificates item to add the certificates snap-in. Select the computer account and local computer in the two pages on the wizard.
  - d. Click **OK**.
  - e. Expand **Certificates (Local Computer) > Personal > Certificates** and find the imported SSL certificate.
  - f. Right-click the imported certificate (selected in the SQL Server Configuration Manager) and then click **All Tasks > Manage Private Keys**.
  - g. Under **Group or User names**, click **Add**.
  - h. Enter the SQL service account name you copied in the earlier step.
  - i. Clear the **Allow Full Control** option. By default the service account will be given both Full control and Read permissions, but it only needs to be able to read the private key.
  - j. Close **MMC** and start the SQL service.
3. Ensure the SQL service is started correctly.

## Internet Information Services (IIS) Prerequisites

1. Download the rootcert (base 64).
2. Copy the rootcert to the default site on the IIS server, C:\inetpub\wwwroot.
3. Check the **Authentication** check box for the default site.
4. Set **Anonymous** to **enabled**.
5. Select the **Failed Request Tracking** rules check box.
6. Ensure that .cer is not blocked.

7. Browse to the location of the .cer in an Internet Explorer browser from the local server, <http://localhost/certname.cer>. The root cert text should appear in the browser.

8. If the root cert does not appear in the Internet Explorer browser, make sure that ASP is enabled on the IIS server as follows.

- a. Open Server Manager.
- b. Navigate to the wizard in **Manage > Add Roles and Features**.
- c. In the server roles, expand **Web Server (IIS)**, expand **Web Server**, expand **Application Development** and then select **ASP**.
- d. Click **Next** until the install completes.

9. Open Internet Explorer and browse to <http://localhost/cert.cer>.

For more information, see [Web Server \(IIS\)](#).

## Note

You can use the use the IIS instance of the CA for this procedure.

## Importing the Root Certificate During Initial FIPS Configuration

When you complete the steps to configure XenMobile for the first time in the command-line console, you must complete these settings to import the root certificate. For details on the installation steps, see [Installing XenMobile](#).

- Enable FIPS: Yes
- Upload Root Certificate: Yes
- Copy(c) or Import(i): i
- Enter HTTP URL to import: <http://FQDN of IIS server/cert.cer>
- Server: *FQDN of SQL Server*
- Port: 1433
- User name: Service account which has the ability to create the database (domain\username).
- Password: The password for the service account.
- Database Name: This is a name you choose.

# Configure clustering

Feb 27, 2017

In XenMobile versions earlier than version 10, you configured Device Manager as a cluster and App Controller as a high availability pair. XenMobile 10 integrated XenMobile 9 Device Manager and App Controller. As of version 10, high availability is no longer applicable to XenMobile. To configure clustering, therefore, you need to configure the following two load balancing virtual IP addresses on NetScaler:

- **Mobile device management (MDM) load balancing virtual IP address:** An MDM load balancing virtual IP address is required to communicate with the XenMobile nodes that are configured in a cluster. This load balancing is done in SSL Bridge mode.
- **Mobile app management (MAM) load balancing virtual IP address:** MAM load balancing virtual IP addresses are required for NetScaler Gateway to communicate with XenMobile nodes that are configured in a cluster. In XenMobile 10, by default, all traffic from NetScaler Gateway routes to the load balancing virtual IP address on port 8443.

The procedures in this article explain the method of creating a new XenMobile virtual machine (VM) and joining the new VM to an existing VM, thereby creating a cluster setup.

## Prerequisites

- You have fully configured the required XenMobile node.
- One public IP address for MDM load balancer and one private IP address for MAM.
- Server certificates.
- One free IP for NetScaler Gateway virtual IP address.

For reference architectural diagrams for XenMobile 10.x in clustered configurations, see [Architecture](#).

## Installing the XenMobile Cluster Nodes

Based on the number of nodes you require, you create new XenMobile VMs. You point the new VMs to the same database and provide the same PKI certificate passwords.

1. Open the command-line console of the new VM and enter the new password for the administrator account.

```
*****
*           Citrix XenMobile           *
*   (in First Time Use mode)         *
*****

Welcome to the XenMobile First Time Use wizard. This wizard guides you through t
he initial configuration of XenMobile. Accept options offered by pressing Enter/
Return or type your own response and then press Enter/Return.

Command prompt window administrator account:
This is the user name and password you use when logging on to XenMobile at the c
ommand prompt.
Username: admin
New password:
Re-enter new password: _
```

2. Provide the network configuration details as shown in the following figure.

```

Network settings:
IP address []: 10.147.75.51
Netmask []: 255.255.255.0
Default gateway []: 10.147.75.1
Primary DNS server []: 10.147.75.240
Secondary DNS server (optional) []:

Commit settings (y/n) [y]:
Applying network settings...
eth0: intr type 3, mode 0, 3 vectors allocated
eth0: NIC Link is Up 10000 Mbps

```

3. If you want to use the default password for data protection, type y; or, type n and enter a new password.

```

Encryption passphrase:
Generate a random passphrase to secure the server data (y/n) [y]:

```

4. If you want to use FIPS, type y; or, type n.

```

Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) mode:
Enable (y/n) [n]:

```

5. Configure the database so that you point to same database that the earlier fully configured VM pointed to. You will see the message: Database already exists.

```

Database connection:
Local or remote (l/r) [r]:
Type (mi=Microsoft SQL, p=PostgreSQL) [mi]:
Use SSL (y/n) [n]:

Server []: sql2012.wg.lab
Port [1433]:
Username [sa]:
Password:
Database name [DB_service1]: DB_51

Commit settings (y/n) [y]:

Checking database status...
Database already exists.
to enable realtime communication between cluster members please open port 88 us
ing Firewall menu option in CLI menu once the system configuration is complete

Saving server and client certificate passwords..

```

6. Enter the same passwords for the certificates that you provided for the first VM.

```
Database connection:
Local or remote (l/r) [r]:
Type (mi=Microsoft SQL, p=PostgreSQL) [mi]:
Use SSL (y/n) [n]:

Server [l]: sql2012.wg.lab
Port [1433]:
Username [sa]:
Password:
Database name [DB_service]: DB_51

Commit settings (y/n) [y]:

Checking database status...
Database already exists.
To enable realtime communication between cluster members please open port 80 using Firewall menu option in CLI menu once the system configuration is complete

Saving server and client certificate passwords..

WARNING: Please enter the same passwords used to generate internal Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) in first node
Do you want to use the same password for all the certificates of the PKI [y]:
```

After you have entered the password, the initial configuration on second node will complete.

```
Saving server and client certificate passwords..

WARNING: Please enter the same passwords used to generate internal Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) in first node
Do you want to use the same password for all the certificates of the PKI [y]:
y
New password:
Re-enter new password:
Saving server and client certs password...

Applying port listener configuration...
Applying firewall settings ...
Writing iptables configuration...
Restarting iptables...

Initial system configuration complete!
Stopping configuration app... [ OK ]
Starting configuration app...
this may take a few seconds..... [ OK ]
application started [ OK ]
Stopping main app... [ OK ]
Starting main app...
this may take a few minutes....._
```

7. When the configuration is complete, the server restarts and the logon dialog box appears.

```

Applying port listener configuration...
Applying firewall settings ...
Writing iptables configuration...
Restarting iptables...

Initial system configuration complete!
Stopping configuration app... [ OK ]
Starting configuration app...
  this may take a few seconds.....
  application started [ OK ]
Stopping main app... [ OK ]
Starting main app...
  this may take a few minutes.....^ [ .....
.....
  application started [ OK ]

To access the console, from a web browser, go to the following location and
log on with your console credentials:
https://10.147.75.59:4443/

Starting monitoring... [ OK ]
xms51.wg.lab login:

```

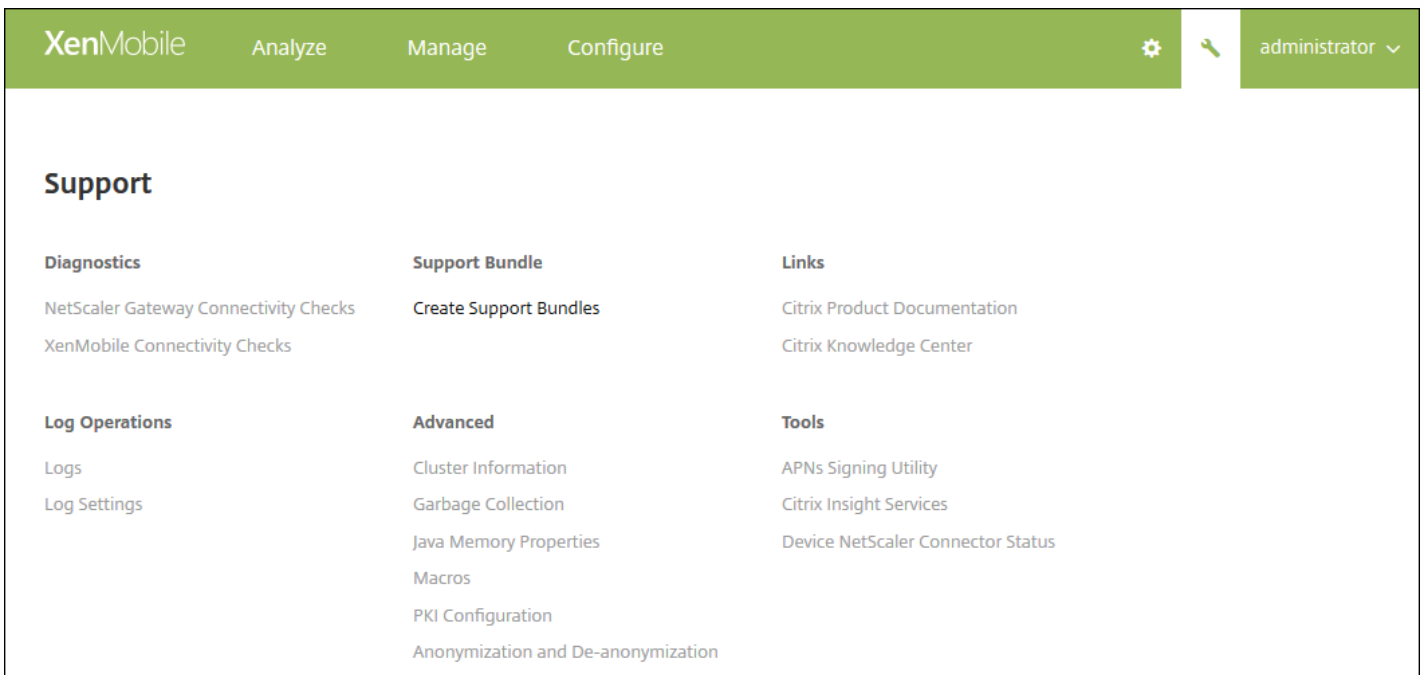
Note: The logon dialog box is identical to the logon dialog box of the first VM. The match is a way for you to confirm that both VMs are using the same database server.

8. Use the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of XenMobile to open the XenMobile console in a web browser.
9. In the XenMobile console, click the wrench icon in the upper-right corner of the console.

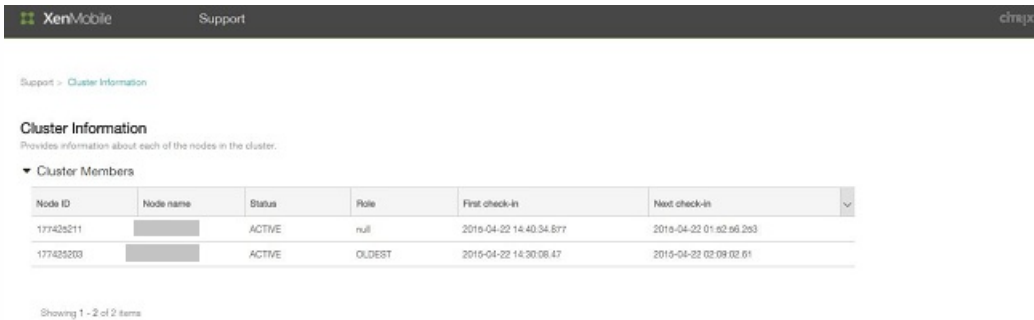


The **Support** page opens.

10. Under **Advanced**, click **Cluster Information**.



All of the information about the cluster, including cluster member, device connection information, tasks, and so on, appear. The new node is now a member of the cluster.



You can add other nodes by following the same steps. The first cluster added to the node has a Role of **OLDEST**. Clusters added after that will show a Role of **NONE** or **null**.

To configure load balancing for the XenMobile cluster in NetScaler

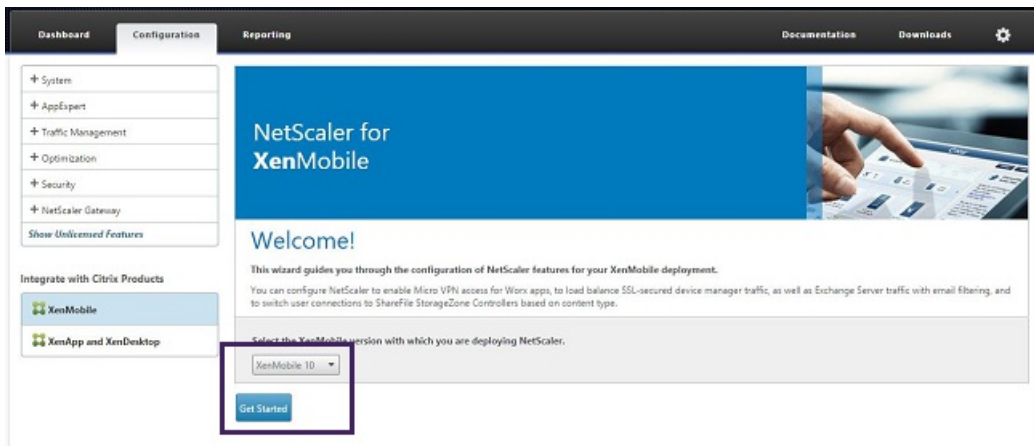
After you add the required nodes as members of the XenMobile cluster, you need to load balance the nodes to be able to access the clusters. Load balancing is done by running XenMobile Wizard available in NetScaler 10.5.x. You can following the steps in this procedure to load balance XenMobile by running the wizard.

1. Log on to NetScaler.

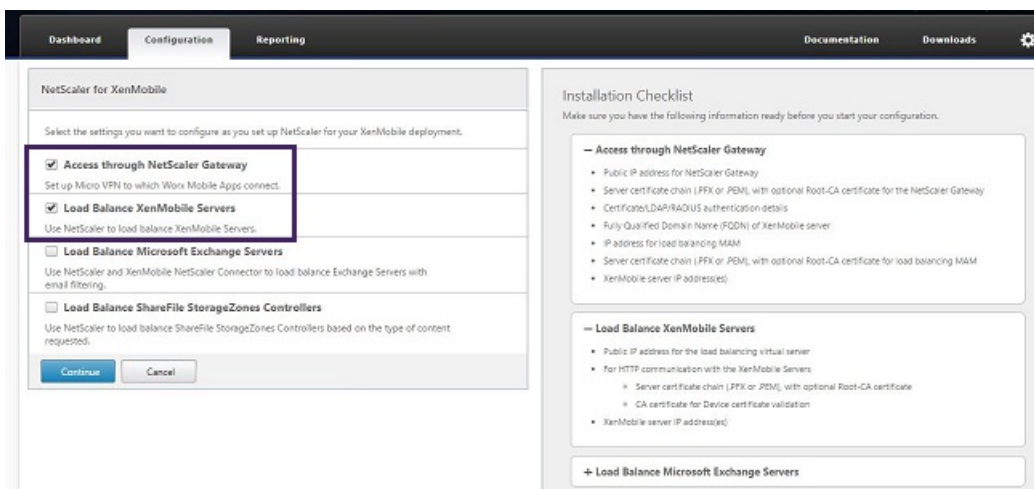


2. On the Configuration tab, click XenMobile and then click Get Started.

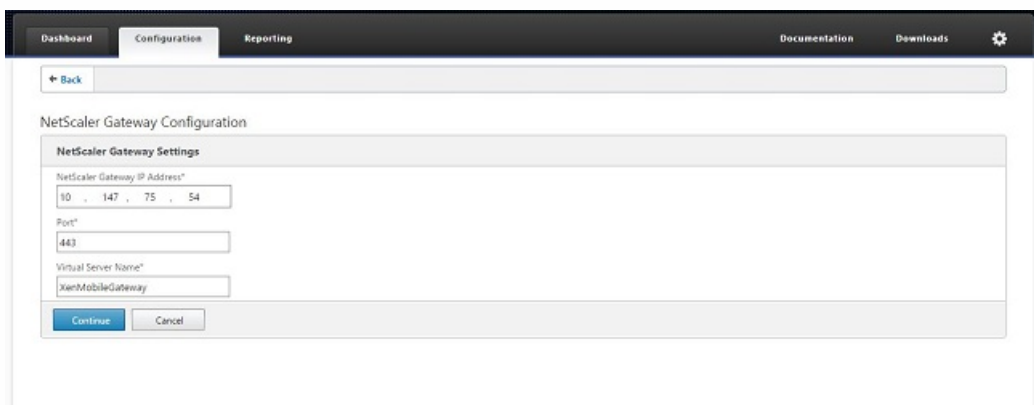




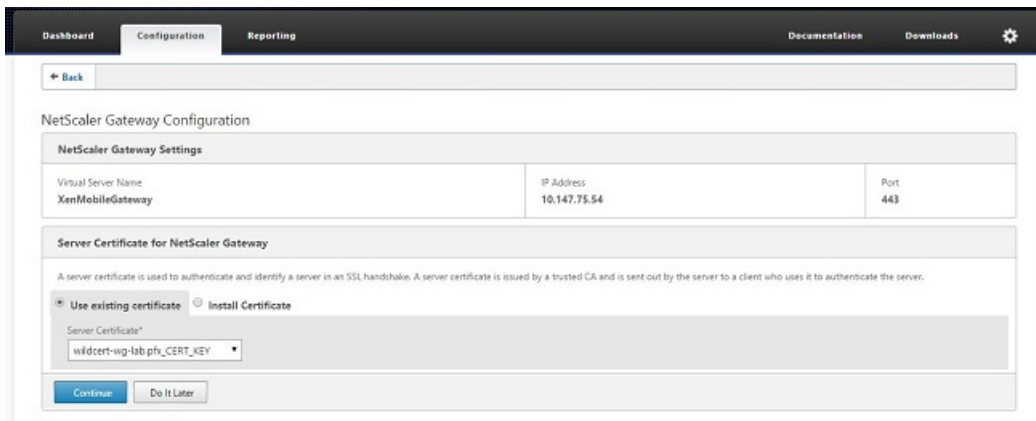
3. Select the Access through NetScaler Gateway check box and the Load Balance XenMobile Servers check box and then click Continue.



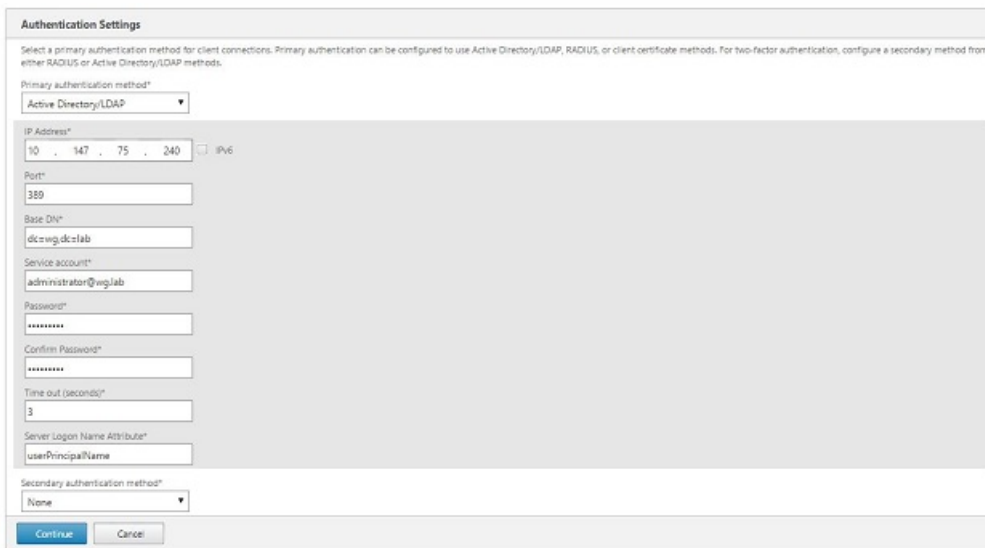
4. Enter the IP address for NetScaler Gateway and then click Continue.



5. Bind the server certificate to the NetScaler Gateway virtual IP address by doing one of the following and then click Continue.
  - In Use existing certificate, choose the server certificate from the list.
  - Click the Install Certificate tab to upload a new server certificate.



6. Enter the Authentication server details and then click Continue.



Note: Make sure the Server Logon Name Attribute is same as you provided in the XenMobile LDAP configuration.

7. Under XenMobile settings, enter the Load Balancing FQDN for MAM and then click Continue.



Note: Make sure the FQDN of the MAM load balancing virtual IP address and the FQDN of XenMobile are the same.

8. If you want to use SSL Bridge mode (HTTPS), select HTTPS communication to XenMobile Server. However, if you want to use SSL offload, select HTTP communication to XenMobile Server, as shown in the preceding figure. For the purposes of this article, the choice is SSL Bridge mode (HTTPS).

9. Bind the server certificate for the MAM load balancing virtual IP address and then click Continue.

**XenMobile Settings**

Load Balancing FQDN for MAM	xms51.wg.lab	SSL Traffic Configuration	HTTPS communication to XMS Server
Load Balancing IP address for MAM	10.147.75.55	Split Tunnel	OFF
Port	8443	Split DNS	BOTH

**Server Certificate for MAM Load Balancing**

A server certificate is used to authenticate and identify a server in an SSL handshake. A server certificate is issued by a trusted CA and is sent out by the server to a client who uses it to authenticate the server.

Use existing certificate  Install Certificate

Server Certificate\*

wildcert-wg-lab.pfx\_CERT\_KEY

10. Under XenMobile Servers, click Add Server to add the XenMobile nodes.

**Server Certificate for MAM Load Balancing**

wildcert-wg-lab.pfx\_CERT\_KEY\_1  
wildcert-wg-lab.pfx\_CERT\_KEY

**XenMobile Servers**

IP Address	Port
XenMobile Server IP Address is not configured. Please click on <b>Add Server</b> to configure.	

11. Enter the IP address of the XenMobile node and then click Add.

**XenMobile Server IP Addresses**

Enter the IP address(es) of the XenMobile server(s) that you want to load balance.

XenMobile Server IP Address\*

10 . 147 . 75 . 51

12. Repeat steps 10 and 11 to add additional XenMobile nodes that are part of the XenMobile cluster. You will see all the XenMobile nodes that you have added. Click Continue.

**Server Certificate for MAM Load Balancing**

wildcert-wg-lab.pfx\_CERT\_KEY\_1  
wildcert-wg-lab.pfx\_CERT\_KEY

**XenMobile Servers**

IP Address	Port
10.147.75.51	8443
10.147.75.59	8443

13. Click Load Balance Device Manager Servers to continue with the MDM load balancing configuration.

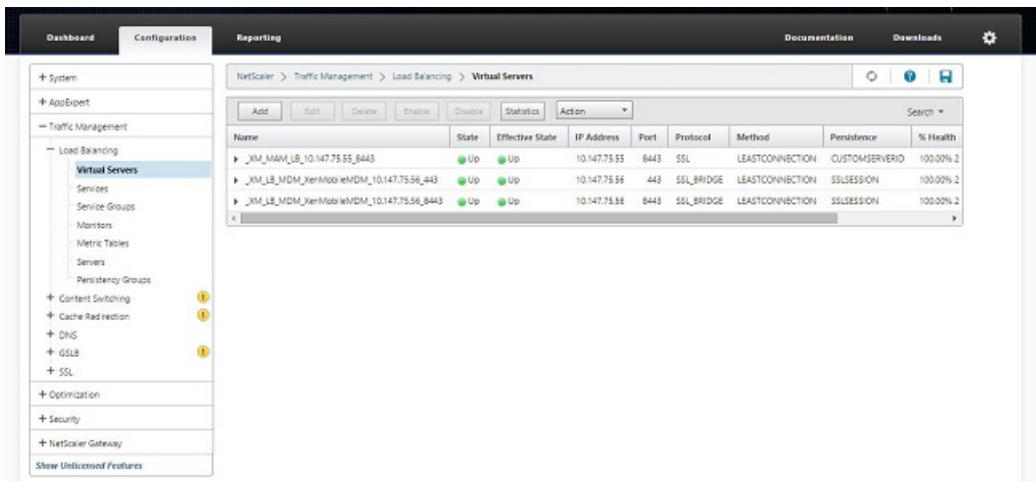
XenMobile Servers	
IP Address	Port
10.147.75.51	8443
10.147.75.59	8443

14. Enter the IP address to be used for MDM load balancing IP address and then click Continue.

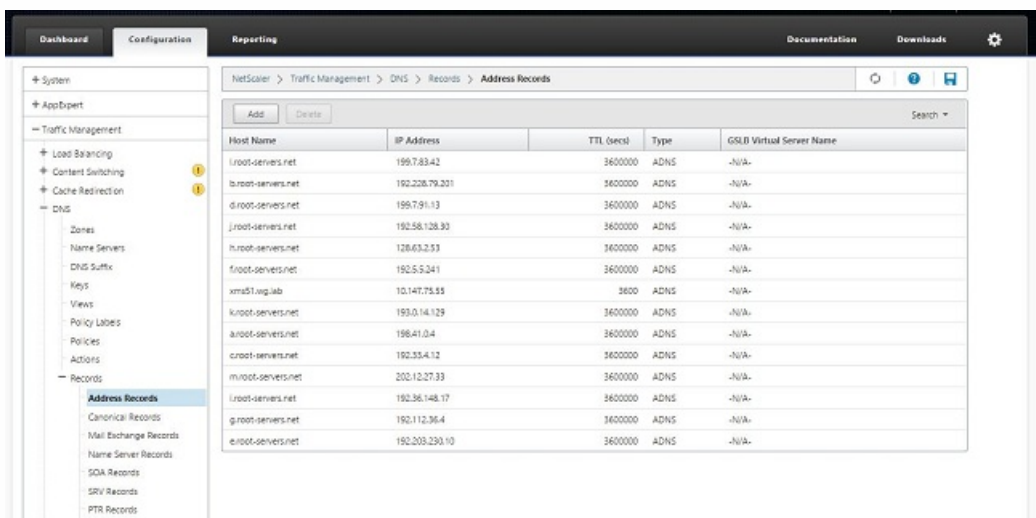
15. Once you see the XenMobile nodes in the list, click Continue and then click Done to finish the process.

You will see the virtual IP address status on the XenMobile page.

16. To confirm if the virtual IP addresses are up and running, click the Configuration tab and then navigate to Traffic Management > Load Balancing > Virtual Servers.



You will also see that the DNS entry in NetScaler points to the MAM load balancing virtual IP address.



# Disaster recovery guide

Feb 27, 2017

You can architect and configure XenMobile deployments that include multiple sites for disaster recovery using an active-passive failover strategy. For details, see the XenMobile Deployment Handbook [Disaster Recovery](#) article.

# Enable proxy servers

Feb 27, 2017

When you want to control outbound internet traffic, you can set up a proxy server in XenMobile to carry that traffic. To do this, you need to set up the proxy server through the command-line interface (CLI). Note that setting up the proxy server requires restarting your system.

1. In the XenMobile CLI main menu, type **2** to select the System Menu.

2. In the System Menu, type **6** to select the Proxy Server Menu.

```
[2] System
[3] Troubleshooting
[4] Help
[5] Log Out
-----
Choice: [0 - 5] 2
-----
System Menu
-----
[0] Back to Main Menu
[1] Display System Date
[2] Set Time Zone
[3] Display System Disk Usage
[4] Update Hosts File
[5] Display Device Management Instance Name
[6] Proxy Server
[7] HamIn (CLI) Password
[8] Restart Server
[9] Shutdown Server
[10] Advanced Settings
-----
```

3. In the Proxy Configuration Menu, type **1** to select SOCKS, **2** to select HTTPS, or **3** to select HTTP.

```
Choice: [0 - 10] 6
-----
Proxy Configuration Menu
-----
[0] Back to System Menu
[1] SOCKS
[2] HTTPS
[3] HTTP
[4] Exclusion List
[5] Display Configuration
[6] Delete Proxy Configuration
-----
```

4. Type your proxy server IP address, port number, and target. See the following table for supported target types for each proxy server type.

Proxy type	Supported targets
SOCKS	APNS

HTTP	APNS, Web, PKI
HTTPS	Web, PKI
HTTP with authentication	Web, PKI
HTTPS with authentication	Web, PKI

```

-----
Proxy Configuration Menu
-----
[0] Back to System Menu
[1] SOCKS
[2] HTTPS
[3] HTTP
[4] Exclusion List
[5] Display Configuration
[6] Delete Proxy Configuration
-----
Choice: [0 - 6] 1

Enter socks proxy information
Address [1]: 203.0.113.23
Port[]: 1080
Target - APNS
Proxy configuration updated successfully.
Please restart all nodes in the cluster for the changes to take effect
Are you sure to restart the system? [y/n]: █

```

5. If you choose to configure a user name and password for authentication on your HTTP or HTTPS proxy server, type **y**, and then type the user name and password.

```

[0] Back to System Menu
[1] SOCKS
[2] HTTPS
[3] HTTP
[4] Exclusion List
[5] Display Configuration
[6] Delete Proxy Configuration
-----
Choice: [0 - 6] 2

Enter https proxy information
Address [1]: 203.0.113.23
Port[]: 4443

Configure username & password [y/n]: y
Username: Justaname
Password:

Target - WEB
WEB proxy configured. Override proxy settings?[y/n]: █

```



6. Type **y** to finish setting up your proxy server.

# Server properties

Jun 06, 2017

XenMobile has many properties that apply to server-wide operations. This article describes many of the server properties and details how to add, edit, or delete server properties.

Some properties are Custom Keys. To add a custom key, click **Add** and then, from **Key**, choose **Custom Key**.

For information about the properties typically configured, see [Server Properties](#) in the XenMobile virtual handbook.

## Server Property Definitions

### Add Device Always

If **true**, XenMobile adds a device to the XenMobile console, even if it fails enrollment, so you can see which devices attempted to enroll. Defaults to **false**.

### AG Client Cert Issuing Throttling Interval

The grace period between generating certificates. This interval prevents XenMobile from generating multiple certificates for a device in a short time period. Citrix recommends that you not change this value. Defaults to **30** minutes.

### Audit Log Cleanup Execution Time

The time to start the audit log cleanup, formatted as HH:MM AM/PM. Example: 04:00 AM. Defaults to **02:00 AM**.

### Audit Log Cleanup Interval (in Days)

The number of days that XenMobile retains the audit log. Defaults to **1**.

### Audit Logger

If **False**, does not log user interface (UI) events. Defaults to **False**.

### Audit Log Retention (in Days)

The number of days that XenMobile retains the audit log. Defaults to **7**.

### auth.ldap.connect.timeout

### auth.ldap.read.timeout

To compensate for slow LDAP responses, Citrix recommends that you add server properties for the following Custom Keys.

Key: **Custom Key**

Key: **auth.ldap.connect.timeout**

Value: **60000**

Display name: **auth.ldap.connect.timeout=60000**

Description: LDAP connection timeout

Key: **Custom Key**

Key: **auth.ldap.read.timeout**

Value: **60000**

Display name: **auth.ldap.read.timeout=60000**

Description: LDAP read timeout

### **Certificate Renewal in Seconds**

The number of seconds before a certificate expires that XenMobile starts to renew certificates. For example, if a certificate will expire December 30 and this property is set to 30 days: If the device connects between December 1 and December 30, XenMobile attempts to renew the certificate. Defaults to **2592000** seconds (30 days).

### **Connection Timeout**

The session inactivity timeout, in minutes, after which XenMobile closes the TCP connection to a device. The session remains open. Applies to Android and Windows CE devices and Remote Support. Defaults to **5** minutes.

### **Connection Timeout to Microsoft Certification Server**

The number of seconds that XenMobile waits for a response from the certificate server. If the certificate server is slow and has much traffic, increase this value to 60 seconds or more. A certificate server that doesn't respond after 120 seconds requires maintenance. Defaults to **15000** milliseconds (15 seconds).

### **Default deployment channel**

Determines how XenMobile deploys a resource to a device: At the user-level (**DEFAULT\_TO\_USER**) or device-level. Defaults to **DEFAULT\_TO\_DEVICE**.

### **Deploy Log Cleanup (in Days)**

The number of days that XenMobile retains the deployment log. Defaults to **7**.

### **Disable SSL Server Verification**

If **True**, disables SSL server certificate validation when all the following conditions are met:

- You enabled certificate-based authentication on your XenMobile Server
- The Microsoft CA server is the certificate issuer
- An internal CA, whose root XenMobile Server doesn't trust, signed your certificate.

Defaults to **True**.

### **Enable Console**

If **true**, enables user access to the Self Help Portal Console. Defaults to **true**.

### **Enable/Disable Hibernate statistics logging for diagnostics**

If **True**, enables Hibernate statistics logging to assist with troubleshooting application performance issues. Hibernate is a component used for XenMobile connections to Microsoft SQL Server. By default, the logging is disabled because it impacts application performance. Enable logging only for a short duration to avoid creating a huge log file.

XenMobile writes the logs to /opt/sas/logs/hibernate\_stats.log. Defaults to **False**.

### Enable Notification Trigger

Enables or disables Secure Hub client notifications. The value **true** enables notifications. Defaults to **true**.

### Full Pull of ActiveSync Allowed and Denied Users

The number of seconds that XenMobile waits for a response from the domain when executing a PowerShell command to get a baseline of ActiveSync devices. Defaults to **28800** seconds.

### hibernate.c3p0.max\_size

This Custom Key determines the maximum number of connections that XenMobile can open to the SQL Server database. XenMobile uses the value you specify for this custom key as an upper limit. The connections open only if you need them. Base your settings on the capacity of your database server. For more information, see [Tuning XenMobile Operations](#). Configure the key as follows. Default is **1000**.

Key: **hibernate.c3p0.max\_size**

Value: **500**

Display name: **hibernate.c3p0.max\_size=nnn**

Description: DB connections to SQL

### hibernate.c3p0.timeout

This Custom Key determines the idle time-out. Default is **300**.

Key: **Custom Key**

Key: **hibernate.c3p0.timeout**

Value: **30**

Display name: **hibernate.c3p0.timeout=30**

Description: Database idle timeout

### Identifies if telemetry is enabled or not

Identifies if telemetry (Customer Experience Improvement Program, or CEIP) is enabled. You can opt in to CEIP when you install or upgrade XenMobile. If XenMobile has 15 consecutive failed uploads, it disables telemetry. Defaults to **false**.

### Inactivity Timeout in Minutes

If the **WebServices timeout type** server property is **INACTIVITY\_TIMEOUT**: This property defines the number of minutes after which XenMobile logs out an inactive administrator who did the following:

- Used the XenMobile Public API for REST Services to access the XenMobile console
- Used the XenMobile Public API for REST Services to access any third-party app. A timeout of **0** means that an inactive user remains logged in.

Defaults to **5**.

### iOS Device Management Enrollment Auto-Install Enabled

If true, this property reduces the amount of user interaction required during device enrollment. Users must click **Root CA install** (if needed) and **MDM Profile install**.

### **iOS Device Management Enrollment First Step Delayed**

After a user enters their credentials during device enrollment, this value specifies how long to wait before prompting for the root CA. Citrix recommends that you edit this property only for network latency or speed issues. In that case, don't set to the value to more than 5000 milliseconds (5 seconds). Defaults to **1000** milliseconds (1 second).

### **iOS Device Management Enrollment Last Step Delayed**

During device enrollment, this property value specifies the amount of time to wait between installing the MDM profile and starting the Agent on the device. Citrix recommends that you edit this property only for network latency or speed issues. In that case, don't set to the value to more than 5000 milliseconds (5 seconds). Defaults to **1000** milliseconds (1 second).

### **iOS Device Management Identity Delivery Mode**

Specifies whether XenMobile distributes the MDM certificate to devices using **SCEP** (recommended for security reasons) or **PKCS12**. In PKCS12 mode, the key pair is generated on the server and no negotiation is performed. Defaults to **SCEP**.

### **iOS Device Management Identity Key Size**

Defines the size of private keys for MDM identities, iOS profile service, and XenMobile iOS agent identities. Defaults to **1024**.

### **iOS Device Management Identity Renewal Days**

Specifies the number of days before the certificate expiration that XenMobile starts renewing certificates. For example: If a certificate expires in 10 days and this property is **10** days, when a device connects 9 days before expiration, XenMobile issues a new certificate. Defaults to **30** days.

### **iOS MDM APNS Private Key Password**

This property contains the APNs password, which is required for XenMobile to push notifications to Apple servers.

### **iOS MDM APNS Private Key Password**

This property contains the APNs password, which is required for XenMobile to push notifications to Apple servers.

### **Length of Inactivity Before Device Is Disconnected**

Specifies how long a device can remain inactive, including the last authentication, before XenMobile disconnects it. Defaults to **7** days.

### **MAM Only Device Max**

This Custom Key limits the number of MAM-only devices that each user can enroll. Configure the key as follows. A **Value** of **0** allows unlimited device enrollments.

Key = **number.of.mam.devices.per.user**

Value = **5**

Display name = **MAM Only Device Max**

Description = Limits the number of MAM devices each user can enroll.

### **NetScaler Single Sign-On**

If **False**, disables the XenMobile callback feature during single signon from NetScaler to XenMobile. If the NetScaler Gateway configuration includes a callback URL, XenMobile uses the callback feature to verify the NetScaler Gateway session ID. Defaults to **False**.

### **Number of consecutive failed uploads**

Displays the number of consecutive failures during Customer Experience Improvement Program (CEIP) uploads. XenMobile increments the value when an upload fails. After 15 upload failures, XenMobile disables CEIP, also called telemetry. For more information, see the server property **Identifies if telemetry is enabled or not**. XenMobile resets the value to **0** when an upload succeeds.

### **Number of Users Per Device**

The maximum number of users who can enroll the same device in MDM. The value **0** means that an unlimited number of users can enroll the same device. Defaults to **0**.

### **Pull of Incremental Change of Allowed and Denied Users**

The number of seconds that XenMobile waits for a response from the domain when executing a PowerShell command to get a delta of ActiveSync devices. Defaults to **60** seconds.

### **Read Timeout to Microsoft Certification Server**

The number of seconds that XenMobile waits for a response from the certificate server when performing a read. If the certificate server is slow and has much traffic, you can increase this value to 60 seconds or more. A certificate server that doesn't respond after 120 seconds requires maintenance. Defaults to **15000** milliseconds (15 seconds).

### **REST Web Services**

Enables the REST Web Service. Defaults to **true**.

### **Retrieves devices information in chunks of specified size**

This value is used internally for multithreading during device exports. If the value is higher, a single thread parses more devices. If the value is lower, more threads fetch the devices. Reducing the value might increase the performance of exports and device list fetches, yet might reduce available memory. Defaults to **1000**.

### **Session Log Cleanup (in Days)**

The number of days that XenMobile retains the session log. Defaults to **7**.

### **Server Mode**

Determines whether XenMobile runs in MAM, MDM, or ENT (enterprise) mode, corresponding to app management, device management, or app and device management. Set the Server Mode property according to how you want devices to register, as noted in the table below. Server Mode defaults to **ENT**, regardless of license type.

If you have a XenMobile MDM Edition license, the effective server mode is always MDM regardless of how you set

the server mode in Server Properties. If you have an MDM Edition license, you cannot enable app management by setting the server mode to either MAM or ENT.

Your licenses are this Edition	You want devices to register in this mode	Set Server Mode property to
Enterprise / Advanced	MDM mode	MDM
Enterprise / Advanced	MDM+MAM mode	ENT
MDM	MDM mode	MDM

The effective server mode is a combination of the license type and server mode. For an MDM license, the effective server mode is always MDM, regardless of the server mode setting. For Enterprise and Advanced licenses, the effective server mode matches the server mode, if the server mode is **ENT** or **MDM**. If the server mode is **MAM**, the effective server mode is ENT.

XenMobile adds the server mode to the server log for each of these activities: A license is activated, a license is deleted, and you change the server mode in Server Properties. For information about creating and viewing log files, see [Logs](#) and [View and analyze log files in XenMobile](#).

### ShareFile configuration type

Specifies the ShareFile storage type. **ENTERPRISE** enables ShareFile Enterprise mode. **CONNECTORS** provides access only to StorageZone Connectors that you create through the XenMobile console. Defaults to **NONE**, which shows the initial view of the **Configure > ShareFile** screen where you choose between ShareFile Enterprise and Connectors. Defaults to **NONE**.

### Static Timeout in Minutes

If the **WebServices timeout type** server property is **STATIC\_TIMEOUT**: This property defines the number of minutes after which XenMobile logs out an administrator after using the following:

- The XenMobile Public API for REST Services to access the XenMobile console.
- The XenMobile Public API for REST Services to access any third-party app.

Defaults to **60**.

### Trigger Agent Message Suppression

Enables or disables Secure Hub client messaging. The value **false** enables messaging. Defaults to **true**.

### Trigger Agent Sound Suppression

Enables or disables Secure Hub client sounds. The value **false** enables sounds. Defaults to **true**.

### Unauthenticated App Download for Android Devices

If **True**, you can download self-hosted apps to Android devices running Android for Work. XenMobile needs this property if the Android for Work option to provide a download URL in the Google Play Store statically is enabled. In

that case, download URLs can't include a one-time ticket (defined by the **XAM One-Time Ticket server** property) which has the authentication token. Defaults to **False**.

### **Unauthenticated App Download for Windows Devices**

Used only for older Secure Hub versions which don't validate one-time tickets. If **False**, you can download unauthenticated apps from XenMobile to Windows devices. Defaults to **False**.

### **Use ActiveSync ID to Conduct an ActiveSync Wipe Device**

If **true**, XenMobile Mail Manager uses the ActiveSync identifier as an argument for the `asWipeDevice` method. Defaults to **false**.

### **Users only from Exchange**

If **true**, disables user authentication for ActiveSync Exchange users. Defaults to **false**.

### **VPP baseline interval**

The minimum interval that XenMobile reimports VPP licenses from Apple. Refreshing license information ensures that XenMobile reflects all changes, such as when you manually delete an imported app from VPP. By default, XenMobile refreshes the VPP license baseline a minimum of every **720** minutes.

If you have many VPP licenses installed (for example, more than 50,000): Citrix recommends that you increase the baseline interval to reduce the frequency and overhead of importing licenses. If you expect frequent VPP license changes from Apple: Citrix recommends that you lower the value to keep XenMobile updated with the changes. The minimum interval between two baselines is 60 minutes. In addition, XenMobile performs a delta import every 60 minutes, to capture the changes since the last import. Therefore, if the VPP baseline interval is 60 minutes, the interval between baselines could be delayed up to 119 minutes.

### **WebServices Timeout Type**

Specifies how to expire an authentication token retrieved from the public API. If **STATIC\_TIMEOUT**, XenMobile considers an authentication token as expired after the value specified in the server property **Static Timeout in Minutes**.

If **INACTIVITY\_TIMEOUT**, XenMobile considers an authentication token as expired after the token is inactive for the value specified in the server property **Inactivity Timeout in Minutes**. Defaults to **STATIC\_TIMEOUT**.

### **Windows Phone MDM Certificate Extended Validity (5y)**

The validity period of the device certificate issued by MDM for Windows Phone and Tablet. Devices use a device certificate to authenticate to the MDM server during device management. If **true**, the validity period is five years. If **false**, the validity period is two years. Defaults to **true**.

### **Windows WNS Channel - Number of Days Before Renewal**

The renewal frequency for the ChannelURI. Defaults to **10** days.

### **Windows WNS Heartbeat Interval**

How long XenMobile waits before connecting to a device after connecting to it every three minutes five times. Defaults to **6** hours.



## XAM One-Time Ticket

The number of milliseconds that a one-time authentication token (OTT) is valid for downloading an app. This property works with the properties **Unauthenticated App download for Android** and **Unauthenticated App download for Windows**. Those properties specify whether to allow unauthenticated app downloads. Defaults to **3600000**.

## XenMobile MDM Self Help Portal console max inactive interval (minutes)

The number of minutes after which XenMobile logs out an inactive user from the XenMobile Self Help Portal. A timeout of **0** means that an inactive user remains logged in. Defaults to **30**.

# Adding, Editing, or Deleting Server Properties

In XenMobile, you can apply properties to the server. After making changes, ensure that you restart XenMobile on all nodes to commit and activate changes.

## Note

To restart XenMobile, use the command prompt through your hypervisor.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Under **Server**, click **Server Properties**. The **Server Properties** page appears. You can add, edit, or delete server properties from this page.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Settings > Server Properties

### Server Properties

You must restart XenMobile on all nodes to commit and activate your changes to the server properties. To restart XenMobile, use the command prompt through your hypervisor.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Display name	Key	Value	Default value	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	NetScaler Gateway Client Cert Issuing Throttling Interval	ag.client.cert.throttling.minutes	30	30	Throttling interval for issuance of NetScaler Gateway client certificates.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Number of consecutive failed uploads.	ceip.consecutive.upload.failures	0	0	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Sharefile byPath API fields	com.citrix.sharefile.bypath.fields	odata.metadata.id, url	odata.metadata, id, url	Comma separated set of fields (case-sensitive) that need to be extracted from the complete sharefile byPath API response
<input type="checkbox"/>	Sharefile configuration type : ENTERPRISE/CONNECTORS/NONE	com.citrix.sharefile.config.type	ENTERPRISE	NONE	Sharefile configuration type . Possible values being ENTERPRISE or CONNECTORS or NONE
<input type="checkbox"/>	Connection Timeout	CONNECTION_TIMEOUT	5	5	Session inactivity timeout, in minutes, after which the TCP connection to a device will be closed (by default 5 minutes).
<input type="checkbox"/>	Identifies if telemetry is enabled or not.	console.ceip.participate	true	false	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Length of Inactivity Before Device Is Disconnected	device.inactivity.days.threshold	7	7	Length of inactivity (in days) before the device is disconnected.
<input type="checkbox"/>	User-Defined Device Properties 1	device.properties.userDefined1			User-defined device properties.
<input type="checkbox"/>	User-Defined Device Properties 2	device.properties.userDefined2			User-defined device properties.
<input type="checkbox"/>	User-Defined Device Properties 3	device.properties.userDefined3			User-defined device properties.

Showing 1 - 10 of 111 items Showing 1 of 12

## To add a server property

1. Click **Add**. The **Add New Server Property** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Settings > Server Properties > Add New Server Property

### Add New Server Property

Key  ?

Value\*

Display name\*

Description

Cancel Save

2. Configure these settings:

- **Key:** In the list, select the appropriate key. Keys are case-sensitive. Contact Citrix Support before you edit property values or to request a special key.
- **Value:** Enter a value depending on the key you selected.
- **Display name:** Enter a name for the new property value that appears in the **Server Properties** table.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description for the new server property.

3. Click **Save**.

To edit a server property

1. In the **Server Properties** table, select the server property you want to edit.

**Note:** When you select the check box next to a server property, the options menu appears above the server property list. When you click anywhere else in the list, the options menu appears on the right side of the listing.

2. Click **Edit**. The **Edit New Server Property** page appears.

Settings > Server Properties > Edit New Server Property

### Edit New Server Property

**Key**

**Value\***

**Display name\***

**Description**

3. Change the following information as appropriate:

- **Key:** You cannot change this field.
- **Value:** The property value.
- **Display Name:** The property name.
- **Description:** The property description.

4. Click **Save** to save your changes or **Cancel** to leave the property unchanged.

To delete a server property

1. In the **Server Properties** table, select the server property you want to delete.

**Note:** You can select more than one property to delete by selecting the check box next to each property.

2. Click **Delete**. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** again.

# Command-line interface options

Apr 13, 2017

For an on-premises installation of XenMobile Server, you can access the CLI options at any time as follows:

- **From the hypervisor on which you installed XenMobile:** In your hypervisor, select the imported XenMobile virtual machine, start the command prompt view, and log on to your administrator account for XenMobile. For details, see the documentation for your hypervisor.
- **If SSH is enabled in your firewall, by using SSH.** Log on to your administrator account for XenMobile.

You can perform various configuration and troubleshooting tasks using the CLI. Following is the top-level menu for the CLI.

```
-----
Main Menu
-----
[0] Configuration
[1] Clustering
[2] System
[3] Troubleshooting
[4] Help
[5] Log Out
-----
```

## Configuration options

Following are samples of the **Configuration Menu** and the settings displayed for each option.

```
-----
Configuration Menu
-----
[0] Back to Main Menu
[1] Network
[2] Firewall
[3] Database
[4] Listener Ports
-----
```

### [1] Network

```
Reboot is required to save the changes.
Do you want to proceed? (y/n) [y]: y
IP address [10.207.87.75]: 10.200.87.75
Netmask [255.255.254.0]: 255.255.254.0
Default gateway [10.207.86.1]: 10.200.86.1
Primary DNS server [10.207.86.50]: 10.200.86.50
Secondary DNS server (optional) []:

Applying network settings...

Are you sure to restart the system? [y/n]: █
```

### [2] Firewall

```
Configure which services are enabled through the firewall.

Can optionally configure allow access white lists:
- comma separated list of hosts or networks
- e.g. 10.20.5.3, 10.20.6.0/24
- an empty value means no access restriction
- enter c as value to clear list

HTTP service
Port: 80
Enable access (y/n) [y]: y
Access white list []:

Management HTTPS service
Port: 4443
Enable access (y/n) [y]:
Access white list []:

SSH service
Port [22]:
Enable access (y/n) [y]:
Access white list []:

Management API (for initial staging) HTTPS service
Port [30001]:
Enable access (y/n) [n]:

Remote support tunnel
Port [8081]:
Enable access (y/n) [n]:

Applying firewall settings ...
Writing iptables configuration...
Restarting iptables...
```

### [3] Database

```
Type: [mi]
Use SSL (y/n) [n]:
Server [10.207.86.64]:
Port [1433]:
Username [sa]:
Password:
Database name [RC]:

Reboot is required to save the changes.
Do you want to proceed? (y/n) [y]: █
```

### [4] Listener Ports

```
Reboot is required to save the changes.
Do you want to proceed? (y/n) [y]: y
HTTP [80]:
HTTPS with certificate authentication [443]:
HTTPS with no certificate authentication [8443]:
HTTPS for management [4443]:
Applying port listener configuration...
Applying firewall settings ...
Writing iptables configuration...
Restarting iptables...
Are you sure to restart the system? [y/n]: █
```

## Clustering options

Following are samples of the **Clustering Menu** and the settings displayed for each option.

```
Clustering Menu
-----
[0] Back to Main Menu
[1] Show Cluster Status
[2] Enable/Disable cluster
[3] Cluster member white list
[4] Enable or Disable SSL offload
[5] Display Hazelcast Cluster
-----
```

### [1] Show Cluster Status

```
Current Node ID: 181360459

Cluster Members:
node: 10.207.87.75 status: ACTIVE role: OLDEST
node: 10.207.87.77 status: ACTIVE role: NONE
node: 10.207.87.88 status: ACTIVE role: NONE
```

### [2] Enable/Disable cluster

When you choose to enable clustering, the following message appears:

To enable realtime communication between cluster members, please open port 80 using the Firewall menu option in CLI menu. Also configure Access white list under Firewall settings for restricted access.

When you choose to disable clustering, the following message appears:

You have chosen to disable clustering. Access to port 80 is not needed. Please disable it.

### [3] Cluster member white list

```
Current White List:
- comma separated list of hosts or networks
- e.g. 10.20.5.3, 10.20.6.0/24
- an empty value means no access restriction

Please enter hosts or networks to be white listed:
```

### [4] Enable or disable SSL offload

When you select to enable or disable SSL offloading, the following message appears:

Enabling SSL offload will open port 80 for everyone. Please configure Access white list under Firewall settings for restricted access.

## [5] Display Hazelcast Cluster

When you select to display the Hazelcast Cluster, the following options appear:

Hazlecast Cluster Members:

[IP addresses listed]

NOTE: If a configured node is not part of the cluster, please reboot that node.

## System options

From the **System Menu**, you can display or set system-level information, restart or shut down the server, or access **Advanced Settings**.

```
-----
System Menu
-----
[0] Back to Main Menu
[1] Display System Date
[2] Set Time Zone
[3] Set NTP Server
[4] Display NTP Status
[5] Display System Disk Usage
[6] Update Hosts File
[7] Display Device Management Instance Name
[8] Proxy Server
[9] Admin (CLI) Password
[10] Restart Server
[11] Shutdown Server
[12] Advanced Settings
-----
```

## [12] Advanced Settings

```
***** WARNING *****
Please only modify these options if you are
in contact with Citrix Support
*****

-----
Advanced Settings
-----
[0] Back to System Menu
[1] Toggle FIPS mode
[2] Custom Ciphers
[3] Reset SSL Certificate
[4] Reset pki.xml
[5] Server Tuning
-----
```

**Server Tuning** options include the server connection timeout, maximum connections (by port), and maximum threads (by port).

## Troubleshooting options

Following are samples of the **Troubleshooting Menu** and the settings displayed for each option.



```
-----  
Troubleshooting Menu  
-----
```

- [0] Back to Main Menu
- [1] Network Utilities
- [2] Logs
- [3] Support Bundle

## [1] Network Utilities

```
-----  
Network Menu  
-----
```

- [0] Back to Troubleshooting Menu
- [1] Network Information
- [2] Show Routing Table
- [3] Show Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) Table
- [4] PING
- [5] Traceroute
- [6] DNS Lookup
- [7] Network Trace

## [2] Logs

```
-----  
Logs Menu  
-----
```

- [0] Back to Troubleshooting Menu
- [1] Display Log File

## [3] Support Bundle

```
-----  
Support Bundle Menu  
-----
```

- [0] Back to Troubleshooting Menu
- [1] Generate Support Bundle
- [2] Upload Support Bundle by Using SCP
- [3] Upload Support Bundle by Using FTP

# Getting started workflows for XenMobile console

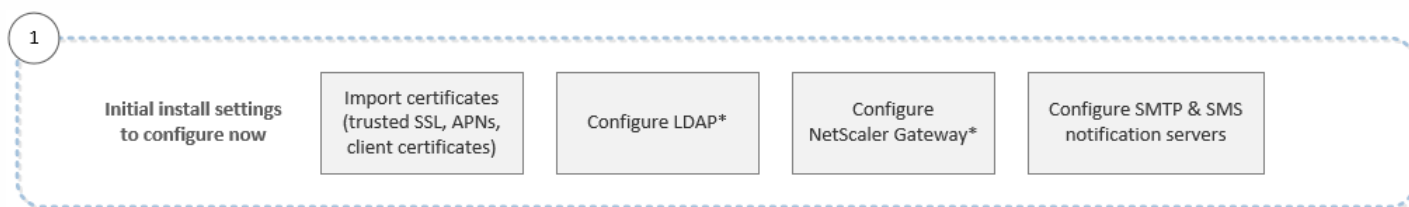
Mar 10, 2017

The XenMobile console is the unified management tool in XenMobile. This article assumes you've installed XenMobile and are ready to work in the console. If you have yet to install XenMobile, see [Installing XenMobile](#). For details on browser support for the XenMobile console, the XenMobile Compatibility article.

## Initial settings workflow

After you finish configuring XenMobile first in the command-line console and next in the XenMobile console, the dashboard opens. You cannot return to the initial configuration screens. If you skipped some install configurations, you can configure the following settings in the console. Before you start adding users, apps, and devices, you consider completing these install settings. To start, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console.

**Note:** The items with an asterisk are optional.



For more information about each setting, along with step-by-step procedures, see the following Citrix Product Documentation articles and sections:

- [Authentication](#)
- [NetScaler Gateway and XenMobile](#)
- [Notifications](#)

To support Android, iOS, and Windows platforms, you must have the following account-related setup.

### Android

- Create Google Play credentials. For details, see Google Play [Launch](#).
- Create an Android for Work administrator account. For details, see [Android at Work](#).
- Verify your domain name with Google. For details, see [Verify your domain for G Suite](#).
- Enable APIs and create a service account for Android for Work. For details, see [Android enterprise Help](#).

### iOS

- Create an Apple ID and developer account. For details, see the [Apple Developer Program](#) website.
- Create an Apple Push Notification Service (APNs) certificate. If you plan to manage iOS devices with your XenMobile Service (cloud) deployment, you need an Apple APNs certificate. If you use push notification for your WorxMail deployment, you also need an Apple APNs certificate. For details about obtaining Apple APNs certificates, see the [Apple Push Certificates Portal](#). For more information about XenMobile and APNs, see [APNs certificates](#) and [Push Notifications for WorxMail for iOS](#).
- Create a Volume Purchase Program (VPP) company token. For details, see [Apple Volume Purchasing Program](#).

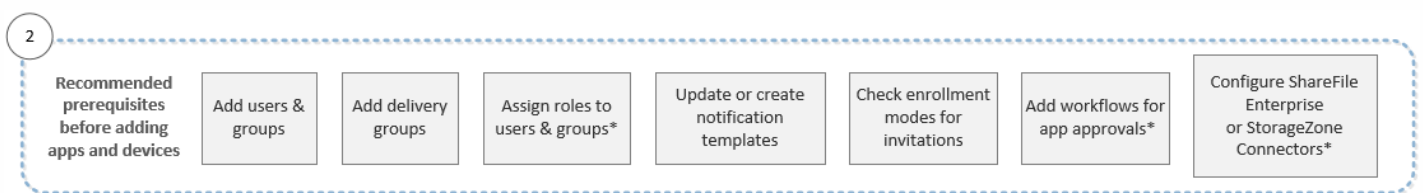
## Windows

- Create a Microsoft Windows Store developer account. For details, see the [Microsoft Windows Dev Center](#).
- Obtain a Microsoft Windows Store Publisher ID. For details, see the [Microsoft Windows Dev Center](#).
- Acquire an enterprise certificate from Symantec. For details, see the [Microsoft Windows Dev Center](#).
- Ensure that you have a public SSL certificate available if you plan to use XenMobile autodiscovery for your Windows Phone enrollment. For details, see [XenMobile Autodiscovery Service](#).
- Create an Application Enrollment Token (AET). For details, see the [Microsoft Windows Dev Center](#).

### Console prerequisites workflow

This workflow shows prerequisites for you to configure before you add apps and devices.

**Note:** The items with an asterisk are optional.



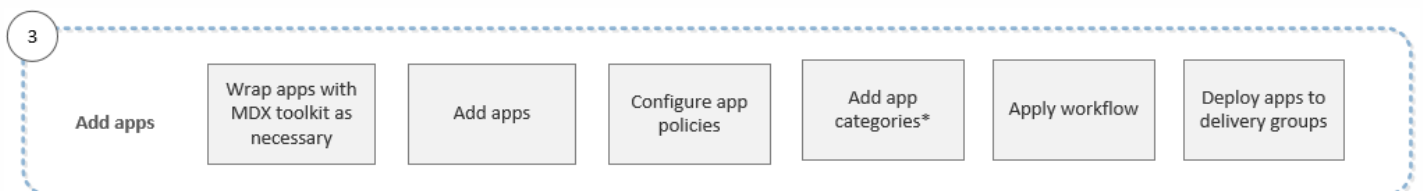
For more information about each setting, along with step-by-step procedures, see the following Citrix Product Documentation articles and sections:

- [User accounts, roles, and enrollment](#)
- [Deploy resources](#)
- [Configure roles with RBAC](#)
- [Notifications](#)
- [Create and manage workflows](#)
- [ShareFile use with XenMobile](#)

### Add apps workflow

This workflow shows a recommended order to follow when adding apps to XenMobile.

**Note:** The items with an asterisk are optional.



For more information about each setting, along with step-by-step procedures, see the following Citrix Product Documentation articles and sections:

- [About the MDX Toolkit](#)
- [Add apps](#)
- [MDX Policies at a Glance](#)

- [Create and manage workflows](#)
- [Deploy resources](#)

### Add devices workflow

This workflow shows a recommended order to follow when adding and registering devices in XenMobile.

**Note:** The items with an asterisk are optional.

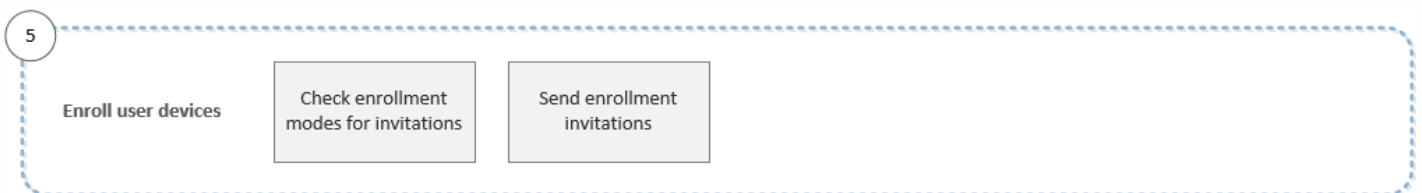


For more information about each setting, along with step-by-step procedures, see the following Citrix Product Documentation articles and sections:

- [Devices](#)
- [Supported device operating systems](#)
- [Deploy resources](#)
- [Monitor and support](#)
- [Automated actions](#)

### Enroll user devices workflow

This workflow shows a recommended order to follow when enrolling user devices in XenMobile.



For more information about each setting, along with step-by-step procedures, see the following Citrix Product Documentation articles:

- [User accounts, roles, and enrollment](#)
- [Notifications](#)

### Ongoing app and device management workflow

This workflow shows app and device management activities that you can do in the console.

**Note:** The items with an asterisk are optional.

6

Ongoing app and device management

View notifications and monitor devices and apps on the dashboard

Issue security actions on devices as necessary

Do connectivity checks, create support bundles and view logs\*

For more information about the support options found from clicking the wrench icon in the upper-right corner of the console, see [Monitor and support](#).

# Certificates and Authentication

Feb 27, 2017

Several components play a role in authentication during XenMobile operations:

- **XenMobile Server:** The XenMobile Server is where you define enrollment security and the enrollment experience. Options for onboarding users include whether to make the enrollment open for all or by invitation only and whether to require two-factor authentication or three-factor authentication. Through client properties in XenMobile, you can enable Citrix PIN authentication and configure the complexity and expiration time of the PIN.
- **NetScaler:** NetScaler provides termination for micro VPN SSL sessions. NetScaler also provides network in-transit security, and lets you define the authentication experience used each time a user accesses an app.
- **Secure Hub:** Secure Hub works with XenMobile Server in enrollment operations. Secure Hub is the entity on a device that talks to NetScaler. When a session expires, Secure Hub gets an authentication ticket from NetScaler and passes the ticket to the MDX apps. Citrix recommends use of certificate pinning, which prevents man-in-the-middle attacks. For more information, see the section on certificate pinning in the [Secure Hub](#) article.

Secure Hub also facilitates the MDX security container: Secure Hub pushes policies, creates a session with NetScaler when an app times out, and defines the MDX timeout and authentication experience. Secure Hub is also responsible for jailbreak detection, geolocation checks, and any policies you apply.

- **MDX policies:** MDX policies create the data vault on the device. MDX policies direct micro VPN connections back to NetScaler, enforce offline mode restrictions, and enforce client policies, such as time-outs.

For more information about the considerations on how to configure authentication, including an overview of single-factor, and two-factor authentication methods, see the Deployment Handbook [Authentication](#) article.

You use certificates in XenMobile to create secure connections and authenticate users. The remainder of this article discusses certificates. For other configuration details, see the following articles:

- [Domain or domain plus security token authentication](#)
- [Client certificate or certificate plus domain authentication](#)
- [PKI entities](#)
- [Credential providers](#)
- [APNs certificates](#)
- [SAML for single sign-on with ShareFile](#)
- [Microsoft Azure Active Directory server settings](#)

## Certificates

By default, XenMobile comes with a self-signed Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) certificate that is generated during installation to secure the communication flows to the server. Citrix recommends that you replace the SSL certificate with a trusted SSL certificate from a well-known certificate authority (CA).

### Note

iOS 10.3 devices don't support self-signed certificates. If XenMobile uses self-signed certificates, users can't enroll iOS 10.3 devices

into XenMobile. To enroll devices running iOS 10.3 or later into XenMobile, you must use trusted SSL certificates in XenMobile.

XenMobile also uses its own Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) service or obtains certificates from the CA for client certificates. All Citrix products support wildcard and Subject Alternative Name (SAN) certificates. For most deployments, you only need two wildcard or SAN certificates.

Client certificate authentication provides an extra layer of security for mobile apps and lets users seamlessly access HDX Apps. When client certificate authentication is configured, users type their Citrix PIN for single sign-on (SSO) access to XenMobile-enabled apps. Citrix PIN also simplifies the user authentication experience. Citrix PIN is used to secure a client certificate or save Active Directory credentials locally on the device.

To enroll and manage iOS devices with XenMobile, set up and create an Apple Push Notification Service (APNs) certificate from Apple. For steps, see [APNs certificates](#).

The following table shows the certificate format and type for each XenMobile component:

XenMobile component	Certificate format	Required certificate type
NetScaler Gateway	PEM (BASE64) PFX (PKCS#12)	SSL, Root NetScaler Gateway converts PFX to PEM automatically.
XenMobile Server	.p12 (.pfx on Windows-based computers)	SSL, SAML, APNs XenMobile also generates a full PKI during the installation process. <b>Important:</b> XenMobile Server doesn't support certificates with a .pem extension.
StoreFront	PFX (PKCS#12)	SSL, Root

XenMobile supports SSL listener certificates and client certificates with bit lengths of 4096, 2048, and 1024. Note that 1024-bit certificates are easily compromised.

For NetScaler Gateway and the XenMobile Server, Citrix recommends obtaining server certificates from a public CA, such as Verisign, DigiCert, or Thawte. You can create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) from the NetScaler Gateway or the XenMobile configuration utility. After you create the CSR, you submit it to the CA for signing. When the CA returns the signed certificate, you can install the certificate on NetScaler Gateway or XenMobile.

### Uploading certificates in XenMobile

Each certificate you upload has an entry in the Certificates table, summarizing its contents. When you configure PKI integration components that require a certificate, you choose a server certificate that satisfies the context-dependent criteria. For example, you might want to configure XenMobile to integrate with your Microsoft CA. The connection to the

Microsoft CA must be authenticated by using a client certificate.

This section provides general procedures for uploading certificates. For details about creating, uploading, and configuring client certificates, see [Client certificate or certificate plus domain authentication](#).

### Private key requirements

XenMobile may or may not possess the private key for a given certificate. Likewise, XenMobile may or may not require a private key for certificates you upload.

### Uploading certificates to the console

When uploading certificates to the console, you have two main options:

- You can click to import a keystore. Then, you identify the entry in the keystore repository you want to install, unless you are uploading a PKCS#12 format.
- You can click to import a certificate.

You can upload the CA certificate (without the private key) that the CA uses to sign requests. You can also upload an SSL client certificate (with the private key) for client authentication.




When configuring the Microsoft CA entity, you specify the CA certificate. You select the CA certificate from a list of all server certificates that are CA certificates. Likewise, when configuring client authentication, you can select from a list of all the server certificates for which XenMobile has the private key.

### To import a keystore

By design, keystores, which are repositories of security certificates, can contain multiple entries. When loading from a keystore, therefore, you are prompted to specify the entry alias that identifies the entry you want to load. If you do not specify an alias, the first entry from the store is loaded. Because PKCS#12 files usually contain only one entry, the alias field does not appear when you select PKCS#12 as the keystore type.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Click **Certificates**. The **Certificates** page appears.











XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure   admin 

Settings > Certificates

## Certificates

You must restart XenMobile on all nodes to commit and activate your changes to the SSL and Android for Work SAML certificates. To restart XenMobile, use the hypervisor console or command-line window.

 Import |  Add

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Description	Status	Valid from	Valid to	Type	Private key	
<input type="checkbox"/>	XMS.example.com	Self Signed/Generated	Up to date	2015-11-16	2025-11-13	SAML		
<input type="checkbox"/>	*.agsag.com		 Expired	2013-10-23	2015-10-23	SSL Listener		
<input type="checkbox"/>	cacerts.pem	Self Signed/Generated	Up to date	2015-11-16	2035-11-14	Devices CA		
<input type="checkbox"/>	ent-root-ca		Up to date	2012-02-22	2017-02-21	Root or intermediate		
<input type="checkbox"/>	APSP:3623302e-7c6e-4df8-aa91		 22 days left	2015-09-30	2016-09-29	APNs		

Showing 1 - 5 of 5 items

3. Click **Import**. The **Import** dialog box appears.

4. Configure these settings:

- **Import**: In the list, click **Keystore**. The **Import** dialog box changes to reflect available keystore options.

## Import ×

You can import certificates or keystores used by PKI components. You can import several certificates, but you can only have one certificate active at a time.

**Import** Keystore ▼

**Keystore type** PKCS#12 ▼

**Use as** Server ▼

**Keystore file\***  Browse

**Password\***

**Description**

Cancel
Import

- **Keystore type:** In the list, click **PKCS#12**.
- **Use as:** In the list, click how you plan to use the certificate. The available options are:
  - **Server.** Server certificates are certificates used functionally by the XenMobile Server that are uploaded to the XenMobile web console. They include CA certificates, RA certificates, and certificates for client authentication with other components of your infrastructure. In addition, you can use server certificates as storage for certificates you want to deploy to devices. This use especially applies to CAs used to establish trust on the device.
  - **SAML.** Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) certification allows you to provide SSO access to servers, websites, and apps.
  - **APNs.** APNs certificates from Apple enable mobile device management via the Apple Push Network.
  - **SSL Listener.** The Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) Listener notifies XenMobile of SSL cryptographic activity.
- **Keystore file:** Browse to find the keystore you want to import of the file type .p12 (or .pfx on Windows-based computers).
- **Password:** Type the password assigned to the certificate.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description for the keystore to help you distinguish it from your other keystores.

5. Click **Import**. The keystore is added to the Certificates table.

### To import a certificate

When importing a certificate, either from a file or a keystore entry, XenMobile attempts to construct a certificate chain from the input, and imports all certificates in that chain (creating a server certificate entry for each). This operation only works if the certificates in the file or keystore entry do form a chain. For example, if each subsequent certificate in the

chain is the issuer of the previous certificate.

You can add an optional description for the imported certificate for heuristic purposes. The description only attaches to the first certificate in the chain. You can update the description of the remaining certificates later.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console and then click **Certificates**.
2. On the **Certificates** page, click **Import**. The **Import** dialog box appears.
3. In the **Import** dialog box, in **Import**, if it is not already selected, click **Certificate**.
4. The **Import** dialog box changes to reflect available certificate options. In **Use as**, click how you will use the keystore. The available options are:
  - **Server**. Server certificates are certificates used functionally by the XenMobile Server that are uploaded to the XenMobile web console. They include CA certificates, RA certificates, and certificates for client authentication with other components of your infrastructure. In addition, you can use server certificates as storage for certificates you want to deploy to devices. This option especially applies to CAs used to establish trust on the device.
  - **SAML**. Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) certification allows you to provide single sign-on (SSO) access to servers, websites, and apps.
  - **SSL Listener**. The Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) Listener notifies XenMobile of SSL cryptographic activity.
5. Browse to find the keystore you want to import of the file type .p12 (or .pfx on Windows-based computers).
6. Browse to find an optional private key file for the certificate. The private key is used for encryption and decryption along with the certificate.
7. Type a description for the certificate, optionally, to help you identify it from your other certificates.
8. Click **Import**. The certificate is added to the Certificates table.

### Updating a certificate

XenMobile only allows one certificate per public key to exist in the system at any given time. If you attempt to import a certificate for the same key pair as an already imported certificate, you can either replace the existing entry or to delete the entry.

To most effectively update your certificates, in the XenMobile console, do the following. Click the gear icon on the upper-right corner of the console to open the **Settings** page and then click **Certificates**. In the **Import** dialog box, import the new certificate.

When you update a server certificate, components that were using the previous certificate automatically switch to using the new certificate. Likewise, if you have deployed the server certificate on devices, the certificate automatically updates on the next deployment.

## XenMobile Certificate Administration

We recommend that you list the certificates you use in your XenMobile deployment, especially on their expiration dates and associated passwords. This section intends to help you make certificate administration in XenMobile easier.

Your environment may include some or all of the following certificates:

## **XenMobile Server**

SSL Certificate for MDM FQDN

SAML Certificate (For ShareFile)

Root and Intermediate CA Certificates for the preceding certificates and any other internal resources (StoreFront/Proxy, and so on)

APN Certificate for iOS Device Management

Internal APNs Certificate for XenMobile Server Secure Hub Notifications

PKI User Certificate for connectivity to PKI

## **MDX Toolkit**

Apple Developer Certificate

Apple Provisioning Profile (per application)

Apple APNs Certificate (for use with Citrix Secure Mail)

Android Keystore File

Windows Phone – Symantec Certificate

## **NetScaler**

SSL Certificate for MDM FQDN

SSL Certificate for Gateway FQDN

SSL Certificate for ShareFile SZC FQDN

SSL Certificate for Exchange Load Balancing (offload configuration)

SSL Certificate for StoreFront Load Balancing

Root & Intermediate CA Certificates for the preceding certificates

## **XenMobile Certificate Expiration Policy**

If you allow a certificate to expire, the certificate becomes invalid. You can no longer run secure transactions on your environment and you cannot access XenMobile resources.

### **Note**

The Certification Authority (CA) prompts you to renew your SSL certificate prior to the expiration date.

## **APNs certificate for Citrix Secure Mail**

Because the Apple Push Notification Service (APNs) certificates expire every year, create an APNs SSL certificate and update it in the Citrix portal before the certificate expires. If the certificate expires, users face inconsistency with Secure Mail push notifications. Also, you can no longer send push notifications for your apps.

## **APNs certificate for iOS device management**

To enroll and manage iOS devices with XenMobile, set up and create an APNs certificate from Apple. If the certificate expires, users cannot enroll in XenMobile and you cannot manage their iOS devices. For details, see [APNs certificates](#).

You can view the APNs certificate status and expiration date by logging on to the Apple Push Certificates Portal. You must log on as the same user who created the certificate.

You also receive an email notification from Apple 30 and 10 days before the expiration date with the following information:

"The following Apple Push Notification Service certificate, created for Apple ID CustomerID will expire on Date. Revoking or allowing this certificate to expire will require existing devices to be re-enrolled with a new push certificate.

Please contact your vendor to generate a new request (a signed CSR), then visit <https://identity.apple.com/pushcert> to renew your Apple Push Notification Service certificate.

Thank You,

Apple Push Notification Service

### MDX Toolkit (iOS distribution certificate)

An app that runs on a physical iOS device (other than apps in the Apple App Store) must be signed with a provisioning profile. The app must also be signed with a corresponding distribution certificate.

To verify that you have a valid iOS distribution certificate, do the following:

1. From the Apple Enterprise Developer portal, create an explicit App ID for each app you plan to wrap with the MDX Toolkit. An example of an acceptable App ID is: com.CompanyName.ProductName.
2. From the Apple Enterprise Developer portal, go to **Provisioning Profiles > Distribution** and create an in-house provisioning profile. Repeat this step for each App ID created in the previous step.
3. Download all provisioning profiles. For details, see [Wrapping iOS Mobile Apps](#).

To confirm that all XenMobile Server certificates are valid, do the following:

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Settings** and then click **Certificates**.
2. Check that all certificates including APNs, SSL Listener, Root, and Intermediate certificate are valid.

### Android keystore

The keystore is a file that contains certificates used to sign your Android app. When your key validity period expires, users can no longer seamlessly upgrade to new versions of your app.

### Enterprise certificate from Symantec for Windows phones

Symantec is the exclusive provider of code signing certificates for Microsoft App Hub service. Developers and software publishers join App Hub to distribute Windows Phone and Xbox 360 applications for download through the Windows Marketplace. For details, see [Symantec Code Signing Certificates for Windows Phone](#) in the Symantec documentation.

If the certificate expires, Windows phone users cannot enroll. The users cannot install an app published and signed by the company, or start a company app that was installed on the phone.

### NetScaler

For details on how to handle certificate expiration for NetScaler, see [How to handle certificate expiry on NetScaler](#) in the Citrix Support Knowledge Center.

An expired NetScaler certificate prevents users from enrolling and accessing the Store. The expired certificate also prevents users from connecting to Exchange Server when using Secure Mail. In addition, users cannot enumerate and open HDX apps (depending on which certificate expired).

The Expiry Monitor and Command Center can help you to track your NetScaler certificates. The Center notifies you when

the certificate expires. These two tools assist to monitor the following NetScaler certificates:

SSL Certificate for MDM FQDN

SSL Certificate for Gateway FQDN

SSL Certificate for ShareFile SZC FQDN

SSL Certificate for Exchange Load Balancing (offload configuration)

SSL Certificate for StoreFront Load Balancing

Root and Intermediate CA Certificates for the preceding certificates

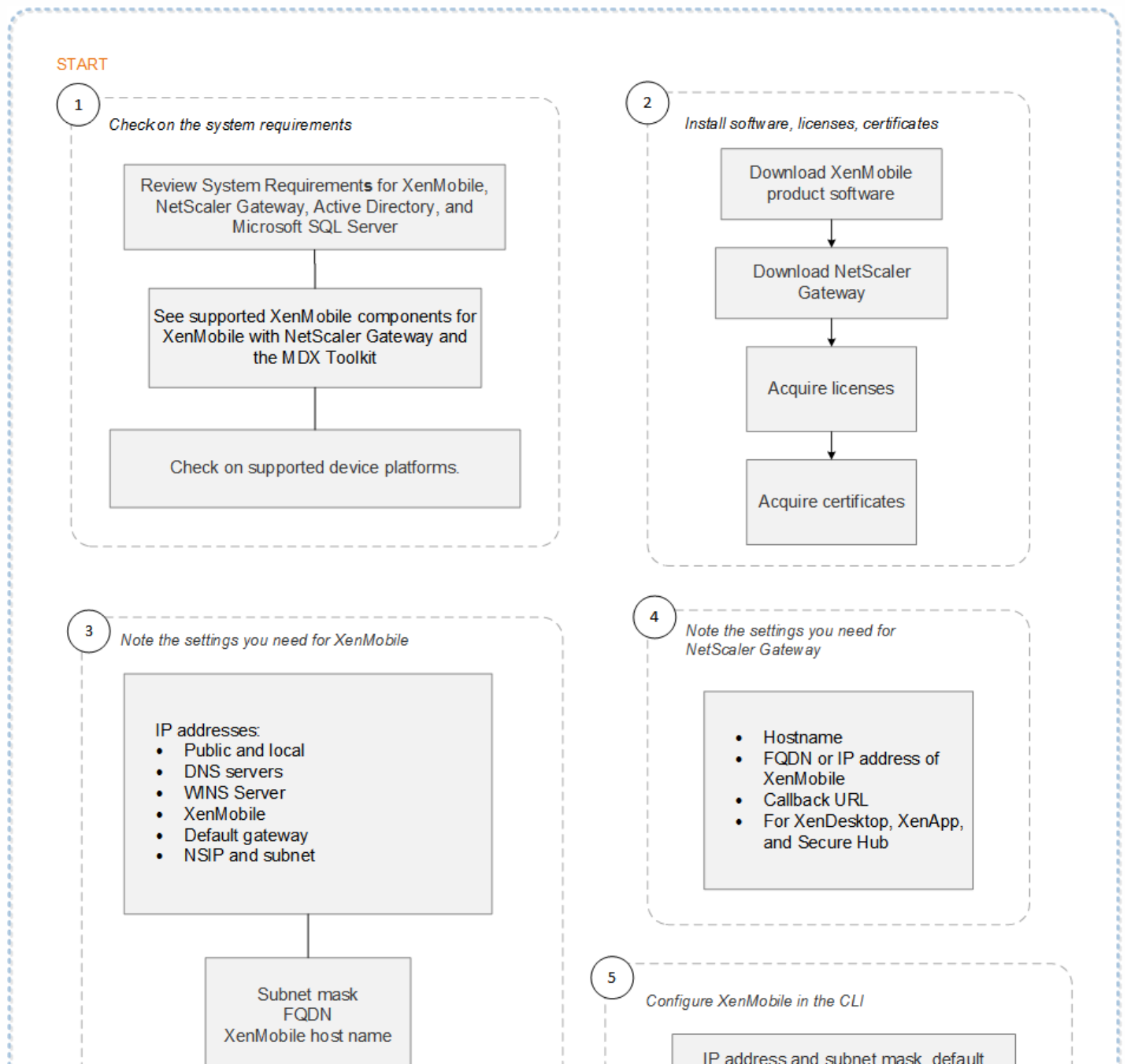
# NetScaler Gateway and XenMobile

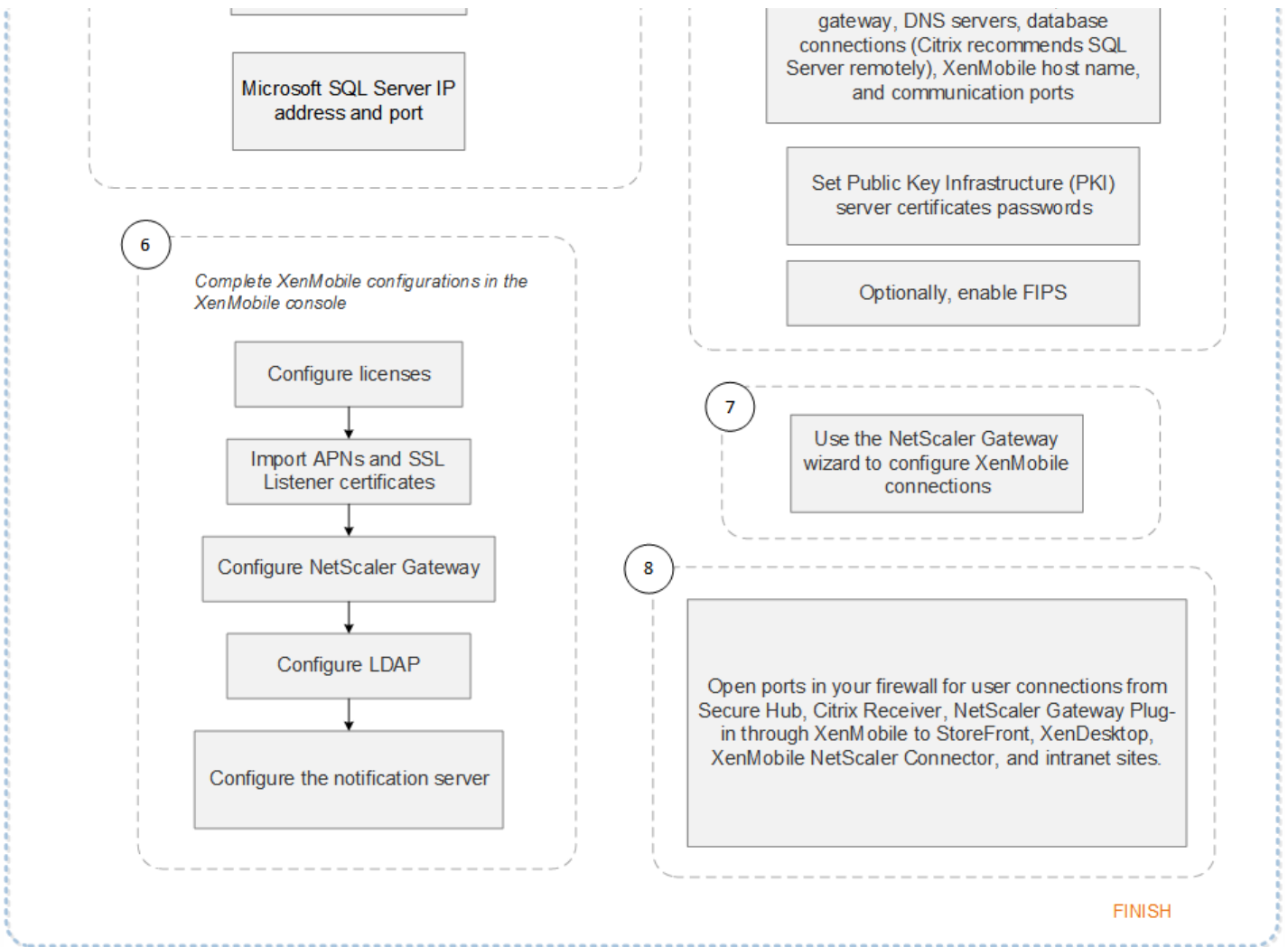
Feb 27, 2017

When you configure NetScaler Gateway using XenMobile, you establish the authentication mechanism for remote device access to the internal network. This functionality enables apps on a mobile device to access corporate servers located in the intranet by creating a micro VPN from the apps on the device to NetScaler Gateway. You configure NetScaler Gateway in the XenMobile console, as described in this article.

## Flowchart for XenMobile deployment with NetScaler Gateway

You can use this flowchart to guide you through the main steps for deploying XenMobile with NetScaler Gateway. Links to topics on each step follow the figure.





1

- System requirements and compatibility

2

- Install and configure

3

- Preinstallation checklist

4



- [Preinstallation checklist](#)

5

- [Configure XenMobile in the Command Prompt Window](#)

6

- [Configure XenMobile in a web browser](#)

7

- [Configuring Settings for Your XenMobile Environment](#)

8

- [Ports](#)

The flowchart is also available in PDF format.

 [Flowchart for Deploying XenMobile](#)

To configure NetScaler Gateway

1. In the XenMobile web console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Under **Server**, click **NetScaler Gateway**. The **NetScaler Gateway** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Settings > NetScaler Gateway

## NetScaler Gateway

When you configure NetScaler Gateway, you configure the authentication mechanism for remote device access to the internal network. If you use NetScaler Gateway with StoreFront as the authentication server, you need to enable StoreFront as well.

Authentication  ON

Deliver user certificate for authentication  OFF ⓘ

Credential provider

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Default	External URL	Logon Type	# of Callback URLs	▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	ag186	✓	https://mb186.agsag.com	Domain	0	
<input type="checkbox"/>	agdumy		https://10.199.225.200	Domain	0	

Showing 1 - 2 of 2 items

Configure these settings:

- **Authentication:** Select whether to enable authentication. The default is **ON**.
- **Deliver user certificate for authentication:** Select whether you want XenMobile to share the authentication certificate with Secure Hub so that the NetScaler Gateway handles client certificate authentication. The default is **OFF**.
- **Credential Provider:** In the list, click the credential provider to use. For more information, see [Credential Providers](#).

6. Click **Save**.

To add a new NetScaler Gateway instance

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page opens.
2. Under **Server**, click **NetScaler Gateway**. The **Netscaler Gateway** page appears.
3. Click **Add**. The **Add New NetScaler Gateway** page appears.

Settings > NetScaler Gateway > Add New NetScaler Gateway

### Add New NetScaler Gateway

**Name\***

**Alias**

**External URL\***

**Logon Type**

**Password Required**  ON

**Set as Default**  OFF

Callback URL*	Virtual IP*	
		Add

4. Configure these settings:

- **Name:** Type a name for the NetScaler Gateway instance.
- **Alias:** optionally include an alias.
- **External URL:** Type the publicly accessible URL for NetScaler Gateway. For example, <https://receiver.com>.
- **Logon Type:** In the list, click a logon type. Types include **Domain only**, **Security token only**, **Domain and security token**, **Certificate**, **Certificate and domain**, and **Certificate and security token**. The default is **Domain only**.

If you have multiple domains, **Domain only** will not work, you have to use **Certificate and domain**. For some options, for example, for **Domain only**, you cannot change the **Password** field.

For this logon type, the field is always **ON**. In addition, the default values for the **Password Required** field change based on the **Logon Type** you select.

If you use **Certificate and security token**, some additional configuration is required on NetScaler Gateway to support Secure Hub. For information, see [Configuring XenMobile for Certificate and Security Token Authentication](#).

- **Password Required:** Select whether you want to require password authentication. The default is **ON**.
- **Set as Default:** Select whether to use this NetScaler Gateway as the default. The default is **OFF**.

5. Click **Save**. The new NetScaler Gateway is added and appears in the table. You can edit or delete an instance by clicking the name in the list.

After adding the NetScaler Gateway instance, you can add a callback URL and specify a NetScaler Gateway VPN virtual IP address. **Note:** This is optional, but can be configured for additional security, especially when the XenMobile server is in the

DMZ.

1. In the NetScaler Gateway screen, select the NetScaler Gateway in the table, and click **Add**. The **Add New NetScaler Gateway** page appears.
2. In the table listing callback URLs, click **Add**.
3. Specify the Callback URL. This field represents the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) and verifies that the request originated from NetScaler Gateway. The callback URL must resolve to an IP address that is reachable from the XenMobile server, but does not have to be an external NetScaler Gateway URL.
4. Enter the NetScaler Gateway virtual IP address and then click **Save**.

# Domain or domain plus security token authentication

Feb 27, 2017

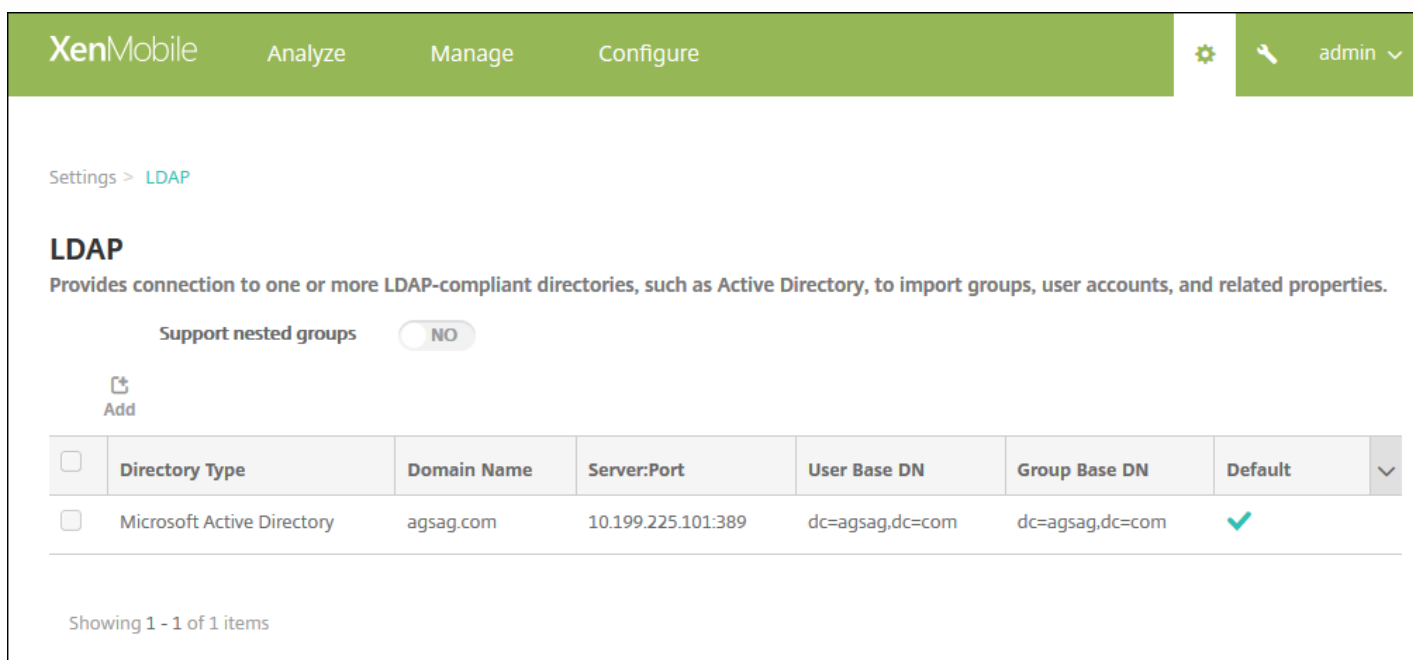
XenMobile supports domain-based authentication against one or more directories, such as Active Directory, that are compliant with the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP). You can configure a connection in XenMobile to one or more directories and then use the LDAP configuration to import groups, user accounts, and related properties.

LDAP is an open source, vendor-neutral application protocol for accessing and maintaining distributed directory information services over an Internet Protocol (IP) network. Directory information services are used to share information about users, systems, networks, services, and applications available throughout the network. A common usage of LDAP is to provide single sign-on (SSO) for users, where a single password (per user) is shared among multiple services, enabling a user to log on one time to a company website, and then be automatically logged into the corporate intranet.

A client starts an LDAP session by connecting to an LDAP server, referred to as a Directory System Agent (DSA). The client then sends an operation request to the server, and the server responds with the appropriate authentication.

To add LDAP connections in XenMobile

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Under **Server**, click **LDAP**. The **LDAP** page appears. You can [add](#), [edit](#), or [delete](#) LDAP-compliant directories from this page.



The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. A gear icon and a user profile 'admin' are in the top right. Below the navigation bar, the breadcrumb 'Settings > LDAP' is visible. The main heading is 'LDAP' with a sub-heading: 'Provides connection to one or more LDAP-compliant directories, such as Active Directory, to import groups, user accounts, and related properties.' There is a toggle for 'Support nested groups' set to 'NO'. An 'Add' button with a plus icon is present. Below this is a table with the following data:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Directory Type	Domain Name	Server:Port	User Base DN	Group Base DN	Default	▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	Microsoft Active Directory	agsag.com	10.199.225.101:389	dc=agsag,dc=com	dc=agsag,dc=com	✓	

At the bottom of the table area, it says 'Showing 1 - 1 of 1 items'.

To add an LDAP-compliant directory

1. On the **LDAP** page, click **Add**. The **Add LDAP** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Settings > LDAP > Add LDAP

### Add LDAP

Provides connection to one or more LDAP-compliant directories, such as Active Directory, to import groups, user accounts, and related properties.

Directory type*	<input type="text" value="Microsoft Active Directory"/>	
Primary server*	<input type="text" value="IP Address or FQDN"/>	
Secondary server	<input type="text" value="IP Address or FQDN"/>	
Port*	<input type="text" value="389"/>	
Domain name*	<input type="text"/>	
User base DN*	<input type="text" value="dc=example,dc=com"/>	<input style="float: right;" type="button" value="?"/>
Group base DN*	<input type="text" value="dc=example,dc=com"/>	<input style="float: right;" type="button" value="?"/>
User ID*	<input type="text"/>	
Password*	<input type="password"/>	
Domain alias*	<input type="text"/>	
XenMobile Lockout Limit	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input style="float: right;" type="button" value="?"/>
XenMobile Lockout Time	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input style="float: right;" type="button" value="?"/>
Global Catalog TCP Port	<input type="text" value="3268"/>	<input style="float: right;" type="button" value="?"/>
Global Catalog Root Context	<input type="text" value="dc=example,dc=com"/>	<input style="float: right;" type="button" value="?"/>
User search by	<input type="text" value="userPrincipalName"/>	
Use secure connection	<input type="radio" value="NO"/>	

2. Configure these settings:

- **Directory type:** In the list, click the appropriate directory type. The default is **Microsoft Active Directory**.
- **Primary server:** Type the primary server used for LDAP; you can enter either the IP address or the fully qualified domain name (FQDN).
- **Secondary server:** Optionally, if a secondary server has been configured, enter the IP address or FQDN for the secondary server. This server is a failover server used if the primary server cannot be reached.
- **Port:** Type the port number used by the LDAP server. By default, the port number is set to 389 for unsecured LDAP

connections. Use port number 636 for secure LDAP connections, use 3268 for Microsoft unsecure LDAP connections, or 3269 for Microsoft secure LDAP connections.

- **Domain name:** Type the domain name.
- **User base DN:** Type the location of users in Active Directory through a unique identifier. Syntax examples include: ou=users, dc=example, or dc=com.
- **Group base DN:** Type the location of groups in Active Directory. For example, cn=users, dc=domain, dc=net where cn=users represents the container name of the groups and dc represents the domain component of Active Directory.
- **User ID:** Type the user ID associated with the Active Directory account.
- **Password:** Type the password associated with the user.
- **Domain alias:** Type an alias for the domain name.
- **XenMobile Lockout Limit:** Type a number between 0 and 999 for the number of failed logon attempts. Setting this field to 0 means that XenMobile will never lock out the user based on failed logon attempts.
- **XenMobile Lockout Time:** Type a number between 0 and 99999 representing the number of minutes a user must wait after exceeding the lockout limit. Setting this field to 0 means that the user will not be forced to wait after a lockout.
- **Global Catalog TCP Port:** Type the TCP port number for the Global Catalog server. By default, the TCP port number is set to 3268; for SSL connections, use port number 3269.
- **Global Catalog Root Context:** Optionally, type the Global Root Context value used to enable a global catalog search in Active Directory. This search is in addition to the standard LDAP search, in any domain without the need to specify the actual domain name.
- **User search by:** In the list, click either **userPrincipalName**, or **sAMAccountName**. The default is **userPrincipalName**.
- **Use secure connection:** Select whether to use secure connections. The default is **NO**.

3. Click **Save**.

To edit an LDAP-compliant directory

1. In the **LDAP** table, select the directory you want to edit.

**Note:** When you select the check box next to a directory, the options menu appears above the LDAP list; when you click anywhere else in the list, the options menu appears on the right side of the listing.

2. Click **Edit**. The **Edit LDAP** page appears.

Settings > LDAP > Add LDAP

### Edit LDAP

Provides connection to one or more LDAP-compliant directories, such as Active Directory, to import groups, user accounts, and related properties.

Directory type*	Microsoft Active Directory	
Primary server*	10.61	
Secondary server	IP Address or FQDN	
Port*	389	
Domain name*	.net	
User base DN*	dc=,dc=net	?
Group base DN*	dc=,dc=net	?
User ID*	administrator@.net	
Password*		
Domain alias*	.net	
XenMobile Lockout Limit	0	?
XenMobile Lockout Time	1	?
Global Catalog TCP Port	3268	?
Global Catalog Root Context	dc=example,dc=com	?
User search by	userPrincipalName	
Use secure connection	<input type="radio"/> NO	

3. Change the following information as appropriate:

- **Directory type:** In the list, click the appropriate directory type..
- **Primary server:** Type the primary server used for LDAP; you can enter either the IP address or the fully qualified domain name (FQDN).
- **Secondary server:** Optionally, type the IP address or FQDN for the secondary server (if one has been configured).
- **Port:** Type the port number used by the LDAP server. By default, the port number is set to 389 for unsecured LDAP connections. Use port number 636 for secure LDAP connections, use 3268 for Microsoft unsecure LDAP connections, or 3269 for Microsoft secure LDAP connections.
- **Domain name:** You cannot change this field.
- **User base DN:** Type the location of users in Active Directory through a unique identifier. Syntax examples include: ou=users, dc=example, or dc=com.
- **Group base DN:** Type the group base DN group name specified as cn=groupname. For example, cn=users, dc=servername, dc=net where cn=users is the group name; DN and servername represents the name of the server running Active Directory.
- **User ID:** Type the user ID associated with the Active Directory account.
- **Password:** Type the password associated with the user.
- **Domain alias:** Type an alias for the domain name.
- **XenMobile Lockout Limit:** Type a number between 0 and 999 for the number of failed logon attempts. Setting this field to 0 means that XenMobile will never lock out the user based on failed logon attempts.
- **XenMobile Lockout Time:** Type a number between 0 and 99999 representing the number of minutes a user must wait after exceeding the lockout limit. Setting this field to 0 means that the user will not be forced to wait after a lockout.
- **Global Catalog TCP Port:** Type the TCP port number for the Global Catalog server. By default, the TCP port number is set to 3268; for SSL connections, use port number 3269.
- **Global Catalog Root Context:** Optionally, type the Global Root Context value used to enable a global catalog search in



Active Directory. This search is in addition to the standard LDAP search, in any domain without the need to specify the actual domain name.

- **User search by:** In the list, click either **userPrincipalName**, or **sAMAccountName**.
- **Use secure connection:** Select whether to use secure connections.

4. Click **Save** to save your changes or **Cancel** to leave the property unchanged.

To delete an LDAP-compliant directory

1. In the **LDAP** table, select the directory you want to delete.

**Note:** You can select more than one property to delete by selecting the check box next to each property.

2. Click **Delete**. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** again.

## Configure domain plus security token authentication

You can configure XenMobile to require users to authenticate with their LDAP credentials plus a one-time password, using the RADIUS protocol.

For optimal usability, you can combine this configuration with Citrix PIN and Active Directory password caching so users do not have to repeatedly enter their Active Directory user names and passwords. Users will need to enter user names and passwords for enrollment, password expiration, and account lockout.

Configure LDAP settings

Use of LDAP for authentication requires that you install an SSL certificate from a Certificate Authority on XenMobile. For information, see [Uploading certificates in XenMobile](#).

1. In **Settings**, click **LDAP**.
2. Select **Microsoft Active Directory** and then click **Edit**.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for LDAP. The breadcrumb is 'Settings > LDAP'. The title is 'LDAP' with a subtitle: 'Provides connection to one or more LDAP-compliant directories, such as Active Directory, to import groups, user accounts, and related properties.' There is a toggle for 'Support nested groups' set to 'NO'. Below are 'Add', 'Edit', and 'Delete' icons. A table lists the configured directory:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Directory Type	Domain Name	Server:Port	User Base DN	Group Base DN	Default
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Microsoft Active Directory	xmlab.net	10.207.86.51:389	dc=xmlab,dc=net	dc=xmlab,dc=net	✓

3. Verify that the Port is 636, which is for secure LDAP connections, or 3269 for Microsoft secure LDAP connections.

4. Change **Use secure connection** to **Yes**.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

**Port\*** 636

**Domain name\*** .net

**User base DN\*** dc=.net

**Group base DN\*** dc=.net

**User ID\*** administrator@.net

**Password\***

**Domain alias\*** .net

**XenMobile Lockout Limit** 0

**XenMobile Lockout Time** 1

**Global Catalog TCP Port** 3269

**Global Catalog Root Context** dc=example,dc=com

**User search by** userPrincipalName

**Use secure connection**

Cancel Save

## Configure NetScaler Gateway settings

The following steps assume that you already have added a NetScaler Gateway instance to XenMobile. To add a NetScaler Gateway instance, see [To configure a new NetScaler Gateway instance](#).

1. In **Settings**, click **NetScaler Gateway**.
2. Select the **NetScaler Gateway** and then click **Edit**.
3. From **Logon Type**, select **Domain and security token**.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Settings > NetScaler Gateway > Add New NetScaler Gateway

### Add New NetScaler Gateway

Name\* THAG

Alias

External URL\* https://ag-bm1.xs.citrix.com

Logon Type Domain and security token

Password Required

Set as Default

Callback URL*	Virtual IP*	<input type="button" value="Add"/>
---------------	-------------	------------------------------------

## Enable Citrix PIN and user password caching

To enable Citrix PIN and user password caching, go to **Settings > Client Properties** and select these check boxes: **Enable Citrix PIN Authentication** and **Enable User Password Caching**. For more information, see [Client properties](#).

## Configure NetScaler Gateway for domain and security token authentication

Configure NetScaler Gateway session profiles and policies for your virtual servers used with XenMobile. For information, see [Configuring Domain and Security Token Authentication for XenMobile](#) in the NetScaler Gateway documentation.

# Client certificate or certificate plus domain authentication

Feb 27, 2017

The default configuration for XenMobile is user name and password authentication. To add another layer of security for enrollment and access to XenMobile environment, consider using certificate-based authentication. In the XenMobile environment, this configuration is the best combination of security and user experience, with the best SSO possibilities coupled with security provided by two-factor authentication at NetScaler.

If you don't allow LDAP and use smart cards or similar methods, configuring certificates allows you to represent a smart card to XenMobile. Users then enroll using a unique PIN that XenMobile generates for them. After a user has access, XenMobile creates and deploys the certificate subsequently used to authenticate to the XenMobile environment.

You can use the NetScaler for XenMobile wizard to perform the configuration required for XenMobile when using NetScaler certificate-only authentication or certificate plus domain authentication. You can run the NetScaler for XenMobile wizard one time only.

In highly secure environments where usage of LDAP credentials outside of an organization in public or insecure networks is considered a prime security threat for the organization, two-factor authentication using a client certificate and a security token is an option. For information, see [Configuring XenMobile for Certificate and Security Token Authentication](#).

Client certificate authentication is available for XenMobile MAM mode (MAM-only) and ENT mode (when users enroll into MDM). Client certificate authentication isn't available for XenMobile ENT mode when users enroll into legacy MAM mode. To use client certificate authentication for XenMobile ENT and MAM modes, you must configure the Microsoft server, the XenMobile server, and then NetScaler Gateway. Follow these general steps, as described in this article.

On the Microsoft server:

1. Add a certificate snap-in to the Microsoft Management Console.
2. Add the template to Certificate Authority (CA).
3. Create a PFX certificate from the CA server.

On the XenMobile server:

1. Upload the certificate to XenMobile.
2. Create the PKI entity for certificate-based authentication.
3. Configure credentials providers.
4. Configure NetScaler Gateway to deliver a user certificate for authentication.

On NetScaler Gateway, configure as described in [Configuring Client Certificate or Client Certificate and Domain Authentication](#) in the NetScaler Gateway documentation.

## Prerequisites

- For Windows Phone 8.1 devices using client certificate authentication and SSL Offload, you must disable SSL session reuse for port 443 on both load balancing virtual servers in NetScaler. To do that, Run the following command on the

vservers for port 443:

```
set ssl vserver <ssl lb vserver> sessReuse DISABLE
```

**Note:** Disabling SSL session reuse disables some of the optimizations that NetScaler provides, which can result in a performance decrease on the NetScaler.

- To configure Certificate-based Authentication for Exchange ActiveSync, see this [Microsoft blog](#).
- If you are using private server certificates to secure the ActiveSync traffic to the Exchange Server, ensure that the mobile devices have all of the Root/Intermediate certificates. Otherwise, certificate-based authentication will fail during the mailbox setup in Secure Mail. In the Exchange IIS Console, you must:
  - Add a website for XenMobile use with Exchange and bind the web server certificate.
  - Use port 9443.
  - For that website, you must add two applications, one for "Microsoft-Server-ActiveSync" and one for "EWS". For both of those applications, under **SSL Settings**, select **Require SSL**.
- Make sure that Secure Mail is wrapped with the latest MDX Toolkit, if required for your deployment method.

## Add a certificate snap-in to the Microsoft Management Console

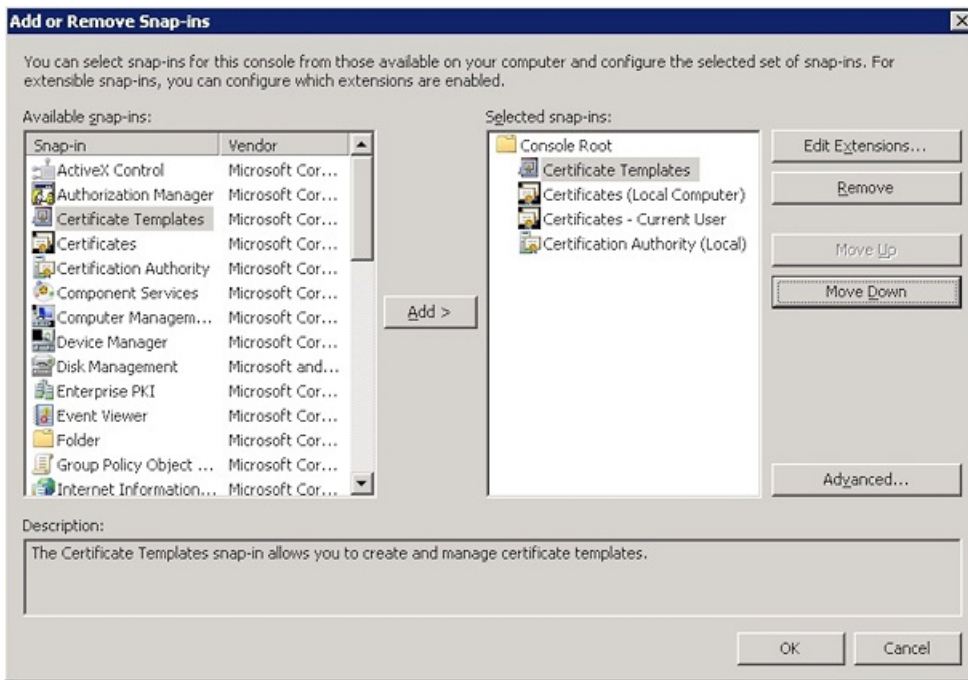
1. Open the console and then click **Add/Remove Snap-Ins**.
2. Add the following snap-ins:

**Certificate Templates**

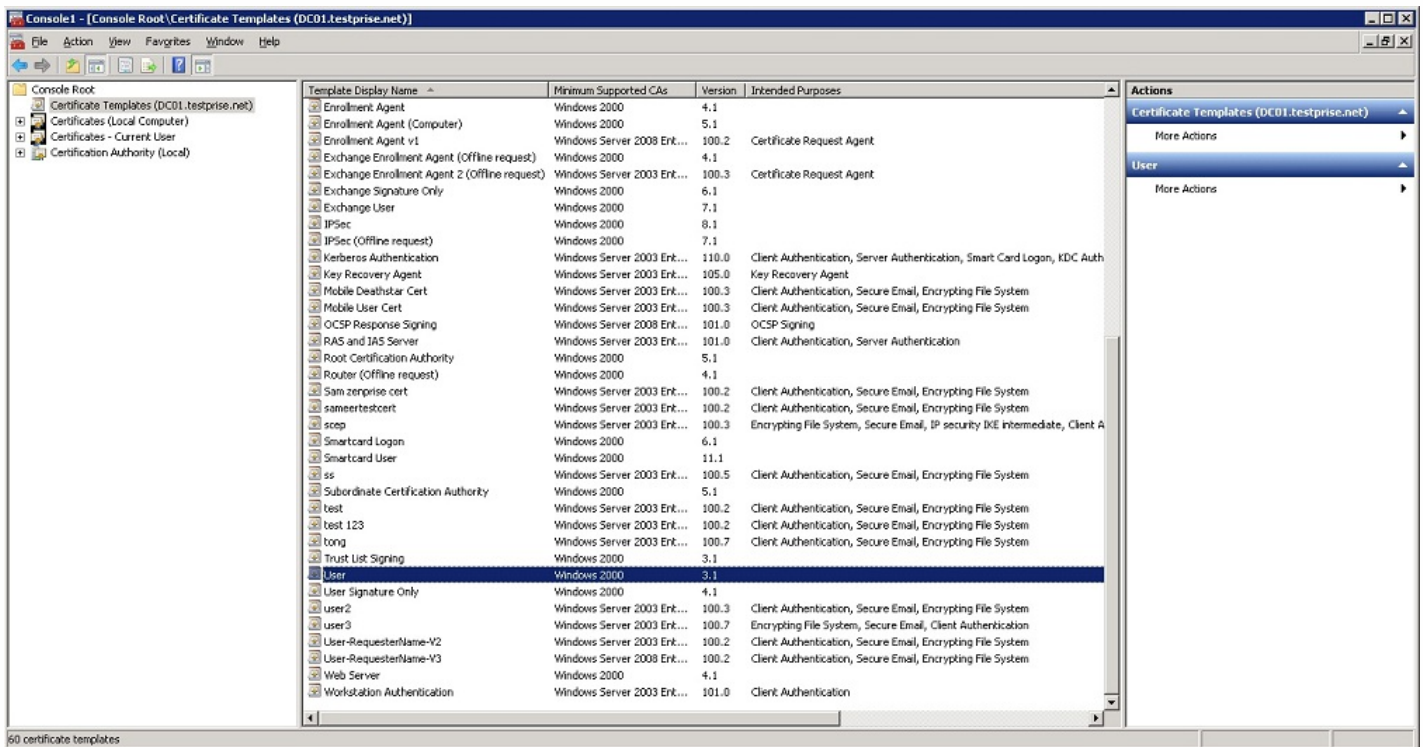
**Certificates (Local Computer)**

**Certificates - Current User**

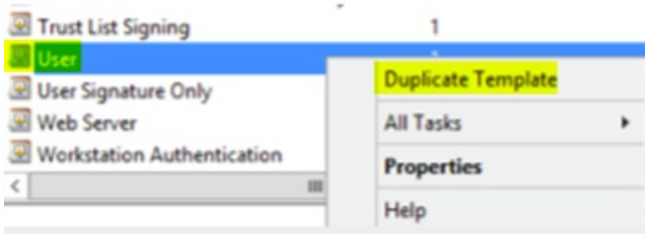
**Certificate Authority (Local)**



### 3. Expand **Certificate Templates**.



### 4. Select the **User** template and **Duplicate Template**.

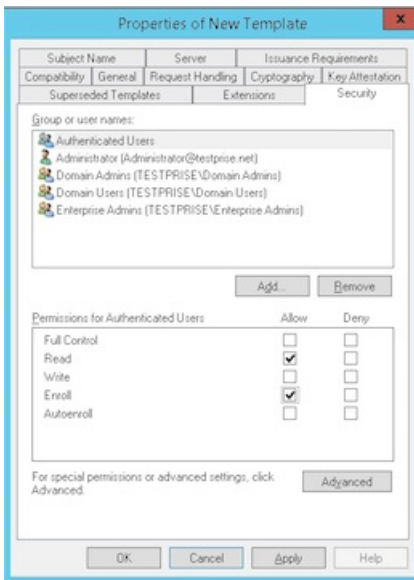


5. Provide the Template display name.

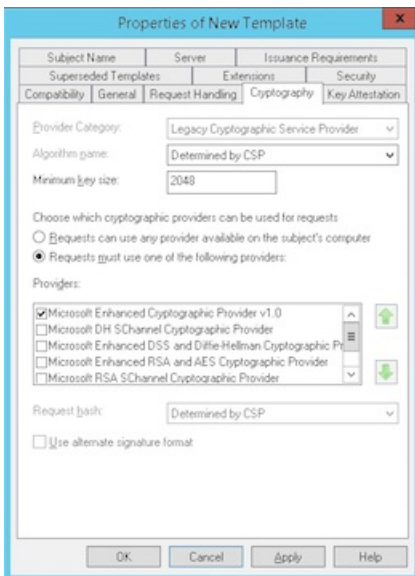
**Important:** Do not select the **Publish certificate in Active Directory** check box unless required. If this option is selected, all user client certificates will be pushed/created in Active Directory, which might clutter your Active Directory database.

6. Select **Windows 2003 Server** for the template type. In Windows 2012 R2 server, under **Compatibility**, select **Certificate authority** and set the recipient as **Windows 2003**.

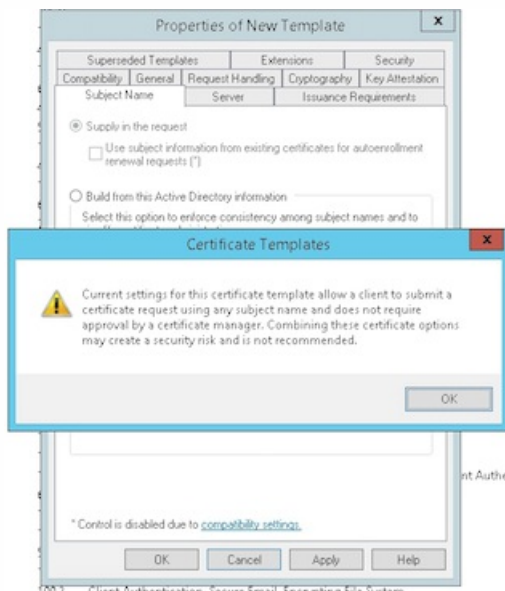
7. Under **Security**, select the **Enroll** option in the **Allow** column for the authenticated users.



8. Under **Cryptography**, make sure you provide the key size, which you will need to enter during XenMobile configuration.



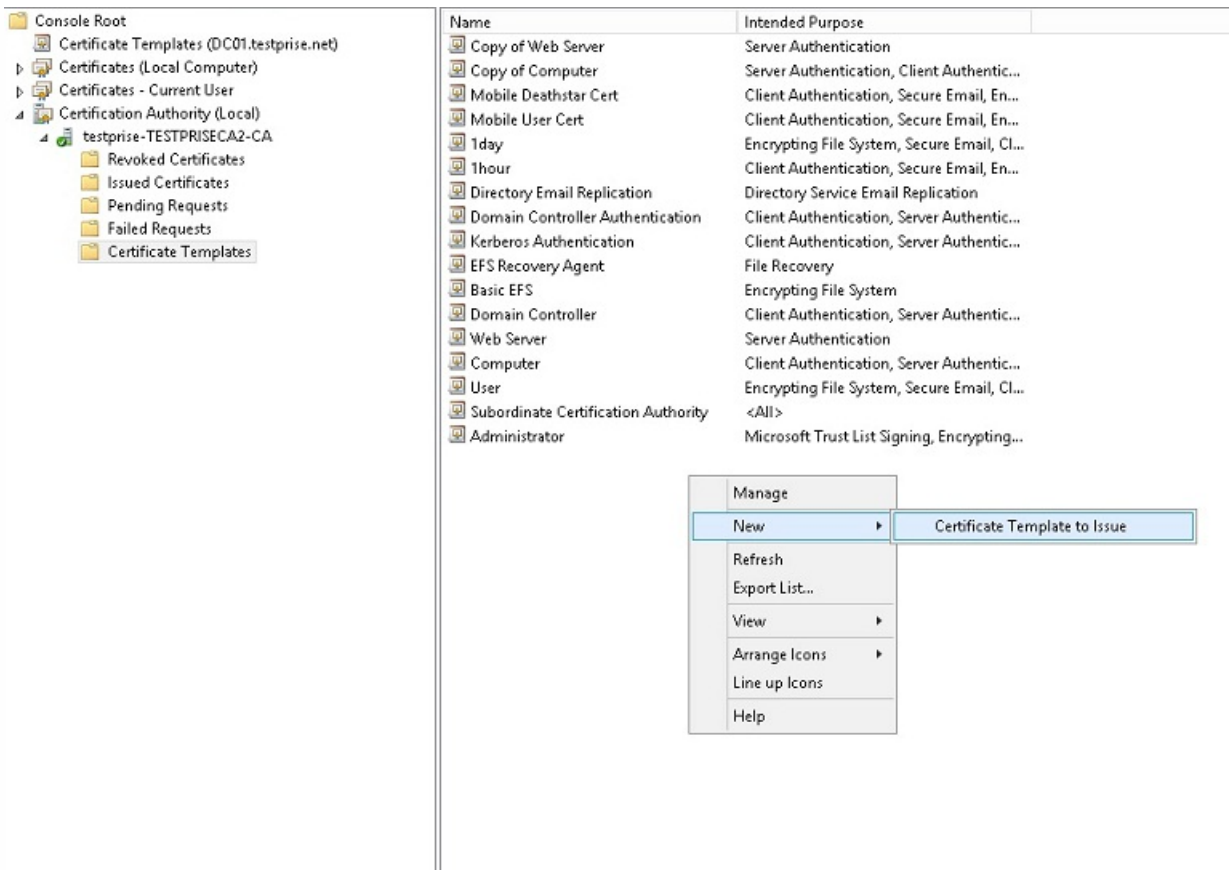
9. Under **Subject Name**, select **Supply in the request**. Apply the changes and then save.



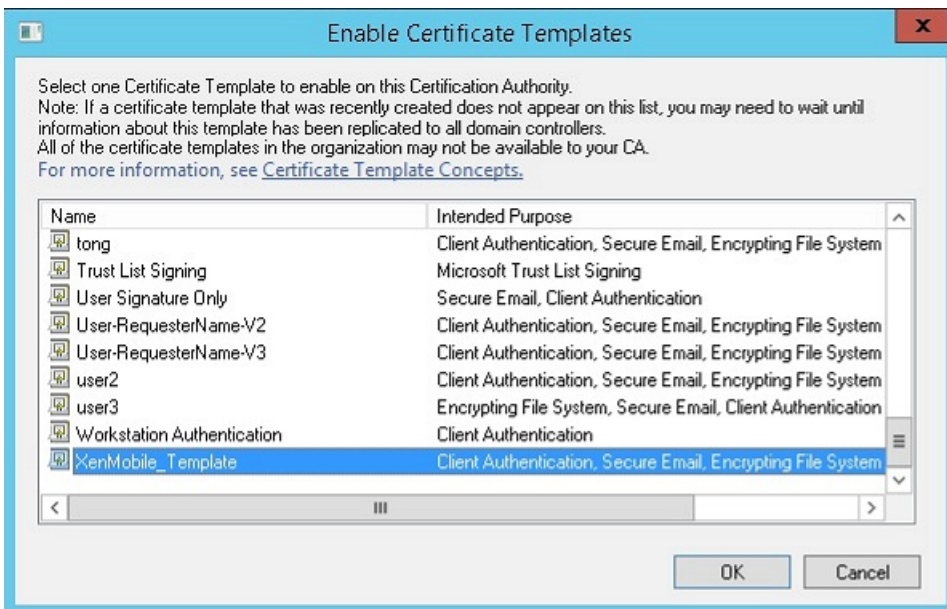
## Adding the template to Certificate Authority

1. Go to **Certificate Authority** and select **Certificate Templates**.
2. Right-click in the right pane and then select **New > Certificate Template to Issue**.





3. Select the template you created in the previous step and then click **OK** to add it into the **Certificate Authority**.



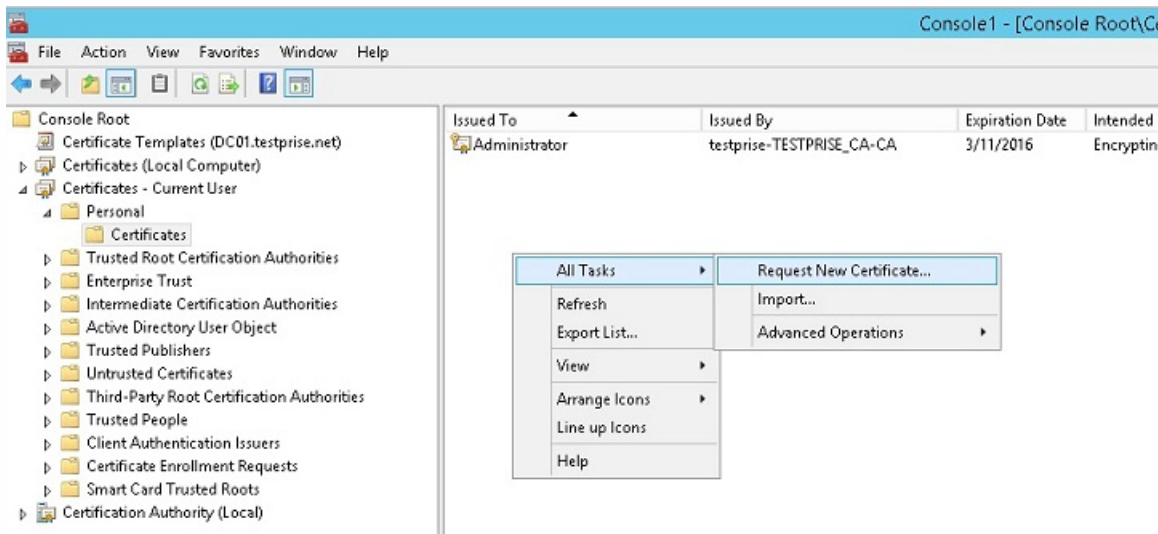
## Creating a PFX certificate from the CA server

1. Create a user .pfx cert using the service account with which you logged in. This .pfx will be uploaded into XenMobile,

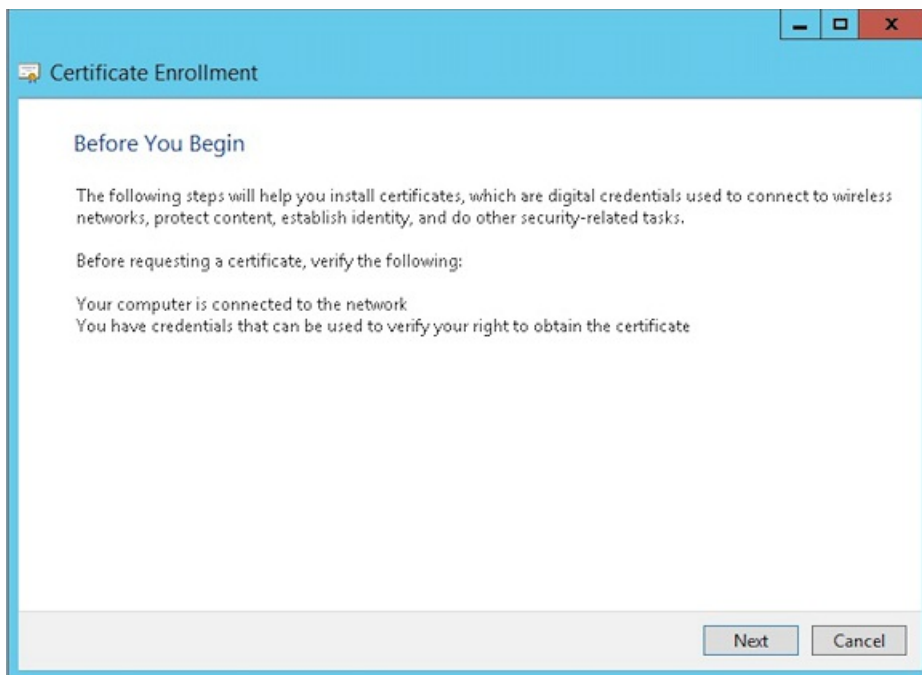
which will request a user certificate on behalf of the users who enroll their devices.

2. Under **Current User**, expand **Certificates**.

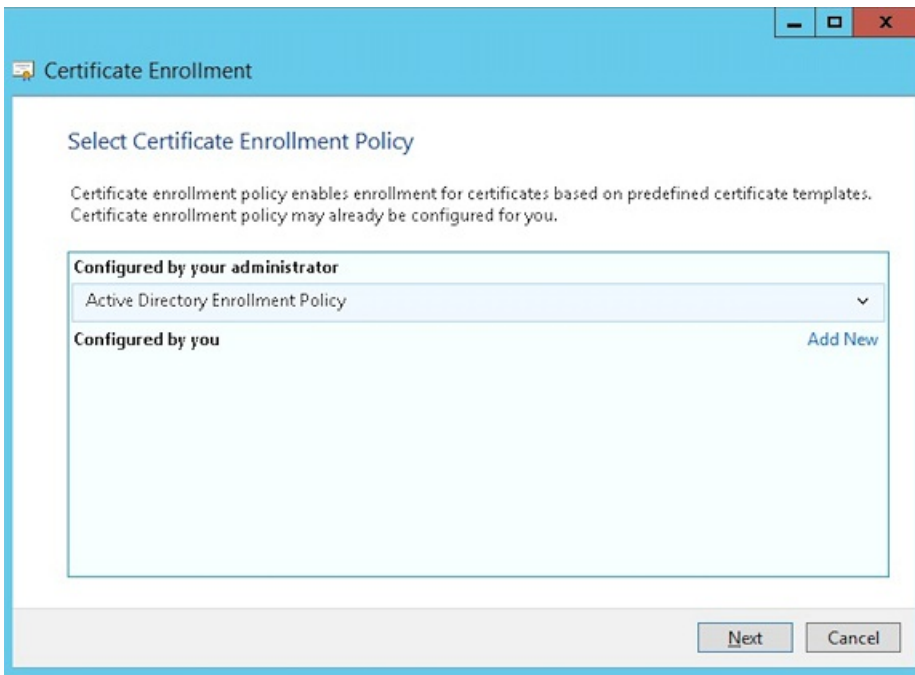
3. Right-click in the right pane and then click **Request New Certificate**.



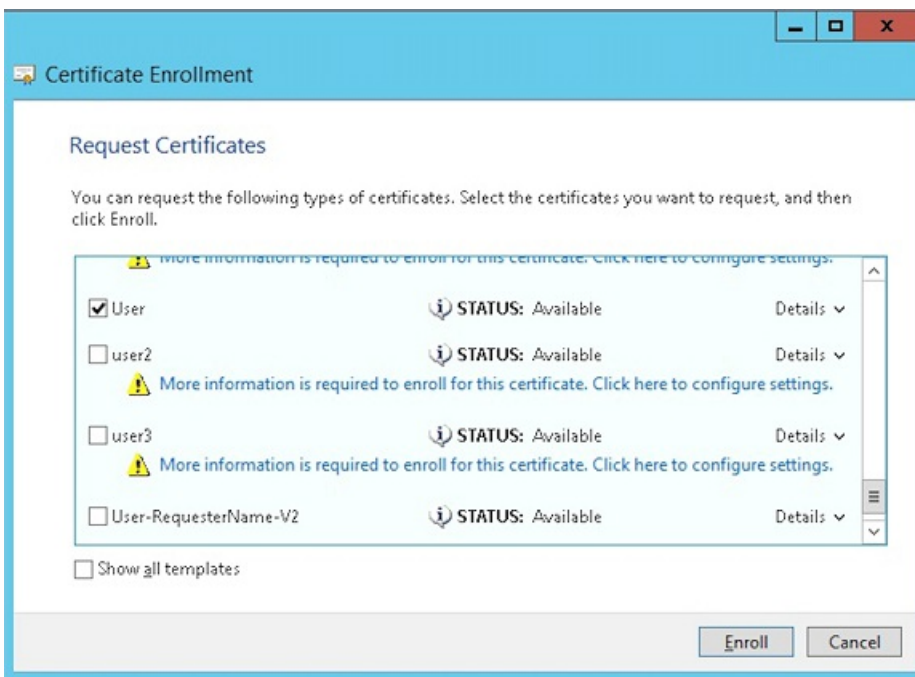
4. The **Certificate Enrollment** screen appears. Click **Next**.



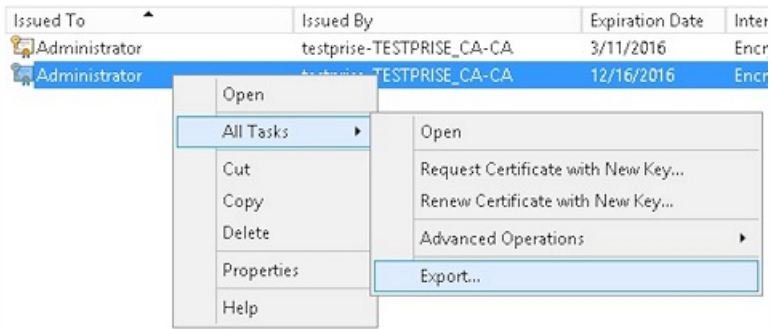
5. Select **Active Directory Enrollment Policy** and then click **Next**.



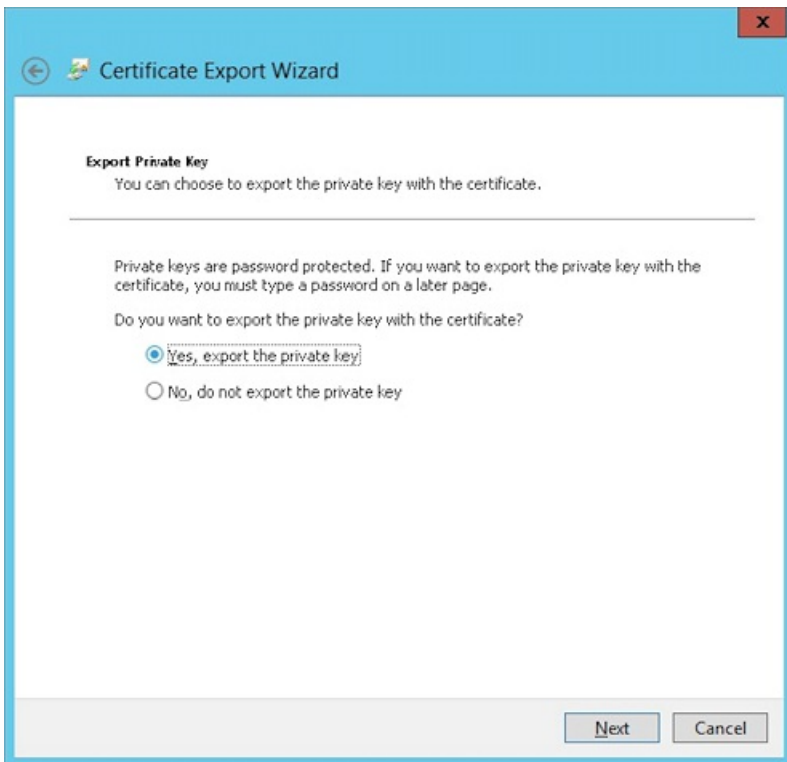
6. Select the **User** template and then click **Enroll**.



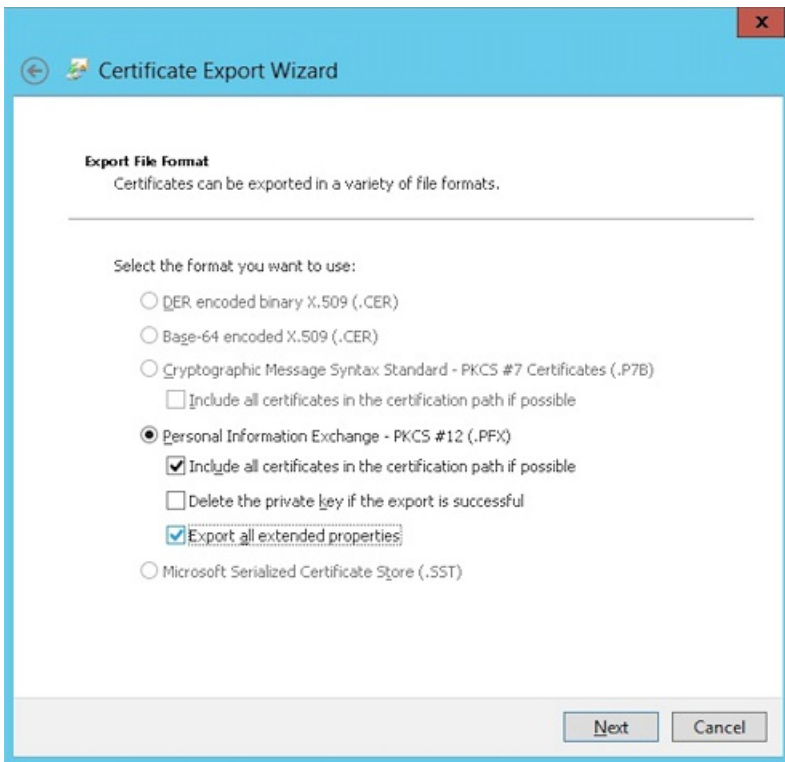
7. Export the .pfx file that you created in the previous step.



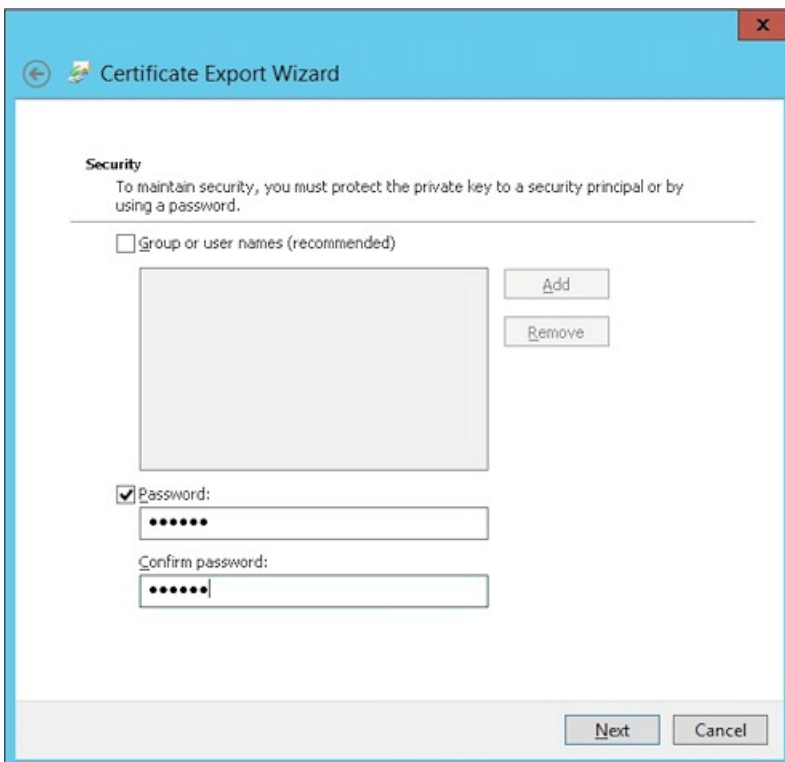
8. Click **Yes**, export the private key.



9. Select **Include all certificates in the certification path if possible** and select the **Export all extended properties** check box.



10. Set a password that you'll use when uploading this certificate into XenMobile.



11. Save the certificate onto your hard drive.

# Uploading the certificate to XenMobile

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** screen appears.

2. Click **Certificates** and then click **Import**.

3. Enter the following parameters:

- **Import:** Keystore
- **Keystore type:** PKCS#12
- **Use as:** Server
- **Keystore file:** Click Browse to select the .pfx certificate you just created.
- **Password:** Enter the password you created for this certificate.

**Import** ×

You can import certificates or keystores used by PKI components. You can import several certificates, but you can only have one certificate active at a time.

**Import** Keystore

**Keystore type** PKCS#12

**Use as** Server

**Keystore file\***  **Browse**

**Password\***

**Description**

**Cancel** **Import**

4. Click **Import**.

5. Verify that the certificate installed correctly. It should display as a User certificate.

## Creating the PKI entity for certificate-based authentication

1. In **Settings**, go to **More > Certificate Management > PKI Entities**.

2. Click **Add** and then click **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity**. The **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: General Information** screen appears.

3. Enter the following parameters:

- **Name:** Type any name
- **Web enrollment service root URL:** https://RootCA-URL/certsrv/  
Be sure to add the last slash (/) in the URL path.
- **certnew.cer page name:** certnew.cer (default value)
- **certfnsh.asp:** certfnsh.asp (default value)
- **Authentication type:** Client certificate
- **SSL client certificate:** Select the User Certificate to be used to issue the XenMobile client certificate.

Settings > PKI Entities > Microsoft Certificate Services Entity

### Microsoft Certificate Services Entity

- 1 General
- 2 Templates
- 3 HTTP Parameters
- 4 CA Certificates

### Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: General Information

Name\* test

Web enrollment service root URL\* https://10.10.10.10/certsrv/

certnew.cer page name\* certnew.cer ⓘ

certfnsh.asp\* certfnsh.asp ⓘ

Authentication type Client certificate ⓘ

SSL client certificate Select an option

Import SSL certificate

4. Under **Templates**, add the template that you created when configuring the Microsoft certificate. Be sure not to add spaces.

### Microsoft Certificate Services Entity

- 1 General
- 2 Templates
- 3 HTTP Parameters
- 4 CA Certificates

### Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: Templates

Specify the internal names of the templates your Microsoft CA supports. Every Credential Provider using this entity uses exactly one such template. When creating the provider, you will be prompted to select from the list defined here.

Templates*	Add
XMTemplate	

5. Skip HTTP Parameters and then click **CA Certificates**.

6. Select the root CA name that corresponds to your environment. This root CA is part of the chain imported from the XenMobile client certificate.





Credential Providers	Credential Providers: Certificate Signing Request						
1 General	<p>Configure the parameters for the key pair that is created during issuance, as well as the parameters of the new certificate.</p> <p>Key algorithm: RSA</p> <p>Key size*: 2048</p> <p>Signature algorithm: SHA1withRSA</p> <p>Subject name*: cn=Suser.username</p> <p>Subject alternative names</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Type</th> <th>Value*</th> <th>Add</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>User Principal name</td> <td>Suser.userprincipalname</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Type	Value*	Add	User Principal name	Suser.userprincipalname	
Type		Value*	Add				
User Principal name		Suser.userprincipalname					
2 Certificate Signing Request							
3 Distribution							
4 Revocation XenMobile							
5 Revocation PKI							
6 Renewal							

5. Click **Distribution** and enter the following parameters:

- **Issuing CA certificate:** Select the Issuing CA that signed the XenMobile Client Certificate.
- **Select distribution mode:** Select **Prefer centralized: Server-side key generation**.

Credential Providers	Credential Providers: Distribution
1 General	<p>Issuing CA certificate: ON-training-AD-CA, Serial: [redacted]</p> <p>Select distribution mode</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Prefer centralized: Server-side key generation</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Prefer distributed: Device-side key generation</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Only distributed: Device-side key generation</p>
2 Certificate Signing Request	
3 Distribution	
4 Revocation XenMobile	

6. For the next two sections -- **Revocation XenMobile** and **Revocation PKI** -- set the parameters as required. For the purpose of this article, both options are skipped.

7. Click **Renewal**.

8. For **Renew certificates when they expire**, select **ON**.

9. Leave all other settings as default or change them as required.

Credential Providers	Credential Providers: Renewal
1 General	<p>Renew certificates when they expire: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ON</p> <p>Renew when the certificate comes within*: 30 days of expiration</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Do not renew certificates that have already expired</p> <p>Send notification: <input type="checkbox"/> OFF</p> <p>Notify when the certificate nears expiration: <input type="checkbox"/> OFF</p>
2 Certificate Signing Request	
3 Distribution	
4 Revocation XenMobile	
5 Revocation PKI	
6 Renewal	

10. Click **Save**.

## Configuring Secure Mail to use certificate-based authentication

When you add Secure Mail to XenMobile, be sure to configure the Exchange settings under **App Settings**.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is selected, and the 'App Settings' section is expanded. The 'App Interaction' section shows 'Explicit logoff notification' set to 'Shared devices only'. The 'App Settings' section includes 'WorxMail Exchange Server' (mail.testlab.com:9443), 'WorxMail user domain' (testlab.com), 'Background network services' (mail.testlab.com:443,ap-southeast-1.pushre), and 'Background services ticket expiration' (168). The left sidebar shows 'MDX' with a list of options: '1 App Information', '2 Platform' (with 'iOS', 'Android', and 'Windows Phone' checked), '3 Approvals (optional)', and '4 Delivery Group Assignments (optional)'.

## Configuring NetScaler certificate delivery in XenMobile

1. Log on to the XenMobile console and click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** screen appears.

2. Under **Server**, click **NetScaler Gateway**.

3. If NetScaler Gateway isn't already added, click **Add** and specify the settings:

- **External URL:** https://YourNetScalerGatewayURL
- **Logon Type:** Certificate
- **Password Required:** OFF
- **Set as Default:** ON

4. For **Deliver user certificate for authentication**, select **On**.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Settings > NetScaler Gateway

## NetScaler Gateway

When you configure NetScaler Gateway, you configure the authentication mechanism for remote device access to the internal network. If you use NetScaler Gateway with StoreFront as the authentication server, you need to enable StoreFront as well.

Authentication

**Deliver user certificate for authentication**  ?

Credential provider

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Default	External URL	Logon Type	# of Callback URLs
--------------------------	------	---------	--------------	------------	--------------------

5. For **Credential Provider**, select a provider and then click **Save**.

6. If you will use sAMAccount attributes in the user certificates as an alternative to User Principal Name (UPN), configure the LDAP connector in XenMobile as follows: Go to **Settings > LDAP**, select the directory and click **Edit**, and select **sAMAccountName** in **User search by**.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

User base DN\*  ?

Group base DN\*  ?

User ID\*

Password\*

Domain alias\*

XenMobile Lockout Limit  ?

XenMobile Lockout Time  ?

Global Catalog TCP Port  ?

Global Catalog Root Context  ?

User search by

Use secure connection

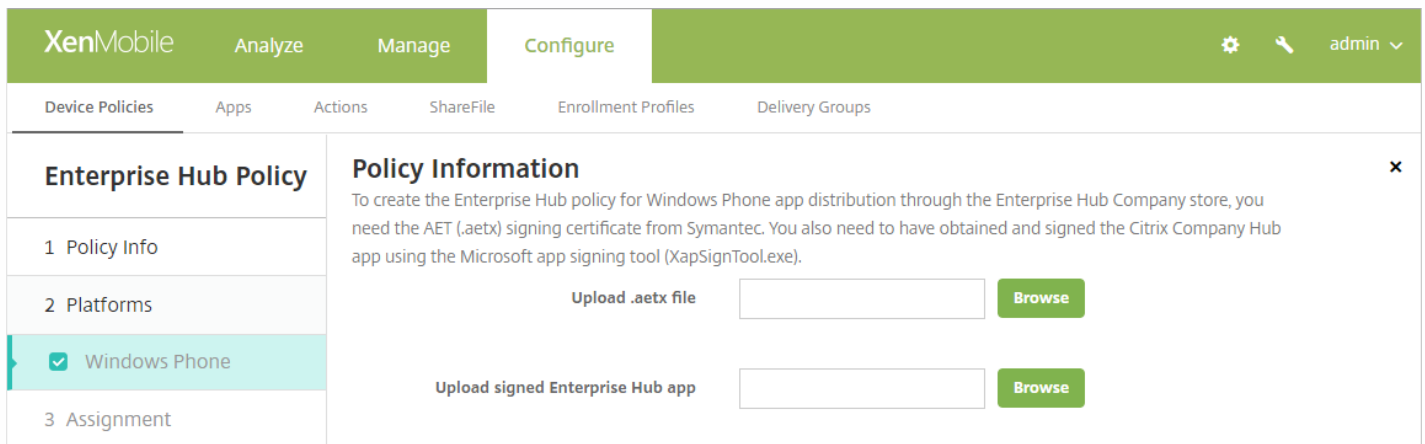
# Creating an Enterprise Hub policy for Windows Phone

For Windows Phone devices, you must create an Enterprise Hub device policy to deliver the AETX file and the Secure Hub client.

## Note

Ensure that both the AETX and Secure Hub files were using the same enterprise certificate from the certificate provider and the same Publisher ID from the Windows Store developer account.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**.
2. Click **Add** and then, under **More > XenMobile Agent**, click **Enterprise Hub**.
3. After naming the policy, be sure to select the correct .AETX file and signed Secure Hub app for the Enterprise Hub.



The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' (which is active). On the right, there are settings icons and a user profile 'admin'. Below the navigation bar, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' tab is selected, showing a list of policies. The 'Enterprise Hub Policy' is highlighted, and its configuration page is displayed. The page has a sidebar with sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', 'Windows Phone' is selected with a checkmark. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the following text: 'To create the Enterprise Hub policy for Windows Phone app distribution through the Enterprise Hub Company store, you need the AET (.aetx) signing certificate from Symantec. You also need to have obtained and signed the Citrix Company Hub app using the Microsoft app signing tool (XapSignTool.exe)'. Below this text are two upload fields: 'Upload .aetx file' and 'Upload signed Enterprise Hub app', each with a 'Browse' button.

4. Assign the policy to delivery groups and save it.

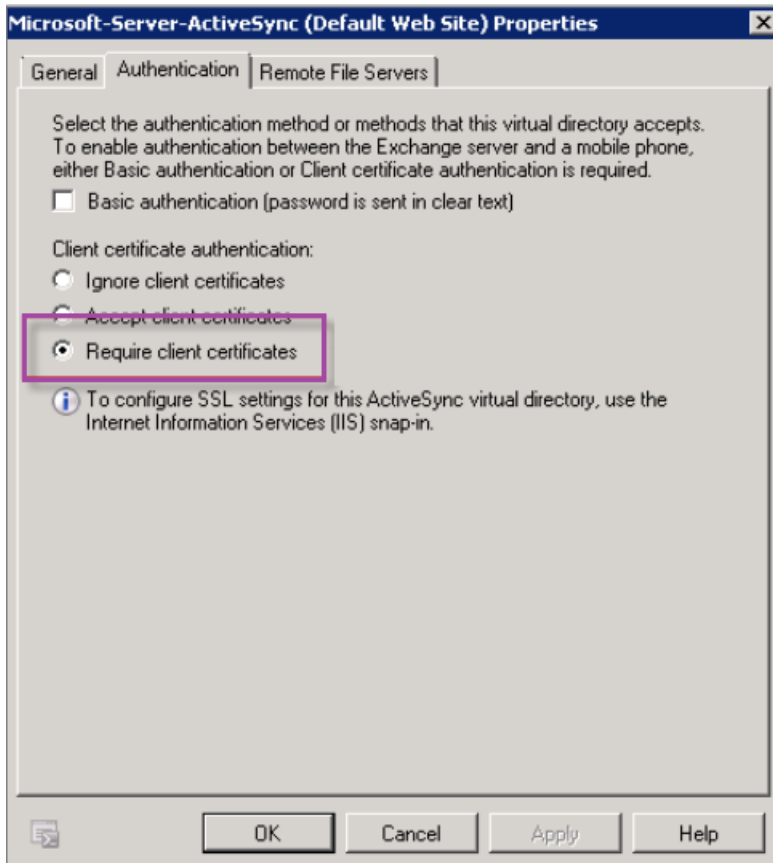
## Troubleshooting your client certificate configuration

After a successful configuration of the preceding configuration plus the NetScaler Gateway configuration, the user workflow is as follows:

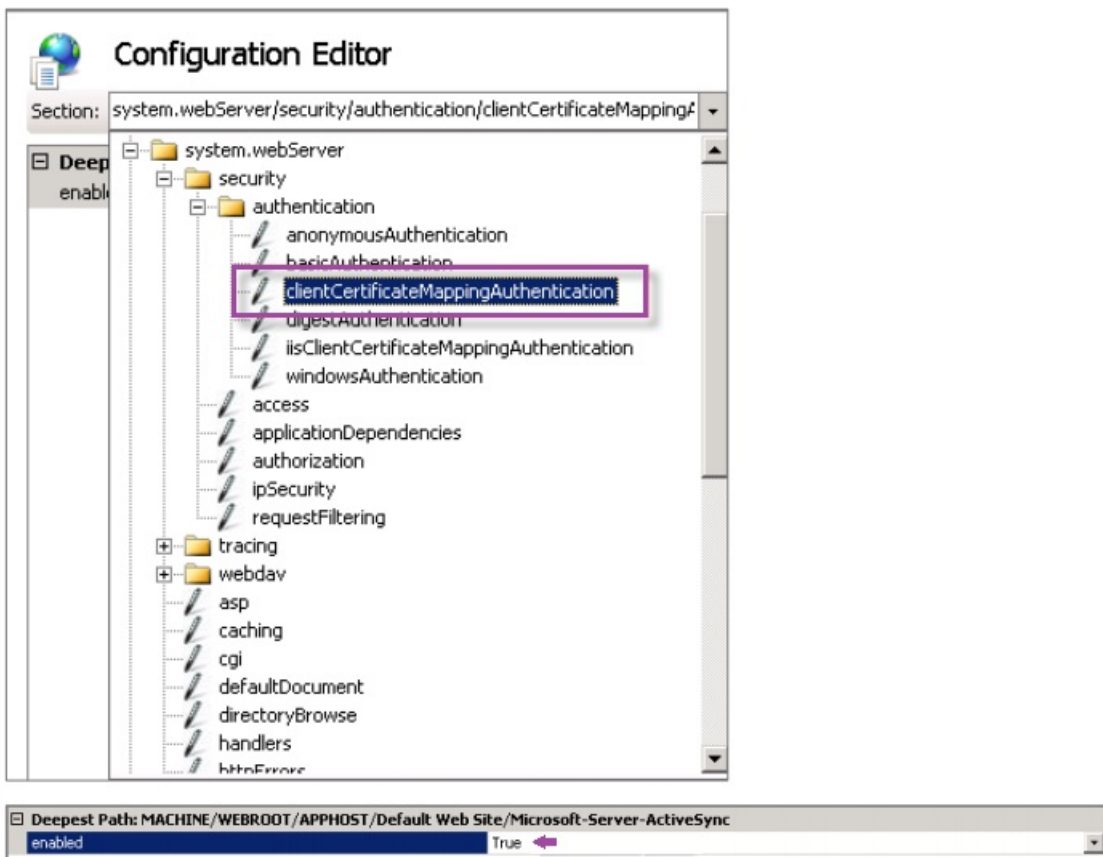
1. Users enroll their mobile device.
2. XenMobile prompts users to create a Citrix PIN.
3. Users are then redirected to the XenMobile Store.
4. When users start Secure Mail, XenMobile will not prompt them for user credentials in order to configure their mailbox. Instead, Secure Mail requests the client certificate from Secure Hub and submits it to Microsoft Exchange Server for authentication. If XenMobile prompts for credentials when users start Secure Mail, check your configuration.

If users can download and install Secure Mail, but during the mailbox configuration Secure Mail fails to finish the configuration:

1. If Microsoft Exchange Server ActiveSync is using private SSL server certificates to secure the traffic, verify that the Root/Intermediate certificates are installed on the mobile device.
2. Verify that the authentication type selected for ActiveSync is **Require client certificates**.



3. On Microsoft Exchange Server, check the **Microsoft-Server-ActiveSync** site to have client certificate mapping authentication enabled (by default it is disabled). The option is under **Configuration Editor > Security > Authentication**.



Note: After selecting **True**, be sure to click **Apply** for the changes take effect.

4. Check the NetScaler Gateway settings in the XenMobile console: Ensure that **Deliver user certificate for authentication** is **ON** and that **Credential provider** has the correct profile selected, as described earlier in "To configure NetScaler certificate delivery in XenMobile."

To determine if the client certificate was delivered to a mobile device:

1. In the XenMobile console, go to **Manage > Devices** and select the device.
2. Click **Edit** or **Show More**.
3. Go to the **Delivery Groups** section, and search for this entry:

**NetScaler Gateway Credentials : Requested credential, CertId=**

To validate whether client certificate negotiation is enabled:

1. Run this netsh command to show the SSL Certificate configuration that is bound on the IIS website:
 

```
netsh http show sslcert
```
2. If the value for **Negotiate Client Certificate** is **Disabled**, run the following command to enable it:
 

```
netsh http delete sslcert ipport=0.0.0.0:443
```

```
netsh http add sslcert ipport=0.0.0.0:443 certhash=cert_hash appid={app_id} certstorename=store_name  
verifyclientcertrevocation=Enable VerifyRevocationWithCachedClientCertOnly=Disable UsageCheck=Enable  
clientcertnegotiation=Enable
```

For Example:

```
netsh http add sslcert ipport=0.0.0.0:443 certhash=609da5df280d1f54a7deb714fb2c5435c94e05da appid=  
{4dc3e181-e14b-4a21-b022-59fc669b0914} certstorename=ExampleCertStoreName  
verifyclientcertrevocation=Enable VerifyRevocationWithCachedClientCertOnly=Disable UsageCheck=Enable  
clientcertnegotiation=Enable
```

If you cannot deliver Root/Intermediate certificates to a Windows Phone 8.1 device through XenMobile:

- Send Root/Intermediate certificates (.cer) files through email to the Windows Phone 8.1 device and install them directly.

If Secure Mail won't install successfully on Windows Phone 8.1:

- Verify that the Application Enrollment Token (.AETX) file is delivered through XenMobile using the Enterprise Hub device policy.
- Verify that the Application Enrollment Token was created using the same Enterprise Certificate from the certificate provider used to wrap Secure Mail and sign Secure Hub apps.
- Verify that the same Publisher ID is being used to sign and wrap Secure Hub, Secure Mail, and the Application Enrollment Token.

# PKI entities

Feb 27, 2017

A XenMobile Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) entity configuration represents a component performing actual PKI operations (issuance, revocation, and status information). These components may either be internal to XenMobile, in which case they are called discretionary, or external to XenMobile if they are part of your corporate infrastructure.

XenMobile supports the following types of PKI entities:

- Discretionary Certificate Authorities (CAs)
- Generic PKIs (GPKIs)
- Microsoft Certificate Services

XenMobile supports the following CA servers:

- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2012
- Windows Server 2012 R2

## Common PKI Concepts

Regardless of its type, every PKI entity has a subset of the following capabilities:

- sign: Issuing a new certificate, based on a Certificate Signing Request (CSR).
- fetch: Recovering an existing certificate and key pair.
- revoke: Revoking a client certificate.

## About CA Certificates

When you configure a PKI entity, you must indicate to XenMobile which CA certificate is going to be the signer of certificates issued by (or recovered from) that entity. One and the same PKI entity may return (fetched or newly signed) certificates signed by any number of different CAs. You must provide the certificate of each of these CAs as part of the PKI entity configuration. To do so, you upload the certificates to XenMobile and then reference them in the PKI entity. For discretionary CAs, the certificate is implicitly the signing CA certificate, but for external entities, you must specify the certificate manually.

## Generic PKI

The Generic PKI (GPKI) protocol is a proprietary XenMobile protocol running over a SOAP Web Service layer for purposes of uniform interfacing with various PKI solutions. The GPKI protocol defines the following three fundamental PKI operations:

- sign: The adapter is capable of taking CSRs, transmitting them to the PKI, and returning newly signed certificates.
- fetch: The adapter is capable of retrieving (recovering) existing certificates and key pairs (depending on input parameters) from the PKI.
- revoke: The adapter is able to cause the PKI to revoke a given certificate.

The receiving end of the GPKI protocol is the GPKI adapter. The adapter translates the fundamental operations to the specific type of PKI for which it was built. In other words, there is a GPKI adapter for RSA, another for EnTrust, and so on.

The GPKI adapter, as a SOAP Web Services endpoint, publishes a self-describing Web Services Description Language (WSDL)



definition. Creating a GPKI PKI entity amounts to providing XenMobile with that WSDL definition, either through a URL or by uploading the file itself.

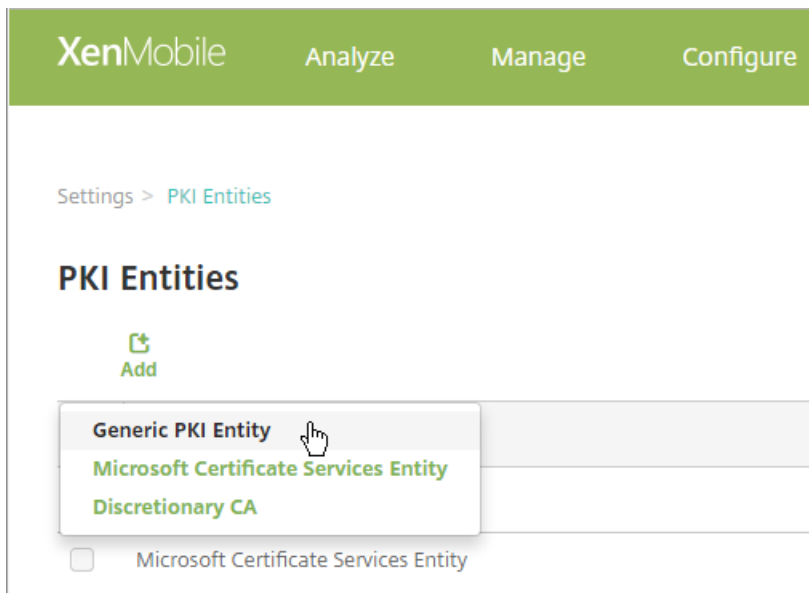
Support for each of the PKI operations in an adapter is optional. If an adapter supports a given operation, the adapter is said to have the corresponding capability (sign, fetch, or revoke). Each of these capabilities may be associated with a set of user parameters.

User parameters are parameters that are defined by the GPKI adapter for a specific operation and for which you need to provide values to XenMobile. XenMobile determines which operations the adapter supports (which capabilities it has) and which parameters the adapter requires for each of the operations by parsing the WSDL file. If you choose, use SSL client authentication to secure the connection between XenMobile and the GPKI adapter.

To add a generic PKI

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Settings > PKI Entities**.
2. On the **PKI Entities** page, click **Add**.

A menu of PKI entity types appears.



3. Click **Generic PKI Entity**.

The Generic PKI Entity: General Information page appears.

4. On the **Generic PKI Entity: General Information** page, do the following:

- **Name:** Type a descriptive name for the PKI entity.
- **WSDL URL:** Type the location of the WSDL describing the adapter.
- **Authentication type:** Click the authentication method you want to use.
- **None**
- **HTTP Basic:** Provide the user name and password needed to connect to the adapter.
- **Client certificate:** Select the correct SSL client certificate.

5. Click **Next**.

The Generic PKI Entity: Adapter Capabilities page appears.

6. On the **Generic PKI Entity: Adapter Capabilities** page, review the capabilities and parameters associated with your adapter and then click **Next**.

The **Generic PKI Entity: Issuing CA Certificates** page appears.

7. On the Generic PKI Entity: Issuing CA Certificates page, select the certificates you want to use for the entity.

**Note:** Although entities may return certificates signed by different CAs, all certificates obtained through a given certificate provider must be signed by the same CA. Accordingly, when configuring the **Credential Provider** setting, on the **Distribution** page, select one of the certificates configured here.

8. Click **Save**.

The entity appears on the PKI Entities table.

## Microsoft Certificate Services

XenMobile interfaces with Microsoft Certificate Services through its web enrollment interface. XenMobile only supports the issuing of new certificates through that interface (the equivalent of the GPKI sign capability).

To create a Microsoft CA PKI entity in XenMobile, you must specify the base URL of the Certificate Services web interface. If you choose, use SSL client authentication to secure the connection between XenMobile and the Certificate Services web interface.

To add a Microsoft Certificate Services entity

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console and then click **PKI Entities**.
2. On the **PKI Entities** page, click **Add**.

A menu of PKI entity types appears.

3. Click **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity**.

The **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: General Information** page appears.

4. On the **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: General Information** page, configure these settings:

- **Name:** Type a name for your new entity, which you will use later to refer to that entity. Entity names must be unique.
- **Web enrollment service root URL:** Type the base URL of your Microsoft CA web enrollment service; for example, <https://192.0.2.13/certsrv/>. The URL may use plain HTTP or HTTP-over-SSL.
- **certnew.cer page name:** The name of the certnew.cer page. Use the default name unless you have renamed it for some reason.
- **certfnsh.asp:** The name of the certfnsh.asp page. Use the default name unless you have renamed it for some reason.
- **Authentication type:** Choose the authentication method you want to use.
  - **None**
  - **HTTP Basic:** Type the user name and password needed to connect.
  - **Client certificate:** Choose the correct SSL client certificate.

5. Click **Test Connection** to ensure that the server is accessible. If it is not accessible, a message appears, stating that the connection failed. Check your configuration settings.

6. Click **Next**.

The **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: Templates** page appears. On this page, you specify the internal names of the templates your Microsoft CA supports. When creating credential providers, you select a template from the list defined here. Every credential provider using this entity uses exactly one such template.

For Microsoft Certificate Services templates requirements, refer to the Microsoft documentation for your Microsoft Server version. XenMobile doesn't have requirements for the certificates it distributes other than the certificate formats noted in [Certificates](#).

7. On the **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: Templates** page, click **Add**, type the name of the template and then click **Save**. Repeat this step for each template you want to add.

8. Click **Next**.

The **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: HTTP parameters** page appears. On this page, you specify custom parameters that XenMobile should inject in the HTTP request to the Microsoft Web Enrollment interface. This will only be useful if you have customized scripts running on the CA.

9. On the **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: HTTP parameters** page, click **Add**, type the name and value of the HTTP parameters you want to add and then click **Next**.

The **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: CA Certificates** page appears. On this page, you are required to inform XenMobile of the signers of the certificates that the system will obtain through this entity. When your CA certificate is renewed, update it in XenMobile and then the change is applied to the entity transparently.

10. On the **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: CA Certificates** page, select the certificates you want to use for this entity.

11. Click **Save**.

The entity appears on the PKI Entities table.

### NetScaler Certificate Revocation List (CRL)

XenMobile supports Certificate Revocation List (CRL) only for a third party Certificate Authority. If you have a Microsoft CA configured, XenMobile uses NetScaler to manage revocation. When you configure client certificate-based authentication, consider whether you need to configure the NetScaler Certificate Revocation List (CRL) setting, **Enable CRL Auto Refresh**. This step ensures that the user of a device in MAM-only mode can't authenticate using an existing certificate on the device; XenMobile re-issues a new certificate, because it doesn't restrict a user from generating a user certificate if one is revoked. This setting increases the security of PKI entities when the CRL checks for expired PKI entities.

### Discretionary CAs

A discretionary CA is created when you provide XenMobile with a CA certificate and the associated private key. XenMobile handles certificate issuance, revocation, and status information internally, according to the parameters you specify.

When configuring a discretionary CA, you have the option to activate Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) support for that CA. If, and only if you enable OCSP support, the CA adds an id-pe-authorityInfoAccess extension to the certificates that the CA issues, pointing to the XenMobile internal OCSP Responder at the following location.

<https://server/instance/ocsp>

When configuring the OCSP service, you must specify an OCSP signing certificate for the discretionary entity in question. You can use the CA certificate itself as the signer. If you want to avoid the unnecessary exposure of your CA private key (recommended), create a delegate OCSP signing certificate, signed by the CA certificate and include an id-kp-OCSPSigning extendedKeyUsage extension.

The XenMobile OCSP responder service supports basic OCSP responses and the following hashing algorithms in requests:

- SHA-1
- SHA-224
- SHA-256
- SHA-384
- SHA-512

Responses are signed with SHA-256 and the signing certificate key algorithm (DSA, RSA or ECDSA).

### To add discretionary CAs

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console and then click **More > PKI Entities**.
2. On the **PKI Entities** page, click **Add**.

A menu of PKI entity types appears.

3. Click **Discretionary CA**.

The **Discretionary CA: General Information** page appears.

4. On the **Discretionary CA: General Information** page, do the following:

- **Name:** Type a descriptive name for the discretionary CA.
- **CA certificate to sign certificate requests:** Click a certificate for the discretionary CA to use to sign certificate requests. This list of certificates is generated from the CA certificates with private keys you uploaded at XenMobile at **Configure > Settings > Certificates**.

5. Click **Next**.

The **Discretionary CA: Parameters** page appears.

6. On the **Discretionary CA: Parameters** page, do the following:

- **Serial number generator:** The discretionary CA generates serial numbers for the certificates it issues. From this list, click **Sequential** or **Non-sequential** to determine how the numbers are generated.
- **Next serial number:** Type a value to determine the next number issued.
- **Certificate valid for:** Type the number of days the certificate is valid.
- **Key usage:** Identify the purpose of the certificates issued by the discretionary CA by setting the appropriate keys to **On**. Once set, the CA is limited issuing certificates for those purposes.
- **Extended key usage:** To add additional parameters, click **Add**, type the key name and then click **Save**.

7. Click **Next**.

The **Discretionary CA: Distribution** page appears.

8. On the **Discretionary CA: Distribution** page, select a distribution mode:

- **Centralized: server-side key generation.** Citrix recommends the centralized option. The private keys are generated and stored on the server and distributed to user devices.
- **Distributed: device-side key generation.** The private keys are generated on the user devices. This distributed mode uses SCEP and requires an RA encryption certificate with the keyUsage keyEncryption and an RA signing certificate with the KeyUsage digitalSignature. The same certificate can be used for both encryption and signing.

9. Click **Next**.

The **Discretionary CA: Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP)** page appears.

On the **Discretionary CA: Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP)** page, do the following:

- If you want to add an AuthorityInfoAccess (RFC2459) extension to the certificates signed by this CA, set **Enable OCSP support for this CA** to **On**. This extension points to the CA's OCSP responder at <https://server/instance/ocsp>.
- If you enabled OCSP support, select an OCSP signing CA certificate. This list of certificates is generated from the CA certificates you uploaded to XenMobile.

10. Click **Save**.

The discretionary CA appears on the PKI Entities table.

# Credential providers

Feb 27, 2017

Credential providers are the actual certificate configurations you use in the various parts of the XenMobile system. They define the sources, parameters, and life cycles of your certificates, whether the certificates are part of device configurations or are standalone - that is, pushed as is to the device.

Device enrollment constrains the certificate life cycle. That is, XenMobile does not issue certificates before enrollment, although XenMobile may issue some certificates as part of enrollment. In addition, certificates issued from the internal PKI within the context of one enrollment are revoked when the enrollment is revoked. After the management relationship terminates, no valid certificate remains.

You may use one credential provider configuration in multiple places, to the effect that one configuration may govern any number of certificates at the same time. The unity, then, is on the deployment resource and the deployment. For example, if Credential Provider P is deployed to device D as part of configuration C, then the issuance settings for P determine the certificate that is deployed to D. Likewise, the renewal settings for D apply when C is updated, and the revocation settings for D also apply when C is deleted or when D is revoked.

With this in mind, the credential provider configuration in XenMobile does the following:

- Determines the source of certificates.
- Determines the method in which certificates are obtained: Signing a new certificate or fetching (recovering) an existing certificate and key pair.
- Determines the parameters for issuance or recovery. For example, Certificate Signing Request (CSR) parameters, such as key size, key algorithm, distinguished name, certificate extensions, and so on.
- Determines the manner in which certificates are delivered to the device.
- Determines revocation conditions. Although all certificates are revoked in XenMobile when the management relationship is severed, the configuration may specify an earlier revocation; for instance, when the associated device configuration is deleted. In addition, under some conditions, the revocation of the associated certificate in XenMobile may be sent to the back-end public key infrastructure (PKI); that is, its revocation in XenMobile may cause its revocation on the PKI.
- Determines renewal settings. Certificates obtained through a given credential provider may be automatically renewed when they near expiration, or, separately from that situation, notifications may be issued when that expiration approaches.

To what extent various configuration options are available mainly depends on the type of PKI Entity and issuance method that you select for a credential provider.

## Methods of Certificate Issuance

You can obtain a certificate, which is referred to as methods of issuance in two ways:

- **sign.** With this method, the issuance involves creating a new private key, creating a CSR, and submitting the CSR to a Certificate Authority (CA) for signature. XenMobile supports the sign method for the three PKI entities (MS Certificate Services Entity, Generic PKI and Discretionary CA).
- **fetch.** With this method, the issuance, for the purposes of XenMobile, is a recovery of an existing key pair. XenMobile supports the fetch method only for Generic PKI.

A credential provider uses either the sign or fetch method of issuance. The selected method affects the available configuration options. Notably, CSR configuration and distributed delivery are available only if the issuing method is sign. A fetched certificate is always sent to the device as a PKCS#12, the equivalent of centralized delivery mode for the sign method.

## Certificate Delivery

Two modes of certificate delivery are available in XenMobile: centralized and distributed. Distributed mode uses Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) and is only available in situations in which the client supports the protocol (iOS only). Distributed mode is mandatory in some situations.

For a credential provider to support distributed (SCEP-assisted) delivery, a special configuration step is necessary: Setting up Registration Authority (RA) certificates. The RA certificates are required, because, if you use the SCEP protocol, XenMobile acts like a delegate (a registrar) to the actual certificate authority. XenMobile must prove to the client that it has the authority to act as such. That authority is established by uploading the previously mentioned certificates to XenMobile.

Two distinct certificate roles are required (although a single certificate can fulfill both requirements): RA signature and RA encryption. The constraints for these roles are as follows:

- The RA signing certificate must have the X.509 key usage digital signature.
- The RA encryption certificate must have the X.509 key usage key encipherment.

To configure the credential provider RA certificates, you must upload the certificates to XenMobile and then link to them in the credential provider.

A credential provider is considered to support distributed delivery only if the provider has a certificate configured for certificate roles. You can configure each credential provider to either prefer centralized mode, to prefer distributed mode, or to require distributed mode. The actual result depends on the context: If the context does not support distributed mode, but the credential provider requires this mode, deployment fails. Likewise, if the context mandates distributed mode, but the credential provider does not support distributed mode, deployment fails. In all other cases, the preferred setting is honored.

The following table shows SCEP distribution throughout XenMobile:

<b>Context</b>	<b>SCEP supported</b>	<b>SCEP required</b>
iOS Profile Service	Yes	Yes
iOS mobile device management enrollment	Yes	No
iOS configuration profiles	Yes	No
SHTTP enrollment	No	No
SHTTP configuration	No	No
Windows Phone and Tablet enrollment	No	No
Windows Phone and Tablet configuration	No, except for the Wifi device policy, which is supported for Windows Phone 8.1 and the latest	No

<b>Context</b> Certificate Revocation	Windows 10 release <b>SCEP supported</b>	<b>SCEP required</b>
--	---	--------------------------

There are three types of revocation.

- **Internal revocation.** Internal revocation affects the certificate status as maintained by XenMobile. This status is taken into account when XenMobile evaluates a certificate presented to it, or when XenMobile has to provide OCSP status information for some certificate. The credential provider configuration determines how this status is affected under various conditions. For instance, the credential provider may specify that certificates obtained through the certificate provider should be flagged as revoked when the certificates have been deleted from the device.
- **Externally propagated revocation.** Also known as Revocation XenMobile, this type of revocation applies to certificates obtained from an external PKI. The certificate is revoked on the PKI when the certificate is internally revoked by XenMobile, under the conditions defined by the credential provider configuration. The call to perform the revocation requires a revoke-capable General PKI (GPKI) entity.
- **Externally induced revocation.** Also known as Revocation PKI, this type of revocation also only applies to certificates obtained from an external PKI. Whenever XenMobile evaluates a given certificate status, XenMobile queries the PKI as to that status. If the certificate is revoked, XenMobile internally revokes the certificate. This mechanism uses the OCSP protocol.

These three types are not exclusive, but rather apply together: The internal revocation is caused either by an external revocation or by independent findings, and in turn the internal revocation potentially effects an external revocation.

## Certificate Renewal

A certificate renewal is the combination of a revocation of the existing certificate and an issuance of another certificate.

Note that XenMobile first attempts to obtain the new certificate before revoking the previous certificate, in order to avoid discontinuation of service if the issuance fails. If distributed (SCEP-supported) delivery is used, the revocation also only happens after the certificate has been successfully installed on the device; otherwise, the revocation occurs before the new certificate is sent to the device and independently of the success or failure of its installation.

The revocation configuration requires that you specify a certain duration (in days). When the device connects, the server verifies whether the certificate NotAfter date is later than the current date, minus the specified duration. If it is, a renewal is attempted.

## To create a credential provider

Configuring a credential provider varies mostly as a factor of which issuing entity and which issuing method you select for the credential provider. You can distinguish between a credential provider using an internal entity, such as discretionary, and a credential provider using an external entity, such as Microsoft CA or GPKI. The issuing method for a discretionary entity is always sign, meaning that with each issuing operation, XenMobile signs a new key pair with the CA certificate selected for the entity. Whether the key pair is generated on the device or on the server depends on the distribution method you select.

1. In the XenMobile web console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console and then click **More > Credential Providers**.
2. On the **Credential Providers** page, click **Add**.

The **Credential Providers: General Information** page appears.

3. On the **Credential Providers: General Information** page, do the following:



- **Name:** Type a unique name for the new provider configuration. This name is used later to refer to the configuration in other parts of the XenMobile console.
- **Description:** Describe the credential provider. Although this is an optional field, a description can be useful in the future to help you remember details about this credential provider.
- **Issuing entity:** Click the certificate issuing entity.
- **Issuing method:** Click **Sign** or **Fetch** to serve as the method that the system uses to obtain certificates from the configured entity. For client certificate authentication, use **Sign**.
- If the template list is available, select a template for the credential provider.

4. Click **Next**.

**Note:** These templates become available when Microsoft Certificate Services Entities are added at **Settings > More > PKI Entities**.

The **Credential Providers: Certificate Signing Request** page appears.

5. On the **Credential Providers: Certificate Signing Request** page, do the following:

- **Key algorithm:** Click the key algorithm for the new key pair. Available values are **RSA**, **DSA** and **ECDSA**.
- **Key size:** Type the size, in bits, of the key pair. This is a required field.  
**Note:** The permissible values depend on the key type; for instance, the maximum size for DSA keys is 1024 bits. To avoid false negatives, which will depend on the underlying hardware and software, XenMobile does not enforce key sizes. You should always test credential provider configurations in a test environment before activating them in production.
- **Signature algorithm:** Click a value for the new certificate. Values are dependent on the key algorithm.
- **Subject name:** Type the Distinguished Name (DN) of the new certificate subject. For example: `CN=${user.username}, OU=${user.department}, O=${user.companyname}, C=${user.c}`. This is a required field.

For example, for client certificate authentication, use these settings:

**Key algorithm:** RSA

**Key size:** 2048

**Signature algorithm:** SHA1withRSA

**Subject name:** `cn=${user.username}`

6. To add a new entry to the **Subject alternative names** table, click **Add**. Select the type of alternative name and then type a value in the second column.

For client certificate authentication, specify:

**Type:** User Principal name

**Value:** `$user.userprincipalname`

**Note:** As with Subject name, you can use XenMobile macros in the value field.

7. Click **Next**.

The **Credential Providers: Distribution** page appears.

8. On the **Credential Providers: Distribution** page, do the following:

- In the **Issuing CA certificate** list, click the offered CA certificate. Because the credential provider uses a discretionary CA

entity, the CA certificate for the credential provider is always be the CA certificate configured on the entity itself; it will be presented here for consistency with configurations that use external entities.

- In **Select distribution mode**, click one of the following ways of generating and distributing keys:
  - **Prefer centralized: Server-side key generation.** Citrix recommends this centralized option. It supports all platforms supported by XenMobile and is required when using NetScaler Gateway authentication. The private keys are generated and stored on the server and distributed to user devices.
  - **Prefer distributed: Device-side key generation.** The private keys are generated and stored on the user devices. This distributed mode uses SCEP and requires an RA encryption certificate with the keyUsage keyEncryption and an RA signing certificate with the KeyUsage digitalSignature. The same certificate can be used for both encryption and signing.
  - **Only distributed: Device-side key generation.** This option works the same as Prefer distributed: Device-side key generation, except that since it is "Only," rather than "Prefer," no option is available if device-side key generation fails or is unavailable.

If you selected **Prefer distributed: Device-side key generation** or **Only distributed: Device-side key generation**, click the RA signing certificate and RA encryption certificate. The same certificate can be used for both. New fields appear for these certificates.

9. Click **Next**.

The **Credential Providers: Revocation XenMobile** page appears. On this page, you configure the conditions under which XenMobile internally flags certificates, issued through this provider configuration, as revoked.

12. On the **Credential Providers: Revocation XenMobile** page, do the following:

- In **Revoke issued certificates**, select one of the options indicating when certificates should be revoked.
- If you would like XenMobile to send a notification when the certificate is revoked, set the value of **Send notification** to **On** and choose a notification template.
- If you would like to revoke the certificate on PKI when the certificate has been revoked from XenMobile, set **Revoke certificate on PKI** to **On** and, in the **Entity list**, click a template. The Entity list shows all the available GPKI entities with revocation capabilities. When the certificate is revoked from XenMobile, a revocation call is sent to the PKI selected from the Entity list.

13. Click **Next**.

The **Credential Providers: Revocation PKI** page appears. On this page, you identify what actions to take on the PKI if the certificate is revoked. You also have the option of creating a notification message.

14. On the **Credential Providers: Revocation PKI** page, do the following if you want to revoke certificates from the PKI:

- Change the setting of **Enable external revocation checks** to **On**. Additional fields related to revocation PKI appear.
- In the **OCS responder CA certificate** list, click the distinguished name (DN) of the certificate's subject. **Note:** You can use XenMobile macros for the DN field values. For example: CN=\${user.username}, OU=\${user.department}, O=\${user.companyname}, C=\${user.c}
- In the **When certificate is revoked** list, click one of the following actions to take on the PKI entity when the certificate is revoked:

Do nothing.

Renew the certificate.

Revoke and wipe the device.

- If you would like XenMobile to send a notification when the certificate is revoked, set the value of **Send notification** to **On**.

You can choose between two notification options:

- If you select **Select notification template**, you can select a pre-written notification message which you can then customize. These templates are in the Notification template list.
- If you select **Enter notification details**, you can write your own notification message. In addition to providing the recipient's email address and the message, you can set how often the notification is sent.

15. Click **Next**.

The **Credential Providers: Renewal** page appears. On this page, you can configure XenMobile to do the following:

- Renew the certificate, optionally sending a notification when this is done (notification on renewal), and optionally excluding already expired certificates from the operation.
- Issue a notification for certificates that near expiration (notification before renewal).

16. On the **Credential Providers: Renewal** page, do the following if you want to renew certificates when they expire: Set **Renew certificates** when they expire to **On**.

Additional fields appear.

- In the **Renew when the certificate comes within** field, type how many days prior to expiration the renewal should be made.
- Optionally, select **Do not renew certificates that have already expired**. **Note:** In this case, "already expired" means that the certificate's NotAfter date is in the past, not that it has been revoked. XenMobile will not renew certificates once they have been internally revoked.

17. If you want XenMobile to send a notification when the certificate has been renewed, set **Send notification** to **On**.

You can choose between two notification options:

- If you select **Select notification template**, you can select a pre-written notification message which you can then customize. These templates are in the Notification template list.
- If you select **Enter notification details**, you can write your own notification message. In addition to providing the recipient's email address and the message, you can set how often the notification is sent.

18. If you want XenMobile to send a notification when the certification nears expiration, set **Notify when certificate nears expiration** to **On**. You can choose between two notification options:

- If you select **Select notification template**, you can select a pre-written notification message which you can then customize. These templates are in the **Notification template** list.
- If you select **Enter notification details**, you can write your own notification message. In addition to providing the recipient's email address and the message, you can set how often the notification is sent.

19. In the **Notify when the certificate comes within** field, type how many days prior to the certificate's expiration the notification should be sent.

20. Click **Save**.

The credential provider is added to the Credential Provider table.

# APNs certificates

Feb 27, 2017

In order to enroll and manage iOS devices with XenMobile, you need to set up and create an Apple Push Notification service (APNs) certificate from Apple. This section outlines the following basic steps for requesting the APNs certificate:

- Use a Windows Server 2012 R2 or Windows 2008 R2 Server and Microsoft Internet Information Server (IIS) or a Mac computer to generate a Certificate Signing Request (CSR).
- Have Citrix sign the CSR.
- Request an APNs certificate from Apple.
- Import the certificate to XenMobile.

Note:

- The APNs certificate from Apple enables mobile device management via the Apple Push Network. If you accidentally or intentionally revoke the certificate, you will lose the ability to manage your devices.
- If you used the iOS Developer Enterprise Program to create a mobile device manager push certificate, you may need to take action due to the migration of existing certificates to the Apple Push Certificates Portal.

The topics that outline the step-by-step procedures are listed in order in this section as follows:

<b>Step 1</b>	<a href="#">Create a CSR on IIS</a> <a href="#">Create a CSR on a Mac</a>	Generate a CSR with a Windows Server 2012 R2 or Windows 2008 R2 Server and Microsoft IIS or on a Mac computer. Citrix recommends this method.
<b>Step 2</b>	<a href="#">To sign the CSR</a>	Submit the CSR to Citrix at the <a href="#">XenMobile APNs CSR Signing website</a> (MyCitrix ID required). Citrix signs the CSR with its mobile device management signing certificate and returns the signed file in a .plist format.
<b>Step 3</b>	<a href="#">Submit Signed CSR to Apple</a>	Submit the signed CSR to Apple at <a href="#">Apple Push Certificate Portal</a> (Apple ID required) and then download the APNs certificate from Apple.
<b>Step 4</b>	<a href="#">To create a .pfx APNs certificate by using Microsoft IIS</a> <a href="#">To create a .pfx APNs certificate on a Mac computer</a>  <a href="#">Create a .pfx APNs certificate by using OpenSSL</a>	Export the APNs certificate as a PKCS #12 (.pfx) certificate (on IIS, Mac, or SSL).
<b>Step 5</b>	<a href="#">Import an APNs certificate into XenMobile</a>	Import the certificate into XenMobile.

## Apple MDM Push Certificate Migration Information

Mobile device management (MDM) push certificates created in the iOS Developer Enterprise Program have been migrated to the Apple Push Certificates Portal. This migration affects the creation of new MDM push certificates and the renewal, revocation, and downloading of existing MDM push certificates. The migration does not affect other (non-MDM) APNs certificates.

If your MDM push certificate was created in the iOS Developer Enterprise Program, the following situations apply:

- The certificate has been migrated for you automatically.
- You can renew the certificate in the Apple Push Certificates Portal without affecting your users.
- You need to use the iOS Developer Enterprise Program to revoke or download a preexisting certificate.

If none of your MDM push certificates is near expiration, you don't need to do anything. If you do have an MDM push certificate that is approaching expiration, contact your MDM solution provider. Then, have your iOS Developer Program Agent log on to the Apple Push Certificates Portal with their Apple ID.

All new MDM push certificates must be created in the Apple Push Certificates Portal. The iOS Developer Enterprise Program will no longer allow the creation of an App ID with a Bundle Identifier (APNs topic) that contains com.apple.mgmt.

**Note:** You must keep track of the Apple ID used to create the certificate. In addition, the Apple ID should be a corporate ID and not a personal ID.

### To create a CSR by using Microsoft IIS

The first step for generating an APNs certificate request for iOS devices is to create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR). On a Windows 2012 R2 or Windows 2008 R2 Server, you can generate a CSR by using Microsoft IIS.

1. Open Microsoft IIS.
2. Double-click the Server Certificates icon for IIS.
3. In the Server Certificates window, click **Create Certificate Request**.
4. Type the appropriate Distinguished Name (DN) information and then click **Next**.
5. Select **Microsoft RSA SChannel Cryptographic Provider** for the Cryptographic Service Provider and **2048** for bit length and then click **Next**.
6. Enter a file name and specify a location to save the CSR and then click **Finish**.

### To create a CSR on a Mac computer

1. On a Mac computer running Mac OS X, under **Applications > Utilities**, start the Keychain Access application.
2. Open the **Keychain Access** menu and then click **Preferences**.
3. Click the **Certificates** tab, change the options for **OCSF** and **CRL** to **Off** and then close the Preferences window.
4. On the **Keychain Access** menu, click **Certificate Assistant > Request a Certificate From a Certificate Authority**.
5. The Certificate Assistant prompts you to enter the following information:
  1. **Email Address**. Email address of the individual or role account who is responsible for managing the certificate.
  2. **Common Name**. Common name of the individual or a role account who is responsible for managing the certificate.
  3. **CA Email Address**. Email address of the Certificate Authority.
6. Select the **Saved to disk** and **Let me specify key pair information** options and then click **Continue**.
7. Enter a name for the CSR file, save the file on your computer and then click **Save**.
8. Specify the key pair information by selecting the **Key Size** of 2048 bits and the **RSA algorithm** and then click **Continue**. The CSR file is ready for you to upload as part of the APNs certificate process.

9. Click **Done** when the Certificate Assistant completes the CSR process.

To create a CSR by using OpenSSL

If you cannot use a Windows 2012 R2 or Windows 2008 R2 Server and Microsoft Internet Information Server (IIS) or a Mac computer to generate a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) to submit to Apple for the Apple Push Notification service (APNs) certificate, you can use OpenSSL.

**Note:** In order to use OpenSSL to create a CSR, you need to first download and install OpenSSL from the OpenSSL website.

1. On the computer where you installed OpenSSL, execute the following command from a command prompt or shell.  
**openssl req -new -keyout Customer.key.pem -out CompanyAPNScertificate.csr -newkey rsa:2048**

2. The following message for certificate naming information appears. Enter the information as requested.

**You are about to be asked to enter information that will be incorporated into your certificate request.**

**What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name or a DN.**

**There are quite a few fields but you can leave some blank**

**For some fields there will be a default value,**

**If you enter '.', the field will be left blank.**

-----

**Country Name (2 letter code) [AU]:US**

**State or Province Name (full name) [Some-State]:CA**

**Locality Name (eg, city) []:RWC**

**Organization Name (eg, company) [Internet Widgits Pty Ltd]:Customer**

**Organizational Unit Name (eg, section) []:Marketing**

**Common Name (eg, YOUR name) []:John Doe**

**Email Address []:john.doe@customer.com**

3. At the next message, enter a password for the CSR private key.

**Please enter the following 'extra' attributes to be sent with your certificate request**

**A challenge password []:**

**An optional company name []:**

4. Send the resulting CSR to Citrix.

Citrix prepares the signed CSR and returns the file to you through email.

To sign the CSR

Before you can submit the certificate to Apple, it needs to be signed by Citrix so it can be used with XenMobile.

1. In your browser, go to the [XenMobile APNs CSR Signing](#) website.

2. Click **Upload the CSR**.

3. Browse to and select the certificate.

**Note:** The certificate must be in .pem/.txt format.

4. On the XenMobile APNs CSR Signing page, click **Sign**. The CSR is signed and automatically saved to your configured download folder.

To submit the signed CSR to Apple to obtain the APNs certificate

After receiving your signed Certificate Signing Request (CSR) from Citrix, you need to submit it to Apple to obtain the APNs certificate.

**Note:** Some users have reported problems logging into the Apple Push Portal. As an alternative, you can log on to the Apple Developer Portal (<http://developer.apple.com/devcenter/ios/index.action>) before going to the [identity.apple.com](http://identity.apple.com) link in Step 1.

1. In a browser, go to <https://identity.apple.com/pushcert>.
2. Click **Create a Certificate**.
3. If this is the first time you are creating a certificate with Apple, select the **I have read and agree to these terms and conditions** check box and then click **Accept**.
4. Click **Choose File**, browse to the signed CSR on your computer and then click **Upload**. A confirmation message should appear stating that the upload is successful.
5. Click **Download** to retrieve the .pem certificate.

**Note:** If you are using Internet Explorer and the file extension is missing, click **Cancel** two times and then download from the next window.

To create a .pfx APNs certificate by using Microsoft IIS

To use the APNs certificate from Apple with XenMobile, you need to complete the certificate request in Microsoft IIS, export the certificate as a PCKS #12 (.pfx) file and then import the APNs certificate into XenMobile.

**Important:** You need to use the same IIS server for this task as the server you used to generate the CSR.

1. Open Microsoft IIS.
2. Click the Server Certificates icon.
3. In the **Server Certificates** window, click **Complete Certificate Request**.
4. Browse to the Certificate.pem file from Apple. Then, type a friendly name or the certificate name and click **OK**.
5. Select the certificate that you identified in Step 4 and then click **Export**.
6. Specify a location and file name for the .pfx certificate and a password and then click **OK**.  
**Note:** You will need the password for the certificate during the installation of XenMobile.
7. Copy the .pfx certificate to the server on which XenMobile will be installed.
8. Sign on to the XenMobile console as an administrator.
9. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
10. Click **Certificates**. The **Certificates** page appears.
11. Click **Import**. The **Import** dialog box appears.
12. From the **Import** menu, choose **Keystore**.
13. From **Use as**, choose **APNs**.
14. In **Keystore** file, select the keystore file you want to import by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.
15. In **Password**, type the password assigned to the certificate.
16. Click **Import**.

To create a .pfx APNs certificate on a Mac computer

1. On the same Mac computer running Mac OS X that you used to generate the CSR, locate the Production identity (.pem) certificate that you received from Apple.
2. Double-click the certificate file to import the file into the keychain.



3. If you are prompted to add the certificate to a specific keychain, keep the default login keychain selected and then click **OK**. The newly added certificate will appear in your list of certificates.
4. Click the certificate and then on the **File** menu, click **Export** to begin exporting the certificate into a PCKS #12 (.pfx) certificate.
5. Give the certificate file a unique name for use with the XenMobile server, choose a folder location for the saved certificate, select the .pfx file format and then click **Save**.
6. Enter a password for exporting the certificate. Citrix recommends that you use a unique, strong password. Also, be sure to keep the certificate and password safe for later use and reference.
7. The Keychain Access application will prompt you for the login password or selected keychain. Enter the password and then click **OK**. The saved certificate is now ready for use with the XenMobile server.

**Note:** If you don't plan to keep and preserve the computer and user account that you originally used to generate the CSR and complete the certificate export process, Citrix recommends that you save or export the Personal and Public Keys from the local system. Otherwise, access to the APNs certificates for reuse will be voided and you will have to repeat the entire CSR and APNs process.

### To create a .pfx APNs certificate by using OpenSSL

After you use OpenSSL to create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR), you can also use OpenSSL to create a .pfx APNs certificate.

1. At a command prompt or shell, execute the following command.  
**openssl pkcs12 -export -in MDM\_Zenprise\_Certificate.pem -inkey Customer.key.pem -out apns\_identity.p12**
2. Enter a password for the .pfx certificate file. Remember this password because you need to use the password again when you upload the certificate to XenMobile.
3. Note the location for the .pfx certificate file and then copy the file to the XenMobile server, so you can use the XenMobile console to upload the file.

### To import an APNs certificate into XenMobile

After you have requested and received a new APNs certificate, you import the APNs certificate into XenMobile to either add the certificate for the first time or to replace an existing certificate.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Click **Certificates**. The **Certificates** page appears.
3. Click **Import**. The **Import** dialog box appears.
4. From the **Import** menu, choose **Keystore**.
5. From **Use as**, choose **APNs**.
6. Browse to the .p12 file on your computer.
7. Enter a password and then click **Import**.

For more information about certificates in XenMobile, see the [Certificates](#) section.

### To renew an APNs certificate

To renew an APNs certificate, you need to perform the same steps you would if you were creating a new certificate. Then, you visit the [Apple Push Certificates Portal](#) and upload the new certificate. After logging on, you see your existing certificate or you may see a certificate that was imported from your previous Apple Developers account. On the Certificates Portal, the only difference when renewing the certificate is that you click **Renew**. You must have a developer account with the Certificates Portal in order to access the site. When you are renewing your certificate, ensure that you

use the same organisation name and Apple ID.

**Note:** To determine when your APNs certificate expires, in the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Settings > Certificates**. If the certificate is expired, however, do not revoke the certificate.

1. Generate a CSR using Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS).
2. At the [XenMobile APNs CSR Signing](#) website, upload the new CSR and then click **Sign**.
3. Submit the signed CSR to Apple at [Apple Push Certificate Portal](#).
4. Click **Renew**.
5. Generate a PCKS #12 (.pfx) APNs certificate using Microsoft IIS.
6. Update the new APNs certificate in the XenMobile console. Click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
7. Click **Certificates**. The **Certificates** page appears.
8. Click **Import**. The **Import** dialog box appears.
9. From the **Import** menu, choose **Keystore**.
10. From **Use as**, choose **APNs**.
11. Browse to the .p12 file on your computer.
12. Enter a password and then click **Import**.

# SAML for single sign-on with ShareFile

Apr 27, 2017

You can configure XenMobile and ShareFile to use Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) to provide single sign-on (SSO) access to ShareFile mobile apps. This functionality includes ShareFile apps that are wrapped with the MDX toolkit and non-wrapped ShareFile clients, such as the web site, Outlook plugin, or sync clients.

- **For wrapped ShareFile apps.** Users who log on to ShareFile through the ShareFile mobile app are redirected to Secure Hub for user authentication and to acquire a SAML token. After successful authentication, the ShareFile mobile app sends the SAML token to ShareFile. After the initial log on, users can access the ShareFile mobile app through SSO and can attach documents from ShareFile to Secure Mail emails without logging on each time.
- **For non-wrapped ShareFile clients.** Users who log on to ShareFile using a web browser or other ShareFile client are redirected to XenMobile for user authentication and to acquire a SAML token. After successful authentication, the SAML token is sent to ShareFile. After the initial log on, users can access ShareFile clients through SSO without logging on each time.

To use XenMobile as a SAML identity provider (IdP) to ShareFile, you must configure XenMobile to use ShareFile Enterprise, as described in this article. Alternatively, you can configure XenMobile to work only with StorageZone Connectors. For more information, see [ShareFile use with XenMobile](#).

For a detailed reference architecture diagram, see the XenMobile Deployment Handbook article, [Reference Architecture for On-Premises Deployments](#).

## Prerequisites

You must complete the following prerequisites before you can configure SSO with XenMobile and ShareFile apps:

- A compatible version of the MDX Toolkit (for ShareFile mobile apps)
- A compatible version of ShareFile mobile apps and Secure Hub
- ShareFile administrator account

Verify connectivity between XenMobile and ShareFile.

## Configure ShareFile access

Before setting up SAML for ShareFile, provide ShareFile access information as follows:

1. In the XenMobile web console, click **Configure > ShareFile**. The **ShareFile** configuration page appears.

**XenMobile** Analyze Manage **Configure**

Device Policies Apps Actions **ShareFile** Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### ShareFile

Configure settings to connect to the ShareFile account and administrator service account for user account management.

Domain\*

Assign to delivery groups

AllUsers

Selected delivery groups

AllUsers

### ShareFile Administrator Account Logon

User name\*

Password\*

User account provisioning

### SAML certificate

Name XMS.example.com

Advanced ShareFile Configuration

2. Configure these settings:

- **Domain:** Type your ShareFile subdomain name; for example example.sharefile.com.
- **Assign to delivery groups:** Select or search for the delivery groups that you want to be able to use SSO with ShareFile.
- **ShareFile Administrator Account Logon**
  - **User name:** Type the ShareFile administrator user name. This user must have administrator privileges.
  - **Password:** Type the ShareFile administrator password.
  - **User account provisioning:** Turn on this option if you want to enable user provisioning in XenMobile; leave it disabled if you plan to use the ShareFile User Management Tool for user provisioning.

**Note:** If a user without a ShareFile account is included in the selected roles, XenMobile automatically provisions a ShareFile account for that user if you enable User account provisioning. Citrix recommends that you use a role with a small membership for testing the configuration. Doing so avoids the potential of a large number of users without ShareFile accounts.

3. Click **Test Connection** to verify that the user name and password for the ShareFile administrator account authenticate to the specified ShareFile account.

4. Click **Save**. XenMobile syncs with ShareFile and updates the ShareFile settings **ShareFile Issuer/Entity ID** and **Login URL**.

Set up SAML for Wrapped ShareFile MDX Apps

The following steps apply to iOS and Android apps and devices.

1. With the MDX Toolkit, wrap the ShareFile mobile app. For more information about wrapping apps with the MDX Toolkit, see [Wrapping Apps with the MDX Toolkit](#).
2. In the XenMobile console, upload the wrapped ShareFile mobile app. For information about uploading MDX apps, see [To add an MDX app to XenMobile](#).
3. Verify the SAML settings by logging on to ShareFile with the administrator user name and password you configured above.
4. Verify that ShareFile and XenMobile are configured for the same time zone.

**Note:** Make sure that XenMobile shows the correct time with regard to the configured time zone. If not, SSO failure may occur.

## Validate the ShareFile mobile app

1. On the user device, if it has not already been done, install and configure Secure Hub.
2. From the XenMobile Store, download and install the ShareFile mobile app.
3. Start the ShareFile mobile app. ShareFile starts without prompting for user name or password.

## Validate with Secure Mail

1. On the user device, if it has not already been done, install and configure Secure Hub.
2. From the XenMobile Store, download, install, and set up Secure Mail.
3. Open a new email form and then tap **Attach from ShareFile**. Files available to attach to the email are shown without asking for user name or password.

## Configure the NetScaler Gateway for Other ShareFile Clients

If you want to configure access for non-wrapped ShareFile clients, such as the web site, Outlook plugin, or the sync clients, you must configure NetScaler Gateway to support the use of XenMobile as a SAML identity provider as follows:

- Disable home page redirection.
- Create a ShareFile session policy and profile.
- Configure policies on the NetScaler Gateway virtual server.

## Disable home page redirection

You must disable the default behavior for requests that come through the /cginfra path so that the user sees the original requested internal URL instead of the configured home page.

1. Edit the settings for the NetScaler Gateway virtual server that is used for XenMobile logons. In NetScaler 10.5, go to **Other Settings** and then clear the check box labeled **Redirect to Home Page**.

2. Under **ShareFile**, type your XenMobile internal server name and port number.

3. Under **AppController**, type your XenMobile URL.

This configuration authorizes requests to the URL you entered through the /cginfra path.

## Create a ShareFile session policy and request profile

Configure these settings to create a ShareFile session policy and request profile:

1. In the NetScaler Gateway configuration utility, in the left-hand navigation pane, click **NetScaler Gateway > Policies > Session**.
2. Create a new session policy. On the **Policies** tab, click **Add**.
3. In the **Name** field, type **ShareFile\_Policy**.
4. Create a new action by clicking the + button. The **Create NetScaler Gateway Session Profile** page appears.

**Configure NetScaler Gateway Session Profile**

Configure NetScaler Gateway Session Profile

Name  
Sharefile\_Profile

Unchecked Override Global check box indicates that the value is inherited from Global NetScaler Gateway Parameters.

Network Configuration   **Client Experience**   Security   Published Applications

Accounting Policy  
[Dropdown]

Override Global

Display Home Page

Home Page  
none

URL for Web-Based Email  
[Text Box]

Split Tunnel\*  
OFF

Session Time-out (mins)  
1

Client Idle Time-out (mins)  
[Text Box]

Clientless Access\*  
Allow

Clientless Access URL Encoding\*  
Obscure

Clientless Access Persistent Cookie\*  
DENY

Plug-in Type\*  
Windows/MAC OS X

Single Sign-on to Web Applications

Credential Index\*  
PRIMARY

KCD Account  
[Text Box]

Single Sign-on with Windows\*

Configure these settings:

- **Name:** Type ShareFile\_Profile.
- Click the **Client Experience** tab and then configure these settings:
  - **Home Page:** Type none.
  - **Session Time-out (mins):** Type 1.
  - **Single Sign-on to Web Applications:** Select this setting.
  - **Credential Index:** In the list, click PRIMARY.
- Click the **Published Applications** tab.

**Configure NetScaler Gateway Session Profile**

Name  
Sharefile\_Profile

Unchecked Override Global check box indicates that the value is inherited from Global NetScaler Gateway Parameters.

Network Configuration Client Experience Security **Published Applications**

Override Global

ICA Proxy\*  
ON

Web Interface Address  
https://xms.citrix.lab:8443  ?

Web Interface Address Type\*  
IPV4

Web Interface Portal Mode\*  
NORMAL

Single Sign-on Domain  
citrix

Citrix Receiver Home Page

Account Services Address

OK Close

Configure these settings:

- **ICA Proxy:** In the list, click **ON**.
- **Web Interface Address:** Type your XenMobile server URL.
- **Single Sign-on Domain:** Type your Active Directory domain name.

**Note:** When configuring the NetScaler Gateway Session Profile, the domain suffix for **Single Sign-on Domain** must match the XenMobile domain alias defined in LDAP.

5. Click **Create** to define the session profile.

6. Click **Expression Editor**.

← Back

**Create NetScaler Gateway Session Policy**

Name\*  
ShareFile\_Policy

Action\*  
Sharefile\_Profile

Expression\*  
Operators Saved Policy Expressions Freq

Creates Close

**Add Expression**

Select Expression Type: General

Flow Type  
REQ

Protocol  
HTTP

Qualifier  
HEADER

Operator  
CONTAINS

Value\*  
NSC\_FSRD

Header Name\*  
COOKIE

Length

Offset

Done Cancel

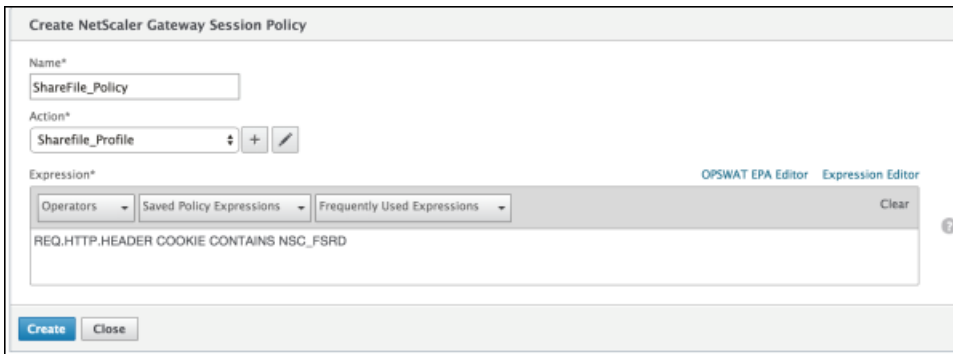
Expression Editor  
Clear



Configure these settings:

- **Value:** Type NSC\_FSRD.
- **Header Name:** Type COOKIE.
- Click **Done**.

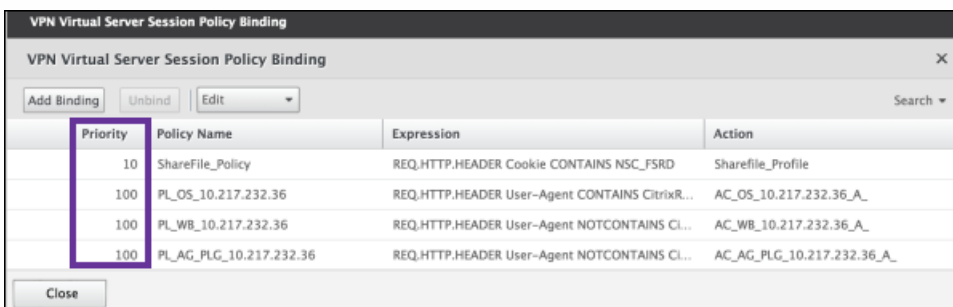
7. Click **Create** and then click **Close**.



## Configure policies on the NetScaler Gateway virtual server

Configure these settings on the NetScaler Gateway virtual server.

1. In the NetScaler Gateway configuration utility, in the left-hand navigation pane, click **NetScaler Gateway > Virtual Servers**.
2. In the **Details** pane, click your NetScaler Gateway virtual server.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Click **Configured policies > Session policies** and then click **Add binding**.
5. Select **ShareFile\_Policy**.
6. Edit the auto-generated **Priority** number for the selected policy so that it has the highest priority (the smallest number) in relation to any other policies listed, as shown in the following figure.



Priority	Policy Name	Expression	Action
10	ShareFile_Policy	REQ.HTTP.HEADER Cookie CONTAINS NSC_FSRD	Sharefile_Profile
100	PL_OS_10.217.232.36	REQ.HTTP.HEADER User-Agent CONTAINS CitrixR...	AC_OS_10.217.232.36_A_
100	PL_WB_10.217.232.36	REQ.HTTP.HEADER User-Agent NOTCONTAINS Cl...	AC_WB_10.217.232.36_A_
100	PL_AG_PLG_10.217.232.36	REQ.HTTP.HEADER User-Agent NOTCONTAINS Cl...	AC_AG_PLG_10.217.232.36_A_

7. Click **Done** and then save the running NetScaler configuration.

## Configure SAML for non-MDX ShareFile apps

Use the following steps to find the internal app name for your ShareFile configuration.

1. Log on to the XenMobile administrator tool using the URL <https://<XenMobile server>:4443/OCA/admin/>. Be sure to enter "OCA" in uppercase letters.
2. In the **View** list, click **Configuration**.

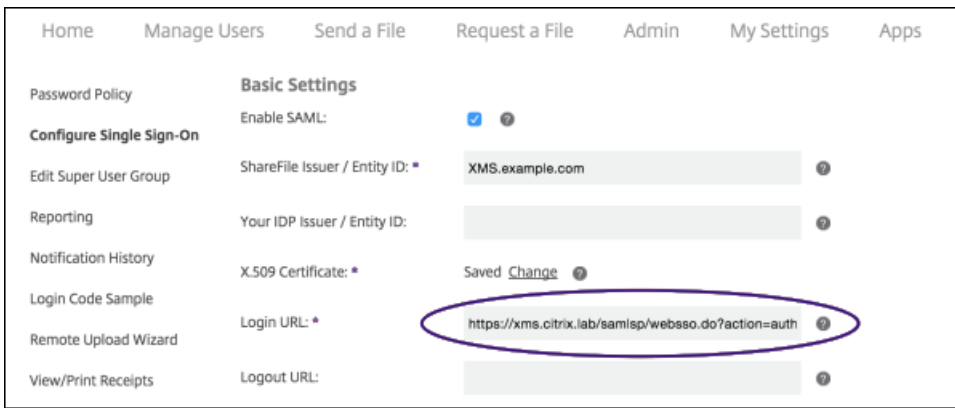
3. Click **Applications > Applications** and note the **Application Name** for the app with the **Display Name** "ShareFile".

Application Name	Display Name	Description
activedirectory	activedirectory	
AmericanExpress	AmericanExpress	Online access to world-class card, financial, insu...
Fidelity	Fidelity	Your Personal Investing Resource
LinkedIn	LinkedIn	Business-oriented social networking site
ShareFile_SAML	ShareFile	Online storage for business
MobileApp11	ShareFile_220	ShareFile 2.2.0
MobileApp13	ShareFile_iPhone_303	ShareFile 3.0.3

Modify the ShareFile.com SSO settings

1. Log on to your ShareFile account (<https://<subdomain>.sharefile.com>) as a ShareFile administrator.
2. In the ShareFile web interface, click **Admin** and then select **Configure Single Sign-on**.
3. Edit the **Login URL** as follows:

The **Login URL** should look similar to: [https://xms.citrix.lab/samlsp/websso.do?action=authenticateUser&app=ShareFile\\_SAML\\_SP&reqtype=1](https://xms.citrix.lab/samlsp/websso.do?action=authenticateUser&app=ShareFile_SAML_SP&reqtype=1).



- Insert the NetScaler Gateway virtual server external FQDN plus "/cginfra/https/" in front of the XenMobile server FQDN and then add "8443" after the XenMobile FQDN.

The URL should now look similar to this:

```
https://nsgateway.acme.com/cginfra/https/xms.citrix.lab:8443/samlsp/websso.do?
action=authenticateUser&app=ShareFile_SAML_SP&reftype=1
```

- Change the parameter **&app=ShareFile\_SAML\_SP** to the internal ShareFile application name from step 3 in [SAML for single sign-on with ShareFile](#). The internal name is **ShareFile\_SAML** by default; however, every time you change your configuration, a number is appended to the internal name (ShareFile\_SAML\_2, ShareFile\_SAML\_3, and so on).

The URL should now look similar to this:

```
https://nsgateway.acme.com/cginfra/https/xms.citrix.lab:8443/samlsp/websso.do?
action=authenticateUser&app=ShareFile_SAML&reftype=1
```

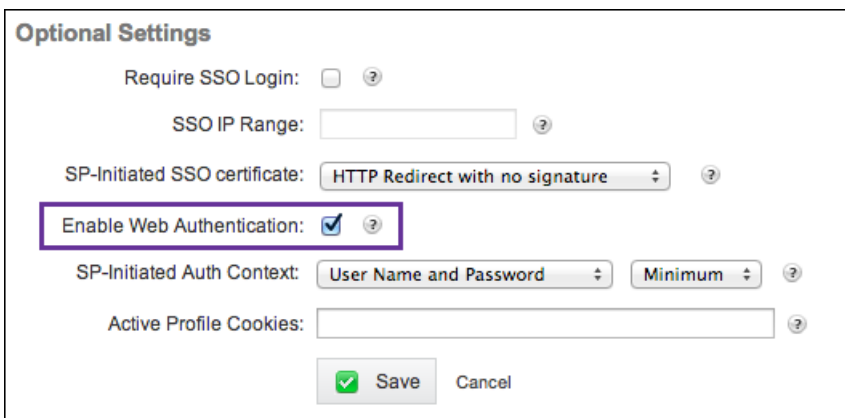
- Add "&nssso=true" to the end of the URL.

The modified URL should now look similar to:

```
https://nsgateway.acme.com/cginfra/https/xms.citrix.lab:8443/samlsp/websso.do?
action=authenticateUser&app=ShareFile_SAML&reftype=1&nssso=true.
```

**Important:** Each time you edit or recreate the ShareFile app or change the ShareFile settings in the XenMobile console, a new number is appended the internal application name, which means you must also update the Login URL in the ShareFile web site to reflect the updated app name.

4. Under **Optional Settings**, select the **Enable Web Authentication** check box.



## Validate the configuration

Do the following to validate the configuration.

1. Point your browser to <https://<subdomain>sharefile.com/saml/login>.

You are redirected to the NetScaler Gateway log on form. If you are not redirected, verify the preceding configuration settings.

2. Enter the user name and password for the NetScaler Gateway and XenMobile environment you configured.

Your ShareFile folders at <subdomain>.sharefile.com appear. If you do not see your ShareFile folders, make sure you entered the proper logon credentials.

# Microsoft Azure Active Directory server settings

Feb 27, 2017

You need a Microsoft Azure Active Directory premium license before you can integrate XenMobile with Microsoft Azure. The license is required to enable MDM integration with Azure AD so that users with Windows 10 devices can enroll using Azure AD. See [Microsoft Azure](#) for information about obtaining the premium license. For information about pricing, see [Azure Active Directory pricing](#).

Before Windows device users can enroll with Azure, you must configure the Microsoft Azure server settings in XenMobile, as well as set up a Terms and Conditions device policy for Windows devices. This article describes how to configure the Microsoft Azure settings. For information about configuring a Terms and Conditions device policy for Windows devices, see [Terms and conditions device policies](#).

Before you can set up the Microsoft Azure server settings in XenMobile, you need to log on to the Azure AD portal and do the following:

1. Register your custom domain and verify the domain. For details, see [Add your own domain name to Azure Active Directory](#).
2. Extend your on-premise directory to Azure Active Directory using directory integration tools. For details, see [Directory Integration](#).
3. Make the MDM a reliable party of Azure AD. To do so, click **Azure Active Directory** > **Applications** and then click **Add**. Select **Add an application** from the gallery. Go to **MOBILE DEVICE MANAGEMENT**, select **On-premise MDM application** and then save the settings.
4. In the application, configure XenMobile server discovery, terms of use endpoints, and APP ID URI as follows:
  - MDM Discovery URL: `https://<FQDN>:8443/zdm/wpe`
  - MDM Terms of Use URL: `https://<FQDN>:8443/zdm/wpe/tou`
  - APP ID URI: `https://<FQDN>:8443/`
5. Select the on-premise MDM application that you created in step 3 and enable the **Manage devices for these users** option to enable MDM management for all users or any specific user group.

You also need to note the following information from your Microsoft Azure account in order to configure the settings in the XenMobile console:

- App ID URI – the URL for the server running XenMobile.
- Tenant ID – from the Azure application settings page.
- Client ID – the unique identifier for your app.
- Key – from the Azure application settings page.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Under **Platforms**, click **Microsoft Azure**. The **Microsoft Azure** page appears.

Settings > Microsoft Azure

## Microsoft Azure

Integrate XenMobile with Microsoft Azure to let devices running Windows 10 enroll with Azure as a federated means of Active Directory authentication. You derive the values to enter here from your Azure directory settings. Note that you must also configure a Terms & Conditions device policy for Windows; otherwise, users cannot enroll with Azure.

App ID URI\*

Tenant ID\*  ?

Client ID\*

Key\*  ?

Cancel Save

3. Configure these settings:

- **App ID URI:** Type the URL for the server running XenMobile that you entered when you configured your Azure settings.
- **Tenant ID:** Copy this value from the Azure application settings page. In the browser address bar, copy the section made up of numbers and letters. For example, in `https://manage.windowsazure.com/acmew.onmicrosoft.com#workspaces/ActiveDirectoryExtensin/Directory/abc213-abc123-abc123/onprem...`, the Tenant ID is: `abc123-abc123-abc123`.
- **Client ID:** Copy and paste this value from the Azure Configure page. This is the unique identifier for your app.
- **Key:** Copy this value from the Azure application settings page. Under **keys**, select a duration in the list and then save the setting. You can then copy the key and paste it into this field. A key is required when apps read or write data in Microsoft Azure AD.

4. Click **Save**.

## Important

When users join Azure AD on their Windows devices, the XenMobile Store and Weblink device policies you configured in XenMobile are only available for Azure AD users, but not to local users. For local users to be able to use these device policies, they must do the following:

1. Join Azure AD on behalf of an Azure user in **Settings > About > Join Azure AD**.
2. Sign out of Windows and then sign in with an Azure AD account.

# Upgrade

Apr 13, 2017

## Important

### Before you upgrade to XenMobile 10.5 (on-premises)

1. If the virtual machine running the XenMobile Server to be upgraded has less than 4 GB of RAM, increase the RAM to at least 4 GB. Keep in mind that the recommended minimum RAM is 8 GB for production environments.
2. Make a note about your configurations for the Passcode and Restrictions device policies for Windows tablets. Those policies are no longer based on WMI. As a result, the upgrade removes the existing configurations. After the upgrade, reconfigure the Passcode and Restrictions device policies for Windows tablets.
3. To access the XenMobile management console, use only the XenMobile Server fully qualified domain name (FQDN) - the enrollment FQDN - or the IP addresses of the node. Console access directly through a load balancing virtual IP address or a NAT'd IP address requires XenMobile Server 10.5 rolling patch 1. That patch was released on March 22, 2017. For details, see <https://support.citrix.com/article/CTX221304>.
4. The Subscription Advantage (SA) date on your Citrix license must be later than June 1, 2016. You can view your SA date next to the license in the License Server. To renew the SA date on your license, download the latest license file from the Citrix Portal and upload the file to the Licensing Server. For more information, see <http://support.citrix.com/article/CTX209580>.

Citrix publishes new versions or important updates of XenMobile to Citrix.com. At the same time, a notice is sent to the contact on record for each customer.

You have these options for upgrading XenMobile:

- **To upgrade from XenMobile 9.0 to the latest XenMobile release.**

Use the XenMobile Upgrade Tool that is built in to the latest XenMobile release. See the articles in this section for details.

The Upgrade Tool supports all XenMobile 9 editions: MDM, App, and Enterprise.

For fixed and known issues, see [Fixed issues](#) and [Known issues](#).

The older Upgrade Tool is no longer available from Citrix.com.

- **To upgrade from XenMobile 10.3.6 or 10.4 to XenMobile 10.5.**

Use the **Release Management** page in the XenMobile console. See the instructions in this article for details.

You do not use the Upgrade Tool for XenMobile versions other than XenMobile 9.0.

- **To upgrade from XenMobile 10 or 10.1 to XenMobile 10.5.**

First, use the **Release Management** page in the XenMobile console to upgrade from XenMobile 10 or XenMobile 10.1 to XenMobile 10.3.6. Then, use the **Release Management** page in the XenMobile console to upgrade from XenMobile 10.3.6 to XenMobile 10.5. See the instructions in this article for details. You do not use the Upgrade Tool for these installations.

Upgrade path summary

XenMobile Server version	Release number	Upgrade to	Release number	Upgrade path	Update location
XenMobile Server 9 with App Controller Rolling Patch 9 installed	9.0.0_97106	XenMobile Server 10.5	10.5.0.24	XenMobile Server 9 upgrade to XenMobile Server 10.5	<a href="#">Download</a> the App Controller rolling patch prerequisite. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Upgrade Tool for XenMobile 10.5 is built into XenMobile Server.</li> <li>For more information, see <a href="#">Upgrade Tool prerequisites</a>.</li> </ul>
XenMobile Server 10 or XenMobile 10.1	10.1.0.63030	XenMobile Server 10.3.6	10.3.6	XenMobile 10 or XenMobile 10.1 upgrade to XenMobile 10.3.6	<a href="#">Download</a>
XenMobile Server 10.3.6	10.3.6	XenMobile Server 10.5	10.5.0.24	XenMobile 10.3.x upgrade to XenMobile 10.5	<a href="#">Download</a>
XenMobile Server 10.4	10.4.x	XenMobile Server 10.5	10.5.0.24	XenMobile 10.4 upgrade to XenMobile 10.5	<a href="#">Download</a>

To upgrade using the Release Management page

Use the **Release Management** page to upgrade from supported XenMobile 10 versions (indicated in the preceding table) to the latest version of XenMobile Server.

Prerequisites:

- Before you install a XenMobile update, use the functionality in your virtual machine (VM) to take a snapshot of your system.
- Back up your system configuration database.
- Review the System Requirements for the version to which you are updating. For the latest version of XenMobile, see [System Requirements](#).

When you have a clustered deployment, see the instructions at the end of this article.

1. Log on to your account on the Citrix website and download the XenMobile Upgrade (.bin) file to an appropriate location.
2. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
3. Click **Release Management**. The **Release Management** page appears.



XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Settings > Release Management

## Release Management

View the current installed release, as well as a list of all updates, patches, and upgrades to the XenMobile server up to the current date and time.

Current Release 10.3.0.0

Name Release 10.3.0.0

Description Software release build 10.3.0.0

Install date and time Oct 26, 2015 12:41 PM

### Updates

Update

Name	Release	Description	Install date and time	Type
No results found.				

4. Under **Updates**, click **Update**. The **Update** dialog box appears.

## Update

It is recommended that you create a backup before installing updates.

---

Upgrade or patch file\*  Browse

Cancel
Update

5. Select the XenMobile upgrade file you downloaded from Citrix.com by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file location.

6. Click **Update** and then if prompted, restart XenMobile.

If for some reason the update cannot be completed successfully, an error message appears indicating the problem. The system is reverted to its state previous to the update attempt.

**Note:** After an upgrade, XenMobile requires a restart. Use the XenMobile CLI to restart XenMobile Server. It's important that you clear your browser cache after the system restarts.

## To upgrade clustered XenMobile deployments

If your system is configured in cluster mode, follow these steps to update each node from a XenMobile 10 release:

1. Upload the .bin file on all nodes from **Settings > Release Management**.
2. Shut down all the nodes from the **System Menu** in the CLI.
3. Bring up one node, from the **System Menu** in the CLI, and check that the service is running.
4. Bring up other nodes one after the other.

If XenMobile can't complete the update successfully, an error message appears indicating the problem. XenMobile then reverts the system to its state previous to the update attempt.

# Upgrade Tool prerequisites

Feb 27, 2017

To upgrade from XenMobile 9.0 to the latest version of XenMobile, you use the XenMobile built-in Upgrade Tool.

The Upgrade Tool supports:

- iOS and Android devices enrolled in all XenMobile Server Modes (ENT, MAM, MDM)
- Windows phones and tablets enrolled in MDM mode
- Windows phones enrolled in Enterprise mode
- Windows CE devices in MDM mode

If Multi-Tenant Console (MTC) is enabled on XenMobile 9.0, you can migrate MTC to a stand-alone deployment of the latest version of XenMobile. XenMobile 10 does not support MTC, so you must manage these upgraded instances on an individual basis. After you complete the prerequisites in this article, see [Upgrade the MTC tenant server to XenMobile](#).

The latest version of XenMobile supports NetScaler Gateway versions 11.1.x, 11.0.x, and 10.5.x.

The Upgrade Tool built in to XenMobile also supports NetScaler Gateway version 10.1.x. Citrix doesn't support NetScaler Gateway 10.1 for use with the latest version of XenMobile. However, you can upgrade a NetScaler Gateway 10.1 deployment using the Upgrade Tool built in to XenMobile. After that, Citrix recommends that you upgrade NetScaler Gateway to the latest supported version.

## Important

The upgrade process is complex. Before starting an upgrade, be sure to review the [Known issues](#), plan your upgrade, and complete all prerequisites, as described in this article. In addition, this [blog](#) includes prerequisite checklists that can help you plan your upgrade.

After you run the Upgrade Tool, be sure you complete all post-requisites.

If you don't complete a prerequisite, the upgrade can fail. You must then configure a new instance of the latest version of XenMobile in the command-line console and start the Upgrade Tool again.

## Plan your upgrade

Citrix recommends that you upgrade in the following stages.

1. Do a test drive in a staging environment, completing all prerequisite and Upgrade Tool steps. Citrix recommends that you do an upgrade test drive first to get a feel for how the process works and what you can expect to see after you do a full production upgrade. A test drive upgrade tests the upgrade of your configuration data, not user data.

In NetScaler 11.1 (or minimum version NetScaler 10.5), Citrix recommends that you use the NetScaler for XenMobile Wizard to set up a fresh NetScaler with NetScaler Gateway and NetScaler load balancing virtual servers.

2. Verify that the test drive correctly upgraded your configuration data, such as LDAP, policies, and apps. Verify test devices.
3. Do a production upgrade in your production environment and go live. Plan for downtime while running the upgrade.

## About test drives and production upgrades

With the XenMobile Upgrade Tool, you first test the upgrade and then perform the full production upgrade.

### **When you choose Test Drive:**

The Upgrade Tool does an upgrade test drive with production configuration data to compare XenMobile 9.0 and the latest version of XenMobile without affecting your production environment. The test drive upgrade tests only configuration data; it does not test device data (in the case of XenMobile Enterprise Edition deployments) or user data.

The results of an upgrade test drive are for testing only. You cannot upgrade a test drive deployment. Instead, you must begin again for a production upgrade. An upgrade test drive works with any XenMobile 9.0 edition.

### **When you choose Upgrade:**

The Upgrade Tool at first copies all configuration, device, and user data from XenMobile 9.0 to a new instance of the latest version of XenMobile with the same fully qualified domain name (FQDN). Everything in XenMobile 9.0 remains intact until you move the new XenMobile server instance into production.

When you log on to the console for the new XenMobile server instance after the upgrade, you see all the user and device data that the upgrade moved from XenMobile 9.0.

## What the Upgrade Tool does not do

The following information isn't upgraded to the latest version of XenMobile when you use the Upgrade Tool:

- Licensing information.
- Reports data.
- Server group policies and associated deployments (not supported in the latest version of XenMobile).
- Managed Service Provider (MSP) group.
- Policies and packages related to Windows 8.0.
- Deployment packages not in use; for example, when no users or groups are assigned to a deployment package.
- Any other configuration or user data as described in the upgrade log file.
- CXM Web (replaced by Citrix Secure Web).
- DLP policies (replaced by Citrix Sharefile).
- Custom Active Directory attributes.
- If you have configured multiple branding policies in XenMobile 9.0, the branding policy is not upgraded. Later versions of XenMobile support one branding policy; you have to leave one branding policy in XenMobile 9.0 to successfully upgrade to the latest version of XenMobile.
- Any settings in the auth.jsp file in XenMobile 9.0 that are used to restrict access to the console. Console access restrictions in the latest version of XenMobile are firewall settings that you can configure in the command-line interface.
- Sys log server configurations.
- Form-fill connectors configured on XenMobile 9.0 (not supported in later versions of XenMobile).

## XenMobile changes

- The Upgrade Tool doesn't upgrade Active Directory users who are assigned to local groups. You can subsequently assign Active Directory users to local groups.
- XenMobile 10 doesn't support nested local groups. An upgrade from XenMobile 9 flattens the local groups hierarchy.
- Deployment packages in Device Manager are referred to as delivery groups in XenMobile, as shown in the following figure. For more information, see [Deploy resources](#).

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles **Delivery Groups**

### Delivery Groups [Show filter](#)

[Add](#) | [Export](#)

<input type="checkbox"/>	Status	Name	Last Updated	Disabled	▾
<input type="checkbox"/>		AllUsers			
<input type="checkbox"/>		Domain users	Jun 13 2016 5:10 PM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		Sales	Apr 13 2016 12:50 PM		

Inside the delivery group, you can view the policies, actions, and apps required for the group of users who require the resources.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles **Delivery Groups**

### Delivery Group

- 1 Delivery Group Info
- 2 User
- 3 Resource (optional)
- Policies
- Apps
- Actions
- ShareFile
- Enrollment Profile
- 4 Summary

### Delivery Group Information ✕

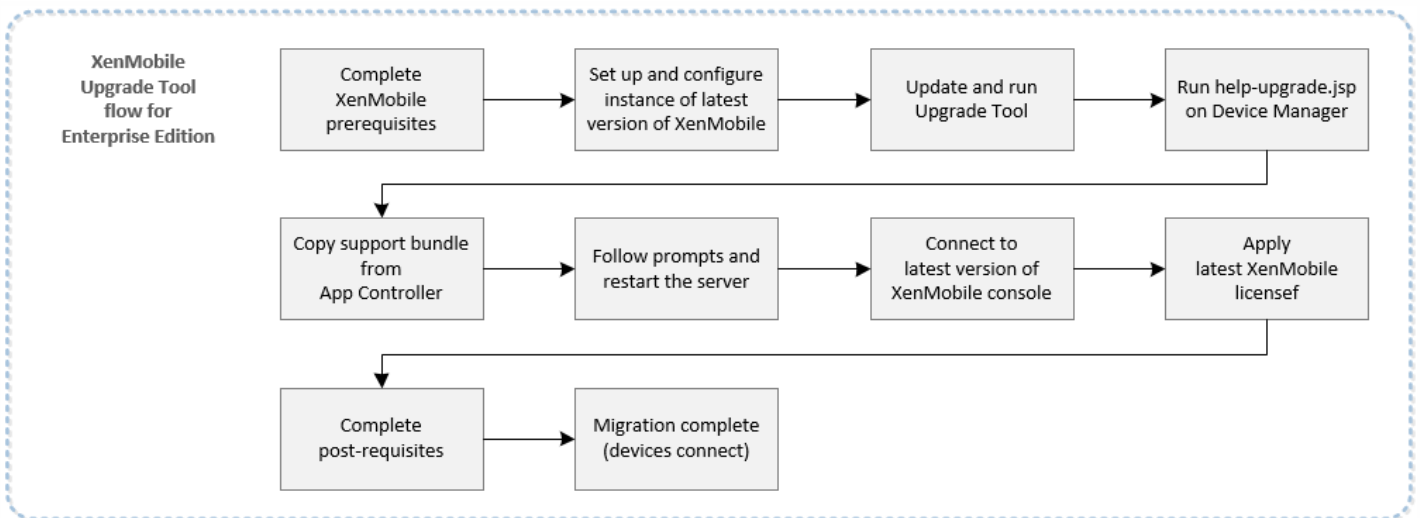
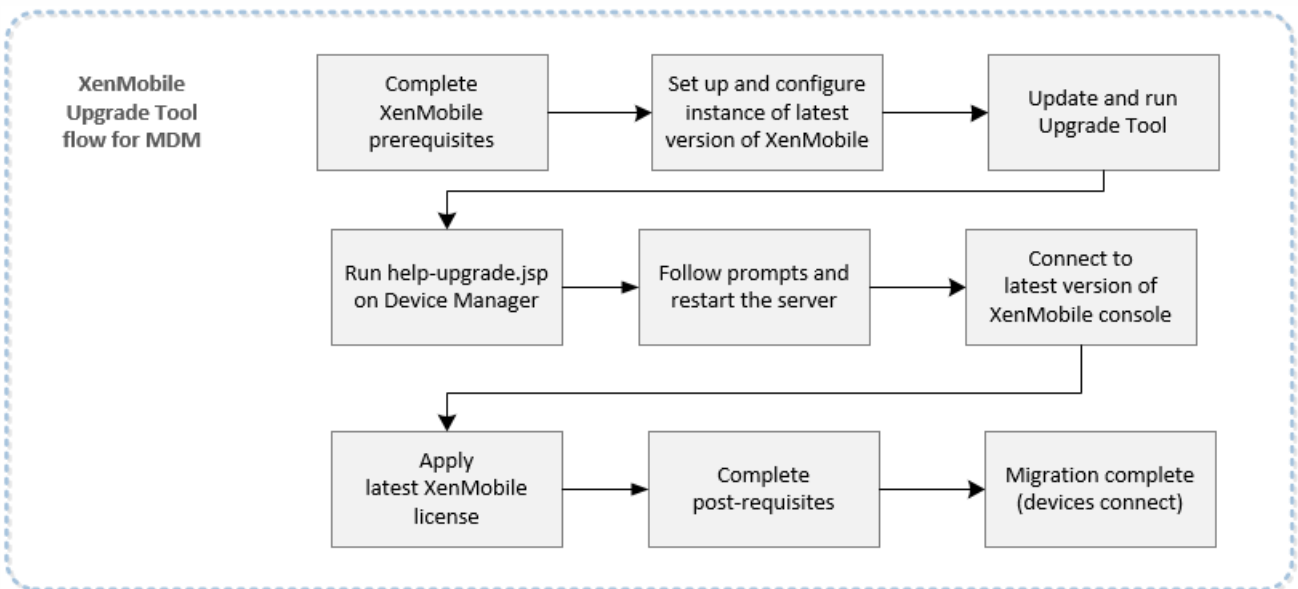
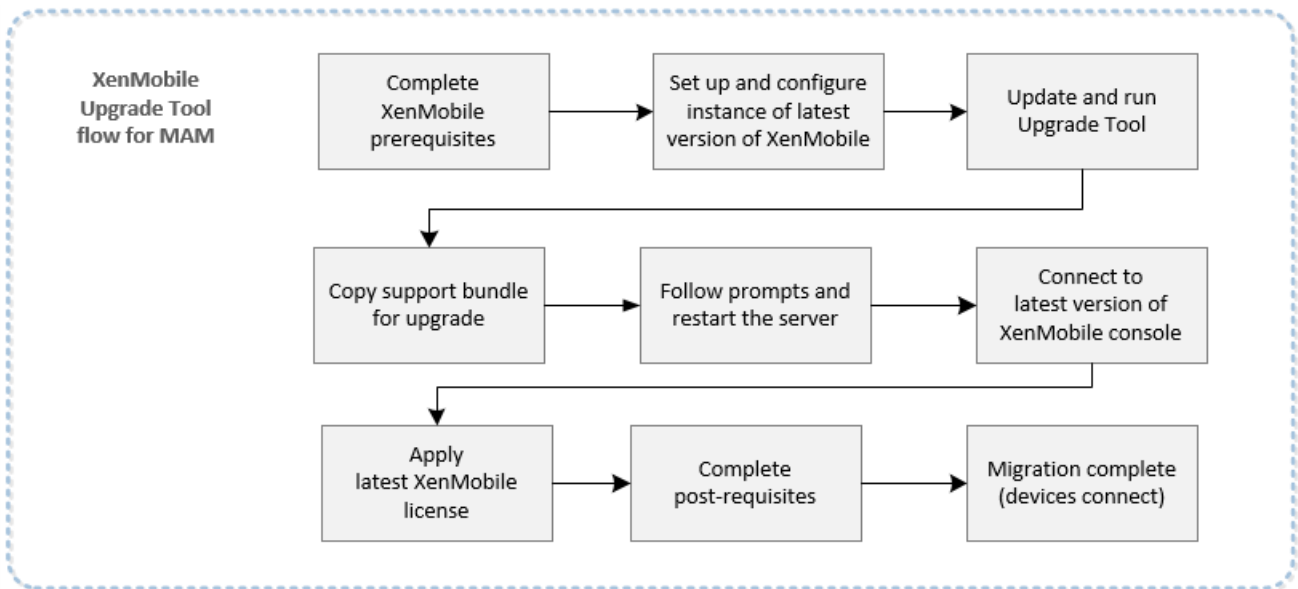
Enter a name for the delivery group and any information that will help you keep track of it later.

**Name**

**Description**

Upgrade workflow for XenMobile 9.0 to the latest version of XenMobile

The following figures illustrate the basic steps you take to upgrade from XenMobile 9.0.



## Prerequisites for Windows phones in Enterprise mode

Citrix recommends the following steps for upgrading a XenMobile 9.0 Enterprise environment, with Windows Phones enrolled in Enterprise mode and using Worx Home 9.x, to the latest version of XenMobile.

1. Upgrade Worx Home on Device Manager to Worx Home 10.2 or later and then deploy Worx Home 10.2.
2. Manually uninstall Worx Home 9.x from user devices.
3. Instruct users to go to the Download Hub on their phone to install Worx Home 10.2 or later, which you deployed from Device Manager.
4. After you complete the prerequisites described in this article, upgrade to the latest version of XenMobile as described in [Enable and run the XenMobile Upgrade Tool](#).
5. Make NetScaler changes for devices to connect back, as described in [Upgrade Tool post-requisites](#).

## Required App Controller patch

Download XenMobile 9.0 App Controller Rolling Patch 9 from <https://support.citrix.com/article/CTX218552>.

In the App Controller management console, go to **Settings > Release Management**. Click **Update** and then select the patch file you downloaded. Click **Upload** and then restart App Controller.

## Custom store names in XenMobile 9

Before you upgrade XenMobile 9 to the latest version of XenMobile, you must change a custom store name back to its default value so that enrolled Windows devices continue to work after the upgrade. For more information, see <http://support.citrix.com/article/CTX214553>.

In a MAM or Enterprise mode upgrade, if the store name has been changed to from the default Store on App Controller, restore the name back to the default setting of **Store** before generating a support bundle for the upgrade.

### Beacons [Edit](#)

Store name:

\*

Store

Default store view:

Category

## System and port requirements

For the required versions of related components such as Citrix License Server, see [System requirements](#) and its sub-articles.

- **NetScaler:** Before you upgrade NetScaler, be sure to save a copy of your Netscaler configuration file (ns.conf). Current Netscaler releases include an easy-to-use quick deployment utility, the NetScaler for XenMobile wizard, that guides you through the steps to integrate NetScaler and XenMobile. For more information, see [Configuring Settings for Your XenMobile Environment](#) and [FAQ: XenMobile 10 and NetScaler 10.5 Integration](#).
- **Firewall Ports:** Open firewall ports for the new XenMobile Server IP similar to the ports opened for the XenMobile 9.0 IP

server. For XenMobile port requirements, see [Port requirements](#).

- **LDAP Server:** Make sure that the new XenMobile Server connects to one or more LDAP servers. You must have an active route to LDAP servers after you upgrade, when you restart the server.

## Database migration

The following table lists the possible database migration options. For system requirements, see [XenMobile Database Requirements](#).

### From XenMobile 9.0

### To the latest version of XenMobile

#### Enterprise Edition

##### App Controller

##### MDM

Local PostgreSQL

Local PostgreSQL

Local PostgreSQL

Local PostgreSQL

MS SQL

MS SQL

Local PostgreSQL

Remote PostgreSQL

Remote PostgreSQL

#### App Edition

Local PostgreSQL

Local PostgreSQL

Local PostgreSQL

Remote PostgreSQL

Local PostgreSQL

MS SQL

#### MDM Edition

Local PostgreSQL

Local PostgreSQL

MS SQL

MS SQL

Remote PostgreSQL

Remote PostgreSQL

During the database migration process, XenMobile needs the ability to access the database solution implemented on XenMobile 9.0 Device Manager. For example, the following ports must be open:



- For Microsoft SQL Server, the default port is 1433.
- For PostgreSQL, the default port is 5432.

To allow remote connections to PostgreSQL, you must complete the following steps:

1. Open the file `pg_hba.conf` and then locate the following line:

```
host all all 127.0.0.1/32 md5
```

2. To allow all IP addresses, change the line to:

```
host all all 0.0.0.0/0 md5
```

Alternatively, add another host entry to allow connections to the XenMobile server IP address:

```
host all all 10.x.x.x/32 md5
```

3. Save the file.

4. Stop and start the service.

5. Open the `postgresql.conf` file and then locate the following line:

```
#listen_addresses = 'localhost'
```

6. Change the line to:

```
listen_addresses = '*'
```

7. Stop and start the PostgreSQL service to apply the changes.

If the database solution has a custom port assigned, you must ensure that the port is allowed and open in the firewall protecting XenMobile 9.0 Device Manager. Doing so enables the new instance of XenMobile to connect to the database and migrate the required information.

## Deployment package names with special characters

Deployment package names in XenMobile 9.0 that contain special characters (!, \$, (), #, %, +, \*, ~, ?, |, {}, and []) upgrade, however you can't edit the delivery groups in new instance of XenMobile after the upgrade. In addition, local users and local groups created in XenMobile 9.0 that contain an open square bracket ([]) cause problems in new instance of XenMobile with creating enrollment invitations. Before an upgrade, remove all special characters from deployment package names as well as open square brackets from local user and local group names.

## External SSL certificate

External SSL certificates must meet the conditions outlined in the Citrix Support article [How to Configure an External SSL Certificate](#). Be sure to review your `pki.xml` before starting the upgrade to ensure that the SSL certificate meets those conditions.

## Export XenMobile 9.0 server certificate

If you are upgrading a XenMobile 9.0 Enterprise Edition deployment, you must export the App Controller server certificate. Later, when you are handling the upgrade post-requisites, you must import the server certificate into NetScaler Gateway. Follow these steps to export the server certificate:

1. Log on to the XenMobile 9.0 App Controller and click **Certificates**.
2. In the certificate list, click the server certificate you want to export and then click **Export**.

**System Configuration**

- Overview
- Deployment
- XenMobile MDM
- GoToAssist
- Active Directory
- Certificates**
- Branding
- Network Connectivity
- Domain Name Server
- NTP Server
- Workflow Email
- Administrator
- Release Management
- Receiver Email Template

**Quick Links**

- Configure settings
- Download .cr file
- Add connector
- Configure nested groups

**Certificates**

You can view the certificates installed on App Controller, including server, root, or intermediate certificates, as well as the details of pending Certificate Signing Requests. You can also install either PEM or PKCS#12 certificates stored on your computer by clicking Import.

All Certificates						
Active	Name	Description	Valid from	Valid to	Type	Status
	AppController.example.com	Self Generated/Signed	5/22/2015	5/19/2025	Server	
✓	*.citrite.net	(imported)	6/3/2014	6/2/2016	Server	
	CITRITEIssuingCA01	(imported)	10/25/2013	10/25/2023	Root or intermediate	
	CITRITEPolicyCA	(imported)	10/25/2013	10/25/2028	Root or intermediate	
	CITRIXRootCA	(imported)	1/15/2009	10/25/2033	Root or intermediate	
✓	*.citrite.net	(imported)	6/3/2014	6/2/2016	saml	

Certificate Chain						
Name	Description	Valid from	Valid to	Type	Status	
CITRITEIssuingCA01	(imported)	10/25/2013	10/25/2023	Root or intermediate		
CITRITEPolicyCA	(imported)	10/25/2013	10/25/2028	Root or intermediate		
CITRIXRootCA	(imported)	1/15/2009	10/25/2033	Root or intermediate		

Buttons: Import, Export, New..., Make Active, Self-Signed, Details, Delete, Add to Chain, Details, Delete.

3. In the **Export Certificate** dialog box, type your certificate password in both fields and then click **OK**.

**System Configuration**

- Overview
- Deployment
- XenMobile MDM
- GoToAssist
- Active Directory
- Certificates**
- Branding
- Network Connectivity
- Domain Name Server
- NTP Server
- Workflow Email
- Administrator
- Release Management
- Receiver Email Template

**Quick Links**

- Configure settings
- Download .cr file
- Add connector
- Configure nested groups

**Certificates**

You can view the certificates installed on App Controller, including server, root, or intermediate certificates, as well as the details of pending Certificate Signing Requests. You can also install either PEM or PKCS#12 certificates stored on your computer by clicking Import.

All Certificates						
Active	Name	Description	Valid from	Valid to	Type	Status
	AppController.example.com	Self Ge				
✓	*.citrite.net	(import				
	CITRITEIssuingCA01	(import			intermediate	
	CITRITEPolicyCA	(import			intermediate	
	CITRIXRootCA	(import			intermediate	
✓	*.citrite.net	(import				

Certificate Chain						
Name	Description	Valid from	Valid to	Type	Status	
CITRITEIssuingCA01	(imported)	10/25/2013	10/25/2023	Root or intermediate		
CITRITEPolicyCA	(imported)	10/25/2013	10/25/2028	Root or intermediate		
CITRIXRootCA	(imported)	1/15/2009	10/25/2033	Root or intermediate		

**Export Certificate** dialog box:

Password: \*

Confirm Password: \*

Buttons: Ok, Close

Buttons: Import, Export, New..., Make Active, Self-Signed, Details, Delete, Add to Chain, Details, Delete.

Server for uploading the encrypted support bundle

Prepare a server where you can upload the encrypted support bundle from the XenMobile command-line interface using either the File Transfer Protocol (FTP) or Secure Copy Protocol (SCP).

# Enable and run the XenMobile Upgrade Tool

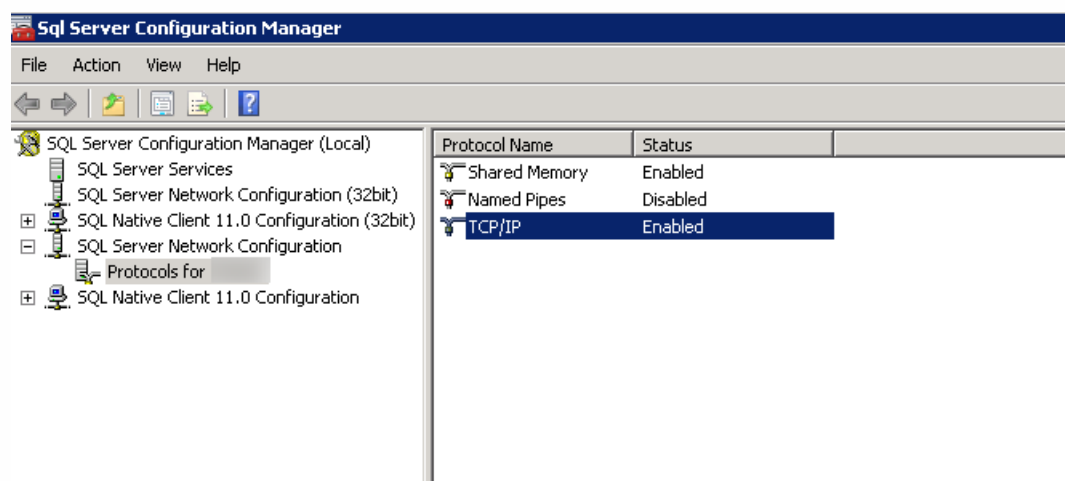
Feb 27, 2017

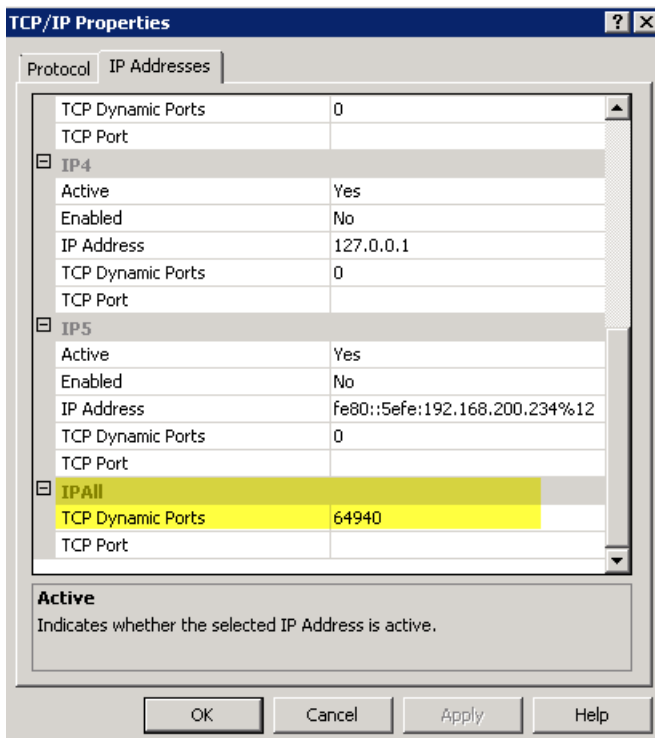
If your XenMobile 9 environment meets the following prerequisites, follow the steps in this section before proceeding with the upgrade.

- XenMobile 9 MDM Edition or Enterprise Edition has an external SQL Server database.
- SQL Server database runs on a non-default named instance.
- SQL Server named instance listens on a static or dynamic TCP port. You can confirm this prerequisite by looking at the IP addresses of the TCP/IP protocol of the named instance as shown in the following figures.

## Note

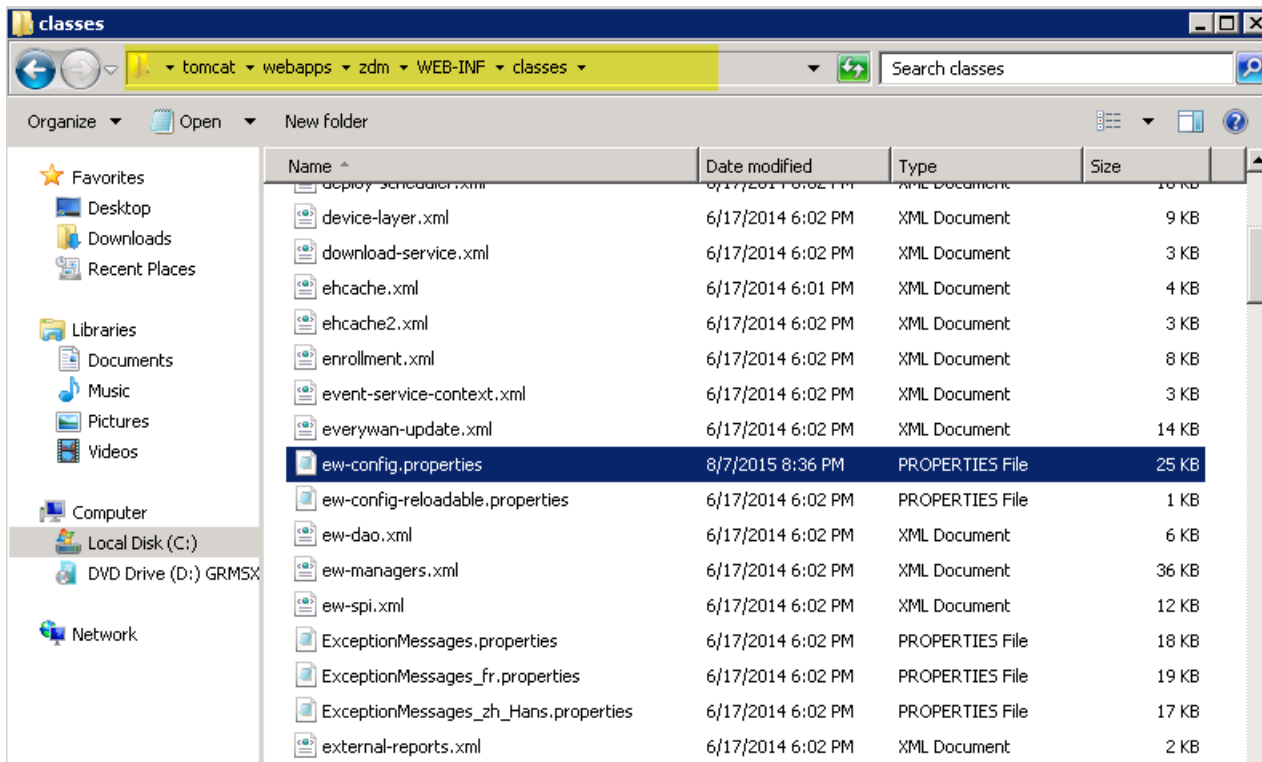
Citrix recommends that the SQL server database instance always runs on a static port, because the XenMobile server needs continuing access to the database. This connection generally traverses through a firewall. As a result, you need to open the appropriate port in the firewall; therefore, you need to have the database instance running on a static port.





## Pre-upgrade steps

1. Go to the Device Manager installation directory and open the ew-config.properties file. This file is available in tomcat\webapps\zdm\WEB-INF\classes.



2. In the ew-config.properties file, search for the following URLs in the DATASOURCE Configuration section:

pooled.datasource.url= jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://<SQLServer\_FQDN>/<DB\_Name>;instance=<Instance\_Name>

audit.datasource.url= jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://<SQLServer\_FQDN>/<DB\_Name>;instance=<Instance\_Name>

```
ew-config.properties
18 # For Microsoft SQL server url1: pooled.datasource.url=jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://localhost:1433/everywan
19 # For Microsoft SQL server url1 with a named instance (url2): pooled.datasource.url=jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://localhost/everywan;instance=SQLExpress
20 # For Microsoft SQL server url2 with a Windows authentication (NTLM): pooled.datasource.url=jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://localhost/everywan;instance=SQLExpress;domain=sparus-
21 # Oracle url: pooled.datasource.url=jdbc:oracle:thin:everywan/everywan@localhost:1521/everywan
22 pooled.datasource.url=jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://ah-234 .net/ -11aug;instance=
23 # Pooled datasource host name
24 pooled.datasource.hostname=ah-234. .net
25 # Pooled datasource database
26 pooled.datasource.database= aug
27 # Pooled datasource user
28 pooled.datasource.user=sa
29 # Pooled datasource password
30 # For Microsoft SQL server (10 characters minimum) ex: pooled.datasource.password=everywan01
31 pooled.datasource.password=(aes) ==
32
33 # No pooled datasource driver
34 #no.pooled.datasource.driver=org.postgresql.Driver
35 # No pooled datasource url
36 #no.pooled.datasource.url=jdbc:postgresql://localhost:5432/everywan
37 # No pooled datasource user
38 #no.pooled.datasource.user=everywan
39 # No pooled datasource password
40 #no.pooled.datasource.password=everywan
41
42 # Audit datasource driver
43 audit.datasource.driver=net.sourceforge.jtds.jdbc.Driver
44 # Audit datasource url
45 audit.datasource.url=jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://ah-234 / -11aug;instance=
46 # Audit datasource host name
47 audit.datasource.hostname=ah-234 .net
48 # Audit datasource database
49 audit.datasource.database= -11aug
50 # Audit datasource user
51 audit.datasource.user=sa
52 # Audit datasource password
```

3. Remove the instance name in the preceding URLs, then add the port and SQL Server FQDN. In this case, 64940 is the required port.

pooled.datasource.url=jdbc:jtds:sqlserver:// <SQLServer\_FQDN>:64940/<DB\_Name>

audit.datasource.url=jdbc:jtds:sqlserver:// <SQLServer\_FQDN>:64940/<DB\_Name>

## Note

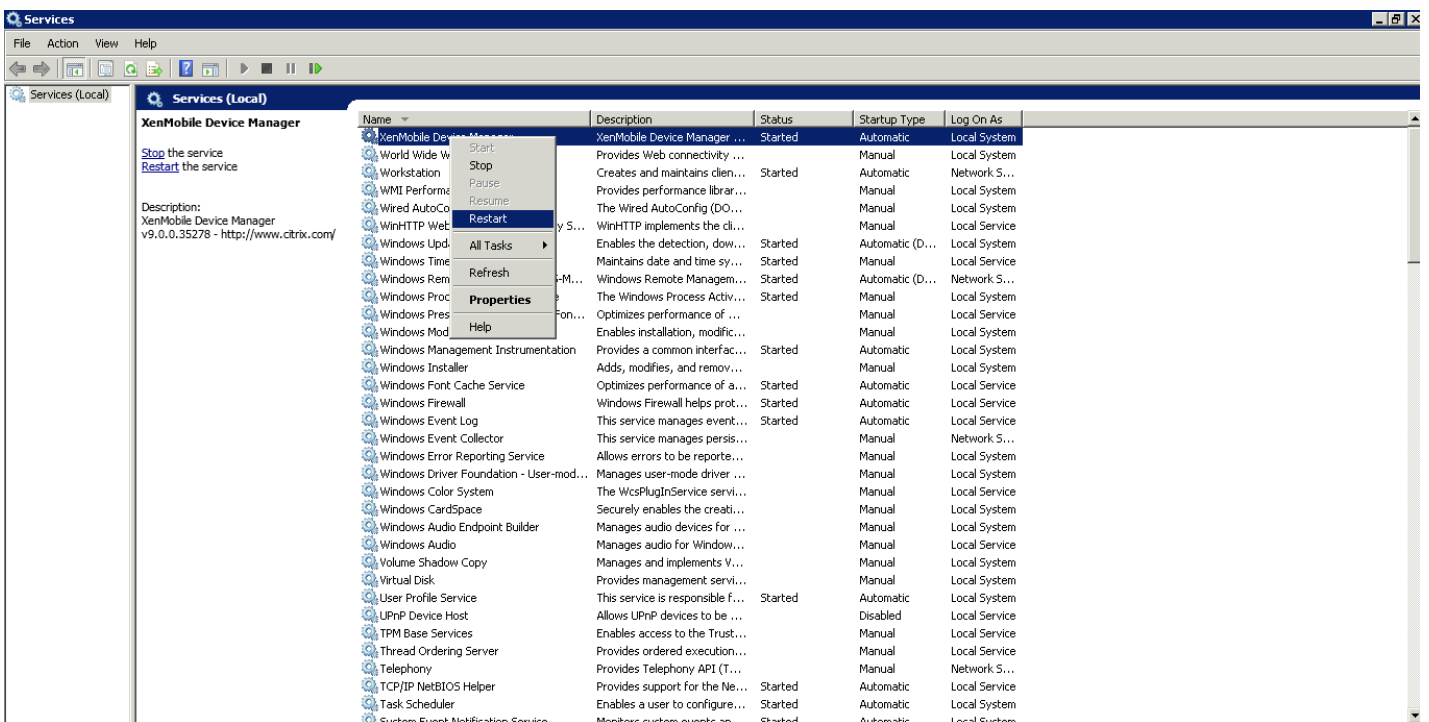
Citrix recommends that you make a backup, copy, or note of the changes you make in the ew-config.properties file. This information is helpful in case the upgrade fails.

```

18 # For Microsoft SQL server url1: pooled.datasource.url=jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://localhost:1433/everywan
19 # For Microsoft SQL server url1 with a named instance (url2): pooled.datasource.url=jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://localhost/everywan;instance=SQLExpress
20 # For Microsoft SQL server url2 with a Windows authentication (NTLM): pooled.datasource.url=jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://localhost/everywan;instance=SQLExpress;domain=sparus-s
21 # Oracle url: pooled.datasource.url=jdbc:oracle:thin:everywan/everywan@localhost:1521/everywan
22 pooled.datasource.url=jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://ah-234. net: -llaug
23 # Pooled datasource host name
24 pooled.datasource.hostname=ah-234. .net
25 # Pooled datasource database
26 pooled.datasource.database=-llaug
27 # Pooled datasource user
28 pooled.datasource.user=sa
29 # Pooled datasource password
30 # For Microsoft SQL server (10 characters minimum) ex: pooled.datasource.password=everywan01
31 pooled.datasource.password={aes} ==
32
33 # No pooled datasource driver
34 #no.pooled.datasource.driver=org.postgresql.Driver
35 # No pooled datasource url
36 #no.pooled.datasource.url=jdbc:postgresql://localhost:5432/everywan
37 # No pooled datasource user
38 #no.pooled.datasource.user=everywan
39 # No pooled datasource password
40 #no.pooled.datasource.password=everywan
41
42 # Audit datasource driver
43 audit.datasource.driver=net.sourceforge.jtds.jdbc.Driver
44 # Audit datasource url
45 audit.datasource.url=jdbc:jtds:sqlserver:// -inc.net: -llaug
46 # Audit datasource host name
47 audit.datasource.hostname=ah-234. .net
48 # Audit datasource database
49 audit.datasource.database=-llaug
50 # Audit datasource user
51 audit.datasource.user=sa
52 # Audit datasource password

```

4. Restart the Device Manager service. Refresh the device connections after the Device Manager instance restarts.



5. Determine if the new XenMobile 10.x server also needs to work with named SQL instance. If so, identify the port on which the named instance is running. If the port is a dynamic port, Citrix recommends that you convert the port to a static port. Later, when you reach the following portion of the database setup during the upgrade, configure the static port on the new XenMobile server.

```
Type: [mi]
Use SSL (y/n) [n]:
Server [10.207.86.64]:
Port [1433]:
Username [sa]:
Password:
Database name [RC]:

Reboot is required to save the changes.
Do you want to proceed? (y/n) [y]: █
```

You can now proceed with the upgrade.

## To upgrade clustered XenMobile deployments

If your system is configured in cluster mode:

1. Shut down all nodes other than the one you will upgrade first. To shut down a node, use **Settings** in the command-line interface.
2. Upgrade the node that's still running, as described in the next section, "To enable and run the Upgrade Tool."
3. After you've ensured that the first upgrade has upgraded as expected, rejoin each of the remaining nodes, one at a time. To rejoin:
  - a. Restart the node.
  - b. Do not upgrade the node if prompted.
  - c. Join the node to the cluster's database.

XenMobile will automatically upgrade a node after you rejoin it to the cluster.

4. Perform all post-requisite tasks on each node after you rejoin it to the cluster.

## To enable and run the Upgrade Tool

Enable the Upgrade Tool through the command-line interface (CLI) when you first install the latest version of XenMobile.

### Important

If you want to take a snapshot of your system, do so after the initial configuration of the latest version of XenMobile and before using the Upgrade Tool.

1. In the CLI, type your administrator user name and password and then enter your network settings.
2. Type **y** to commit the settings.



```
*****
*      Citrix XenMobile      *
*    (in First Time Use mode)  *
*****

Welcome to the XenMobile First Time Use wizard. This wizard guides you through t
he initial configuration of XenMobile. Accept options offered by pressing Enter/
Return or type your own response and then press Enter/Return.

Command prompt window administrator account:
This is the user name and password you use when logging on to XenMobile at the c
ommand prompt.
Username: admin
New password:
Re-enter new password:

Network settings:
IP address [I]: 10.207.87.35
Netmask [I]: 255.255.254.0
Default gateway [I]: 10.207.86.1
Primary DNS server [I]: 10.207.86.50
Secondary DNS server (optional) [I]: 10.207.86.51

Commit settings (y/n) [y]:
```

3. Type **y** to upgrade.

## Note

If you do not select **y** here, you must configure a new instance of the latest version of XenMobile in the command-line console and start the Upgrade Tool again.

4. Select to generate a random passphrase and, optionally, enable FIPS. Enter your database connection information.

5. Type **y** to commit the settings.

```
Commit settings (y/n) [y]:
Applying network settings...

Upgrade:
Upgrade from previous release (y/n) [n]: y

Encryption passphrase:
Generate a random passphrase to secure the server data (y/n) [y]:

Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) mode:
Enable (y/n) [n]:

Database connection:
Local or remote (l/r) [r]:
Type (mi=Microsoft SQL, p=PostgreSQL) [mi]:
Use SSL (y/n) [n]:
Server [I]: sql01.xmlab.net
Port [1433]:
Username [sa]: xmsadmin
Password:
Database name [DB_service]: migdemo

Commit settings (y/n) [y]:
```

XenMobile initializes the database.

```
Checking database status...
Database does not exist.
Initializing database...
```

6. Select whether to enable clustered servers. Type the XenMobile fully qualified domain name (FQDN). Note the following:

- For XenMobile Enterprise Edition deployments, the FQDN is the same as the XenMobile 9.0 MDM FQDN.
- For MAM deployments, the FQDN is the same as the XenMobile 9.0 App Controller FQDN.
- For MDM deployments, the FQDN is the same as the XenMobile 9.0 Device Manager FQDN.

## Important

The FQDN for the 9.0 environment and for the new environment must match.

```
Cluster:
Please press y to enable cluster? [y/n]: y
To enable realtime communication between cluster members please open port 80 u
sing Firewall menu option in CLI menu, once the system configuration is complete
.
Xenmobile Server FQDN:
Hostname []: migdemo.xs.citrix.com

Commit settings (y/n) [y]:
Applying fqdn settings...
```

7. Type **y** to commit the settings.

8. Set communication ports.

```
Communication ports:
HTTP [80]:
HTTPS with certificate authentication [443]:
HTTPS with no certificate authentication [8443]:
HTTPS for management [4443]:

Commit settings (y/n) [y]:
```

9. Type **y** to commit the settings.

10. Select whether to use the same password for all certificates and type the password to be used for certificates.

11. Type **y** to commit the settings.

```

Applying port listener configuration...

The wizard will now generate an internal Public Key Infrastructure (PKI):
- A root certificate
- An intermediate certificate to issue device certificates during enrollment
- An intermediate certificate to issue an SSL certificate
- An SSL certificate for your connectors
- A Node Identification certificate for cluster node client auth
Do you want to use the same password for all the certificates of the PKI [y]:
New password:
Re-enter new password:

Commit settings (y/n) [y]:
Generating SAML signing certificate...
Generating server and client certificates...

XenMobile console administrator account:
This is the user name and password you use when logging on to the XenMobile console through a web browser.
Username [administrator]:

```

12. Type the user name and password for the XenMobile console administrator.

13. Type **y** to commit the settings.

XenMobile enables the one-time-only Upgrade Tool.

```

Re-enter new password:

Commit settings (y/n) [y]: y
Creating console administrator...
Applying firewall settings ...
Writing iptables configuration...
Restarting iptables...

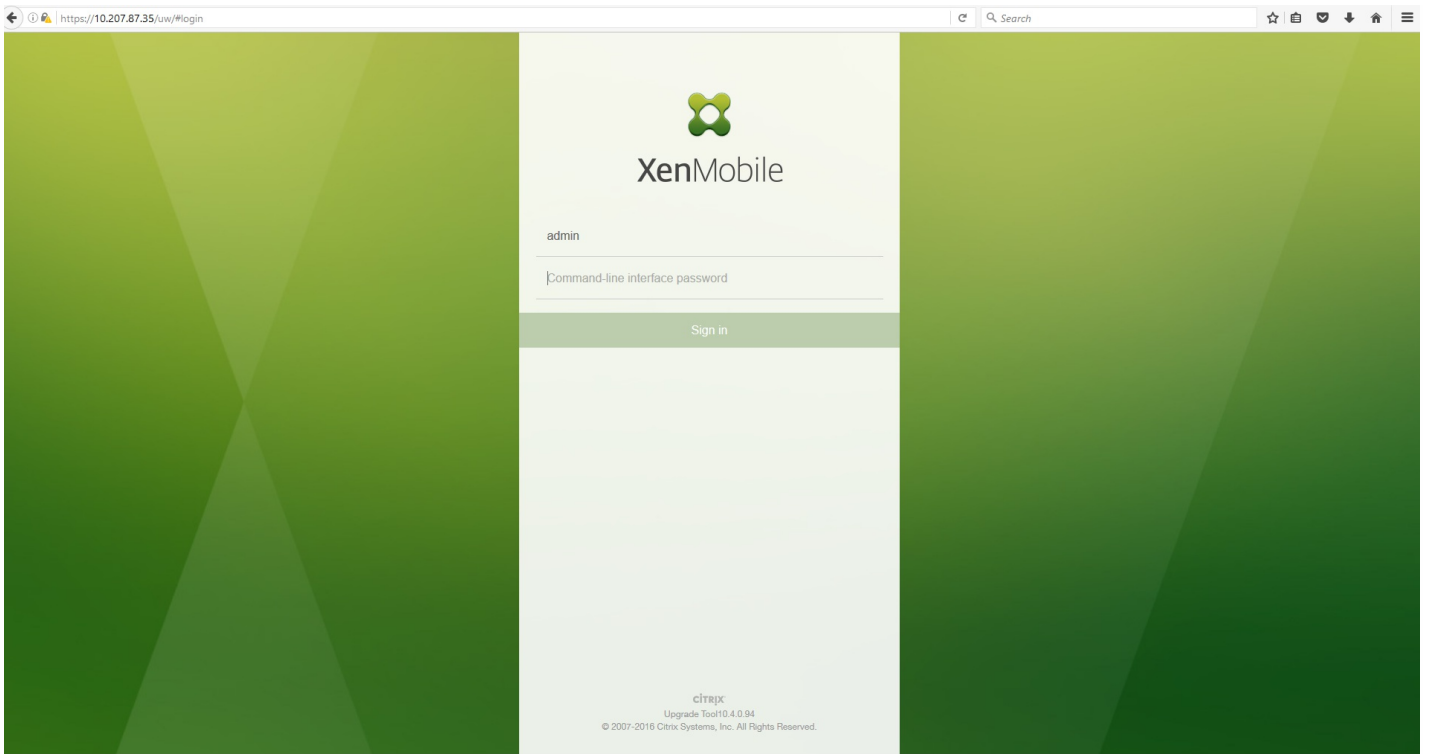
Initial system configuration complete!
Stopping configuration app... [ OK ]
Starting configuration app...
  this may take a few seconds.....
  application started [ OK ]
Stopping main app... [ OK ]
Starting main app... [ OK ]
  not ready to start yet

To complete the upgrade process, from a web browser, go to the following
location and log on with your command prompt credentials:
https://10.207.87.35/uw/

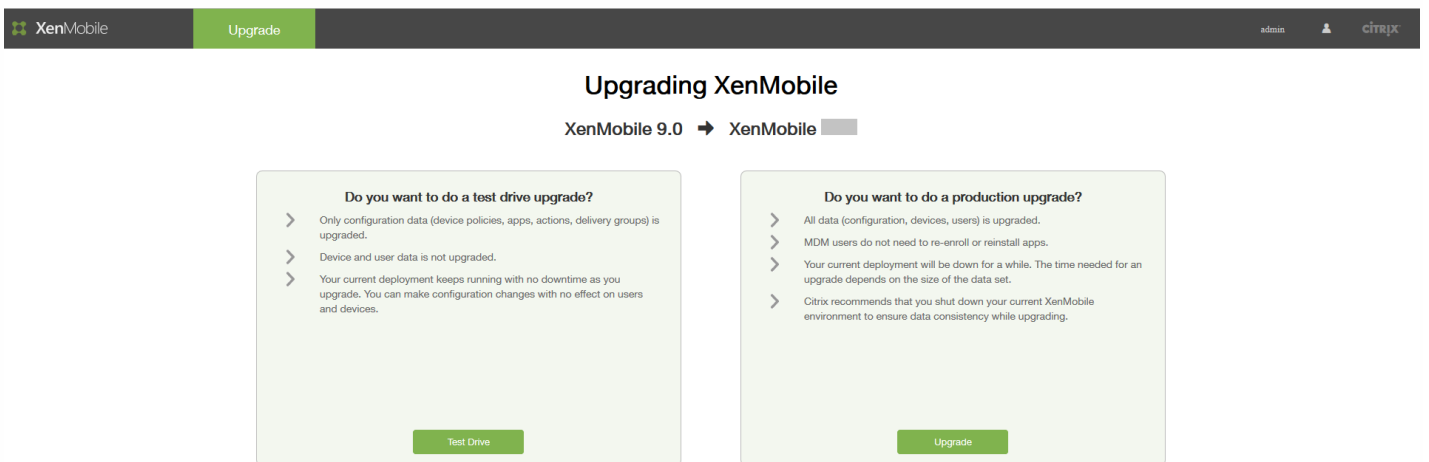
Starting monitoring... [ OK ]
migdemo.xs.citrix.com login:

```

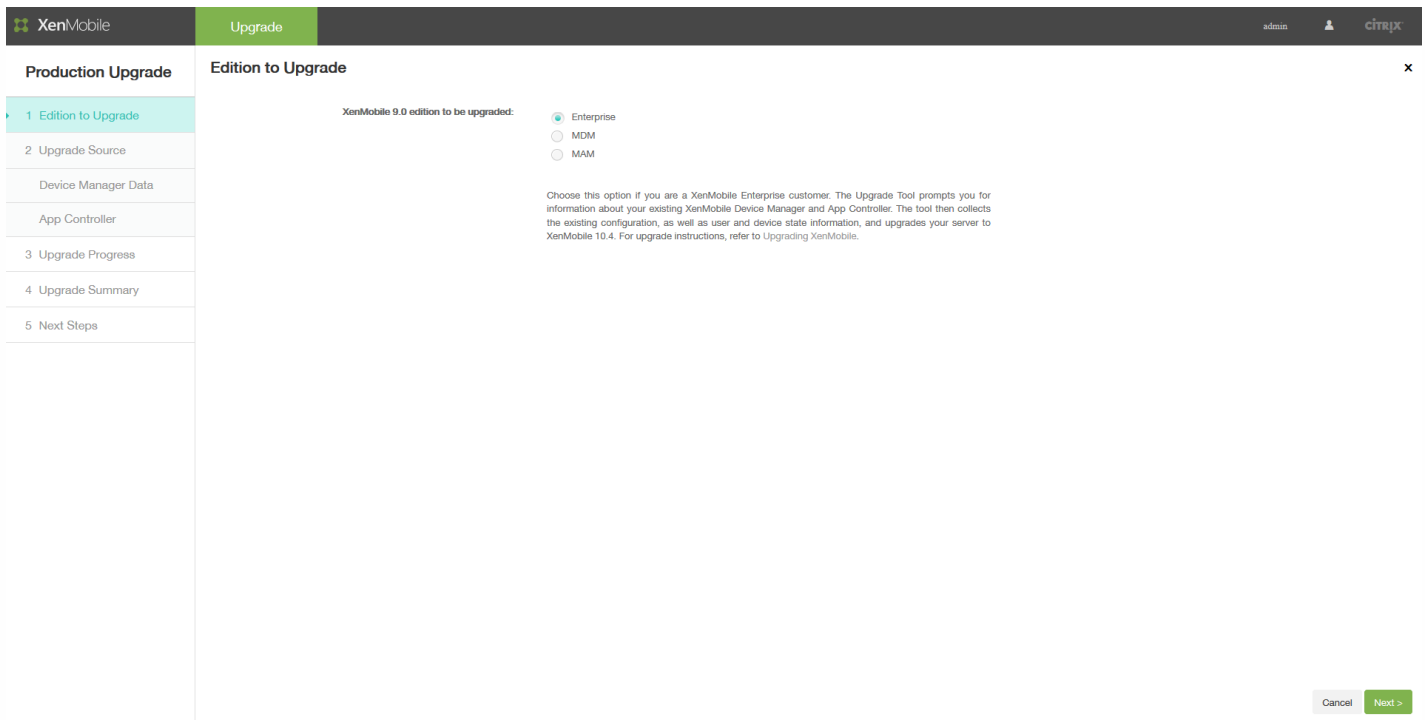
14. Access the Upgrade Tool on a web browser through <https://<XenMobile-Server-IPAddress>/uw/> and log in using the credentials you specified using the CLI.



15. You can now choose between a test drive and a production upgrade. These instructions are for a production upgrade. In the **Upgrading XenMobile** page, click **Upgrade**.



16. In the **Edition to Upgrade** page, select your edition. The example screen below shows Enterprise edition selected.



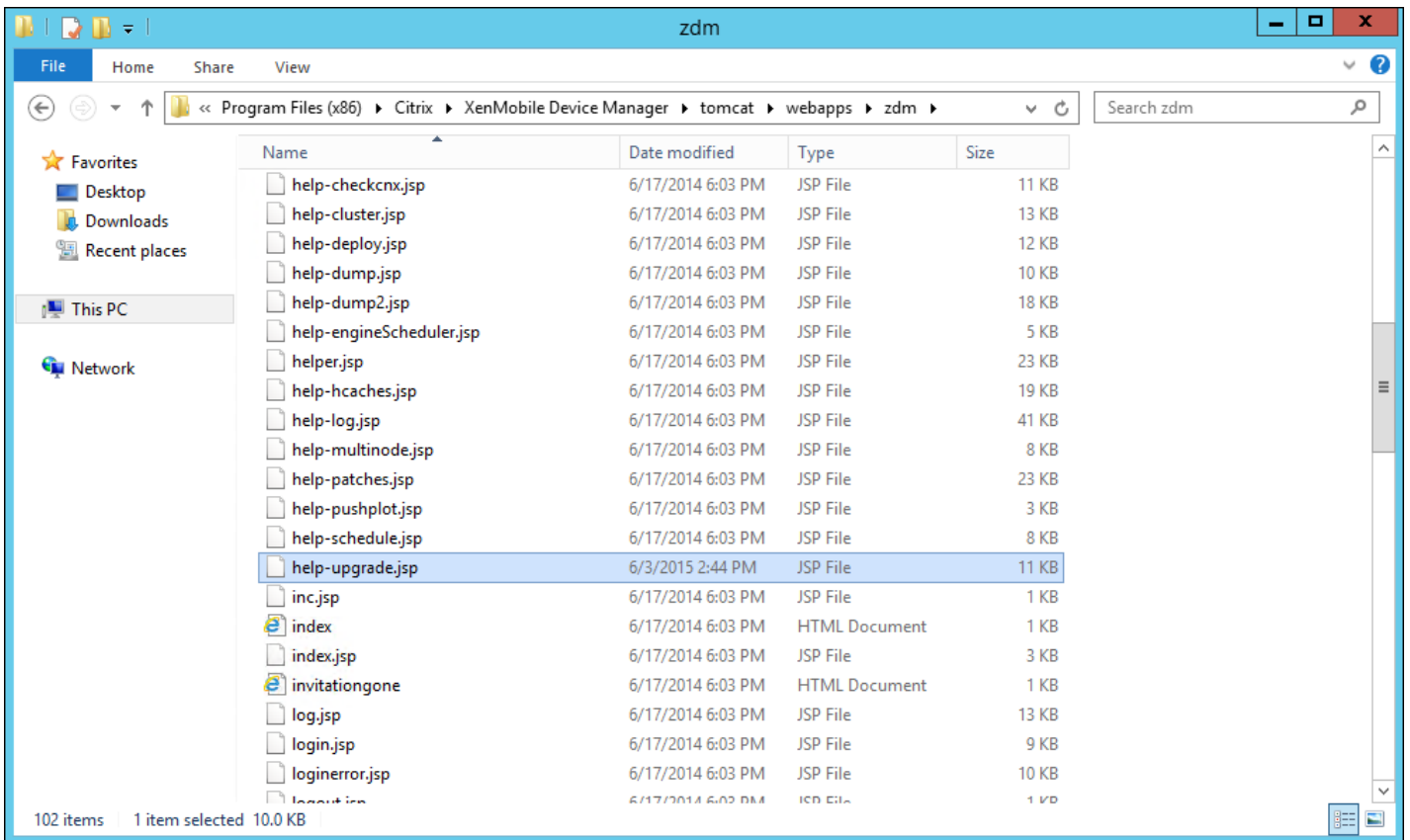
17. Click **Next**.

If you are upgrading a Enterprise or MDM edition, the **Device Manager** page appears. Follow steps 18 through 22 to complete this page.

If you are upgrading a MAM edition, skip to step 23 to complete the **App Controller** page.

18. Collect the files needed to migrate your existing XenMobile 9.0 Device Manager data. You will also get access to the database URL and user name that you will copy to the **Device Manager** page.

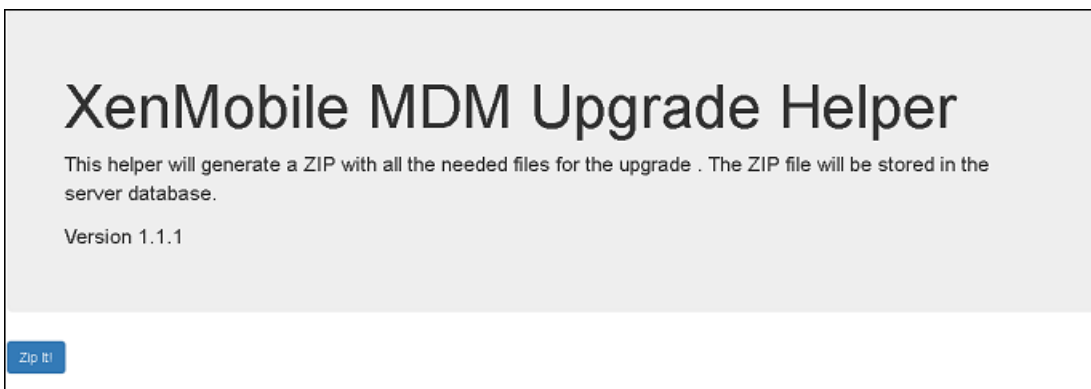
- a. Click the link in step 1 of the **Device Manager** page and save the downloaded help-upgrade.zip file.
- b. Extract the help-upgrade.jsp file to <MDM-Install-Path>\tomcat\webapps\zdm on your existing XenMobile 9.0 Device Manager.



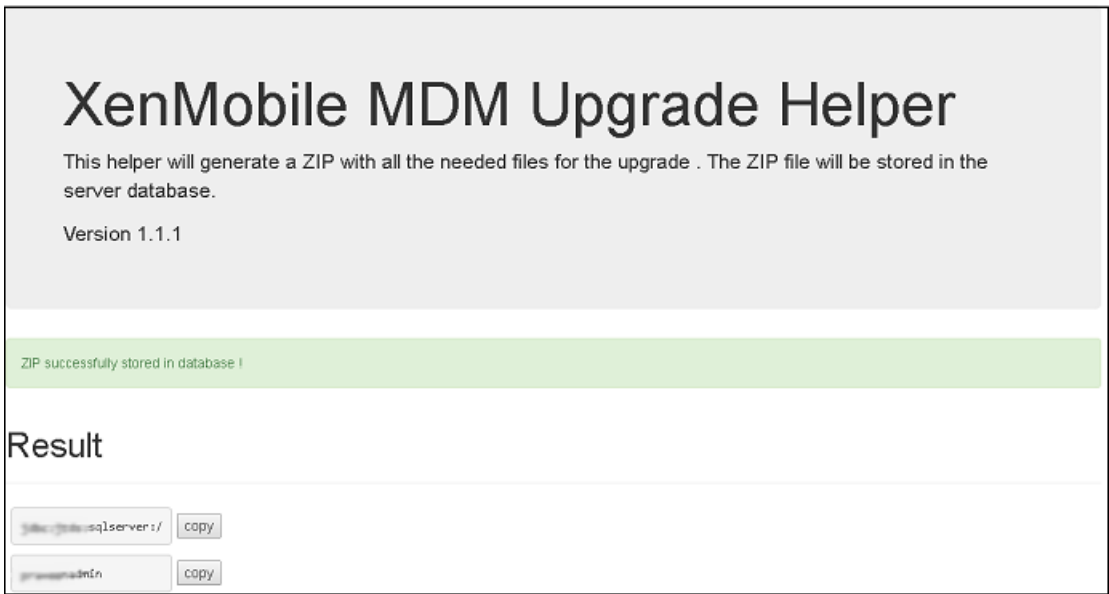
c. In a browser window, log on to the XenMobile 9.0 server.

d. In a separate browser tab, enter this URL: <https://localhost/zdm/help-upgrade.jsp>. This opens the **XenMobile MDM Upgrade Helper** page, which collects and zips all the files from XenMobile 9.0 that are needed for the upgrade to the latest version of XenMobile. The zip file is then stored in the server database from where it is extracted.

e. Click **Zip it** and then follow the on-screen steps to collect the files needed for the upgrade.

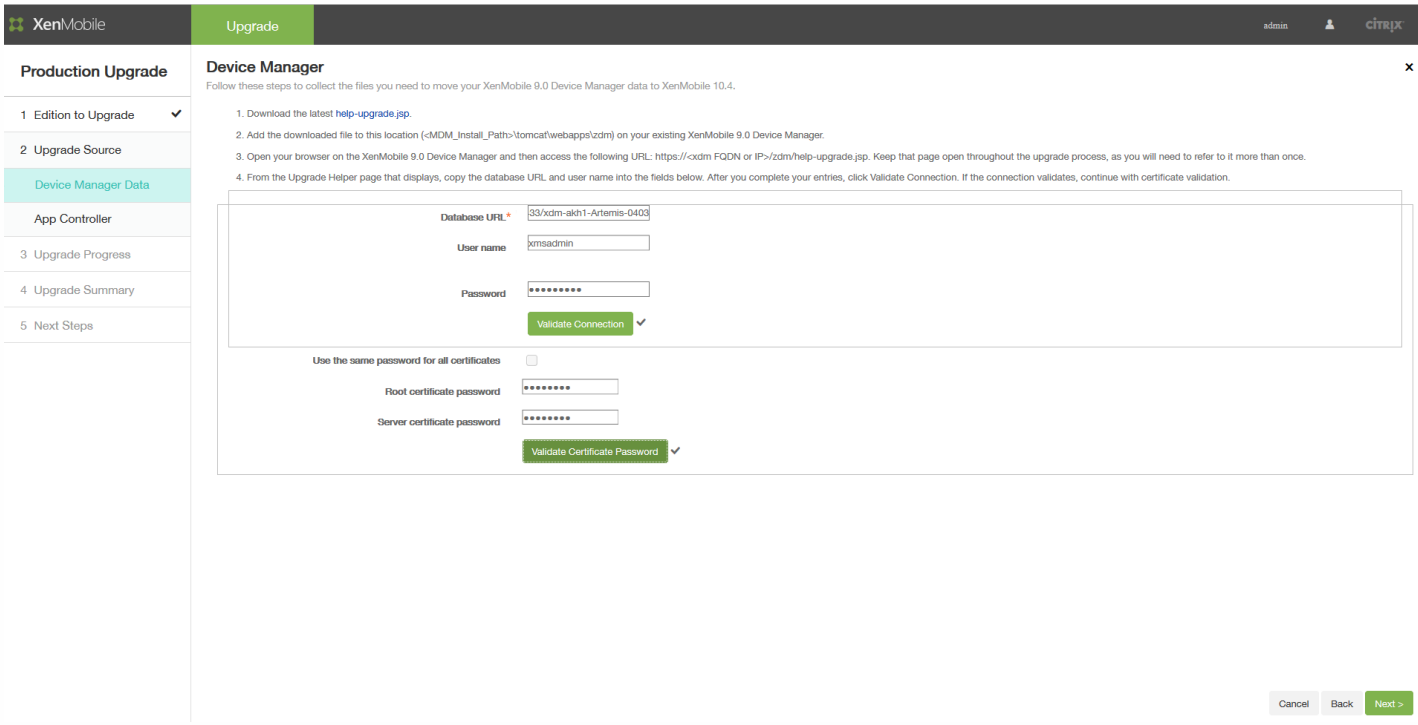


19. Under **Result**, copy the URL and paste it in the **Database URL** field in the Upgrade Tool's **Device Manager** page. Then copy the user name and copy it to the **Device Manager** page.



20. In the Upgrade Tool:

- a. Enter the password and then click **Validate Connection**.
- b. Enter the password for each certificate and then click **Validate Password**.



21. Click **Next**.

22. If you changed the ew-config.properties file, restart the xdm service on XenMobile 9 MDM and then go to <https://localhost/zdm/help-upgrade.jsp> to run the zip again. Doing so re-reads the ew-config.properties file and saves it to the XenMobile MDM 9 database to prepare for migration.

23. Next you will apply an upgrade patch to App Controller and then generate and upload a support bundle. Start by following the instructions in section 1 of the the **App Controller** page to upgrade App Controller.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Upgrade interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Upgrade', and user information. The left sidebar lists 'Production Upgrade' with sub-items: '1 Edition to Upgrade', '2 Upgrade Source', 'Device Manager Data', 'App Controller' (highlighted), '3 Upgrade Progress', '4 Upgrade Summary', and '5 Next Steps'. The main content area is titled 'App Controller' and contains the following instructions:

- Before upgrading from XenMobile 9.0 to XenMobile 10.4, you must apply the latest App Controller patch to App Controller. Steps to apply the patch:
  - Download the patch from the Citrix Downloads site.
  - Log on to App Controller.
  - Go to Settings > Release Management.
  - Click Import.
  - Select the patch you downloaded in Step 1.
  - Click Upload.
- After you apply the patch, follow the steps below to generate support bundle. The support bundle captures all important information to upgrade to XenMobile 10.4.
  - In the App Controller command-line console, type 4 and then press Enter to open the Troubleshooting menu.
  - In the Troubleshooting menu, type 3 and then press Enter to open the Support Bundle menu.
  - In the Support Bundle menu, type 1, press Enter, and then follow the command prompts.
  - You must encrypt the support bundle. To do so, type y, press Enter, and then follow the command prompts.
- Upload the support bundle from the previous step.

Below the instructions is a text input field and an 'Upload' button. At the bottom right of the page are 'Cancel', 'Back', and 'Next >' buttons.

25. Continue to the instructions in section 2 of the **App Controller** page:

a. In the App Controller command-line console, type **4** and then press ENTER to open the Troubleshooting menu.

```
AppController 9.0.0.973503, 2015-05-26
-----
Main Menu
-----
[0] Express Setup
[1] High Availability
[2] Clustering
[3] System
[4] Troubleshooting
[5] Help
[6] Log Out
-----
Choice: [0 - 6] 4
-----
Troubleshooting Menu
-----
[0] Back to Main Menu
[1] Network Utilities
[2] Logs
[3] Support Bundle
-----
Choice: [0 - 3] █
```

b. In the Troubleshooting menu, type **3** and then press ENTER to open the Support Bundle menu.



```
[6] Log Out
-----
Choice: [0 - 6] 4
-----
Troubleshooting Menu
-----
[0] Back to Main Menu
[1] Network Utilities
[2] Logs
[3] Support Bundle
-----
Choice: [0 - 3] 3
-----
Support Bundle Menu
-----
[0] Back to Troubleshooting Menu
[1] Generate Support Bundle
[2] Encrypt Existing Support Bundle
[3] Upload Support Bundle by Using SCP
[4] Upload Support Bundle by Using FTP
-----
Choice: [0 - 4] █
```

c. In the Support Bundle menu, type **1**, press ENTER, and then follow the command prompts.

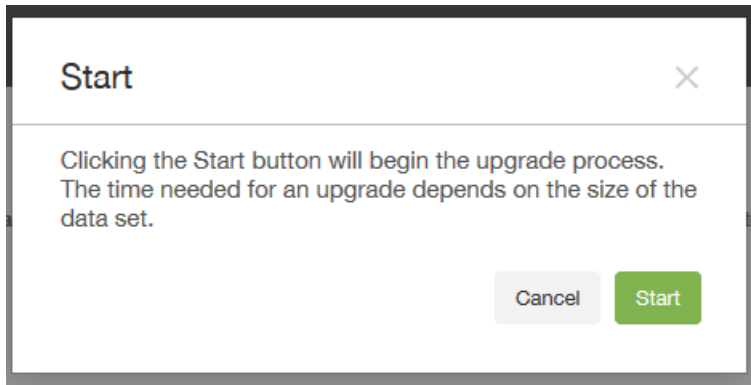
**Note:** You must encrypt the support bundle.

```
[6] Log Out
-----
Choice: [0 - 6] 4
-----
Troubleshooting Menu
-----
[0] Back to Main Menu
[1] Network Utilities
[2] Logs
[3] Support Bundle
-----
Choice: [0 - 3] 3
-----
Support Bundle Menu
-----
[0] Back to Troubleshooting Menu
[1] Generate Support Bundle
[2] Encrypt Existing Support Bundle
[3] Upload Support Bundle by Using SCP
[4] Upload Support Bundle by Using FTP
-----
Choice: [0 - 4] 1
```

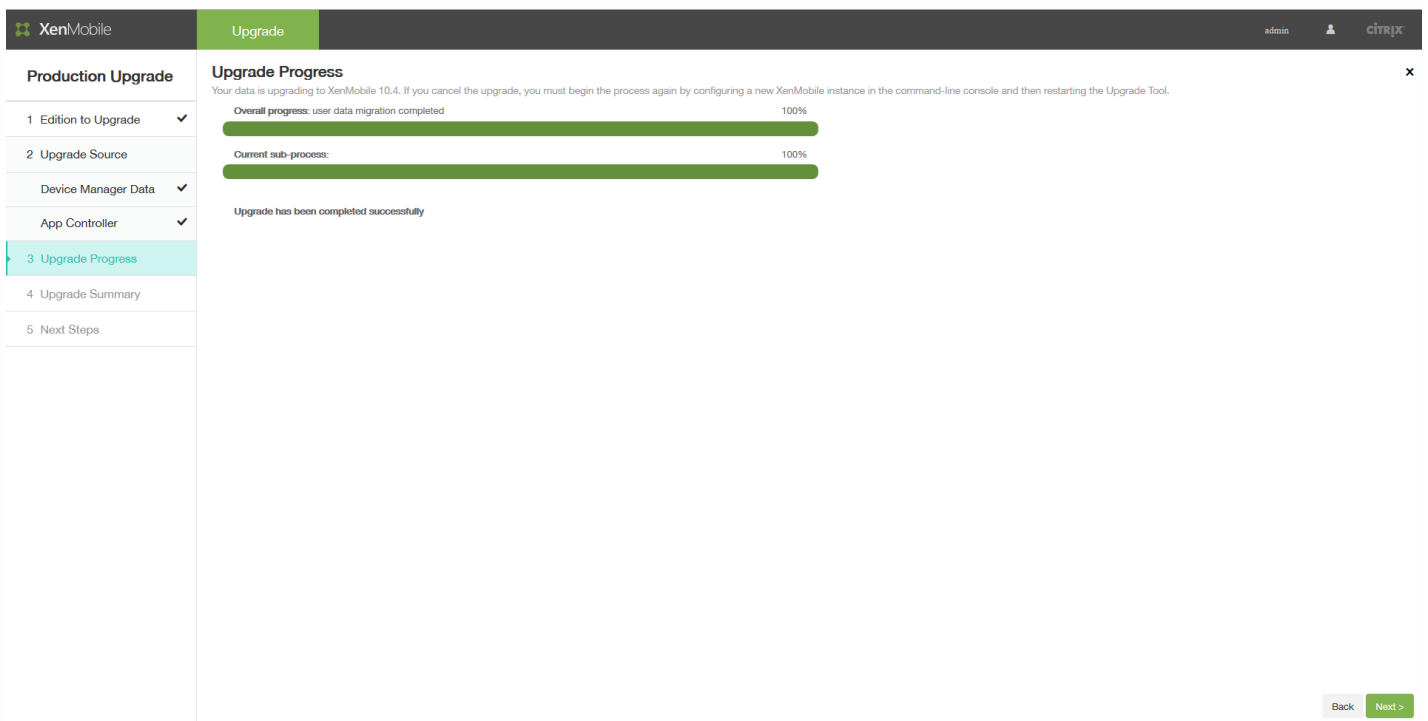
26. In section 3 of the the **App Controller** page, specify the support bundle and then click **Upload**.

The Upgrade Tool processes the collected files (for XenMobile Enterprise and MAM editions) and the support bundle. This step may take more than 15 minutes if you are migrating a large number of users.

27. Click **Next**. The **Start** confirmation dialog box appears.



28. Click **Start**. The **Upgrade Progress** page appears with progress indicators to let you track the data upgrade from XenMobile 9.0. When the upgrade is complete, the progress indicators are at 100% and the **Next** button is enabled.



## Note

If the upgrade fails, you can view the logs to understand the reason for the error. Then, you need to import a new XenMobile instance and restart the upgrade process. You cannot use the browser Back button to return to earlier pages and correct information.

The Upgrade Progress page lets you know when the upgrade has completed successfully.

29. Click **Next**. The **Upgrade Summary** page appears.

If you are upgrading an Enterprise or MAM edition, the **Upgrade Summary** page might look like this:

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Upgrade Summary page. The left sidebar contains a 'Production Upgrade' section with five steps: 1. Edition to Upgrade, 2. Upgrade Source, 3. Upgrade Progress, 4. Upgrade Summary (highlighted), and 5. Next Steps. The main content area is titled 'Upgrade Summary' and includes a download icon for the 'Upgrade log'. Below this is a table of upgrade statistics:

Devices Upgraded	5
Apps Upgraded	46
Users Upgraded	323
Delivery Groups Upgraded	12
Policies Upgraded	44
Smart Actions Upgraded	0

At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Back', and 'Next >'.

If you are upgrading an MDM edition, the **Upgrade Summary** page might look like this:

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Upgrade Summary page for an MDM edition. The left sidebar is identical to the previous screenshot, with step 4 'Upgrade Summary' highlighted. The main content area shows the 'Upgrade log' download icon and a table of upgrade statistics:

Devices Upgraded	604
Apps Upgraded	23
Users Upgraded	316
Delivery Groups Upgraded	5

At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Back', and 'Next >'.

30. Click the **Upgrade log** icon to download the log. Be sure to download the log before leaving this page.

Citrix recommends that you review the log to determine the policies, settings, user data, and so on that was or was not upgraded to the latest version of XenMobile.

31. After you download the upgrade log, click **Next**. The **Next Steps** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Upgrade interface. The top navigation bar includes the XenMobile logo, the 'Upgrade' tab, and user information (admin, citrix). The main content area is divided into two sections: 'Production Upgrade' and 'Next Steps'. The 'Production Upgrade' section contains a list of steps: 1. Edition to Upgrade, 2. Upgrade Source, Device Manager Data, App Controller, 3. Upgrade Progress, 4. Upgrade Summary, and 5. Next Steps (highlighted). The 'Next Steps' section contains a list of instructions: 1. You must configure licenses on XenMobile 10.4 to enable user connections. To do so, go to Configure > Settings > Licensing. 2. If you deployed the server running XenMobile 9.0 in the DMZ, you must change the external DNS for XenMobile to point to the new XenMobile 10.4 server. 3. If you deployed the server running XenMobile 9.0 behind a load balancing NetScaler appliance, in NetScaler, you must configure the load balancing Device Manager instance with the new IP address for the XenMobile 10.4 server. 4. If you deploy XenMobile 10.4 in a cluster, you must use the command-line interface to enable cluster support and then join the new XenMobile nodes. A 'Note' section follows, with a warning icon and instructions to collect a support bundle before restarting the server. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Back', and 'Finish & Restart'.

For instructions related to those steps, see [Upgrade Tool Post-Requisites](#).

# Upgrade Tool post-requisites

Feb 27, 2017

After the Upgrade Tool completes, the tool provides a general list of next steps. The post-requisite tasks for your environment can vary, based on your installed NetScaler version, whether you used the NetScaler for XenMobile wizard to configure NetScaler, and your XenMobile Edition.

Be sure to review the following list of post-requisite tasks and complete all that apply to your environment.

1. Configure licenses on XenMobile to enable user connections. For details, see this [procedure](#).
2. If you deployed the server running XenMobile 9.0 in the DMZ, change the external DNS for XenMobile to point to the new XenMobile server instance.
3. If you deployed the server running XenMobile 9.0 behind a load balancing NetScaler appliance, make the following changes on NetScaler:
  - a. Configure a new load balancing virtual server for the upgrade. For details, see this [procedure](#).
  - b. Configure an address record to point the App Controller server FQDN to the new load balancer for the upgrade. For details, see this [procedure](#).
  - c. Change the Device Manager load balancing virtual server to point to the new XenMobile server IP address. For details, see this [procedure](#).
  - d. Change the NetScaler Gateway to point to the new XenMobile server FQDN. For details, see this [procedure](#).
  - e. The following tasks are required only in these cases:
    - If you used the NetScaler for XenMobile wizard 9 with NetScaler 11.1, 11.0, or 10.5; or
    - If you're using NetScaler Gateway 10.1 (which is not recommended); or
    - If you didn't use the NetScaler for XenMobile wizard when configuring NetScaler 10.5 or later for XenMobile.

For the procedures that you should follow for the preceding cases, see the following articles in XenMobile Upgrade Tool 10.1 documentation:

[Create a new MAM Load Balancing Virtual Server Based on an SSL Bridge MDM Configuration](#)

[Create a new MAM Load Balancing Virtual Server Based on an SSL Offload MDM Configuration](#)

4. If you deploy the latest version of XenMobile in a cluster, you must use the XenMobile command-line interface (CLI) to enable cluster support and then join the new XenMobile nodes. For help with the XenMobile CLI, see [Clustering Menu Options](#).
5. Complete the remaining post-requisites, as required for your environment.

This article also covers post-requisites for settings related to Secure Ticket Authority, Network Time Protocol (NTP) server, XenMobile server host name, update information that did not upgrade, custom store name, and XenMobile device enrollment after upgrade.

Configure licenses on XenMobile to enable user connections

The latest versions of XenMobile only support Citrix V6 licensing. You must set the local or remote license configuration in the new XenMobile console to enable user connections, as follows.

1. Download the license file. To do so, see [Citrix Licensing](#).
2. Log on to the new XenMobile console: Go to <https://<XenMobile-server-IP-address>:4443>.
  - For MDM or ENT upgrades, log on with your XenMobile 9.0 Device Manager administrator credentials.
  - For MAM upgrades, log on with your XenMobile 9.0 App Controller administrator credentials.
3. Go to **Settings > Licensing**.

Settings > Licensing

### Licensing

XenMobile comes with an evaluation license valid for 30 days. If you decide to use your Citrix license, you can configure it at any time. You can install your Citrix license locally or remotely on the license server.

License type: Remote license

License server\*: lic1.xmlab.net

Port\*: 27000

Test Connection

Product name	Status	Active	Total number of licenses	Number used	Type	Expires on
--------------	--------	--------	--------------------------	-------------	------	------------

For more details about adding local and remote licenses, see [Licensing](#).

Configure a new load balancing virtual server for the upgrade

## Important

This post-requisite is required *only* when you upgrade a XenMobile Enterprise Edition production upgrade; it is not required for MAM or MDM upgrades.

After a XenMobile Enterprise Edition production upgrade to the latest version of XenMobile, you must configure a new load balancing virtual server for the XenMobile 9.0 App Controller FQDN. To do that, you use the NetScaler Gateway configuration tool.

The example screens in this section, for NetScaler Gateway 11.1, are similar to NetScaler Gateway versions 11.0 and 10.5.

1. Click **Traffic Management > Load Balancing > Virtual Servers**.

Dashboard Configuration Reporting Documentation Downloads

Traffic Management / Load Balancing / Virtual Servers

## Virtual Servers

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	State	Effective State	IP Address	Port
<input type="checkbox"/>	_XM_MAM_LB_192.168.2.10_8443	● UP	● UP	192.168.2.10	8443
<input type="checkbox"/>	_XM_LB_MDM_XenMobileMDM_172.16.30.38_443	● UP	● UP	172.16.30.38	443
<input type="checkbox"/>	_XM_LB_MDM_XenMobileMDM_172.16.30.38_8443	● UP	● UP	172.16.30.38	8443

2. Click **Add**.

3. On the **Load Balancing Virtual Server** page, configure the following settings and then click **OK**.

Dashboard Configuration Reporting Documentation Downloads

## Load Balancing Virtual Server

**Basic Settings**

Create a virtual server by specifying a name, an IP address, a port, and a protocol type. If an application is accessible from the Internet, the virtual server IP (VIP) address is a public IP address. If the application is accessible only from the local area network (LAN) or wide area network (WAN), the VIP is usually a private (ICANN non-routable) IP address. You can configure multiple virtual servers to receive client requests, thereby increasing the availability of resources to process client requests.

Name\*

Protocol\*

IP Address Type\*

IP Address\*

Port\*

► More

- **Name:** Type a name for the new load balancer.
- **Protocol:** Set to **SSL**. The default is **HTTP**.
- **IP Address:** Enter an IP address for the new load balancer, which follows RFC 1918; for example 192.168.1.10.
- **Port:** Set to **443**.

4. Under **Services and Service Groups**, click **No Load Balancing Virtual Server Service Group Binding**.

Dashboard Configuration Reporting Documentation Downloads

## Load Balancing Virtual Server

Load Balancing Virtual Server | [Export as a Template](#)

### Basic Settings

Name	MigrationLB	Listen Priority	-
Protocol	SSL	Listen Policy Expression	NONE
State	UP	Range	1
IP Address	192.168.1.10	Redirection Mode	IP
Port	443	RHI State	PASSIVE
Traffic Domain	0	AppFlow Logging	ENABLED
		Redirect From Port	
		HTTPS Redirect URL	

### Services and Service Groups

- No Load Balancing Virtual Server Service Binding >
- No Load Balancing Virtual Server ServiceGroup Binding >**

5. Under **Select Service Group Name**, click **Click to Select**.

Load Balancing Virtual Server ServiceGroup Binding / ServiceGroup Binding

### ServiceGroup Binding

Select Service Group Name\*

Click to select > + [edit]

Bind Close

6. Click **Add** to create a new service group.



Load Balancing Virtual Server ServiceGroup Binding / ServiceGroup Binding / Service Groups

## Service Groups

Select Add Edit Delete Manage Members Statistics Action Search

7. On the **Load Balancing Service Group** page, type a name for the new service group, make sure the protocol is set to **SSL**, and then click **OK**.

Load Balancing Virtual Server ServiceGroup Binding / ServiceGroup Binding / Service Groups / Load Balancing Service Group

## Load Balancing Service Group

Basic Settings Help

Name\*  
NewXMS

Protocol\*  
SSL

Traffic Domain  
+ /

Cache Type\*  
SERVER

AutoScale Mode

Cacheable  
 State  
 Health Monitoring  
 AppFlow Logging

Monitoring Connection Close Bit

Number of Active Connections

Comment

OK Cancel

8. Click **No Service Group Member**.

## Load Balancing Service Group

### Basic Settings

Name	NewXMS	Cache Type	SERVER
Protocol	SSL	Cacheable	NO
State	ENABLED	Health Monitoring	YES
Effective State	● UP	AppFlow Logging	ENABLED
Traffic Domain	0	Monitoring Connection Close Bit	NONE
Comment		Number of Active Connections	0
		AutoScale Mode	DISABLED

### Service Group Members

No Service Group Member

9. On the **Create Service Group Member** page, configure the following settings:

- **IP Address/IP Address Range:** Enter the IP address for the new XenMobile server instance.
- **Port:** Set to **8443**.
- **Server ID:** If you are migrating from a clustered XenMobile 9.0 environment to a new XenMobile clustered environment, enter the server node ID for the current XenMobile server. To obtain the server node ID, log on to the XenMobile server command-line interface (CLI) and type **1** to go to the **Clustering** menu. The server node ID in the CLI is labelled **Current Node ID**.

```

-----
Clustering Menu
-----
[0] Back to Main Menu
[1] Show Cluster Status
[2] Enable/Disable cluster
[3] Cluster member white list
[4] Enable or Disable SSL offload
[5] Display Hazelcast Cluster
-----
Choice: [0 - 5] 1
Current Node ID: 181356771
    
```

Load Balancing Virtual Server ServiceGroup Binding / ServiceGroup Binding / Service Groups / Load Balancing Service Group / Service Group Members Binding / Create Service Group

### Create Service Group Member

IP Based
  Server Based

IP Address/IP Address Range\*

10 . 207 . 87 . 38  IPv6 -

Port\*

8443

Weight

1

Server Id

181356771

Hash Id


12345

State

10. Click **Create** and then click **Done**.


Load Balancing Virtual Server ServiceGroup Binding / Load Balancing Service Group

### Load Balancing Service Group

**Basic Settings** 

Name	<b>NewXMS</b>	Cache Type	<b>SERVER</b>
Protocol	<b>SSL</b>	Cacheable	<b>NO</b>
State	<b>ENABLED</b>	Health Monitoring	<b>YES</b>
Effective State	<b>UP</b>	AppFlow Logging	<b>ENABLED</b>
Traffic Domain	<b>0</b>	Monitoring Connection Close Bit	<b>NONE</b>
Comment		Number of Active Connections	<b>0</b>
		AutoScale Mode	<b>DISABLED</b>

**Service Group Members**

1 Service Group Member 

11. Click **Done** and then **OK**.

12. Click **Bind** and then on the next screen, click **Done**.

Load Balancing Virtual Server ServiceGroup Binding / ServiceGroup Binding

### ServiceGroup Binding

Select Service Group Name\*

NewXMS > + ✎

**Bind** Close

13. Under **Certificates**, click **No Server Certificate**.

Dashboard Configuration Reporting Documentation Downloads

## Load Balancing Virtual Server

Load Balancing Virtual Server | Export as a Template

#### Basic Settings

Name	MigrationLB	Listen Priority	-
Protocol	SSL	Listen Policy Expression	NONE
State	UP	Range	1
IP Address	192.168.1.10	Redirection Mode	IP
Port	443	RHI State	PASSIVE
Traffic Domain	0	AppFlow Logging	ENABLED
		Redirect From Port	
		HTTPS Redirect URL	

#### Services and Service Groups

- No Load Balancing Virtual Server Service Binding >
- 1 Load Balancing Virtual Server ServiceGroup Binding >

#### Certificate

- No Server Certificate >
- No CA Certificate >

14. Under **Server Certificate Binding**, click **Click to Select**.

SSL Virtual Server Server Certificate Binding / Server Certificate Binding

### Server Certificate Binding

Select Server Certificate\*

Click to select > +

Server Certificate for SNI

**Bind** Close

15. Under **Certificates**, click the XenMobile 9.0 server certificate you exported in [Upgrade Tool prerequisites](#) and then click **OK**.

The screenshot shows the 'Server Certificates' management page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail: 'SSL Virtual Server Server Certificate Binding / Server Certificate Binding / Server Certificates'. Below this is the title 'Server Certificates'. A toolbar contains buttons for 'Select', 'Install', 'Update', 'Delete', and an 'Action' dropdown menu. The main content is a table with the following columns: 'Name', 'Common Name', and 'Issuer Name'. There are four rows of certificates listed:

	Name	Common Name	Issuer Name
<input type="radio"/>	ns-sftrust-certificate	XXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX
<input type="radio"/>	ns-server-certificate	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXX
<input type="radio"/>	xs-full	XXXXXXXX.com	XXXXXXXXXXXX
<input type="radio"/>	xmlab-server	XXXXXXXX.net	XXXXXXXXXX

16. Click **Bind** and then on the next screen, click **Done**.

The screenshot shows the 'Server Certificate Binding' dialog box. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail: 'SSL Virtual Server Server Certificate Binding / Server Certificate Binding'. Below this is the title 'Server Certificate Binding'. The dialog contains a 'Select Server Certificate\*' label, a text input field with 'xmlab-server' and a right arrow button, and a plus sign button. Below the input field is a checkbox labeled 'Server Certificate for SNI'. At the bottom, there are two buttons: 'Bind' and 'Close'.

## ← Load Balancing Virtual Server

Load Balancing Virtual Server | [Export as a Template](#)

### Basic Settings

Name: <b>MigrationLB</b>	Listen Priority: -
Protocol: <b>SSL</b>	Listen Policy Expression: <b>NONE</b>
State: <b>UP</b>	Range: <b>1</b>
IP Address: <b>192.168.1.10</b>	Redirection Mode: <b>IP</b>
Port: <b>443</b>	RHI State: <b>PASSIVE</b>
Traffic Domain: <b>0</b>	AppFlow Logging: <b>ENABLED</b>
	Redirect From Port:
	HTTPS Redirect URL:

---

### Services and Service Groups

- No** Load Balancing Virtual Server Service Binding >
- 1** Load Balancing Virtual Server ServiceGroup Binding >

---

### Certificate

- 1** Server Certificate >
- No** CA Certificate >

17. Click the refresh button to confirm that the server is up.

Traffic Management / Load Balancing / Virtual Servers

## Virtual Servers

↻ ? 🔗

Add Edit Delete Enable Disable Statistics Action ▾ Search ▾

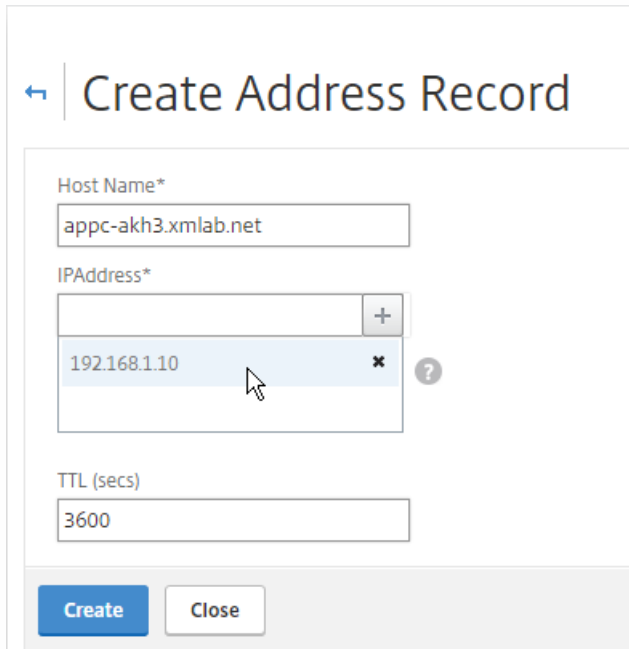
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	State	Effective State	IP Address	Port	Protocol	Method
<input type="checkbox"/>	MigrationLB	● UP	● UP	192.168.1.10	443	SSL	LEASTCONNECT
<input type="checkbox"/>	_XM_MAM_LB_192.168.2.10_8443	● UP	● UP	192.168.2.10	8443	SSL	LEASTCONNECT
<input type="checkbox"/>	_XM_LB_MDM_XenMobileMDM_172.16.30.38_443	● UP	● UP	172.16.30.38	443	SSL_BRIDGE	LEASTCONNECT
<input type="checkbox"/>	_XM_LB_MDM_XenMobileMDM_172.16.30.38_8443	● UP	● UP	172.16.30.38	8443	SSL_BRIDGE	LEASTCONNECT

Configure an address record to point the App Controller server FQDN to the new load balancer for the upgrade

1. Log on to NetScaler, click **Traffic Management > DNS > Records > Address Records**, and then click **Add**.

## Note

If you have a Global Server Load Balancing configuration, adding an address record causes the Global Server Load Balancing system to respond authoritatively for that server with the local IP address.



← Create Address Record

Host Name\*  
appc-akh3.xmlab.net

IPAddress\*  
192.168.1.10

TTL (secs)  
3600

Create Close

Change the Device Manager load balancing virtual server to point to the new XenMobile server IP address

If you deployed the server running XenMobile 9.0 behind a load balancing NetScaler appliance, you must configure the load balancing XenMobile 9.0 Device Manager instance in NetScaler with the new IP address for the new XenMobile server instance.

The procedure differs depending on whether you're using NetScaler 11.1 or NetScaler versions 11.0 or 10.5.

### For NetScaler 11.1

1. Under **Integrate with Citrix Products**, click **XenMobile**.

Dashboard Configuration Reporting Documentation Downloads

Search here

- System
  - AppExpert
  - Traffic Management
  - Optimization
  - Security
  - NetScaler Gateway
  - Authentication
- Integrate with Citrix Products
  - Unified Gateway
  - XenMobile
  - XenApp and XenDesktop
- Show Unlicensed Features

### Dashboard

#### NetScaler Gateway

Check the connections to the XenMobile, Authentication and ShareFile servers.

[Test Connectivity](#)

Universal Licenses

Current Universal Licenses: 0

HDX Sessions

Current HDX Sessions: 0

NetScaler Gateway

IP Address: 172.16.30.37  
Port: 443 ● UP

[Edit](#) [Remove](#)

#### XenMobile Server Load Balancing

XenMobile Server Load Balancing

IP Address: 172.16.30.38  
Port: 443 ● UP  
Port: 8443 ● UP

[Edit](#) [Remove](#)

Microsoft Exchange Load Balancing with Email Security Filtering

Not Configured

[Configure](#)

Load Balancing Throughput (port :443)

Current Load Balancing Requests: 0%  
Current Load Balancing Responses: 0%

Load Balancing Throughput (port :8443)

Current Load Balancing Requests: 0%  
Current Load Balancing Responses: 0%

2. On the right side of the screen, under **XenMobile Server Load Balancing**, click **Edit**.

#### XenMobile Server Load Balancing

IP Address: 172.16.30.38  
Port: 443 ● UP  
Port: 8443 ● UP

[Edit](#) [Remove](#)

The **Load Balancing XenMobile Server Network Traffic** page appears.

### Load Balancing XenMobile Server Network Traffic

Load Balancing Virtual Server Configuration

Name	IP Address	Port	Communication with XenMobile Server
MDM_XenMobileMDM	172.16.30.38	443,8443	HTTPS

XenMobile Servers

IP Address	Port
10.207.87.37	443, 8443

[Done](#)



3. Click the pen icon for XenMobile Servers to open those settings.

← Load Balancing XenMobile Server Network Traffic

Load Balancing Virtual Server Configuration

Name	IP Address	Port	Communication with XenMobile Server
MDM_XenMobileMDM	172.16.30.38	443,8443	HTTPS

XenMobile Servers

Add Server Remove Server

<input type="checkbox"/>	IP Address	Port
<input type="checkbox"/>	10.207.87.37	443, 8443

Continue

4. Select the 9.0 Device Manager server IP address and then click **Remove Server**.

← Load Balancing XenMobile Server Network Traffic

Load Balancing Virtual Server Configuration

Name	IP Address	Port	Communication with XenMobile Server
MDM_XenMobileMDM	172.16.30.38	443,8443	HTTPS

XenMobile Servers

Add Server Remove Server

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	IP Address	Port
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	10.207.87.37	443, 8443

Continue

5. Click **Add Server** and then add the new XenMobile server IP address.

XenMobile Server IP Addresses

Enter the IP address of the XenMobile server that you want to load balance.

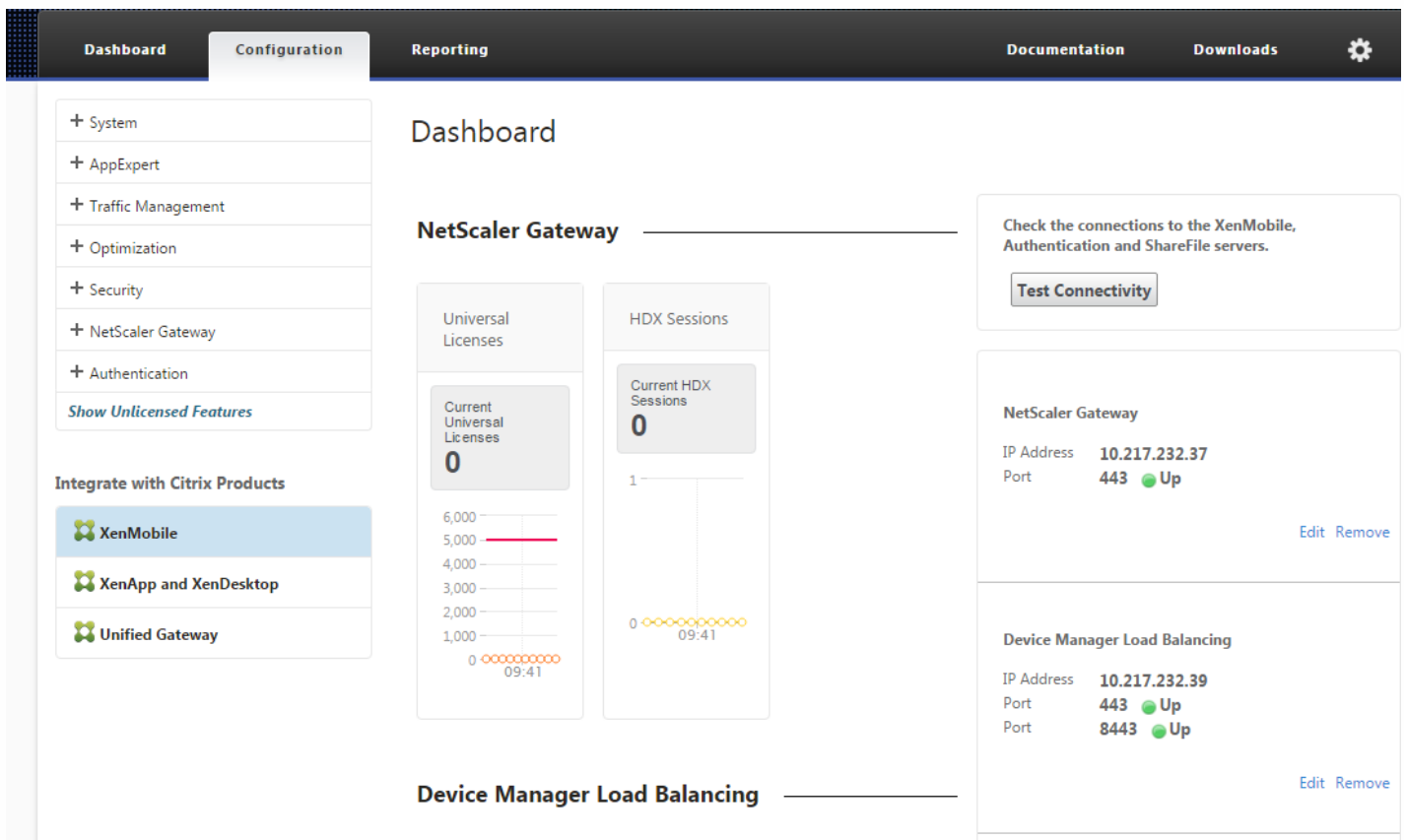
XenMobile Server IP Address\*

10 . 207 . 87 . 38

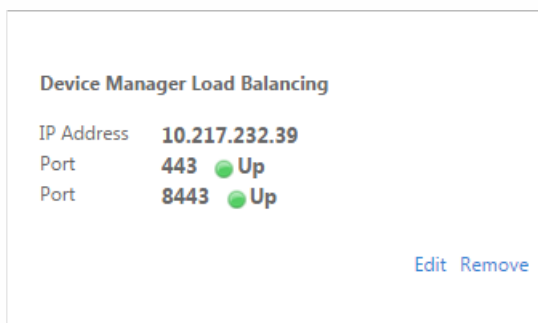
Add Cancel

# For NetScaler versions 11.0 or 10.5

1. Under **Integrate with Citrix Products**, click **XenMobile**.



2. On the right side of the screen, under **Device Manager Load Balancing**, click **Edit**.



The **Load Balancing Device Manager Network Traffic** page appears.

## Load Balancing Device Manager Network Traffic

Load Balancing Virtual Server Configuration		
Name	IP Address	Port
MDM_XenMobileMDM	10.217.232.39	443,8443

Device Manager Server IP Addresses		
IP Address	Port	State
10.207.72.216	443, 8443	Up

Done

3. Click the pen icon for **Device Manager Server IP Addresses** to open those settings.

Device Manager Server IP Addresses		
Add Server	Remove Server	Add from existing servers
IP Address	Port	State
10.207.72.216	443, 8443	Up

Continue

4. Select the 9.0 Device Manager server IP address and then click **Remove Server**.

Device Manager Server IP Addresses		
Add Server	Remove Server	Add from existing servers
IP Address	Port	State
10.207.72.216	443, 8443	Up

Continue

5. Click **Add Server** and then add the new XenMobile server IP address.

Device Manager Server IP Addresses	
Enter the IP address(es) of the device manager server(s) that you want to load balance. If the server IP address is already added to the NetScaler, click <b>Add from existing servers</b> to select the device manager server IP.	
Device Manager Server IP Address*	
<input type="text" value="10 . 207 . 87 . 38"/>	
Add	Cancel

Change NetScaler Gateway to point to the new XenMobile server FQDN

At this point, NetScaler Gateway points to the App Controller FQDN. You must change NetScaler to point to the new XenMobile FQDN. The latest versions of XenMobile listen on port 8443 instead of port 443. If you used the NetScaler for XenMobile wizard 9 to set up your NetScaler, you must include the port number with the FQDN, as shown in the examples in the following tables.

### XenMobile Enterprise Edition

Change the App Controller FQDN to point to the new XenMobile FQDN, which is the XenMobile 9.0 Device Manager FQDN followed by port 8443. The following table shows an example.

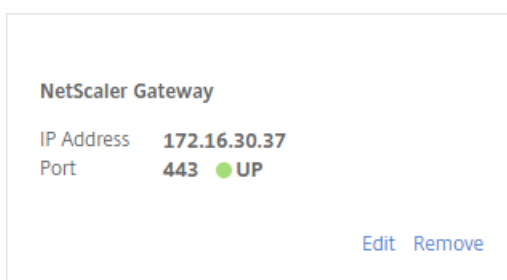
XenMobile 9.0 Component	Component FQDN	New XenMobile Enterprise Edition FQDN
Device Manager	enroll.example.com	enroll.example.com:8443
App Controller	appc.example.net	N/A
NetScaler Gateway	access.example.com	N/A

### XenMobile App Edition

Change the App Controller FQDN to point to the new XenMobile FQDN, which is the XenMobile 9.0 App Controller FQDN followed by port 8443. The following table shows an example.

XenMobile 9.0 Component	Component FQDN	New XenMobile Enterprise Edition FQDN
App Controller	appc.example.net	appc.example.net:8443
NetScaler Gateway	access.example.com	N/A

1. Under **Integrate with Citrix Products**, click **XenMobile**.
2. Under **NetScaler Gateway**, click **Edit**.



3. Click the pen icon next to **XenMobile Settings** and then change the App Controller FQDN to the XenMobile server FQDN and append **:8443** to the FQDN. For example, **SAMPLE-XENMOBILE.FQDN.COM:8443**.

**XenMobile Settings**

App Controller FQDN\*  
XDM-AKH3.XS.CITRIX.COM:8443

Split DNS mode for MicroVPN\*  
BOTH

Enable split tunneling

Continue Cancel

4. Click **Continue** and **Finish**.

Add the IP address or FQDN of the server running Secure Ticket Authority (STA)

Next, you must update your DNS to resolve the FQDN of the server running Secure Ticket Authority to the IP address of the new XenMobile Server instance. Sometimes after the post-requisite changes, the Secure Ticket Authority Server isn't bound in NetScaler, although it appears in the **VPN Virtual Server STA Server Binding** list.

In NetScaler Gateway, you add the IP address or FQDN of the server running the Secure Ticket Authority, as follows:

1. Click **Netscaler Gateway > Virtual Servers**.

Dashboard Configuration Reporting Documentation Downloads

NetScaler Gateway / NetScaler Gateway Virtual Servers

## NetScaler Gateway Virtual Servers

Add Edit Delete Statistics Visualizer Action

	Name	State	IP Address	Port	Protocol
<input type="checkbox"/>	_XM_ag-akh3	UP	172.16.30.37	443	SSL

2. Make sure that the NetScaler Gateway virtual server is in the **Up** state. Select the configured Netscaler Gateway Virtual Server and then click **Edit**.

3. Under **Published Applications**, click **STA server**.

Published Applications
No Next HOP Server
1 STA Server
No Url

4. Note the **Secure Ticket Authority Server** URL, which you will enter in step 6. Then select the Secure Ticket Authority Server in the list.

### VPN Virtual Server STA Server Binding

Add Binding
Unbind

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Secure Ticket Authority Server	↓	Secure Ticket Authority Server Address Type
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	https://XDM-AKH3.XS.CITRIX.COM:8443		IPV4

Close

5. Click **Unbind** and then click **Add Binding**.

6. In the **Secure Ticket Authority Server** field, type the URL that you noted in step 4.

7. Click **Bind**, click **Close**, and then click **Done**.

## NTP Settings

Make sure to sync the time on NetScaler and on XenMobile server. If possible, point NetScaler and XenMobile server to the same public Network Time Protocol (NTP) server.

Server property if your XenMobile 9.0 host name has uppercase letters

If your XenMobile 9.0 host name includes uppercase letters, complete the following steps so that mobile devices can access Citrix Store:

1. In the new XenMobile console, go to **Settings > Server Properties**.

2. Click **Add** and complete the fields as follows:

- **Key:** Select **Custom Key**.
- **Key:** Enter **host.name.uselowercase**.
- **Value:** Enter **true**.
- **Display name:** Enter a description for the key.

Settings > Server Properties > Add New Server Property

## Add New Server Property

Key	Custom Key	?
Key*	host.name.uselowercase	
Value*	true	
Display name*	Use lowercase for host name	
Description		

3. Restart the XenMobile server.

### Update information that did not upgrade

Update the following as necessary:

- Managed Service Provider (MSP) group
- Custom Active Directory attributes
- RBAC roles

For an on-premises upgrade, RBAC settings have issues. For information, see [Known issues](#).

- Log settings
- Any configuration or user data listed in the migration.log file
- Any sys log server configuration

### Custom store name

Before you upgraded, one of the prerequisite steps was to change a custom Citrix Store name back to its default value. If you did not complete that prerequisite, you must follow one of these post-requisite steps before using the latest version of XenMobile Server:

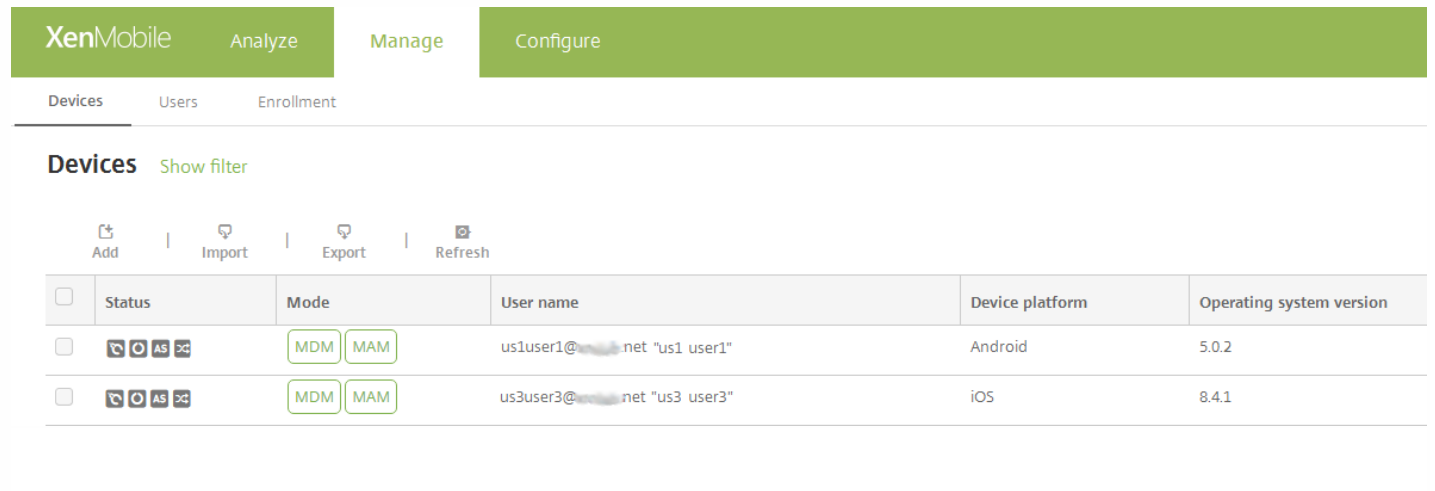
- If you have a large population of Windows devices, change the store name to the default value. After that, end users enrolled with iOS and Android devices must sign off from Citrix Secure Hub (previously Worx Home) and then sign in again.
- If you have fewer Windows devices than iOS and Android devices, the recommendation is to have the Windows users re-enroll their devices.

For more information about this issue, see <http://support.citrix.com/article/CTX214553>.

### XenMobile device enrollment after upgrade

Users do not need to re-enroll their devices after you do a production upgrade to the latest version of XenMobile. The devices should connect automatically to the new XenMobile Server based on the heartbeat interval. Users may, however, be asked to re-authenticate before the device can reconnect.

After the user devices connect, check to make sure you see the devices in the XenMobile console, as shown in the following figure.



The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the XenMobile logo and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are sub-tabs for 'Devices', 'Users', and 'Enrollment'. The 'Devices' tab is active, and a 'Show filter' link is visible. Below the navigation, there are icons for 'Add', 'Import', 'Export', and 'Refresh'. The main content is a table with the following columns: 'Status', 'Mode', 'User name', 'Device platform', and 'Operating system version'. There are two rows of device data.

Status	Mode	User name	Device platform	Operating system version
	MDM MAM	us1user1@... net "us1 user1"	Android	5.0.2
	MDM MAM	us3user3@... net "us3 user3"	iOS	8.4.1



# Upgrade the MTC tenant server to XenMobile

Feb 27, 2017

If XenMobile 9.0 MDM or Enterprise Edition has Multi-Tenant Console (MTC) enabled, you can migrate MTC-managed XenMobile 9 instances to standalone instances of the latest version of XenMobile. XenMobile 10.x does not support MTC, so you must manage these upgraded instances on an individual basis.

1. Make sure that you configure network address translation (NAT) in front of all of the MTC clients.
2. Install an instance of the latest version of XenMobile.
3. If no port mapping is enabled on the MTC tenant, do the following:
  - a. Make sure that, for the new XenMobile instance, the server port that allows HTTPS communication with certificates (typically, port 443) and that allows HTTPS communication without certificates (8443) matches the port used for the XenMobile instance.
  - b. Configure a new port for management.
  - c. If port mapping is enabled, use the port that is mapped to and not the port that the XenMobile server listens on.
4. During the XenMobile server startup, use the instance name, **zdm**.
5. When you are enabling the Upgrade Tool through the XenMobile command-line interface, you must respond **Yes** to the upgrade prompt.
6. From the server from which you are upgrading, copy the following files from C:\Program Files (x86)\Citrix\XenMobile Device Manager for Multi-Tenant\tomcat\webapps\tenant-name\WEB-INF\classes:
  - ew-config.properties
  - pki.xml
  - variables.xml
7. Copy the following files from C:\Program Files (x86)\Citrix\XenMobile Device Manager for Multi-Tenant\tomcat\conf\tenant-name:
  - cacerts.pem,jks
  - https.p12
  - pki-ca-devices.p12
  - pki-ca-root.p12
  - pki-ca-servers.p12
8. Make a copy of C:\Program Files (x86)\Citrix\XenMobile Device Manager for Multi-Tenant\tomcat\conf\server.xml and modify it as described in the following steps.
9. Remove all of the port connectors in use by the other tenant in server.xml, except keep port 80.
10. On the used port connector, remove the instance name from all file paths within the following range:  
keystoreFile="C:\Program Files (x86)\Citrix\XenMobile Device Manager for Multi-Tenant\tomcat\conf\tenant-name\https.p12"

to:

```
keystoreFile="C:\Program Files (x86)\Citrix\XenMobile Device Manager for Multi-Tenant\tomcat\conf\https.p1"
```

11. Repeat step 10 for the file paths from:

```
truststoreFile="C:\Program Files (x86)\Citrix\XenMobile Device Manager for Multi-Tenant\tomcat\conf\tenant-name\cacerts.pem.jks"
```

to:

```
truststoreFile="C:\Program Files (x86)\Citrix\XenMobile Device Manager for Multi-Tenant\tomcat\conf\cacerts.pem.jks"
```

12. Create a .zip file with the files you copied in steps 6 - 8.

13. Open the IP address of the new XenMobile Server, as follows: `https://ipAddress:port/uw/?cloudMode`, where *port* is the HTTPS connection with a certificate. The upgrade wizard opens.

14. Using the steps described in the upgrade wizard, select **MDM** or **Enterprise**.

For **MDM** upgrades, the wizard prompts you to upload the .zip file. You must also validate that the database is correct and enter the password for the CA certificate.

For **Enterprise** upgrades, the wizard prompts you to upload the support bundle for App Controller.

15. After the XenMobile server restarts, sign on to the XenMobile console by using the IP address of your XenMobile server followed by the management port number.

16. Change the NAT to point to a new server.

17. Make necessary firewall changes to allow ports used by XenMobile server.

# User accounts, roles, and enrollment

Mar 29, 2017

You configure the following items in the XenMobile console on the **Manage** tab and the **Settings** page:

- User accounts and groups
- Roles for user accounts and groups
- Enrollment mode and invitations

From the **Manage tab**, you can do the following:

- Click **Users** to add user accounts manually or use a .csv provisioning file to import the accounts and to manage local groups. For details, see:
  - [To add, edit, or delete local user accounts](#)
  - [To import user accounts by using a .csv provisioning file and Provisioning file formats](#)
  - [To add or remove groups in XenMobile](#)

You can also use workflows to manage the creation and removal of user accounts, as described later in this article in [Create and manage workflows](#).

- Click **Enrollment** to configure up to seven modes and to send enrollment invitations. Each enrollment mode its own level of security and number of steps users must take to enroll their devices. For details, see:
  - [To configure enrollment modes and enable the Self Help Portal](#)
  - [Enable autodiscovery in XenMobile for user enrollment](#)

From the **Settings** page, you can do the following:

- Click **Role-Based Access Control** to assign predefined roles, or sets of permissions, to users and groups. These permissions control the level of access users have to system functions. For details, see:
  - [Configuring Roles with RBAC](#)
- Click **Notification Templates** to use in automated actions, enrollment, and standard notification messages sent to users. You configure the notification templates to send messages over three different channels: Secure Hub, SMTP, or SMS. For details, see:
  - [Creating and updating Notification Templates](#)

To add, edit, or delete local user accounts

You can add local user accounts to XenMobile manually or you can use a provisioning file to import the accounts. For the steps to import user accounts from a provisioning file, see [To import user accounts by using a .csv provisioning file](#).

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Manage** > **Users**. The **Users** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze **Manage** Configure administrator

Devices **Users** Enrollment Invitations

**Users** Show filter

<input type="checkbox"/>	User name	First name	Last name	User type	Roles	Groups	Domain	Created	Last authenticated
<input type="checkbox"/>	administrator				ADMIN		local	6/18/16 10:21 PM	6/18/16 10:21 PM

## To add a local user account

1. On the **Users** page, click **Add Local User**. The **Add Local User** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze **Manage** Configure

Devices **Users** Enrollment Invitations

**Add Local User**

**User name\***   
**Password**   
**Role\*** ADMIN  
**Membership**
 local\Device Enrollment Program Group  
 local\MSP

2. Configure these settings:

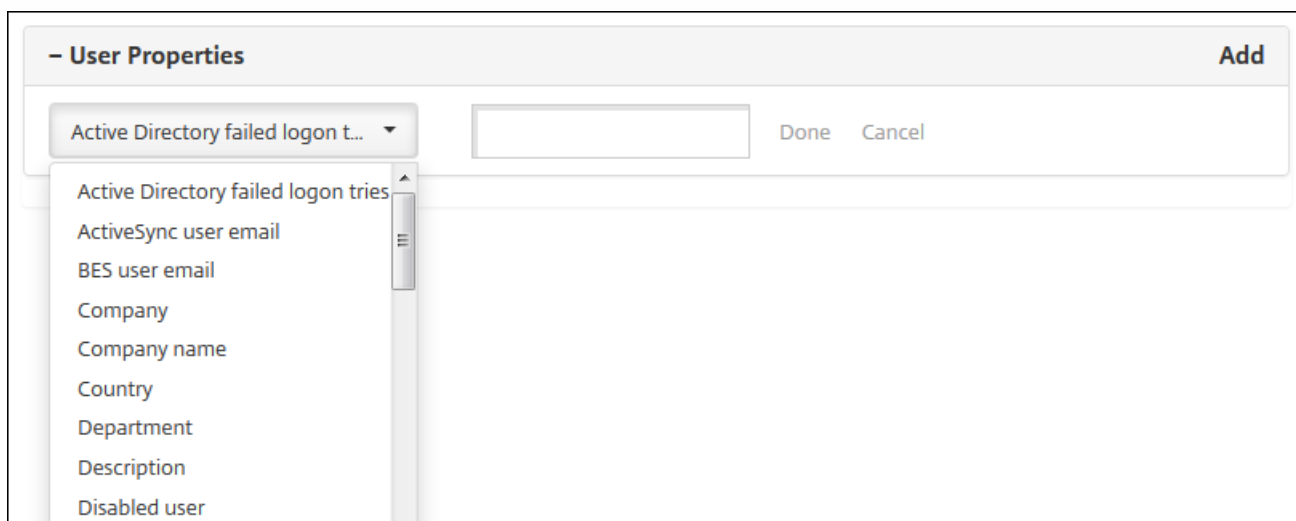
- **User name:** Type the name, a required field. You can include spaces in names, as well as upper and lowercase letters.
- **Password:** Type an optional user password.
- **Role:** In the list, click the user role. For more information about roles, see [Configuring Roles with RBAC](#). Possible options

are:

- ADMIN
- DEVICE\_PROVISIONING
- SUPPORT
- USER
- **Membership:** In the list, click the group or groups to which to add the user.
- **User Properties:** Add optional user properties. For each user property you want to add, click **Add** and do the following:
  - **User Properties:** In the list, click a property and then type the user property attribute in the field next to the property.
  - Click **Done** to save the user property or click **Cancel**.

**Note:** To delete an existing user property, hover over the line containing the property and then click the X on the right side. The property is deleted immediately.

To edit an existing user property, click the property and make changes. Click **Done** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.



3. Click **Save**.

### To edit a local user account

1. On the **Users** page, in the list of users, click to select a user and then click **Edit**. The **Edit Local User** page appears.

2. Change the following information as appropriate:

- **User name:** You cannot change the user name.
- **Password:** Change or add a user password.
- **Role:** In the list, click the user role.
- **Membership:** In the list, click the group or groups to which to add or edit the user account. To remove the user account from a group, clear the check box next to the group name.
- **User properties:** Do one of the following:
  - For each user property you want to change, click the property and make changes. Click **Done** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.
  - For each user property you want to add, click **Add** and do the following:
    - **User Properties:** In the list, click a property and then type the user property attribute in the field next to the property.
    - Click **Done** to save the user property or click **Cancel**.
  - For each existing user property you want to delete, hover over the line containing the property and then click the X on the right side. The property is deleted immediately.

3. Click **Save** to save your changes or click **Cancel** to leave the user unchanged.

#### To delete a local user account

1. On the **Users** page, in the list of user accounts, click to select a user account.

**Note:** You can select more than one user account to delete by selecting the check box next to each user account.

2. Click **Delete**. A confirmation dialog box appears.

3. Click **Delete** to delete the user account or click **Cancel**.

## Importing user accounts

You can import local user accounts and properties from a .csv file called a provisioning file, which you can create manually. For more information about formatting provisioning files, see [Provisioning file formats](#).

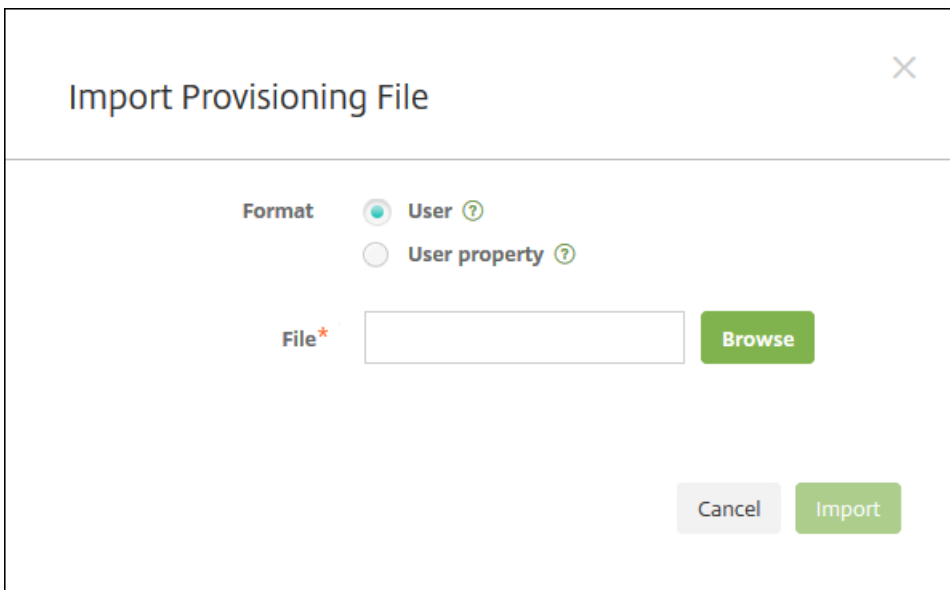
### Note:

- For local users, use the domain name along with the user name in the import file. For example, specify username@domain. If the local user that you create or import is for a managed domain in XenMobile, the user cannot enroll by using the corresponding LDAP credentials.
- If importing user accounts to the XenMobile internal user directory, disable the default domain to speed up the import process. Keep in mind that disabling the domain affects enrollments, so you should reenable the default domain after the import of internal users is complete.
- Local users can be in User Principal Name (UPN) format. However, Citrix recommends that you do not use the managed domain. For example, if example.com is managed, do not create a local user with this UPN format: user@example.com.

After you prepare a provisioning file, follow these steps to import the file to XenMobile.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Manage** > **Users**. The **Users** page appears.

2. Click **Import Local Users**. The **Import Provisioning File** dialog box appears.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Import Provisioning File" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Below the title bar, there are two radio buttons under the label "Format": "User" (selected) and "User property". Below the radio buttons, there is a text input field labeled "File\*" with a "Browse" button to its right. At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: "Cancel" and "Import".

3. Select either **User** or **Property** for the format of the provisioning file you are importing.

4. Select the provisioning file to use by clicking **Browse** and then navigating to the file location.

5. Click **Import**.

## Provisioning file formats

A provisioning file that you create manually and use to import user accounts and properties to XenMobile must be in one of the following formats:

- **User provisioning file fields:** user;password;role;group1;group2
- **User attribute provisioning file fields:** user;propertyName1;propertyValue1;propertyName2;propertyValue2

### Note:

- Separate the fields within the provisioning file with a semi-colon (;). If part of a field contains a semi-colon, escape it with a backslash character (\). For example, type the property **propertyV;test;1;2** as **propertyV\;test\;1\;2** in the provisioning file.
- Valid values for **Role** are the predefined roles USER, ADMIN, SUPPORT, and DEVICE\_PROVISIONING, plus any other roles that you defined.
- Use the period character (.) as a separator to create group hierarchy. Don't use a period in group names.
- Use lowercase for property attributes in attribute provisioning files. The database is case sensitive.

### Example of user provisioning content

This entry, user01;pwd;o1;USER;myGroup.users01;myGroup.users02;myGroup.users.users01, means:

- **User:** user01
- **Password:** pwd;o1
- **Role:** USER
- **Groups:**
  - myGroup.users01
  - myGroup.users02
  - myGroup.users.users01

As another example, AUser0;1.password;USER;ActiveDirectory.test.net, means:

- **User:** AUser0
- **Password:** 1.password
- **Role:** USER
- **Group:** ActiveDirectory.test.net

### Example of user attribute provisioning content

This entry, user01;propertyN;propertyV\;test\;1\;2;prop 2;prop2 value, means:

- **User:** user01
- **Property 1**
  - **name:** propertyN
  - **value:** propertyV;test;1;2
- **Property 2:**
  - **name:** prop 2
  - **value:** prop2 value



## To configure enrollment modes and enable the Self Help Portal

You configure device enrollment modes to allow users to enroll their devices in XenMobile. XenMobile offers seven modes, each with its own level of security and steps users must take to enroll their devices. You can make some modes available on the Self Help Portal. Users can log on to the portal and generate enrollment links that allow them to enroll their devices or choose to send themselves an enrollment invitation. You configure enrollment modes in the XenMobile console from the **Settings > Enrollment** page.

You send enrollment invitations from the **Manage > Enrollment Invitations** page. For information, see [Send an enrollment invitation](#).

**Note:** If you plan to use custom notification templates, you must set up the templates before you configure enrollment modes. For more information about notification templates, see [Creating or Updating Notification Templates](#).

1. On the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Click **Enrollment**. The **Enrollment** page appears, containing a table of all available enrollment modes. By default, all enrollment modes are enabled.
3. Select any enrollment mode in the list to edit it. Then, set the mode as the default, disable the mode, or allow users access through the Self Help Portal.

**Note:** When you select the check box next to an enrollment mode, the options menu appears above the enrollment mode list. When you click anywhere else in the list, the options menu appears on the right side of the listing.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Settings > Enrollment

## Enrollment

Enable and disable enrollment modes for users. You can also enable the Self Help Portal to allow users to generate enrollment links that let them download Worx Home and enroll their devices, or to send themselves an enrollment invitation.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Enabled	Default	Self Help Portal	Expire after	Attempts	PIN length	PIN type	Templates
<input type="checkbox"/>	User name + Password	✓	✓						
<input type="checkbox"/>	High Security	✓			1 day(s)	3	8	numeric	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Invitation URL	✓			1 day(s)				
<input type="checkbox"/>	Invitation URL + PIN	✓			1 day(s)	3	8	numeric	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Invitation URL + Password	✓			1 day(s)	3			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Two Factor	✓			1 day(s)	3	8	numeric	
<input type="checkbox"/>	User name + PIN	✓			1 day(s)	3	8	numeric	

Showing 1 - 7 of 7 items

Choose from these enrollment modes:

- User name + Password
- High Security
- Invitation URL
- Invitation URL + PIN
- Invitation URL + Password
- Two Factor
- User name + PIN

You can use enrollment invitations to restrict enrollment to users with an invitation only.

You can use one-time PIN (OTP) enrollment invitations as a two-factor solution. OTP enrollment invitations control the number of devices a user may enroll.

For environments with the highest security requirements, you can tie enrollment invitations to a device by SN/UDID/EMEI. A two-factor option is also available to require Active Directory password and OTP.

### To edit an enrollment mode

1. In the **Enrollment** list, select an enrollment mode and then click **Edit**. The **Edit Enrollment Mode** page appears. Depending on the mode you select, you may see different options.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Enrollment Mode' page in XenMobile. The page title is 'Edit Enrollment Mode' and the mode is 'High Security'. The settings are as follows:

Name	Value	Unit/Type
Expire after*	1	Days
Maximum attempts*	3	
PIN Length*	8	Numeric

Notification templates:

- Template for enrollment URL: -- SELECT ONE --
- Template for Enrollment PIN: -- SELECT ONE --
- Template for enrollment confirmation: -- SELECT ONE --

Buttons: Cancel, Save

2. Change the following information as appropriate:

- **Expire after:** Type an expiration deadline after which users cannot enroll their devices. This value appears in the user and group enrollment invitation configuration pages.  
**Note:** Type 0 to prevent the invitation from expiring.
- **Days:** In the list, click **Days** or **Hours** to correspond to the expiration deadline you entered in **Expire after**.
- **Maximum attempts:** Type the number of attempts to enroll that a user can make before being locked out of the enrollment process. This value appears in the user and group enrollment invitation configuration pages.  
**Note:** Type 0 to allow unlimited attempts.
- **PIN length:** Type a numeral to set the length of the generated PIN.
- **Numeric:** In the list, click **Numeric** or **Alphanumeric** for the PIN type.
- **Notification templates:**
  - **Template for enrollment URL:** In the list, click a template to use for the enrollment URL. For example, the Enrollment invitation template sends users an email or SMS. The method depends on how you configured the template that lets them enroll their devices in XenMobile. For more information on notification templates, see [Creating or updating Notification Templates](#).

- **Template for enrollment PIN:** In the list, click a template to use for the enrollment PIN.
- **Template for enrollment confirmation:** In the list, click a template to use to inform a user that they enrolled successfully.

3. Click **Save**.

### To set an enrollment mode as default

When you set an enrollment mode as the default, the mode is used for all device enrollment requests unless you select a different enrollment mode. If no enrollment mode is set as the default, you must create a request for enrollment for each device enrollment.

**Note:** The only enrollment modes that you can use as a default are **Only Username + Password, Two Factor, or Username + PIN**.

1. Select the default enrollment mode, either **Username + Password, Two Factor, or Username + PIN**.

Note: To use a mode as the default, first enable it.

2. Click **Default**. The selected mode is now the default. If any other enrollment mode was set as the default, the mode is no longer the default.

### To disable an enrollment mode

Disabling an enrollment mode makes it unavailable for use, both for group enrollment invitations and on the Self Help Portal. You may change how you allow users to enroll their devices by disabling one enrollment mode and enabling another.

1. Select an enrollment mode.

**Note:** You cannot disable the default enrollment mode. If you want to disable the default enrollment mode, you must first remove its default status.

2. Click **Disable**. The enrollment mode is no longer enabled.

### To enable an enrollment mode on the Self Help Portal

Enabling an enrollment mode on the Self Help Portal lets users enroll their devices in XenMobile individually.

**Note:**

- The enrollment mode must be enabled and bound to notification templates to be made available on the Self Help Portal.
- You can only enable one enrollment mode on the Self Help Portal at a time.

1. Select an enrollment mode.

2. Click **Self Help Portal**. The enrollment mode you selected is now available to users on the Self Help Portal. Any mode already enabled on the Self Help Portal is no longer available to users.

### Adding or removing groups

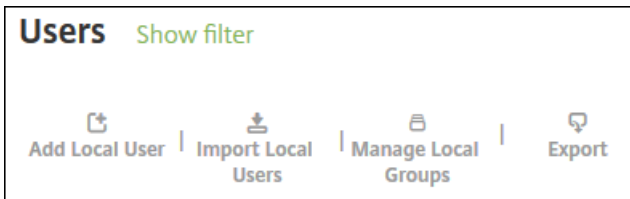
You manage groups in the **Manage Groups** dialog box in the XenMobile console on these pages: **Users, Add Local User, or Edit Local User**. There is no group edit command.

If you remove a group, keep in mind that removing the group has no effect on user accounts. Removing a group simply removes user association with that group. Users also lose access to apps or profiles provided by the Delivery Groups that are associated with that group; any other group associations, however, remain intact. If users are not associated with any other local groups, they are associated at the top level.

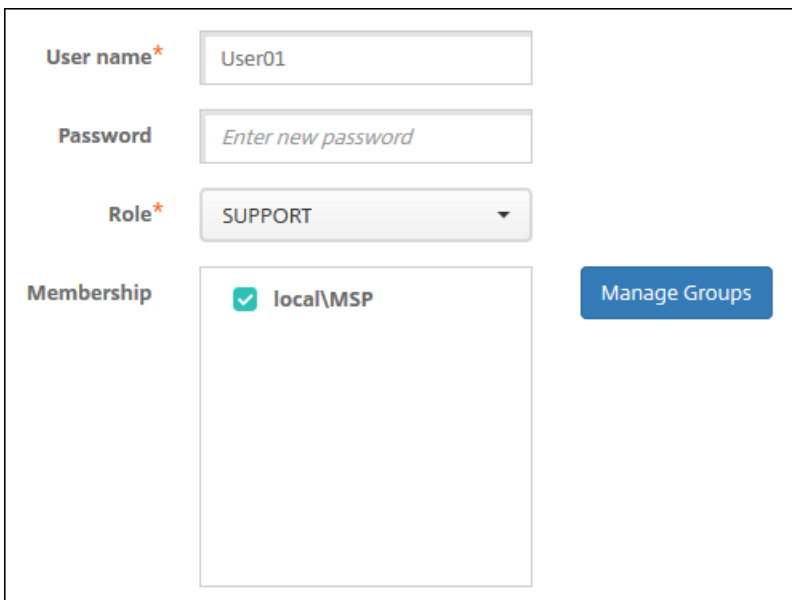
### To add a local group

1. Do one of the following:

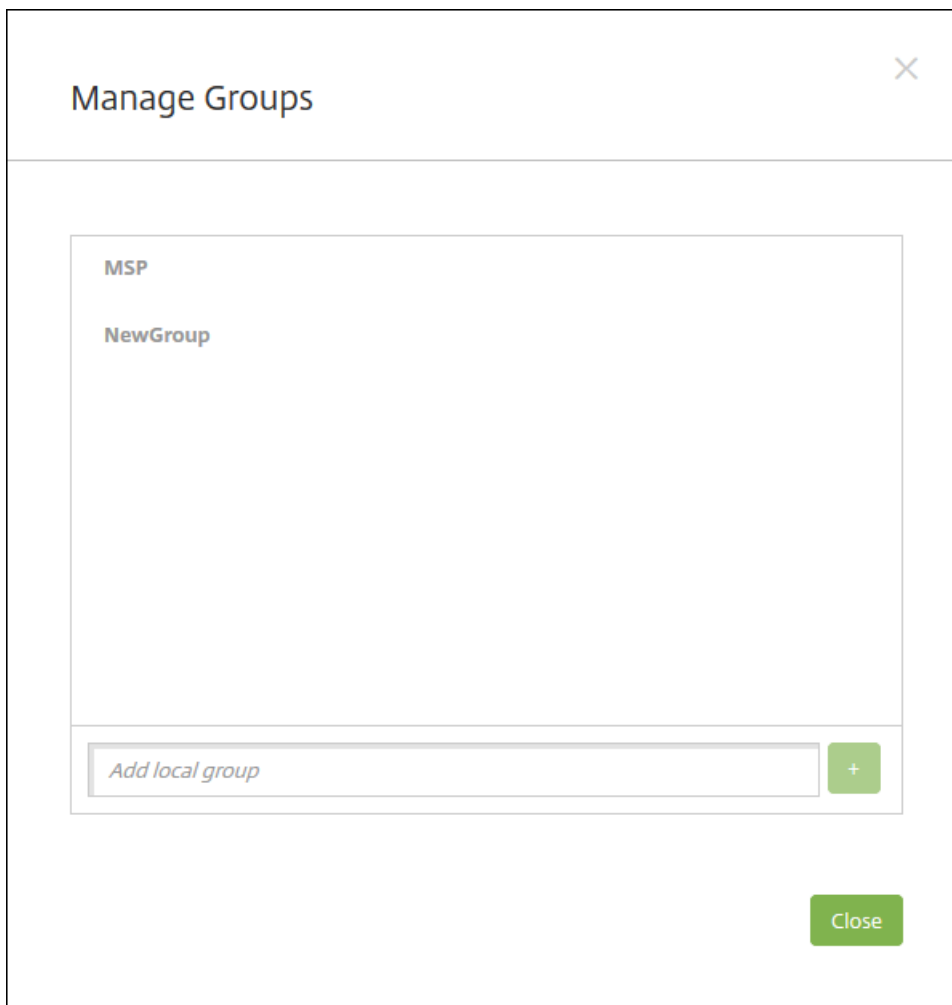
- On the **Users** page, click **Manage Local Groups**.



- On either the **Add Local User** page or the **Edit Local User** page, click **Manage Groups**.

A screenshot of a user management form. It contains four main sections: 'User name\*' with a text input field containing 'User01'; 'Password' with a text input field containing the placeholder 'Enter new password'; 'Role\*' with a dropdown menu currently set to 'SUPPORT'; and 'Membership' with a list box containing 'local\MSP' which has a green checkmark next to it. To the right of the membership list is a blue button labeled 'Manage Groups'.

The **Manage Group** dialog box appears.



2. Below the group list, type a new group name and then click the plus sign (+). The user group is added to the list.

3. Click **Close**.

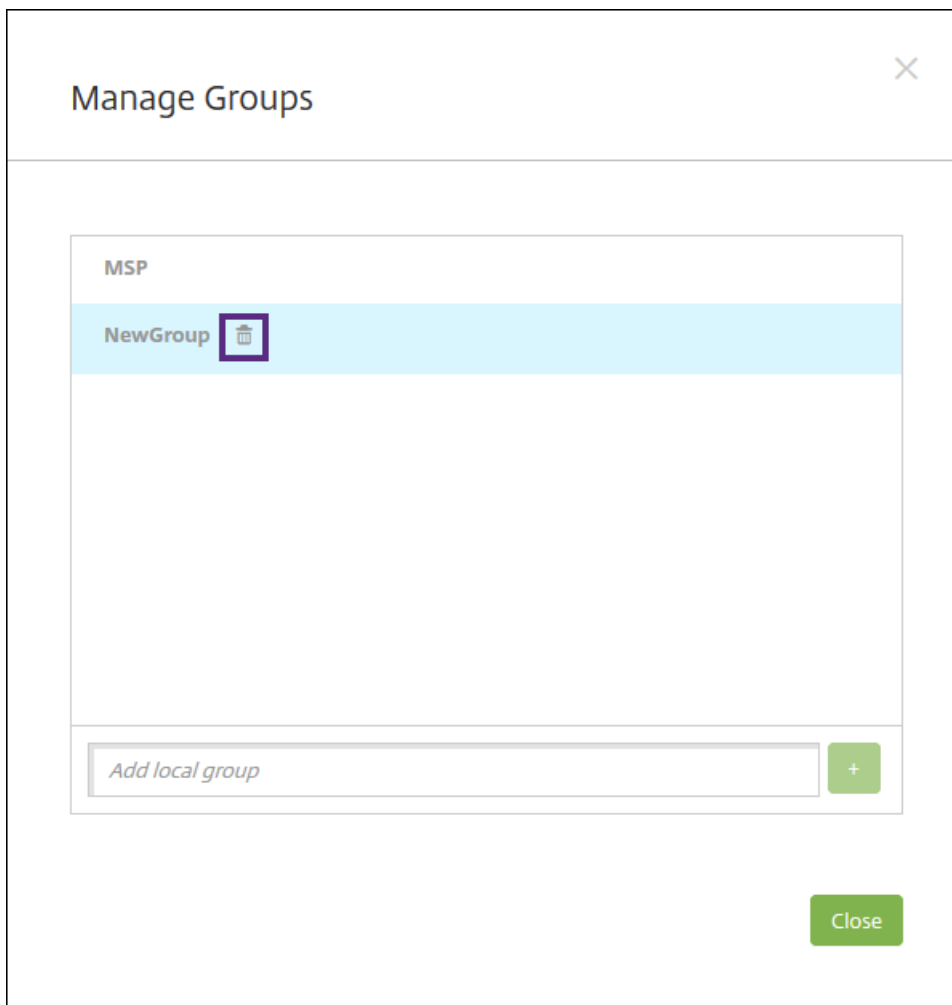
### To remove a group

**Note:** Removing a group has no effect on user accounts. Removing a group simply removes the users' association with that group. Users also lose access to apps or profiles provided by the Delivery Groups that are associated with that group; any other group associations, however, remain intact. If users are not associated with any other local groups, they are associated at the top level.

1. Do one of the following:

- On the **Users** page, click **Manage Local Groups**.
- On either the **Add Local User** page or the **Edit Local User** page, click **Manage Groups**.

The **Manage Groups** dialog box appears.



2. On the **Manage Groups** dialog box, click the group you want to delete.
3. Click the trash can icon to the right of the group name. A confirmation dialog box appears.
4. Click **Delete** to confirm the operation and remove the group.

**Important:** You cannot undo this operation.

5. On the **Manage Groups** dialog box, click **Close**.

## Create and manage workflows

You can use workflows to manage the creation and removal of user accounts. Before you can use a workflow, identify individuals in your organization who have the authority to approve user account requests. Then, you can use the workflow template to create and approve user account requests.

When you set up XenMobile for the first time, you configure workflow email settings, which must be set before you can use workflows. You can change workflow email settings at any time. These settings include the email server, port, email address, and whether the request to create the user account requires approval.

You can configure workflows in two places in XenMobile:

- In the **Workflows** page in the XenMobile console. On the **Workflows** page, you can configure multiple workflows for

use with app configurations. When you configure workflows on the Workflows page, you can select the workflow when you configure the app.

- When you configure an application connector in the app, you provide a workflow name and then configure the individuals who can approve the user account request. See [Adding Apps to XenMobile](#).

You can assign up to three levels for manager approval of user accounts. If you need other persons to approve the user account, you can search for and select them by using their name or email address. When XenMobile finds the person, you then add them to the workflow. All individuals in the workflow receive emails to approve or deny the new user account.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Click **Workflows**. The **Workflows** page appears.
3. Click **Add**. The **Add Workflow** page appears.
4. Configure these settings:
  - **Name:** Type a unique name for the workflow.
  - **Description:** Optionally, type a description for the workflow.
  - **Email Approval Templates:** In the list, select the email approval template to be assigned. You create email templates in the **Notification Templates** section under **Settings** in the XenMobile console. When you click the eye icon to the right of this field, you see a preview of the template you are configuring.
  - **Levels of manager approval:** In the list, select the number of levels of manager approval required for this workflow. The default is **1 level**. Possible options are:
    - Not Needed
    - 1 level
    - 2 levels
    - 3 levels
  - **Select Active Directory domain:** In the list, select the appropriate Active Directory domain to be used for the workflow.
  - **Find additional required approvers:** Type a name in the search field and then click **Search**. Names originate in Active Directory.
  - When the name appears in the field, select the check box next to the name. The name and email address appear in the **Selected additional required approvers** list.
    - To remove a name from the list, do one of the following:
      - Click **Search** to see a list of everyone in the selected domain.
      - Type a full or partial name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the search results.
      - Persons in the **Selected additional required approvers** list have check marks next to their name in the search results list. Scroll through the list and clear the check box next to each name that you want to remove.
5. Click **Save**. The created workflow appears on the **Workflows** page.

After you create the workflow, you can view the workflow details, view the apps associated with the workflow, or delete the workflow. You cannot edit a workflow after you create the workflow. If you need a workflow with different approval levels or approvers, create another workflow.

### To view details and delete a workflow

1. On the **Workflows** page, in the list of existing workflows, select a specific workflow. To do that, click the row in the table or select the check box next to the workflow.



2. To delete a workflow, click **Delete**. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** again.

**Important:** You cannot undo this operation.

# Configure roles with RBAC

Apr 07, 2017

Each predefined role-based access control (RBAC) role has certain access and feature permissions associated with the role. This article describes what each of those permissions does. For a full list of default permissions for each built-in role, download [Role-Based Access Control Defaults](#).

When you *apply permissions*, you are defining the user groups the RBAC role has the permission to manage. Note that the default administrator cannot change the applied permission settings; by default, the applied permissions apply to all user groups.

When you make an *assignment*, you are assigning the RBAC role to a group, so that the group of users owns the RBAC administrator rights.

[Admin Role](#) 

[Device Provisioning Role](#) 

[Support Role](#) 

[User Role](#) 

## Configure roles with RBAC

The Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) feature in XenMobile lets you assign predefined roles, or sets of permissions, to users and groups. These permissions control the level of access users have to system functions.

XenMobile implements four default user roles to logically separate access to system functions:

- **Administrator.** Grants full system access.
- **Device Provisioning.** Grants access to basic device administration for Windows CE devices.
- **Support.** Grants access to remote support.
- **User.** Used by users who can enroll devices and access the Self Help Portal.

You can also use the default roles as templates that you customize to create new user roles with permissions to access specific system functions beyond the functions defined by the default roles.

Roles can be assigned to local users (at the user level) or to Active Directory groups (all users in that group have the same permissions). If a user belongs to several Active Directory groups, all the permissions are merged together to define the permissions for that user. For example, if ADGroupA users can locate manager devices, and ADGroupB users can wipe employee devices, then a user who belongs to both groups can locate and wipe devices of managers and employees.

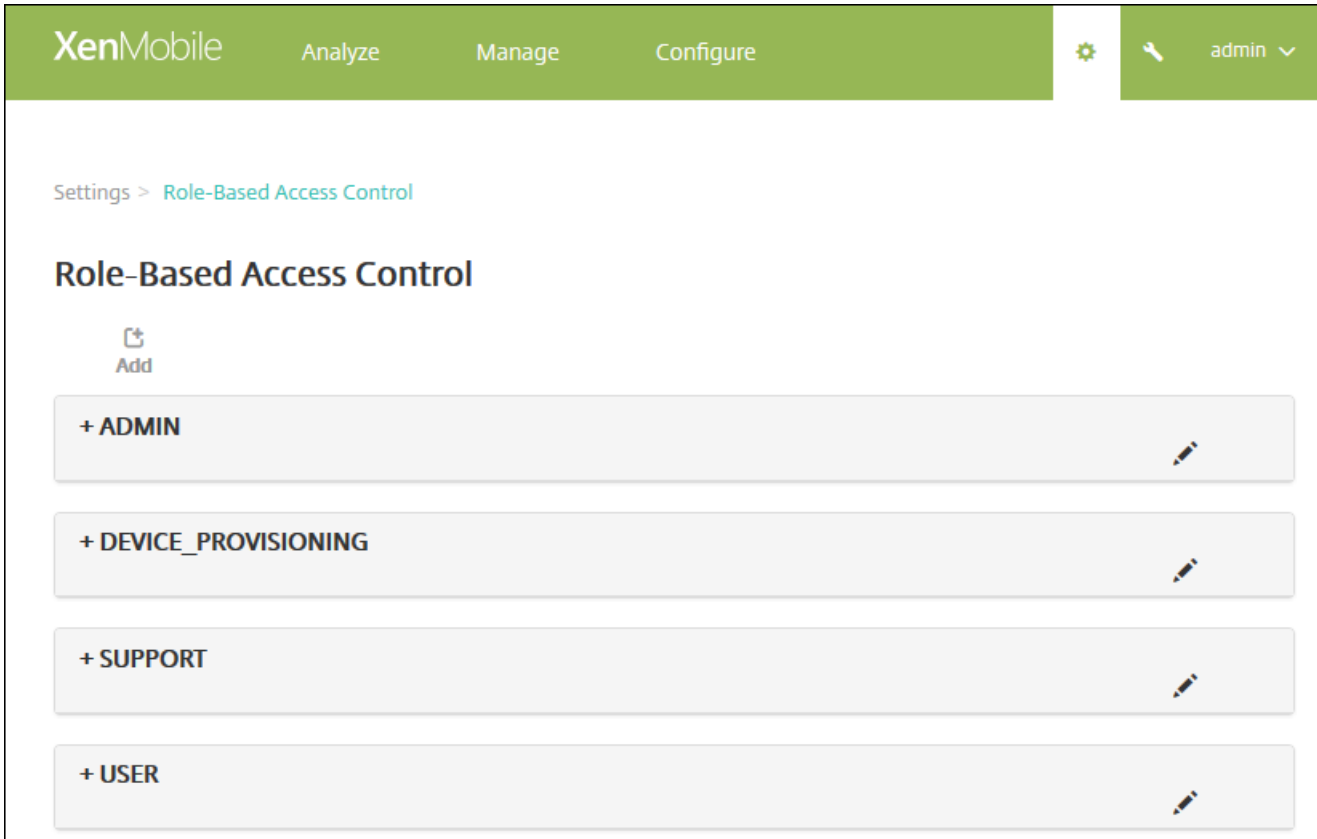
**Note:** Local users may have only one role assigned to them.

You can use the RBAC feature in XenMobile to do the following:

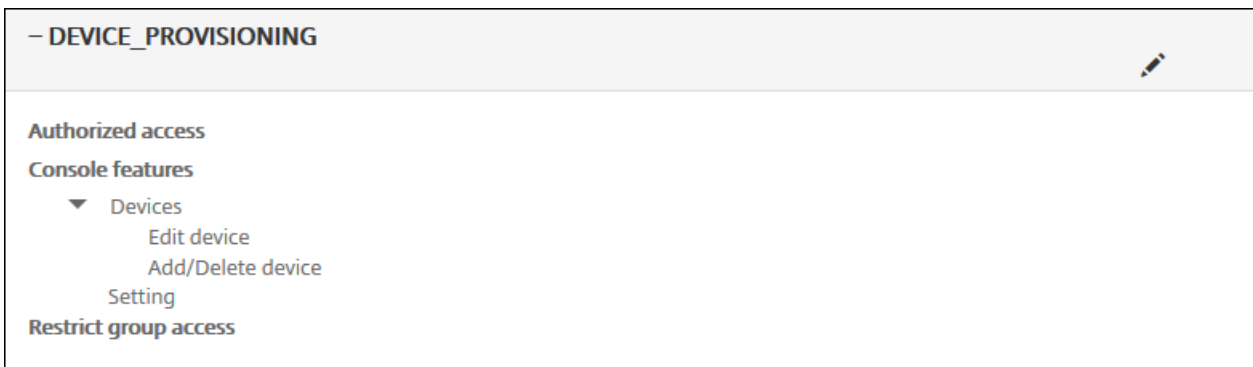
- Create a new role.
- Add groups to a role.

- Associate local users to roles.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Click **Role-Based Access Control**. The **Role-Based Access Control** page appears, which displays the four default user roles, plus any roles you have previously added.



If you click the plus sign (+) next to a role, the role expands to show all the permissions for that role, as shown in the following figure.



3. Click **Add** to add a new user role, click the pen icon to the right of an existing role to edit the role, or click the trash can icon to the right of a role you previously defined to delete the role. You cannot delete the default user roles.

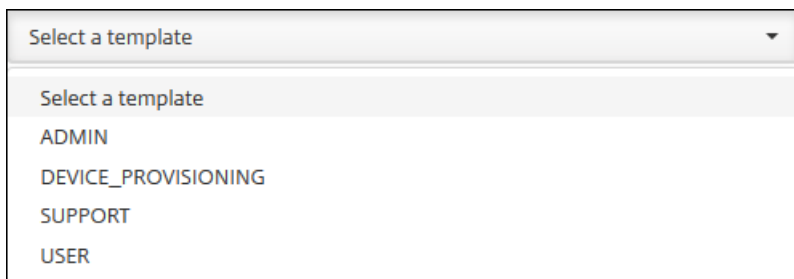
- When you click **Add** or the pen icon, the **Add Role** or the **Edit Role** page appears.

- When you click the trash can icon, a confirmation dialog appears. Click **Delete** to remove the selected role.

4. Enter the following information to create a new user role or to edit an existing user role:

- **RBAC name:** Enter a descriptive name for the new user role. You cannot change the name of an existing role.
- **RBAC template:** Optionally, click a template as the starting point for the new role. You cannot select a template if you are editing an existing role.

RBAC templates are the default user roles. They define the access to system functions that users associated with that role have. After you select an RBAC template, you can see all of the permissions associated with that role in the **Authorized Access** and **Console Features** fields. Using a template is optional; you can directly select the options you want to assign to a role in the **Authorized Access** and **Console Features** fields.



5. Click **Apply** to the right of the **RBAC template** field to populate the **Authorized access** and **Console features** check boxes with the pre-defined access and feature permissions for the selected template.

6. Select and clear the check boxes in **Authorized access** and **Console features** to customize the role.

If you click the triangle next to a Console feature, permissions specific to that feature appear that you can select and clear. Clicking the top-level check box prohibits access to that console part; you must select individual options below the top level to enable those options. For example, in the following figure, the **Full Wipe device** and **Clear Restrictions** options do not appear on the console for users assigned to the role, but the checked options do appear.

7. **Apply permissions:** Select the groups to which you want to apply the selected permissions. If you click **To specific user groups**, a list of groups appears from which you can select one or more groups.

**Apply permissions**

To all user groups

To specific user groups

Search for user groups

▶  ActiveDirectory

LocalAdmin

MSP

8. Click **Next**. The **Assignment** page appears.

9. Enter the following information to assign the role to user groups.

- **Select domain:** In the list, click a domain.
- **Include user groups:** Click Search to see a list of all available groups, or type a full or partial group name to limit the list to only groups with that name.
- In the list that appears, select the user groups to which you want to assign the role. When you select a user group, the group appears in the **Selected user groups** list.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Settings > Role-Based Access Control > Add Role

### Add Role

- 1 Role Info
- 2 Assignment

### Assignment

Assign the RBAC role to user groups

Select domain: testprise.net

Include user groups: user Search

- testprise.net\Remote Desktop Users
- testprise.net\Performance Monitor Users
- testprise.net\Performance Log Users

Selected user groups:

- testprise.net
  - Remote Desktop Users
  - Performance Monitor Users

Back Save

**Note:** To remove a user group from the **Selected user groups** list, click the X next to the user group name.

10. Click **Save**.

# Notifications

Feb 27, 2017

You can use notifications in XenMobile for the following purposes:

- To communicate with select groups of users for a number of system-related functions. You can also target these notifications for certain users. For example, all users with iOS devices, users whose devices are out of compliance, users with employee-owned devices, and so on.
- To enroll users and their devices.
- To automatically notify users (using automated actions) when certain conditions are met. For example:
  - When a user device is about to be blocked from the corporate domain because of a compliance issue.
  - When a device has been jailbroken or rooted.

For details about automated actions, see [Automated Actions](#).

To send notifications with XenMobile, you must configure a gateway and a notification server. You can set up a notification server in XenMobile to configure Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) and Short Message Service (SMS) gateway servers to send email and text (SMS) notifications to users. You can use notifications to send messages over two different channels: SMTP or SMS.

- SMTP is a connection-oriented, text-based protocol in which a mail sender communicates with a mail receiver by issuing command strings and supplying necessary data, typically over a Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) connection. SMTP sessions consist of commands originated by an SMTP client (the person sending the message) and corresponding responses from the SMTP server.
- SMS is a text messaging service component of phone, Web, or mobile communication systems. SMS uses standardized communications protocols to enable fixed line or mobile phone devices to exchange short text messages.

You can also set up a Carrier SMS Gateway in XenMobile to configure notifications that are sent through a SMS gateway of a carrier. Carriers use SMS gateways to send or receive SMS transmissions to or from a telecommunications network. These text-based messages use standardized communications protocols to allow fixed line or mobile phone devices to exchange short text messages.

The procedures in this article explain how to configure an [SMTP server](#) and an [SMS gateway](#), and a [carrier SMS gateway](#).

## Prerequisites

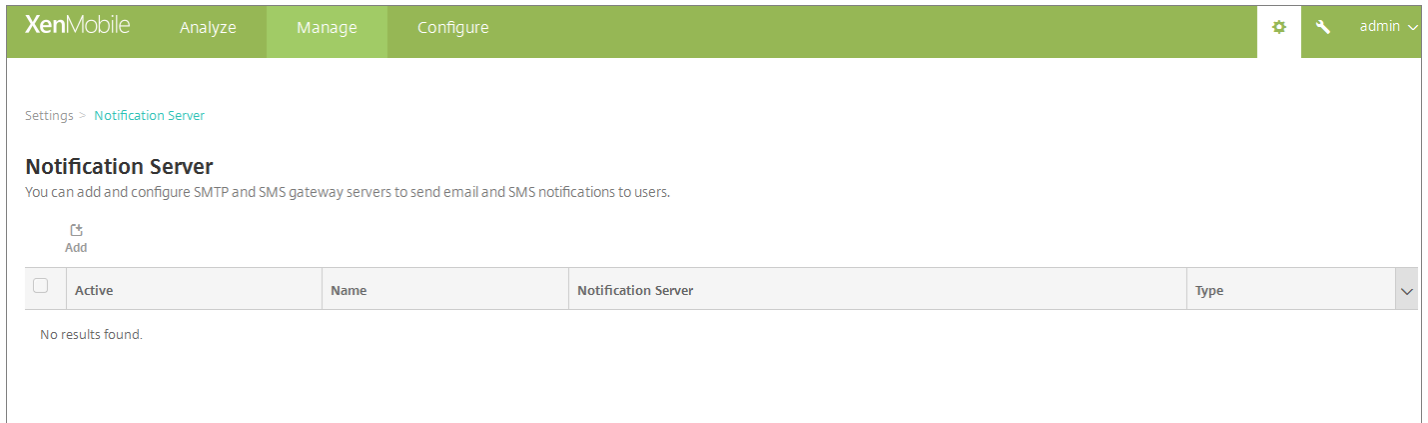
- Before configuring the SMS gateway, consult your system administrator to determine the server information. It's important to know whether the SMS server is hosted on an internal corporate server, or whether the server is part of a hosted email service. In that case, you need information from the website of the service provider.
- Configure the SMTP notifications server to send messages to users. If the server is hosted on an internal server, contact your system administrator for configuration information. If the server is a hosted email service, locate the appropriate configuration information on the website of the service provider.
- Make sure that only one SMTP server and only one SMS server is active at a time.
- Open port 25 from XenMobile located in your network DMZ to point back to the SMTP server on your internal network. That enables XenMobile to send notifications successfully.

## To configure an SMTP server and SMS gateway

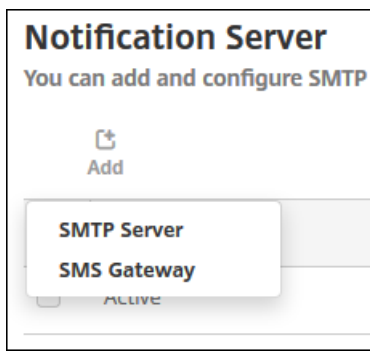
1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.



2. Under **Notifications**, click **Notification Server**. The **Notification Server** page appears.



2. Click **Add**. A menu appears with options to configure an SMTP server or an SMS gateway.



- To add an SMTP server, click **SMTP Server** and then see [To add an SMTP server](#) for the steps to configure this setting.
- To an SMS gateway, click **SMS Gateway** and then see [To add an SMS gateway](#) for the steps to configure this setting.

To add an SMTP server

Settings > Notification Server > Add SMTP Server

## Add SMTP Server

You need to configure the SMTP notifications server to send messages to users. If the SMTP server is hosted on an internal server, you get the server information from your IT department. If the server is a hosted email service, you can find information from the service provider's website. Only one SMTP server is activated at one time.

Name*	<input type="text"/>
Description	<input type="text"/>
SMTP Server*	<input type="text"/>
Secure channel protocol	<input type="text" value="None"/>
SMTP server port*	<input type="text" value="25"/>
Authentication	<input type="checkbox" value="OFF"/>
Microsoft Secure Password Authentication (SPA)	<input type="checkbox" value="OFF"/>
From name*	<input type="text"/>
From email*	<input type="text"/>

Test Configuration

▶ Advanced Settings

Cancel

Add

1. Configure these settings:

- **Name:** Type the name associated with this SMTP server account.
- **Description:** Optionally, enter a description of the server.
- **SMTP Server:** Type the host name for the server. The host name may be a fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or an IP address.
- **Secure channel protocol:** In the list, click **SSL**, **TLS**, or **None** for the secure channel protocol used by the server (if the server is configured to use secure authentication). The default is **None**.
- **SMTP server port:** Type the port used by the SMTP server. By default, the port is set to 25; if SMTP connections use

the SSL secure channel protocol, the port is set to 465.

- **Authentication:** Select **ON** or **OFF**. The default is **OFF**.
- If you enable **Authentication**, configure these settings:
  - **User name:** Type the user name for authentication
  - **Password:** Type the authentication user's password.
- **Microsoft Secure Password Authentication (SPA):** If the SMTP server is using the SPA, click **ON**. The default is **OFF**.
- **From Name:** Type the name displayed in the **From** box when a client receives a notification email from this server. For example, Corporate IT.
- **From email:** Type the email address used if an email recipient replies to the notification sent by the SMTP server.

2. Click **Test Configuration** to send a test email notification.

3. Expand **Advanced Settings** and then configure these settings:

- **Number of SMTP retries:** Type the number of times to retry a failed message sent from the SMTP server. The default is 5.
- **SMTP Timeout:** Type the duration to wait (in seconds) when sending an SMTP request. Increase this value if message sending is continuously failing because of timeouts. Use caution when decreasing this value; it could increase the number of timed out and undelivered messages. The default is 30 seconds.
- **Maximum number of SMTP recipients:** Type the maximum number of recipients per email message sent by the SMTP server. The default is 100.

4. Click **Add**.

To add an SMS gateway

Settings &gt; Notification Server &gt; Add SMS Gateway

## Add SMS Gateway

Please consult with your IT department about the server info if the SMS server is hosted on internal corporate server; if this is a hosted email service, the info is available from the service provider's website. Only one SMS server is activated at one time.

Name*	<input type="text"/>
Description	<input type="text"/>
Key*	<input type="text"/>
Secret*	<input type="text"/>
Virtual phone number*	<input type="text"/>
HTTPS	<input type="checkbox"/> OFF
Country code	<input type="text" value="Afghanistan +93"/>
Use Carrier Gateway	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ON
	<input type="button" value="Test Configuration"/>

### Note

XenMobile only supports Nexmo SMS messaging. If you do not already have an account to use Nexmo messaging, visit their [website](#) to create one.

1. Configure the following settings:

- **Name:** Type a name for the SMS Gateway configuration. This field is required.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the configuration.
- **Key:** Type the numerical identifier provided by the system administrator when activating the account. This field is required.
- **Secret:** Type a secret provided by the system administrator that is used to access your account in the event that a

password is lost or stolen. This field is required.

- **Virtual Phone Number:** This field is used when sending to North American phone numbers (with the +1 prefix). You must type a Nexmo virtual phone number and you must only use digits in this field. You can purchase virtual phone numbers on the Nexmo website.
- **HTTPS:** Select whether to use HTTPS to transmit SMS requests to Nexmo. The default is **OFF**.

**Important:** Leave HTTPS set to **ON** unless you have guidance from Citrix Support to turn it to **OFF**.

- **Country Code:** In the list, click the default SMS country code prefix for recipients in your organization. This field always starts with a + symbol. The default is **Afghanistan +93**.

2. Click **Test Configuration** to send a test message using the current configuration. Connection errors, such as authentication or virtual phone number errors, are detected and appear immediately. Messages are received in the same time frame as messages sent between mobile phones.

2. Click **Add**.

### To add a carrier SMS gateway

You can set up a Carrier SMS Gateway in XenMobile to configure notifications that are sent through a carrier's SMS gateway. Carriers use Short Message Service (SMS) gateways to send or receive SMS transmissions to or from a telecommunications network. These text-based messages use standardized communications protocols to allow fixed line or mobile phone devices to exchange short text messages.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Under **Notifications**, click **Carrier SMS Gateway**. The **Carrier SMS Gateway** page opens.

Settings &gt; Carrier SMS Gateway

## Carrier SMS Gateway



Add



Detect

<input type="checkbox"/>	Carrier	SMTP domain	Country code	Sending prefix	▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	Alltel	message.alltel.com	+1		
<input type="checkbox"/>	AT&T	txt.att.net	+1		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Boost Mobile	myboostmobile.com	+1		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Bouygues Telecom	mms.bouyguestelecom.fr	+33		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Cingular	cingularme.com	+1		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Metro PCS	mymetropcs.com	+1		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nextel	messaging.nextel.com	+1		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Orange	websmsmms.orange.fr	+33		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Powertel	ptel.net	+1		
<input type="checkbox"/>	SFR	sfr.fr	+33		

Showing 1 - 10 of 16 items

Showing 1 of 2



3. Do one of the following:

- Click **Detect** to automatically discover a gateway. A dialog box appears indicating that there are no new carriers detected or listing the new carriers detected among enrolled devices.
- Click **Add**. The **Add a Carrier SMS Gateway** dialog box appears.

### Add a Carrier SMS Gateway ✕

Converts email messages passing through the gateway to a pre-defined format, such as an instant message.

**Carrier\***

**Gateway SMTP domain\***

**Country code\***

**Email sending prefix**

**Note:** XenMobile only supports Nexmo SMS messaging. If you do not already have an account to use Nexmo messaging, visit their [website](#) to create one.

4. Configure these settings:

- **Carrier:** Type the name of the carrier.
- **Gateway SMTP domain:** Type the domain associated with the SMTP gateway.
- **Country code:** In the list, click the country code for the carrier.
- **Email sending prefix:** Optionally, specify an email sending prefix.

5. Click **Add** to add the new carrier or click **Cancel** to not add the new carrier.

## Creating and updating notification templates

You can create or update notification templates in XenMobile to be used in automated actions, enrollment, and standard notification messages sent to users. You configure the notification templates to send messages over three different channels: Secure Hub, SMTP, or SMS.

XenMobile includes many predefined notification templates that reflect the distinct types of events that XenMobile automatically responds to for every device in the system.

**Note:** If you plan to use SMTP or SMS channels to send notifications to users, you must set up the channels before you

can activate them. XenMobile prompts you to set up the channels when you add notification templates if they are not already set up.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Click **Notification Templates**. The **Notification Templates** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Settings > Notification Templates

### Notification Templates

Create notification templates to use in automated actions, enrollment, and standard notification message delivery to users.

Add

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Channels	Type	Deletable	Manual sending supported	▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	ActiveSync Gateway Blocked	Worx Home	ActiveSync Gateway blocked device			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Android Download Link	SMTP, SMS	Android Download Link			
<input type="checkbox"/>	APNS cert expiration	SMTP	APNS Cert Expiration			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Certificate renewal	Worx Home	Certificate is renewed			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enrollment	SMTP, SMS	Enrollment Notification			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enrollment Confirmation	SMTP, SMS	Enrollment Confirmation			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enrollment Invitation	SMTP, SMS	Enrollment Invitation			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enrollment PIN	SMTP, SMS	Enrollment PIN			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Failed Samsung KNOX attestation	Worx Home	Failed Samsung KNOX attestation			
<input type="checkbox"/>	iOS Download Link	SMTP, SMS	iOS Download Link			

Showing 1 - 10 of 25 items Showing 1 of 3 < >

### To add a notification template

1. Click **Add**. If no SMS gateway or SMTP server has been set up, a message appears regarding the use of SMS and SMTP notifications. You can choose to set up the SMTP server or SMS gateway now or set them up later.

If you choose to set up SMS or SMTP server settings now, you are redirected to the **Notification Server** page on the **Settings** page. After setting up the channels you want to use, you can return to the **Notification Template** page to continue adding or modifying notification templates.

### Important

If you choose to set up SMS or SMTP server settings later, you will not be able to activate those channels when you add or edit a notification template, which means those channels will not be available for sending user notifications.



## 2. Configure these settings:

- **Name:** Type a descriptive name for the template.
- **Description:** Type a description for the template.
- **Type:** In the list, click the notification type. Only supported channels for the selected type appear. Only one APNS Cert Expiration template is allowed, which is a predefined template. This means you cannot add a new template of this type.

**Note:** For some template types, the phrase Manual sending supported appears below the type. This means that the template is available in the **Notifications** list on the **Dashboard** and on the **Devices** page to let you manually send the notification to users. Manual sending is not available in any template that uses the following macros in the Subject or Message field on any channel:

- `${outofcompliance.reason(whitelist_blacklist_apps_name)}`
- `${outofcompliance.reason(smog_block)}`

3. Under **Channels**, configure the information for each channel to be used with this notification. You can choose any or all channels. The channels you choose depends on how you want to send notifications:

- If you choose **Secure Hub**, only iOS and Android devices receive the notifications, which appear in the device's notification tray.
- If you choose **SMTP**, most users should receive the message because they will have enrolled with their email addresses.
- If you choose **SMS**, only users using devices with a SIM card receive the notification.

### Secure Hub:

- **Activate:** Click to enable the notification channel.
- **Message:** Type the message to be sent to the user. This field is required if you are using Secure Hub.
- **Sound File:** In the list, click the notification sound the user hears when the notification is received.

### SMTP:

- **Activate:** Click to enable the notification channel.

**Important:** You are only able to activate the SMTP notification if you have already set up the SMTP server.

- **Sender:** Type an optional sender for the notification, which can be a name, an email address, or both.
- **Recipient:** This field contains a pre-built macro for all but Ad-Hoc notifications to ensure that notifications are sent to the correct SMTP recipient address. Citrix recommends that you do not modify macros in templates. You can also add recipients (for example, the corporate administrator), in addition to the user by adding their addresses separated by a semi-colon (;). To send Ad Hoc notifications, you can enter specific recipients on this page, or you can select devices from the **Manage > Devices** page and send notifications from there. For details, see [Devices](#).
- **Subject:** Type a descriptive subject for the notification. This field is required.
- **Message:** Type the message to be sent to the user.

### SMS:

- **Activate:** Click to enable the notification channel.

**Important:** You are only able to activate the SMS notification if you have already set up the SMS gateway.

- **Recipient:** This field contains a pre-built macro for all but Ad-Hoc notifications to ensure that notifications are sent to the correct SMS recipient address. Citrix recommends that you do not modify macros in templates. To send Ad Hoc notifications, you can enter specific recipients, or you can select devices from the **Manage > Devices** page.
- **Message:** Type the message to be sent to the user. This field is required.

5. Click **Add**. When all channels are correctly configured, they appear in this order on the **Notification Templates** page: SMTP, SMS, and Secure Hub. Any channels not correctly configured appear after the correctly configured channels.

### To edit a notification template

1. Select a notification template. The edit page specific to that template appears where you can make changes to all but the **Type** field, as well as activate or deactivate channels.

2. Click **Save**.

### To delete a notification template

**Note:** You can delete only notification templates that you have added; you cannot delete predefined notification templates.

1. Select an existing notification template.

2. Click **Delete**. A confirmation dialog box appears.

2. Click **Delete** to delete the notification template or click **Cancel** to cancel deleting the notification template.

# Devices

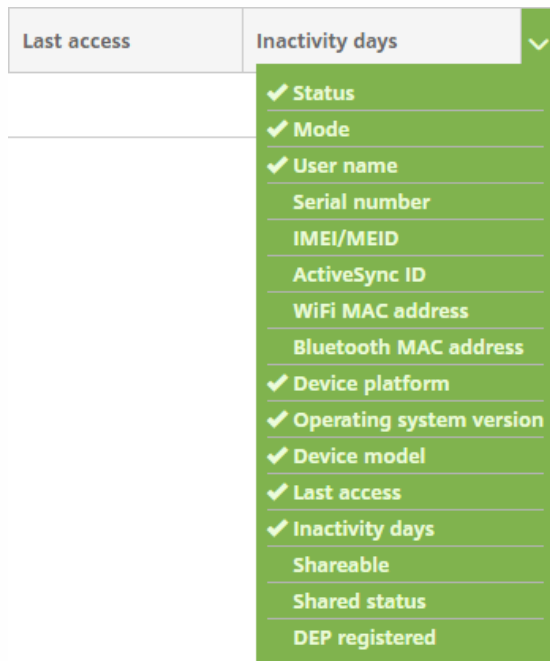
Feb 27, 2017

The XenMobile server database stores a list of mobile devices. A unique serial number or International Mobile Station Equipment Identity (IMEI)/Mobile Equipment Identifier (MEID) uniquely defines each mobile device. To populate the XenMobile console with your devices, you can add the devices manually or you can import a list of devices from a file. See [Device provisioning file formats](#), for information about device provisioning file formats.

The **Devices** page in the XenMobile console lists each device and the following information:

- **Status** (icons indicate whether the device is jailbroken, is managed, whether Active Sync Gateway is available, and the deployment state)
- **Mode** (whether the device mode is MDM, MAM, or both)
- Other information about the device, such as **User name**, **Device platform**, **Operating system version**, **Device model**, **Last access**, and **Inactivity days**. Those are the default headings shown.

To customize the **Devices** table, click the down arrow on the last heading and then select the additional headings you want to see in the table or clearing those you want to remove.



You can add devices manually, import devices from a device provisioning file, edit device details, perform security actions, send notifications to devices, and delete devices. You can also export all of the device table data to a .csv file to create a custom report. The server exports all device attributes and, if you apply filters, XenMobile uses the filters when creating the .csv file.

See the following sections for details about managing devices:

- [Add a device manually](#)
- [Import devices from a device provisioning file](#)
- [Perform security actions](#)
- [Send a notification to devices](#)

- [Delete devices](#)
- [Export the Devices table](#)
- [Tag user devices manually](#)
- [Device provisioning file formats](#)
- [Device property names and values](#)

## Add a device manually

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Manage > Devices**. The **Devices** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Devices', 'Users', and 'Enrollment Invitations'. The 'Devices' tab is active, showing a 'Devices' section with a 'Show filter' link. Below this, there are icons for 'Add', 'Import', 'Export', and 'Refresh'. A table lists two devices:

Status	Mode	User name	Device platform	Operating system version
<input type="checkbox"/>	MDM MAM	us1user1@...net "us1 user1"	Android	5.0.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	MDM MAM	us3user3@...net "us3 user3"	iOS	8.4.1

2. Click **Add**. The **Add Device** page appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Device' page in the XenMobile console. The navigation bar is the same as in the previous screenshot. Below the navigation bar, there are tabs for 'Devices', 'Users', and 'Enrollment Invitations'. The 'Add Device' page shows a form with the following fields:

- Select Platform:** Radio buttons for 'iOS' (selected) and 'Android'.
- Serial Number\*:** A text input field.

3. Configure these settings:

- **Select platform:** Click either **iOS** or **Android**.
- **Serial Number:** Type the device's serial number.
- **IMEI/MEID:** Optionally, for Android devices only, type the device's IMEI/MEID information.

4. Click **Add**. The **Devices** table appears with the device added to the bottom of the list. In the list, select the device you added and then in the menu that appears, click **Edit** to view and confirm the device details.

**Note:** When you select the check box next to a device, the options menu appears above the device list; when you click anywhere else in the list, the options menu appears on the right side of the listing.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface with the 'Configure' tab selected. The 'Device details' page is open, showing a sidebar with navigation options: 1 General (selected), 2 Properties, 3 Assigned Policies, 4 Apps, 5 Actions, 6 Delivery Groups, 7 iOS Profiles, 8 iOS Provisioning Profiles, 9 Certificates, and 10 Connections. The main content area is divided into two sections: 'General Identifiers' and 'Security'. The 'General Identifiers' section includes fields for Serial Number (A123), IMEI/MEID (NONE), ActiveSync ID (NONE), WiFi MAC Address (NONE), and Bluetooth MAC Address (NONE). The 'Device Ownership' section has two radio buttons: 'Corporate' (selected) and 'BYOD'. The 'Security' section includes fields for Strong ID (QYD7UUSF), Full Wipe of Device (No device wipe), Selective Wipe of Device (No device selective wipe), Lock Device (No device lock), and Device Unlock (No device unlock). A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the page.

5. The **General** page lists device **Identifiers**, such as the serial number, ActiveSync ID, and other information for the platform type. For **Device Ownership**, select **Corporate** or **BYOD**.

The **General** page also lists device **Security** properties, such as Strong ID, Lock Device, Activation Lock Bypass, and other information for the platform type.

6. The **Properties** page lists the device properties that XenMobile will provision. This list shows any device properties included in the provisioning file used to add the device. To add a property, click **Add** and then select a property from the list. For valid values for each property, see [Device property names and values](#) in this article.

When you add a property, it initially appears under the category where you added it. After you click **Next** and then return to the **Properties** page, the property appears in the appropriate list.

To delete a property, hover over the listing and then click the **X** on the right side. XenMobile deletes the item immediately.

7. The remaining **Device Details** sections contain summary information for the device.

- **Assigned Policies:** Displays the number of assigned policies including the number of deployed, pending, and failed policies. Provides the policy name, type and last deployed information for each policy.
- **Apps:** Displays, for the last inventory, the number of installed, pending, and failed apps. Provides the app name, identifier, type, and other information.
- **Actions:** Displays the number of deployed, pending, and failed actions. Provides the action name and time of the last

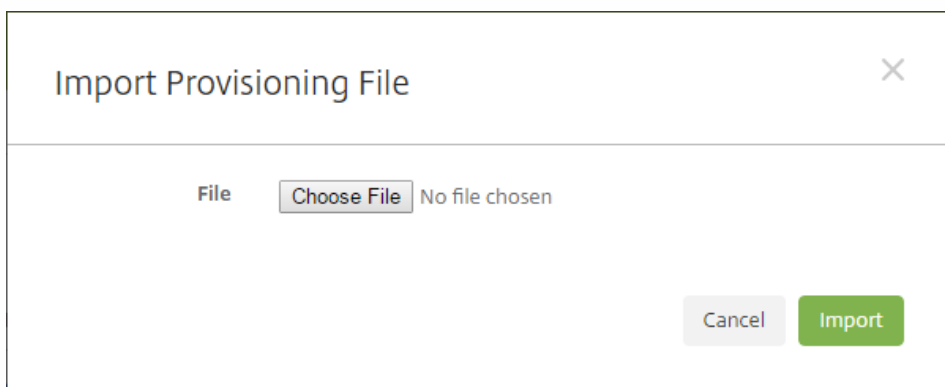
deployment.

- **Delivery Groups:** Displays the number of successful, pending, and failed delivery groups. For each deployment, provides the delivery group name and deployment time. Select a delivery group to view more detailed information, including status, action, and channel or user.
- **iOS Profiles:** Displays the last iOS profile inventory, including name, type, organization, and description.
- **iOS Provisioning Profiles:** Displays enterprise distribution provisioning profile information, such as the UUID, expiration date, and whether it is managed.
- **Certificates:** Displays, for valid, expired or revoked certificates, information such as the type, provider, issuer, serial number, and the number of remaining days before expiration.
- **Connections:** Displays the first connection status and the last connection status. Provides for each connection, the user name, penultimate (next to last) authentication time, and last authentication time.
- **TouchDown (Android devices only):** Displays information about the last device authentication and the last user authenticated. Provides each applicable policy name and policy value.

### Import devices from a provisioning file

You can import a file supplied by mobile operators or device manufacturers, or you can create your own device provisioning file. For more information, see [Device provisioning file formats](#) in this article.

1. Go to **Manage > Devices** and click **Import**. The **Import Provisioning File** dialog box appears.



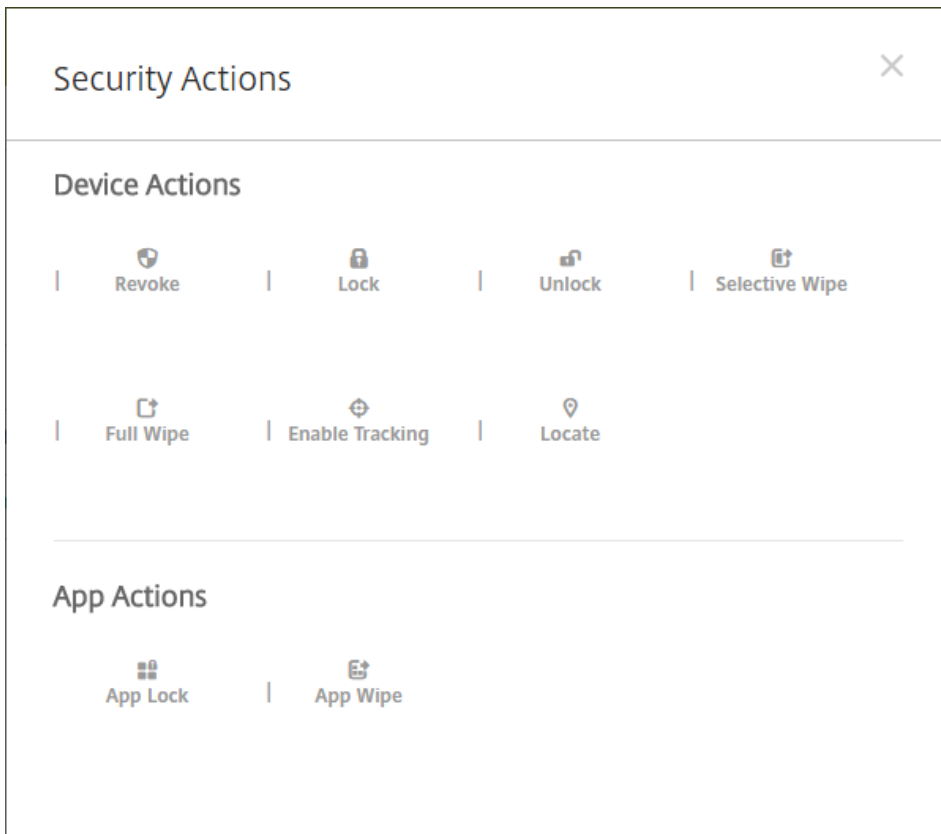
2. Click **Choose File** and then navigate to the file you want to import.
3. Click **Import**. The **Devices** table lists the imported file.
4. To edit the device information, select it and then click **Edit**. For information about the **Device details** pages, see [Add a device manually](#).

### Perform security actions

You can perform device and app security actions from the **Devices** page. Device actions include revoke, lock, unlock, and wipe. App security actions include app lock and app wipe.

1. On the **Manage > Devices** page, select a device, and then click **Secure**.
2. In **Security Actions**, click an action and respond to any prompts.

For more information about actions, see [Automated actions](#).



### To perform an app lock, unlock, wipe, or unwipe manually

1. Go to **Manage > Devices**, select a managed device and then click **Secure**.
2. In the **Security Actions** dialog box, click an action.

**Note:** You can also use this dialog box to check the status of a device for a user whom you know is disabled or deleted from Active Directory. The presence of the App Unlock or App Unwipe actions indicate the users' apps are currently locked or wiped.

3. Confirm the action.

### Send a notification to devices

You can send notifications to devices from the Devices page. For more information about notifications, see [Notifications](#).

1. On the **Manage > Devices** page, elect the device or devices to which you want to send a notification.
2. Click **Notify**. The **Notification** dialog box appears. The **Recipients** field lists all of the devices to receive the notification.

The screenshot shows a 'Notification' dialog box with the following elements:

- Recipients:** A text input field containing 'CMVVXKX06J6A'.
- Templates:** A dropdown menu currently showing 'Ad Hoc'.
- Channels:** Two checkboxes, 'SMTP' and 'SMS', both of which are checked.
- Message Format:** Two tabs, 'SMTP' and 'SMS'. The 'SMTP' tab is active, showing three input fields: 'Sender', 'Subject', and 'Message'.
- Buttons:** 'Cancel' and 'Notify' buttons located at the bottom right of the dialog.

3. Configure these settings:

- **Templates:** In the list, click the type of notification you want to send. For each template except for **Ad Hoc**, the **Subject** and **Message** fields show the text configured for the template that you choose.
- **Channels:** Select how to send the message. The default is **SMTP** and **SMS**. Click the tabs to see the message format for each channel.
- **Sender:** Enter an optional sender.
- **Subject:** Enter a subject for an **Ad Hoc** message.
- **Message:** Enter the message for an **Ad Hoc** message.

4. Click **Notify**.

#### Delete devices

1. In the **Devices** table, select the device or devices you want to delete.
2. Click **Delete**. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** again. You cannot undo this operation.

#### Export the Devices table

1. Filter the **Devices** table according to what you want to appear in the export file.
2. Click the **Export** button above the **Devices** table. XenMobile extracts the information in the filtered **Devices** table and converts it to a .csv file.
3. When prompted, open or save the .csv file. How you do this depends on the browser you are using. You can also cancel the operation.



## Tag user devices manually

You can manually tag a device in XenMobile in the following ways:

- During the invitation-based enrollment process.
- During the Self Help Portal enrollment process.
- By adding device ownership as a device property

You have the option of tagging the device as either corporate- or employee-owned. When using the Self Help Portal to self-enroll a device, you can also tag the device as either corporate- or employee-owned. As shown in the following figure, you can also tag a device manually by adding a property to the device from the Devices tab in the XenMobile console, adding the property named Owned by and choosing either Corporate or BYOD (employee-owned).

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The user is logged in as 'administrator'. The 'Devices' tab is selected, and the 'Device details' page is open. The 'Properties' section is highlighted, showing a dropdown menu for 'Owned by' with 'BYOD' selected. The UDID is displayed as aa5b769d3ceb885ddef3aa6ef86b00b117408dd.

## Device provisioning file formats

Many mobile operators or device manufacturers provide lists of authorized mobile devices, and you can use these lists to avoid having to enter a long list of mobile devices manually. XenMobile supports an import file format that is common to all three supported device types: Android, iOS, and Windows.

A provisioning file that you create manually and use to import devices to XenMobile must be in the following format:

```
SerialNumber;IMEI;OperatingSystemFamily;propertyName1;propertyValue1;propertyName2;propertyValue2; ...  
propertyNameN;propertyValueN
```

Notes:

- For property names and values, see "Device property names and values" in the next section.
- Use the UTF-8 character set.
- Use a semi-colon (;) to separate the fields within the provisioning file. If part of a field contains a semi-colon, escape it with

a backslash character (\).

For example, for this property:

```
propertyV;test;1;2
```

Escape it as follows:

```
propertyV\;test\;1\;2
```

- The serial number is required for iOS devices because the serial number is the iOS device identifier.
- For other device platforms, you must include either the serial number or the IMEI.
- Valid values for **OperatingSystemFamily** are **WINDOWS**, **ANDROID**, or **iOS**.

Example of a device provisioning file

COPY

```
1050BF3F517301081610065510590391;15244201625379901;WINDOWS;propertyN;propertyV\;test\;1\;2;prop 2

2050BF3F517301081610065510590392;25244201625379902;ANDROID;propertyN;propertyV$*&&ééétest

3050BF3F517301081610065510590393;35244201625379903;iOS;test;

4050BF3F517301081610065510590393;;iOS;test;

;5244201625379903;ANDROID;test.testé;value;
```

Each line in the file describes a device. The first entry in the above sample means the following:

- SerialNumber: 1050BF3F517301081610065510590391
- IMEI: 15244201625379901
- OperatingSystemFamily: WINDOWS
- PropertyName: propertyN
- PropertyValue: propertyV\;test\;1\;2;prop 2

## Device property names and values

Property name in Manage > Devices page	Name and values for device provisioning file	Value type
AIK Present?	WINDOWS_HAS_AIK_PRESENT	String
Account Suspended?	GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_SUSPENDED	String

Activation lock bypass code	ACTIVATION_LOCK_BYPASS_CODE	String
Activation lock enabled	ACTIVATION_LOCK_ENABLED  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
Active iTunes account	ACTIVE_ITUNES  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
ActiveSync ID	EXCHANGE_ACTIVESYNC_ID	String
ActiveSync device known by MSP	AS_DEVICE_KNOWN_BY_ZMSP  Values (meaning): 1 (True) 0 (False)	Boolean
Administrator disabled	ADMIN_DISABLED  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
Amazon MDM API available	AMAZON_MDM  Values (meaning): 1 (True) 0 (False)	Boolean
Android for Work Device ID	GOOGLE_AW_DEVICE_ID	String
Android for Work Enabled Device?	GOOGLE_AW_ENABLED_DEVICE	String
Android for Work Install Type	GOOGLE_AW_INSTALL_TYPE  Values: DeviceAdministrator (Device Owner) AvengerManagedProfile (Work Managed Device) ManagedProfile (Work Profile)	String

Asset tag	ASSET_TAG	String
Autoupdate Status	AUTOUPDATE_STATUS	String
Available RAM	MEMORY_AVAILABLE	Integer
Available storage space	TOTAL_DISK_SPACE	Integer
BIOS Info	BIOS_INFO	String
Backup battery	BACKUP_BATTERY_PERCENT	Integer
Baseband firmware version	MODEM_FIRMWARE_VERSION	String
Battery Status	BATTERY_STATUS	String
Battery charging	BATTERY_CHARGING  Values (meaning): 1 (True) 0 (False)	Boolean
Bes device known by MSP	BES_DEVICE_KNOWN_BY_ZMSP  Values (meaning): 1 (True) 0 (False)	Boolean
BES PIN	BES_PIN	String
BES server agent ID	ENROLLMENT_AGENT_ID	String
BES server name	BES_SERVER	String
BES server version	BES_VERSION	String
Bit Locker Status	WINDOWS_HAS_BIT_LOCKER_STATUS	String
Bluetooth MAC address	BLUETOOTH_MAC	String
Boot Debugging Enabled?	WINDOWS_HAS_BOOT_DEBUGGING_ENABLED	String

Boot Manager Rev List Version	WINDOWS_HAS_BOOT_MGR_REV_LIST_VERSION	String
CPU clock speed	CPU_CLOCK_SPEED	Integer
CPU type	CPU_TYPE	String
Carrier settings version	CARRIER_SETTINGS_VERSION	String
Cellular latitude	GPS_LATITUDE_FROM_CELLULAR	String
Cellular longitude	GPS_LONGITUDE_FROM_CELLULAR	String
Cellular technology	CELLULAR_TECHNOLOGY	Integer
Cellular timestamp	GPS_TIMESTAMP_FROM_CELLULAR	Date
Change Password at Next Login?	GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_CHANGE_PASSWORD_NEXT_LOGIN	String
Client device ID	CLIENT_DEVICE_ID	String
Cloud backup enabled	CLOUD_BACKUP_ENABLED  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
Code Integrity Enabled?	WINDOWS_HAS_CODE_INTEGRITY_ENABLED	String
Code Integrity Rev List Version	WINDOWS_HAS_CODE_INTGTY_REV_LIST_VERSION	String
Color	COLOR	String
Creation Time	GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_CREATION_TIME	String
Current carrier network	CURRENT_CARRIER_NETWORK	String
Current mobile country code	CURRENT_MCC	Integer

Current mobile network code	CURRENT_MNC	String
DEP account name	BULK_ENROLLMENT_DEP_ACCOUNT_NAME	String
DEP Policy	WINDOWS_HAS_DEP_POLICY	String
Data roaming allowed	DATA_ROAMING_ENABLED  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
Date of the last iCloud backup	LAST_CLOUD_BACKUP_DATE	Date
Description	DESCRIPTION	String
Device Enrollment Program profile assigned	PROFILE_ASSIGN_TIME	Date
Device Enrollment Program profile pushed	PROFILE_PUSH_TIME	Date
Device Enrollment Program profile removed	PROFILE_REMOVE_TIME	Date
Device Enrollment Program registration by	DEVICE_ASSIGNED_BY	String
Device Enrollment Program registration date	DEVICE_ASSIGNED_DATE	Date
Device Type	DEVICE_TYPE	String
Device model	MODEL_ID	String
Device name	DEVICE_NAME	String
Do Not Disturb activated	DO_NOT_DISTURB  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean

ELAM Driver Loaded?	WINDOWS_HAS_ELAM_DRIVER_LOADED	String
ENROLLMENT_KEY_GENERATION_DATE	ENROLLMENT_KEY_GENERATION_DATE	Date
Enterprise ID	ENTERPRISE_ID	String
External storage 1: available space	EXTERNAL_STORAGE1_FREE_SPACE	Integer
External storage 1: name	EXTERNAL_STORAGE1_NAME	String
External storage 1: total space	EXTERNAL_STORAGE1_TOTAL_SPACE	Integer
External storage 2: available space	EXTERNAL_STORAGE2_FREE_SPACE	Integer
External storage 2: name	EXTERNAL_STORAGE2_NAME	String
External storage 2: total space	EXTERNAL_STORAGE2_TOTAL_SPACE	Integer
External storage encrypted	EXTERNAL_ENCRYPTION  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
Firewall Status	FIREWALL_STATUS	String
Firmware version	FIRMWARE_VERSION	String
First synchronization	ZMSP_FIRST_SYNC	Date
GPS altitude	GPS_ALTITUDE_FROM_GPS	String
GPS latitude	GPS_LATITUDE_FROM_GPS	String
GPS longitude	GPS_LONGITUDE_FROM_GPS	String
GPS timestamp	GPS_TIMESTAMP_FROM_GPS	Date
Google Directory Alias	GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_GOOGLE_ALIAS	String

Google Directory Family Name	GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_FAMILY_NAME	String
Google Directory Name	GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_NAME	String
Google Directory Primary Email	GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_PRIMARY	String
Google Directory User ID	GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_USER_ID	String
HAS_CONTAINER	HAS_CONTAINER  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
HTC API version	HTC_MDM_VERSION	String
HTC MDM API available	HTC_MDM  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
Hardware encryption capabilities	HARDWARE_ENCRYPTION_CAPS	Integer
Hash of the iTunes store account currently logged on	ITUNES_STORE_ACCOUNT_HASH	String
Home carrier network	SIM_CARRIER_NETWORK	String
Home mobile country code	SIM_MCC	Integer
Home mobile network code	SIM_MNC	String
ICCID	ICCID	String
IMEI/MEID number	IMEI	String
IMSI	IMSI	String
IP location	IP_LOCATION	String



Identity	AS_DEVICE_IDENTITY	String
Internal storage encrypted	LOCAL_ENCRYPTION  Values (meaning): 1 (True) 0 (False)	Boolean
Issued At	WINDOWS_HAS_ISSUED_AT	String
Jailbroken/Rooted	ROOT_ACCESS  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
Kernel Debugging Enabled?	WINDOWS_HAS_OS_KERNEL_DEBUGGING_ENABLED	String
Kiosk mode	IS_KIOSK  Values (meaning): 1 (True) 0 (False)	Boolean
Last known IP address	LAST_IP_ADDR	String
Last policy update time	LAST_POLICY_UPDATE_TIME	Date
Last synchronization	ZMSP_LAST_SYNC	Date
Locator service enabled	DEVICE_LOCATOR  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
MDX_SHARED_ENCRYPTION_KEY	MDX_SHARED_ENCRYPTION_KEY	String
MEID	MEID	String
Mailbox Setup	GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_MAILBOX_SETUP	String

Main battery	MAIN_BATTERY_PERCENT	Integer
Mobile phone number	TEL_NUMBER	String
Model ID	SYSTEM_OEM	String
Network Adapter Type	NETWORK_ADAPTER_TYPE	String
NitroDesk TouchDown installed	TOUCHDOWN_FIND  Values (meaning): 1 (True) 0 (False)	Boolean
NitroDesk TouchDown licensed via MDM	TOUCHDOWN_LICENSED_VIA_MDM  Values (meaning): 1 (True) 0 (False)	Boolean
Operating system build	SYSTEM_OS_BUILD	String
Operating system language (locale)	SYSTEM_LANGUAGE	String
Operating system version	SYSTEM_OS_VERSION	String
Organization address	ORGANIZATION_ADDRESS	String
Organization e-mail	ORGANIZATION_EMAIL	String
Organization magic	ORGANIZATION_MAGIC	String
Organization name	ORGANIZATION_NAME	String
Organization phone number	ORGANIZATION_PHONE	String
Other	OTHER	String
Out of Compliance	OUT_OF_COMPLIANCE  Values (meaning):	Boolean

	1 (True) 0 (False)	
Owned by	CORPORATE_OWNED  Values (meaning): 1 (Corporate) 0 (BYOD)	Boolean
PCRO	WINDOWS_HAS_PCRO	String
PIN code for geofence	PIN_CODE_FOR_GEO_FENCE	String
Passcode compliant	PASSCODE_IS_COMPLIANT  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
Passcode compliant with configuration	PASSCODE_IS_COMPLIANT_WITH_CFG  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
Passcode present	PASSCODE_PRESENT  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
Perimeter breach	GPS_PERIMETER_BREACH  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
Personal Hotspot activated	PERSONAL_HOTSPOT_ENABLED  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
Platform	SYSTEM_PLATFORM	String
Platform API level	API_LEVEL	Integer

Policy name	POLICY_NAME	String
Primary Phone Number	IDENTITY1_PHONENUMBER	String
Primary SIM IMEI	IDENTITY1_IMEI	String
Primary SIM IMSI	IDENTITY1_IMSI	String
Primary SIM Roaming	IDENTITY1_ROAMING  Values (meaning): 1 (True) 0 (False)	Boolean
Product name	PRODUCT_NAME	String
Publisher Device ID	PUBLISHER_DEVICE_ID	String
Reset Count	WINDOWS_HAS_RESET_COUNT	String
Restart Count	WINDOWS_HAS_RESTART_COUNT	String
SBCP Hash	WINDOWS_HAS_SBCP_HASH	String
SMS capable	IS_SMS_CAPABLE  Values (meaning): 1 (True) 0 (False)	Boolean
Safe Mode Enabled?	WINDOWS_HAS_SAFE_MODE	String
Samsung KNOX API available	SAMSUNG_KNOX  Values (meaning): 1 (True) 0 (False)	Boolean
Samsung KNOX API version	SAMSUNG_KNOX_VERSION	String

Samsung KNOX attestation	SAMSUNG_KNOX_ATTESTED  Values (meaning): 1 (Passed)  0 (Failed)	Boolean
Samsung KNOX attestation updated date	SAMSUNG_KNOX_ATT_UPDATED_TIME	Date
Samsung SAFE API available	SAMSUNG_MDM  Values (meaning): 1 (True) 0 (False)	Boolean
Samsung SAFE API version	SAMSUNG_MDM_VERSION	String
Screen: X-axis resolution	SCREEN_XDPI	Integer (PPI)
Screen: Y-axis resolution	SCREEN_YDPI	Integer (PPI)
Screen: height	SCREEN_HEIGHT	Integer (pixels)
Screen: number of colors	SCREEN_NB_COLORS	Integer
Screen: size	SCREEN_SIZE	Decimal (inches)
Screen: width	SCREEN_WIDTH	Integer (pixels)
Secondary Phone Number	IDENTITY2_PHONENUMBER	String
Secondary SIM IMEI	IDENTITY2_IMEI	String
Secondary SIM IMSI	IDENTITY2_IMSI	String
Secondary SIM Roaming	IDENTITY2_ROAMING	Boolean

	Values (meaning): 1 (True) 0 (False)	
Secure Boot Enabled?	WINDOWS_HAS_SECURE_BOOT_ENABLED	String
SecureContainer Enabled	WINDOWS_HAS_BIT_LOCKER_STATUS	String
Serial number	SERIAL_NUMBER	String
Sony Enterprise API available	SONY_MDM  Values (meaning): 1 (True) 0 (False)	Boolean
Sony Enterprise API version	SONY_MDM_VERSION	String
Supervised	Supervised  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
Suspension Reason	GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_SUSPENSION_REASON	String
Tampered Status	TAMPERED_STATUS	String
Terms & Conditions	TERMS_AND_CONDITIONS	String
Terms And Agreement Accepted?	GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_AGREED_TO_TERMS	String
Test Signing Enabled?	WINDOWS_HAS_TEST_SIGNING_ENABLED	String
Total RAM	MEMORY	Integer
Total storage space	FREEDISK	Integer
UDID	UDID	String
User agent	USER_AGENT	String

User defined #1	USER_DEFINED_1	String
User defined #2	USER_DEFINED_2	String
User defined #3	USER_DEFINED_3	String
User language (locale)	USER_LANGUAGE	String
VSM Enabled?	WINDOWS_HAS_VSM_ENABLED	String
Vendor	VENDOR	String
Voice capable	IS_VOICE_CAPABLE  Values (meaning): 1 (True) 0 (False)	Boolean
Voice roaming allowed	VOICE_ROAMING_ENABLED  Values (meaning): 1 (Yes) 0 (No)	Boolean
WINDOWS_ENROLLMENT_KEY	WINDOWS_ENROLLMENT_KEY	String
WNS Notification Status	WNS_PUSH_STATUS	String
WNS Notification URL	PROPERTY_WNS_PUSH_URL	String
WNS Notification URL expiry date	PROPERTY_WNS_PUSH_URL_EXPIRY	String
WiFi MAC address	WIFI_MAC	String
WinPE Enabled?	WINDOWS_HAS_WINPE	String
XenMobile agent ID	AGENT_ID	String
XenMobile agent revision	EW_REVISION	String

XenMobile agent version

EW\_VERSION

String



# Lock iOS devices

Feb 27, 2017

You can lock a lost iOS device with an accompanying display of a message and phone number that displays on the device lock screen. This feature is supported on devices running iOS 7 and above.

In order for a message and phone number to display on a locked device, the [Passcode](#) policy must be set to true in the XenMobile console. Alternatively, users must enable the passcode on the device manually.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Manage > Devices**. The **Devices** page displays.

Status	Mode	User name	Device platform	Operating system version
<input type="checkbox"/>	MDM MAM	us1user1@... net "us1 user1"	Android	5.0.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	MDM MAM	us3user3@... net "us3 user3"	iOS	8.4.1

2. Select the iOS device you want to lock.

When you select the check box next to a device, the options menu displays above the device list. When you click anywhere else in the list, the options menu displays on the right side of the listing.

Status	Mode	User name	ActiveSync ID	Device platform	Operating system version	Device model	Last access	Inactivity days
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	MDM MAM	ka@... net "ka user1"	SEC14F1C873A5214	Android	4.4.4	GT-I9305	08/17/2016 07:40:34 am	0 day
<input type="checkbox"/>	MDM MAM	aa@... net "aa user1"	S7NN8B1R3H38973954LCTS6QLC	iOS	9.3.2	iPhone	08/17/2016 04:48:29 am	0 day

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure administrator

Devices Users Enrollment Invitations

Devices Show filter Search

Add Import Export Refresh

Status	Mode	User name	ActiveSync ID	Device platform	Operating system version	Device model	Last access	Inactivity days
	MDM MAM	ka@...	SEC14F1C873A5214	Android	4.4.4	GT-I9305	08/17/2016 07:40:34 am	0 day
	MDM MAM	aa@... net	S7NN8B1R3H38973954LCTS6QLC	iOS				

Edit Deploy **Secure** Notify Delete

**XME Device Managed**

Delivery Groups	2	Policies	5
Actions	2	Apps	15

Show more >

3. In the options menu, click **Secure**. The **Security Actions** dialog box displays.

### Security Actions

**Device Actions**

Revoke

Lock

Unlock

Selective Wipe

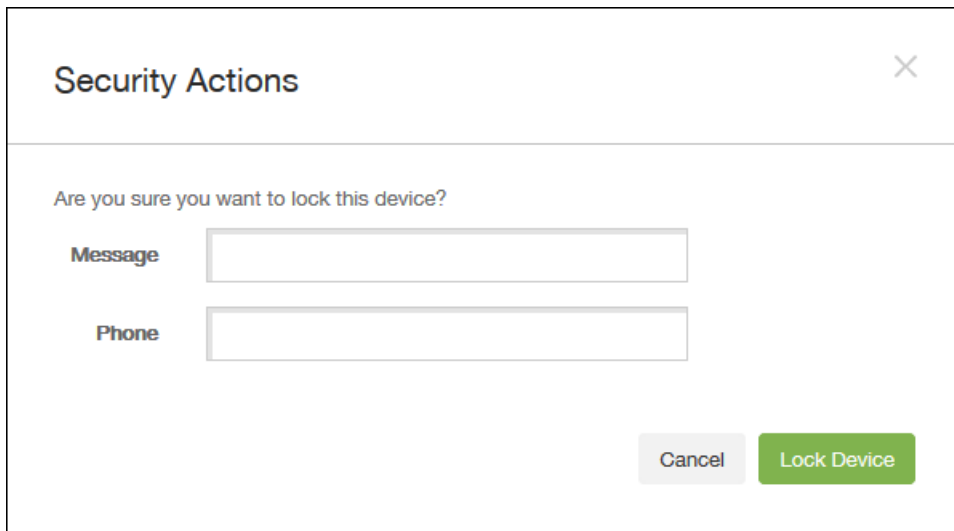
Full Wipe

Enable Tracking

Locate

Request AirPlay Mirroring

4. Click **Lock**. The **Security Actions** confirmation dialog box displays.



Security Actions

Are you sure you want to lock this device?

Message

Phone

Cancel Lock Device

5. Optionally, type a message and phone number that appears on the lock screen of the device.

For iPads running iOS 7 and later: iOS appends the words “Lost iPad” to what you type in the **Message** field. For iPhones running iOS 7 and later: If you leave the **Message** field empty and provide a phone number, Apple displays the message “Call owner” on the device lock screen.

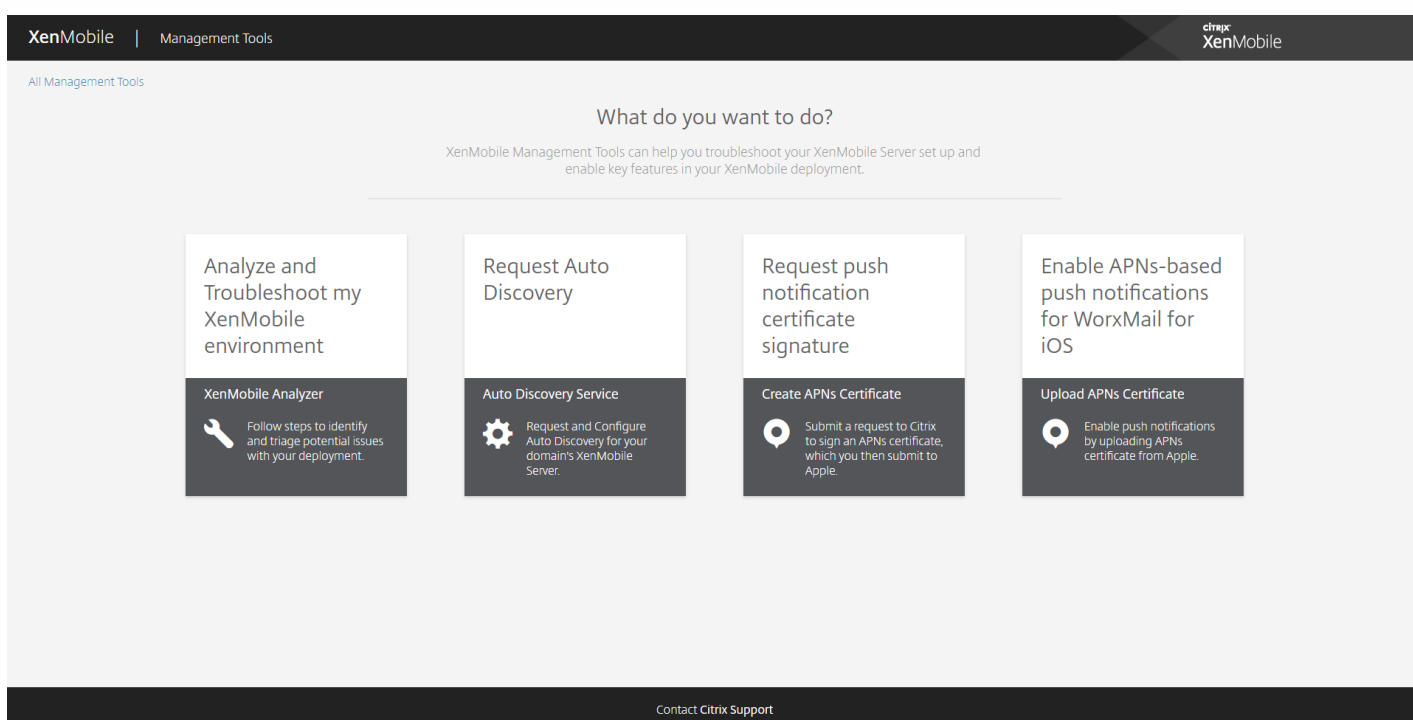
6. Click **Lock Device**.

# XenMobile Autodiscovery Service

Feb 27, 2017

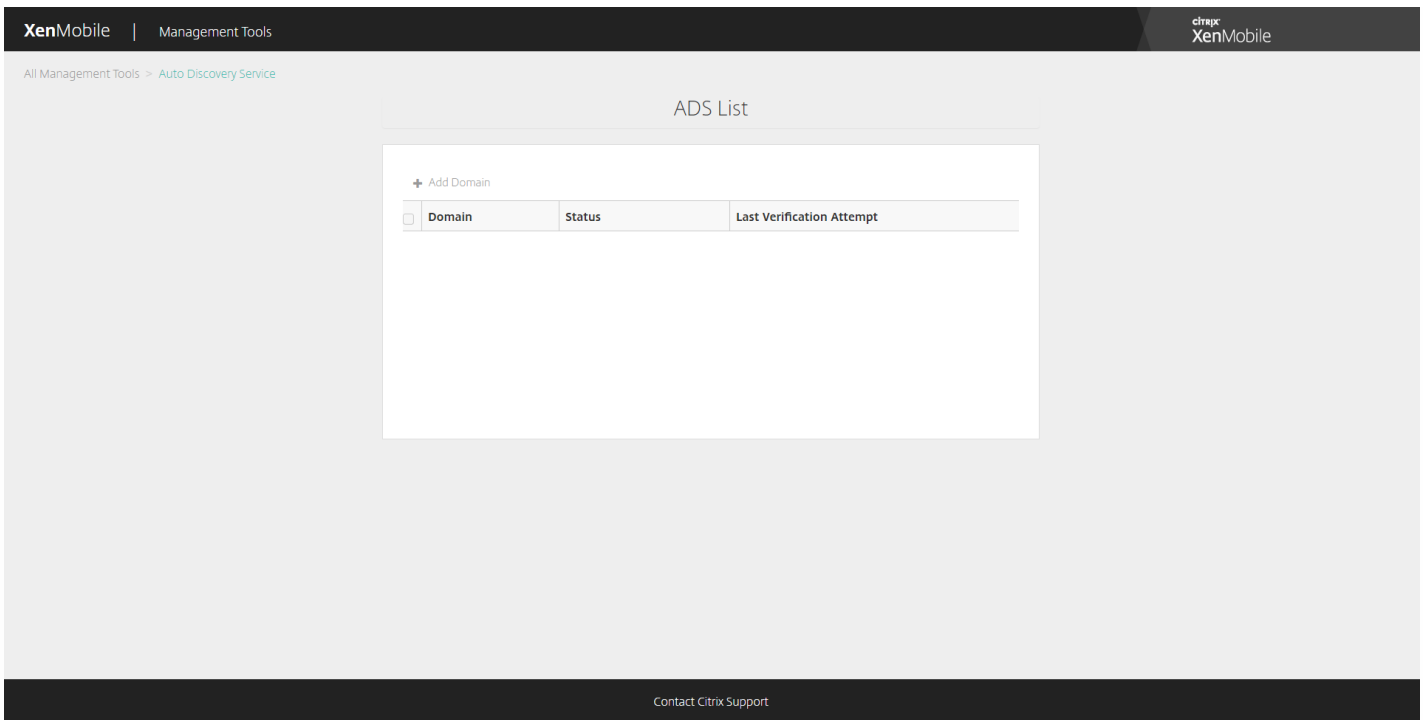
Autodiscovery is an important part of many XenMobile deployments. Autodiscovery simplifies the enrollment process for users. They can use their network user names and Active Directory passwords to enroll their devices, rather than having to also enter details about the XenMobile server. Users enter their user name in user principal name (UPN) format; for example, user@mycompany.com. The XenMobile AutoDiscovery Service enables you to create or edit an autodiscovery record without assistance from Citrix support.

To access the XenMobile AutoDiscovery Service, navigate to <https://xenmobiletools.citrix.com> and the click **Request Auto Discovery**.

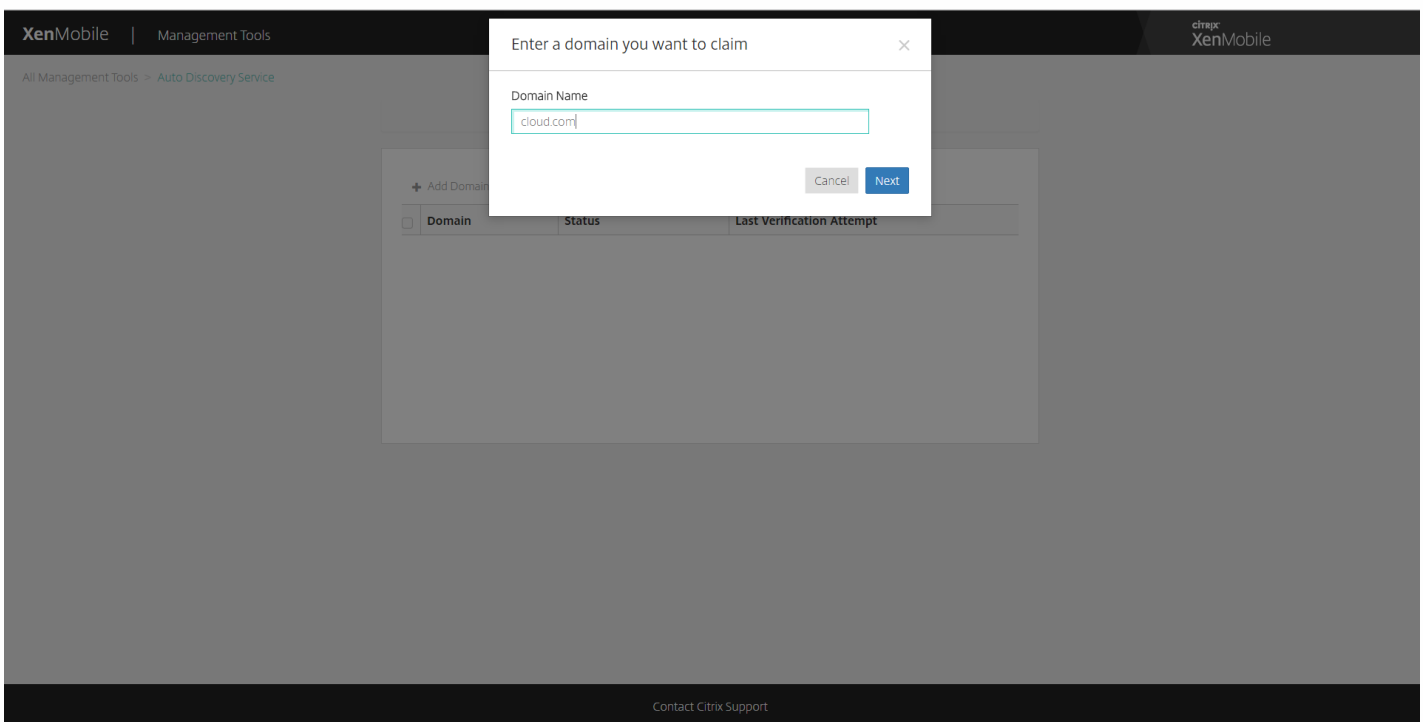


## Requesting AutoDiscovery

1. On the AutoDiscovery Service page, you need to first claim a domain. Click **Add Domain**.



2. In the dialog box that opens, enter the domain name of your XenMobile environment and then click **Next**.



3. The next step provides instructions on verifying that you own the domain.
  - a. Copy the DNS token provided in the XenMobile Tools Portal.
  - b. Create a DNS TXT record in the zone file for your domain in your domain hosting provider portal.

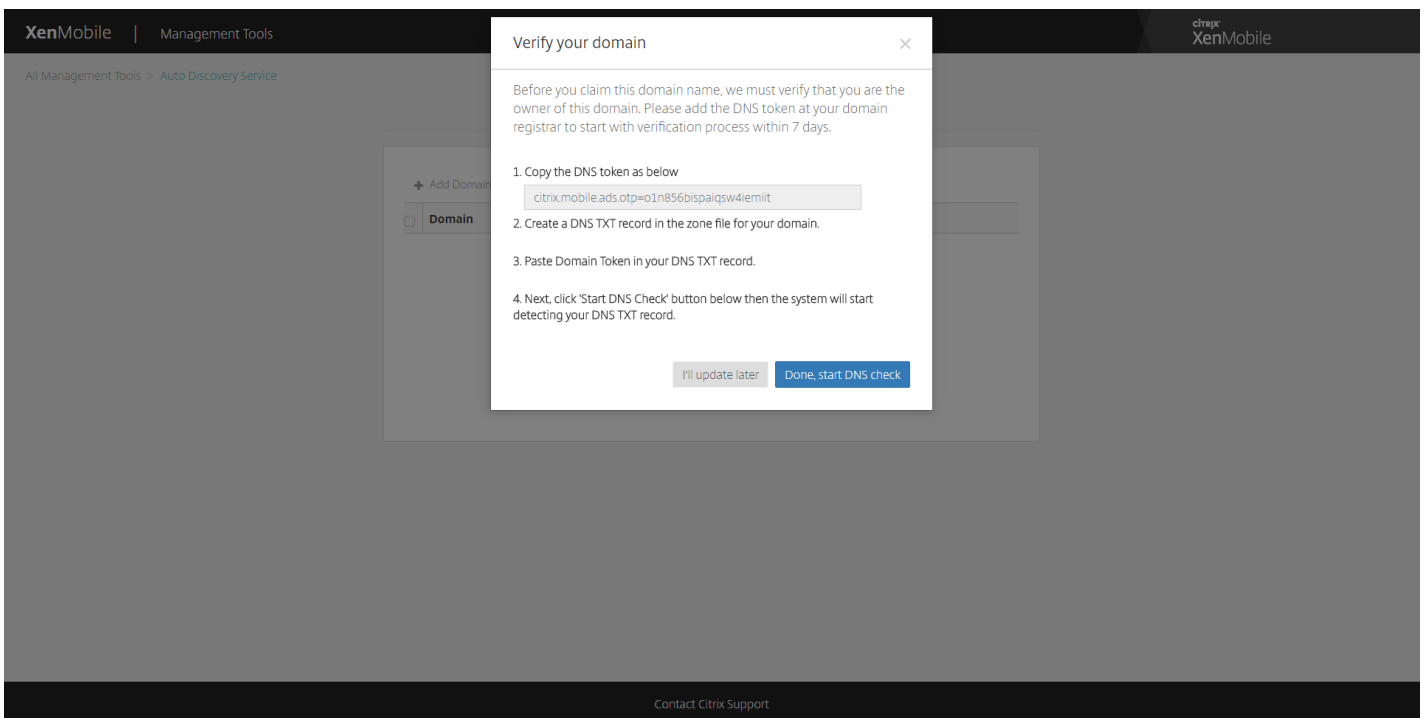
To create a DNS TXT record you need to log into the Domain Hosting Provider portal for the domain you have added in step 2 above. In the Domain Hosting portal you can edit your Domain Name Server Records and add a custom TXT record. An example below of a adding a DNS TXT entry in a hosting portal for sample domain domain.com.

c. Paste the Domain Token in your DNS TXT record and save your Domain name Server record.

d. Back in the XenMobile Tools Portal, click Done, start DNS check.

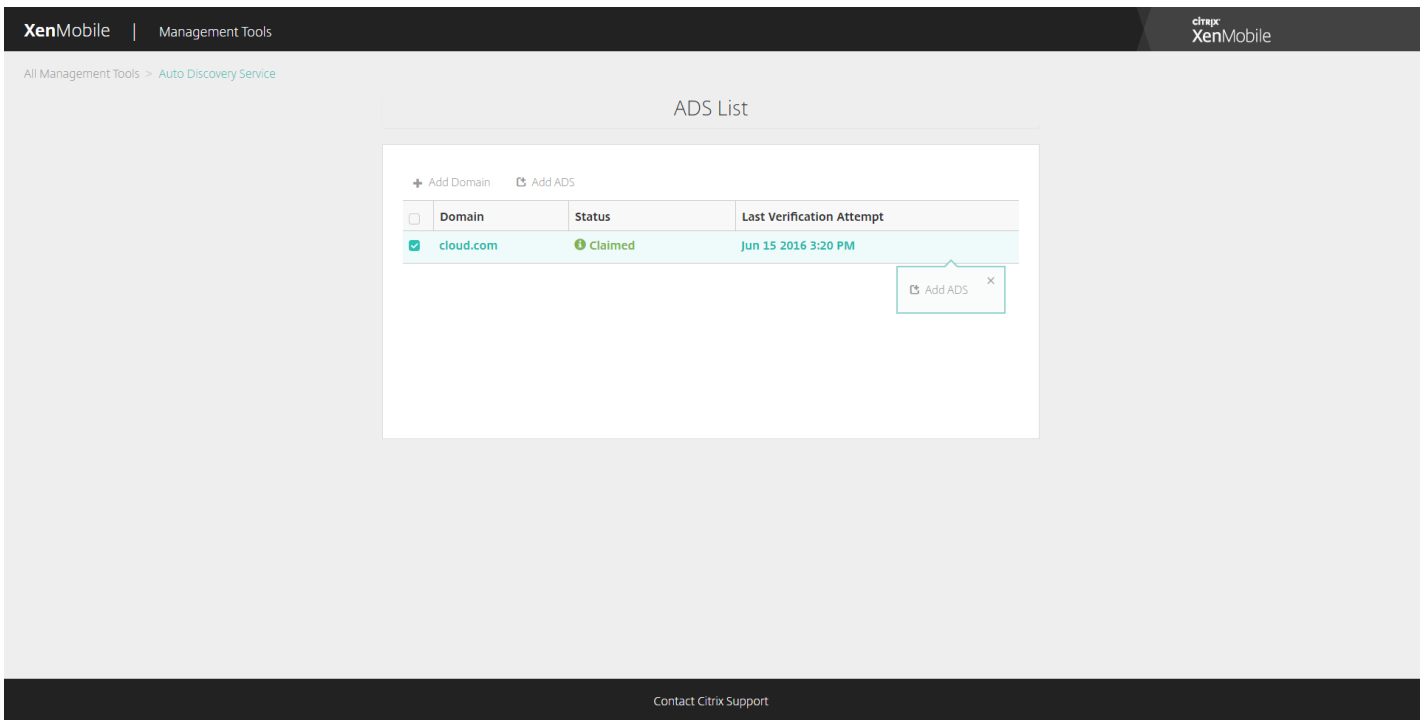
The system detects your DNS TXT record. Alternatively, you can click I'll update later, and the record is saved. The DNS check won't start until you select the Waiting record and click DNS Check.

This check ideally takes about an hour, but it can take up to two days to return a response. In addition, you may need to leave the portal and return to see the status change.

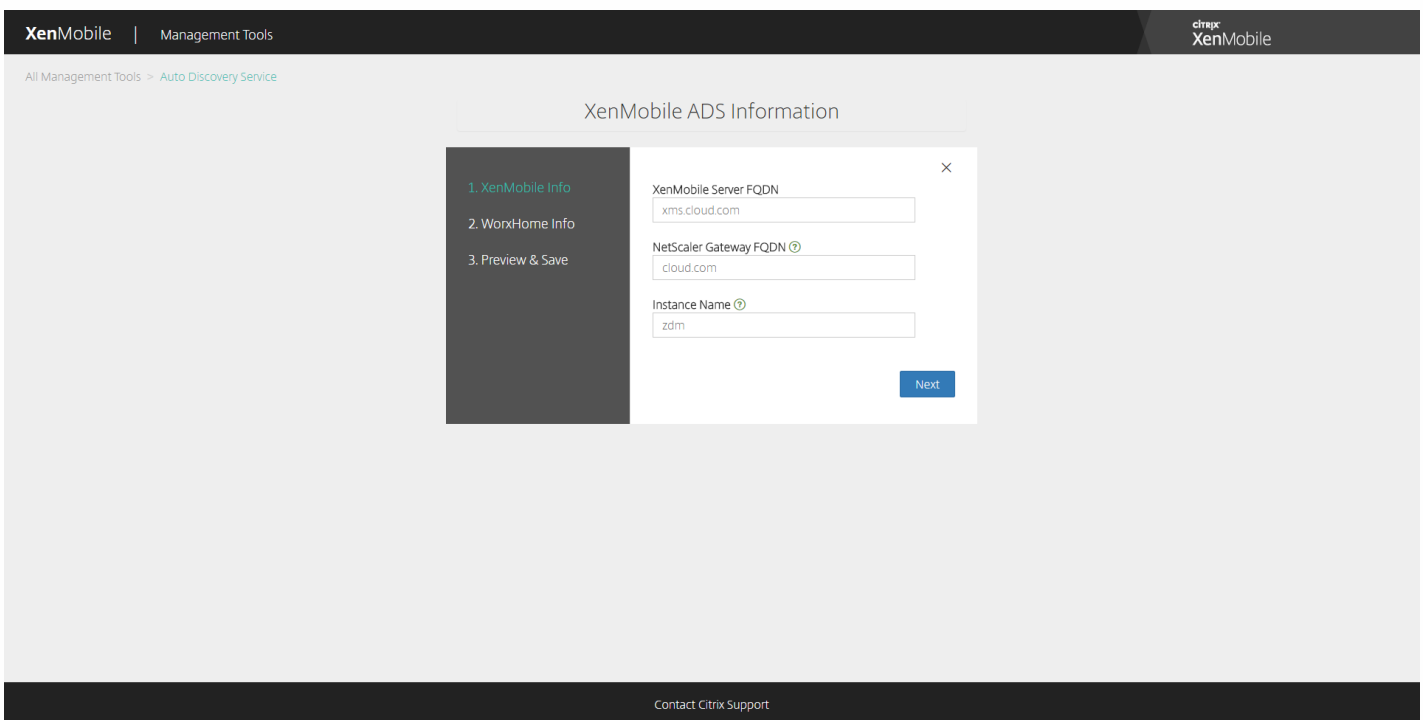


4. After you claim your domain, you can enter AutoDiscovery Service information. Right-click the domain record for which you want to request autodiscovery and then click **Add ADS**.

If your domain already has an AutoDiscovery record, please log a case with Citrix Technical Support to modify details as required.



5. Enter your **XenMobile Server FQDN**, **NetScaler Gateway FQDN**, and **Instance Name** and then click **Next**. If you are unsure, add a default instance of "zdm".



In the screenshot above, please note that Worx Home is now called Secure Hub.

6. Enter the following information for Secure Hub and then click **Next**.

a. **User ID Type**: Select the type of ID with which users sign on as either **E-mail address** or **UPN**.

**UPN** is used when the user's UPN (User Principal Name) is the same as their e-mail address. Both methods use the domain entered to find the server address. With **E-mail address** the user will be asked to enter their user name and password and with **UPN**, they will be asked to enter their password.

b. **HTTPS Port**: Enter the port used to access Secure Hub over HTTPS. Typically, this is port 443.

c. **iOS Enrollment Port**: Enter the port used to access Secure Hub for iOS enrollment. Typically, this is port 8443.

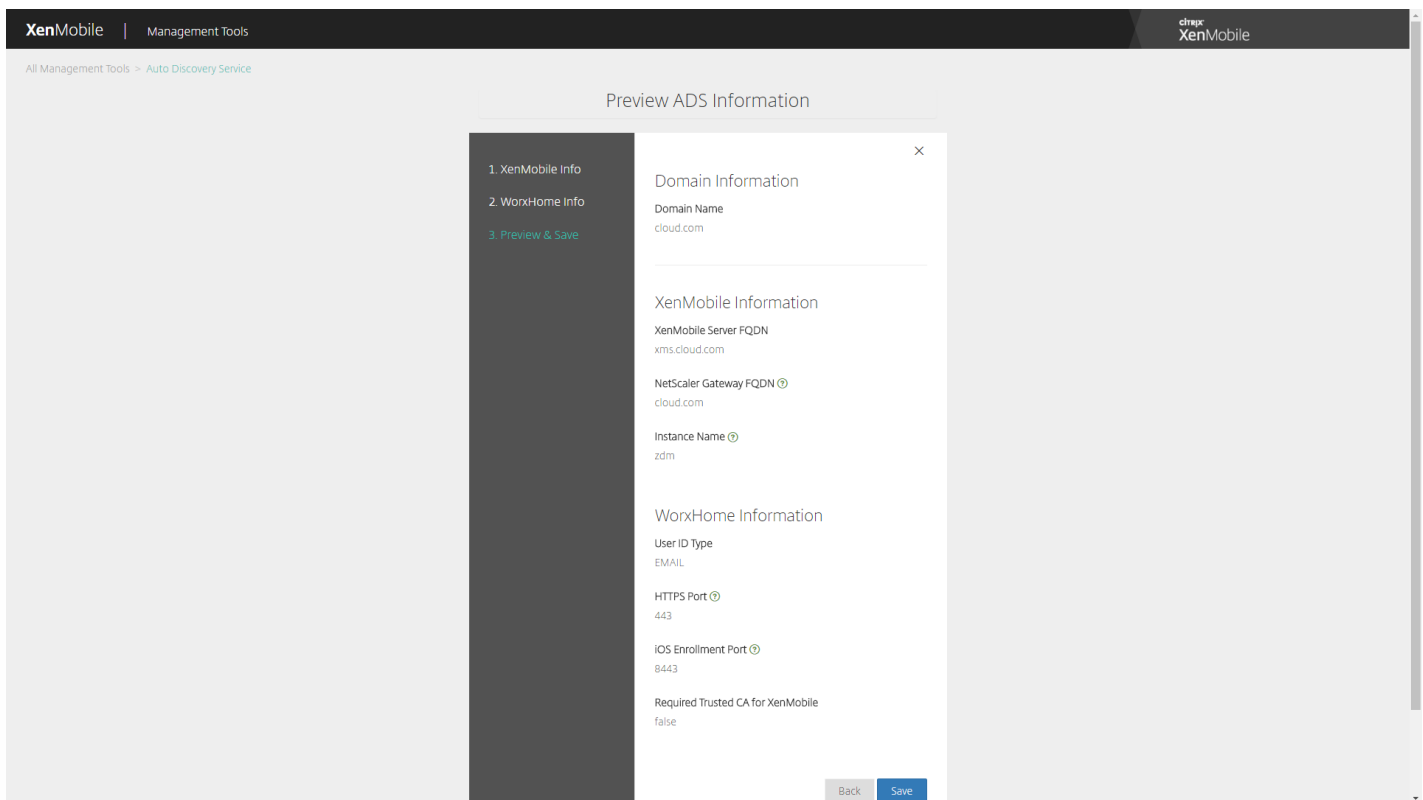
d. **Required Trusted CA for XenMobile**: Indicate whether a trusted certificate is required to access XenMobile or not. This option can be **OFF** or **ON**. Currently, the ability to upload a certificate for this feature does not exist. If you want to use this feature, you need to call Citrix Support, and have autodiscovery set up through them. To learn more about certificate pinning, see the section on certificate pinning in [Secure Hub](#) in the XenMobile Apps documentation. To read about the ports required for certificate pinning to work, see the support article on [XenMobile Port Requirements for ADS Connectivity](#).

The screenshot displays the 'WorxHome ADS Information' configuration window within the XenMobile Management Tools. The window is titled 'WorxHome ADS Information' and has a close button (X) in the top right corner. On the left side, there is a dark sidebar with three navigation items: '1. XenMobile Info', '2. WorxHome Info' (which is highlighted in green), and '3. Preview & Save'. The main content area of the window contains a form with the following elements: a 'User ID Type' dropdown menu currently showing 'E-mail address'; a 'HTTPS Port' text input field with the value '443'; an 'iOS Enrollment Port' text input field with the value '8443'; and a 'Required Trusted CA for XenMobile' section with a radio button set to 'OFF'. At the bottom right of the form are 'Back' and 'Next' buttons. The overall interface is clean and professional, with a dark header and footer.

In the screenshot above, please note that Worx Home is now called Secure Hub.

7. A summary page displays all the information you entered in the preceding steps. Verify that the data is correct then click **Save**.





In the screenshot above, please note that Worx Home is now called Secure Hub.

## Enable autodiscovery

Autodiscovery simplifies the enrollment process for users. They can use their network user names and Active Directory passwords to enroll their devices, rather than having to also enter details about the XenMobile server. Users enter their user name in user principal name (UPN) format; for example, user@mycompany.com.

To enable autodiscovery, you can access the Autodiscovery Service portal at <https://xenmobiletools.citrix.com>.

There may be some limited cases in which you need to contact Citrix Support to enable autodiscovery. To do so you can follow the procedures below to communicate your deployment information and, in the case of Windows devices, an SSL certificate to the Citrix Technical Support team. After Citrix receives this information, when users enroll their devices, the domain information is extracted and mapped to a server address. This information is maintained in the XenMobile database, so that the information is always accessible and available when users enroll.

1. If you are unable to enable autodiscovery using the Autodiscovery Service portal at <https://xenmobiletools.citrix.com>, open a Technical Support case using the [Citrix Support portal](#) and then provide the following information:

- The domain containing the accounts with which users will enroll.
- The XenMobile server fully qualified domain name (FQDN).
- The XenMobile instance name. By default, the instance name is zdm and is case-sensitive.
- User ID Type, which can be either UPN or Email. By default, the type is UPN.
- The port used for iOS enrollment if you changed the port number from the default port 8443.
- The port through which the XenMobile server accepts connections if you changed the port number from the default

port 443.

- Optionally, an email address for your XenMobile administrator.

2. If you plan to enroll Windows devices, do the following:

- Obtain a publicly signed, non-wildcard SSL certificate for `enterpriseenrollment.mycompany.com`, where `mycompany.com` is the domain containing the accounts with which users will enroll. Attach the SSL certificate in .pfx format and its password to your request.
- Create a canonical name (CNAME) record in your DNS and map the address of your SSL certificate (`enterpriseenrollment.mycompany.com`) to `autodisc.zc.zenprise.com`. When a Windows device user enrolls using a UPN, in addition to providing the details of your XenMobile server, the Citrix enrollment server instructs the device to request a valid certificate from the XenMobile server.

Your Technical Support case will be updated when your details and certificate, if applicable, have been added to the Citrix servers. At this point, users can start enrolling with autodiscovery.

Note: You can also use a multi-domain certificate if you want to enroll using more than one domain. The multi-domain certificate should have the following structure:

- A SubjectDN with a CN that specifies the primary domain it serves (for example, `enterpriseenrollment.mycompany1.com`).
- The appropriate SANs for the remaining domains (for example, `enterpriseenrollment.mycompany2.com`, `enterpriseenrollment.mycompany3.com`, and so on).

# Enroll devices

May 11, 2017

To manage user devices remotely and securely, user devices are enrolled in XenMobile. The XenMobile client software is installed on the user device and a user's identity is authenticated. Then, XenMobile and the user profile are installed. Next, in the XenMobile console, you can perform device management tasks. You can apply policies, deploy apps, push data to the device, and lock, wipe, and locate lost or stolen devices.

With XenMobile Service 10.5.1, Azure Active Directory enrollment is supported for iOS, Android, and Windows 10 devices. For more information about configuring Azure as your identity provider (IDP), see XenMobile integration with Azure Active Directory as IDP in the XenMobile Service [What's New](#) article.

**Note:** Before you can enroll iOS device users, you must request an APNs certificate. For details, see [Certificates](#).

To update configuration options for users and devices, go to the **Manage > Enrollment Invitations** page. For details, see [Send an enrollment invitation](#) in this article.

## Android devices

1. Go to the Google Play store on your Android device, download the Citrix Secure Hub app and then tap the app.
2. When prompted to install the app, click **Next** and then click **Install**.
3. After Secure Hub installs, tap **Open**.
4. Enter your corporate credentials, such as the organization's XenMobile server name, User Principal Name (UPN), or email address and then click **Next**.
5. In the **Activate device administrator** screen, tap **Activate**.
6. Enter your corporate password and then tap **Sign On**.
7. Depending on the way XenMobile is configured, you may be asked to create a Citrix PIN, which you can use to sign on to Secure Hub and other XenMobile-enabled apps, such as Secure Mail, Secure Web, ShareFile, and more. You will need to enter your Citrix PIN twice. On the **Create Citrix PIN** screen, enter a PIN.
8. Reenter the PIN. Secure Hub opens. You can then access the XenMobile Store to view the apps you can install on your Android device.
9. If you configured XenMobile to automatically push apps to users' devices after enrollment, messages appear prompting them to install the apps. In addition, policies that you configure in XenMobile are deployed to the device. Tap **Install** to install the apps.

### To unenroll and reenroll an Android device

Users can unenroll from within Secure Hub. When users unenroll by using the following procedure, the device still appears in the device inventory in the XenMobile console. You cannot take action on the device, however. You cannot track the device, and you cannot monitor the device compliance.

1. Tap to open the Secure Hub app.
2. Depending on whether you have a phone or a tablet, do the following:

On a phone:

- a. Swipe from the left of the screen to open a settings pane.
- b. Tap **Preferences**, tap **Accounts** and then tap **Delete Account**.

On a tablet:

- a. Tap the arrow next to your email address on the upper-right corner.
- b. Tap **Preferences**, tap **Accounts** and then tap **Delete Account**.
3. Tap **Re-Enroll**. A message appears to confirm you want to reenroll your device.
4. Tap **OK**.

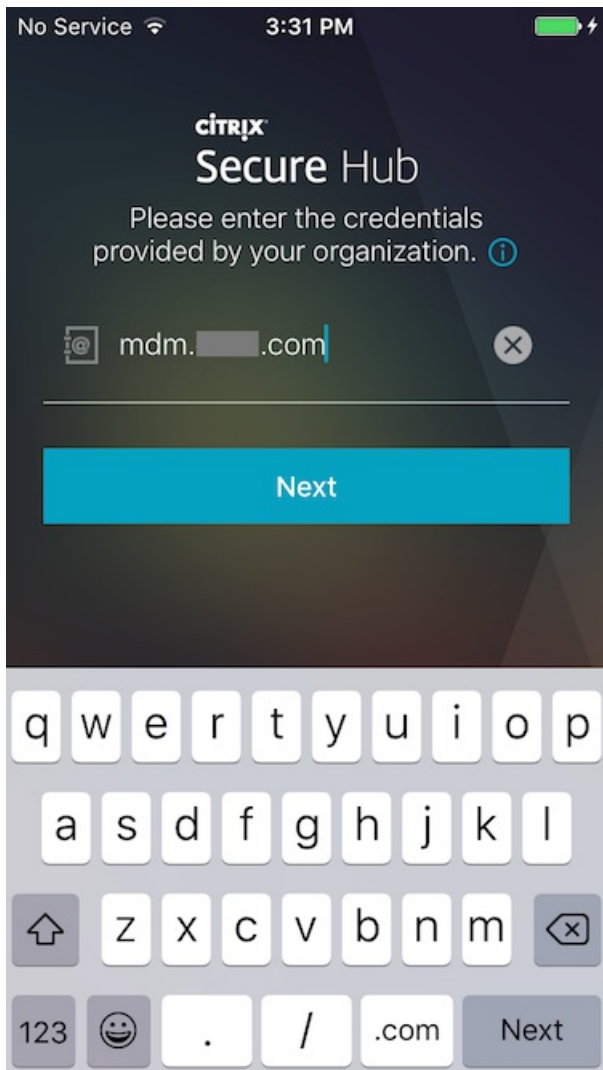
Your device is unenrolled.

5. Follow the on-screen instructions to reenroll your device.

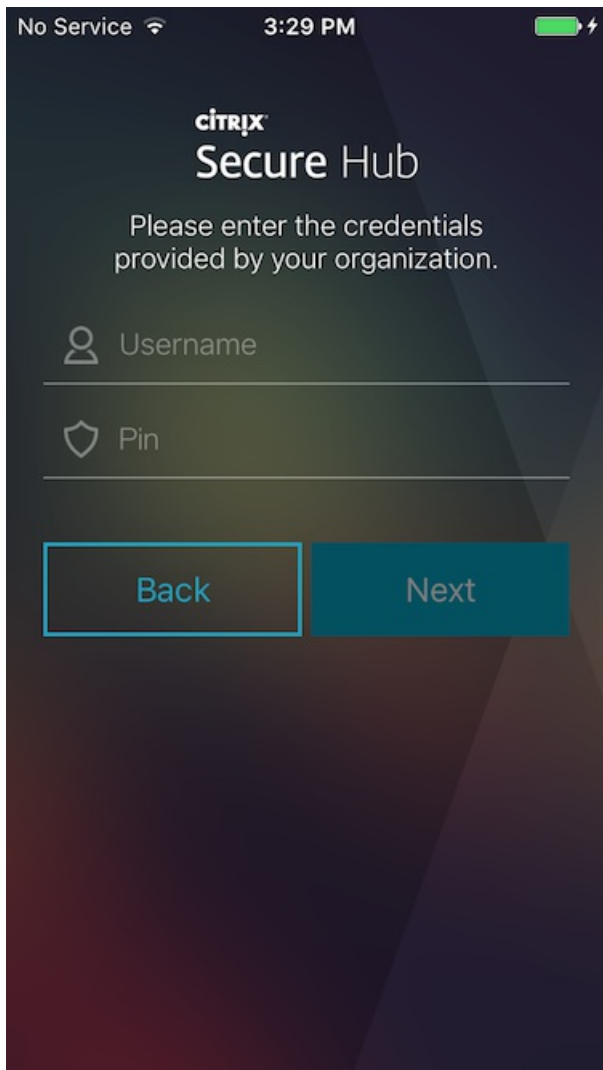
## iOS devices

1. Download the Secure Hub app from the Apple iTunes App Store on the device and then install the app on the device.
2. On the iOS device Home screen, tap the Secure Hub app.
3. When the Secure Hub app opens, enter the server address that your help desk provided.

(The screens presented might differ from these examples, depending on how XenMobile is configured.)



4. When prompted, enter your user name and password or PIN. Click **Next**.



5. When prompted to enroll, click **Yes, Enroll** and then enter your credentials when prompted.

**CITRIX**  
**Secure Hub**

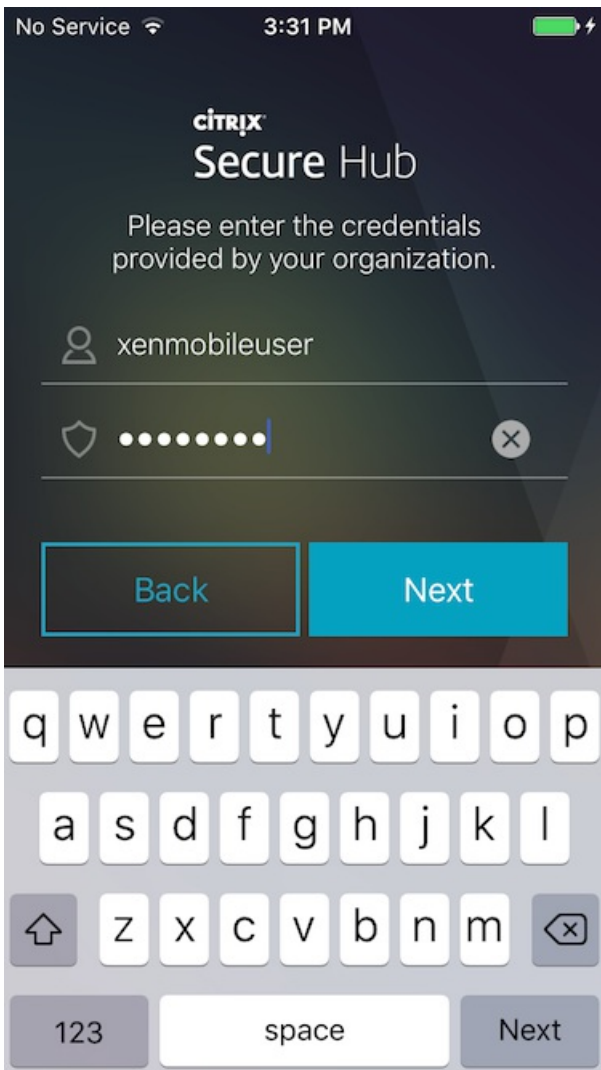
Please enter the credentials provided by your organization. ⓘ

### Enroll Your iPhone

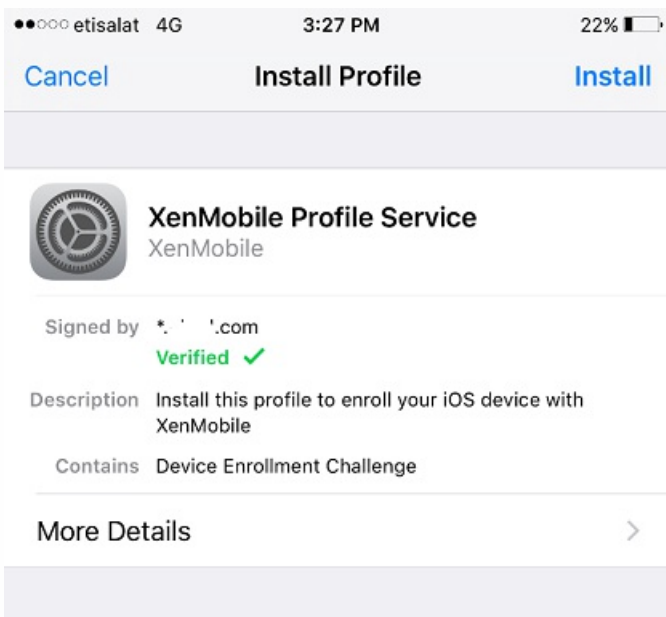
Enrolling secures your iPhone and your work apps. Do you want to enroll your device?

Yes, Enroll

No

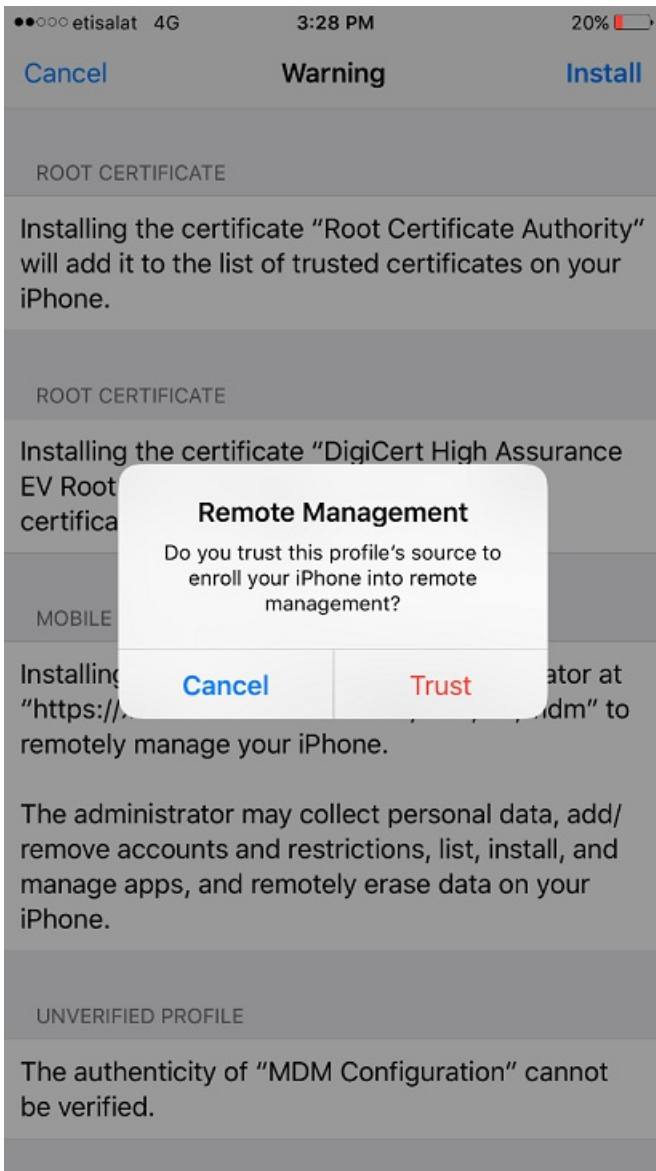


6. Tap **Install** to install the Citrix Profile Services.

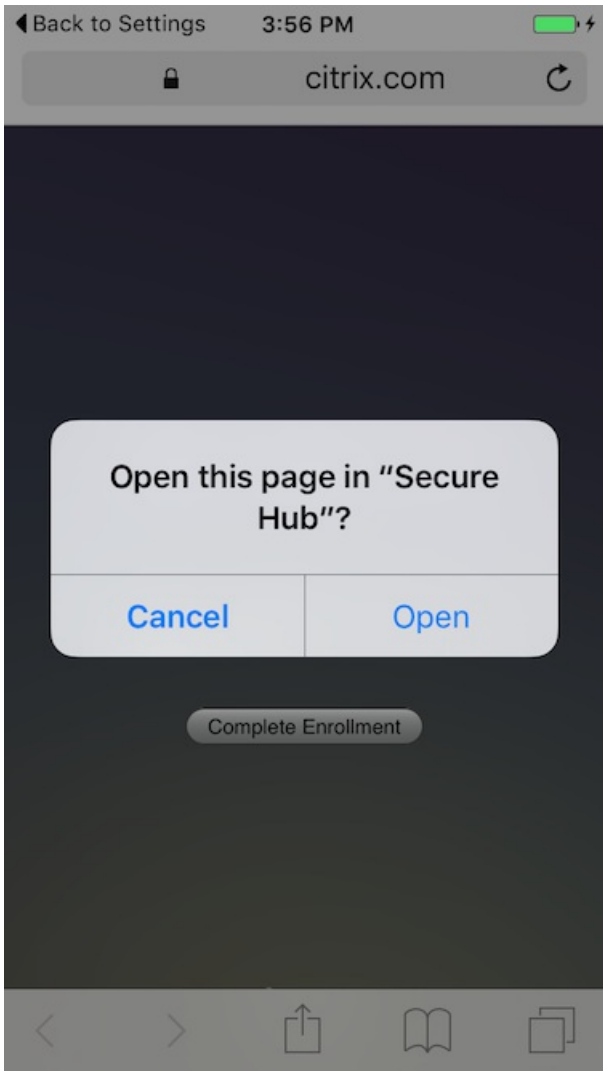


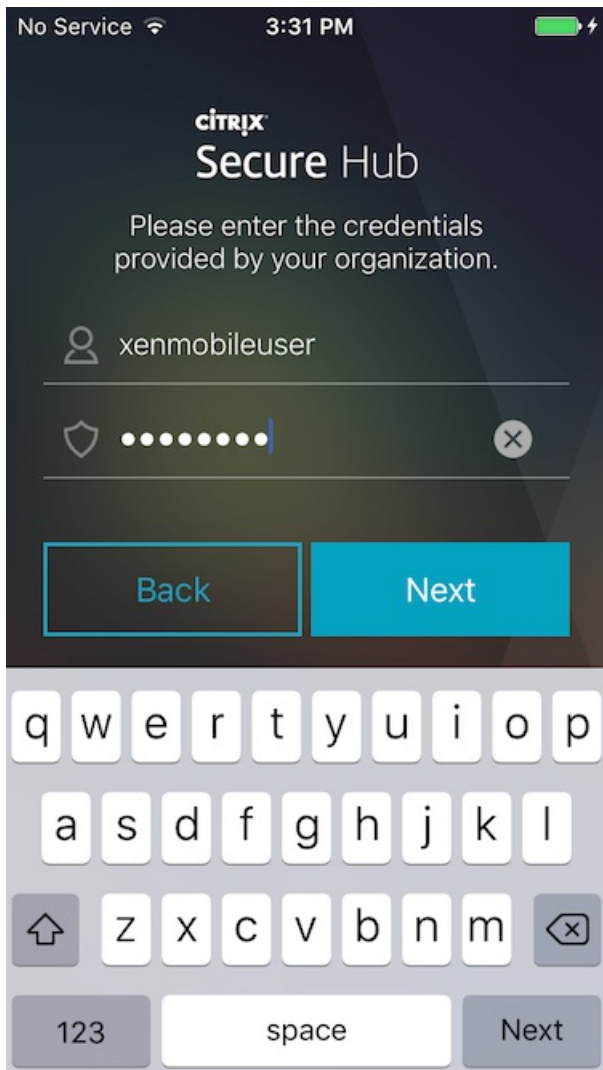


7. Tap **Trust**.



8. Tap **Open** and then enter your credentials.





## Mac OS X

You can enroll Macs in XenMobile that are running OS X. Mac users enroll over the air, directly from their devices.

The steps to enroll Macs are:

1. Optionally, set up Mac device policies in the XenMobile console. See [Device Policies](#) for more information about device policies. To find out which device policies you can configure for Macs, see [XenMobile Device Policies by Platform](#).
2. Send the enrollment link `https://serverFQDN:8443/zdm/macOS/otae`, which users open in Safari. Where
  - **serverFQDN** is the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server running XenMobile.
  - Port **8443** is the default secure port; if you have configured a different port, use that port instead of 8443.
  - **zdm** is the instance name used during server installation.

For more information about sending installation links, see [To send an installation link](#).

3. Users install certificates as necessary. Whether users see the prompt to install certificates depends on whether you configured a publicly trusted SSL certificate and a publicly trusted digital signing certificate for iOS and Mac OS. For more

information about certificates, see [Certificates](#).

4. Users sign on to their Macs.
5. The Mac device policies install.

You can now start managing Macs with XenMobile just as you manage mobile devices.

## Windows devices

Devices running Windows 10 enroll with Azure as a federated means of Active Directory authentication. You can join Windows 10 devices to Microsoft Azure AD in any of the following ways:

- Enroll in MDM as part of Azure AD Join out-of-the-box the first time the device is powered on.
- Enroll in MDM as part of Azure AD Join from the Windows Settings page after the device is configured.

You can enroll devices in XenMobile that are running the following Windows operating systems:

- Windows 10 phone and tablet
- Windows Phone 8.1

Users can enroll directly through their devices.

You must configure autodiscovery and the Windows discovery service for user enrollment to enable the management of supported Windows devices.

Before Windows device users can enroll by using Azure, you must configure the Microsoft Azure server settings in XenMobile. For details, see [Microsoft Azure Active Directory server settings](#).

### Note

In order for Windows devices to enroll, the SSL listener certificate must be a public certificate. Enrollment fails if you've uploaded a self-signed SSL certificate.

### To enroll Windows devices with self-discovery

To enable management of Windows devices, Citrix recommends you configure autodiscovery and the Windows discovery service. For details, see [To enable autodiscovery in XenMobile for user enrollment](#).

1. On the device, check for and install all available Windows Updates.
2. For Windows 10: In the charms menu, tap **Settings** and then tap **Accounts > Access work or school > Connect to work or school**. For Windows 8.1 phones: Tap **PC Settings > Network > Workplace**.
3. Enter your corporate email address and then tap **Continue** on Windows 10 or tap **Turn on device management** on Windows 8.1. To enroll as a local user, enter a nonexistent email address with the correct domain name (for example, foo@mydomain.com). This permits you to bypass a known Microsoft limitation where enrollment is performed by the built-in Device Management on Windows; in the **Connecting to a service** dialog box, enter the user name and password associated with the local user. The device automatically discovers a XenMobile server and starts the enrollment process.

4. Enter your password. Use the password associated with an account that is part of a user group in XenMobile.
5. For Windows 10: In the **Terms of use** dialog box, indicate that you agree to have your device managed and then tap **Accept**. For Windows 8.1: In the **Allow apps and services from IT admin** dialog box, indicate that you agree to have your device managed and then tap **Turn on**.

### To enroll Windows devices without self-discovery

It is possible to enroll Windows devices without autodiscovery. Citrix, however, recommends that you configure autodiscovery. Enrollment without autodiscovery results in a call to port 80 before connecting to the desired URL, so it is not considered best practice for production deployment. Citrix recommends that you use this process only in test environments and proof of concept deployment.

1. On the device, check for and install all available Windows Updates.
2. For Windows 10: In the charms menu, tap **Settings** and then tap **Accounts > Access work or school > Connect to work or school**. For Windows 8.1: Tap **PC Settings > Network > Workplace**.
3. Enter your corporate email address.
4. For Windows 10: If autodiscovery is not configured, an option appears where you can enter the server details, as described in step 5. For Windows 8.1: If **Automatically detect server address** is set to **on**, tap to turn the option **off**.
5. For Windows 10: In the **Enter server address** field, type the address:  
`https://beta.managedm.com:8443/zdm/wpe`.  
If a port other than 8443 is used for unauthenticated SSL connections, use that port number in place of 8443 in this address.

For Windows 8.1: Type the server address in the following format:

`https://serverfqdn:8443/serverInstance/Discovery.svc`.

If a port other than 8443 is used for unauthenticated SSL connections, use that port number in place of 8443 in this address.

6. Type your password.
7. For Windows 10: In the **Terms of use** dialog box, indicate that you agree to have your device managed and then tap **Accept**. For Windows 8.1: In the **Allow apps and services from IT admin** dialog box, indicate that you agree to have your device managed and then tap **Turn on**.

### To enroll Windows Phone devices

To enroll Windows Phone devices in XenMobile, users need their Active Directory or internal network email address, and password. If autodiscovery is not set up, users also need the server web address for the XenMobile server. Then, they follow this procedure on their devices to enroll.

**Note:** If you plan to deploy apps through the Windows Phone company store, before your users enroll, make sure that you have configured an [Enterprise Hub](#) policy (with a signed Secure Hub, Windows Phone app for each platform you support).

1. On the main screen of the Windows phone, tap the **Settings** icon.
  - For Windows 10: Depending on your version, either tap **Accounts > Access work or school > Connect to work or school** or tap **Accounts > Work access > Enroll in to device management**.
  - For Windows 8.1: Tap **PC Settings > Network > Workplace**, and then tap **Add Account**.
2. On the next screen, enter an email address and password and then tap **sign in**.

If autodiscovery is configured for your domain, the information requested in the next several steps is automatically populated. Proceed to Step 8.

If autodiscovery is not configured for your domain, continue with the next step. To enroll as a local user, enter a non-existent email address with the correct domain name (for example, foo@mydomain.com). This permits you to bypass a known Microsoft limitation; in the **Connecting to a service** dialog box, enter the user name and password associated with the local user.

3. On the next screen, type the web address of the XenMobile server, such as: https://<xenmobile\_server>:<portnumber>/<instancename>/wpe. For example, https://mycompany.mdm.com:8443/zdm/wpe. **Note:** The port number has to be adapted to your implementation, but should be the same port that you used for an iOS enrollment.

4. Enter the user name and domain if authentication is validated through a user name and domain and then tap **sign in**.

5. If a screen appears noting a problem with the certificate, the error is the result of using a self-signed certificate. If the server is trusted, tap **continue**. Otherwise, tap **Cancel**.

6. On Windows Phone 8.1, when the account is added, you have the option of selecting **Install company app**. If your administrator has configured a Company App store, select this option and then tap **done**. If you clear this option, you will need to re-enroll your device to receive the Company app store.

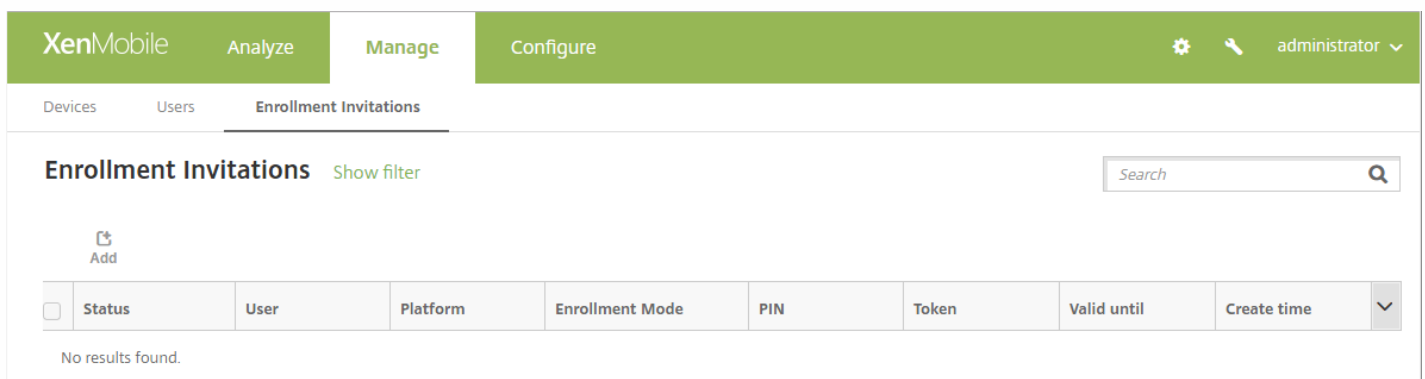
7. On Windows Phone 8.1, on the **Account Added** screen, tap **done**.

8. To force a connection to the server, tap the refresh icon. If the device does not manually connect to the server, XenMobile attempts to reconnect. XenMobile connects to the device every 3 minutes 5 successive times, then every 2 hours afterward. You can alter this connection rate in the **Windows WNS Heartbeat Interval** located in **Server properties**. Once enrollment is complete, Secure Hub enrolls in the background. No indicator appears when the installation is complete. Tap Secure Hub from the **All Apps** screen.

## Send an enrollment invitation

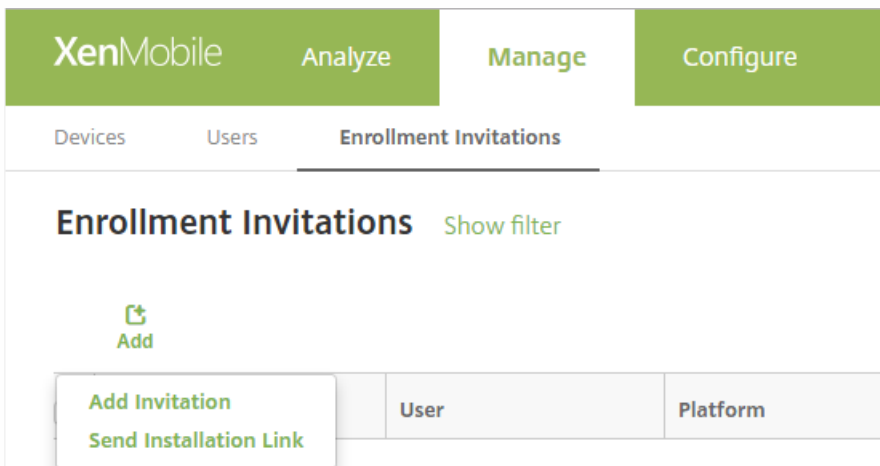
In the XenMobile console, you can send an enrollment invitation to users with iOS or Android devices. You can also send an installation link to users with iOS, Android, Windows, or Mac devices.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Manage > Enrollment Invitations**. The **Enrollment Invitations** page appears.



The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the following items: 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. On the right side of the navigation bar, there are icons for settings, a user profile, and the text 'administrator'. Below the navigation bar, there are three tabs: 'Devices', 'Users', and 'Enrollment Invitations'. The 'Enrollment Invitations' tab is selected. The main content area is titled 'Enrollment Invitations' and includes a 'Show filter' link and a search bar with the placeholder text 'Search'. Below the search bar, there is an 'Add' button with a plus icon. Underneath, there is a table with the following columns: 'Status', 'User', 'Platform', 'Enrollment Mode', 'PIN', 'Token', 'Valid until', and 'Create time'. The table is currently empty, and a message 'No results found.' is displayed below it.

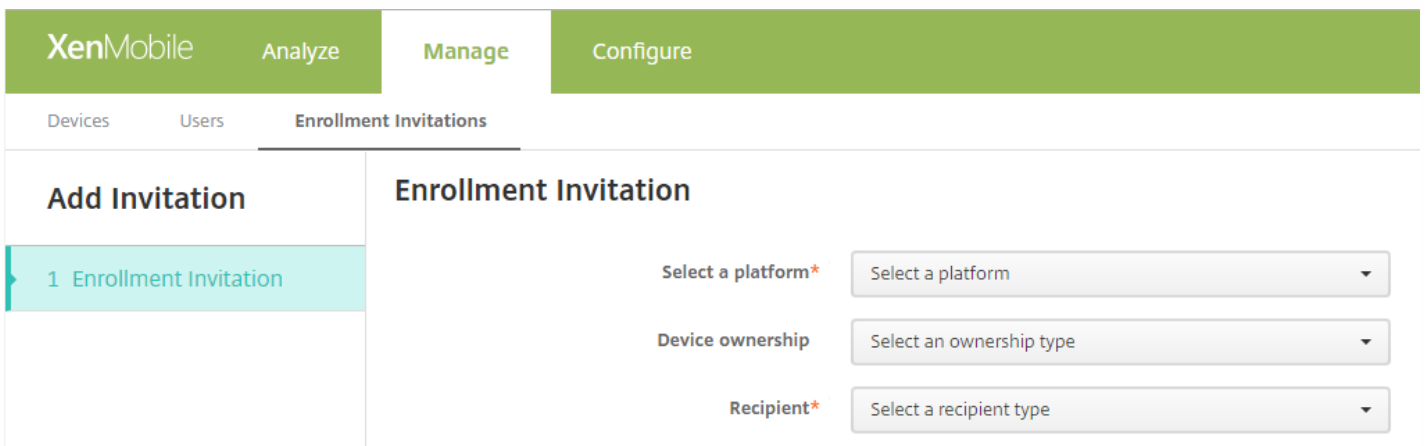
2. Click **Add**. A menu appears listing enrollment options.



- To send an enrollment invitation to a user or group, click **Add Invitation** and then see To send an invitation for the steps to configure this setting.
- To send an enrollment installation link to a list of recipients over SMTP or SMS, click **Send Installation Link** and then see To send an installation link for the steps to configure this setting.

### To send an invitation

1. Click **Add Invitation**. The **Enrollment Invitation** screen appears.



2. Configure these settings:

- **Select a platform:** In the list, click **iOS** or **Android**.
- **Device ownership:** In the list, click **Corporate** or **Employee**.
- **Recipient:** In the list, click **User** or **Group**.

Depending on the recipient you select, you see more settings to configure. For **User** settings, see To send an enrollment invitation to a user; for **Group** settings, see To send an enrollment invitation to a group.

### To send an enrollment invitation to a user

1. Configure these **User** settings:

- **User name:** Type a user name. The user must exist in the XenMobile server as a local user or as a user in Active Directory. If the user is local, make sure the user's email property is set so you can send that user notifications. If the user is in Active Directory, make sure LDAP is configured.
- **Device info:** In the list, click **Serial number**, **UDID**, or **IMEI**. After you choose an option, a field appears where you can type the corresponding value for the device.
- **Phone number:** Optionally, type the user's phone number.
- **Carrier:** In the list, click a carrier with which to associate the user's phone number.
- **Enrollment mode:** In the list, click how you want users to enroll. The default is **User name + Password**. Possible options are:
  - High Security
  - Invitation URL
  - Invitation URL + PIN
  - Invitation URL + Password
  - Two Factor
  - User name + PIN

**Note:** When you select any enrollment mode that includes a PIN, the **Template for enrollment PIN** field appears, where you click **Enrollment PIN**.

- **Template for agent download:** In the list, click the template to use for enrollment invitation. The choices for this option are based on the platform type. For example, **iOS Download Link** appears as an option if you selected **iOS** as a platform.
- **Template for enrollment URL:** In the list, click **Enrollment Invitation**.



- **Template for enrollment confirmation:** In the list, click **Enrollment Confirmation**.
- **Expire after:** This field is set when you configure the Enrollment Mode and indicates when the enrollment expires. For more information about configuring enrollment modes, see [To configure enrollment modes](#).
- **Maximum Attempts:** This field is set when you configure the **Enrollment Mode** and indicates the maximum number of times the enrollment process occurs. For more information about configuring enrollment modes, see [To configure enrollment modes](#).
- **Send invitation:** Select **ON** to send the invitation immediately, or click **OFF** to only add the invitation to the table on the **Enrollment Invitations** page.

2. Click **Save and Send** if you enabled **Send invitation**; otherwise, click **Save**. The invitation appears in the table on the **Enrollment Invitations** page.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Status	Mode	User name	Serial number	Device platform	Operating system version	Device model	Last access	Inactivity days	DEP account name	...
<input type="checkbox"/>		MDM MAM	XXXXXXXXXX net	XXXXXXXXXX	iOS	10.1.1	iPad	01/20/2017 02:00:09 pm	2 days	Default DEP Account	
<input type="checkbox"/>		MDM MAM	XXXXXXXXXX net	XXXXXXXXXX	iOS	10.1.1	iPhone	12/15/2016 05:14:24 pm	38 days		
<input type="checkbox"/>		MDM MAM	XXXXXXXXXX net	XXXXXXXXXX	iOS	10.1.1	iPhone	01/20/2017 02:51:41 pm	2 days		

## To send an enrollment invitation to a group

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for Enrollment Invitations. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Devices', 'Users', and 'Enrollment Invitations'. The 'Add Invitation' sidebar shows '1 Enrollment Invitation'. The main 'Enrollment Invitation' form contains the following settings:

- Select a platform\*: iOS
- Device ownership: Corporate
- Recipient\*: Group
- Domain\*: Select a domain
- Group\*: Select a group
- Enrollment mode\*: User name + Password
- Template for agent download: Select a template
- Template for enrollment URL: Select a template
- Template for enrollment confirmation: Select a template
- Expire after: Never
- Maximum Attempts: 0
- Send invitation: OFF

1. Configure these settings:

- **Domain:** In the list, click the domain from which to select the group.
- **Group:** In the list, click the group to receive the invitation.
- **Enrollment mode:** In the list, click how you want users in the group to enroll. The default is **User name + Password**.

Possible options are:

- High Security
- Invitation URL
- Invitation URL + PIN
- Invitation URL + Password
- Two Factor
- User name + PIN

**Note:** When you select any enrollment mode that includes a PIN, the **Template for enrollment PIN** field appears, where you click **Enrollment PIN**.

- **Template for agent download:** In the list, click the template to use for enrollment invitation. The choices for this option are based on the platform type. For example, **iOS Download Link** appears as an option if you selected **iOS** as a platform.
- **Template for enrollment URL:** In the list, click **Enrollment Invitation**.
- **Template for enrollment confirmation:** In the list, click **Enrollment Confirmation**.
- **Expire after:** This field is set when you configure the Enrollment Mode and indicates when the enrollment expires. For more information about configuring enrollment modes, see [To configure enrollment modes](#).
- **Maximum Attempts:** This field is set when you configure the Enrollment Mode and indicates the maximum number of times the enrollment process occurs. For more information about configuring enrollment modes, see [To configure enrollment modes](#).

- **Send invitation:** Select **ON** to send the invitation immediately, or click **OFF** to only add the invitation to the table on the **Enrollment Invitations** page.

2. Click **Save and Send** if you enabled **Send invitation**; otherwise, click **Save**. The invitation appears in the table on the **Enrollment Invitation** page.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface with the 'Manage' tab selected. Under 'Devices', there are three rows of device information:

Status	Mode	User name	Serial number	Device platform	Operating system version	Device model	Last access	Inactivity days	DEP account name
<input type="checkbox"/>	MDM MAM	[redacted] net	[redacted]	iOS	10.1.1	iPad	01/20/2017 02:00:09 pm	2 days	Default DEP Account
<input type="checkbox"/>	MDM MAM	[redacted] net	[redacted]	iOS	10.1.1	iPhone	12/15/2016 05:14:24 pm	38 days	
<input type="checkbox"/>	MDM MAM	[redacted] net	[redacted]	iOS	10.1.1	iPhone	01/20/2017 02:51:41 pm	2 days	

Showing 1 - 3 of 3 items    Items per page: 10

### To send an installation link

The screenshot shows the 'Send Installation Link' configuration page. It includes a 'Recipients' section with 'Email' and 'Phone number' fields, and a 'Channels' section with 'SMTP' and 'SMS' options. The 'SMTP' channel is selected and shows a warning message: "Channel cannot be activated until you define the SMTP server in the Notification Server section in Settings." The 'Sender' field is empty, the 'Subject' is 'Enroll Your Device', and the 'Message' is 'Enroll your device to gain access to company email and intranet. For instructions visit: S{zdmserver.hostPath}/enroll'. The 'SMS' channel is also shown with a similar warning and a message: 'Download XenMobile Agent: S{zdmserver.hostPath}/enroll'.

Before you can send an enrollment installation link, you must configure channels (SMTP or SMS) on the notification server from the **Settings** page. For details, see [Notifications](#).

## 1. Configure these settings:

- **Recipient:** For each recipient that you want to add, click Add and do the following:
  - **Email:** Type the recipient's email address. This field is required.
  - **Phone number:** Type the recipient's phone number. This field is required.
  - Click **Save**.

**Note:** To delete an existing recipient, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or click **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing recipient, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

- **Channels:** Select a channel to use for sending the enrollment installation link. You can send notifications over **SMTP** or **SMS**. These channels cannot be activated until you configure the server settings on the **Settings** page in **Notification Server**. For details, see [Notifications](#).
  - **SMTP:** Configure these optional settings. If you do not type anything in these fields, the default values specified in the notification template configured for the platform you selected are used:
    - **Sender:** Type an optional sender.
    - **Subject:** Type an optional subject for the message. For example, "Enroll your device."
    - **Message:** Type an optional message to be sent to the recipient. For example, "Enroll your device to gain access to organizational apps and email."
  - **SMS:** Configure this setting. If you do not type anything in this field, the default value specified in the notification template configured for the platform you selected is used:
    - **Message:** Type a message to be sent to the recipients. This field is required for SMS-based notification.

**Note:** In North America, SMS messages that exceed 160 characters are delivered in multiple messages.

## 2. Click **Send**.

### Note

If your environment leverages SAMAccountName, after users receive the invitation and click the link, they must edit the user name to complete the authentication. For example, they need to remove domainname in SAMAccountName@domainname.com.

# Device enrollment limit

Feb 27, 2017

You can limit the number of devices that a user can enroll under **Configure > Enrollment Profiles** in the XenMobile console, in ENT, MDM, and MAM server modes. Limitations can apply globally or per delivery group. You can create multiple enrollment profiles and associate them with different delivery groups.

If you do not set a limit, users can enroll an unlimited number of devices. This feature is supported only on iOS and Android devices.

## To configure a global device enrollment limit

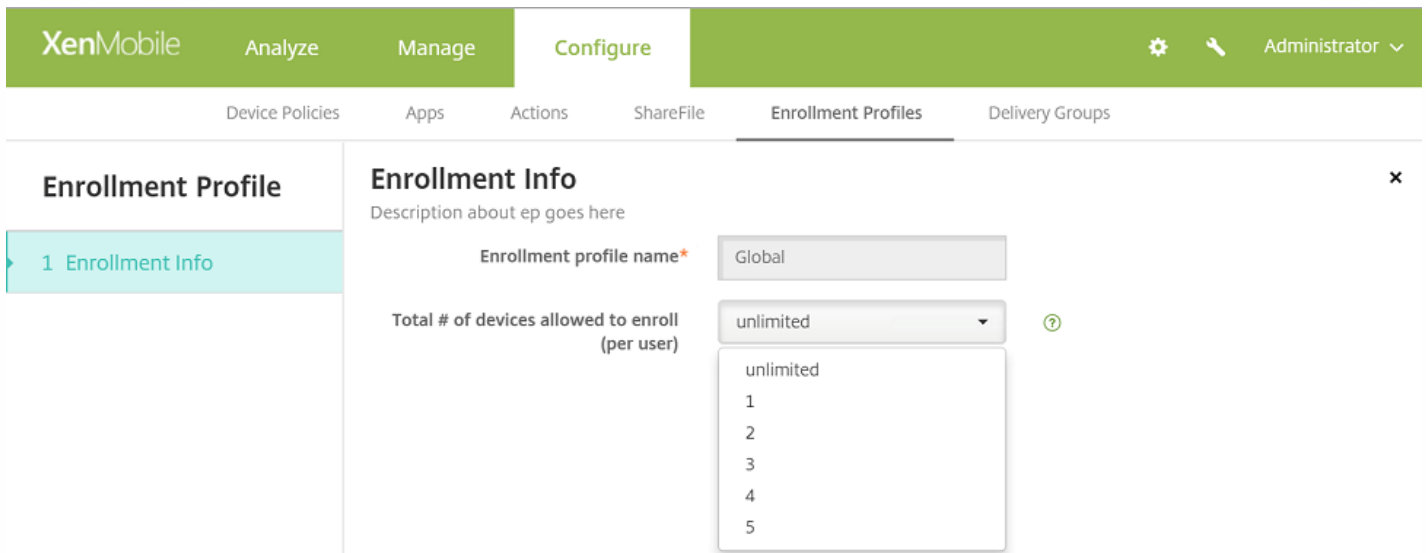
1. Go to **Configure > Enrollment Profiles**.
2. Click **Global** and select **Edit**.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Enrollment Profiles' tab is active. A search bar is located on the right. Below the search bar, there is an 'Add' button. A table lists the enrollment profiles:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Enrollment profile name	Created on	Updated on	Device limit
<input type="checkbox"/>	ep1	2/11/16 1:44 PM	2/11/16 1:44 PM	3
<input type="checkbox"/>	Global	2/8/16 11:21 AM	2/8/16 11:21 AM	unlimited

Below the table, it says 'Showing 1 - 2 of 2 items'. A context menu is open over the 'Global' row, showing 'Edit' and 'Reset' options.

The **Enrollment Info** screen appears with **Global** automatically filled in as the profile name. From here, you can select the total number of devices users are allowed to enroll. This limitation applies to all XenMobile enrollees.

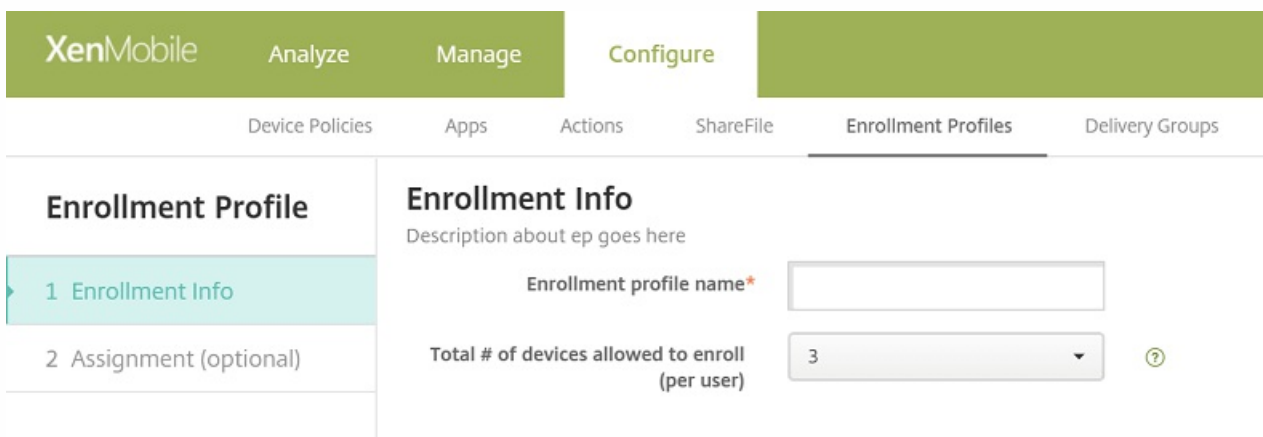


## To configure a delivery group device enrollment limit

1. Go to **Configure > Enrollment Profiles > Add**.

The **Enrollment Info** screen appears.

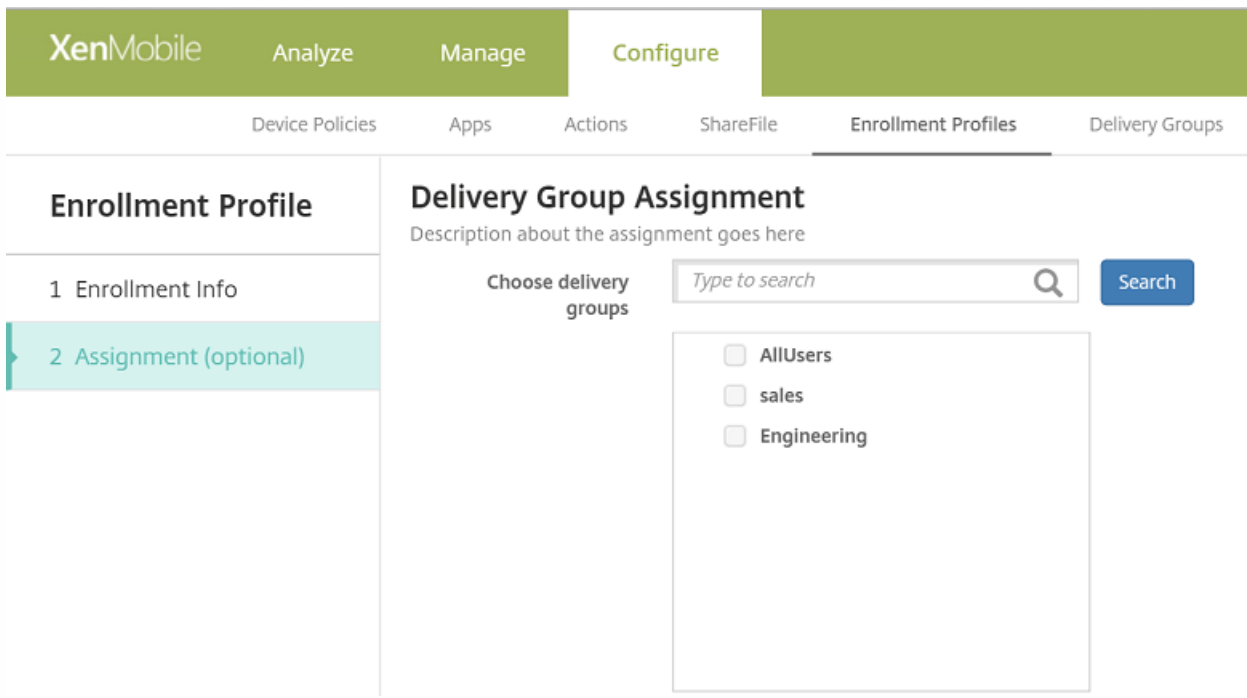
2. Enter a name for the new enrollment profile and then select the number of devices that members with this profile are allowed to enroll.



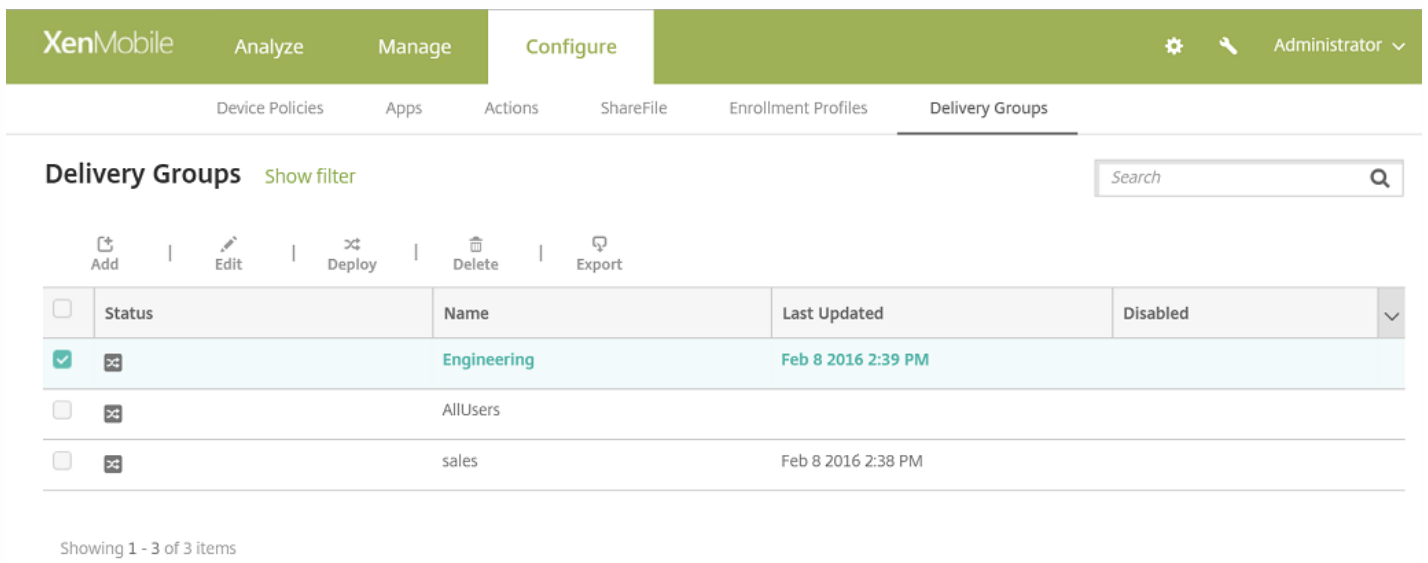
3. Click **Next**.

The **Delivery Group Assignment** screen appears.

4. Select the delivery groups to which the device enrollment limit will apply and then click **Save**.



If later you want to change the enrollment profile for a delivery group, go to **Configure > Delivery Groups**. Select the group you want and then click **Edit**.



The **Enrollment Profile** screen appears.

5. From this screen, select the enrollment profile that you want to apply to this delivery group and then click **Next** to view and save your changes.

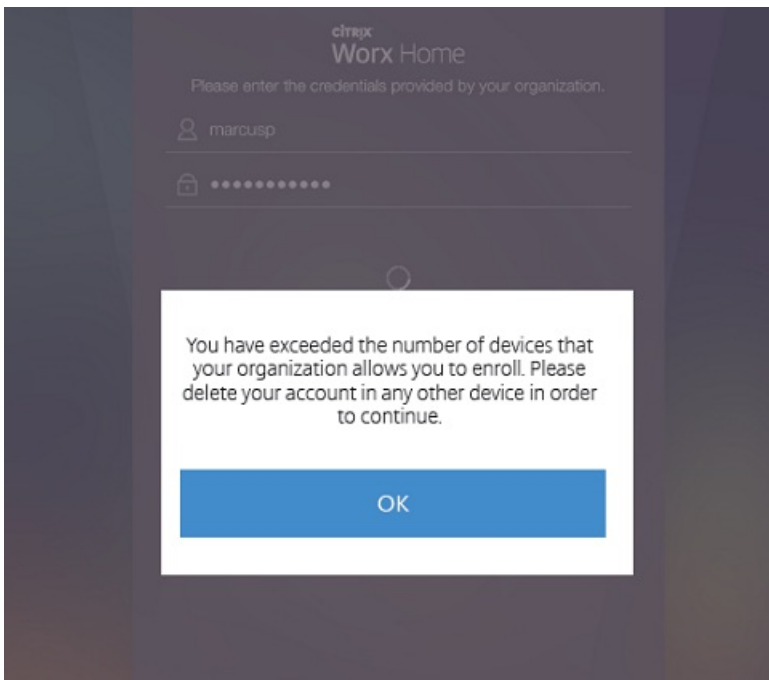
The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface with the 'Configure' tab selected. The navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', 'Configure', and 'Administrator'. Below the navigation bar, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Delivery Groups' tab is active, and the 'Enrollment Profile' sub-tab is selected. On the left, a sidebar lists the steps for configuring a delivery group: 1 Delivery Group Info, 2 User, 3 Resource (optional), Policies, Apps, Actions, ShareFile, Enrollment Profile (highlighted), and 4 Summary. The main content area is titled 'Enrollment Profile' and contains the instruction: 'Select the enrollment profile that you want the users in this delivery group to see'. Below this, there are three radio button options: 'ep1', 'ep2', and 'Global' (which is selected). At the bottom right of the main content area, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

## User experience with a device enrollment limit

When you set the device enrollment limit and users try to enroll a new device, they follow these steps:

1. Sign on to Secure Hub.
2. Enter a server address to enroll.
3. Enter credentials.
4. If the device limit is reached, an error message appears that tells the user that the device registration is exceeded and that they should contact an administrator.





The Secure Hub enrollment screen appears again.

# Shared devices

Feb 27, 2017

XenMobile lets you configure devices that multiple users can share. The shared devices feature lets, for example, clinicians in hospitals use any nearby device to access apps and data rather than having to carry around a specific device. You may also want shift workers in fields like law enforcement, retail, and manufacturing to share devices to reduce equipment costs.

## Key Points About Shared Devices

### MDM mode

- Available on both iOS and Android tablets and phones. Basic device enrollment program (DEP) enrollment is not supported for a XenMobile Enterprise shared device. You must use an authorized DEP to enroll a shared device in this mode.
- Client certificate authentication, Citrix PIN, Touch ID, User Entropy, and two-factor authentication are not supported.

### MDM+MAM mode

- Available only on iOS and Android tablets.
- Supported on XenMobile 10.3.x and later.
- Only Active Directory username and password authentication is supported.
- Client certificate authentication, Worx PIN, Touch ID, User Entropy, and two-factor authentication are not supported.
- MAM-only mode is not supported. The devices must enroll in MDM.
- Only Secure Mail, Secure Web, and the ShareFile mobile app are supported. HDX apps are not supported.
- Active Directory users are the only supported users; local users and groups are not supported
- Re-enrollment is required for existing MDM-only shared devices to update to MDM+MAM mode.
- Users can share XenMobile apps and MDX-wrapped apps only; they cannot share native apps on the devices.
- Once downloaded during first-time enrollment, XenMobile Apps are not downloaded again each time a new user signs on to the device. The new user can pick up the device, sign on, and get going.
- On Android, to isolate each user's data for security purposes, the **Disallow rooted devices** policy in the XenMobile console should be **On**.

## Prerequisites for Enrolling Shared Devices

Before you can enroll shared devices, you must do the following:

- Create a shared device enrollment user role. See [Configuring Roles with RBAC](#).
- Create a shared device user. See [To add, edit, or delete local users in XenMobile](#).
- Create a delivery group that contains the base policies, apps, and actions that you want to be applied to the shared device enrollment user. See [Managing Delivery Groups](#).

### Pre-requisites for MDM+MAM Mode

1. Create an Active Directory group named something like **Shared Device Enrollers**.
2. Add to this group Active Directory users who will enroll shared devices . If you want a new account for this purpose,

create a new Active Directory user (for example, **sdenroll**) and add that user to the Active Directory group.

# Shared Device Requirements

For the best user experience, including silent installation and removal of apps, Citrix recommends configuring shared devices on the following platforms:

- iOS 9 and 10
- Android M
- Android 5.x
- Android 4.4.x
- Android 4.0.x (MDM-only mode)

## Configuring a Shared Device

Follow these steps to configure a shared device.

1. From the XenMobile console, click the gear in the upper-right corner. The Settings page appears.
2. Click **Role-Based Access Control**, then click **Add**. The **Add Role** screen is displayed.
3. Create a shared-device enrollment user role named **Shared Device Enrollment User** with **Shared devices enroller** permissions under **Authorized Access**. Be sure to expand **Devices** in **Console features** and then select **Selective Wipe device**. This setting ensures that the apps and policies provisioned through the shared devices enroller account are deleted through Secure Hub, when the device is un-enrolled.

For **Apply Permissions**, keep the default setting, **To all user groups**, or assign permissions to specific Active Directory user groups with the **To specific user groups**.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Settings > Role-Based Access Control > Add Role

**Add Role**

1 Role Info

2 Assignment

**Role Info**

RBAC name\*

RBAC template Select a template

Authorized access

- Admin console access
- Self Help Portal access
- Shared devices enroller
- Remote Support access
- Public api access

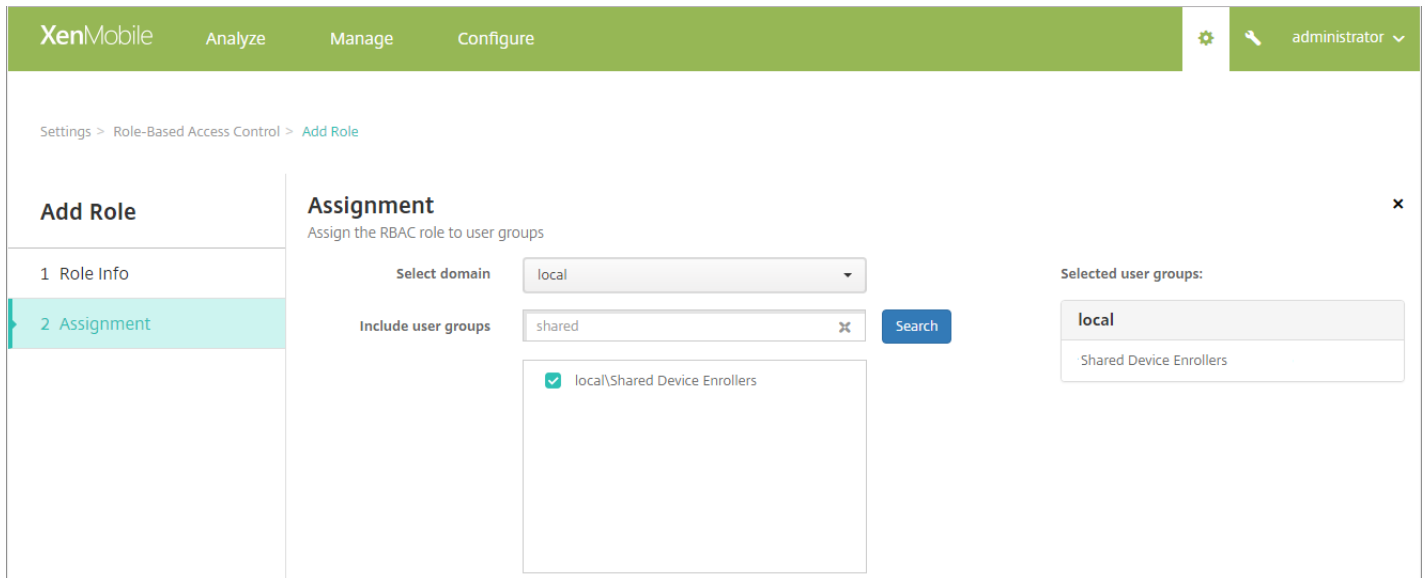
Console features

- Dashboard
- Reporting
- Devices
  - Full Wipe device
  - Clear Restriction
  - Selective Wipe device
  - View locations
  - Lock device
  - Unlock device

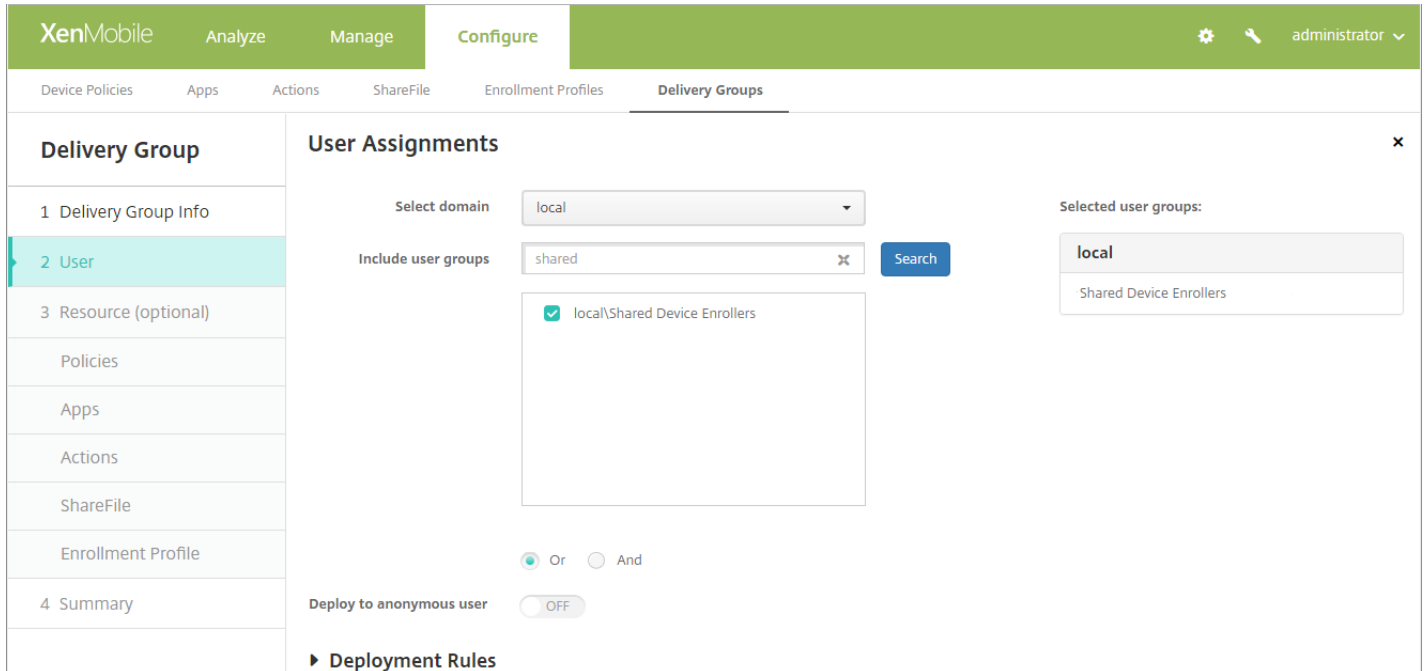
Apply permissions

- To all user groups
- To specific user groups

Click **Next** to move to the **Assignment** screen. Assign the shared-device enrollment role you just created to the Active Directory group you created for shared device enrollment users in Step 1 under Pre-requisites. In the image below, **citrix.lab** is the Active Directory domain and **Shared Device Enrollers** is the Active Directory group.



4. Create a delivery group that contains the base policies, apps, and actions that you want to apply to the device when a user is not signed on, then associate that delivery group with the shared device enrollment user Active Directory group.



5. Install Secure Hub on the shared device and enroll it in XenMobile using the shared device enrollment user account. You can now view and manage the device through the XenMobile console. For more information, see [Enrolling Devices](#).

6. To apply different policies or to provide additional apps for authenticated users, you must create a delivery group

associated with those users and deployed to shared devices only. When creating the groups, configure deployment rules to ensure that the packages are deployed to shared devices. For more information, see [Configuring Deployment Rules](#).

7. To stop sharing the device, perform a selective wipe to remove the shared device enrollment user account from the device, along with any apps and policies deployed to it.

## Shared Device User Experience

### MDM mode

Users see only the resources available to them, and they have the same experience on every shared device. The shared device enrollment policies and apps always remain on the device. When a user who isn't enrolled in shared devices signs on to Secure Hub, that person's policies and apps are deployed to the device. When that user signs off, the policies and apps that differ from those of the shared device enrollment are removed, while the shared-device enrollment resources remain intact.

### MDM+MAM mode

Secure Mail and Secure Web are deployed to the device when enrolled by the shared device enrollment user. User data is maintained securely on the device. The data is not exposed to other users when they sign on to Secure Mail or Secure Web.

Only one user at a time can sign on to Secure Hub. The previous user must sign off before the next user can sign on. For security reasons, Secure Hub does not store user credentials on shared devices, so users must enter their credentials each time they sign on. To ensure that a new user cannot access resources intended for the previous user, Secure Hub does not allow new users to sign on while the policies, apps, and data associated with the previous user are being removed.

Shared device enrollment doesn't change the process for upgrading apps. You can push upgrades to shared-device users as always, and shared-device users can upgrade apps right on their devices.

## Recommended Secure Mail policies

- For the best Secure Mail performance, set **Max sync period** based on the number of users that will share the device. Allowing unlimited sync is not recommended.

Number of users sharing device	Recommended max sync period
21 to 25	1 week or less
6 to 20	2 weeks or less
5 or fewer	1 month or less

- Block **Enable contact export** to avoid exposing a user's contacts to other users who share the device.

- On iOS, only the following settings can be set per user. All other settings will be common across users who share the device:

Notifications

Signature

Out of Office

Sync Mail Period

S/MIME

Check Spelling

# Android at Work

Feb 27, 2017

Android at Work (formerly called Android for Work) is a secure workspace available on Android devices running Android 5.0 and later. The workspace isolates business accounts, apps, and data from personal accounts, apps, and data. In XenMobile, you manage both bring your own device (BYOD) and company-owned Android devices by having user create a separate work profile on their devices. By combining hardware encryption and the policies you deploy, you securely separate the corporate and personal areas on a device. You can remotely manage or wipe all corporate policies, apps, and data without affecting the personal area of the user. For more information about supported Android devices, see the [Google Android Enterprise](#) website.

You use Google Play to add, buy, and approve apps for deployment to the Android at Work workspace on a device. You can use Google Play to deploy your private Android apps, in addition to public and third-party apps. When you add a paid public app store app to XenMobile for an Android at Work, you can review the Bulk Purchase licensing status. That status is the total number of licenses available, the number now in use, and the email address of each user consuming the licenses. For details about adding an app to XenMobile, see [To add a public app store app to XenMobile](#).

Requirements for Android at Work:

- A publicly accessible domain
- A Google administrator account
- Devices that have managed profile support and that are running Android 5.0+ Lollipop
- A Google account that has Google Play installed
- A Work profile set up on the device

Before you can set Android at Work app restrictions, you must do the following:

- Complete Android at Work setup tasks on Google.
- Create a set of Google Play Credentials.
- Configure Android at Work server settings.
- Create at least one Android at Work device policy.
- Add, buy, and approve Android at Work apps in the Google Play app store.

You can use the following links when managing Android at Work:

- Google admin console: <https://admin.google.com/AdminHome>
- Google Play admin console: <https://play.google.com/work/apps>
- Google Play Publish for private channel and self-hosted applications: <https://play.google.com/apps/publish>
- Google Developer Console for creating a service account: <https://console.developers.google.com>

## Android at Work Prerequisites

Before you can administer Android in XenMobile, you must

- Create an Android at Work account.
- Set up a service account.
- Download an Android for Work certificate.
- Enable and authorize the Google Admin SDK and MDM APIs.
- Authorize your service account to use the directory and Google Play.
- Obtain a binding token.

The following sections describe how to do each of these tasks. After you have completed these tasks, you can create a set of Google Play Credentials, configure Android settings, and manage Android apps in XenMobile. For details about creating a set of credentials, see [Google Play Credentials](#).

## Create an Android at Work Account

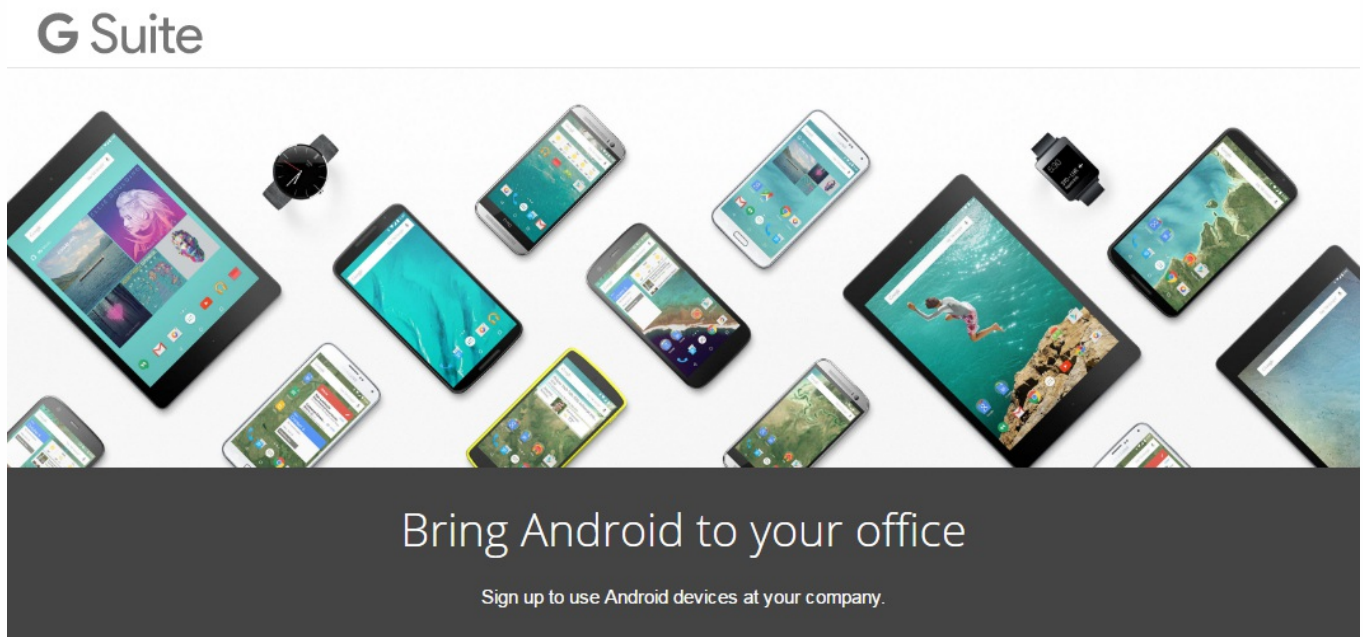
Meet the following prerequisites before you can set up an Android at Work account:

- Own a domain name; for example, example.com.
- Let Google verify that you own the domain.
- Enable and administer Android at Work through an enterprise mobility management (EMM) provider, such as XenMobile 10.1 or later.

If you have already verified your domain name with Google, you can skip to this step: [Set up an Android at Work service account and download an Android at Work certificate](#).

1. Navigate to [https://www.google.com/a/signup/?enterprise\\_product=ANDROID\\_WORK](https://www.google.com/a/signup/?enterprise_product=ANDROID_WORK).

The following page displays where you type your administrator and company information.



## ① About you

Name

Current work email

Doesn't have to be an official business email.

Phone

2. Type your administrator user information.

## ① About you

Name

 ✓  ✓

Current work email

Doesn't have to be an official business email.

 ✓

Phone

 ✓



2. Type your company information, in addition to your administrator account information.

2 About your business

Business name  
EXAMPLE CORP ✓

Business domain address You'll need to verify that you own this domain.  
example.com ✓

Number of employees Country/Region  
1 employee United States

3 Your Google admin account Why do I need this?

Username Create an account to manage Android for Work  
justa.user ✓ @ example.com

Create a password 8-character minimum; case sensitive  
..... ✓  
..... ✓

The first step in the process is complete and you see the following page.



# Bring Android to your office

With Android, you can manage your company's devices and keep them secure.



Create your domain admin account



Verify domain ownership

Verify you're the owner of your company's domain and protect its security.

START



Connect with your provider

Allow an enterprise mobility management (EMM) provider to keep your organization's devices secure.

## Verify domain ownership


Allow Google to verify your domain in one of the following ways:

- Add a TXT or CNAME record to the website of your domain host.
- Upload an HTML file to the web server of your domain.
- Add a <meta> tag to your home page. Google recommends the first method. This article does not cover the steps to verify your domain ownership, but you can find the information you need here: <https://support.google.com/a/answer/6095407/>.

1. Click **Start** to begin the verification of your domain.

The **Verify domain ownership** page displays. Follow the instructions on the page to verify your domain.

2. Click **Verify**.




## Verify domain ownership

Before you can use Google Apps with domain **example.com**, we need to contact your domain host to verify that you own it. Doing this helps ensure that no one can pose as you on Google Apps and send email from your domain. [Learn more](#)

After your domain is verified, we will set up Google Apps email for your users on **example.com**. This will automatically re-route your emails to Google Apps. [Learn more](#)

We have detected that **example.com** is hosted at **GoDaddy.com**. If you're having trouble, try to [verify your domain here](#).

**Note:** Before you route email to Google Apps, make sure that you create a user on Google Apps for each person receiving mail at **example.com**.



## Verify domain ownership

### Verification checklist


Follow these steps to help Google verify that you own the domain **example.com**.

[Learn more](#)

- I have successfully logged in.
- I have opened the control panel for my domain.
- I have created the CNAME record.
- I have saved the CNAME record.

[VERIFY](#)

3. Google verifies your domain ownership.



## Verify domain ownership

### Verifying your domain ownership

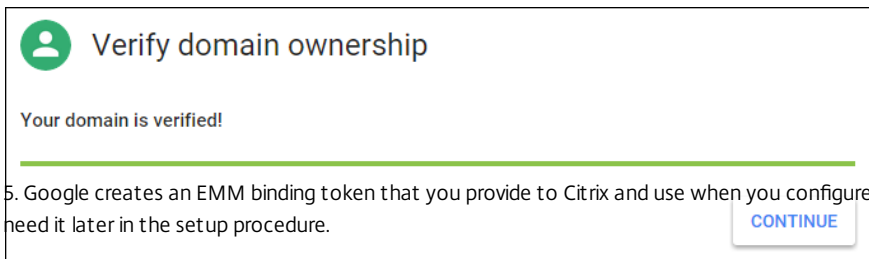
The domain host is updating your information. This might take a bit—you can close this window and come back to [admin.google.com](#) later without interrupting the process.

[Learn more](#)

Estimated time remaining: 5 minutes

---

4. After successful verification, the following page displays. Click **Continue**.

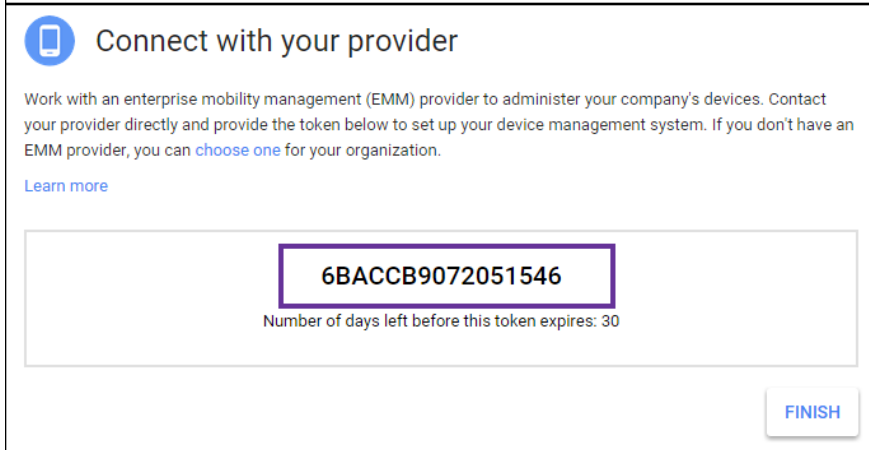


**Verify domain ownership**

Your domain is verified!

5. Google creates an EMM binding token that you provide to Citrix and use when you configure Android at Work settings. Copy and save the token; you need it later in the setup procedure.

[CONTINUE](#)



**Connect with your provider**

Work with an enterprise mobility management (EMM) provider to administer your company's devices. Contact your provider directly and provide the token below to set up your device management system. If you don't have an EMM provider, you can [choose one](#) for your organization.

[Learn more](#)

**6BACCB9072051546**

Number of days left before this token expires: 30

[FINISH](#)

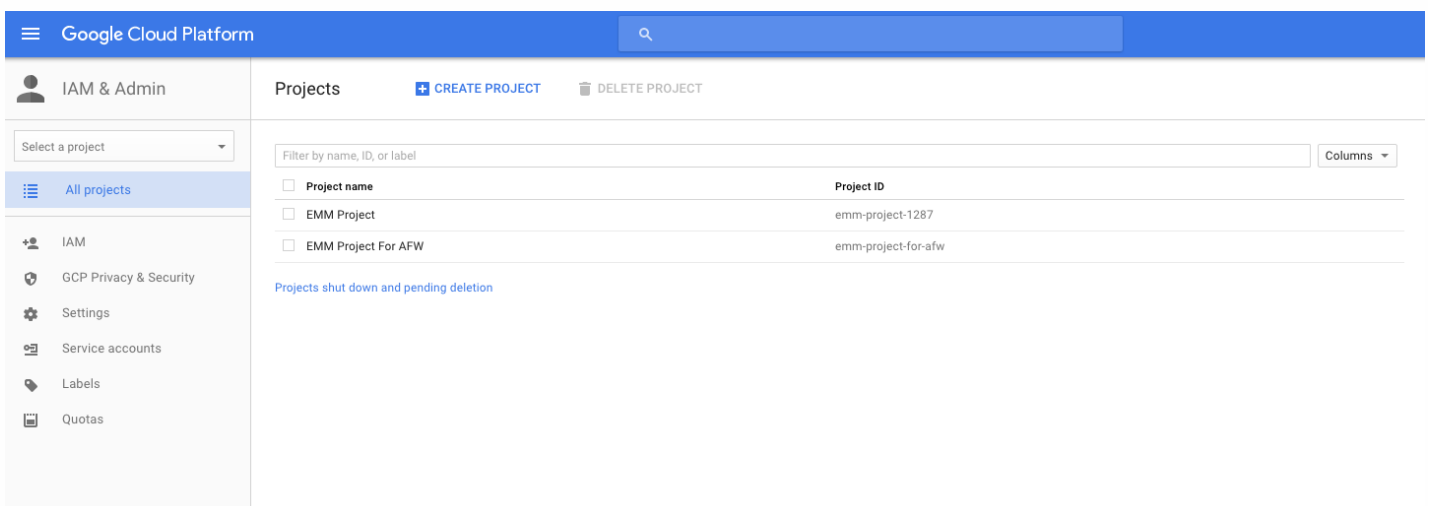
6. Click **Finish** to complete setting up Android at Work. A page appears, indicating that you've successfully verified your domain.

After you create an Android at Work service account, you can sign in to the Google Admin console to manage your mobility management settings.

## Set up an Android at Work service account and download an Android at Work certificate

To allow XenMobile to contact Google Play and Directory services, you must create a service account using the Google Project portal for developers. This service account is used for server-to-server communication between XenMobile and Google services for Android. For more information about the authentication protocol being used, go to <https://developers.google.com/identity/protocols/OAuth2ServiceAccount>.

1. In a web browser, go to <https://console.cloud.google.com/project> and sign in with your Google administrator credentials
2. In the **Projects** list, click **Create Project**.



Google Cloud Platform

IAM & Admin

Projects [+ CREATE PROJECT](#) [DELETE PROJECT](#)

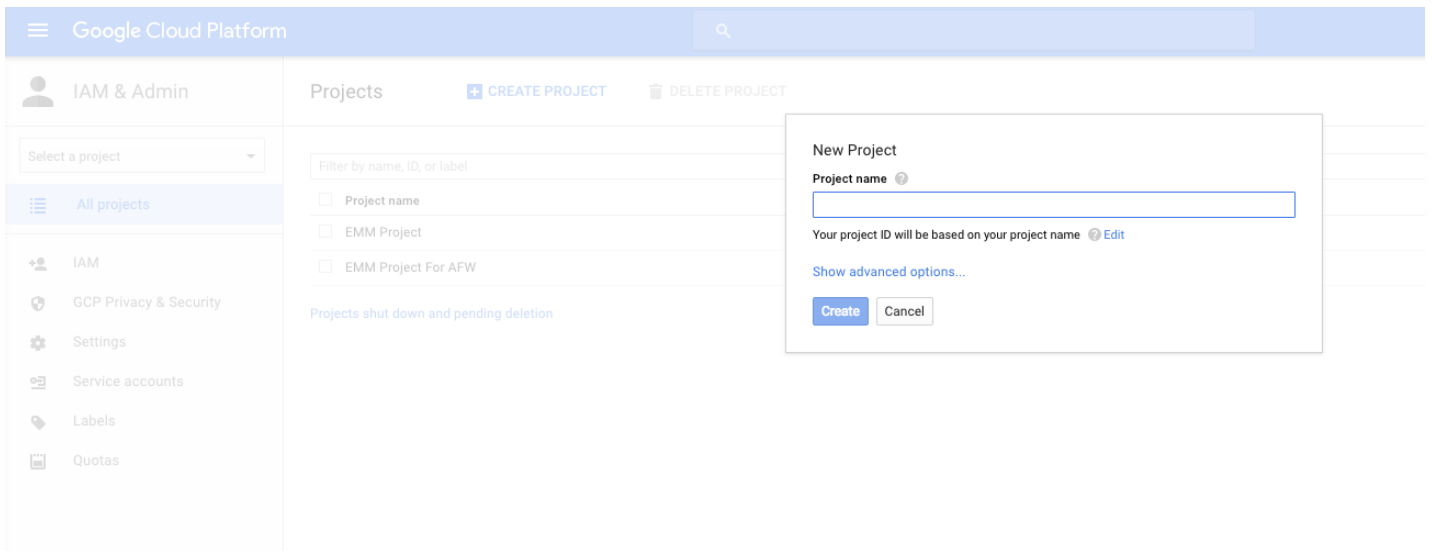
Select a project

Filter by name, ID, or label [Columns](#)

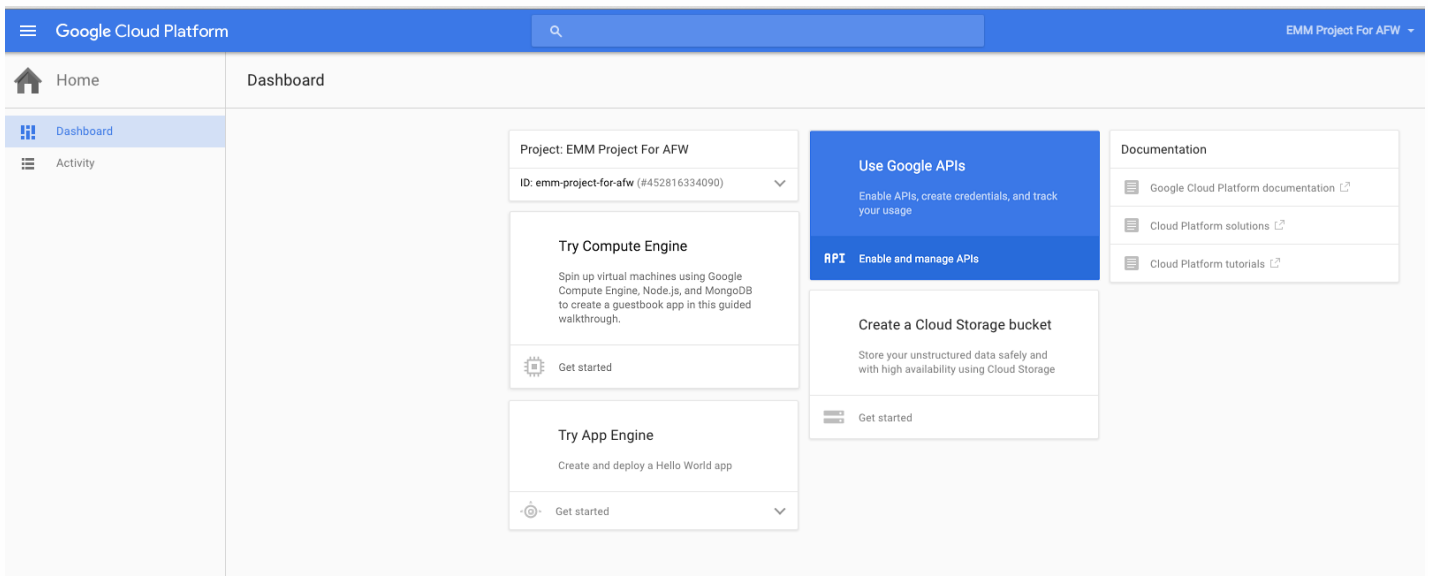
Project name	Project ID
<input type="checkbox"/> EMM Project	emm-project-1287
<input type="checkbox"/> EMM Project For AFW	emm-project-for-afw

[Projects shut down and pending deletion](#)

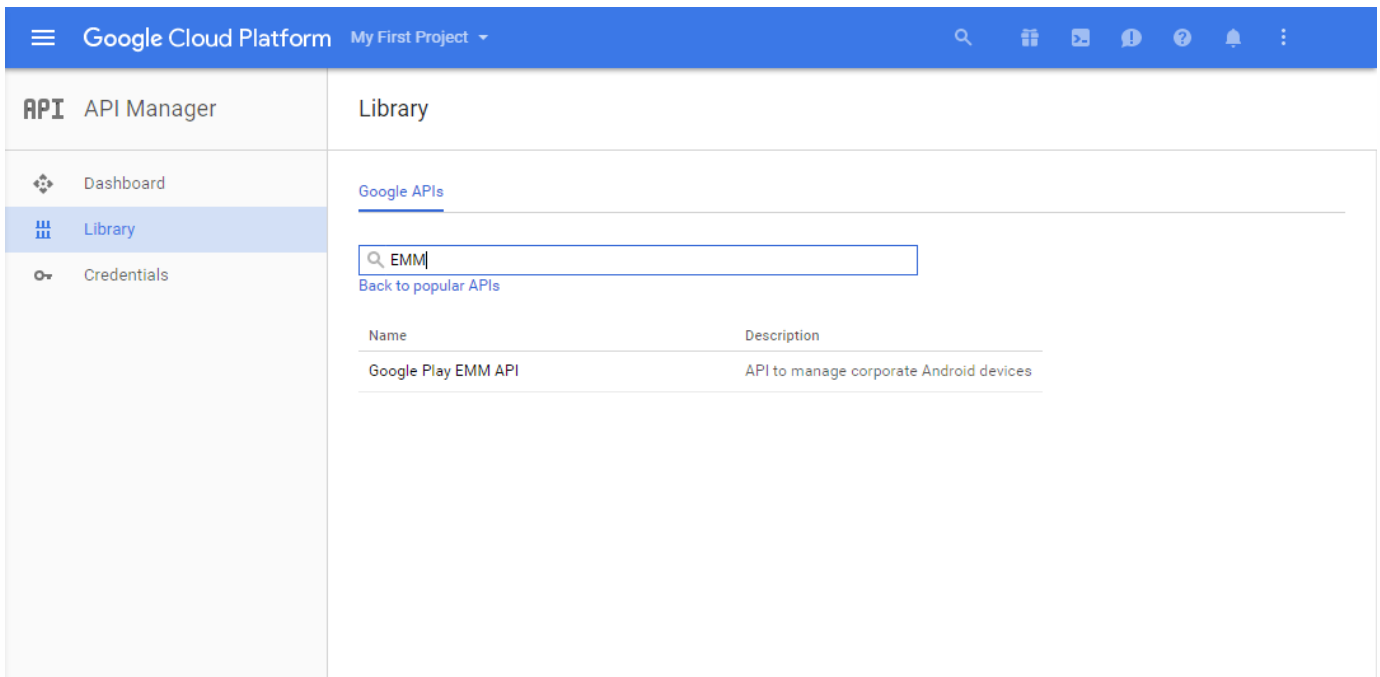
3. In **Project name**, type a name for the project.



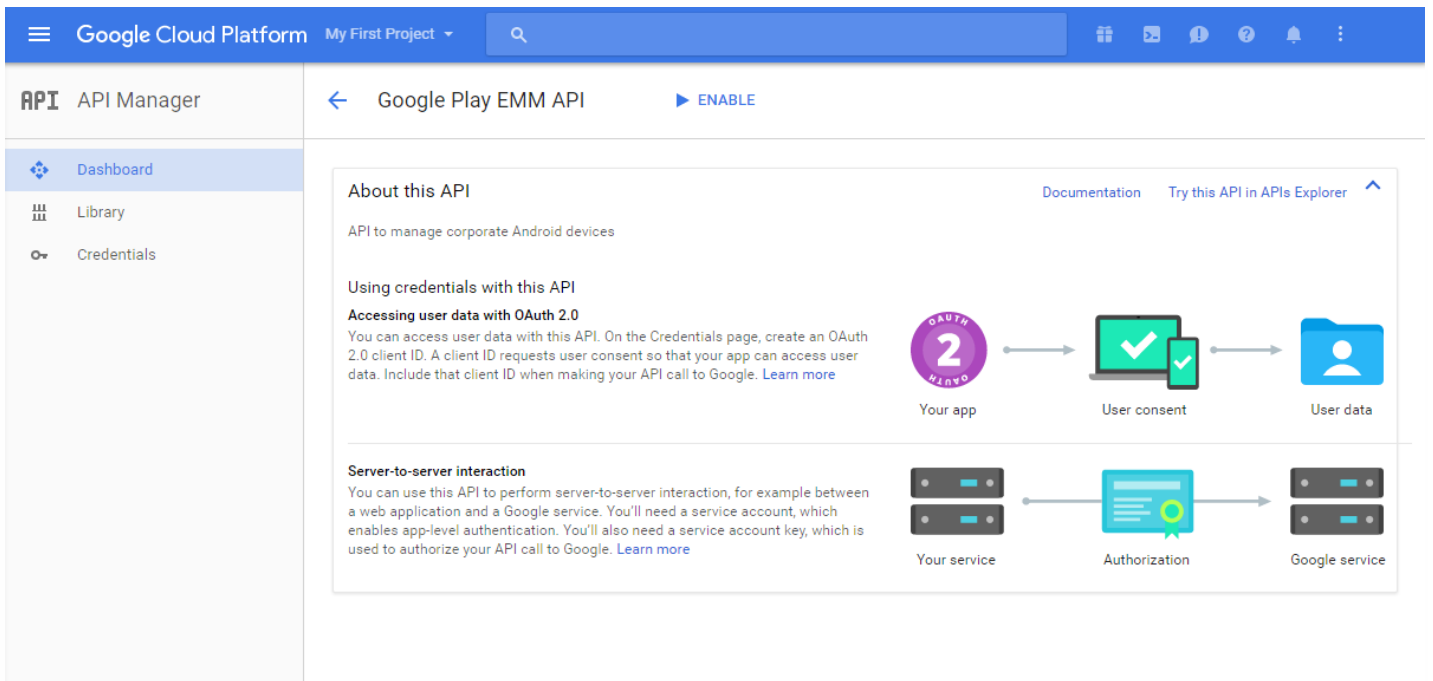
4. On the Dashboard, click **Use Google APIs**.



5. Click **Library**, in **Search**, type **EMM** and then click the search result.



6. On the **Overview** page, click **Enable**.



7. Next to **Google Play EMM API**, click **Go to Credentials**.

Google Cloud Platform EMM Project For APW

API Manager Overview

Overview

← Disable

**Google Play EMM API**

⚠ This API is enabled, but you can't use it in your project until you create credentials. Click "Go to Credentials" to do this now (strongly recommended). [Go to Credentials](#)

Overview Usage Quotas

API to manage corporate Android devices  
[Learn more](#)  
[Try this API in APIs Explorer](#)

**Using credentials with this API**

**Accessing user data with OAuth 2.0**  
 You can access user data with this API. On the Credentials page, create an OAuth 2.0 client ID. A client ID requests user consent so that your app can access user data. Include that client ID when making your API call to Google. [Learn more](#)

```

  graph LR
    A[Your app] --> B[User consent]
    B --> C[User data]
  
```

**Server-to-server interaction**  
 You can use this API to perform server-to-server interaction, for example between a web application and a Google service. You'll need a service account, which enables app-level authentication. You'll also need a service account key, which is used to authorize your API call to Google. [Learn more](#)

```

  graph LR
    A[Your service] --> B[Authorization]
    B --> C[Google service]
  
```

8. In the **Add credentials to our project** list, in step 1, click **service account**.

Google Cloud Platform

API Manager Credentials

Overview

Credentials

**Add credentials to your project**

1 Find out what kind of credentials you need

We'll help you set up the correct credentials  
 If you wish you can skip this step and create an [API key](#), [client ID](#), or [service account](#)

**Which API are you using?**  
 Determines what kind of credentials you need.

Google Play EMM API

**Where will you be calling the API from?**  
 Determines which settings you'll need to configure.

Choose...

**What data will you be accessing?**

User data  
 Access data belonging to a Google user, with their permission

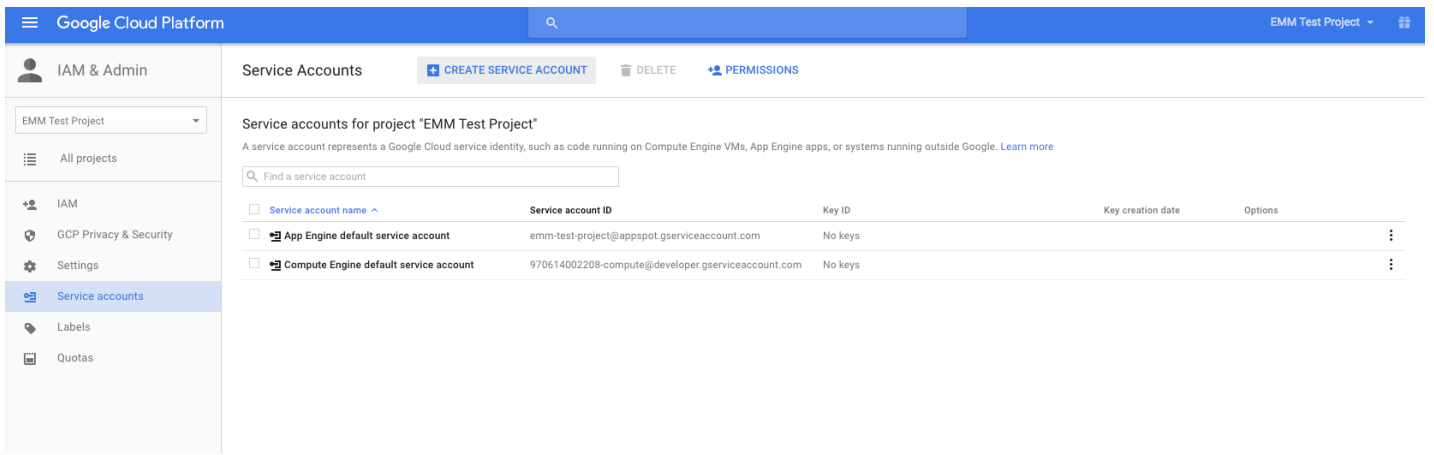
Application data  
 Access data belonging to your own application

[What credentials do I need?](#)

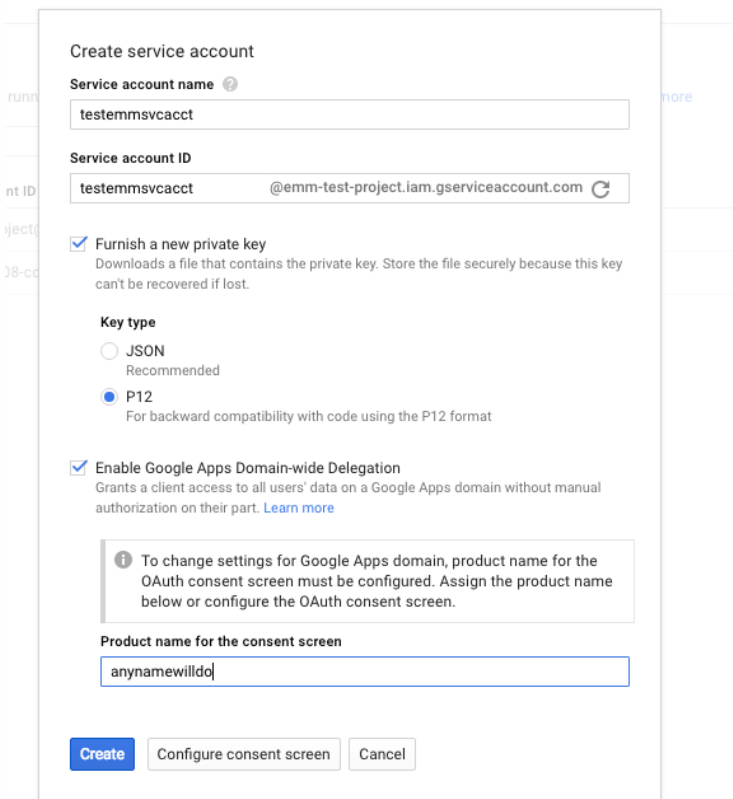
2 Get your credentials

Cancel

9. On the **Service Accounts** page, click **Create Service Account**.



10. In **Create service account**, name the account, and select the **Furnish a new private key** check box. Click **P12**, select the **Enable Google Apps Domain-wide Delegation** check box, and then click **Create**.



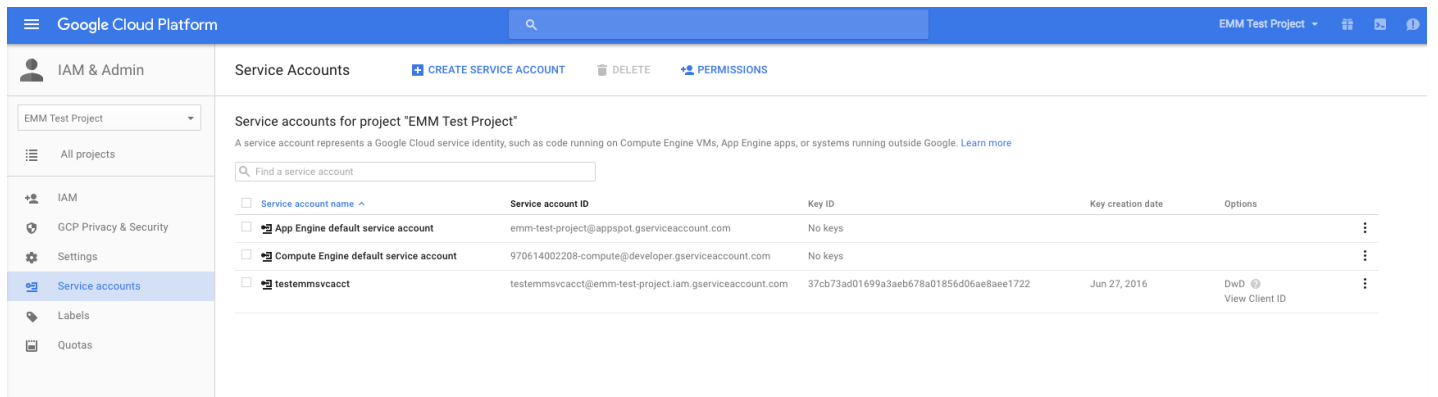
The certificate (P12 file) is downloaded to your computer. Be sure to save the certificate in a secure location.

11. On the **Service account created** confirmation page, click **Close**.

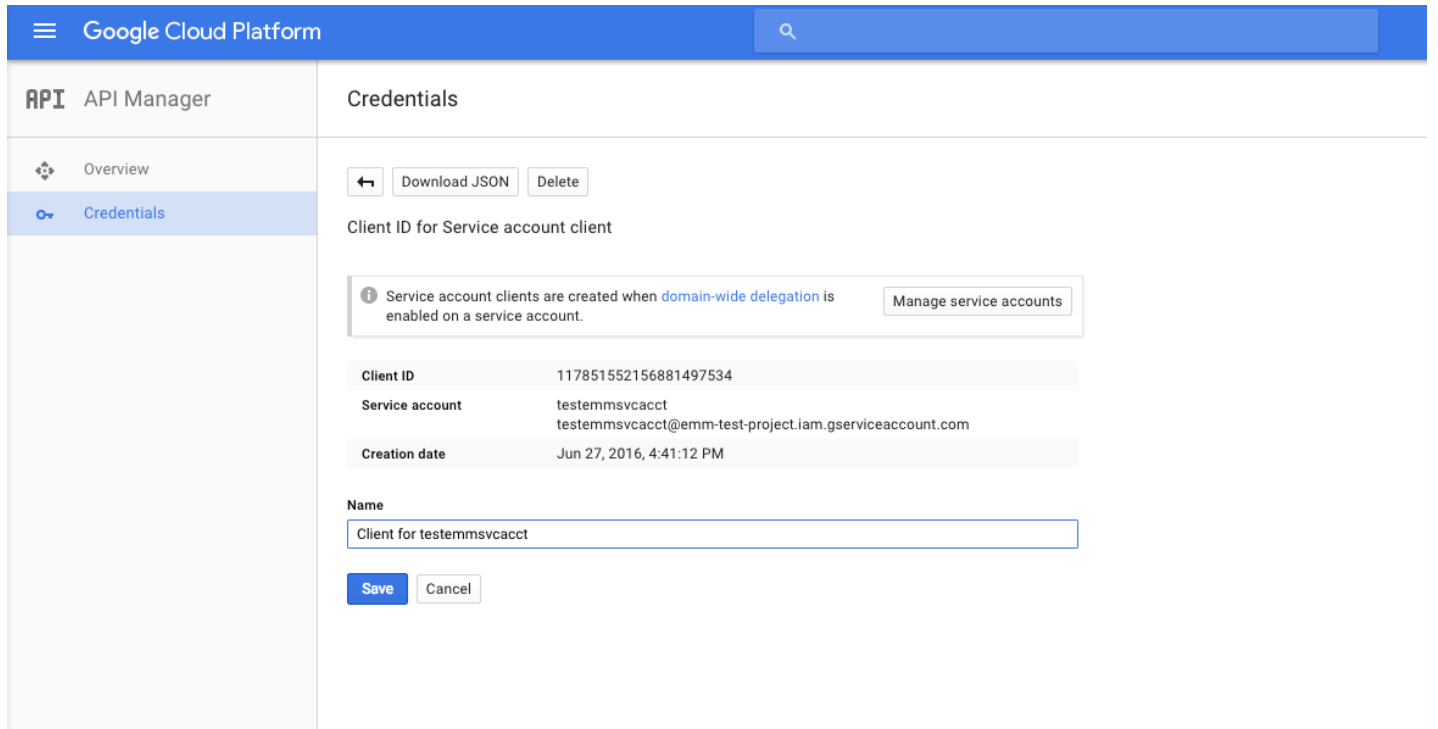




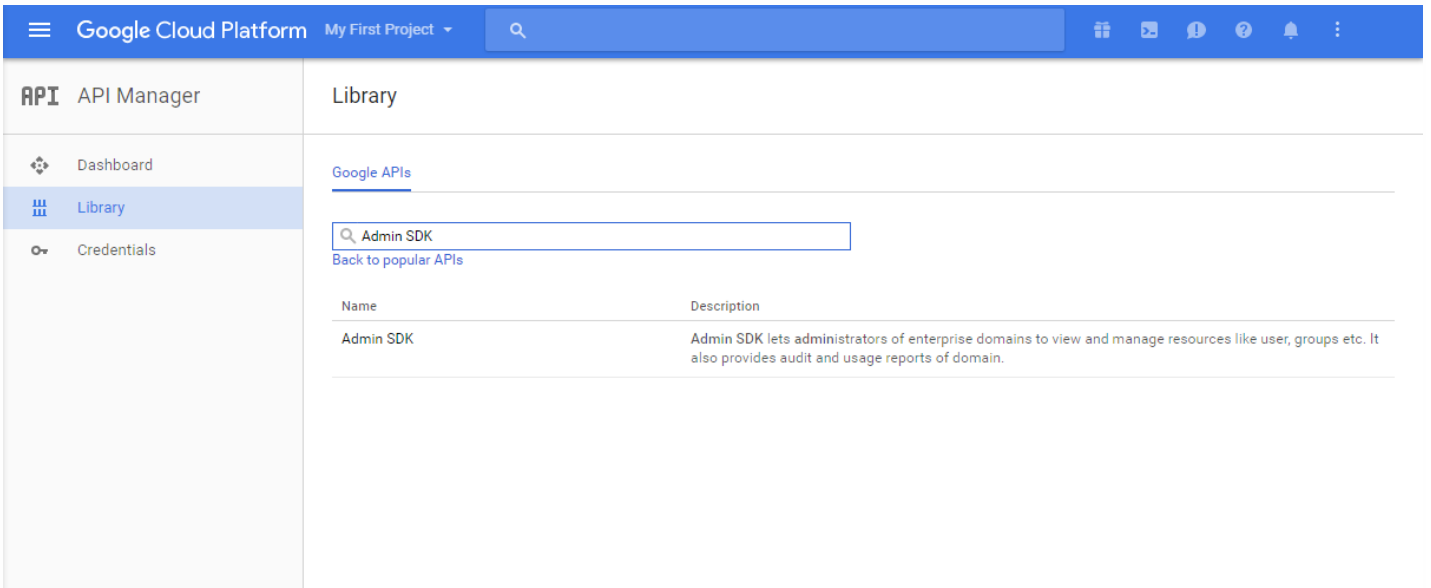
12. In **Permissions**, click **Service accounts** and then under **Options** for your service account, click **View Client ID**.



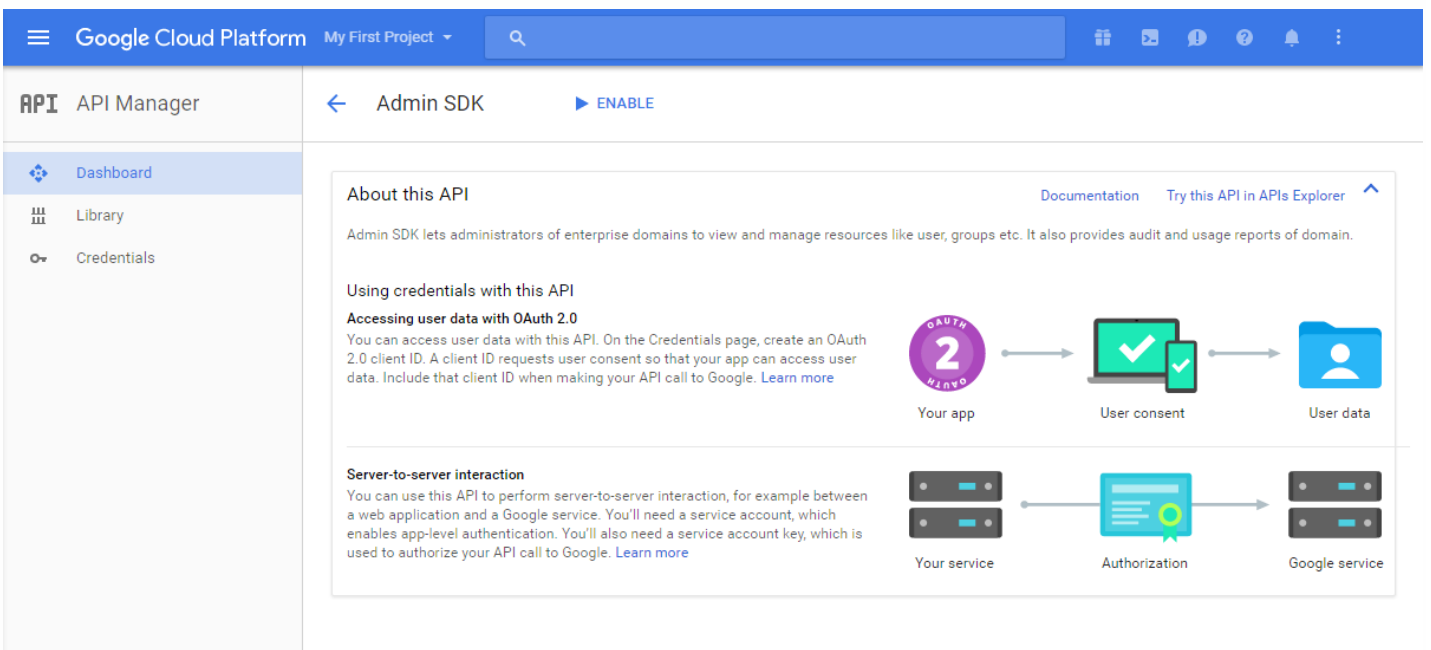
13. The details required for account authorization on the Google admin console display. Copy the **Client ID** and **Service account ID** to a location where you can retrieve the information later. You need this information, along with the domain name to send to Citrix support for whitelisting.



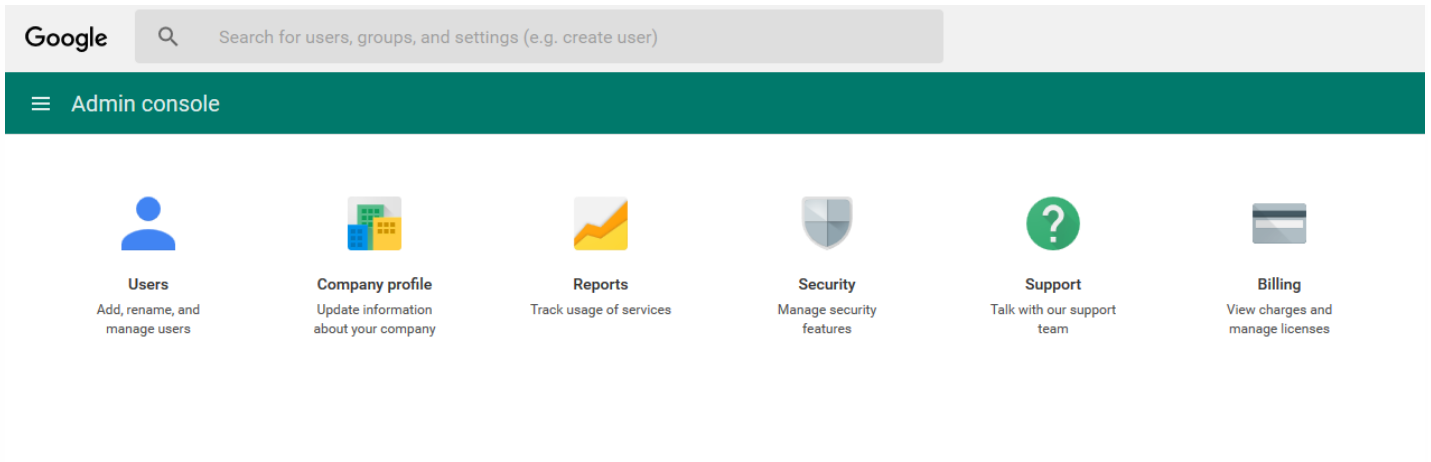
14. On the **Library** page, search for **Admin SDK** and then click the search result.



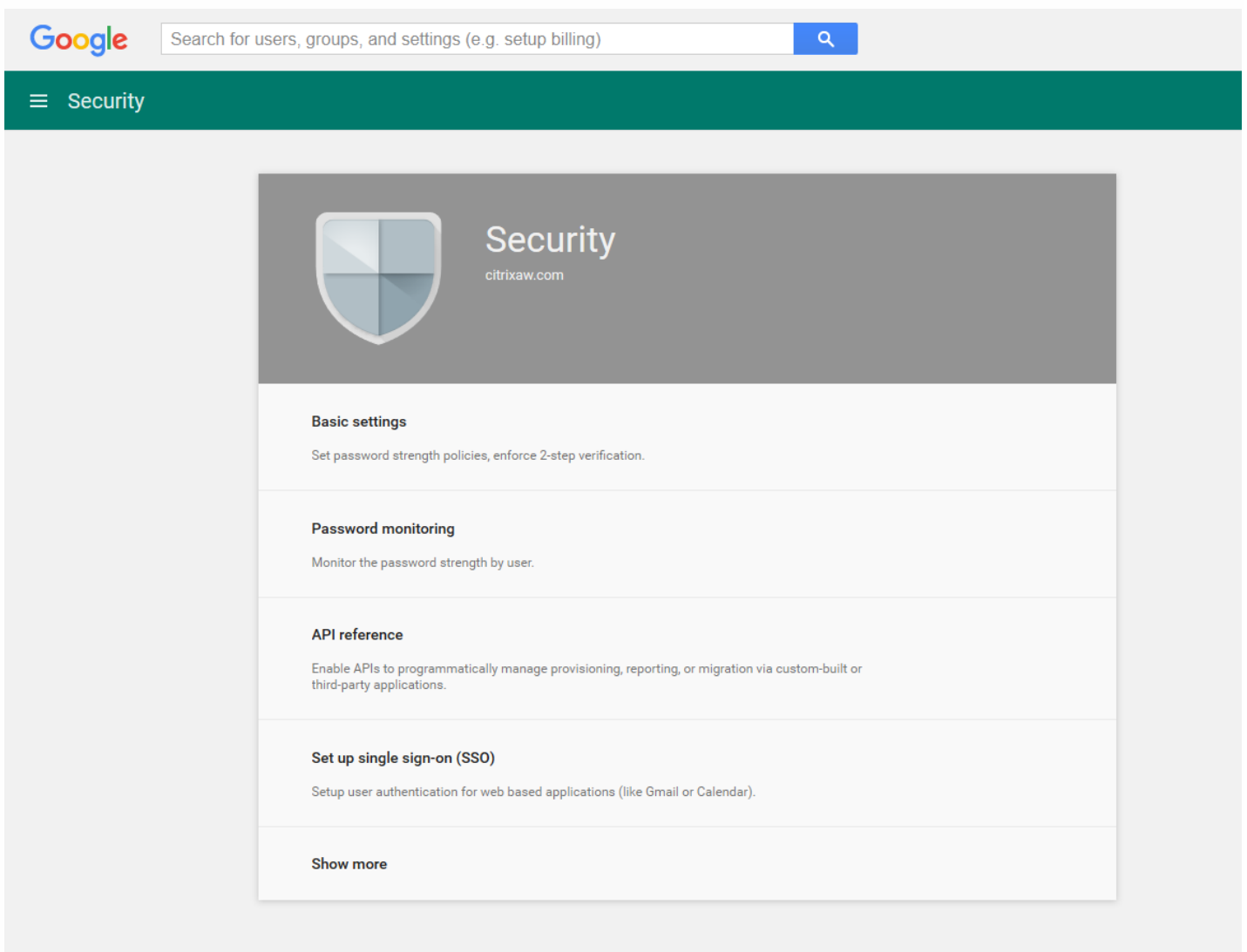
15. On the **Overview** page, click **Enable**.



16. Open the Google admin console for your domain and then click **Security**.



17. On the **Settings** page, click **Show more** and then click **Advanced settings**.





## Security

citrixaw.com

### Basic settings

Set password strength policies, enforce 2-step verification.

### Password monitoring

Monitor the password strength by user.

### API reference

Enable APIs to programmatically manage provisioning, reporting, or migration via custom-built or third-party applications.

### Set up single sign-on (SSO)

Setup user authentication for web based applications (like Gmail or Calendar).

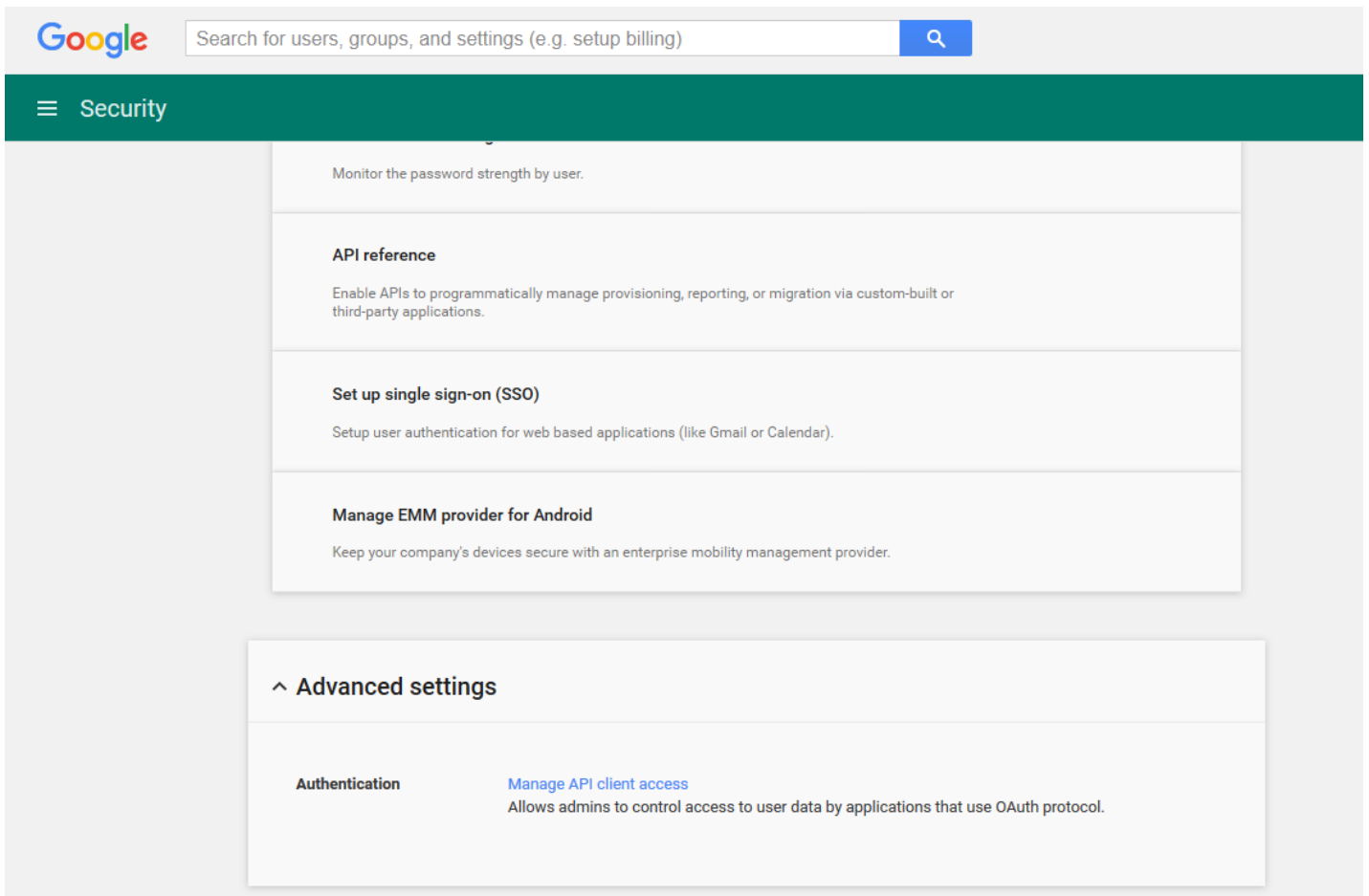
### Manage EMM provider for Android

Keep your company's devices secure with an enterprise mobility management provider.

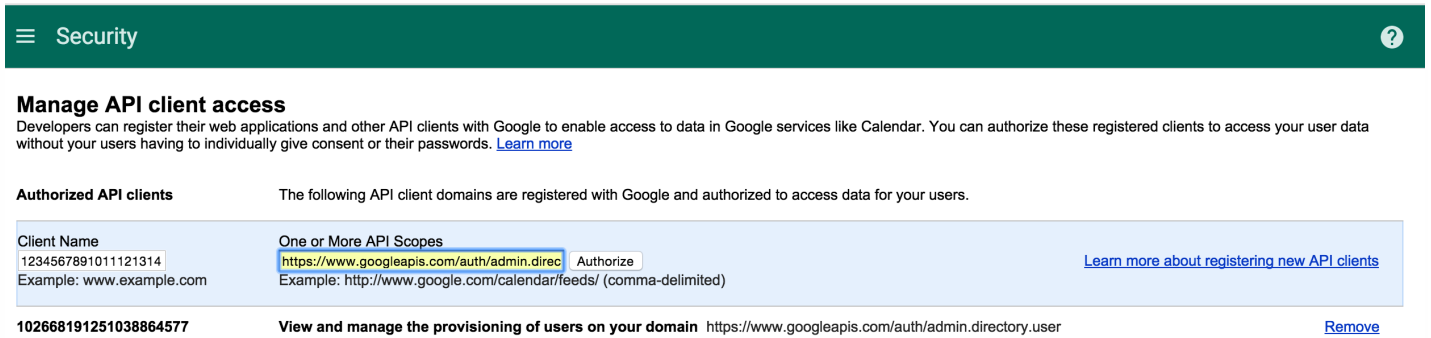
### Advanced settings

Manage advanced security features such as authentication, and integrating G Suite with internal services.

18. Click **Manage API client access**.



19. In **Client Name**, type the client ID that you saved earlier, in **One or More API Scopes**, type <https://www.googleapis.com/auth/admin.directory.user> and then click **Authorize**.



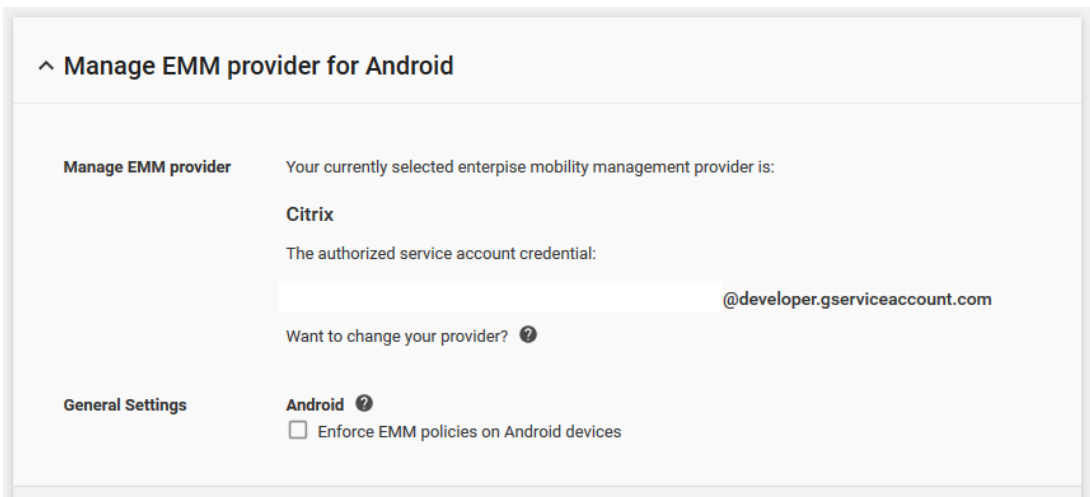
## Binding to EMM

Before you can use XenMobile to manage your Android devices, you must contact Citrix Technical Support and provide your domain name, service account, and binding token. Citrix binds the token to XenMobile as your enterprise mobility management (EMM) provider. For contact information for Citrix Technical Support, see [Citrix Technical Support](#).

1. To confirm the binding, sign in to the Google Admin portal and then click **Security**.
2. Click **Manage EMM provider for Android**.

You see that your Google Android for Work account is bound to Citrix as your EMM provider.

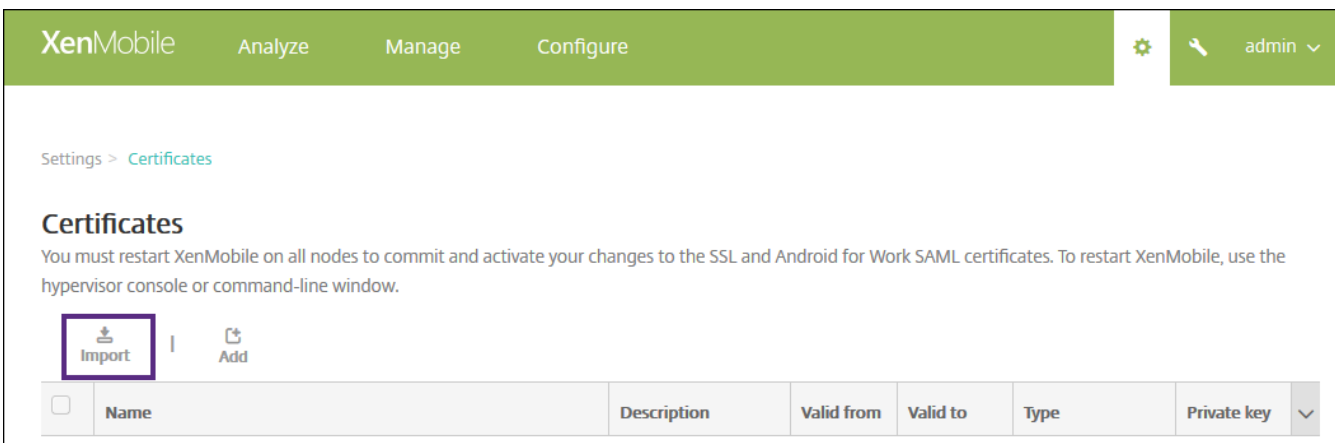
After you confirm the token binding, you can start using the XenMobile console to manage your Android devices. Import the P12 certificate you generated in step 14. Set up Android at Work server settings, enable SAML-based single-sign-on (SSO), and define at least one Android for Work device policy.



Import the P12 certificate

Follow these steps to import your Android at Work P12 certificate:

1. Sign in to the XenMobile console.
2. Click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console to open the **Settings** page and then click **Certificates**. The **Certificates** page displays.



3. Click **Import**. The **Import** dialog box displays.

**Import** ✕

You can import certificates or keystores used by PKI components. You can import several certificates, but you can only have one certificate active at a time.

Import:

Keystore type:

Use as:

Configure the following settings:

- **Import:** In the list, click **Keystore**.
- **Keystore type:** In the list, click **PKCS#12**.
- **Use as:** In the list, click **Server**.
- **Keystore file:** Click **Browse** and navigate to the P12 certificate.
- **Password:** Type the keystore password.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the certificate.

4. Click **Import**.

Set up Android at Work server settings

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page displays.
2. Under **Server**, click **Android for Work**. The **Android for Work** page displays.

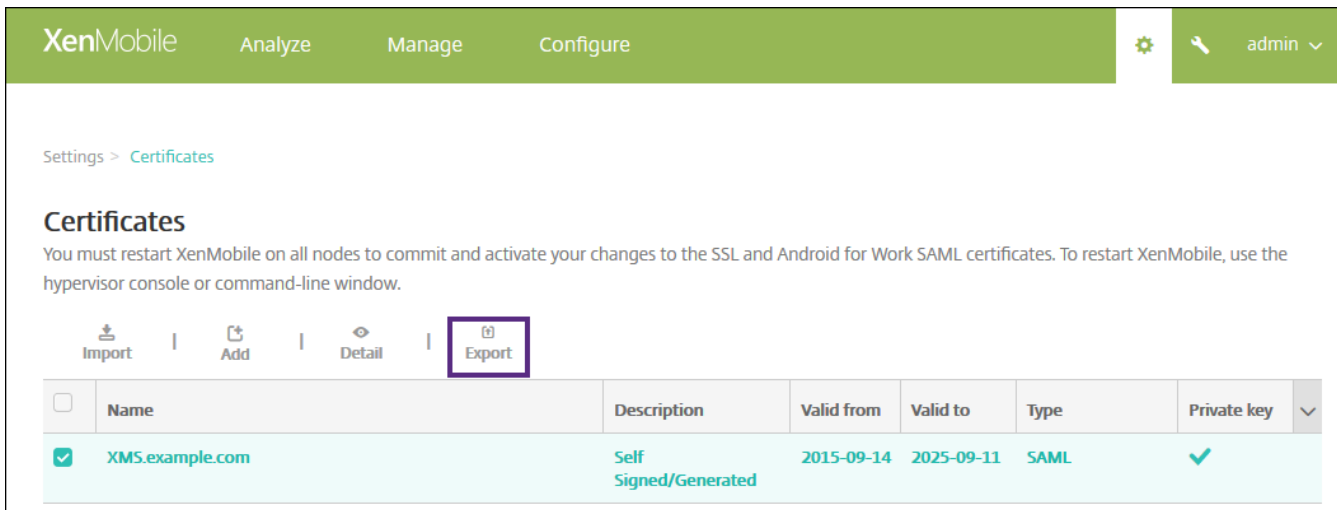
Configure the following settings:



- **Domain name:** Type your Android at Work domain name; for example, domain.com.
- **Domain Admin Account:** Type your domain administrator user name; for example, the email account used for Google Developer Portal.
- **Service Account ID:** Type your service account ID; for example, the email associated in the Google Service Account (serviceaccountemail@xxxxxxxxx.iam.gserviceaccount.com).
- **Enable Android for Work:** Click to enable or disable Android at Work.

3. Click **Save**.

## Enable SAML-based single-sign-on

1. Sign in to the XenMobile console.
2. Click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page displays.
3. Click **Certificates**. The **Certificates** page displays.








XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure  admin 

Settings > Certificates

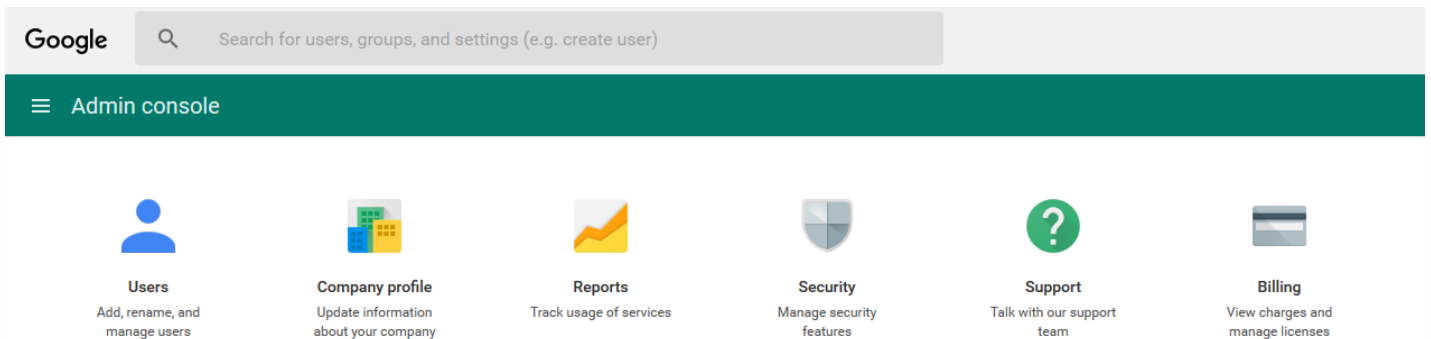
### Certificates


You must restart XenMobile on all nodes to commit and activate your changes to the SSL and Android for Work SAML certificates. To restart XenMobile, use the hypervisor console or command-line window.

 Import |  Add |  Detail |  Export







<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Description	Valid from	Valid to	Type	Private key
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	XMS.example.com	Self Signed/Generated	2015-09-14	2025-09-11	SAML	

3. In the list of certificates, click the SAML certificate.
4. Click **Export** and save the certificate to your computer.
5. Sign in to the Google Admin portal by using your Android at Work administrator credentials. For access to the portal, see [Google Admin portal](#).
6. Click **Security**.



Google  Search for users, groups, and settings (e.g. create user)

Admin console

-  **Users**  
Add, rename, and manage users
-  **Company profile**  
Update information about your company
-  **Reports**  
Track usage of services
-  **Security**  
Manage security features
-  **Support**  
Talk with our support team
-  **Billing**  
View charges and manage licenses

7. Under **Security**, click **Set up single sign-on (SSO)** and then configure the following settings.



## ^ Set up single sign-on (SSO)

SAML-based Single Sign-On allows you to authenticate accounts for web based applications (like Gmail or Calendar). With SSO, users sign in for one web application, and are automatically signed in for all other Google web apps. For desktop applications (or POP access to Gmail), users must sign in directly with the username and password set up via the Admin console. ?

### Setup SSO with third party identity provider

To setup third party as your identity provider, please provide the information below. ?

Sign-in page URL

URL for signing in to your system and Google Apps

Sign-out page URL

URL for redirecting users to when they sign out

Change password URL

URL to let users change their password in your system; when defined here, this is shown even when Single Sign-on is not enabled

Verification certificate

The certificate file must contain the public key for Google to verify sign-in requests. ?

Use a domain specific issuer ?

Network masks

Network masks determine which addresses will be affected by single sign-on. If no masks are specified, SSO functionality will be applied to the entire network. Use a semicolon to separate the masks. Example: (64.233.187.99/8; 72.14.0.0/16). For ranges, use a dash. Example: (64.233.167-204.99/32). All network masks must end with a CIDR. ?

[DISCARD CHANGES](#) [SAVE CHANGES](#)

- **Sign-in page URL:** Type the URL for users signing in to your system and Google Apps. For example: `https://<Xenmobile-FQDN>/aw/saml/signin`.
- **Sign out page URL:** Type the URL to which users are redirected when they sign out. For example: `https://<Xenmobile-FQDN>/aw/saml/signout`.
- **Change password URL:** Type the URL to let users change their password in your system. For example: `https://<Xenmobile-FQDN>/aw/saml/changepassword`. If this field is defined, users see this prompt even when SSO is not available.
- **Verification certificate:** Click **CHOOSE FILE** and then navigate to the SAML certificate exported from XenMobile.

8. Click **SAVE CHANGES**.

Set up an Android at Work device policy

It is wise to set up a passcode policy so that users must establish a passcode on their devices when they first enroll.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile web console interface for configuring a Passcode Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' section has sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' tab is active, and the 'Passcode Policy' is selected in the left sidebar. The main content area displays the 'Passcode Policy' configuration page, which includes a description, a 'Passcode Required' toggle (set to ON), and various settings for passcode requirements, biometric recognition, and security. The settings include: Minimum length (6), Biometric recognition (OFF), Required characters (No restriction), Advanced rules (OFF, A 3.0+), Lock device after (minutes of inactivity) (0-999) (None), Passcode expiration in days (1-730) (0), Previous passwords saved (0-50) (0), and Maximum failed sign-on attempts (Not defined). A 'Deployment Rules' section is visible at the bottom.

The basic steps to setting up any device policy are as follows.

1. Sign on to the XenMobile console.
2. Click **Configure**, and then click **Device Policies**.
3. Click **Add** and then on the **Add a New Policy** dialog box, select the policy you want to add. In this example, you click **Passcode**.
4. Complete the **Policy Information** page.
5. Click **Android for Work** and then configure the settings for the policy.
6. Assign the policy to a Delivery Group.

For more information about setting up other device policies that are available for Android for Work, see [XenMobile Device Policies by Platform](#).

## Configure Android at Work account settings

Before you can start managing Android apps and policies on devices, you must set up an Android at Work domain and account information in XenMobile. First, complete Android at Work setup tasks on Google to set up a domain administrator and to obtain a service account ID and a binding token.

1. In the XenMobile web console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page displays.
2. Under **Server**, click **Android for Work**. The **Android for Work** configuration page displays.

Settings > [Android for Work](#)

## Android for Work

Provide Android for Work configuration parameters.

Domain Name*	<input type="text"/>
Domain Admin Account*	<input type="text"/>
Service Account ID*	<input type="text"/>
Enable Android for Work	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

3. On the **Android for Work** page, configure the following settings:

- **Domain Name:** Type your domain name.
- **Domain Admin Account:** Type your domain administrator user name.
- **Service Account ID:** Type your Google Service Account ID.
- **Enable Android for Work:** Select whether to enable Android for Work or not.

4. Click **Save**.

## Provisioning Device Owner mode in Android at Work

If you want to provision Android at Work in Device Owner mode, you must transfer data through a near-field communications (NFC) bump between two devices. One must be running the XenMobile Provisioning Tool and one must be restored to its factory settings. Device Owner mode is available for corporate-owned devices only.

**Why NFC?** Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and other communication modes are disabled on a factory-reset device. NFC is the only communication protocol that the device can use in this state.

### Prerequisites

- A XenMobile Server version 10.4 that is enabled for Android at Work.
- A factory-reset device, provisioned for Android at Work in Device Owner mode. You can find steps to complete this prerequisite later in this article.
- Another device with NFC capability, running the configured Provisioning Tool. The Provisioning Tool is available in Secure Hub 10.4 or on the [Citrix downloads page](#).

Each device can have only one Android at Work profile, managed by an enterprise mobility management (EMM) app. In XenMobile, Secure Hub is the EMM app. Only one profile is allowed on each device. Attempting to add a second EMM app removes the first EMM app.

You can start Device Owner mode on new devices or on devices restored to factory settings. You manage the entire device by using XenMobile.

### NFC bump in Device Owner mode

Provisioning a factory-reset device requires you to send the following data via an NFC bump to initialize Android at Work:

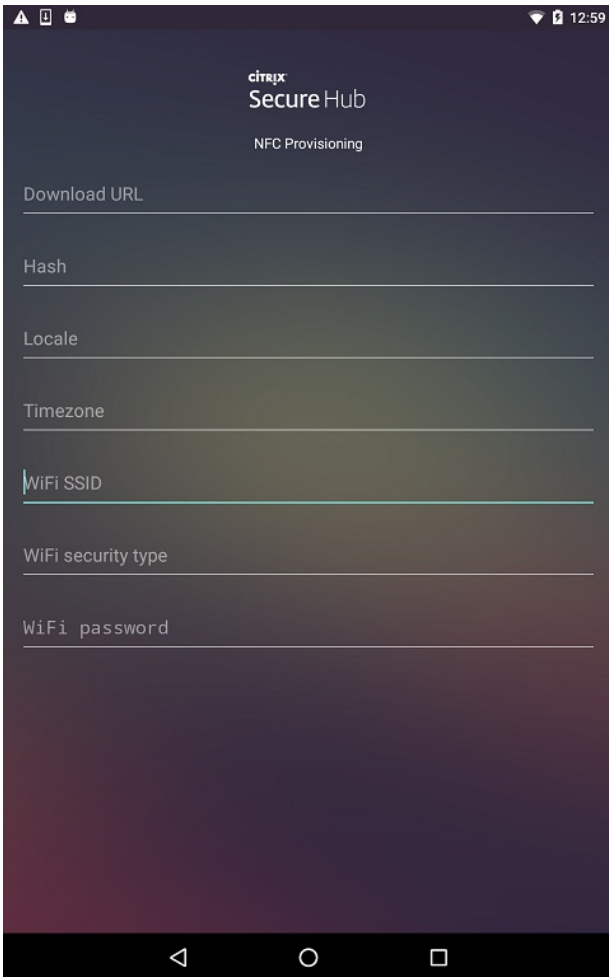
- Package name of the EMM provider app that acts as Device Owner (in this case, Secure Hub).
- Intranet/Internet location from which the device can download the EMM provider app.
- SHA1 hash of EMM provider app to verify if the download is successful.
- Wi-Fi connection details so that a factory-reset device can connect and download the EMM provider app. Note: Android now does not support 802.1x Wi-Fi for this step.

- Time zone for the device (optional).
- Geographic location for the device (optional).

When the two devices are bumped, the data from the Provisioning Tool is sent to the factory-reset device. That data is then used to download Secure Hub with administrator settings. If you don't enter time zone and location values, Android automatically configures the values on the new device.

### Configuring the XenMobile Provisioning Tool

Before doing an NFC bump, you must configure the Provisioning Tool. This configuration is then transferred to the factory-reset device during the NFC bump.



The screenshot shows the Citrix Secure Hub NFC Provisioning configuration screen. The screen has a dark background with white text. At the top, the Citrix logo and 'Secure Hub' are displayed, followed by 'NFC Provisioning'. Below this, there are several input fields for configuration: 'Download URL', 'Hash', 'Locale', 'Timezone', 'WiFi SSID', 'WiFi security type', and 'WiFi password'. The 'WiFi SSID' field is currently active, with a green cursor. At the bottom of the screen, there are three navigation icons: a back arrow, a circle, and a square.

You can type data into the required fields or populate them via text file. The steps in the next procedure describe how to configure the text file and contain descriptions for each field. The app doesn't save information after you type it, so you might want to create a text file to keep the information for future use.

#### To configure the Provisioning Tool by using a text file

Name the file `nfcprovisioning.txt` and place the file in the `/sdcard/` folder on the SD card of the device. The app can then read the text file and populate the values.

The text file must contain the following data:

**android.app.extra.PROVISIONING\_DEVICE\_ADMIN\_PACKAGE\_DOWNLOAD\_LOCATION=<download\_location>**

This line is the intranet/internet location of the EMM provider app. After the factory-reset device connects to Wi-Fi following the NFC bump, the device must have access to this location for downloading. The URL is a regular URL, with no special formatting required.

**android.app.extra.PROVISIONING\_DEVICE\_ADMIN\_PACKAGE\_CHECKSUM=<SHA1 hash>**

This line is the checksum of the EMM provider app. This checksum is used to verify that the download is successful. Steps to obtain the checksum are discussed later in this article.

**android.app.extra.PROVISIONING\_WIFI\_SSID=<wifi ssid>**

This line is the connected Wi-Fi SSID of the device on which the Provisioning Tool is running.

**android.app.extra.PROVISIONING\_WIFI\_SECURITY\_TYPE=<wifi security type>**

Supported values are WEP and WPA2. If the Wi-Fi is unprotected, this field must be empty.

**android.app.extra.PROVISIONING\_WIFI\_PASSWORD=<wifi password>**

If the Wi-Fi is unprotected, this field must be empty.

**android.app.extra.PROVISIONING\_LOCALE=<locale>**

Enter language and country codes. The language codes are two-letter lowercase ISO language codes (such as `en`) as defined by [ISO 639-1](#). The country codes are two-letter uppercase ISO country codes (such as `US`) as defined by [ISO 3166-1](#). For example, type `en_US` for English as spoken in the United States. If you don't type any codes, the country and language are automatically populated.

**android.app.extra.PROVISIONING\_TIME\_ZONE=<timezone>**

The time zone in which the device is running. Type an [Olson name of the form area/location](#). For example, `America/Los_Angeles` for Pacific time. If you don't enter a name, the time zone is automatically populated.

**android.app.extra.PROVISIONING\_DEVICE\_ADMIN\_PACKAGE\_NAME=<package name>**

This data isn't required, because the value is hardcoded into the app as Secure Hub. It's mentioned here only for the sake of completion.

If there is a Wi-Fi protected by using WPA2, a completed `nfcprovisioning.txt` file might look like the following:

```
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_DOWNLOAD_LOCATION=http://www.somepublicurhere.com/path/to/securehub.apk
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_CHECKSUM=ga50TwdCmf dj72LGRFkke4CrbAk\u003d
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_WIFI_SSID=Protected_WiFi_Name
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_WIFI_SECURITY_TYPE=WPA2
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_WIFI_PASSWORD=wifiPasswordHere
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_LOCALE=en_US
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_TIME_ZONE=America/Los_Angeles
```

If there is an unprotected Wi-Fi, a completed `nfcprovisioning.txt` file might look like the following:

```
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_DOWNLOAD_LOCATION=http://www.somepublicurhere.com/path/to/securehub.apk
```

android.app.extra.PROVISIONING\_DEVICE\_ADMIN\_PACKAGE\_CHECKSUM=ga50TwdCmf dj72LGRFkke4CrbAK\u003d

android.app.extra.PROVISIONING\_WIFI\_SSID=Unprotected\_WiFi\_Name

android.app.extra.PROVISIONING\_LOCALE=en\_US

android.app.extra.PROVISIONING\_TIME\_ZONE=America/Los\_Angeles

### To get the Secure Hub checksum

To get the checksum of any app, add the app as an enterprise app.

1. In the XenMobile console, go to **Configure > Apps** and then click **Add**.

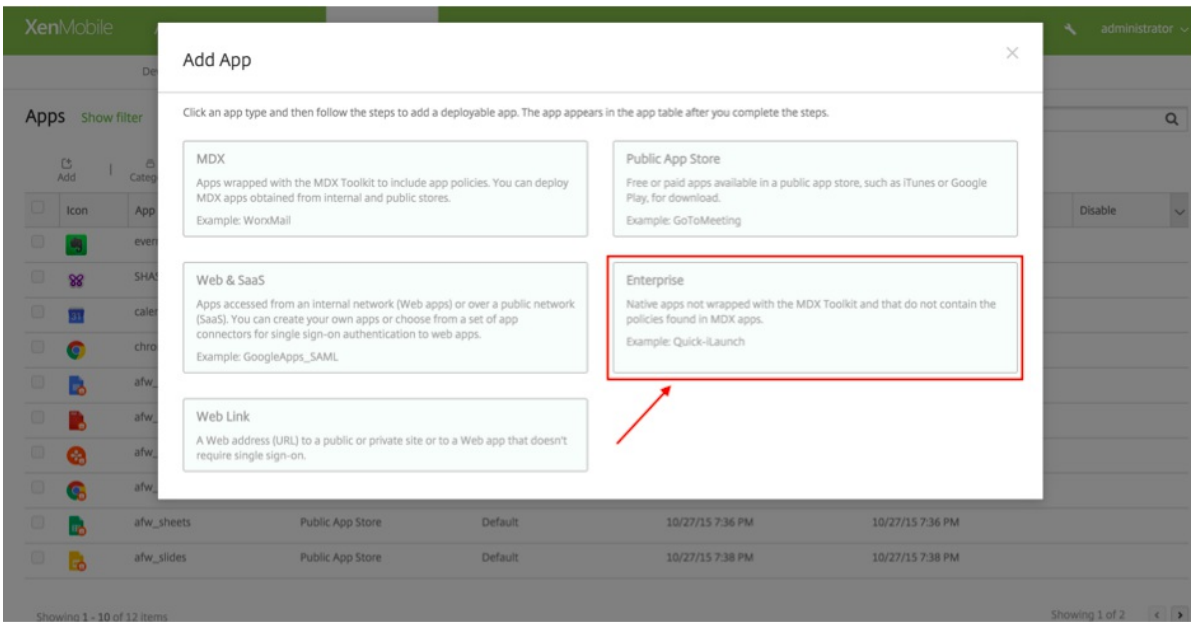
The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' section is active, showing sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Apps' tab is selected, displaying a list of apps. The 'Add' button is visible at the top left of the app list area. The app list has the following columns: Icon, App Name, Type, Category, Created On, Last Updated, and Disable. The following table represents the data shown in the screenshot:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Icon	App Name	Type	Category	Created On	Last Updated	Disable	▼
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh viber	Public App Store	Default	10/18/16 7:55 AM	10/18/16 7:55 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh ebay	Public App Store	Default	10/18/16 8:04 AM	10/18/16 8:04 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh green	Enterprise	Default	10/18/16 8:07 AM	10/18/16 8:07 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh pink	Enterprise	Default	10/18/16 8:08 AM	10/18/16 8:08 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh web & saas	Web & SaaS	Default	10/18/16 8:09 AM	10/18/16 8:09 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh weblink	Web Link	Default	10/18/16 8:10 AM	10/18/16 8:10 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		MRF Android Enterprise TD	Enterprise	Default	10/18/16 8:12 AM	10/18/16 8:12 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh UWH	Enterprise	Default	10/18/16 8:17 AM	10/18/16 8:17 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh WW	MDX	Default	10/18/16 8:18 AM	10/18/16 8:18 AM		

The **Add Apps** window appears.

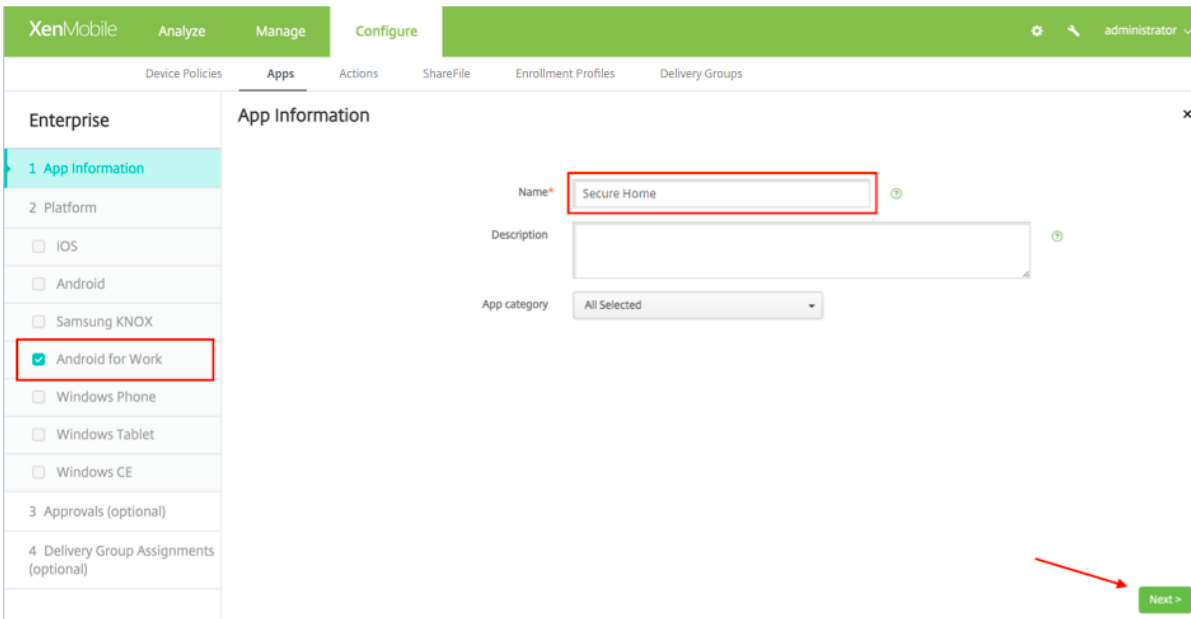
2. Click **Enterprise**.

The **App information** page displays.



3. Select the following configuration and then click **Next**.

The **Android for Work Enterprise App** page displays.



4. Provide the path to the .apk and then click **Next** to upload the file.

Once the upload is complete, the details of the uploaded package display.





- Replace the trailing `\u003d` with `=`

If you store the hash in the `nfcprovisioning.txt` file on the SD card of the device, the app does the safety conversion. However, if you opt to type the hash manually, it's your responsibility to ensure its URL safety.

#### **Libraries used**

The Provisioning Tool uses the following libraries in its source code:

- [v7 appcompat library](#) by Google under Apache license 2.0
- [Design support library](#) by Google under Apache license 2.0
- [v7 Palette library](#) by Google under Apache license 2.0
- [Butter Knife](#) by Jake Wharton under Apache license 2.0

# Bulk enrollment of iOS and macOS devices

Feb 27, 2017

You can enroll large numbers of iOS and macOS devices in XenMobile in two ways.

- You can use the Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) to enroll the iOS and macOS devices that you buy directly from Apple, a participating Apple Authorized Reseller, or a carrier.

For DEP enrollment of macOS devices, XenMobile requires that the devices run OS X 10.10 or later.

- Or you can use the Apple Configurator to enroll iOS devices whether or not you purchased them directly from Apple.

With DEP, you do not have to touch or prepare the devices. Instead, you submit device serial numbers or purchase order numbers through DEP to configure and enroll the devices. After XenMobile enrolls the devices, you can give them to users who can start using them right out of the box. In addition, when you set up devices with DEP, you can eliminate some of the Setup Assistant steps that users would otherwise have to complete when they first start their devices. For more information on setting up DEP, see the Apple [Device Enrollment Program](#) page.

With the Apple Configurator, you attach iOS devices to an Apple computer running OS X 10.7.2 or later and the Apple Configurator 2 app. You prepare the iOS devices and configure policies through Apple Configurator 2. After you provision the devices with the required policies, the first time the devices connect to XenMobile, the devices receive policies from XenMobile. You can then start managing the devices. For more information about using Apple Configurator, see the [Apple Configurator](#) help.

## Important

You must open required ports for connectivity between XenMobile and Apple. For more information, see [Port requirements](#).

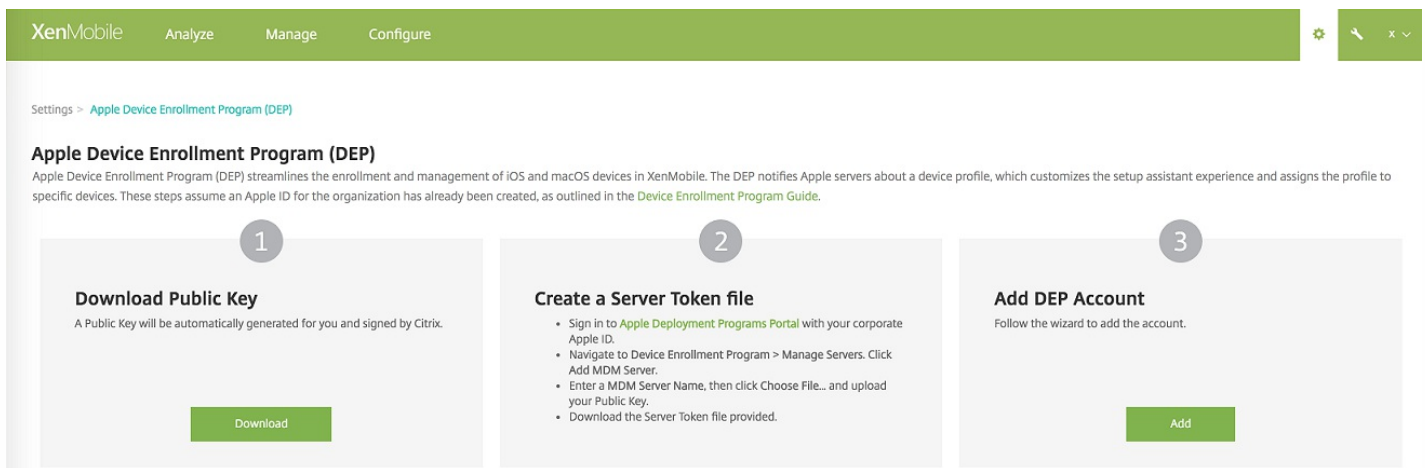
## Integrate your Apple DEP account with XenMobile

If you do not have an Apple DEP account, see [Deploy iOS and macOS devices through Apple DEP](#).

To connect your Apple DEP account with your XenMobile server deployment, you enter information in the XenMobile console and the Apple DEP Portal, as described in the following steps.

Step 1: Download a public key from your XenMobile server

1. Log on to the XenMobile console and go to **Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)**.

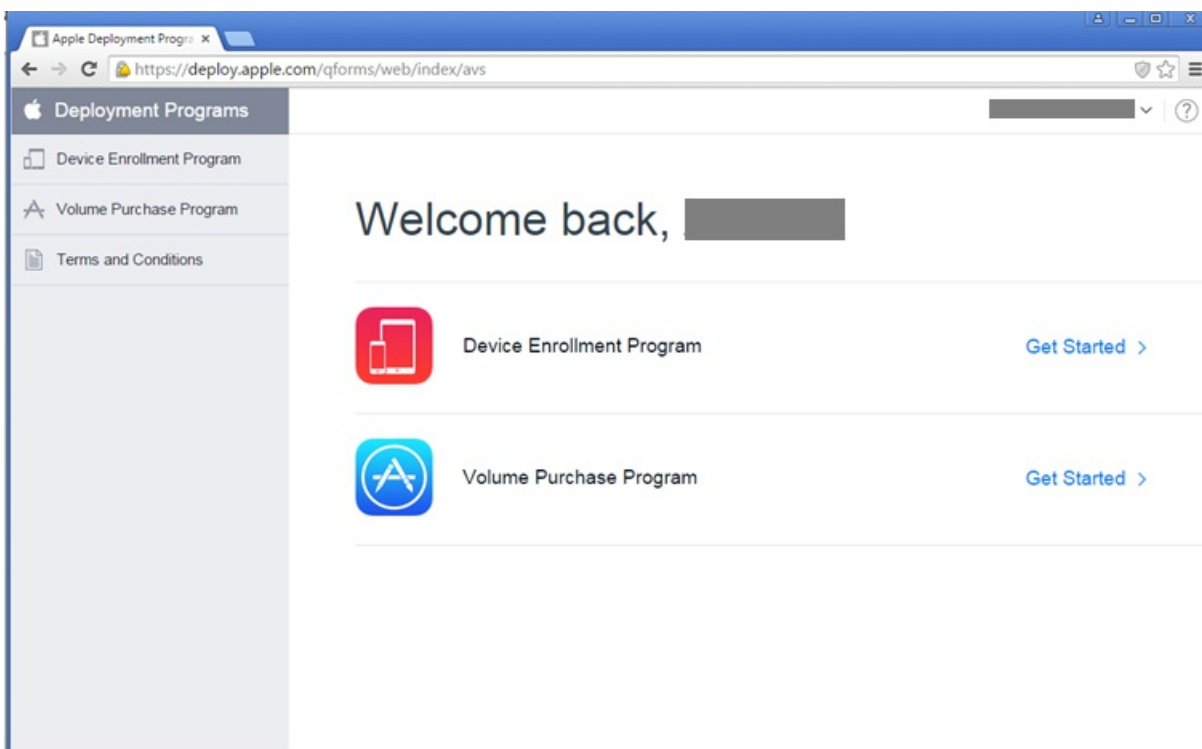


2. Under **Download Public Key**, click **Download**.

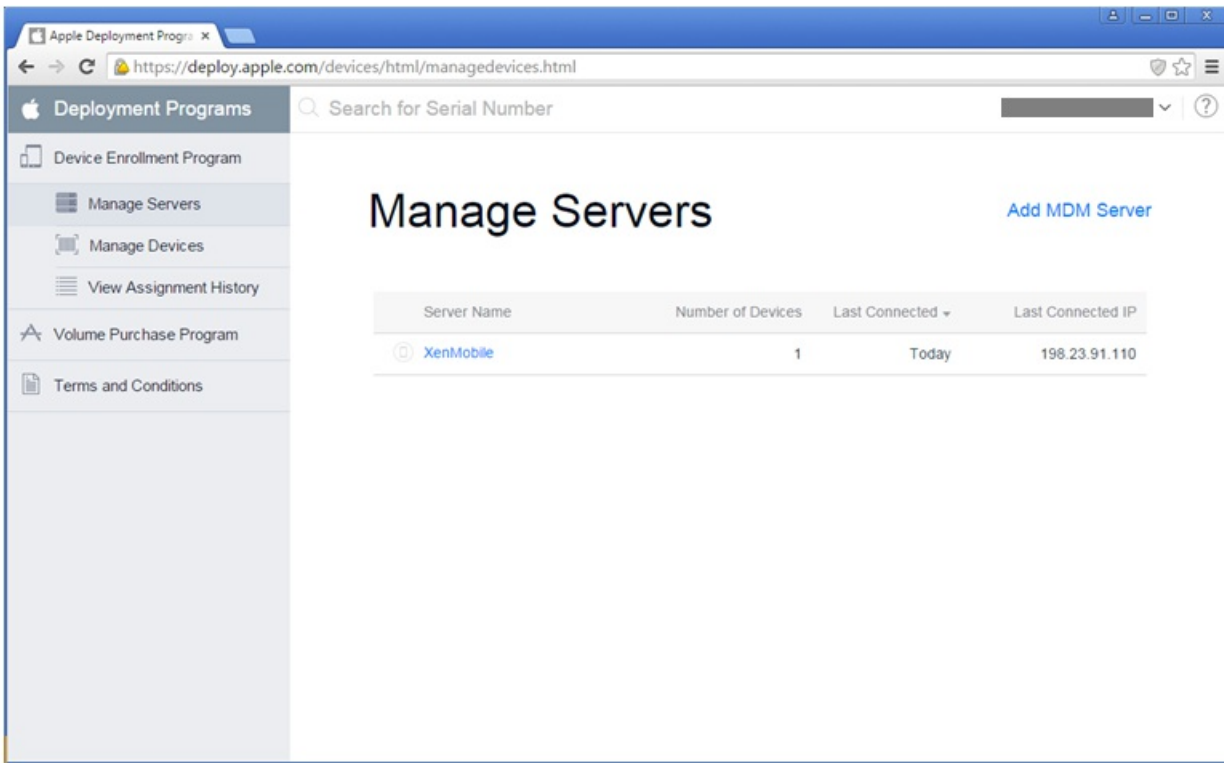
Step 2: Create and download a server token file from your Apple account

1. Using your corporate Apple ID, log on to the [Apple Deployment Program Portal](#).

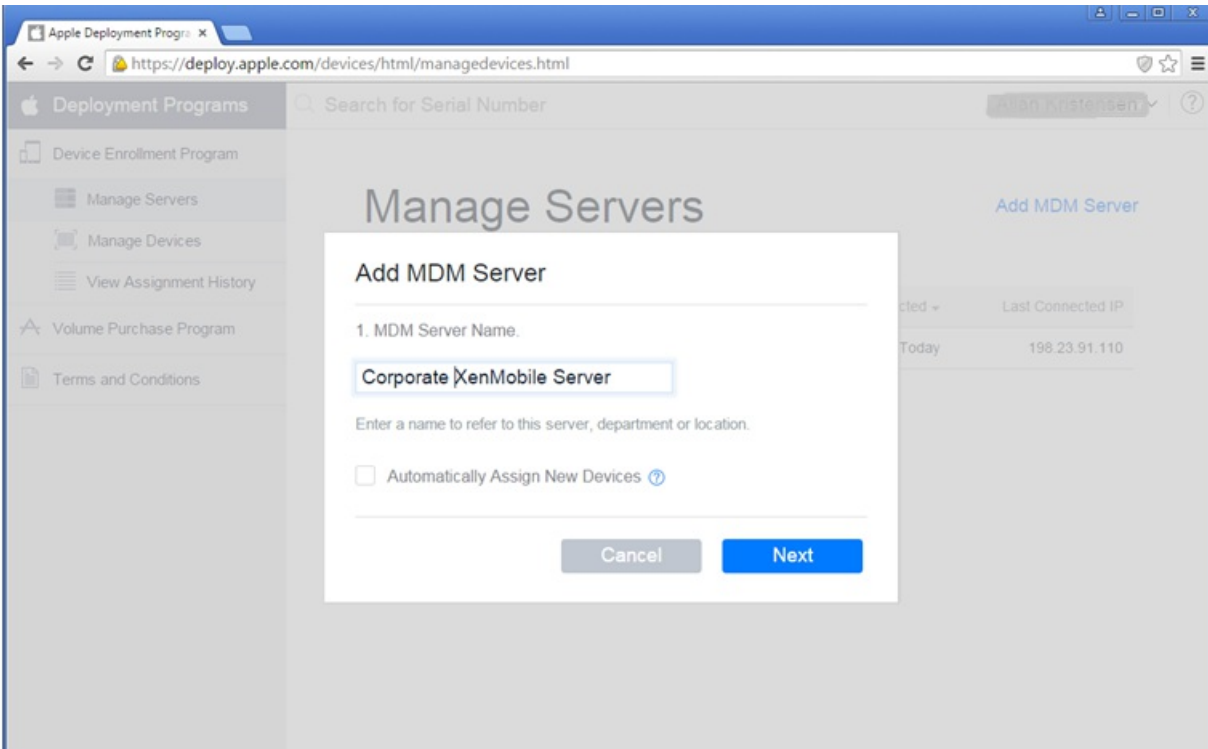
2. In the Apple DEP Portal, click **Device Enrollment Program**.



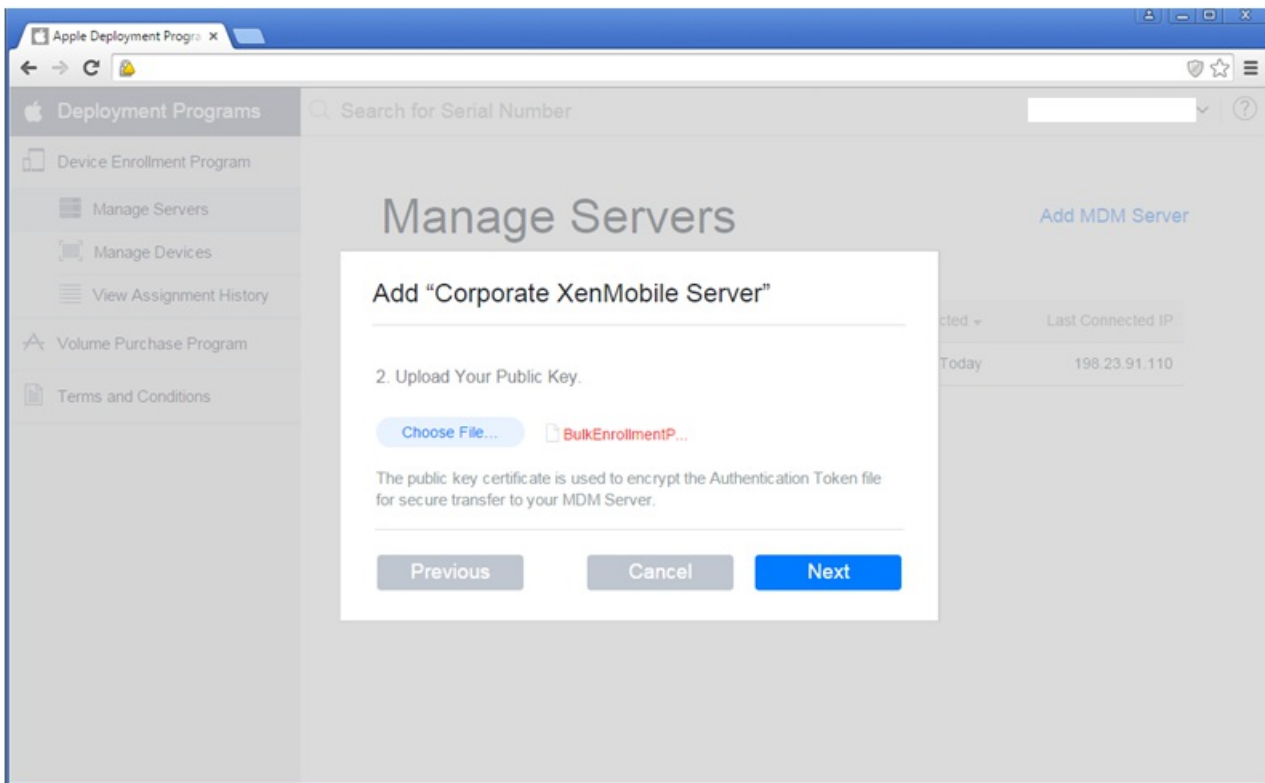
3. Click **Manage Servers** and then on the right side, click **Add MDM Server**.



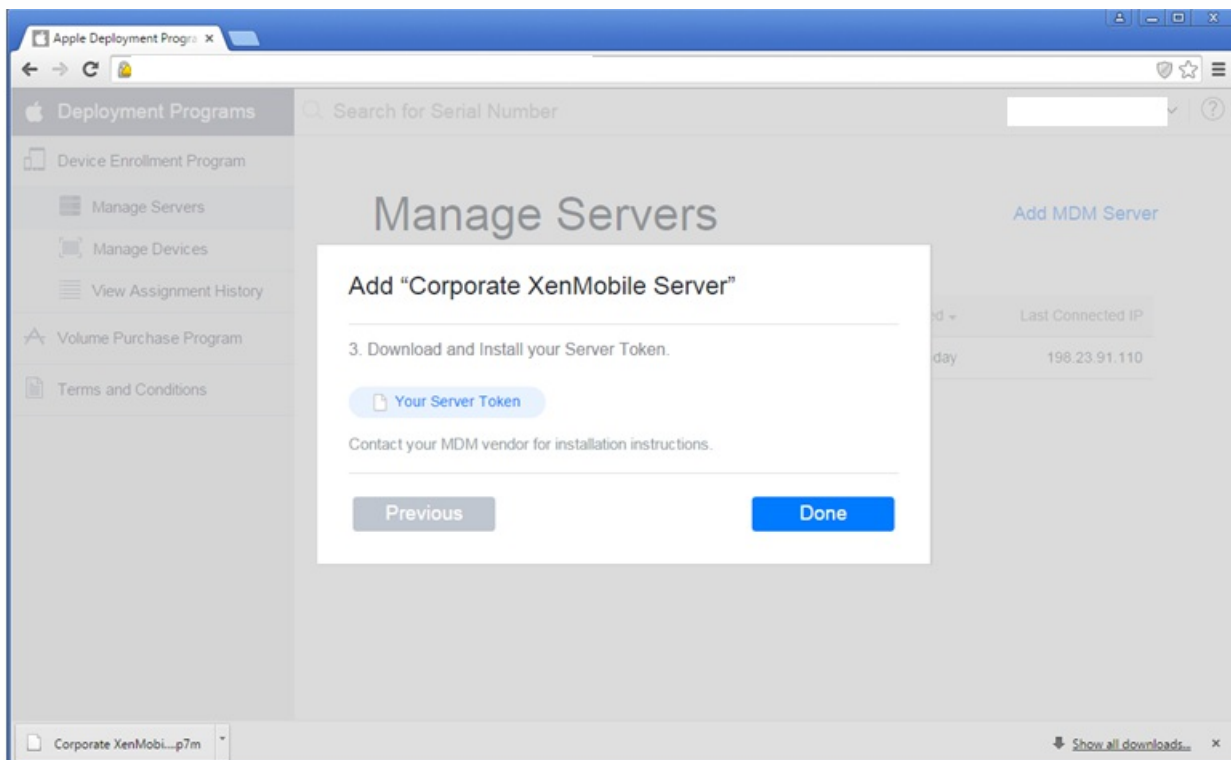
4. In **Add MDM Server**, enter a name for your XenMobile server and then click **Next**.



5. On the Apple DEP Portal, click **Choose file**, choose the public key you downloaded from XenMobile, and click **Next**.



6. Click **Your Server Token** to generate a server token, which downloads from the browser, and then click **Done**.



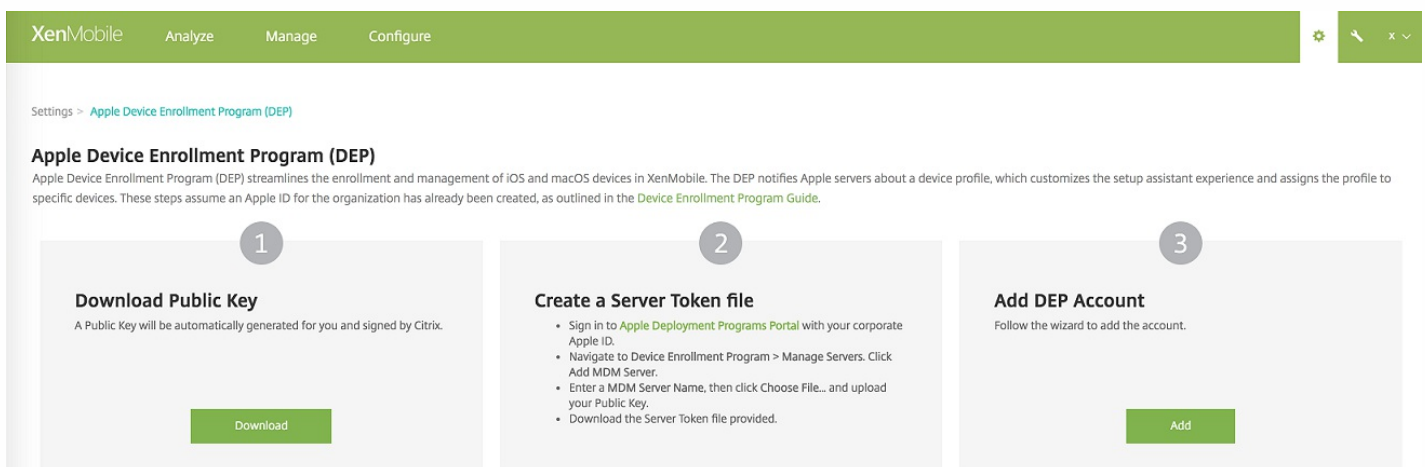
Your Apple DEP token information appears in the XenMobile console after you import the token file. You will upload the server token file when adding the DEP account to XenMobile.

## Step 3: Add a DEP account to XenMobile

You can add multiple DEP accounts to XenMobile. This feature enables you to use different enrollment settings and setup assistant options by country, department, and so on. You then associate DEP accounts with different device policies.

For example, you might centralize all of your DEP accounts from different countries on the same XenMobile server, to import and supervise all DEP devices. By customizing enrollment settings and setup assistant options per department, organizational hierarchy, or other structure, you can ensure that policies provide appropriate functionality across your organization and that device users receive the appropriate setup assistance.

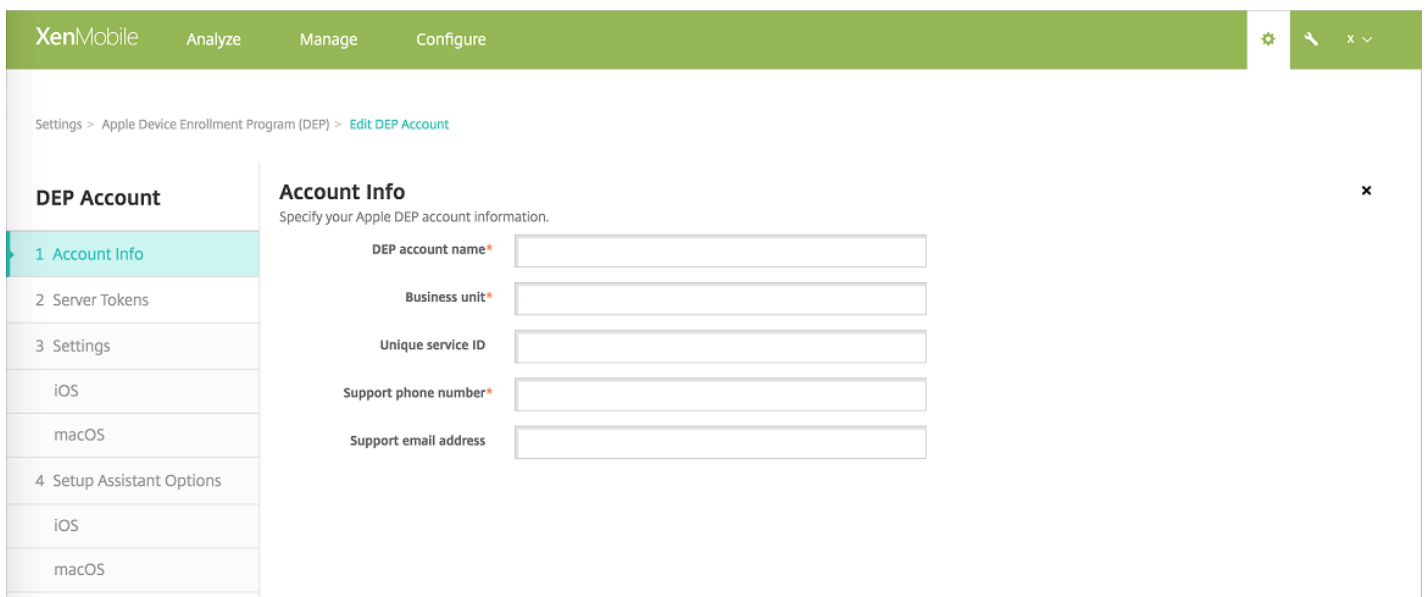
1. In XenMobile console, go to **Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)** and, under **Add DEP Account**, click **Add**.



The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The main content area is titled 'Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)'. Below this, there is a section for 'Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)' with a brief description. A three-step wizard is displayed:

- 1 Download Public Key**: A Public Key will be automatically generated for you and signed by Citrix. A green 'Download' button is at the bottom.
- 2 Create a Server Token file**: Includes instructions to sign in to the Apple Deployment Programs Portal, navigate to Device Enrollment Program > Manage Servers, click Add MDM Server, enter a MDM Server Name, click Choose File... and upload your Public Key, and download the Server Token file provided. A green 'Add' button is at the bottom.
- 3 Add DEP Account**: Follow the wizard to add the account. A green 'Add' button is at the bottom.

2. In the **Account Info** page, specify these settings:



The screenshot shows the 'Edit DEP Account' page in the XenMobile console. The top navigation bar is the same as in the previous screenshot. The main content area is titled 'Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) > Edit DEP Account'. On the left, there is a sidebar with a 'DEP Account' section containing a list of options: '1 Account Info' (highlighted), '2 Server Tokens', '3 Settings', 'iOS', 'macOS', '4 Setup Assistant Options', 'iOS', and 'macOS'. The main content area is titled 'Account Info' and includes the instruction 'Specify your Apple DEP account information.' Below this are five input fields, each with a label and an asterisk indicating it is required:

- DEP account name\*
- Business unit\*
- Unique service ID
- Support phone number\*
- Support email address

- **DEP account name**: A unique name for this DEP account. Use names that reflect how you organize DEP accounts, such as by country or organizational hierarchy.
- **Business unit**: The business unit or department to which the device is assigned. This field is required.

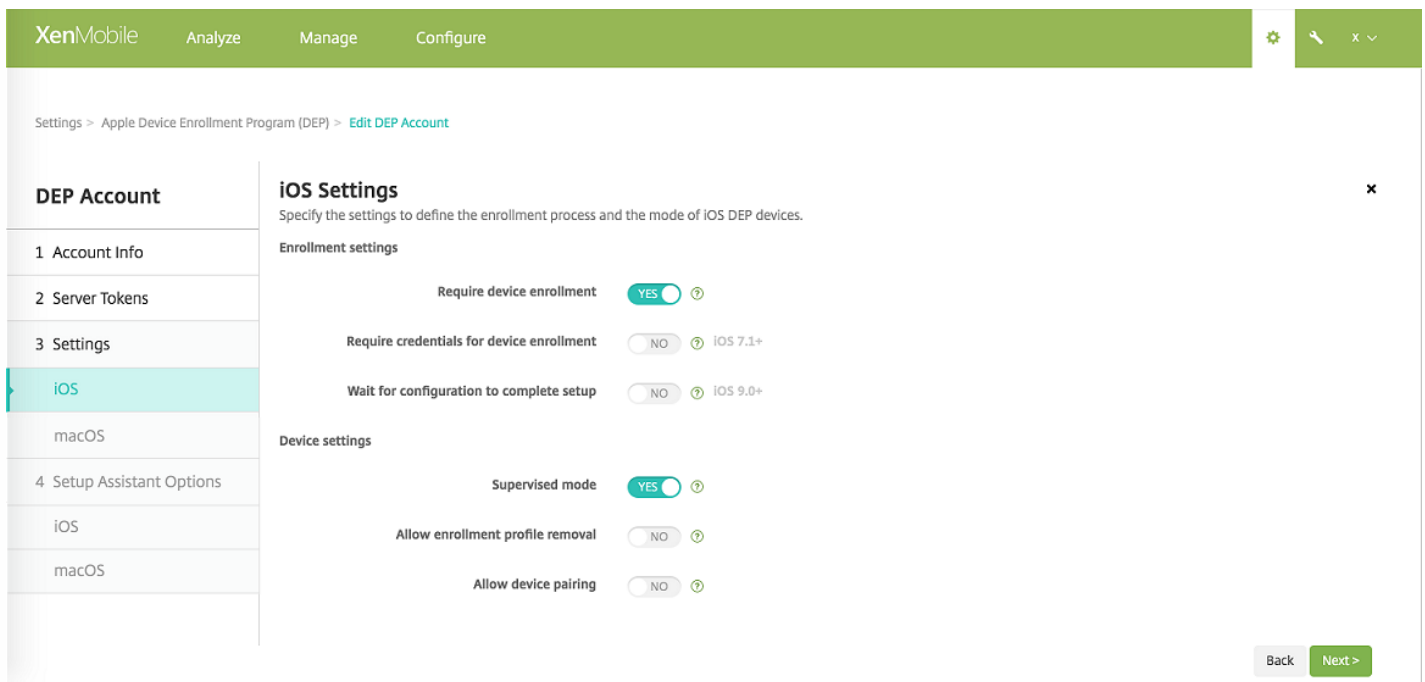
- **Unique service ID:** An optional unique ID to help you further identify the account.
- **Support phone number:** A support phone number that users may call for help during setup. This field is required.
- **Support email address:** An optional support email address available to end users.

3. In the **Server Tokens** page, specify your server token file and then click **Upload**.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface for configuring a DEP account. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The breadcrumb trail is 'Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) > Edit DEP Account'. The left sidebar shows the 'DEP Account' section with sub-items: '1 Account Info', '2 Server Tokens' (highlighted), '3 Settings', 'iOS', 'macOS', '4 Setup Assistant Options', 'iOS', and 'macOS'. The main content area is titled 'Server Tokens' and includes the instruction: 'Upload the Server Token file that you downloaded from Apple DEP portal.' Below this is a 'Select Server Token file\*' input field with an 'Upload' button. The form also contains the following fields: 'Consumer key', 'Consumer secret', 'Access token', 'Access secret', 'Access token expiration', 'Server name', 'Server UUID', 'Apple admin ID', 'Organization name', 'Organization email', 'Organization phone', and 'Organization address'. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Your server token information appears.

4. In **iOS Settings**, specify these settings:



## Enrollment settings

- **Require device enrollment:** Whether to require users to enroll their devices. The default is **Yes**.
- **Require credentials for device enrollment:** Whether to require users to enter their credentials during DEP set up. This feature is available for iOS 7.1 and higher. The default is **No**.  
 Note: When DEP is on for the first time setup and you don't select this option, the DEP components, such as DEP user, Secure Hub, software inventory, and DEP deployment group, are created. If you do select this option, XenMobile doesn't create the components. As a result, if you later clear this option, users who have not entered their credentials cannot perform the DEP enrollment because these DEP components do not exist. To add DEP components, in that case, you should disable and enable the DEP account.
- **Wait for configuration to complete setup:** Whether to require users' devices to remain in Setup Assistant mode until all MDM resources deploy to the device. This is available for iOS 9.0 and higher devices in supervised mode. The default is **No**.
  - Apple documentation states that the following commands may not work while a device is in Setup Assistant mode:
    - InviteToProgram
    - InstallApplication
    - ApplyRedemptionCode
    - InstallMedia
    - RequestMirroring
    - DeviceLock

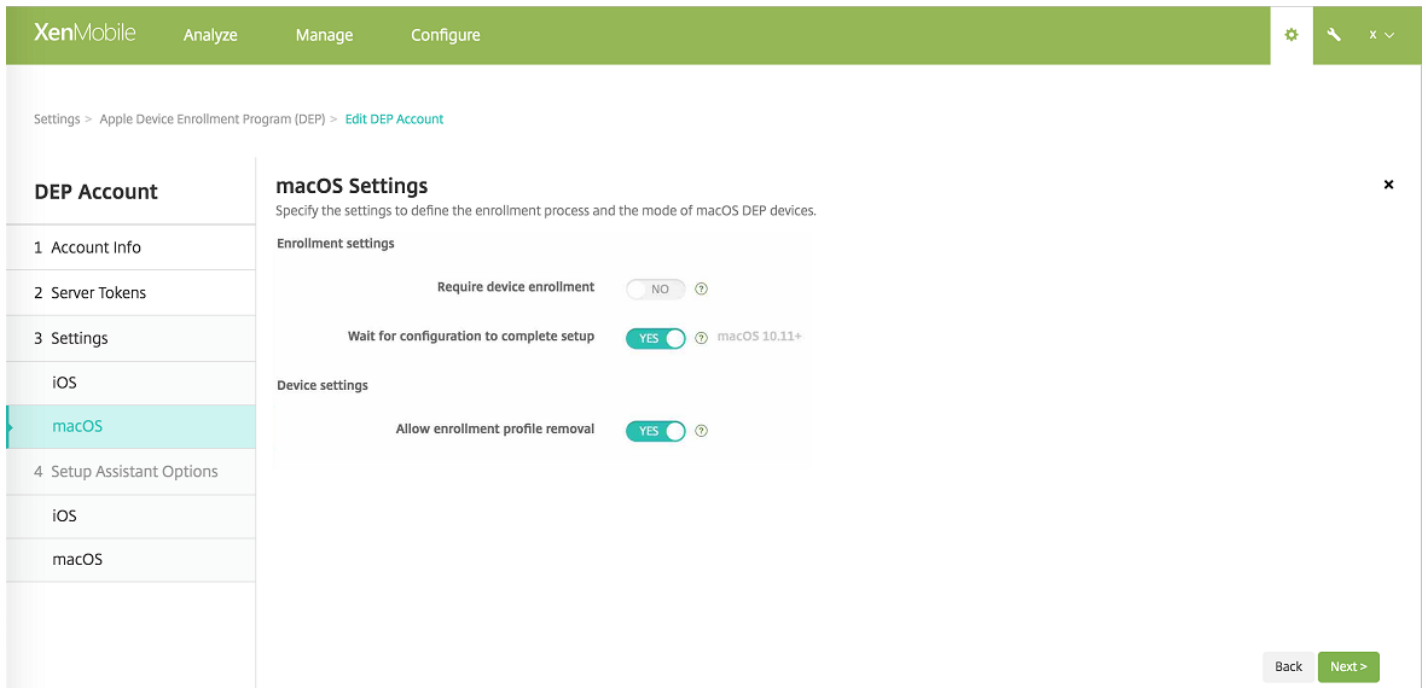
## Device settings

- **Supervised mode:** Must be set to **Yes** if you are using the Apple Configurator to manage DEP enrolled devices or when **Wait for configuration to complete setup** is enabled. The default is **Yes**. For details on placing an iOS device in supervised mode, see [To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator](#).
- **Allow enrollment profile removal:** Whether to allow devices to use a profile that you can remove remotely. The default is **No**.
- **Allow device pairing:** For devices enrolled through DEP, whether you can manage them through iTunes and the Apple



Configurator. The default is **No**.

5. In **macOS Settings**, specify these settings:



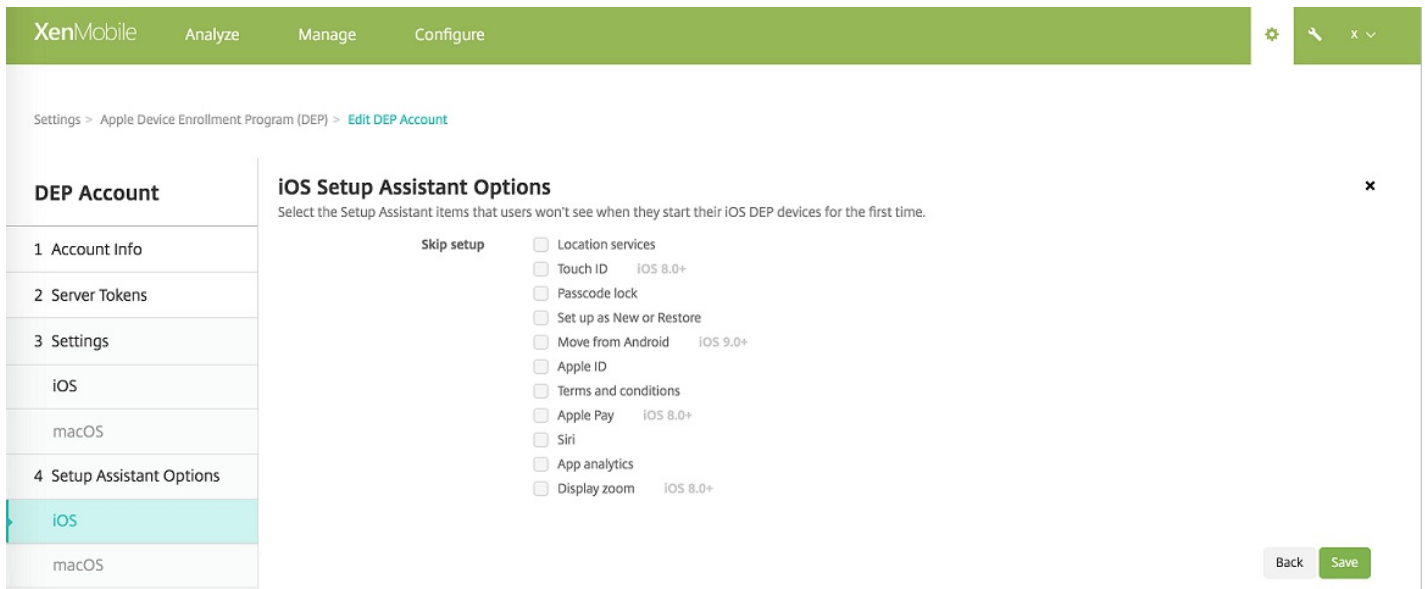
### Enrollment settings

- **Require device enrollment:** Whether to require users to enroll their devices. The default is **Yes**.
- **Wait for configuration to complete setup:** If **Yes**, the macOS device doesn't continue in the setup assistant until the MDM resource passcode gets deployed to the device. That deployment occurs before the creation of the local account. This is available for macOS 10.11 and higher devices. The default is **No**.

### Device settings

- **Allow enrollment profile removal:** Whether to allow devices to use a profile that you can remove remotely. The default is **No**.

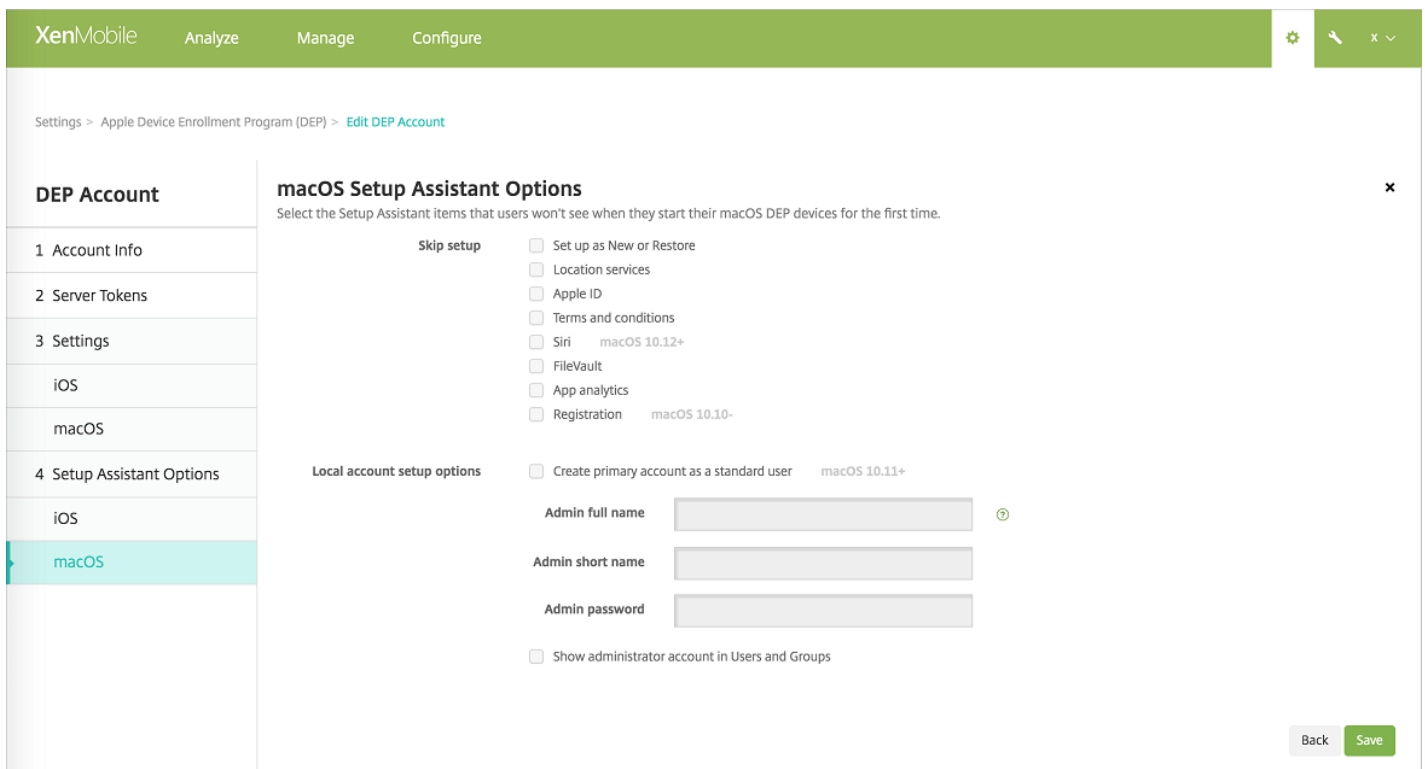
6. In **iOS Setup Assistant Options**, select the iOS Setup Assistant steps that your users will not have to take (that is, steps that are skipped) when they start their devices the first time. The default for all items is unchecked.



- **Location services:** Set up the location service on the device.
- **Touch ID:** Set up Touch ID on iOS 8.0 and later devices.
- **Passcode lock:** Create a passcode for the device.
- **Set up as New or Restore:** Set up the device as new or from an iCloud or iTunes backup.
- **Move from Android:** Enable transferring data from an Android device to an iOS 9 or later device. This option is available only when **Set up as New or Restore** is selected (that is, the step is skipped).
- **Apple ID:** Set up an Apple ID account for the device.
- **Terms and conditions:** Require users to accept terms and conditions for use of the device.
- **Apple Pay:** Set up Apple Pay on iOS 8.0 and later devices.
- **Siri:** Use or not use Siri on the device.
- **App analytics:** Set up whether to share crash data and usage statistics with Apple.
- **Display zoom:** Set up the display resolution (either standard or zoomed) on iOS 8.0 or later devices.

The DEP account appears on **Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)**.

7. In **macOS Setup Assistant Options**, select the macOS Setup Assistant steps that your users will not have to take (that is, steps that are skipped) when they start their devices the first time. The default for all items is unchecked.



- **Set up as New or Restore:** Set up the device as new or from an iCloud or iTunes backup.
- **Location services:** Set up the location service on the device.
- **Apple ID:** Set up an Apple ID account for the device.
- **Terms and conditions:** Require users to accept terms and conditions for use of the device.
- **Siri:** Use or not use Siri on the device.
- **FileVault:** Use FileVault to encrypt the startup disk. XenMobile applies the FileVault setting only if the system has a single local user account and that account is signed into iCloud.

Note: You can use the macOS FileVault Disk Encryption feature to protect the system volume by encrypting its contents (<https://support.apple.com/en-us/HT204837>). If you run the Setup assistant on a late-model portable Mac that doesn't have FileVault turned on, you might be prompted to turn on this feature. The prompt appears on both new systems and systems upgraded to OS X 10.10 or 10.11, but only if the system has a single local administrator account and that account is signed into iCloud.

- **App analytics:** Set up whether to share crash data and usage statistics with Apple.
- **Registration:** Require users to register their device.

Registration information setup was available through OS X 10.9. The registration process allowed you to send system registration information to Apple. This information associated your contact information with the Mac hardware. Apple primarily used the information to facilitate AppleCare support. If you previously entered an Apple ID, Setup Assistant optionally submitted the registration based on your Apple ID account. If you didn't enter an Apple ID, you could manually enter your contact information.

Under **Local account setup options**, specify the settings to create an administrator account, which is required for macOS. XenMobile creates the account, using the specified information.

8. To test connectivity between XenMobile and Apple, select the account and click **Test Connectivity**.

**Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)**

Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) streamlines the enrollment and management of iOS and macOS devices in XenMobile. The DEP notifies Apple servers about a device profile, which customizes the setup assistant experience and assigns the profile to specific devices. These steps assume an Apple ID for the organization has already been created, as outlined in the [Device Enrollment Program Guide](#).

- Download Public Key**  
A Public Key will be automatically generated for you and signed by Citrix.  
[Download](#)
- Create a Server Token file**
  - Sign in to [Apple Deployment Programs Portal](#) with your corporate Apple ID.
  - Navigate to Device Enrollment Program > Manage Servers. Click [Add MDM Server](#).
  - Enter a MDM Server Name, then click [Choose File...](#) and upload your Public Key.
  - Download the Server Token file provided.
- Add DEP Account**  
Follow the wizard to add the account.  
[Add](#)

<input type="checkbox"/>	Account name	Business unit	Created on	Status	Apple admin ID	Organization email	Server token expires on
<input type="checkbox"/>	DEP Account FR	CITRIX SYSTEMS FR (mdm.fducos.fr)	06/13/2016 12:49:44 pm	Enabled	XMFrdEPAdm@outlook.com	XMFrdEPAdm@outlook.com	06/13/2017 07:44:57 pm
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	DEP Account US	CITRIX SYSTEMS US (dev.paris)	06/13/2016 12:20:02 pm	Enabled	citrixxenmobilevpp@outlook.com	CitrixXenmobileVPP@outlook.com	06/14/2017 12:45:21 am
<input type="checkbox"/>	DEP Account US 2	CITRIX SYSTEMS US 2 (mdm.fducos.fr)	07/11/2016 11:20:01 am	Enabled	citrixxenmobilevpp@outlook.com	CitrixXenmobileVPP@outlook.com	07/11/2017 06:17:43 pm

Showing 1 - 3 of 3 items

A status message appears.

**Test Connectivity**

✓ Connection Successful

[OK](#)

Settings > [Apple Device Enrollment Program \(DEP\)](#)

**Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)**

Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) streamlines the enrollment and management of iOS and macOS devices in XenMobile. The DEP notifies Apple servers about a device profile, which customizes the setup assistant experience and assigns the profile to specific devices. These steps assume an Apple ID for the organization has already been created, as outlined in the [Device Enrollment Program Guide](#).

- Download Public Key**  
A Public Key will be automatically generated for you and signed by Citrix.  
[Download](#)
- Create a Server Token file**
  - Sign in to [Apple Deployment Programs Portal](#) with your corporate Apple ID.
  - Navigate to Device Enrollment Program > Manage Servers. Click [Add MDM Server](#).
  - Enter a MDM Server Name, then click [Choose File...](#) and upload your Public Key.
  - Download the Server Token file provided.
- Add DEP Account**  
Follow the wizard to add the account.  
[Add](#)

<input type="checkbox"/>	Account name	Business unit	Created on	Status	Apple admin ID	Organization email	Server token expires on
<input type="checkbox"/>	DEP Account FR	CITRIX SYSTEMS FR (mdm.fducos.fr)	06/13/2016 12:49:44 pm	Enabled	XMFrdEPAdm@outlook.com	XMFrdEPAdm@outlook.com	06/13/2017 07:44:57 pm
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	DEP Account US	CITRIX SYSTEMS US (dev.paris)	06/13/2016 12:20:02 pm	Enabled	citrixxenmobilevpp@outlook.com	CitrixXenmobileVPP@outlook.com	06/14/2017 12:45:21 am
<input type="checkbox"/>	DEP Account US 2	CITRIX SYSTEMS US 2 (mdm.fducos.fr)	07/11/2016 11:20:01 am	Enabled	citrixxenmobilevpp@outlook.com	CitrixXenmobileVPP@outlook.com	07/11/2017 06:17:43 pm

Showing 1 - 3 of 3 items

Configure deployment rules of device policies and

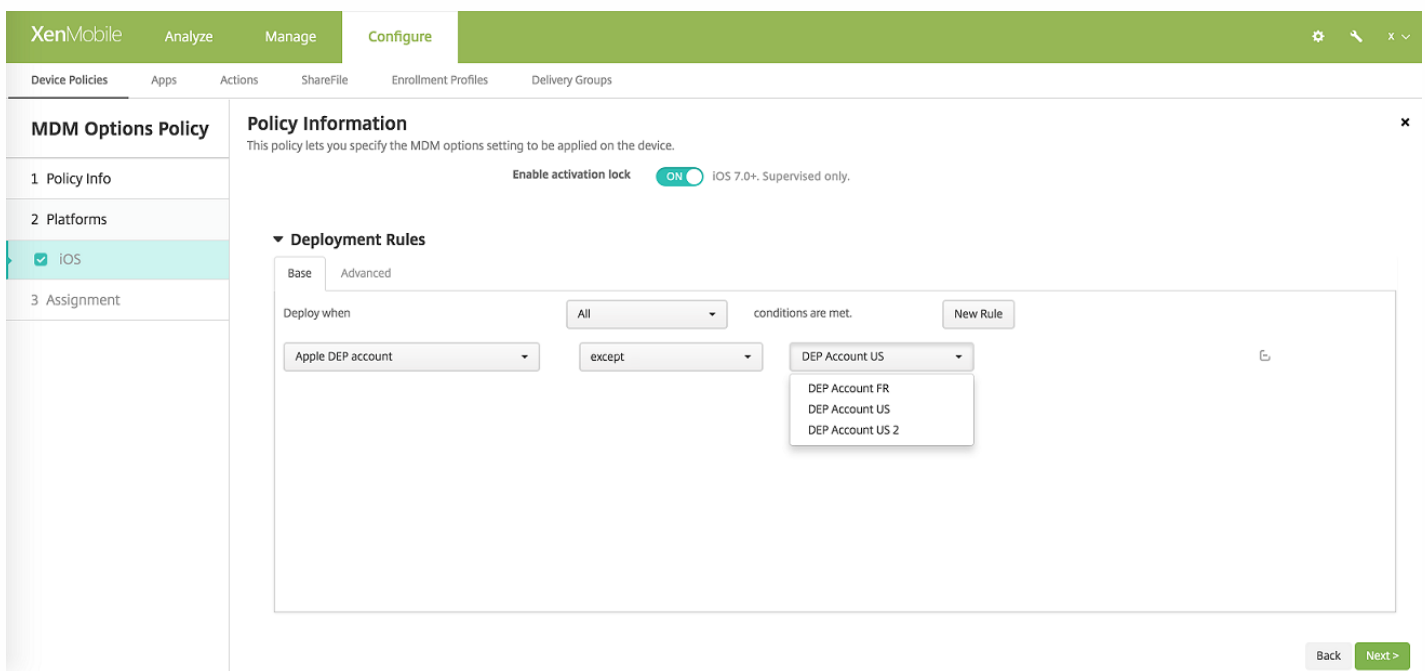
# apps for DEP accounts

You can associate DEP accounts with different device policies and apps by using the **Deployment Rules** section under **Configure > Device Policies** and **Configure > Apps**. You can specify that a policy or app either:

- Deploys only for a particular Apple DEP account.
- Deploys for all Apple DEP accounts except the one selected.

The list of DEP accounts includes only those accounts with a status of enabled or disabled. If the DEP account is disabled, the DEP device doesn't belong to this account. Therefore, XenMobile doesn't deploy the app or policy to the device.

In the following example, the MDM Options policy for iOS deploys to devices except for those with the Apple DEP account "DEP Account US".



In the following example, a public app store app for iPhone deploys only for devices with the Apple DEP account "DEP Account US".

# Configure Apple Configurator settings

1. In the XenMobile console, go to **Settings > Apple Configurator Device Enrollment**.

2. Set **Enable Apple Configurator device enrollment** to **Yes**.

3. The **Enrollment URL to enter in Apple Configurator** is a read-only field. This is the URL for the XenMobile server that communicates with Apple. Later in these steps, you copy and paste the URL into the Apple Configurator. In Apple Configurator 2, the enrollment URL is the XenMobile server fully qualified domain name (FQDN), such as `mdm.server.url.com`, or the IP address.

4. To prevent unknown devices from enrolling, set **Require device registration before enrollment** to **Yes**. Note: If this setting is **Yes**, you must add the configured devices to **Manage > Devices** in XenMobile manually or through a CSV file before enrollment.

5. To require users of iOS 7.1 and later devices to enter their credentials when enrolling, set **Require credentials for device enrollment** to **Yes**. The default is not to require credentials for enrollment.

6. Note: If the XenMobile server is using a trusted SSL certificate, skip this step. Click **Export anchor certs** and save the `certchain.pem` file to the OS X keychain (login or System).

XenMobile Dashboard Manage Configure Admin

Settings > Apple Configurator Device Enrollment

### Apple Configurator Device Enrollment

Use Apple Configurator to mass configure and deploy iPhone, iPad or iPod Touch.

**Export anchor certificates**

Enable Apple Configurator device enrollment  YES

Enrollment URL to enter in Apple Configurator `https://example.domain.net:8443/zdm/ios/otae/dobulkenrollment`

Require device registration before enrollment  NO ?

Require credentials for device enrollment  YES ? iOS 7.1+

Cancel Save

7. Start the Apple Configurator and go to **Prepare > Setup > Configure Settings**.

8. In the **Device Enrollment** setting, paste the MDM server URL from step 4 into the **MDM server URL** box in the Configurator.

9. In the **Device Enrollment** setting, copy the Root Certificate Authority and SSL Servers Certificate Authority to the **Anchor** certificates, if XenMobile isn't using a trusted SSL certificate.

10. Use a Dock Connector-to-USB cable to connect devices to the Mac running the Apple Configurator to configure up to 30 connected devices simultaneously. If you do not have a Dock Connector, use one or more powered USB 2.0 high-speed hubs to connect the devices.

11. Click **Prepare**. For more information on preparing devices with the Apple Configurator, see the Apple Configurator help page, [Prepare devices](#).

12. In the Apple Configurator, configure the device policies you require.

13. As each device is prepared, turn it on to start the iOS Setup Assistant, which prepares the device for first-time use.

## To renew or update certificates when using the Apple DEP

When the XenMobile Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) certificate is renewed, you upload a new certificate in the XenMobile console in **Settings > Certificates**. In the **Import** dialog box, in **Use as**, be sure to click **SSL Listener** so that the certificate is used for SSL. After you restart the server, XenMobile uses the new SSL certificate. For more information about certificates in XenMobile, see [Uploading Certificates in XenMobile](#).

It is not necessary to reestablish the trust relationship between Apple DEP and XenMobile when you renew or update the SSL certificate. You can, however, reconfigure your DEP settings at any time by following the preceding steps in this article.

For more information about Apple DEP, see the [Apple documentation](#).

## To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator

### Important

Placing a device into Supervised mode will install the selected version of iOS on the device, completely wiping the device of any previously stored user data or apps.

1. Install [Apple Configurator](#) from iTunes.
2. Connect the iOS device to your Apple computer.
3. Start Apple Configurator. The Configurator shows that you have a device to prepare for supervision.
4. To prepare the device for supervision:
  - a. Set the **Supervision control** to **On**. Citrix recommends that you choose this setting if you intend to maintain control of the device by reapplying a configuration regularly.
  - b. Optionally, provide a name for the device.
  - c. In iOS, click **Latest** for the latest version of iOS that you want to install.
5. When you are ready to prepare the device for supervision, click **Prepare**.



# Deploy iOS and macOS devices through Apple DEP

Feb 27, 2017

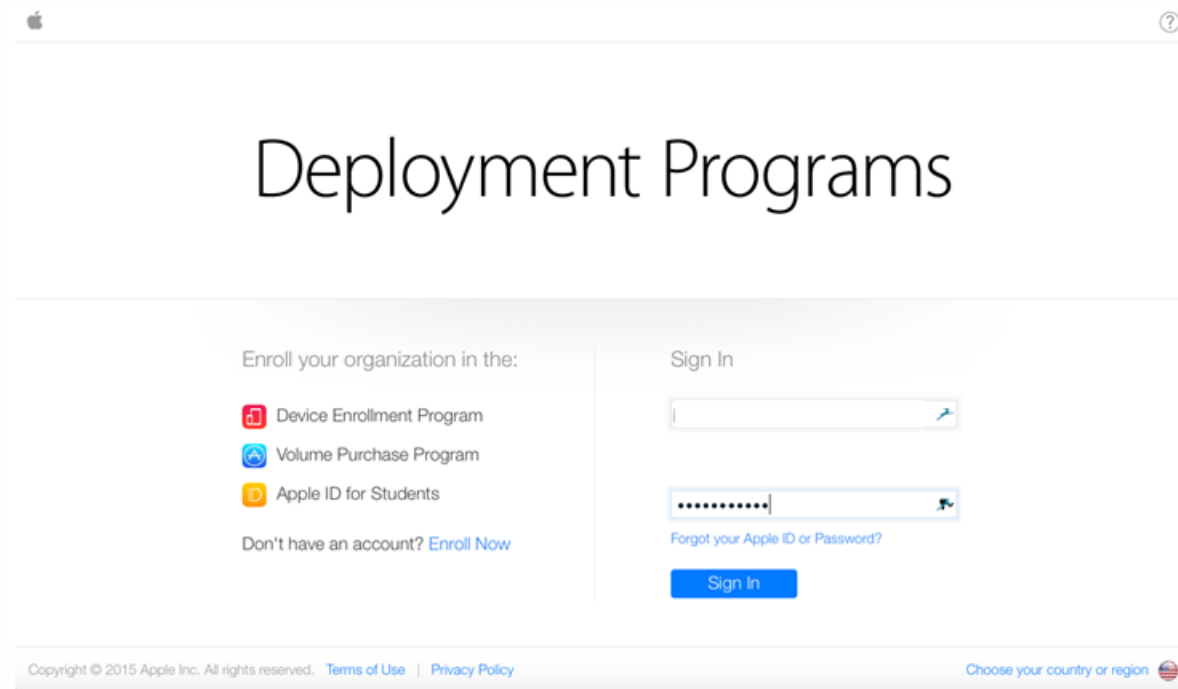
You must enroll in the Apple Deployment Program to use the Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) for iOS and macOS device enrollment and management in XenMobile. For information about signing up for an Apple Deployment Program account, see this [PDF](#) from Apple.

Be aware that the Apple Deployment Program is available for organizations and not individuals. You must provide a considerable amount of corporate details and information to create an Apple Deployment Program account. Thus, it could take time to request and receive approval for accounts.

## Enroll in the Apple Deployment Program

1. Go to [deploy.apple.com](https://deploy.apple.com) to apply for an Apple Deployment Program account. When applying for a DEP account, the best practice is to use an email address for the organization, such as `dep@company.com`.

Note: For education accounts, go to <https://school.apple.com/>.



The screenshot shows the Apple Deployment Programs website. At the top left is the Apple logo, and at the top right is a help icon. The main heading is "Deployment Programs". Below this, there are two columns. The left column is titled "Enroll your organization in the:" and lists three options: "Device Enrollment Program" (with a red icon), "Volume Purchase Program" (with a blue icon), and "Apple ID for Students" (with a yellow icon). Below these options is a link: "Don't have an account? [Enroll Now](#)". The right column is titled "Sign In" and contains a text input field, a password input field (with a strength indicator), a link "Forgot your Apple ID or Password?", and a blue "Sign In" button. At the bottom of the page, there is a footer with "Copyright © 2015 Apple Inc. All rights reserved." followed by links for "Terms of Use" and "Privacy Policy", and a link "Choose your country or region" with a globe icon.

2. After you type your organization information, Apple emails you a temporary password for the new Apple ID.

- 1 Your Details
- 2 Verification Contact
- 3 Institution Details
- 4 Review

## Check Your E-mail

An e-mail has been sent to [redacted] with your Apple ID and temporary password, and the next steps to continue your enrollment.

1. Complete your Apple ID setup.

[Visit My Apple ID >](#)

Using the Apple ID and temporary password included in the e-mail, sign in and complete your account setup at My Apple ID.

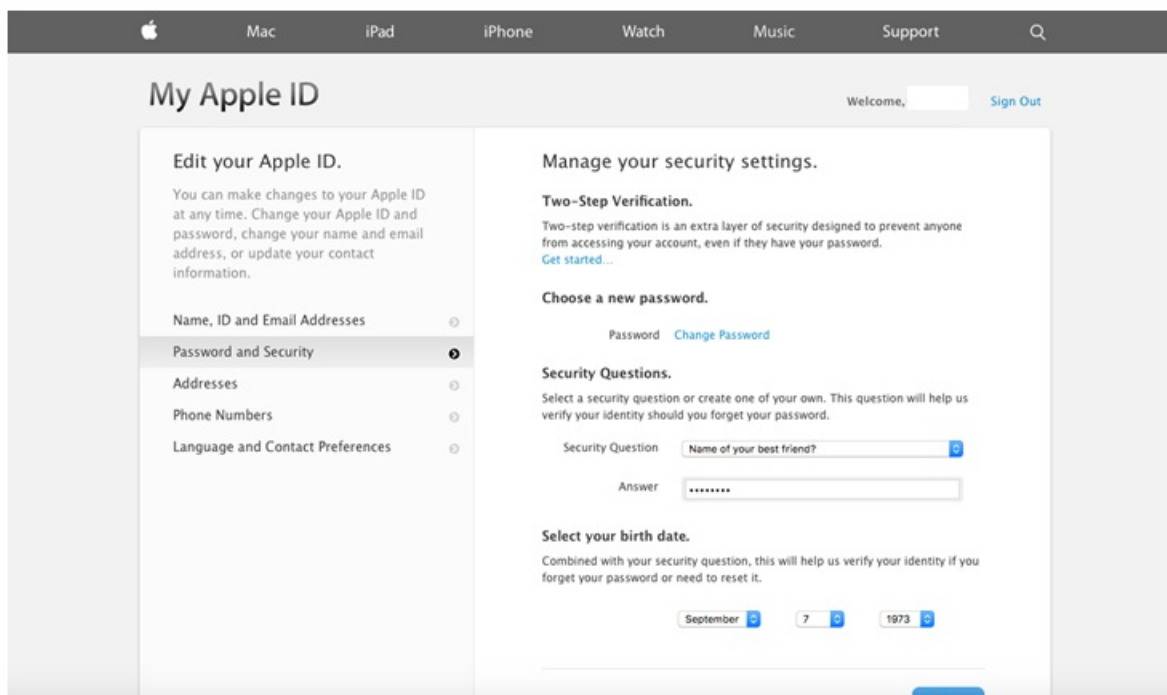
2. Enable two-step verification for this account as it is required by some programs.

3. Continue your Deployment Programs enrollment.

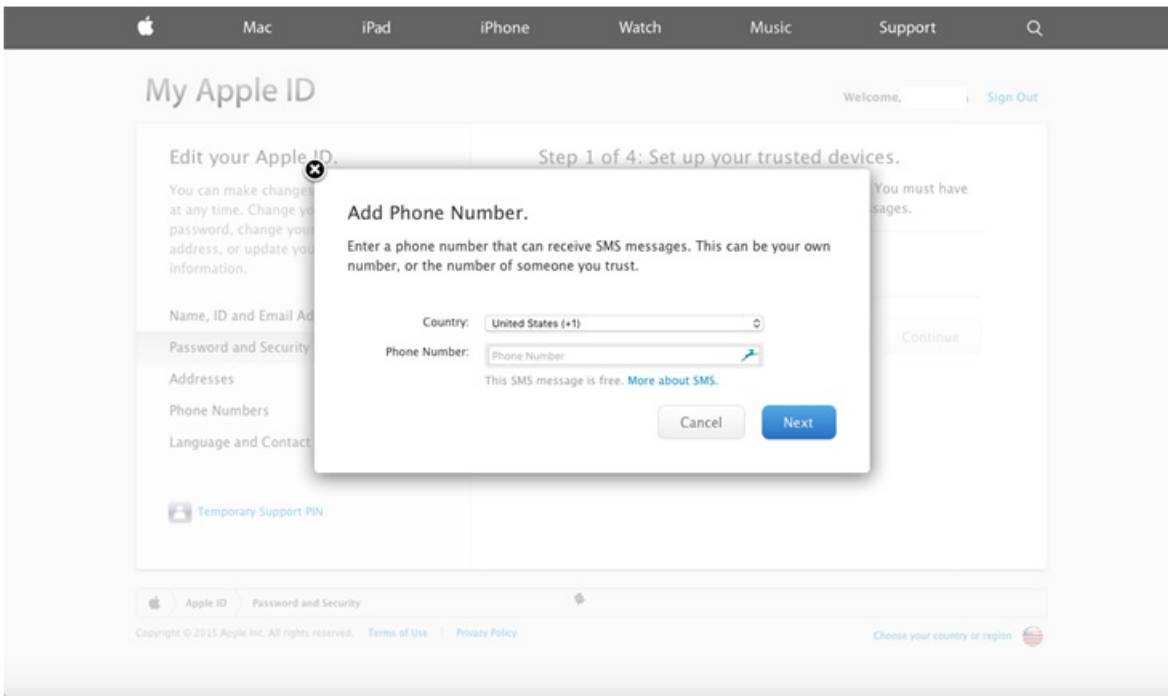
After completing the steps above, please return and continue this enrollment here at [deploy.apple.com](https://deploy.apple.com).

Resend E-mail

3. You then sign in with your Apple ID and complete the security settings for the account.

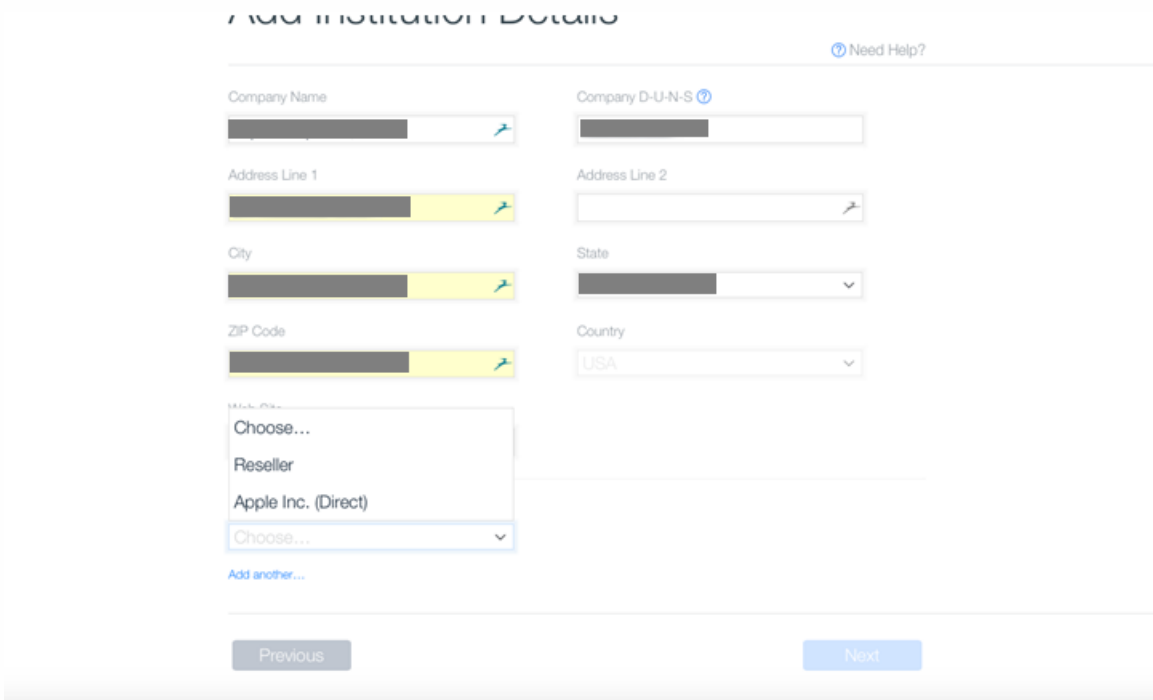


4. Configure and enable two-step verification, which is required for use with the DEP Portal. During these steps, after you add a phone number, you receive the 4-digit PIN for the two-step verification.



5. Log in to the DEP Portal to complete the account configuration using the two-step verification that you set up.

6. Add your company details and then select from where you purchase devices. For details on purchasing options, see the next section, [Ordering DEP-enabled devices](#).



7. Add the Apple Customer Number or the DEP Reseller ID. Then verify your enrollment details and wait for Apple to approve your account.

## ADD INSTITUTION DETAILS

[Need Help?](#)

Company Name	Company D-U-N-S <a href="#">?</a>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Address Line 1	Address Line 2
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
City	State
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
ZIP Code	Country
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="USA"/>
Web Site	
<input type="text"/>	
Devices Purchased From	DEP Reseller ID <a href="#">?</a>
<input type="text" value="Reseller"/>	<input type="text"/>
	CDW

[Add another...](#)

Previous

Next

Deployment Programs

1 Your Details 2 Verification Contact 3 Institution Details 4 Review

## Review Your Enrollment Details

[Need Help?](#)

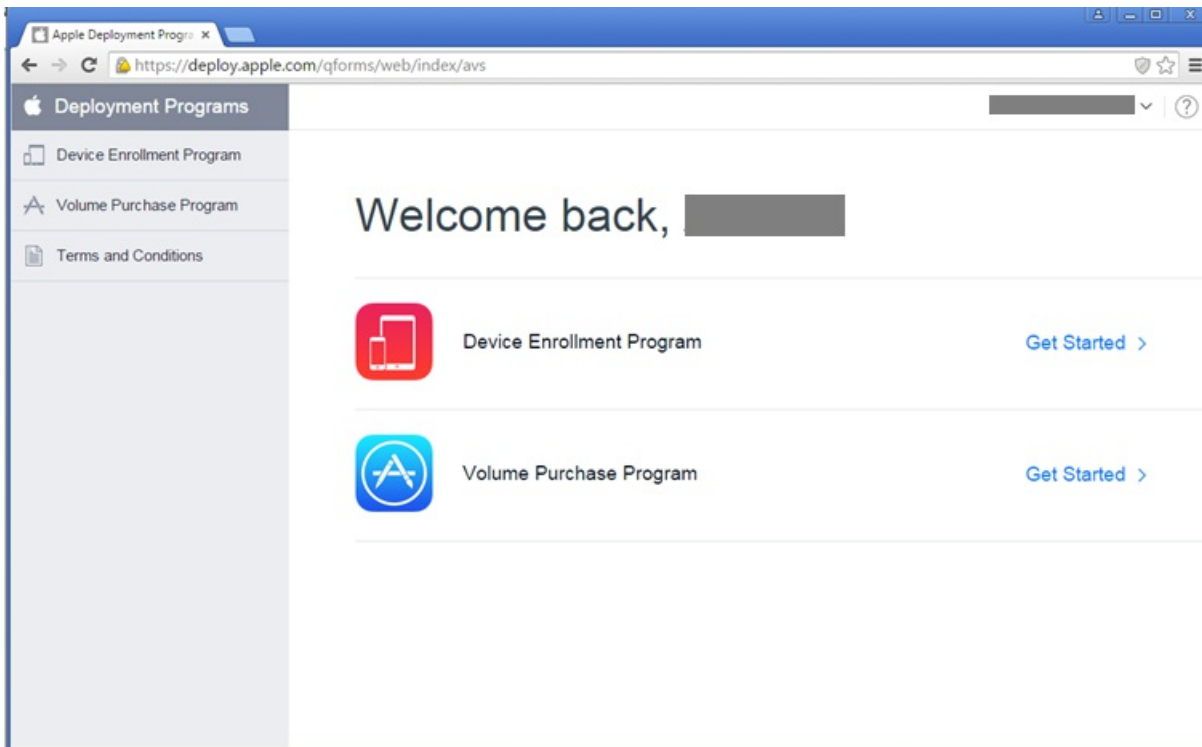
Your Details Verification Contact Institution Details

Your Name	Verification Contact Name	Company Name
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Your Work E-mail	Verification Contact Work E-mail	Web Site
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Your Work Phone	Verification Contact Work Phone	Address
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Your Title / Position	Title / Position	Devices Purchased From
General Manager	General Manager	<input type="text"/>

Edit

Submit

8. After you receive your logon credentials from Apple, log in to the Apple DEP Portal.



To connect your account to XenMobile, see "Integrate your Apple DEP account with XenMobile" in [Bulk enrollment of iOS and macOS devices](#).

### Order DEP-enabled devices

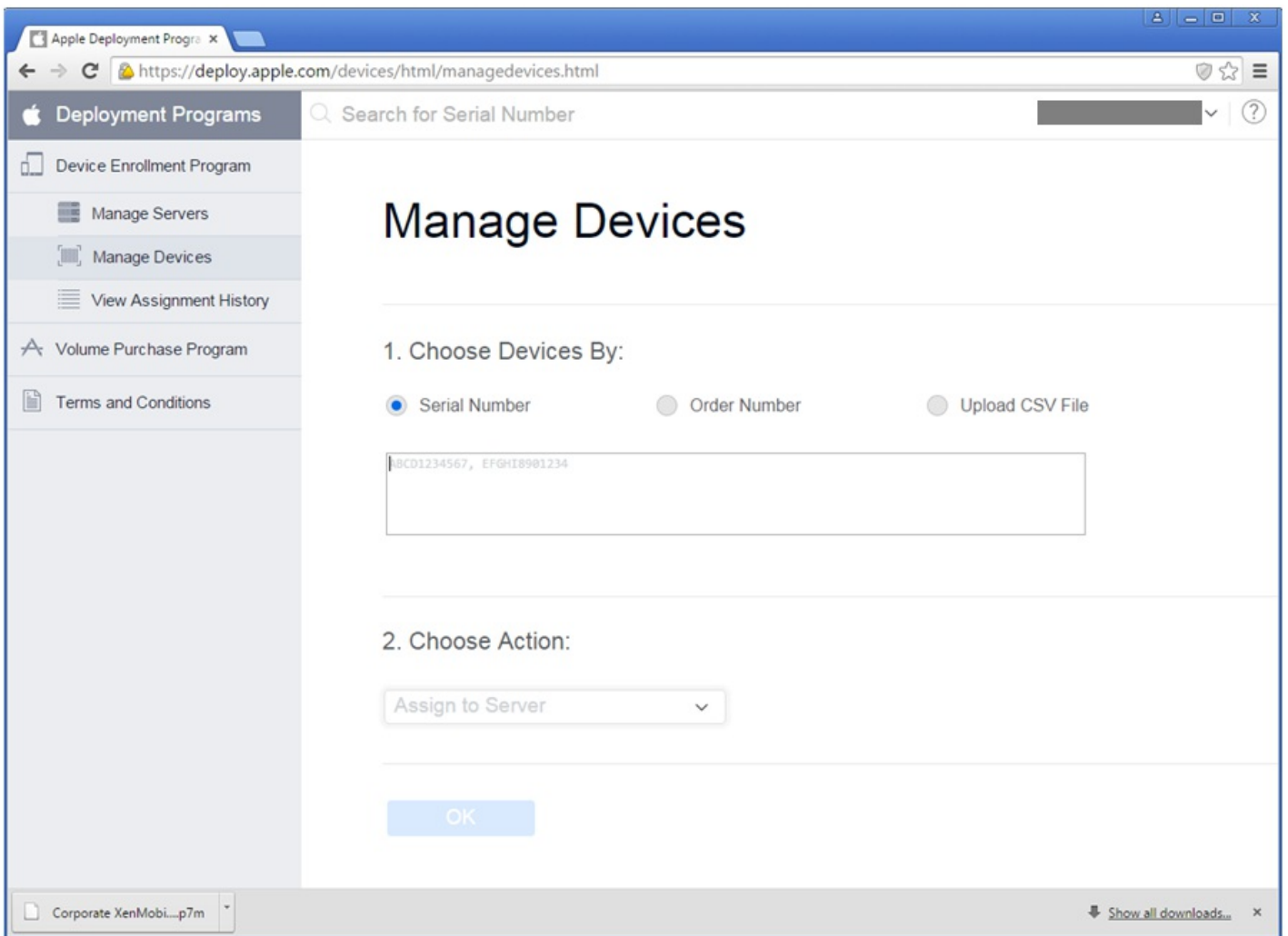
You can order DEP-enabled devices directly from Apple or DEP-enabled authorized resellers or carriers. To order from Apple, provide your Apple Customer ID in the Apple DEP Portal. Your Customer ID enables Apple to associate your purchased devices with your Apple DEP account.

To order from your reseller or carrier, contact your Apple reseller or carrier to check if they participate in the Apple DEP. Ask for the Apple DEP ID of the reseller when purchasing devices. Apple requires that information when you add your Apple DEP reseller to your Apple DEP account. After you add the Apple DEP ID for the reseller, you receive a DEP customer ID. Provide the DEP customer ID to the reseller, who uses the ID to submit information about your device purchases to Apple. For more information, see this [Apple website](#).

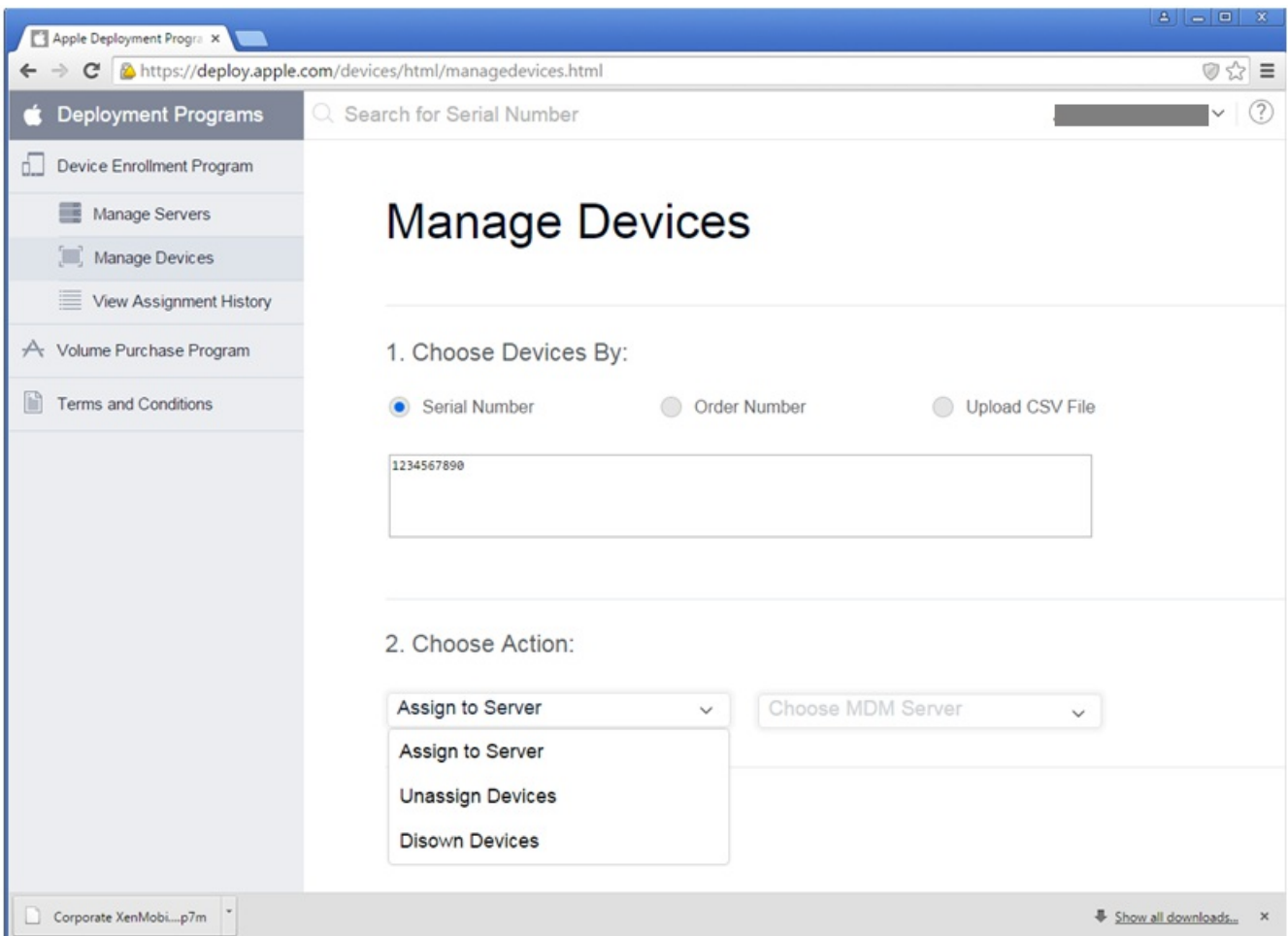
### Manage DEP-enabled devices

Follow these steps to associate devices with your XenMobile Server by using the DEP Portal to update your Apple DEP account.

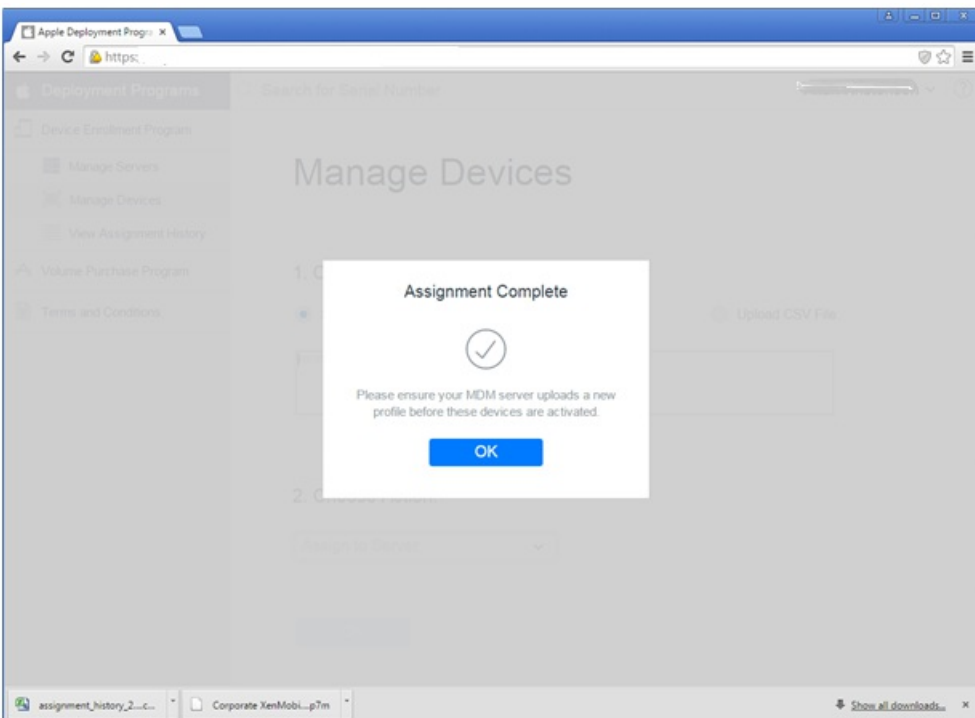
1. Log on to the Apple DEP Portal.
2. Click **Device Enrollment Program** and then click **Manage Devices**. In **Choose Devices By**, choose the option for which you want to upload and define your Apple DEP-enabled devices: **Serial Number**, **Order Number**, or **Upload CSV File**.



3. To assign your devices to a XenMobile Server, under **Choose Action**, choose **Assign to Server**. Then, in the list, choose the name of your XenMobile Server. Click **OK**.



Your Apple DEP devices are now associated with the selected XenMobile Server.



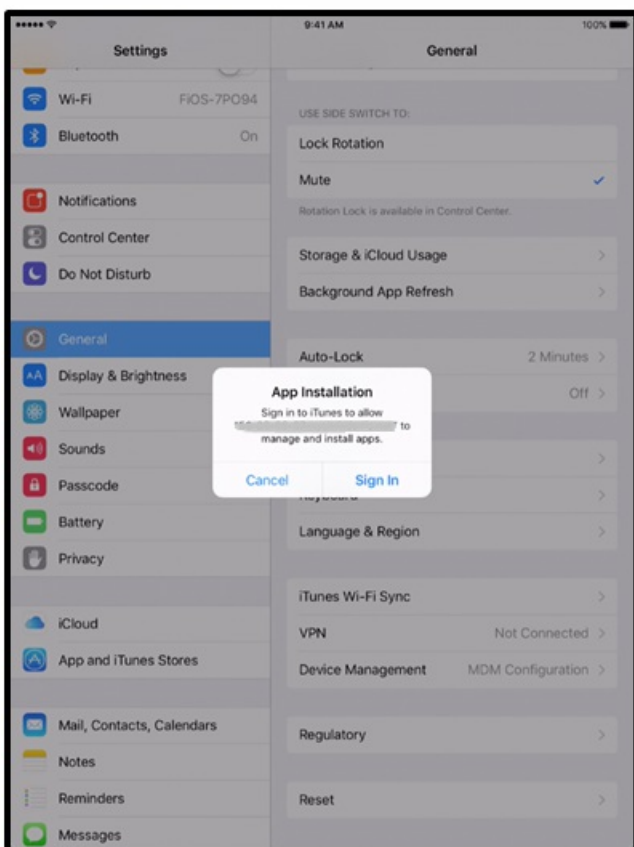
## User experience when enrolling an Apple DEP-enabled device

When users enroll an Apple DEP-enabled device, their experience is as follows.

1. Users start their Apple DEP-enabled device.
2. XenMobile delivers the Apple DEP configuration that you configured in the XenMobile console to the Apple DEP-enabled device.
3. Users configure the initial settings on their device.
4. The device automatically starts the XenMobile device enrollment process.
5. Users continue to configure the other initial settings on their device.
6. In the home screen, users might be prompted to sign in to iTunes so that they can download Citrix Secure Hub.

### Note

This step is optional if XenMobile is configured to deploy the Secure Hub app using the device-based Volume Purchase Program (VPP) app assignment. In this case, you don't need to create an iTunes account or use an existing account.



7. Users open Secure Hub and type their credentials. If required by the policy, users might be prompted to create and verify a Citrix PIN.



XenMobile deploys any remaining required apps to the device.

# Client properties

Apr 26, 2017

Client properties contain information that is provided directly to Secure Hub on user devices. You can use these properties to configure advanced settings, such as the Citrix PIN. You obtain client properties from Citrix support.

Client properties are subject to change with every release of client apps, particularly Secure Hub. For details about more commonly configured client properties, see [Client property reference](#), later in this article.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Under **Client**, click **Client Properties**. The **Client Properties** page appears. You can add, edit, and delete client properties from this page.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The user is logged in as 'administrator'. The breadcrumb trail is 'Settings > Client Properties'. The main heading is 'Client Properties' with a sub-instruction: 'To change a property, select the property and then click Edit.' Below this is an 'Add' button. A table lists the following client properties:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Key	Value	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enable Citrix PIN Authentication	ENABLE_PASSCODE_AUTH	false	Enable Citrix PIN Authentication
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enable User Password Caching	ENABLE_PASSWORD_CACHING	false	Enable User Password Caching
<input type="checkbox"/>	Encrypt secrets using Passcode	ENCRYPT_SECRETS_USING_PASSCODE	false	Encrypt secrets using Pin or AD password
<input type="checkbox"/>	PIN Strength Requirement	PASSCODE_TYPE	Numeric	PIN Strength Requirement
<input type="checkbox"/>	PIN Type	PASSCODE_STRENGTH	Medium	PIN Type
<input type="checkbox"/>	PIN Length Requirement	PASSCODE_MIN_LENGTH	6	PIN Length Requirement
<input type="checkbox"/>	PIN Change Requirement	PASSCODE_EXPIRY	90	PIN Change Requirement
<input type="checkbox"/>	PIN History	PASSCODE_HISTORY	5	PIN History
<input type="checkbox"/>	Inactivity Timer	INACTIVITY_TIMER	15	Inactivity Timer
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enable FIPS Mode	ENABLE_FIPS_MODE	false	Enable FIPS Mode

## To add a client property

1. Click **Add**. The **Add New Client Property** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Settings > Client Properties > Add New Client Property

### Add New Client Property

Key  ?

Value\*

Name\*

Description\*

Cancel Save

2. Configure these settings:

- **Key:** In the list, click the property key you want to add. **Important:** Contact Citrix Support before making any changes or request a special key to make a change.
- **Value:** Enter the selected property's value.
- **Name:** Enter a name for the property.
- **Description:** Enter a description of the property.

3. Click **Save**.

To edit a client property

1. In the **Client Properties** table, select the client property you want to edit.

**Note:** When you select the check box next to a client property, the options menu appears above the client property list; when you click anywhere else in the list, the options menu appears on the right side of the listing.

2. Click **Edit**. The **Edit Client Property** page appears.

Settings > Client Properties > Edit Client Property

### Edit Client Property

Key: ENABLE\_PASSCODE\_AUTH

Value\*: true

Name\*: Enable Citrix PIN Authentication

Description\*: Enable Citrix PIN Authentication

3. Change the following information as appropriate:

- **Key:** You cannot change this field.
- **Value:** The property's value.
- **Name:** The property's name.
- **Description:** The property's description.

4. Click **Save** to save your changes or **Cancel** to leave the property unchanged.

To delete a client property

1. In the **Client Properties** table, select the client property you want to delete.

**Note:** You can select more than one property to delete by selecting the check box next to each property.

2. Click **Delete**. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** again.

## Client property reference

The XenMobile predefined client properties and their default settings are as follows.

### CONTAINER\_SELF\_DESTRUCT\_PERIOD

Display name: MDX Container Self Destruct Period

Self-destruct prevents access to Secure Hub and managed apps, after a certain number of days of inactivity. After the time limit, apps are no longer usable, and the user device is unenrolled from the XenMobile server. Wiping the data includes clearing the app data for each installed app, including the app cache and user data. The inactivity time is when the server does not receive an authentication request to validate the user over a specific length of time. For example, if you set 30 days for the policy and the user does not use Secure Hub or other apps for more than 30 days then the policy takes effect.

This global security policy applies to iOS and Android platforms and is an enhancement of the existing app lock and wipe policies.

To configure this global policy, go to **Settings > Client Properties** and add the custom key

## **CONTAINER\_SELF\_DESTRUCT\_PERIOD.**

Value: Number of days

## **DEVICE\_LOGS\_TO\_IT\_HELP\_DESK**

Display name: Send device logs to IT help desk

This property enables or disables the ability to send logs to the IT help desk.

Possible values: **true** or **false**

Default value: **false**

## **DISABLE\_LOGGING**

Display name: Disable Logging

This property lets you disable the ability for users to collect and upload logs from their devices. Logging is disabled for Secure Hub and for all installed MDX apps. Users cannot send logs for any app from the Support page; even though the mail composition dialog box appears, logs are not attached, but a message is appended saying that logging is disabled. In addition to the effect on users' devices, you cannot modify log settings in the XenMobile console for Secure Hub and MDX apps.

When this property is set to **true**, Secure Hub sets **Block application logs** to **true**, ensuring that MDX apps stop logging when the new policy is applied.

Possible values: **true** or **false**

Default value: **false** (logging is not disabled)

## **ENABLE\_CRASH\_REPORTING**

Display name: Enable Crash Reporting

This property enables or disables crash reporting using Crashlytics for XenMobile Apps.

Possible values: **true** or **false**

Default value: **false**

## **ENABLE\_CREDENTIAL\_STORE**

Display name: Enable Credential Store

Enabling the credential store means that Android or iOS users enter their password one time when accessing XenMobile Apps. You can use the credential store whether or not you enable Citrix PIN. If you don't enable Citrix PIN, users enter their Active Directory password. XenMobile supports use of Active Directory passwords with the credential store only for Secure Hub and public store apps. XenMobile doesn't support PKI authentication if you use Active Directory passwords with the credential store.

Automatic enrollment in Secure Mail requires that you set this property to **true**.

To configure this custom client policy, go to **Settings > Client Properties**, add the custom

key **ENABLE\_CREDENTIAL\_STORE**, and set the **Value** to **true**.

#### **ENABLE\_FIPS\_MODE**

Display name: Enable FIPS Mode

This property enables or disables FIPS mode on mobile devices. After you change the value, Secure Hub passes the new value to the device when Secure Hub does the next online authentication.

Possible values: **true** or **false**

Default value: **false**

#### **ENABLE\_NETWORK\_EXTENSION**

Display name: ENABLE\_NETWORK\_EXTENSION

By default, XenMobile enables the Apple Network Extension framework when Secure Hub installs. To disable Network Extension, go to **Settings > Client Properties**, add the custom key **ENABLE\_NETWORK\_EXTENSION**, and set the **Value** to **false**.

Default value: **true**

#### **ENABLE\_PASSCODE\_AUTH**

Display name: Enable Citrix PIN Authentication

This property allows you to turn on Citrix PIN functionality. With the Citrix PIN or passcode, users are prompted to define a PIN to use instead of their Active Directory password. This setting is automatically enabled when **ENABLE\_PASSWORD\_CACHING** is enabled or when XenMobile is using certificate authentication.

If users are performing offline authentication, the Citrix PIN is validated locally and users are allowed to access the app or content they requested. If users are performing online authentication, the Citrix PIN or passcode is used to unlock the Active Directory password or certificate, which is then sent to perform authentication with XenMobile.

Possible values: **true** or **false**

Default value: **false**

#### **ENABLE\_PASSWORD\_CACHING**

Display name: Enable User Password Caching

This property enables the users' Active Directory password to be cached locally on the mobile device. When you set this property to **true**, you must also set the **ENABLE\_PASSCODE\_AUTH** property to **true**. With user password caching enabled, XenMobile prompts users to set a Citrix PIN or passcode.

Possible values: **true** or **false**

Default value: **false**

#### **ENABLE\_TOUCH\_ID\_AUTH**

Display name: Enable Touch ID Authentication

For devices that support Touch ID authentication, this property enables or disables Touch ID authentication on the device. Requirements:

User devices must have Citrix PIN or LDAP enabled. If LDAP authentication is off (for example, because only certificate-based authentication is used), users must set a Citrix PIN. In this case, XenMobile requires the Citrix PIN even if the client property **ENABLE\_PASSCODE\_AUTH** is **false**.

Set **ENABLE\_PASSCODE\_AUTH** to **false** so that when users launch an app, they must respond to a prompt to use Touch ID.

Possible values: **true** or **false**

Default value: **false**

### **ENABLE\_WORXHOME\_CEIP**

Display name: Enable Worx Home CEIP

This property turns on the Customer Experience Improvement Program. This will send anonymous configuration and usage data to Citrix periodically. This data helps Citrix improve the quality, reliability, and performance of XenMobile.

Value: **true** or **false**

Default value: **false**

### **ENABLE\_WORXHOME\_GA**

Display name: Enable Google Analytics in Worx Home

This property enables or disables the ability to collect data using Google Analytics in Worx Home. When you change this setting, the new value is set only when the user next logs on to Secure Hub (Worx Home).

Possible values: **true** or **false**

Default value: **true**

### **ENCRYPT\_SECRETS\_USING\_PASSCODE**

Display name: Encrypt secrets using Passcode

This property lets sensitive data be stored on the mobile device in a secret vault instead of in a platform-based native store, such as the iOS keychain. This property enables strong encryption of key artifacts, but also adds user entropy (a user-generated random PIN code that only the user knows).

Citrix recommends you enable this property to help provide higher security on user devices. As a result, users will experience more authentication prompts for the Citrix PIN.

Possible values: **true** or **false**

Default value: **false**

### **INACTIVITY\_TIMER**

Display name: Inactivity Timer

This property defines the time in minutes that users can leave their device inactive and then access an app without being prompted for a Citrix PIN or passcode. To enable this setting for an MDX app, you must set the App Passcode setting to On. If the App Passcode setting is set to Off, users are redirected to Secure Hub to perform a full authentication. When you change this setting, the value takes effect the next time users are prompted to authenticate.

Note: On iOS, the Inactivity Timer also governs access to Secure Hub for MDX and non-MDX apps.

Possible values: Any positive integer

Default value: **15**

#### **ON\_FAILURE\_USE\_EMAIL**

Display name: On failure Use Email to Send device logs to IT help desk

This property enables or disables the ability to use email to send device logs to IT.

Possible values: **true** or **false**

Default value: **true**

#### **PASSCODE\_EXPIRY**

Display name: PIN Change Requirement

This property defines the time in days for which the Citrix PIN or passcode is valid, after which the user is forced to change their Citrix PIN or passcode. When you change this setting, the new value is set only when users' current Citrix PIN or passcode expires.

Possible values: **1 - 99** recommended. If you want users to never have to reset their PINs, set the value to a very high number (for example, 100,000,000,000). If you originally set an expiry period of between 1 and 99 days and change to the large number during that period, PINs will still expire at the end of the initial period but never again afterward.

Default value: **90**

#### **PASSCODE\_HISTORY**

Display name: PIN History

This property defines the number of previously used Citrix PINs or passcodes that users cannot reuse when changing their Citrix PIN or passcode. When you change this setting, the new value is set the next time users reset their Citrix PIN or passcode.

Possible values: **1 - 99**

Default value: **5**

#### **PASSCODE\_MAX\_ATTEMPTS**

Display name: PIN Attempts

This property defines how many wrong Citrix PIN or passcode attempts users can make before being prompted for full authentication. After users successfully perform a full authentication, they are prompted to create a new Citrix



PIN or passcode.

Possible values: Any positive integer

Default value: **15**

### **PASSCODE\_MIN\_LENGTH**

Display name: PIN Length Requirement

This property defines the minimum length of Citrix PINs.

Possible values: **1 - 99**

Default value: **6**

### **PASSCODE\_STRENGTH**

Display name: PIN Strength Requirement

This property defines the strength of Citrix PIN or passcode. When you change this setting, users are prompted to set a new Citrix PIN or passcode the next time they are prompted to authenticate.

Possible values: **Low, Medium, or Strong**

Default value: **Medium**

The following table describes the password rules for each strength setting based on the PASSCODE\_TYPE setting:

<b>Passcode strength</b>	<b>Rules for numeric passcode type</b>	<b>Rules for alphanumeric passcode type</b>
Low	All numbers, any sequence allowed	Must contain at least one number and one letter.  Not allowed: AAAaaa, aaaaaa, abcdef  Allowed: aa11b1, Abcd1#, Ab123~, aaaa11, aa11aa
Medium (default setting)	1. All numbers cannot be the same. For example, 444444 is not allowed.  2. All numbers cannot be consecutive. For example, 123456 or 654321 is not allowed.  Allowed: 444333, 124567, 136790, 555556, 788888	In addition to the rules for Low passcode strength:  1. Letters and all numbers cannot be same. For example, aaaa11, aa11aa, or aaa111 are not allowed.  2. Letters cannot be consecutive and numbers cannot be consecutive. For example, abcd12, bcd123, 123abc, xyz1234, xyz345, or cba123 are not allowed.  Allowed: aa11b1, aaa11b, aaa1b2, abc145, xyz135, sdf123, ab12c3, a1b2c3, Abcd1#, Ab123~
High	Same as for the Medium Citrix PIN	The passcode should include at least one capital letter

	passcode strength.	and and one small letter. Not allowed: abcd12, DFGH2 Allowed: Abcd12, jkrtA2, 23Bc#, AbCd
Strong	Same as for the Medium Citrix PIN passcode strength.	The passcode should include at least one number, one special symbol, one capital letter, and one small letter. Not allowed: abcd12, Abcd12, dfgh12, jkrtA2 Allowed: Abcd1#, Ab123~, xY12#3, Car12#, AAbc1#

## PASSCODE\_TYPE

Display name: PIN Type

This property defines whether users are able to define a numerical Citrix PIN or an alphanumeric passcode. When you select **Numeric**, users can use numbers only (Citrix PIN). When you select **Alphanumeric**, users can use a combination of letters and numbers (passcode).

Note: If you change this setting, users must set a new Citrix PIN or passcode the next time that they are prompted to authenticate.

Possible values: **Numeric** or **Alphanumeric**

Default value: **Numeric**

## REFRESHINTERVAL

Display name: REFRESHINTERVAL

By default, XenMobile pings the Auto Discovery Server (ADS) for pinned certificates every 3 days. To change the refresh interval, go to **Settings > Client Properties**, add the custom key **REFRESHINTERVAL**, and set the **Value** to the number of hours.

Default value: **72** hours (3 days)

## SEND\_LDAP\_ATTRIBUTES

For MAM-only deployments, you can configure XenMobile so that users with Android or iOS devices who enroll in Secure Hub with email credentials are automatically enrolled in Secure Mail. This means users do not have to enter additional information or take additional steps to enroll in Secure Mail.

To configure this global client policy, go to **Settings > Client Properties**, add the custom key **SEND\_LDAP\_ATTRIBUTES**, and set the **Value** as follows.

Value: userPrincipalName=\${user.userprincipalname},SAMAccountName=\${user.samaccountname}, displayName=\${user.displayName},mail=\${user.mail}

The attribute values are specified as macros, similar to MDM policies.

Here is a sample account service response for this property:

```
<property value="userPrincipalName=eng1@xmslab.com,sAMAccountName=eng1,displayName=eng1\,
test1,email=eng1@xmslab.com\,eng1@xmslab.com" name="SEND_LDAP_ATTRIBUTES"/>
```

Note: For this property, XenMobile treats comma characters as string terminators. Therefore, if an attribute value includes a comma, you must precede it with a backslash to prevent the client from interpreting the embedded comma as the end of the attribute value. Represent backslash characters with "\\".

# ActiveSync Gateway

Feb 27, 2017

ActiveSync is a mobile data synchronization protocol developed by Microsoft. ActiveSync synchronizes data with handheld devices and desktop (or laptop) computers.

You can configure ActiveSync Gateway rules in XenMobile. Based on these rules, you can allow or deny devices access to ActiveSync data. For example, if you activate the rule Missing Required Apps, XenMobile checks the App Access Policy for required apps and denies access to ActiveSync data if the required apps are missing. For each rule, you can choose either **Allow** or **Deny**. The default setting is **Allow**.

For more information about the App Access device policy, see [App access device policies](#).

XenMobile supports the following rules:

**Anonymous Devices:** Checks if a device is in anonymous mode. This check is available if XenMobile can't re-authenticate the user when a device attempts to reconnect.

**Failed Samsung KNOX attestation:** Checks if a device failed a query of the Samsung KNOX attestation server.

**Forbidden Apps:** Checks if a device has forbidden apps, as defined in an App Access policy.

**Implicit Allow and Deny:** This action is the default for the ActiveSync Gateway. The gateway creates a Device List of all devices that do not meet any of the other filter rule criteria and allows or denies connections based on that list. If no rule matches, the default is Implicit Allow.

**Inactive Devices:** Checks if a device is inactive as defined by the Device Inactivity Days Threshold setting in Server Properties.

**Missing Required Apps:** Checks if a device is missing required apps, as defined in an App Access policy.

**Non-suggested Apps:** Checks if a device has non-suggested apps, as defined in an App Access policy.

**Noncompliant Password:** Checks if the user password is compliant. On iOS and Android devices, XenMobile can determine whether the password currently on the device is compliant with the passcode policy sent to the device. For instance, on iOS, the user has 60 minutes to set a password if XenMobile sends a passcode policy to the device. Before the user sets the password, the passcode might be non-compliant.

**Out of Compliance Devices:** Checks whether a device is out of compliance, based on the Out of Compliance device property. That property is usually changed by the automated actions or by a 3rd party leveraging XenMobile APIs.

**Revoked Status:** Checks whether the device certificate was revoked. A revoked device cannot re-enroll until it is authorized again.

**Rooted Android and jailbroken iOS Devices:** Checks whether an Android or iOS device is jailbroken.

**Unmanaged Devices:** Check whether a device is still in a managed state, under XenMobile control. For example, a device running in MAM mode or an un-enrolled device is not managed.

**Send Android domain users to ActiveSync Gateway:** Click **YES** to ensure that XenMobile sends Android device information to the ActiveSync Gateway.

## To configure the ActiveSync Gateway settings

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Under **Server**, click **ActiveSync Gateway**. The **ActiveSync Gateway** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. On the right, there is a gear icon and a user profile 'admin'. Below the navigation bar, the breadcrumb 'Settings > ActiveSync Gateway' is visible. The main heading is 'ActiveSync Gateway' with a sub-heading 'Allows or denies access to devices and users based on rules and properties.' Underneath, there is a section for 'All devices' with the instruction 'Activate the following rule(s)'. A list of 12 rules is provided, each with an unchecked checkbox: Anonymous Devices, Failed Samsung KNOX attestation, Forbidden Apps, Implicit Allow and Deny, Inactive Devices, Missing Required Apps, Non-Suggested Apps, Noncompliant Password, Out of Compliance Devices, Revoked Status, Rooted Android and Jailbroken iOS Devices, and Unmanaged Devices. Below this, there is an 'Android only' section with the setting 'Send Android domain users to ActiveSync Gateway' which is currently set to 'YES' (indicated by a green toggle switch). At the bottom right, there are 'Cancel' and 'Save' buttons.

3. In **Activate the following rules**, select one or more rules you want to activate.
4. In **Android-only**, in **Send Android domain users to ActiveSync Gateway**, click **YES** to ensure that XenMobile sends Android device information to the ActiveSync Gateway.
5. Click **Save**.

# Network Access Control

Feb 27, 2017

If you have a Network Access Control (NAC) appliance set up in your network, such as a Cisco ISE, in XenMobile, you can enable filters to set devices as compliant or not compliant for NAC, based on rules or properties. If a managed device in XenMobile does not meet the specified criteria, and as a result is marked Not Compliant, the NAC appliance will block the device on your network.

In the XenMobile console, you select one or more criterion in the list to set a device as not compliant.

XenMobile supports the following NAC compliance filters:

**Anonymous Devices:** Checks if a device is in anonymous mode. This check is available if XenMobile can't re-authenticate the user when a device attempts to reconnect.

**Failed Samsung KNOX attestation:** Checks if a device failed a query of the Samsung KNOX attestation server.

**Forbidden Apps:** Checks if a device has forbidden apps, as defined in an App Access policy. For more information about the App access policy, see [App access device policies](#).

**Inactive Devices:** Checks if a device is inactive as defined by the Device Inactivity Days Threshold setting in Server Properties. For details, see [Server properties](#).

**Missing Required Apps:** Checks if a device is missing required apps, as defined in an App Access policy.

**Non-suggested Apps:** Checks if a device has non-suggested apps, as defined in an App Access policy.

**Noncompliant Password:** Checks if the user password is compliant. On iOS and Android devices, XenMobile can determine whether the password currently on the device is compliant with the passcode policy sent to the device. For instance, on iOS, the user has 60 minutes to set a password if XenMobile sends a passcode policy to the device. Before the user sets the password, the passcode might be non-compliant.

**Out of Compliance Devices:** Checks whether a device is out of compliance, based on the Out of Compliance device property. That property is usually changed by the automated actions or by a third party making use of XenMobile APIs.

**Revoked Status:** Checks whether the device certificate was revoked. A revoked device cannot re-enroll until it is authorized again.

**Rooted Android and jailbroken iOS Devices:** Checks whether an Android or iOS device is jailbroken.

**Unmanaged Devices:** Check whether a device is still in a managed state, under XenMobile control. For example, a device running in MAM mode or an un-enrolled device is not managed.

## Note

The Implicit Compliant/Not Compliant filter sets the default value only on devices that are managed by XenMobile. For example, any devices that have a blacklisted app installed or are not enrolled, are marked as Not-Compliant and will be blocked from your network by the NAC appliance.

# Configure Network Access Control

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Under **Server**, click **Network Access Control**. The **Network Access Control** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a green navigation bar with the XenMobile logo and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. A gear icon is visible in the top right corner of the navigation bar. Below the navigation bar, the breadcrumb 'Settings > Network Access Control' is displayed. The main heading is 'Network Access Control' with the subtext 'Enables device compliance.' Below this, there is a section titled 'Set as not compliant:' followed by a list of ten checkboxes, each with a corresponding label: 'Anonymous Devices', 'Failed Samsung KNOX attestation', 'Forbidden Apps', 'Inactive Devices', 'Missing Required Apps', 'Non-Suggested Apps', 'Noncompliant Password', 'Out of Compliance Devices', 'Revoked Status', 'Rooted Android and Jailbroken iOS Devices', and 'Unmanaged Devices'. At the bottom right of the page, there are two buttons: 'Cancel' (grey) and 'Save' (green).

3. Select the check boxes for the **Set as not compliant** filters you want to enable.
4. Click **Save**.

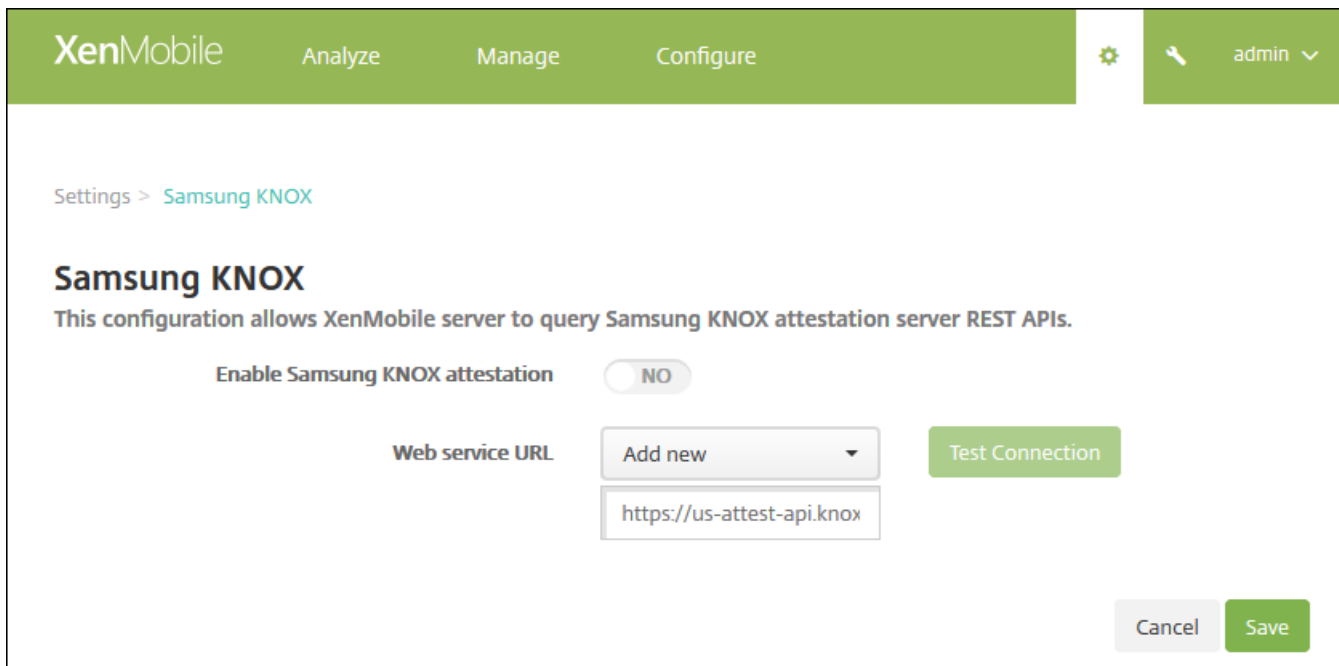
# Samsung KNOX

Feb 27, 2017

You can configure XenMobile to query the Samsung KNOX attestation server REST APIs.

Samsung KNOX leverages hardware security capabilities that provide multiple levels of protection for the operating system and applications. One level of this security resides at the platform through attestation. An attestation server provides verification of the mobile device core system software (for example, the boot loaders and kernel). The verification occurs at runtime based on data collected during trusted boot.

1. In the XenMobile web console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Under **Platforms**, click **Samsung KNOX**. The **Samsung KNOX** page appears.



The screenshot shows the XenMobile web console interface. At the top, there is a green navigation bar with the XenMobile logo and menu items: Analyze, Manage, and Configure. On the right side of the navigation bar, there is a gear icon and a user profile labeled 'admin'. Below the navigation bar, the breadcrumb path is 'Settings > Samsung KNOX'. The main heading is 'Samsung KNOX', followed by a sub-heading: 'This configuration allows XenMobile server to query Samsung KNOX attestation server REST APIs.' There are two main configuration options: 'Enable Samsung KNOX attestation' with a toggle switch currently set to 'NO', and 'Web service URL' with a dropdown menu showing 'Add new' and a text input field containing 'https://us-attest-api.knox'. To the right of the 'Web service URL' field is a green 'Test Connection' button. At the bottom right, there are 'Cancel' and 'Save' buttons.

3. In **Enable Samsung KNOX attestation**, select whether to enable Samsung KNOX attestation. The default is **NO**.
4. When you set **Enable Samsung KNOX attestation**, to **YES**, the **Web service URL** option is enabled. Then, in the list, do one of the following:
  - a. Click the appropriate attestation server.
  - b. Click **Add new** and then enter the Web service URL.
5. Click **Test Connection** to verify the connection. A success or failure message appears.
6. Click **Save**.

## Note

You can use Samsung KNOX Mobile Enrollment to enroll multiple Samsung KNOX devices into XenMobile (or any mobile device



manager) without manually configuring each device. For information, see [Samsung KNOX Bulk Enrollment](#).

# Firestore Cloud Messaging

Feb 28, 2017

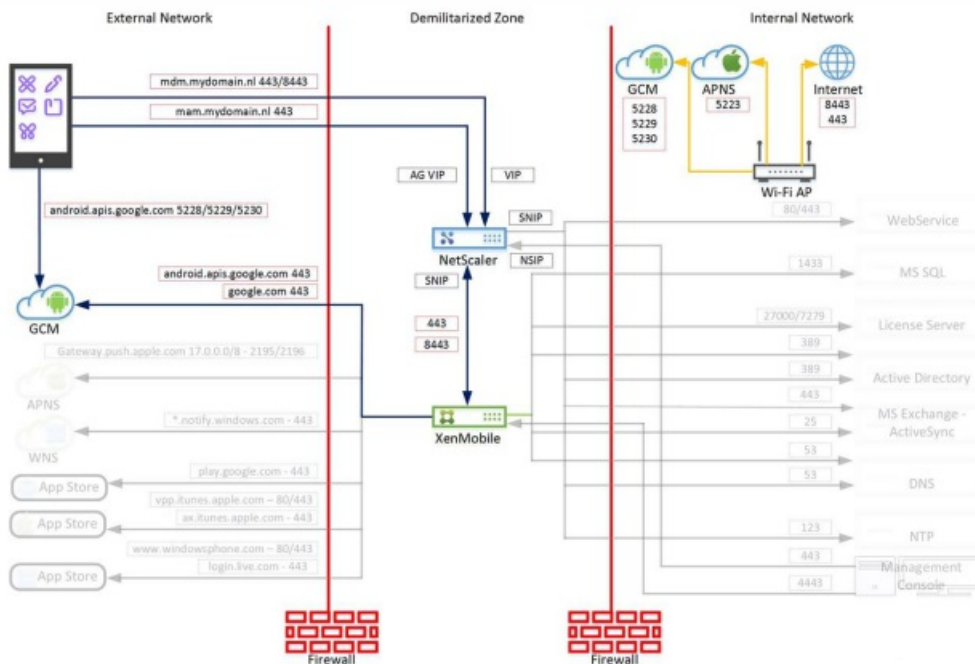
Alternative to the **Active poll period** policy, you can use Firestore Cloud Messaging (FCM) to control how and when Android devices connect to XenMobile. By using the following configuration, any security action or deploy command triggers a push notification to prompt the user to reconnect to the XenMobile Server.

## Prerequisites

- XenMobile 10.3.x
- Latest Secure Hub client
- Google developer account credentials
- Open port 443 on XenMobile to Android.apis.google.com and Google.com

## Architecture

This diagram shows the communication flow for FCM in the external and internal network.



## To configure your Google account for GCM

1. Sign in to the following URL using your Google developer account credentials:

<https://console.firebase.google.com/?pli=1>

2. Click **Create a project**.

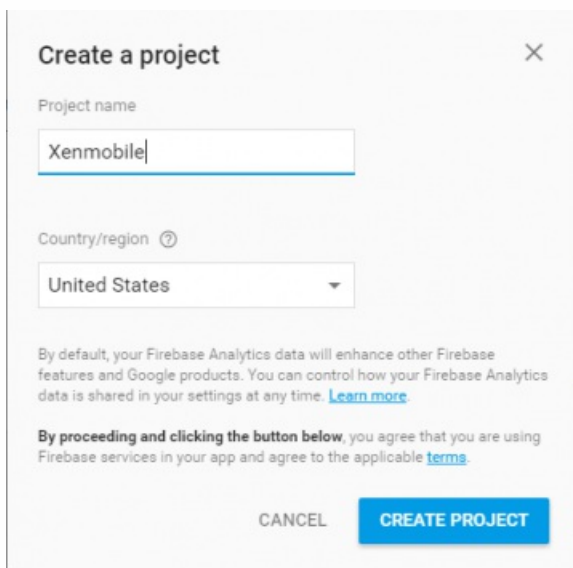
## Welcome to Firebase

Tools from Google for developing great apps, engaging with your users and earning more through mobile ads. [Learn more](#)

**CREATE NEW PROJECT**

[or import a Google project](#)

3. Type a **Project name** and then click **Create Project**.



**Create a project** [X]

Project name  
Xenmobile

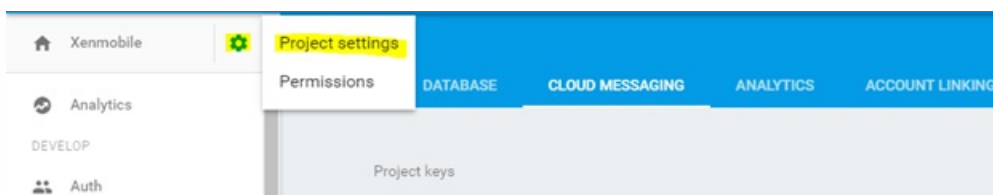
Country/region [United States]

By default, your Firebase Analytics data will enhance other Firebase features and Google products. You can control how your Firebase Analytics data is shared in your settings at any time. [Learn more](#)

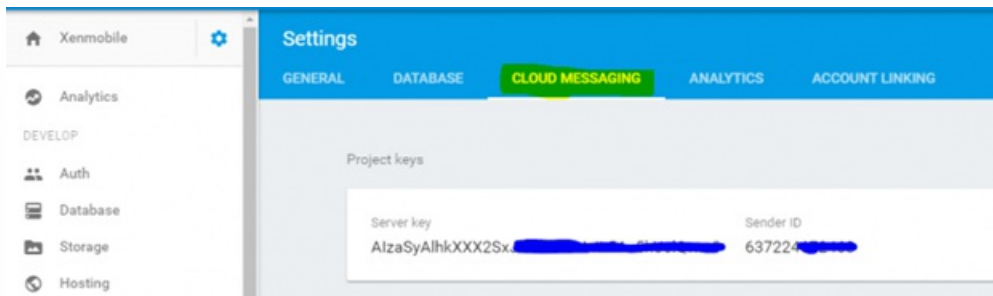
By proceeding and clicking the button below, you agree that you are using Firebase services in your app and agree to the applicable [terms](#).

CANCEL **CREATE PROJECT**

4. Click the gear icon next to your project name in the top left and click **Project Settings**.

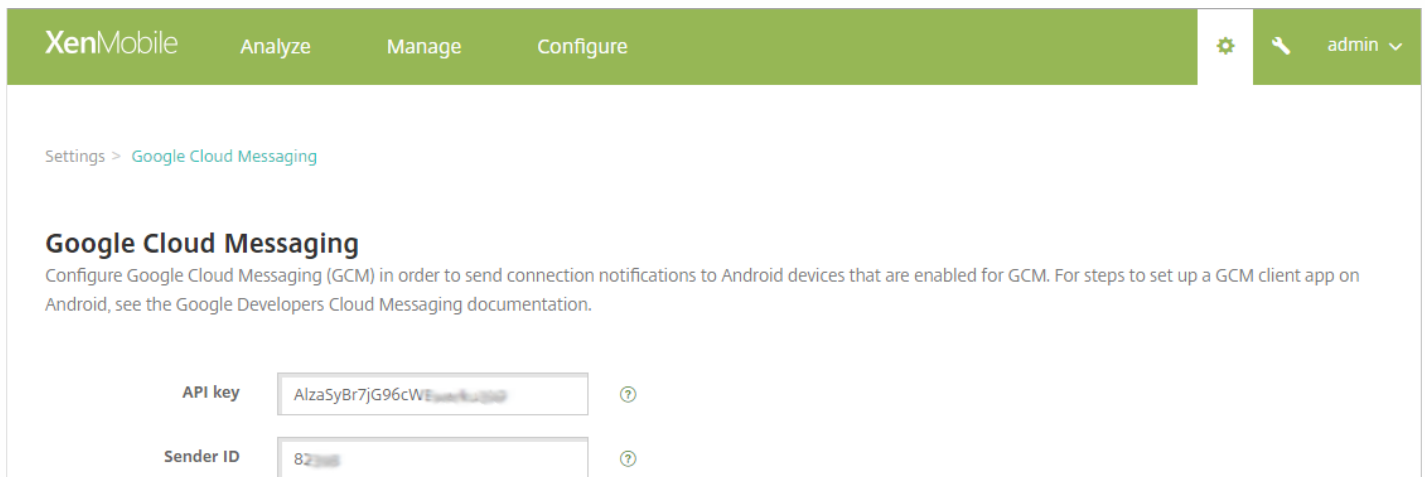


5. Select the **Cloud Messaging** tab. You can find your sender ID and Server Key on this page. Copy these values because you must provide them in XenMobile Server. It is important to note that any Server Keys created after September 2016 must be created in the Firebase console.



## To configure XenMobile for GCM

1. Sign in to XenMobile console and then click **Settings** > **Server Properties**. In the search bar, type **GCM** and click search.
  - a. Edit **GCM API key**, and type the Firebase Cloud Messaging API key that you copied in the last step of Firebase Cloud Messaging configuration.
  - b. Edit **GCM Sender ID**, and type the Sender ID value you noted in the previous procedure.



## To test your configuration

As a prerequisite to test your FCM configuration, do not have a **Scheduling** policy configured. Alternatively, do not set the policy to **Always Connect**. For more information about configuring the **Scheduling** policy, see [Scheduling device policy](#).

1. Enroll an Android device.
2. Leave the device idle for some time, so that it disconnects from XenMobile Server.
3. Sign in to the XenMobile console, click **Manage**, select the Android device, and then click **Secure**.

XenMobile Analyze **Manage** Configure administrator

Devices Users Enrollment Invitations

**Devices** Show filter Search

Add Edit **Secure** Notify Delete Import Export Refresh

<input type="checkbox"/>	Status	Mode	User name	Device platform	Operating system version	Device model	Last access	Inactivity days	DEP registered	Activation
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		MDM MAM		Android	6.0.1	Nexus 9	07/27/2016 06:05:25 pm	2 days	No	

4. Under **Device Actions**, click **Selective Wipe**.

Security Actions

---

Device Actions

Revoke Lock **Selective Wipe** Full Wipe

Locate

In a successful configuration, selective wipe occurs on the device.

# Google Play credentials

Feb 27, 2017

XenMobile uses Google Play credentials to extract app information for the device.

To locate your Android ID, enter `***#8255***` on your phone. If the code does not reveal the device ID on your device type, it might be possible to use a third-party app to derive the device ID. The ID to retrieve is the Google Services Framework ID with the label GSF ID.

## Note

When searching for Google Play Store apps in the XenMobile console, the search returns apps based on the Android operating system of the device. For example, a Samsung S6 Edge is running an operating system version 6.0.1. When you search for apps, the only apps that appear in the search result are apps that are compatible with Android version 6.0.1.

## Important

To enable XenMobile to extract app information, you might need to configure your Gmail account to permit unsecure connections. For steps, see the [Google](#) support site.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Under **Platforms**, click **Google Play Credentials**. The Google Play Credentials page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' on the left and 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' in the center. On the right side of the navigation bar, there is a gear icon, a key icon, and the text 'admin' with a dropdown arrow. Below the navigation bar, the breadcrumb 'Settings > Google Play Credentials' is visible. The main heading is 'Google Play Credentials'. Below the heading, there is a message: 'XenMobile cannot extract app information without logon information. To find your Android ID, you can type `***#8255***` on your phone.' There are three input fields: 'User name\*' with the value '@gmail.com', 'Password\*' with masked characters, and 'Device ID\*' with the value '123456789123CD01'. At the bottom right, there are 'Cancel' and 'Save' buttons.

3. Configure these settings:

- **User name:** Type the name associated with the Google Play account.

- **Password:** Type the user password.
- **Device ID:** Type your Android ID.  
See the Note earlier in the article for steps on obtaining your Android ID.

3. Click **Save**.

# Device policies

Mar 27, 2017

You can configure how XenMobile interacts with your devices by creating policies. Although many policies are common to all devices, each device has a set of policies specific to its operating system. As a result, you might find differences between platforms, and even between different manufacturers of Android devices.

For the policies per platform matrix, download the [Device Policies by Platform Matrix PDF](#). For a summary description of each device policy, see [Device policy summaries](#) in this article.

## Important

Before you create a policy, complete these requirements:

- Create any delivery groups you plan to use.
- Install any necessary CA certificates.

The basic steps to create a device policy are as follows:

1. Name and describe the policy.
2. Configure the policy for one or more platforms.
3. Create deployment rules (optional).
4. Assign the policy to delivery groups.
5. Configure the deployment schedule (optional).

To create and manage device policies, go to **Configure > Device Policies**.



XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔗 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

**Device Policies** [Show filter](#)  🔍

➕ Add | 📄 Export

<input type="checkbox"/>	Policy name	Type	Created on	Last updated on	Status	▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	MBWifi	Wifi	10/26/15 1:03 PM	10/26/15 1:03 PM		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Passcode	Password	10/29/15 8:33 AM	10/29/15 8:33 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Restrictions	Restrictions	10/29/15 8:34 AM	10/29/15 8:34 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Personal Hotspot	Personal Hotspot	10/29/15 8:35 AM	10/29/15 8:35 AM		

Showing 1 - 4 of 4 items

## Add a device policy

1. On the **Device Policies** page, click **Add**.

The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears. Expand **More** to see more policies.

**Add a New Policy** ✕

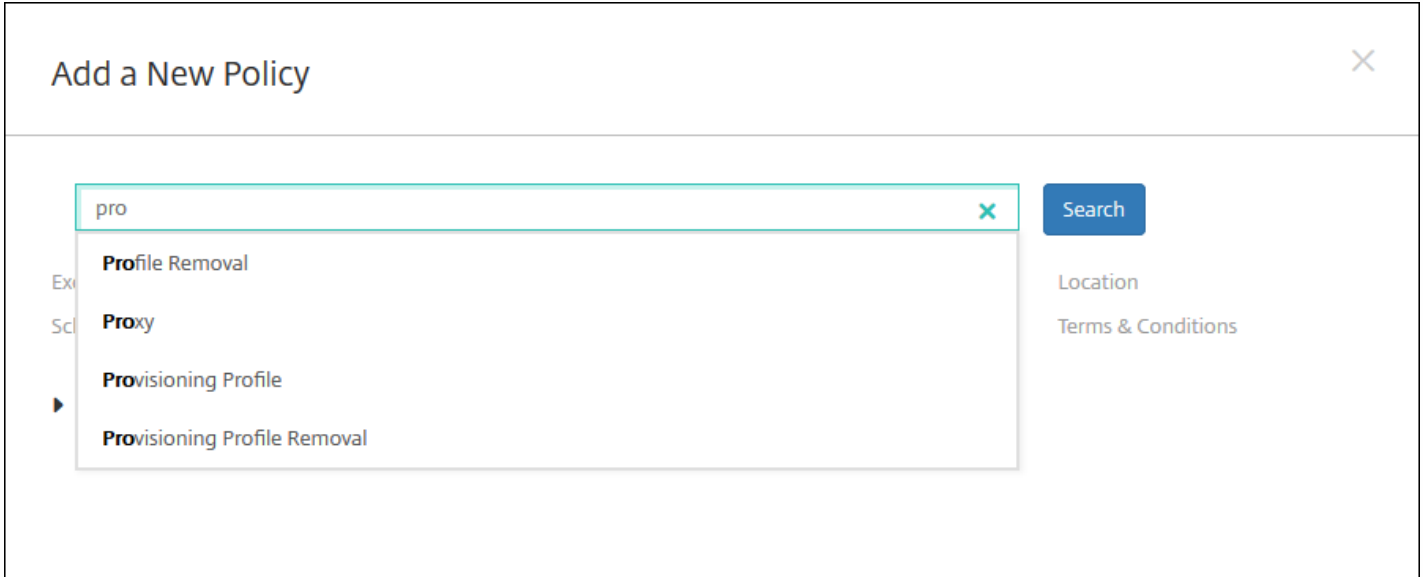
🔍 Search

Exchange      Passcode      VPN      Location  
 Scheduling      Restrictions      WiFi      Terms & Conditions

▶ **More**

2. To find the policy you want to add, do one of the following:

- Click the policy.  
The **Policy Information** page for the selected policy appears.
- Type the name of the policy in the search box. As you type, potential matches appear. If your policy is in the list, click it. Only your selected policy remains in the results. Click it to open the **Policy Information** page for that policy. If your selected policy is in the **More** area, it is only visible if you expand **More**.



3. Select the platforms you want to include in the policy. Configuration pages for the selected platforms appear in Step 5.

**Note:** Only those platforms supported by the policy are listed.

Passcode Policy	
1	Policy Info
2	Platforms
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	iOS
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Mac OS X
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Android
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Samsung KNOX
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Android for Work
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Windows Phone
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Windows Desktop/Tablet
3	Assignment

4. Complete the **Policy Information** page and then click **Next**. The **Policy Information** page collects information, such as the policy name, to help you identify and track your policies. This page is similar for all policies.

5. Complete the platform pages. Platform pages appear for each platform you selected in Step 3. These pages are different for each policy. A policy might differ among platforms. Not all policies apply to all platforms.

To configure deployment rules:

Note: For more information about configuring deployment rules, see [Deploy resources](#).

a. Expand **Deployment Rules** and then configure the following settings. The **Base** tab appears by default.

- In the lists, click options to determine when the policy should be deployed. You can choose to deploy the policy when all conditions are met or when any conditions are met. The default option is **All**.
- Click **New Rule** to define the conditions.
- In the lists, click the conditions, such as **Device ownership** and **BYOD**.
- Click **New Rule** again if you want to add more conditions. You can add as many conditions as you would like.

b. Click the **Advanced** tab to combine the rules with Boolean options. The conditions you chose on the **Base** tab appear.

c. You can use more advanced Boolean logic to combine, edit, or add rules.

- Click **AND**, **OR**, or **NOT**.
- In the lists, choose the conditions that you want to add to the rule. Then, click the Plus sign (+) on the right side to add the condition to the rule.

At any time, you can click to select a condition and then click **EDIT** to change the condition or **Delete** to remove the condition.

- Click **New Rule** to add another condition.

6. Click **Next** to move to the next platform page or, when all the platform pages are complete, to the **Assignments** page.

7. On the **Assignments** page, select the delivery groups to which you want to apply the policy. If you click a delivery group, the group appears in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** box.

Note: **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** doesn't appear until you select a delivery group.

**Passcode Policy** ×

This policy creates a passcode policy based on the standards of your organization. You can require a code on the device and can set formatting rules and other passcode rules, such as the grace period before device lock.

**Choose delivery groups**

- AllUsers
- sales

**Delivery groups to receive app assignment**

- AllUsers

8. On the **Assignments** page, expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

Note:

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

▼ **Deployment Schedule** ?

Deploy  ON

Deployment Schedule  Now  Later

Deployment condition  On every connection  Only when previous deployment has failed

Deploy for always-on connections  OFF ?

9. Click **Save**.

The policy appears in the **Device Policies** table.

## Edit or delete a device policy

To edit or delete a policy, select the check box next to a policy to show the options menu above the policy list. Or, click a policy in the list to show the options menu to the right of the listing.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface with the 'Configure' tab selected. Under 'Device Policies', a table lists policies. The 'Passcode' policy is selected, and a context menu is open over it. The menu includes 'Edit' and 'Delete' options. Below the menu, a 'Deployment' summary shows 0 Installed, 0 Pending, and 0 Failed items. A 'Show more >' link is also visible.

Policy name	Type	Created on	Last updated on	Status
<input type="checkbox"/> MBWifi	Wifi	10/26/15 1:03 PM	10/26/15 1:03 PM	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Passcode	Password	10/29/15 8:33 AM	10/29/15 8:33 AM	
<input type="checkbox"/> Restrictions	Restrictions			
<input type="checkbox"/> Personal Hotspot	Personal Hotspot			

Showing 1 - 4 of 4 items

**Deployment**

0 Installed | 0 Pending | 0 Failed

[Show more >](#)

To view policy details, click **Show more**.

To edit all settings for a device policy, click **Edit**.

If you click **Delete**, a confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** again.

## Filter the list of added device policies

You can filter the list of added policies by policy types, platforms, and associated delivery groups. On the **Configure > Device Policies** page, click **Show filter**. In the list, select the check boxes for the items you want to see.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is active. Below the navigation bar, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' tab is selected. On the left, there is a 'Filters' sidebar with sections for 'Policy Type', 'Policy Platform', and 'Associated Delivery Group'. The 'Policy Platform' section is expanded, showing checkboxes for 'iOS' (7), 'Mac OS X' (2), 'Android' (6), 'Samsung KNOX' (2), and 'Android for Work' (3). A 'Show more' link is visible below these options. The main area displays a table of 'Device Policies' with columns for 'Policy name', 'Type', 'Created on', 'Last updated on', and 'Status'. There are two rows of policies: 'Scheduling' and 'App Inv'. A 'SAVE THIS VIEW' button is located at the bottom of the filter sidebar.

Click **SAVE THIS VIEW** to save a filter. The name of the filter then appears in a button below the **SAVE THIS VIEW** button.

## Device policy summaries

Device Policy Name	Device Policy Description
AirPlay Mirroring	This policy adds specific AirPlay devices (such as Apple TV or another Mac computer) to iOS devices. You also have the option of adding devices to a whitelist for supervised devices, which limits users to only the AirPlay devices on the whitelist.

AirPrint	<p>This policy allows you to add AirPrint printers to the AirPrint printer list on iOS devices. This policy makes it easier to support environments where the printers and the devices are on different subnets. Available for iOS 7.0 and later.</p> <p>Note: Be sure to have the IP address and resource path for each printer.</p>
Android for Work App Restrictions	<p>This policy allows you to change the restrictions associated with Android apps, but before you can do so, you must meet the following prerequisites:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Complete Android setup tasks on Google. For details, see <a href="#">Android at Work</a>.</li> <li>• Add Android apps to XenMobile. For details, see <a href="#">Add a public app store app</a>.</li> </ul>
APN	<p>You use this policy if your organization doesn't use a consumer APN to connect to the internet from a mobile device. This policy determines the settings used to connect your devices to the General Packet Radio Service (GPRS) of a specific phone carrier. This setting is already defined in most newer phones.</p>
App Access	<p>This policy allows you to define a list of the following apps:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Apps that are required to be installed on the device</li> <li>• Or, apps that can be installed on the device</li> <li>• Or, apps that must not be installed on the device.</li> </ul> <p>You can then create an automated action to react to the device compliance with that list of apps.</p>
App Attributes	<p>This policy lets you specify attributes, such as a managed app bundle ID or per-app VPN identifier, for iOS devices.</p>
App Configuration	<p>This policy lets you remotely configure various settings and behaviors of apps that support managed configuration. To do that, you deploy an XML configuration file (called a property list, or plist) to iOS devices. Or, you deploy key/value pairs to Windows 10 phone, desktop, or tablet devices.</p>
App Inventory	<p>This policy lets you collect an inventory of the apps on managed devices. XenMobile then compares the inventory to any app access policies deployed to those devices. In this way, you can detect apps that are on an app access blacklist or whitelist and then act accordingly.</p>
App Lock	<p>This policy defines a list of apps that users either can run on a device or can't run on a device.</p> <p>You can configure this policy for both iOS and Android devices, but the way the policy works differs for each platform. For example, you cannot block multiple apps on an iOS device</p> <p>The App Lock policy works on most Android L and M devices. However, the App Lock policy doesn't work on Android N or later devices because Google deprecated the required API.</p> <p>For iOS devices, you can choose only one iOS app per policy. As a result, users can use their device to run a single app only. Users can't do any other activities on the device except for the options you</p>

	specifically allow when the App Lock policy is enforced.
App Network Usage	<p>This policy sets network usage rules to specify how managed apps use networks, such as cellular data networks, on iOS devices. The rules only apply to managed apps. Managed apps are apps that you deploy to user devices through XenMobile. Managed apps don't include these apps:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Apps that users download directly to their devices. That is, the apps aren't deployed through XenMobile.</li> <li>• Apps already installed on the devices when the devices were enrolled in XenMobile.</li> </ul>
App Restrictions	This policy creates blacklists for apps you want to prevent users from installing on Samsung KNOX devices. You can also create whitelists for apps you want to allow users to install.
App Tunneling	<p>This policy increases service continuity and data transfer reliability for your mobile apps. App tunnels define proxy parameters between the client component of any mobile device app and the app server component. You can also use app tunnels to create remote support tunnels to a device for management support.</p> <p>Note: Any app traffic sent through a tunnel that you define in this policy goes through XenMobile first. Then the traffic is redirected to the server running the app.</p>
App Uninstall	This policy lets you remove apps from user devices for several reasons. For example, you might not want to support certain apps. Or, your company might want to replace existing apps with similar apps from different vendors. The apps are removed when this policy is deployed to user devices. Except for Samsung KNOX devices, users receive a prompt to uninstall the app. Samsung KNOX device users do not receive a prompt to uninstall the app.
App Uninstall Restrictions	This policy lets you specify the apps that users can or can't uninstall.
Browser	This policy lets you define whether user devices can use the browser or which browser functions the devices can use. On Samsung devices, you can disable the browser, or you can enable or disable pop-ups, JavaScript, cookies, autofill, and whether to force fraud warnings.
Calendar (CalDav)	This policy adds a calendar (CalDAV) account to iOS or Mac OS X devices. The CalDAV account enables users to synchronize scheduling data with any server that supports CalDAV.
Cellular	This policy allows you to configure cellular network settings.
Connection Manager	This policy specifies the connection settings for apps that connect automatically to the internet and to private networks. This policy is only available on Windows Pocket PCs.
Contacts	This policy adds an iOS contact (CardDAV) account to iOS or Mac OS X devices. The CardDAV



(CardDAV)	account enables users to synchronize contact data with any server that supports CardDAV.
Copy apps to Samsung Container	This policy copies the apps already installed on a device to a SEAMS or KNOX container on supported Samsung devices. Apps copied to the SEAMS container are available on the device home screen. Apps copied to the KNOX container are available only when users sign in to the KNOX container.
Credentials	<p>This policy enables integrated authentication with your PKI configuration in XenMobile. For example, with a PKI entity, a keystore, a credential provider, or a server certificate. For information about credentials, see <a href="#">Certificates and authentication</a>.</p> <p>Each device platform requires a different set of values, which are described in the Credentials policy article.</p>
Custom XML	<p>This policy customizes the following features:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provisioning, such as configuring the device, and enabling or disabling features</li> <li>• Device configuration, such as allowing users to change settings and device parameters</li> <li>• Software upgrades, such as providing new software or bug fixes for loading onto the device, including apps and system software</li> <li>• Fault management, such as receiving error and status reports from the device</li> </ul> <p>You create your custom XML configuration by using the Open Mobile Alliance Device Management (OMA DM) API in Windows. Using the OMA DM API is beyond the scope of this topic. For more information about using the OMA DM API, see <a href="#">OMA Device Management</a> on the Microsoft Developer Network site.</p>
Defender	This policy configures Windows Defender settings for Windows 10 for desktop and tablet.
Delete Files and Folders	This policy deletes specific files or folders from Windows Mobile/CE devices.
Delete Registry Keys and Values	This policy deletes specific registry keys and values from Windows Mobile/CE devices.
Device Health Attestation	<p>This policy requires that Windows 10 devices report the state of their health. To do that they send specific data and runtime information to the Health Attestation Service (HAS) for analysis. The HAS creates and returns a Health Attestation Certificate that the device then sends to XenMobile. When XenMobile receives the Health Attestation Certificate, based on the contents of that certificate, it can deploy automatic actions that you configured.</p> <p>For more information, see the Microsoft <a href="#">Device HealthAttestation CSP</a> page.</p>
Device Name	This policy sets the names on iOS and Mac OS X devices so that you can identify the devices. You

	can use macros, text, or a combination of both to define a device name. For information about macros, see <a href="#">Macros</a> .
Enterprise Hub	This policy for Windows Phone lets you distribute apps through the Enterprise Hub Company store.  XenMobile supports only one Enterprise Hub policy for one mode of Windows Phone Secure Hub. For example, don't create multiple Enterprise Hub policies with different versions of Secure Home for XenMobile Enterprise Edition. You can deploy the initial Enterprise Hub policy only during device enrollment.
Exchange	XenMobile provides two options to deliver email. You can use this MDM policy to enable ActiveSync email for the native email client on the device. Or, you can deliver ActiveSync email using the containerized Secure Mail app.
Files	This policy adds script files to XenMobile that perform certain functions for users. Or, you can add document files that you want Android device users to be able to access on their devices. When you add the file, you can also specify the directory in which you want the file to be stored on the device. For example, to send Android users a company document or .pdf file, you deploy the file to the device. Then, let users know where the file is located.
Font	This policy adds more fonts to iOS and Mac OS X devices. Fonts must be TrueType (.TTF) or OpenType (.OFT) fonts. Font collections (.TTC or .OTC) are not supported. For iOS, this policy applies only to iOS 7.0 and later.
Home screen layout	This policy specifies the layout of apps and folders for the iOS Home screen on iOS 9.3 and later supervised devices.
Import iOS and Mac OS X Profile	This policy imports device configuration XML files for iOS and OS X devices into XenMobile. The file contains device security policies and restrictions that you prepare by using the Apple Configurator. For more information about using the Apple Configurator to create a configuration file, see the Apple <a href="#">Configurator Help</a> page.
Kiosk	This policy restricts app usage on Samsung SAFE devices. You can limit available apps to a specific app or apps. This policy is useful for corporate devices that are intended to run only a specific type or class of apps. This policy also lets you choose custom images for the device home screen and lock screen wallpapers for kiosk mode.
Launcher Configuration	This policy for Android devices specifies the following for Citrix Launcher: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The apps allowed</li> <li>• A custom logo image for the Citrix Launcher icon</li> <li>• A custom background image for Citrix Launcher</li> <li>• Password requirements to exit the launcher</li> </ul>

LDAP	This policy for iOS devices provides information about an LDAP server to use, including any necessary account information such as the LDAP server host name. The policy also provides a set of LDAP search policies to use when querying the LDAP server.
Location	This policy lets you geo-locate devices on a map, assuming that the device has GPS enabled for Secure Hub. After deploying this policy to the device, you can send a locate command from the XenMobile Server. The device then responds with its location coordinates. XenMobile also supports geofencing and tracking policies.
Mail	This policy configures an email account on iOS or Mac OS X devices.
Managed Domains	This policy defines managed domains that apply to email and the Safari browser. Managed domains help you protect corporate data by controlling which apps can open documents downloaded from domains using Safari. For iOS 8 and later supervised devices, you can specify URLs or subdomains to control how users can open documents, attachments, and downloads from the browser.
MDM Options	This policy manages Find My Phone and iPad Activation Lock on supervised iOS 7.0 and later phone devices. For the steps on putting an iOS device in supervised mode, see <a href="#">Bulk enrollment of iOS and macOS devices</a> .
Organization Info	This policy specifies organization information for alert messages that XenMobile deploys to iOS devices. Available on iOS 7 and later.
Passcode	This policy allows you to enforce a PIN code or password on a managed device. You can set the complexity and timeouts for the passcode on the device.
Personal Hotspot	This policy allows users to connect to the internet when they are not in range of a WiFi network. Users connect through the cellular data connection on their iOS device, using personal hotspot functionality. Available on iOS 7.0 and later.
Profile Removal	This policy, when deployed, removes the app profile from iOS or Mac OS X devices.
Provisioning Profile	This policy specifies an enterprise distribution provisioning profile to send to devices. When you develop and code sign an iOS enterprise app, you usually include a provisioning profile. Apple requires the profile for the app to run on an iOS device. If a provisioning profile is missing or has expired, the app crashes when a user taps to open it.
Provisioning Profile Removal	This policy removes iOS provisioning profiles. For information on provisioning profiles, see <a href="#">Provisioning Profile device policy</a> .
Proxy	This policy specifies global HTTP proxy settings for devices running Windows Mobile/CE and iOS 6.0 or later. You can deploy only one global HTTP proxy policy per device.

Registry	The Windows Mobile/CE registry stores data about apps, drivers, user preferences, and configuration settings. This policy defines the registry keys and values that let you administer Windows Mobile/CE devices.
Remote Support	This policy gives you remote access to Samsung KNOX devices.
Restrictions	This policy provides hundreds of options to lock down and control features and functionality on managed devices. Examples of restriction options: Disable the camera or microphone, enforce roaming rules, and enforce access to third-party services, such as app stores.
Roaming	This policy configures whether to allow voice and data roaming on iOS and Windows Mobile/CE devices. If voice roaming is disabled, data roaming is automatically disabled. For iOS, this policy is available on iOS 5.0 and later devices.
Samsung SAFE Firewall	This policy lets you configure the firewall settings for Samsung devices. You provide the IP addresses, ports, and host names that you want to allow devices to access or that you want to block devices from accessing. You can also configure the proxy and proxy reroute settings.
Samsung MDM License Key	This policy specifies the built-in Samsung Enterprise License Management (ELM) key that you must deploy to a device before you can deploy SAFE policies and restrictions. XenMobile supports and extends both Samsung for Enterprise (SAFE) and Samsung KNOX policies.
Scheduling	This policy is required for Android and Windows Mobile devices to connect back in to the XenMobile Server for MDM management, app push, and policy deployment. If you don't send this policy to devices and don't enable Google FCM, a device can't connect back to the server.
SCEP	This policy configures iOS and Mac OS X devices to retrieve a certificate from an external SCEP server. You can also deliver a certificate to the device using SCEP from a PKI that is connected to XenMobile. To do that, create a PKI entity and a PKI provider in distributed mode. For details, see <a href="#">PKI entities</a> .
SSO Account	This policy creates single sign-on (SSO) accounts so users sign on one-time only to access XenMobile and your internal company resources. Users do not need to store any credentials on the device. The SSO account enterprise user credentials are used across apps, including apps from the App Store. This policy is compatible with Kerberos authentication. Available for iOS 7.0 and later.
Storage Encryption	This policy encrypts internal and external storage. For some devices, this policy prevents users from using a storage card on their devices.

Subscribed Calendars	<p>This policy adds a subscribed calendar to the calendars list on iOS devices. The list of public calendars to which you can subscribe is available at <a href="http://www.apple.com/downloads/macosx/calendars">www.apple.com/downloads/macosx/calendars</a>.</p> <p>Ensure that you subscribe to a calendar before you add it to the subscribed calendars list on user devices.</p>
Terms and Conditions	<p>This policy requires that users accept the specific policies of your company that govern connections to the corporate network. When users enroll their devices with XenMobile, they are presented with the terms and conditions and must accept them to enroll their devices. Declining the terms and conditions cancels the enrollment process.</p>
VPN	<p>This policy provides access to back end systems that use legacy VPN Gateway technology. This policy provides VPN gateway connection details that you can deploy to devices. XenMobile supports several VPN providers, including Cisco AnyConnect, Juniper, and Citrix VPN. If your VPN gateway supports this option, you can link this policy to a CA and enable VPN on-demand.</p>
Wallpaper	<p>This policy adds a .png or .jpg file to set wallpaper on an iOS device lock screen, home screen, or both. Available for iOS 7.1.2 and later. To use different wallpaper on iPads and iPhones, create different wallpaper policies and deploy them to the appropriate users.</p>
Web Content Filter	<p>This policy filters web content on iOS devices. XenMobile uses the Apple auto-filter function and the sites that you add to whitelists and blacklists. Available only for iOS 7.0 and later supervised devices. For information about placing an iOS device in Supervised mode, see <a href="#">Place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator</a>.</p>
Webclip	<p>This policy places shortcuts, or webclips, to websites so that they appear alongside apps on user devices. You can specify your own icons to represent the webclips for iOS, Mac OS X, and Android devices. Windows tablet only requires a label and a URL.</p>
WiFi	<p>This policy allows administrators to deploy WiFi router details to managed devices. The router details include SSID, authentication data, and configuration data.</p>
Windows CE Certificate	<p>This policy creates and delivers Windows Mobile/CE certificates from an external PKI to user devices. For more information about certificates and PKI entities, see <a href="#">Certificates and authentication</a>.</p>
XenMobile Store	<p>This policy specifies whether a XenMobile Store webclip appears on the home screen of user devices.</p>
XenMobile Options	<p>This policy configures the Secure Hub behavior when connecting to XenMobile from Android and Windows Mobile/CE devices.</p>
XenMobile Uninstall	<p>This policy uninstalls XenMobile from Android and Windows Mobile/CE devices. When deployed, this policy removes XenMobile from all devices in the deployment group.</p>



# Device policies by platform

Mar 29, 2017

To view the policies per platform, download the [Device Policies by Platform Matrix PDF](#). You add and configure the device policies in the XenMobile console from **Configure > Device Policies**.

The latest release of XenMobile supports device policies for the following platforms:

- Amazon
- iOS
- Mac OS X
- Android HTC
- Android TouchDown
- Android for Work
- Android
- Android Sony
- Samsung SAFE
- Samsung KNOX
- Samsung SEAMS
- Windows Phone 8.1
- Windows 10 Phone
- Windows 10 Desktop/Tablet
- Windows Mobile/CE

For details on supported devices in the latest release of XenMobile, see [Supported device platforms](#).

## Note

If your environment is configured with Group Policy Objects (GPOs):

When you configure XenMobile device policies for Windows 10, keep the following rule in mind. If a policy on one or more enrolled Windows 10 devices conflicts, the policy aligned with the GPO takes precedence.

# AirPlay mirroring device policy

Feb 27, 2017

The Apple AirPlay feature allows users to wirelessly stream content from an iOS device to a TV screen through Apple TV, or to mirror exactly what's on a device display to a TV screen or another Mac computer.

You can add a device policy in XenMobile to add specific AirPlay devices (such as Apple TV or another Mac computer) to users' iOS devices. You also have the option of adding devices to a whitelist for supervised devices, which limits users to only the AirPlay devices on the whitelist. For information about placing a device into Supervised mode, see [To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator](#).

Note: Before proceeding, be sure to have the device IDs and any passwords for all the devices you want to add.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **End user**, click **AirPlay Mirroring**. The **AirPlay Mirroring Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is active. Below the navigation bar, there is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' tab is selected. The main content area is titled 'AirPlay Mirroring Policy' and has a 'Policy Information' section. The 'Policy Information' section contains a 'Policy Name\*' field and a 'Description' field. The 'Policy Name\*' field is empty. The 'Description' field is empty. The 'Policy Information' section also includes a note: 'This policy lets you specify specific AirPlay devices to add to users' iOS and Mac OS X devices. For supervised devices, you have the option of specifying a list of whitelisted AirPlay devices.' The page has a 'Next >' button at the bottom right. The left sidebar shows a navigation menu with '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS settings



The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration page for an 'AirPlay Mirroring Policy'. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The left sidebar shows the policy configuration steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms' (with 'iOS' and 'Mac OS X' selected), and '3 Assignment'. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the following sections:

- AirPlay Password:** A table with columns for 'Device Name\*' and 'Password\*', and an 'Add' button.
- Whitelist ID:** A table with a column for 'Device ID\*' and an 'Add' button.
- Policy Settings:** Includes a 'Remove policy' section with radio buttons for 'Select date' (selected) and 'Duration until removal (in days)', and a date picker. Below it is an 'Allow user to remove policy' dropdown menu set to 'Always'.
- Deployment Rules:** A section with a right-pointing arrow.

At the bottom right of the main area are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **AirPlay Password:** For each device you want to add, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **Device ID:** Enter the hardware address (Mac address) in xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx format. This field is not case-sensitive.
  - **Password:** Enter an optional password for the device.
  - Click **Add** to add the device or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the device.
- **Whitelist ID:** This list is ignored for unsupervised devices. The device IDs in this list are the only AirPlay devices available to users' devices. For each AirPlay device you want to add to the list, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **Device ID:** Type the device ID in xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx format. This field is not case-sensitive.
  - Click **Add** to add the device or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the device.

**Note:** To delete an existing device, hover over the line containing the listing and click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing device, hover over the line containing the listing and click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

Configure Mac OSX settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration page for an AirPlay Mirroring Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', 'Configure', and 'admin'. Below the navigation bar, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The left sidebar shows the policy configuration steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '2 Platforms' section is expanded, showing 'iOS' and 'Mac OS X' selected. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the following sections:

- AirPlay Password:** A table with columns for 'Device Name\*' and 'Password\*', and an 'Add' button.
- Whitelist ID:** A table with a column for 'Device ID\*' and an 'Add' button.
- Policy Settings:**
  - Remove policy:** Radio buttons for 'Select date' (selected) and 'Duration until removal (in days)'.
  - Allow user to remove policy:** A dropdown menu set to 'Always'.
  - Profile scope:** A dropdown menu set to 'User'.
  - OS X 10.7+:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.

At the bottom of the main content area, there is a 'Deployment Rules' section with a right-pointing arrow. At the bottom right of the page, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **AirPlay Password:** For each device you want to add, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **Device ID:** Enter the hardware address (Mac address) in xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx format. This field is not case-sensitive.
  - **Password:** Enter an optional password for the device.
  - Click **Add** to add the device or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the device.
- **Whitelist ID:** This list is ignored for unsupervised devices. The device IDs in this list are the only AirPlay devices available to users' devices. For each AirPlay device you want to add to the list, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **Device ID:** Type the device ID in xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx format. This field is not case-sensitive.
  - Click **Add** to add the device or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the device.

**Note:** To delete an existing device, hover over the line containing the listing and click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing device, hover over the line containing the listing and click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.
  - Next to **Profile scope**, click either **User** or **System**. The default is **User**.

8. Click **Next**. The **AirPlay Mirroring Policy** assignment page appears.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# AirPrint device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can add a device policy in XenMobile to add AirPrint printers to the AirPrint printer list on users' iOS devices. This policy makes it easier to support environments where the printers and the devices are on different subnets.

## Note:

- This policy applies to iOS 7.0 and later.
- Be sure to have the IP address and resource path for each printer.

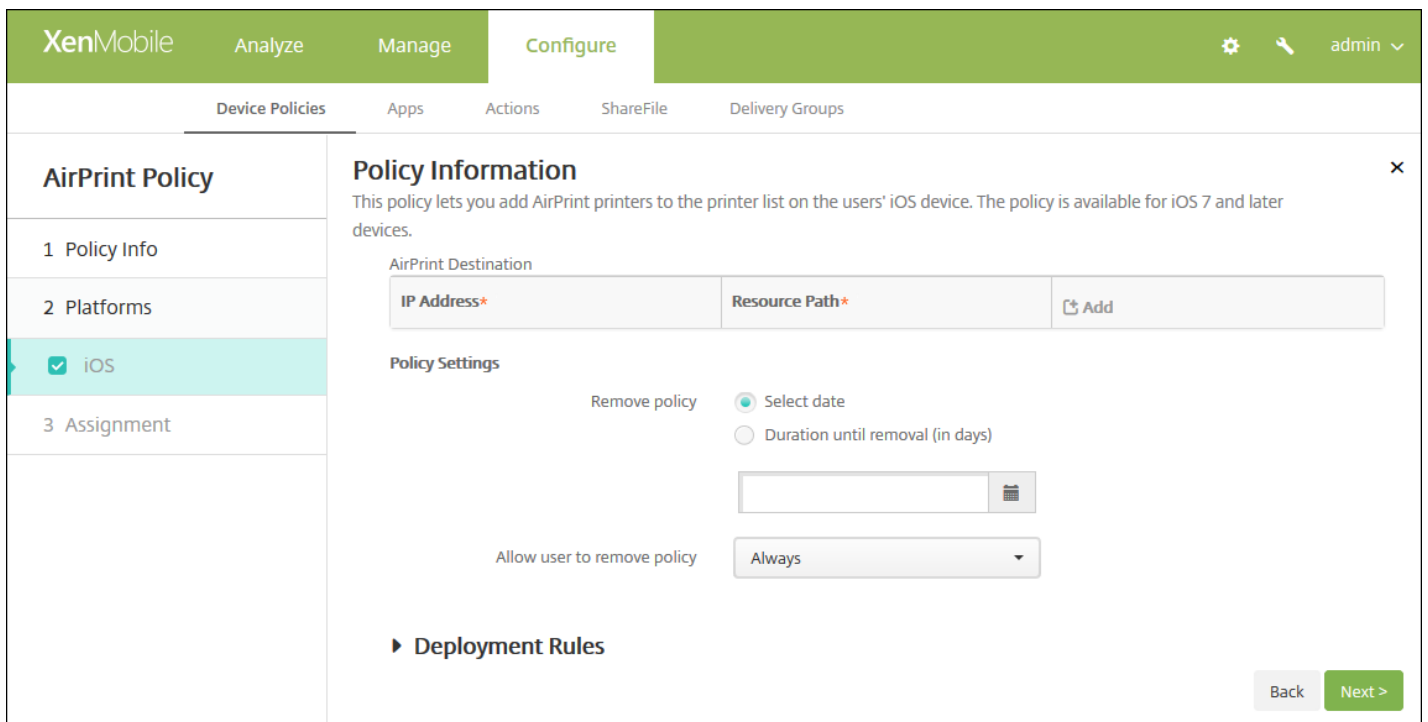
1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **More** and then, under **End user**, click **AirPrint**. The **AirPrint Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is selected. Below the navigation bar, there are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' sub-tab is active. On the left, there is a sidebar for the 'AirPrint Policy' configuration. The sidebar has three sections: '1 Policy Info' (highlighted), '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', the 'iOS' option is checked. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a description: 'This policy lets you add AirPrint printers to the printer list on the users' iOS device. The policy is available for iOS 7 and later devices.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the form.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **iOS Platform Information** page appears.



6. Configure these settings:

- **AirPrint Destination:** For each AirPrint destination you want to add, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **IP Address:** Enter the AirPrint printer IP address.
  - **Resource Path:** Enter the Resource Path associated with the printer. This value corresponds to the parameter of the `_ipps.tcp` Bonjour record. For example, `printers/Canon_MG5300_series` or `printers/Xerox_Phaser_7600`.
  - Click **Save** to add the printer or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the printer.

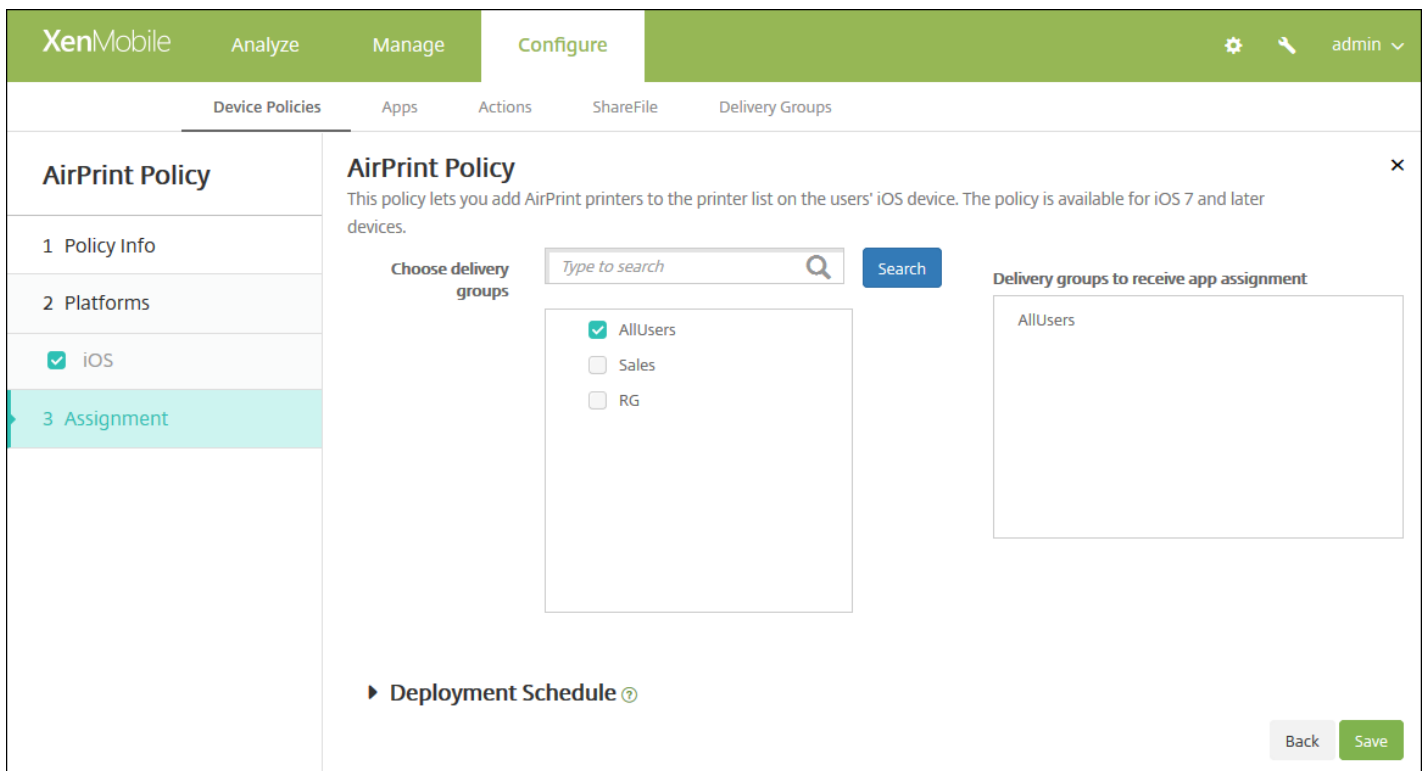
**Note:** To delete an existing printer, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing printer, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

- **Policy Settings**
  - Under **Policy Settings**, next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

### 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **AirPrint Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

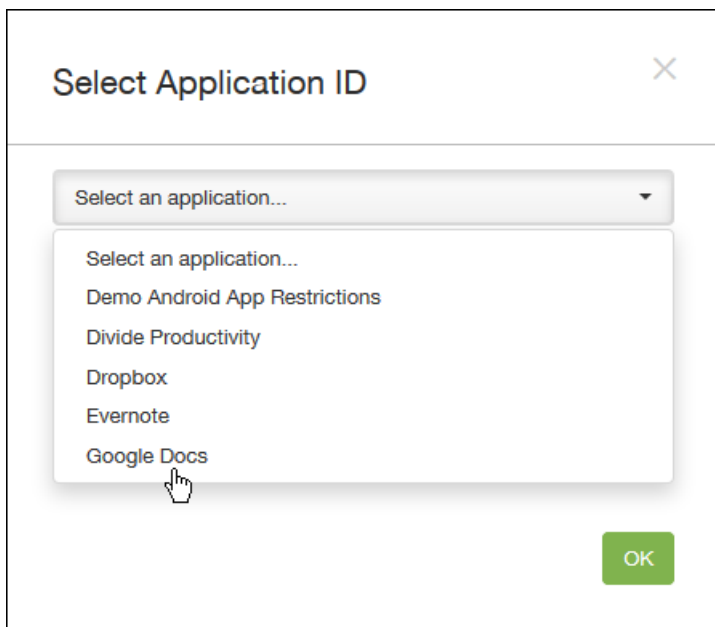
# Android for Work app restriction policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can modify the restrictions associated with Android for Work apps, but before you can do so, you must meet the following prerequisites:

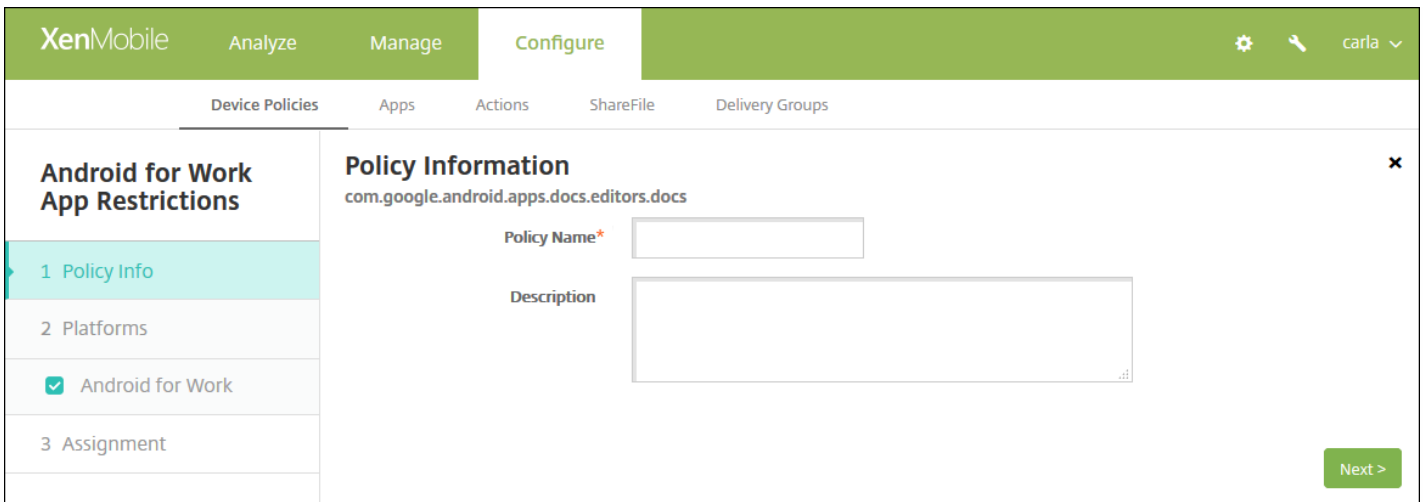
- Complete Android for Work setup tasks on Google. For more information, see [Managing Devices with Android for Work](#).
- Create an Android for Work account. For more information, see [Create an Android for Work account](#).
- Add Android for Work apps to XenMobile. For more information, see [Adding Apps to XenMobile](#).

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add** to add a new policy. The **Add a New Policy** page appears.
3. Expand **More** and then under **Security**, click **Android for Work App Restrictions**. A dialog box appears asking you to select an app.



4. In the list, select the app to which you want to apply restrictions and then click **OK**.

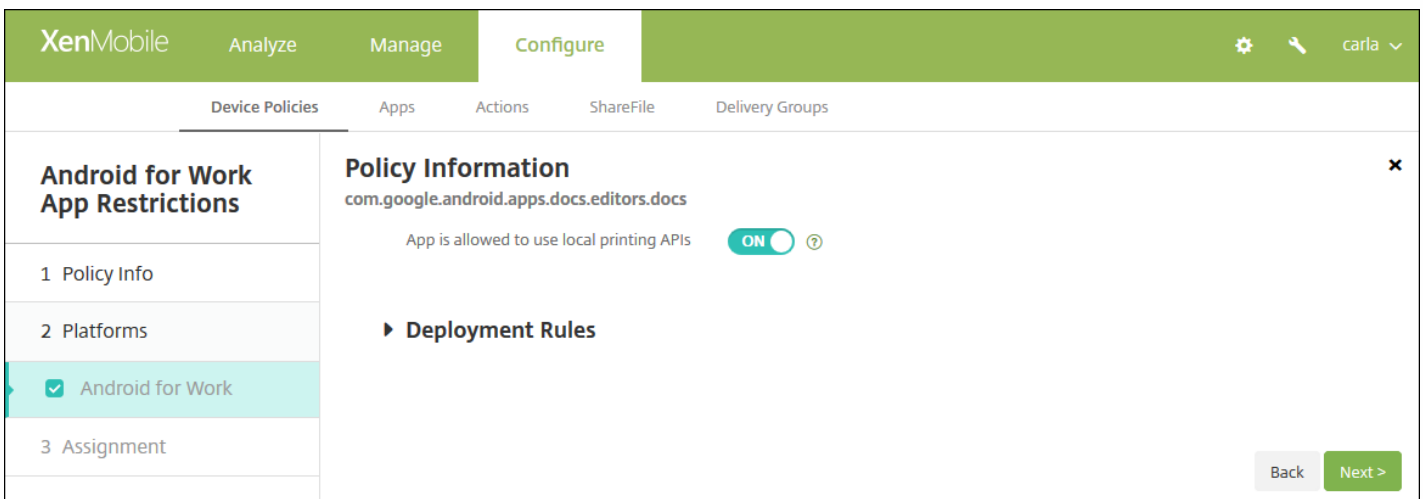
- If there are no Android for Work apps added to XenMobile, you cannot proceed. For more information about adding apps to XenMobile, see [Adding Apps to XenMobile](#).
- If the app has no restrictions associated with it, a notification to that effect appears. Click **OK** to dismiss the dialog box.
- If the app has restrictions associated with it, the **Android for Work App Restrictions Policy** information page appears.



5. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

6. Click **Next**. The **Android for Work Platform** page appears.

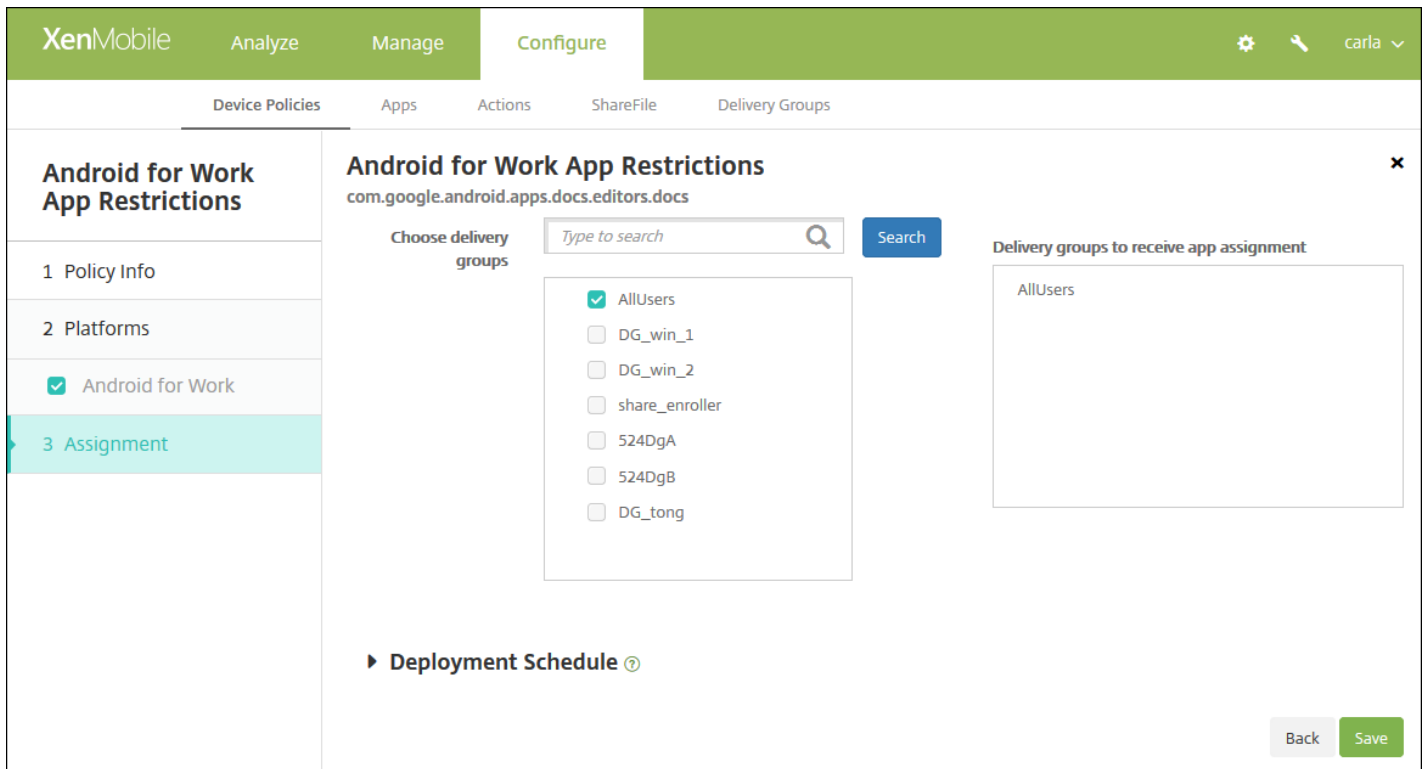


7. Configure the settings for the app you selected. The settings you see depend on the restrictions associated with the selected app.

#### 8. Configure the deployment rules

9. Click **Next**. The **Android for Work App Restrictions Policy** assignment page appears.





10. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

11. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply.

12. Click **Save**.

# APN device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can add a custom Access Point Name (APN) device policy for iOS, Android, and Windows Mobile/CE devices. You use this policy if your organization does not use a consumer APN to connect to the Internet from a mobile device. An APN policy determines the settings used to connect your devices to a specific phone carrier's General Packet Radio Service (GPRS). This setting is already defined in most newer phones.

[iOS settings](#)

[Android settings](#)

[Windows Mobile/CE settings](#)

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **More**, and then under **Network Access**, click **APN**. The **APN Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'APN Policy' and contains a sidebar on the left with three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '1 Policy Info' section is highlighted and shows 'Policy Information' with a description: 'This policy creates a custom Access Point Name (APN) on the device. Use this policy if your organization does not use a consumer APN to connect to the Internet from a mobile device.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. The '2 Platforms' section shows three platforms: 'iOS', 'Android', and 'Windows Mobile/CE', each with a checked checkbox. The '3 Assignment' section is currently empty. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the form.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

**Note:** When the **Policy Platforms** page appears, all platforms are selected and you see the iOS platform first.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for an APN Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The left sidebar shows the 'APN Policy' configuration steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', 'iOS', 'Android', and 'Windows Mobile/CE' are all checked. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the following fields and settings:

- APN\***: A text input field with a lock icon.
- User name**: A text input field.
- Password**: A text input field with a lock icon.
- Server proxy address**: A text input field.
- Server proxy port**: A text input field.
- Policy Settings**:
  - Remove policy**: Two radio button options: 'Select date' (selected) and 'Duration until removal (in days)'. Below the 'Duration until removal' option is a date picker.
  - Allow user to remove policy**: A dropdown menu currently set to 'Always'.
- Deployment Rules**: A section header with a right-pointing arrow.

At the bottom right of the configuration area, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **APN:** Type the name of the access point. This must match an accepted iOS APN or the policy will fail.
- **User name:** This string specifies the user name for this APN. If the user name is missing, the device prompts for the string during profile installation.
- **Password:** The password for the user for this APN. For obfuscation purposes, the password is encoded. If it is missing from the payload, the device prompts for the password during profile installation.
- **Server proxy address:** The IP address or URL of the APN proxy.
- **Server proxy port:** The port number for the APN proxy. This is required if you entered a server proxy address.
- Under **Policy Settings**, next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy list**, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

Configure Android settings

**XenMobile** Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### APN Policy

**Policy Information**

This policy creates a custom Access Point Name (APN) on the device. Use this policy if your organization does not use a consumer APN to connect to the Internet from a mobile device.

1 Policy Info

2 Platforms

- iOS
- Android**
- Windows Mobile/CE

3 Assignment

APN\*

User name

Password

Server

APN type

Authentication type: None

Server proxy address

Server proxy port

MMSC

Multimedia Messaging Server (MMS) proxy address

MMS port

► Deployment Rules

Back Next >

Configure these settings:

- **APN:** Type the name of the access point. This must match an accepted Android APN or the policy will fail.
- **User name:** This string specifies the user name for this APN. If the user name is missing, the device prompts for the string during profile installation.
- **Password:** The password for the user for this APN. For obfuscation purposes, the password is encoded. If it is missing from the payload, the device prompts for the password during profile installation.
- **Server:** This setting, which predates smart phones, is usually empty. It references a Wireless Application Protocol (WAP) gateway server for phones that could not access or render standard web sites.
- **APN type:** This setting must match the carrier's intended use for the access point. It is a comma separated string of APN service specifiers and must match the wireless carrier's published definitions. Examples include:
  - \*. All traffic goes through this access point.
  - mms. Multimedia traffic goes through this access point.
  - default. All traffic, including multimedia, goes through this access point.
  - supl. Secure User Plane Location is associated with assisted GPS.
  - dun. Dial Up Networking is outdated and should rarely be used.
  - hipri. High priority networking.
  - fota. Firmware over the air is used for receiving firmware updates.
- **Authentication type:** In the list, click the type of authentication to be used. Defaults to None.
- **Server proxy address:** The IP address or URL of the carrier's APN HTTP proxy.

- **Server proxy port:** The port number for the APN proxy. This is required if you entered a server proxy address.
- **MMSC:** The MMS Gateway Server address provided by the carrier.
- **Multimedia Messaging Server (MMS) proxy address:** This is the multimedia messaging service server for MMS traffic. MMS succeeded SMS for sending larger messages with multimedia content, such as pictures or videos. These servers require specific protocols (such as MM1, ... MM11).
- **MMS port:** The port used for the MMS proxy.

## Configure Windows Mobile/CE settings

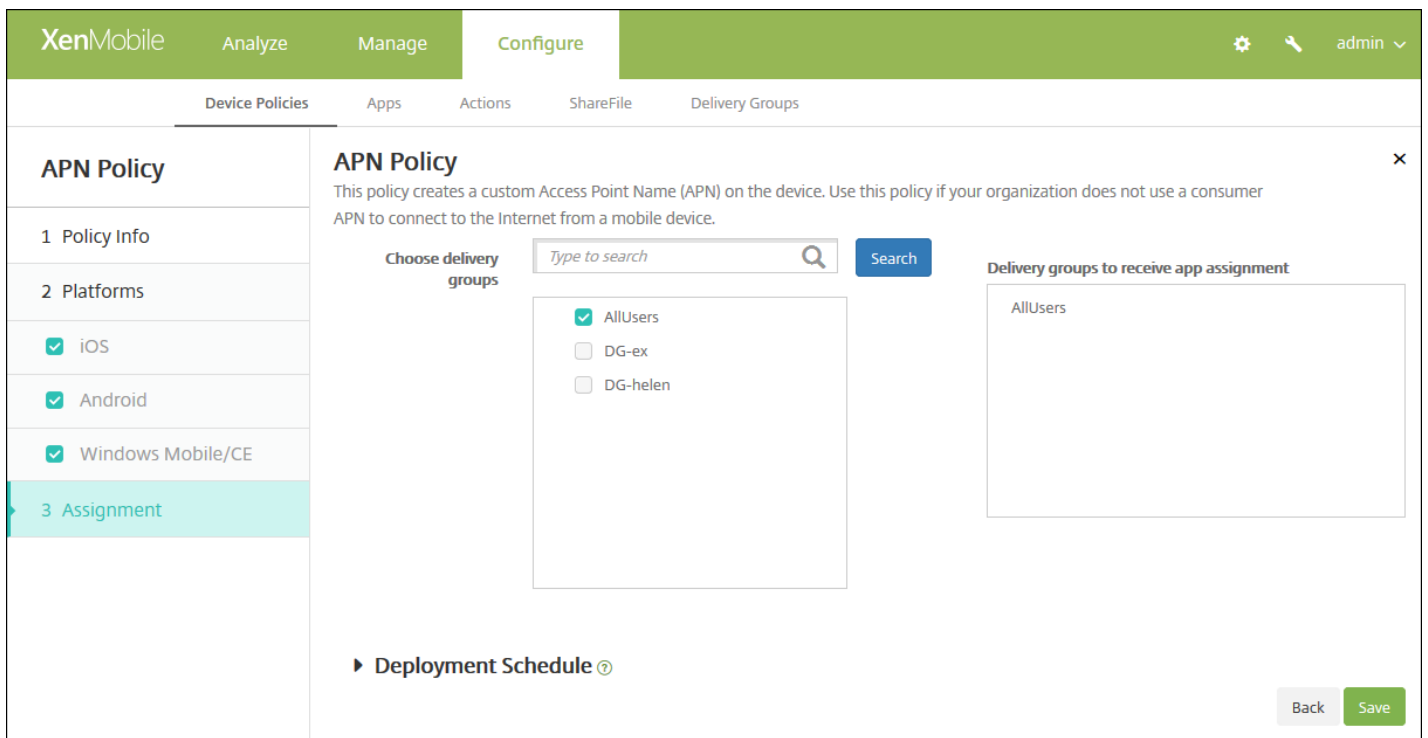
The screenshot shows the XenMobile web interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is active, and the 'Device Policies' sub-tab is selected. On the left, a sidebar shows 'APN Policy' with a list of steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', 'iOS', 'Android', and 'Windows Mobile/CE' are listed with checkboxes, all of which are checked. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a description: 'This policy creates a custom Access Point Name (APN) on the device. Use this policy if your organization does not use a consumer APN to connect to the Internet from a mobile device.' Below this, there are four input fields: 'APN\*' (text input), 'Network' (dropdown menu with 'Built-in office' selected), 'User name' (text input), and 'Password' (text input). At the bottom of the main area, there is a 'Deployment Rules' section with a right-pointing arrow. In the bottom right corner, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure the following settings:

- **APN:** Type the name of the access point. This must match an accepted Android APN or the policy will fail.
- **Network:** In the list, click the type of network to use. The default is **Built-in office**.
- **User name:** This string specifies the user name for this APN. If the user name is missing, the device prompts for the string during profile installation.
- **Password:** The password for the user for this APN. For obfuscation purposes, the password is encoded. If it is missing from the payload, the device prompts for the password during profile installation.

### 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **APN Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save** to save the policy.

# App access device policy

Feb 27, 2017

The app access device policy in XenMobile allows you to define a list of apps that are either required to be installed on the device, can be installed on the device, or must not be installed on the device. You can then create an automated action to react to the device compliance with that list of apps. You can create app access policies for iOS, Android, and Windows Mobile/CE devices.

You can only configure one type of access policy at a time. You can add a policy for either a list of required apps, suggested apps, or forbidden apps, but not a mix within the same app access policy. If you create a policy for each type of list, it is recommended that you name each policy carefully, so you know which policy in XenMobile applies to which list of apps.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More**, and then under **Apps**, click **App Access**. The **App Access Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. Below that, a sub-navigation bar includes 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'App Access Policy' and is divided into three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The 'Policy Info' section is active, showing 'Policy Information' with a description: 'This policy lets you create lists of apps that you designate as required, suggested, or forbidden by users to run on their devices.' There are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' (required) and 'Description'. The 'Platforms' section shows three options: 'iOS', 'Android', and 'Windows Mobile/CE', each with a checked checkbox. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the main content area.

4. On the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

6. Configure the following settings for each platform you select.

- **Access policy:** Click Required, Suggested, or Forbidden. The default is Required.
- To add one or more apps to the list, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **App name:** Enter an app name.
  - **App Identifier:** Enter an optional app identifier.
  - Click **Save** or **Cancel**.
  - Repeat these steps for each app you want to add.

**Note:** To delete an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click Next. The next platform page or the **App Access Policy** assignment page appears.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

### **Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

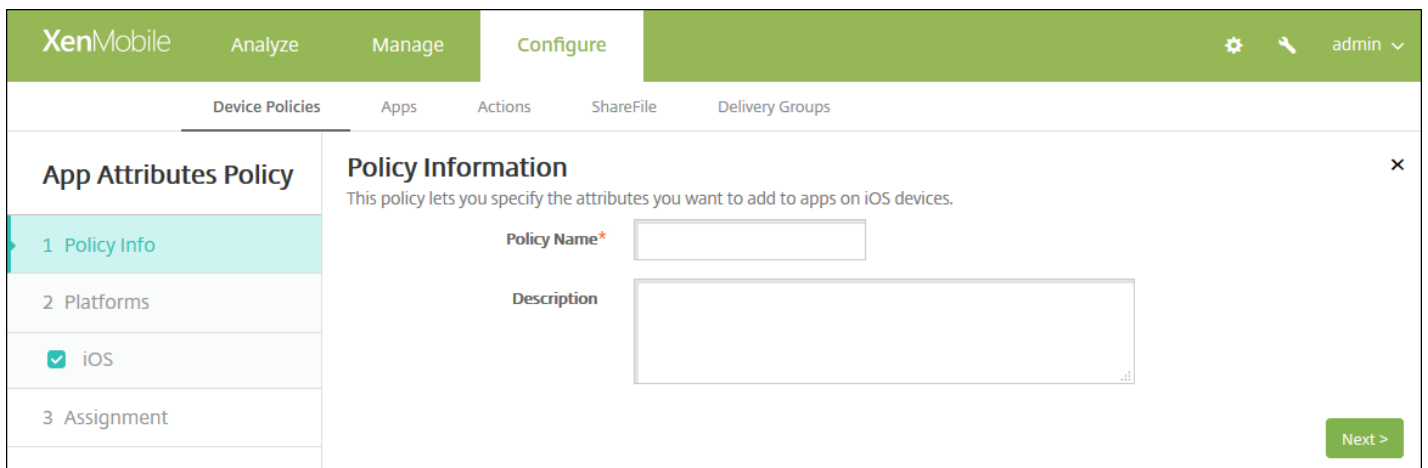


# App attributes device policy

Mar 07, 2017

The App attributes device policy lets you specify attributes, such as a managed app bundle ID or per-app VPN identifier, for iOS devices.

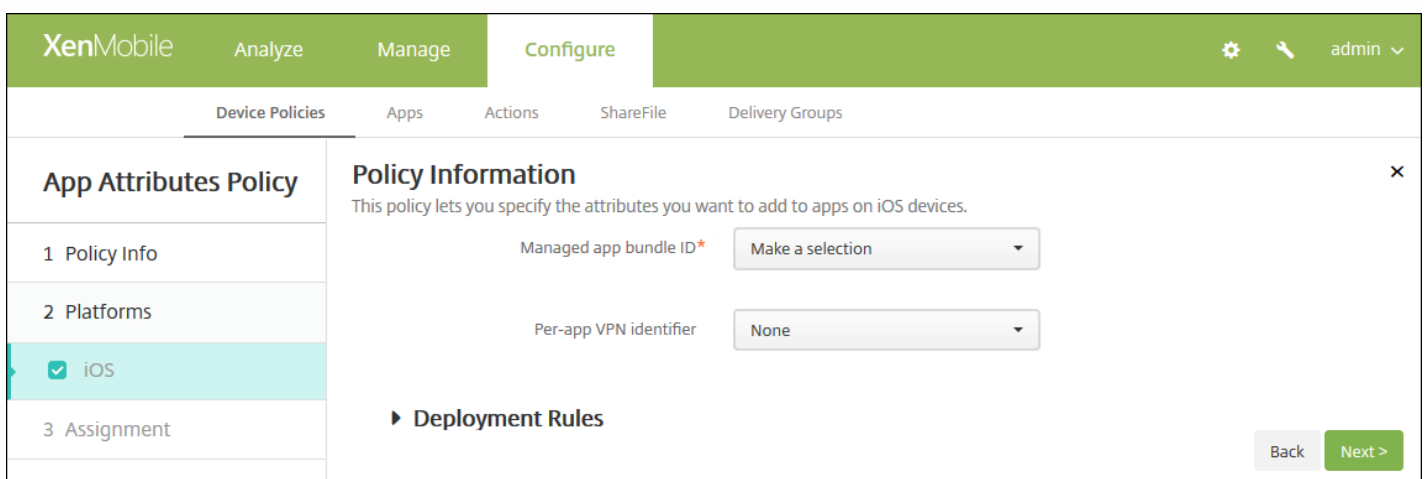
1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** page appears.
3. Expand **More**, and then under **Apps**, click **App Attributes**. The **App Attributes Policy** information page appears.



4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **App Attributes** platform information page appears.



6. Configure these settings:

- **Managed app bundle ID:** In the list, click an app bundle ID or click **Add new**.
  - If you click **Add new**, type the app bundle ID in the field that appears.
- **Per-app VPN identifier:** In the list, click per-app VPN identifier.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The App Attributes Policy assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the 'App Attributes Policy' configuration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The main content area is titled 'App Attributes Policy' and includes a sub-header 'This policy lets you specify the attributes you want to add to apps on iOS devices.' The left sidebar shows a navigation menu with '3 Assignment' selected. The main content area has a 'Choose delivery groups' section with a search box and a list of groups: AllUsers, sales, RG, and ag186. Below this is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a question mark icon. At the bottom right are 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group. Or, select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, there is no need to configure other options.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

### Note:

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in Settings > Server Properties. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for Deploy for always on connection, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.



# App configuration device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can remotely configure apps that support managed configuration by deploying an XML configuration file (called a property list, or plist) to users' iOS devices or key/value pairs for Windows 10 phone, tablet, or desktop devices. The configuration specifies various settings and behaviors in the app. XenMobile pushes the configuration to devices when the user installs the app. The actual settings and behaviors that you can configure depend on the app and are beyond the scope of this article.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** page appears.
3. Expand **More**, and then under **Apps**, click **App Configuration**. The **App Configuration Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and 'Configure' tabs. Below this, there is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is split into two panes. The left pane is titled 'App Configuration Policy' and contains a sidebar with three sections: '1 Policy Info' (highlighted), '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', there are three checkboxes: 'iOS' (checked), 'Windows Phone' (checked), and 'Windows Desktop/Tablet' (checked). The right pane is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a subtitle: 'This policy lets you define a configuration of a managed app to be applied on the device. For iOS devices, after you enter the dictionary content, you can check the syntax.' Below this are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' (a single-line text box) and 'Description' (a multi-line text box). The top right of the console shows a user profile for 'administrator'.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 6 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

[Configure iOS settings](#)

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### App Configuration Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy lets you define a configuration of a managed app to be applied on the iOS device. After you enter the dictionary content, you can check the syntax.

Identifier\*

Dictionary content\*

► **Deployment Rules**

Configure Windows Phone or Desktop/Tablet settings ▾

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 administrator ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### App Configuration Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Desktop/Tablet
- 3 Assignment

#### App Configuration Policy

This policy lets you define a configuration of a managed app to be applied on the device. For iOS devices, after you enter the dictionary content, you can check the syntax.

Parameter name*	Value*	<input type="button" value="Add"/>

► **Deployment Rules**

**App Configuration Policy**

This policy lets you define a configuration of a managed app to be applied on the device. For iOS devices, after you enter the dictionary content, you can check the syntax.

Add new

Parameter name*	Value*	Add

► **Deployment Rules**

## 6. Configure the deployment rules

7. Click **Next**. The **App Configuration Policy** assignment page appears.

**App Configuration Policy**

This policy lets you define a configuration of a managed app to be applied on the device. For iOS devices, after you enter the dictionary content, you can check the syntax.

Choose delivery groups

Type to search

- AllUsers

► **Deployment Schedule** ⓘ

8. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

9. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

10. Click **Save**.

# App inventory device policy

Feb 27, 2017

An app inventory policy in XenMobile lets you collect an inventory of the apps on managed devices, and then the inventory is compared to any app access policies deployed to those devices. In this way, you can detect apps that appear on an app blacklist (forbidden in an app access policy) or whitelist (required in an app access policy) and take action accordingly. You can create app access policies for iOS, Mac OS X, Android (including for devices enabled for Android for Work), Windows desktop/tablet, Windows phone, or Windows Mobile/CE devices.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** page appears.
3. Expand **More**, and under **Apps**, click **App Inventory**. The **App Inventory Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with tabs for 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'App Inventory Policy' and is divided into three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', there are checkboxes for 'iOS', 'Mac OS X', 'Android', 'Windows Desktop/Tablet', 'Windows Phone', and 'Windows Mobile/CE', all of which are checked. The 'Policy Information' section contains a description and two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the main content area.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.



The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'App Inventory Policy' and is divided into three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', several operating systems are listed with checkboxes: iOS, Mac OS X, Android, Windows Desktop/Tablet, Windows Phone, and Windows Mobile/CE. The 'ios' option is selected. To the right, the 'Policy Information' section explains that this policy collects an inventory of apps on managed devices. Below this, there is a toggle for 'ios' which is currently set to 'ON'. A 'Deployment Rules' section is partially visible. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

6. For each platform you select, leave the default setting or change the setting to **OFF**. The default is **ON**.

#### 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **App Inventory Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration page for an App Inventory Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'App Inventory Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you collect an inventory of the apps on managed devices so you can detect apps that appear on an app blacklist or whitelist and take action accordingly.' The 'Choose delivery groups' section features a search input and a 'Search' button. A list of delivery groups is shown with 'AllUsers' selected (checked) and 'Sales' unselected (unchecked). To the right, the 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' section displays 'AllUsers' in a list. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to Choose delivery groups, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand Delivery groups to receive app assignment list.

10. Expand Deployment Schedule and then configure the following settings:

- Next to Deploy, click ON to schedule deployment or click OFF to prevent deployment. The default option is ON. If you choose OFF, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to Deployment schedule, click Now or Later. The default option is Now.
- If you click Later, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to Deployment condition, click On every connection or click Only when previous deployment has failed. The default option is On every connection.
- Next to Deploy for always-on connection, click ON or OFF. The default option is OFF.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS

11. Click **Save**.

# App lock device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can create a policy in XenMobile to define a list of apps that are allowed to run on a device, or a list of apps that are blocked from running on a device. You can configure this policy for both iOS and Android devices, but the exact way the policy works differs for each platform. For example, you cannot block multiple apps on an iOS device.

Likewise, for iOS devices, you can select only one iOS app per policy. This means that users are only able to use their device to run a single app. They cannot do any other activities on the device except for the options you specifically allow when the app lock policy is enforced.

In addition, iOS devices must be supervised to push App Lock policies.

Although the device policy works on most Android L and M devices, app lock does not function on Android N or later devices due to the deprecation of the required API by Google.

[iOS settings](#)

[Android settings](#)

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More**, and then under **Security**, click **App Lock**. The **App Lock Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is selected. Below the navigation bar, there are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' sub-tab is active. On the left, there is a sidebar for the 'App Lock Policy' configuration. The sidebar has three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The 'Policy Info' section is selected. The main area shows the 'Policy Information' pane. It contains a description: 'This policy lets you define a list of apps that are allowed to run on a device, or a list of apps that are blocked from running on a device.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. The 'Policy Name\*' field is empty, and the 'Description' field is a large text area. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the 'Policy Information' pane.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** If desired, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

## App Lock Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
  - Android
- 3 Assignment

### Policy Information ✕

This policy lets you define a list of apps that are allowed to run on a device, or a list of apps that are blocked from running on a device.

App bundle ID\*

#### Options

- Disable touch screen  ON iOS 7.0+
- Disable device rotation sensing  OFF iOS 7.0+
- Disable volume buttons  OFF iOS 7.0+
- Disable ringer switch  OFF iOS 7.0+
- Disable sleep/wake button  OFF iOS 7.0+
- Disable auto lock  OFF iOS 7.0+
- Enable VoiceOver  OFF iOS 7.0+
- Enable zoom  OFF iOS 7.0+
- Enable invert colors  OFF iOS 7.0+
- Enable AssistiveTouch  OFF iOS 7.0+
- Enable speak selection  OFF iOS 7.0+
- Enable mono audio  OFF iOS 7.0+

#### User Enabled Options

- Allow VoiceOver adjustment  OFF iOS 7.0+
- Allow zoom adjustment  OFF iOS 7.0+
- Allow invert colors adjustment  OFF iOS 7.0+
- Allow AssistiveTouch adjustment  OFF iOS 7.0+

#### Policy Settings

Remove policy  Select date  Duration until removal (in days)

Allow user to remove policy

#### ▶ Deployment Rules

Configure these settings:

- **App bundle ID:** In the list, click the app to which this policy applies or click **Add new** to add a new app to the list. If you select **Add new**, type the app name in the field that appears.
- **Options:** Each of the following options applies only to iOS 7.0 or later. For each option, the default is **OFF** except for Disable touch screen, which defaults to **ON**.
  - Disable touch screen
  - Disable device rotation sensing
  - Disable volume buttons
  - Disable ringer switch - **Note:** When this option is disabled, the ringer behavior depends on what position the switch was in when it was first disabled.
  - Disable sleep/wake button
  - Disable auto lock
  - Disable VoiceOver
  - Enable zoom
  - Enable invert colors
  - Enable AssistiveTouch
  - Enable speak selection
  - Enable mono audio
- **User Enabled Options:** Each of the following options applies only to iOS 7.0 or later. For each option, the default is **OFF**.
  - Allow VoiceOver adjustment
  - Allow zoom adjustment
  - Allow invert colors adjustment
  - Allow AssitiveTouch adjustment
- **Policy Settings**
  - o Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - o If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - o In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - o If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

Configure Android settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for an App Lock Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The left sidebar shows the 'App Lock Policy' configuration steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms' (with 'iOS' and 'Android' checked), and '3 Assignment'. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the following settings:

- App Lock parameters:**
  - Lock message: [Text input field]
  - Unlock password: [Text input field]
  - Prevent uninstall: [OFF toggle]
  - Lock screen: [Image selection field] with a [Browse] button.
- Enforce:**
  - Blacklist
  - Whitelist
- Apps:**
  - App name\*: [Text input field] with an [Add] button.

At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **App Lock parameters**
  - **Lock message:** Type a message that users see when they attempt to open a locked app.
  - **Unlock password:** Type the password to unlock the app.
  - **Prevent uninstall:** Select whether users are allowed to uninstall apps. The default is **OFF**.
  - **Lock screen:** Select the image that appears on the device's lock screen by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.
  - **Enforce:** Click either **Blacklist** to create a list of apps that are not allowed to run on devices or click **Whitelist** to create a list of apps that are allowed to run on devices.
- **Apps:** Click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **App name:** In the list, click the name of the app to add to the whitelist or blacklist, or click **Add new** to add a new app to the list of available apps.
  - If you select **Add new**, type the app name in the field that appears.
  - Click **Save** or **Cancel**.
  - Repeat these steps each app you want to add to the whitelist or blacklist.

**Note:** To delete an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**, the **App Lock Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for an App Lock Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'App Lock Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you define a list of apps that are allowed to run on a device, or a list of apps that are blocked from running on a device.' The 'Choose delivery groups' section has a search bar and a list of groups: 'AllUsers' (checked), 'sales', 'RG', and 'ag186'. The 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' list contains 'AllUsers'. At the bottom, there is a 'Deployment Schedule' section and 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

### Note:

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.



# App network usage device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can set network usage rules to specify how managed apps use networks, such as cellular data networks, on iOS devices. The rules only apply to managed apps. Managed apps are those that you deploy to users' devices through XenMobile. They do not include apps that users have downloaded directly to their devices without being deployed through XenMobile or those already installed on the devices when the devices were enrolled in XenMobile.

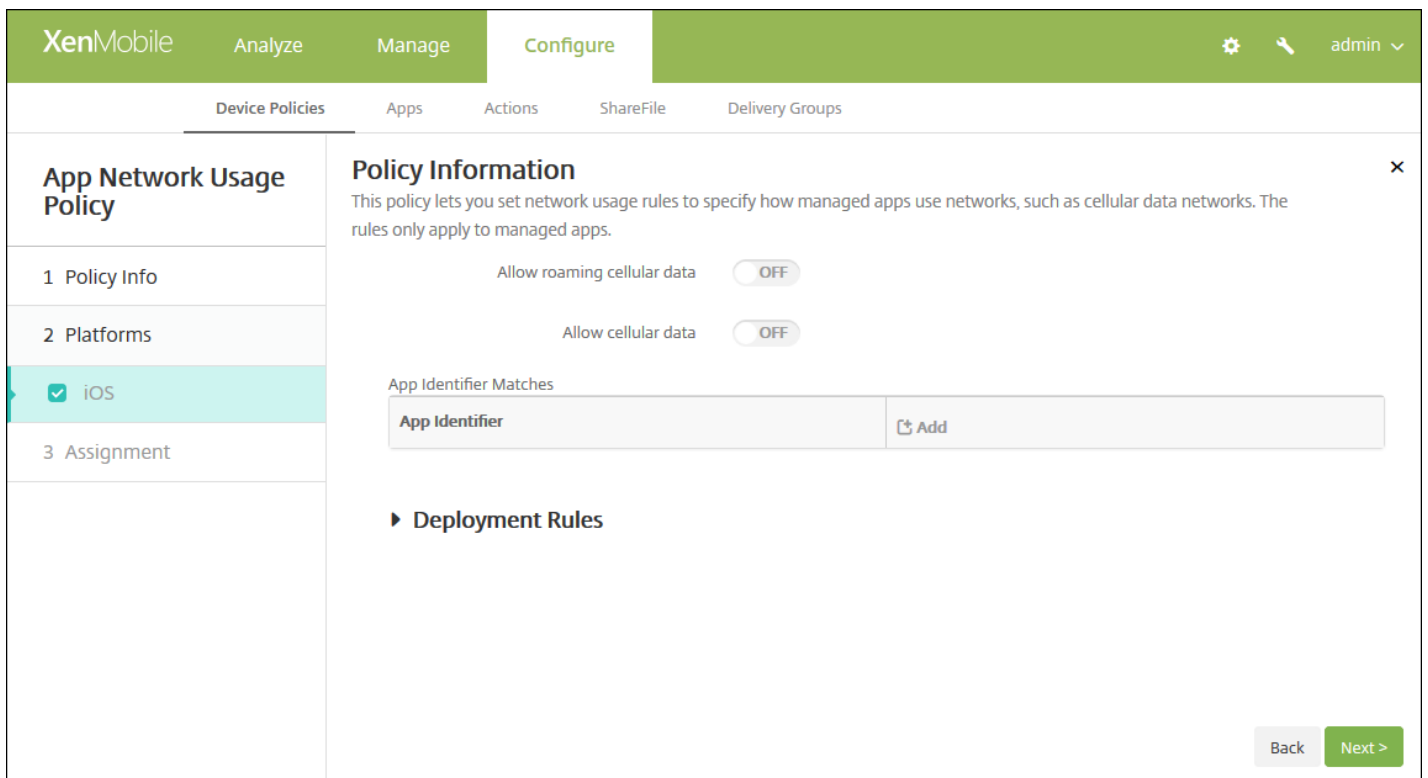
1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More**, and then under **Apps**, click **App Network Usage**. The **App Network Usage Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is selected. Below the navigation bar, there are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' sub-tab is active. On the left, there is a sidebar for 'App Network Usage Policy' with three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '1 Policy Info' section is highlighted. The main content area shows the 'Policy Information' pane. It contains a description: 'This policy lets you set network usage rules to specify how managed apps use networks, such as cellular data networks. The rules only apply to managed apps.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. The 'Policy Name\*' field is empty, and the 'Description' field is a large text area. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the page.

4. On the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.



6. Configure these settings.

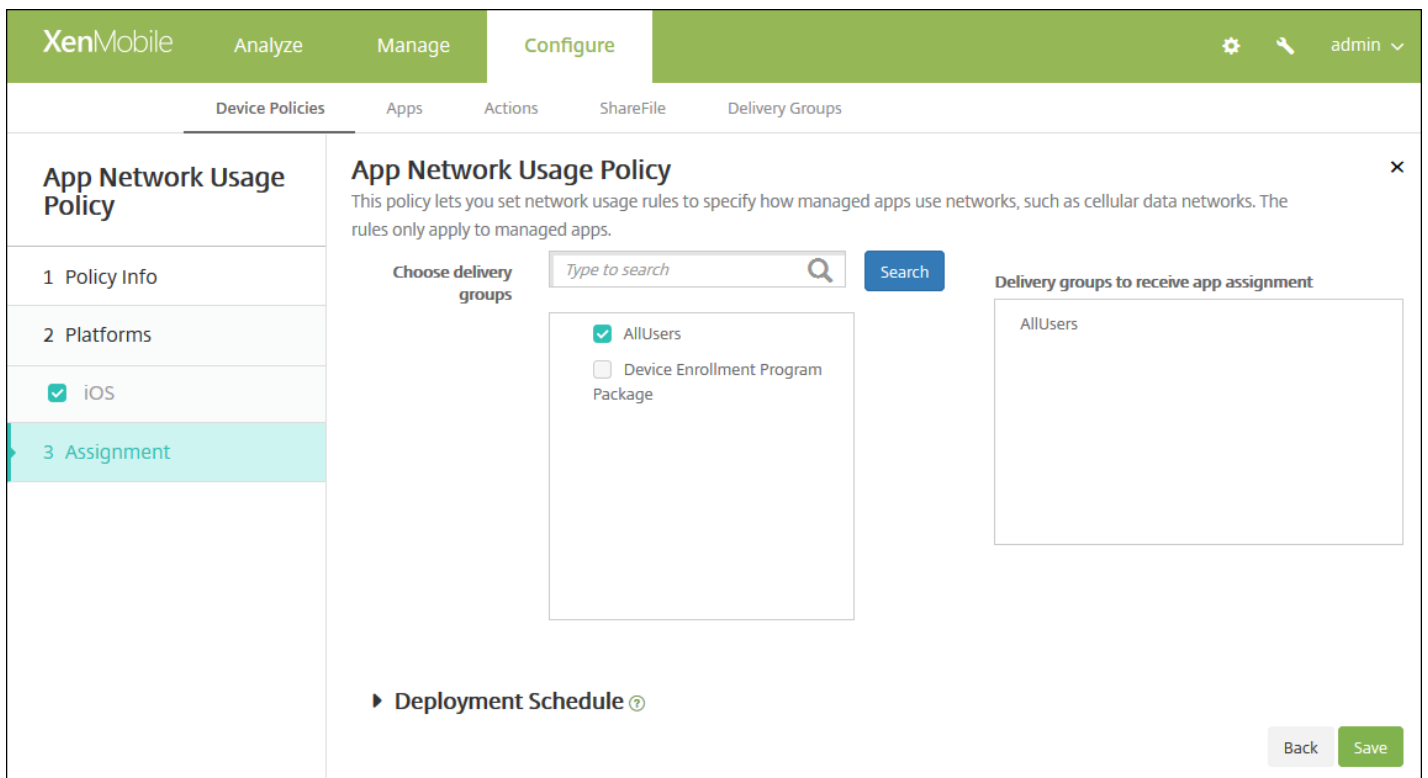
- **Allow roaming cellular data:** Select whether the specified apps can use a cellular data connection while roaming. The default is **OFF**.
- **Allow cellular data:** Select whether the specified apps can use a cellular data connection. The default is **OFF**.
- **App Identifier Matches:** For each app you want to add to the list, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **App Identifier:** Enter an app identifier.
  - Click **Save** to save the app to the list or **Cancel** to not save the app to the list.

**Note:** To delete an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

## 7. Configure deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **App Network Usage Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save** to save the policy.

# App restrictions device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can create blacklists for apps you want to prevent users from installing on Samsung KNOX devices, as well as whitelists for apps you want to allow users to install.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Security**, click **App Restrictions**. The **App Restrictions Policy** information page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### App Restrictions Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
- Samsung KNOX
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy lets you create blacklists for apps you want to prevent users from installing on Samsung KNOX devices, as well as whitelists for apps you want to allow users to install.

Policy Name\*

Description

Next >

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Samsung KNOX Platform** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### App Restrictions Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
- Samsung KNOX
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy lets you create blacklists for apps you want to prevent users from installing on Samsung KNOX devices, as well as whitelists for apps you want to allow users to install.

Allow/Deny	New app restriction*
	<input type="text"/> Add

Deployment Rules

Back Next >

6. For each app you want to add to the Allow/Deny list, click **Add** and then do the following:

- **Allow/Deny:** Select whether users are allowed to install the app.
- **New app restriction:** Type the app package ID; for example, com.kmdmaf.crackle.
- Click **Save** to save the app to the Allow/Deny list or click **Cancel** to not save the app to the Allow/Deny list.

**Note:** To delete an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **App Restrictions Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for an App Restrictions Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'App Restrictions Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you create blacklists for apps you want to prevent users from installing on Samsung KNOX devices, as well as whitelists for apps you want to allow users to install.' There are two main sections: 'Choose delivery groups' and 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment'. The 'Choose delivery groups' section has a search box with the placeholder 'Type to search' and a 'Search' button. Below it, there are two checkboxes: 'AllUsers' (checked) and 'sales' (unchecked). The 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' section shows a list with 'AllUsers' selected. At the bottom, there is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a right-pointing arrow and a help icon. A 'Back' button and a green 'Save' button are located at the bottom right of the page.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.

- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# App tunneling device policy

Feb 27, 2017

Application tunnels (app tunnels) are designed to increase service continuity and data transfer reliability for your mobile apps. App tunnels define proxy parameters between the client component of any mobile device app and the app server component. You can also use app tunnels to create remote support tunnels to a device for management support. You can configure the app tunneling policy for Android and Windows Mobile/CE devices.

**Note:** Any app traffic sent through a tunnel that you define in this policy goes through XenMobile before being redirected to the server running the app.

[Android settings](#)

[Windows Mobile/CE settings](#)

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **More** and then, under **Network access**, click **Tunnel**. The **Tunnel Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' (highlighted). Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Tunnel Policy' and contains a sidebar on the left with three sections: '1 Policy Info' (highlighted), '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '1 Policy Info' section is expanded to show 'Policy Information'. The description reads: 'This policy lets you configure an app tunnel. While doing so, you can choose if the tunnel will be used for the remote support app.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' (a text box) and 'Description' (a larger text area). A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the form.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure Android settings

**Tunnel Policy**

1 Policy Info

2 Platforms

- Android
- Windows Mobile/CE

3 Assignment

**Policy Information**

This policy lets you configure an app tunnel. While doing so, you can choose if the tunnel will be used for the remote support app.

Use this tunnel for remote support  OFF

**Connection configuration**

Connection initiated by  ?

Maximum connections per device\*  ?

Define connection time out  OFF ?

Block cellular connections passing by this tunnel  OFF ?

**App device parameters**

Client port\*  ?

**App server parameters**

IP address or server name\*

Server port\*

► **Deployment Rules**

Back Next >

Configure these settings:

- **Use this tunnel for remote support:** Select whether the tunnel will be used for remote support.
  - Note:** The configuration steps are different depending on whether you select remote support.
- If you do not select remote support, do the following:
  - **Connection initiated by:** Click **Device** or **Server** to specify the source initiating the connection.
  - **Maximum connections per device:** Type a number to specify how many concurrent TCP connections the app can establish. This field applies only to device-initiated connections.
  - **Define connection time out:** Select whether to set a length of time an app can be idle before the tunnel is closed.
    - **Connection time out:** If you set **Define connection time out** to **On**, type the length of time in seconds that an app can be idle before the tunnel is closed.
  - **Block cellular connections passing by this tunnel:** Select whether this tunnel is blocked while roaming.
    - Note:** WiFi and USB connections will not be blocked.
  - **Client port:** Type the client port number. In most cases, this value is the same as for the server port.
  - **IP address or server name:** Type the IP address or name of the app server. This field applies only to device-initiated connections.
  - **Server port:** Type the server port number.
- If you do select remote support, do the following:
  - **Use this tunnel for remote support:** Set to **On**.



- **Define connection time out:** Select whether to set a length of time an app can be idle before the tunnel is closed.
  - **Connection time out:** If you set **Define connection time out to On**, type the length of time in seconds that an app can be idle before the tunnel is closed.
- **Use SSL connection:** Select whether to use a secure SSL connection for this tunnel.
- **Block cellular connections passing by this tunnel:** Select whether this tunnel is blocked while roaming.
 

**Note:** WiFi and USB connections will not be blocked.

## Configure Windows Mobile/CE settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Tunnel Policy' and is divided into three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', 'Windows Mobile/CE' is selected. The 'Policy Information' section contains the following settings:

- Use this tunnel for remote support:** OFF
- Connection configuration:**
  - Connection initiated by:** Device
  - Protocol:** Generic TCP
  - Maximum connections per device\*:** 1
  - Define connection time out:** OFF
  - Block cellular connections passing by this tunnel:** OFF
- App device parameters:**
  - Redirect to XenMobile:** Through app settings
  - Client port\*:** (empty field)
- App server parameters:**
  - IP address or server name\*:** (empty field)
  - Server port\*:** (empty field)

At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **Use this tunnel for remote support:** Select whether the tunnel will be used for remote support.
 

**Note:** The configuration steps are different depending on whether you select remote support.
- If you do not select remote support, do the following:
  - **Connection initiated by:** Click **Device** or **Server** to specify the source initiating the connection.
  - **Protocol:** In the list, click the protocol to use. The default is **Generic TCP**.
  - **Maximum connections per device:** Type a number to specify how many concurrent TCP connections the app can

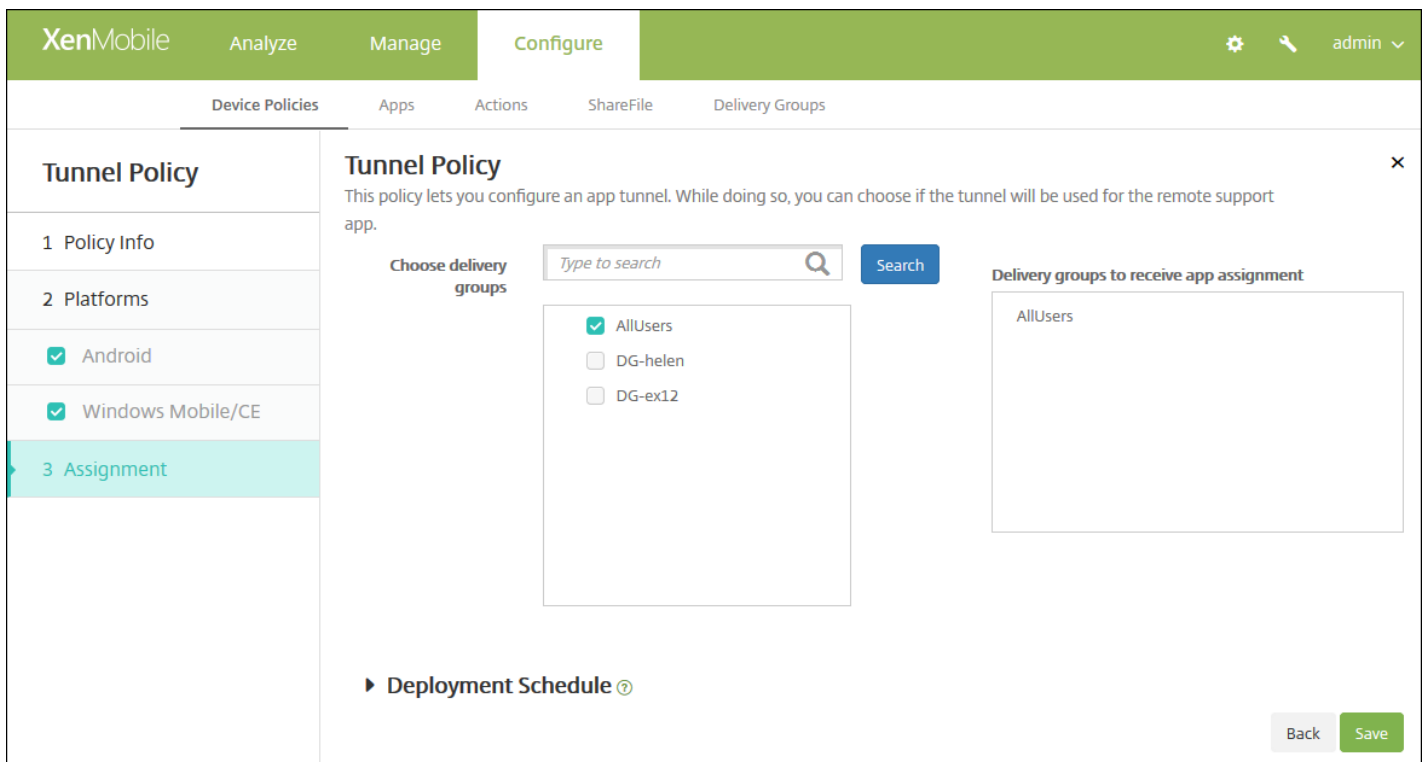
establish. This field applies only to device-initiated connections.

- **Define connection time out:** Select whether to set a length of time an app can be idle before the tunnel is closed.
  - **Connection time out:** If you set **Define connection time out** to **On**, type the length of time in seconds that an app can be idle before the tunnel is closed.
- **Block cellular connections passing by this tunnel:** Select whether this tunnel is blocked while roaming.  
**Note:** WiFi and USB connections will not be blocked.
- **Redirect to XenMobile:** In the list, click how the device connects to XenMobile. The default is **Through app settings**.
  - If you select **Using a local alias**, type the alias in **Local alias**. The default is **localhost**.
  - If you select **An IP address range**, type the from IP address in **IP address range from** and type the to IP address in **IP address range to**.
- **Client port:** Type the client port number. In most cases, this value is the same as for the server port.
- **IP address or server name:** Type the IP address or name of the app server. This field applies only to device-initiated connections.
- **Server port:** Type the server port number.
- If you do select remote support, do the following:
  - **Use this tunnel for remote support:** Set to **On**.
  - **Define connection time out:** Select whether to set a length of time an app can be idle before the tunnel is closed.
    - **Connection time out:** If you set Define connection time out to On, type the length of time in seconds that an app can be idle before the tunnel is closed.
  - **Use SSL connection:** Select whether to use a secure SSL connection for this tunnel.
  - **Block cellular connections passing by this tunnel:** Select whether this tunnel is blocked while roaming.  
**Note:** WiFi and USB connections will not be blocked.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules



8. Click **Next**. The **Tunnel Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# App uninstall device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can create an app uninstall policy for iOS, Android, Samsung KNOX, Android for Work, Windows desktop/tablet, and Windows Mobile/CE platforms. An app uninstall policy lets you remove apps from users' devices for any number of reasons. It may be that you no longer want to support certain apps, your company may want to replace existing apps with similar apps from different vendors, and so on. The apps are removed when this policy is deployed to your users' devices. With the exception of Samsung KNOX devices, users receive a prompt to uninstall the app; Samsung KNOX device users do not receive a prompt to uninstall the app.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Apps**, click **App Uninstall**. The **App Uninstall Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface for configuring an App Uninstall Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs, with 'Configure' selected. Below the navigation bar, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'App Uninstall Policy' and contains a 'Policy Information' section. This section includes a 'Policy Name' field and a 'Description' field, both of which are empty. A note below the fields states: 'This policy lets you specify which apps need to be uninstalled. You can perform silent removal only on Samsung KNOX devices. If you don't find the app in the list, use the package name.' To the right of the 'Description' field is a 'Next >' button. On the left side, there is a sidebar with three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '2 Platforms' section is expanded, showing a list of platforms with checkboxes: iOS, Android, Samsung KNOX, Android for Work, Windows Desktop/Tablet, and Windows Mobile/CE. All checkboxes are checked. The '3 Assignment' section is empty.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS settings

**XenMobile** Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### App Uninstall Policy

- Policy Info
- Platforms
  - iOS
  - Android
  - Samsung KNOX
  - Android for Work
  - Windows Desktop/Tablet
  - Windows Mobile/CE
- Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy lets you specify which apps need to be uninstalled. You can perform silent removal only on Samsung KNOX devices. If you don't find the app in the list, use the package name.

Managed app bundle ID\*

#### Deployment Rules

[Back](#) [Next >](#)

Configure this setting:

- **Managed app bundle ID:** in the list, click an existing app or click **Add new**. If there are no apps configured for this platform, the list will be empty and you must add a new app.
  - When you click **Add**, a field appears where you can type an app name.

Configure all other platform settings

**XenMobile** Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### App Uninstall Policy

- Policy Info
- Platforms
  - iOS
  - Android**
  - Samsung KNOX
  - Android for Work
  - Windows Desktop/Tablet
  - Windows Mobile/CE
- Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy lets you specify which apps need to be uninstalled. You can perform silent removal only on Samsung KNOX devices. If you don't find the app in the list, use the package name.

Apps to uninstall

<input type="text" value="App Name*"/>	<a href="#">Add</a>
--	---------------------

#### Deployment Rules

[Back](#) [Next >](#)

Configure this setting:

- **Apps to uninstall:** For each app you want to add, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **App name:** In the list, click an existing app or click **Add new** to enter a new app name. If there are no apps configured for this platform, the list will be empty and you must add new apps.
  - Click **Add** to add the app or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the app.

**Note:** To delete an existing app from the uninstall policy, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **App Uninstall Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the 'App Uninstall Policy' configuration page in XenMobile. The page has a green header with 'XenMobile' and navigation tabs: 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below the header are sub-tabs: 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'App Uninstall Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you specify which apps need to be uninstalled. You can perform silent removal only on Samsung KNOX devices. If you don't find the app in the list, use the package name.' There is a search box for 'Choose delivery groups' with a 'Search' button. Below the search box is a list of delivery groups: 'AllUsers' and 'Sales', both with unchecked checkboxes. A 'Deployment Schedule' section is partially visible. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The

default option is **On every connection**.

- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# App uninstall restrictions device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can specify the apps users can or cannot uninstall on a Samsung SAFE or Amazon device.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More**, and then under **Apps**, click **App Uninstall Restrictions**. The **App Uninstall Restrictions Policy** information page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### App Uninstall Restrictions Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
- Samsung SAFE
- Amazon
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy lets you specify the apps users can or cannot uninstall on a Samsung SAFE or Amazon device.

Policy Name\*

Description

Next >

4. On the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### App Uninstall Restrictions Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
- Samsung SAFE
- Amazon
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy lets you specify the apps users can or cannot uninstall on a Samsung SAFE or Amazon device.

App Uninstall Restriction Settings

App Name*	Rule	Add
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/>

Deployment Rules

Back Next >

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.



When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

7. Configure these settings for each platform you selected:

- **App Uninstall Restrictions Settings:** For each app rule you want to add, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **App Name:** In the list, click an app or **Add new** to add a new app.
  - **Rule:** Select whether users can uninstall the app. The default is to allow uninstallation.
  - Click **Save** or **Cancel**.

**Note:** To delete an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

## 8. Configure the deployment rules

9. Click **Next**. The **App Uninstall Restrictions Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'App Uninstall Restrictions Policy' and includes a sub-header 'App Uninstall Restrictions Policy' and a description: 'This policy lets you specify the apps users can or cannot uninstall on a Samsung SAFE or Amazon device.' The interface is divided into three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '2 Platforms' section shows 'Samsung SAFE' and 'Amazon' both checked. The '3 Assignment' section is currently active and shows a 'Choose delivery groups' section with a search box and a list of delivery groups: 'AllUsers' and 'Device Enrollment Program Package'. Below this is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a right-pointing arrow and a help icon. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

10. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

11. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The

default option is **On every connection**.

- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

12. Click **Save**.

# Browser device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can create browser device policies for Samsung SAFE or Samsung KNOX devices to define whether users' devices can use the browser or to limit the browser functions that the devices can use.

On Samsung devices, you can completely disable the browser, or you can enable or disable pop-ups, JavaScript, cookies, autofill, and whether to force fraud warnings.

## [Samsung SAFE and Samsung KNOX settings](#)

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add** to add a new policy. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **More**, and then under **Apps**, click **Browser**. The **Browser Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Browser Policy' and is divided into three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '1 Policy Info' section is currently active and shows a 'Policy Information' pane. This pane contains a description: 'This policy lets you set rules for using the browser on Samsung and Android for Work devices.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located in the bottom right corner of the 'Policy Information' pane.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

## Configure Samsung SAFE and Samsung KNOX settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Browser Policy' section is active, showing a sidebar with 'Policy Info', 'Platforms', 'Samsung SAFE', 'Samsung KNOX', and 'Assignment'. The main content area displays the 'Browser Policy' settings, which are currently all set to 'OFF':

- Disable browser: OFF
- Disable pop-up: OFF
- Disable Javascript: OFF
- Disable cookies: OFF
- Disable autofill: OFF
- Force fraud warning: OFF

Below the settings is a 'Deployment Rules' section with a right-pointing arrow. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **Disable browser:** Select whether to completely disable the Samsung browser on users' devices. The default is **OFF**, which lets users use the browser. When you disable the browser, the following options disappear.
- **Disable pop-up:** Select whether to allow pop-up messages on the browser.
- **Disable Javascript:** Select whether to allow JavaScript to run on the browser.
- **Disable cookies:** Select whether to allow cookies.
- **Disable autofill:** Select whether to allow users to turn on the browser's autofill function.
- **Force fraud warning:** Select whether to display a warning when users visit a fraudulent or compromised website.

### 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Browser Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for a Browser Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, a secondary navigation bar lists 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Browser Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you set rules for using the browser on Samsung and Android for Work devices.' There are three main sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms' (with 'Samsung SAFE' and 'Samsung KNOX' checked), and '3 Assignment' (highlighted in the sidebar). The 'Assignment' section contains a 'Choose delivery groups' list with 'AllUsers' selected and 'DG-ex12' and 'DG-Testprise' unselected. To the right is a 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' list containing 'AllUsers'. Below this is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a right-pointing arrow and a help icon. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save** to save the policy.

# Calendar (CalDav) device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can add a device policy in XenMobile to add a calendar (CalDAV) account to users' iOS or Mac OS X devices to enable them to synchronize scheduling data with any server that supports CalDAV.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **End user**, click **Calendar (CalDAV)**. The **Calendar (CalDAV) Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' (highlighted). Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Calendar (CalDAV) Policy' and contains a sidebar on the left with three sections: '1 Policy Info' (selected), '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', there are two checked options: 'iOS' and 'Mac OS X'. The main area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a description: 'This policy lets you add a calendar (CalDAV) account to an iOS and Mac OS X device to enable synchronization of scheduling data with any server that supports CalDAV.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the main area.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Calendar (CalDAV) Policy

- Policy Info
- Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
- Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy lets you add a calendar (CalDAV) account to an iOS and Mac OS X device to enable synchronization of scheduling data with any server that supports CalDAV.

Account description\*

Host name\*

Port\*

Principal URL\*

User name\*

Password

Use SSL

#### Policy Settings

Remove policy  Select date  Duration until removal (in days)

Allow user to remove policy

► **Deployment Rules**

Configure the following settings:

- **Account description:** Type an account description. This field is required.
- **Host name:** Type the address of the CalDAV server. This field is required.
- **Port:** Type the port on which to connect to the CalDAV server. This field is required. The default is **8443**.
- **Principal URL:** Type the base URL to the user's calendar.
- **User name:** Type the user's logon name. This field is required.
- **Password:** Type an optional user password.
- **Use SSL:** Select whether to use a Secure Socket Layer connection to the CalDAV server. The default is **ON**.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

Configure Mac OS X settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Calendar (CalDAV) Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy lets you add a calendar (CalDAV) account to an iOS and Mac OS X device to enable synchronization of scheduling data with any server that supports CalDAV.

Account description\*

Host name\*

Port\*

Principal URL\*

User name\*

Password

Use SSL  ON

#### Policy Settings

Remove policy  Select date  Duration until removal (in days)

Allow user to remove policy

Profile scope  OS X 10.7+

► Deployment Rules

Configure the following settings:

- **Account description:** Type an account description. This field is required.
- **Host name:** Type the address of the CalDAV server. This field is required.
- **Port:** Type the port on which to connect to the CalDAV server. This field is required. The default is **8443**.
- **Principal URL:** Type the base URL to the user's calendar.
- **User name:** Type the user's logon name. This field is required.
- **Password:** Type an optional user password.
- **Use SSL:** Select whether to use a Secure Socket Layer connection to the CalDAV server. The default is **ON**.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.
  - Next to **Profile scope**, click either **User** or **System**. The default is **User**. This option is available only on OS X 10.7 and later.



8. Click **Next**. The **Calendar (CalDAV) Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for a Calendar (CalDAV) Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Calendar (CalDAV) Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you add a calendar (CalDAV) account to an iOS and Mac OS X device to enable synchronization of scheduling data with any server that supports CalDAV.' The 'Choose delivery groups' section features a search bar with the placeholder 'Type to search' and a 'Search' button. Below the search bar is a list of delivery groups: 'AllUsers' (checked) and 'sales' (unchecked). To the right, the 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' section shows a list containing 'AllUsers'. At the bottom of the main area, there is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a help icon. The bottom right corner contains 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Cellular device policy

Feb 27, 2017

This policy allows you to configure cellular network settings on an iOS device.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.

2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** page appears.

3. Expand **More**, and then, under **Network Access**, click **Cellular**. The **Cellular Network Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is active. Below the navigation bar, there are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' sub-tab is selected. On the left, there is a sidebar titled 'Cellular Policy' with three steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '1 Policy Info' step is highlighted. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a text input field for 'Policy Name\*' and a larger text area for 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the form.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **iOS Platform** information page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Cellular Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
- 3 Assignment

### Policy Information

This policy lets you configure cellular network settings on an iOS device.

**Attach APN**

Name

Authentication type

User name

Password

**APN**

Name

Authentication type

User name

Password

Proxy server

Proxy server port

**Policy Settings**

Remove policy  Select date  Duration until removal (in days)

Allow user to remove policy

► **Deployment Rules**

6. Configure these settings:

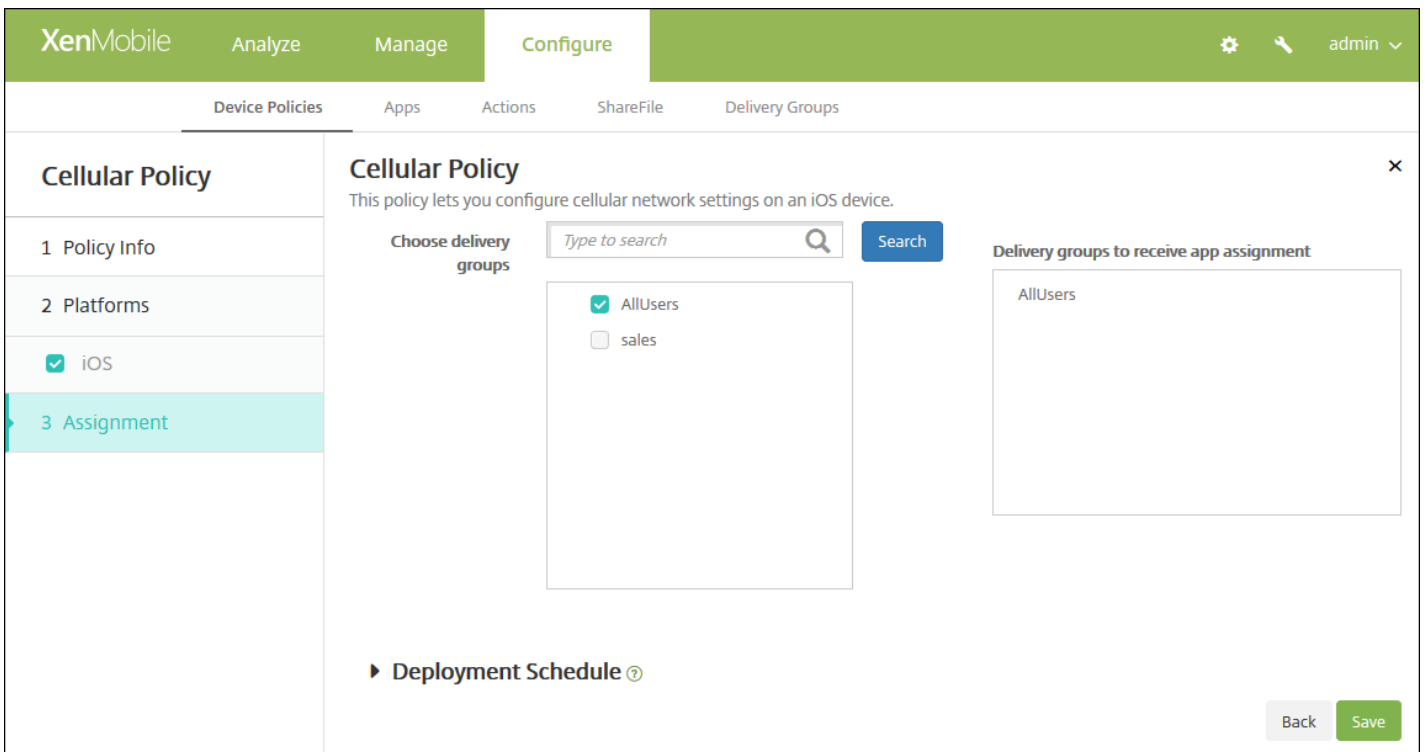
- **Attach APN**
  - **Name:** Type a name for this configuration.
  - **Authentication type:** In the list, click Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (**CHAP**) or Password Authentication Protocol (**PAP**). The default is **PAP**.
  - **User name:** Type a user name used for authentication.
- **APN**
  - **Name:** Type a name for the Access Point Name (APN) configuration.
  - **Authentication type:** In the list, click **CHAP** or **PAP**. The default is **PAP**.
  - **User name:** Type a user name used for authentication.
  - **Password:** Type a password used for authentication.
  - **Proxy server:** Type the proxy server network address.

- **Policy Settings**

- Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
- If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
- In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
- If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Cellular Network Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms,

except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

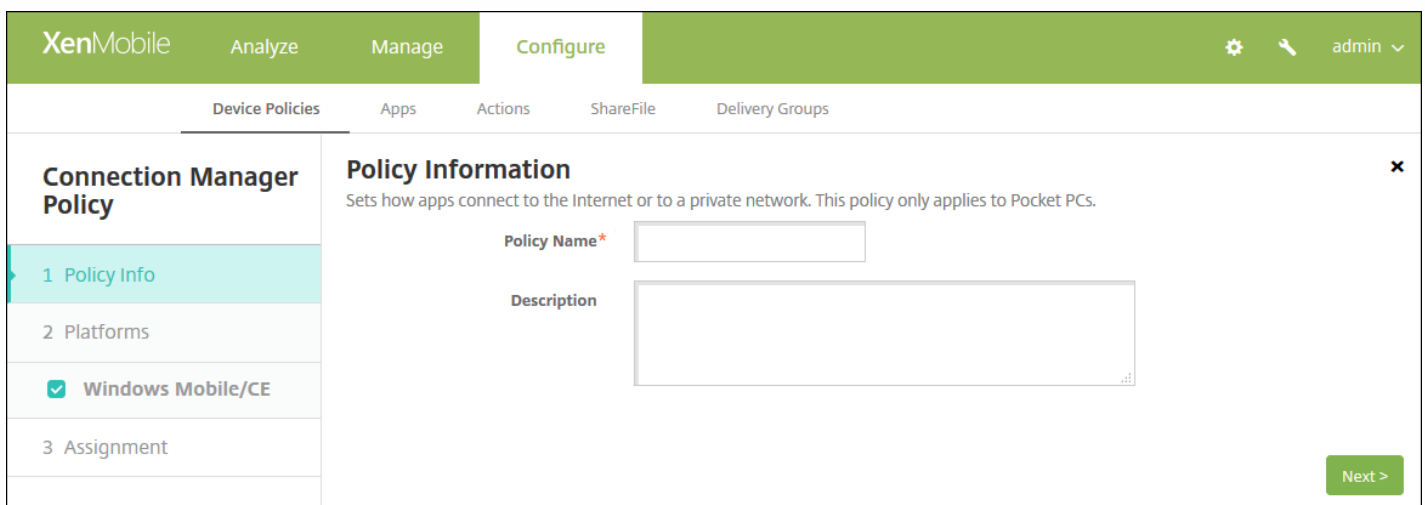
11. Click **Save**.

# Connection manager device policy

Feb 27, 2017

In XenMobile, you can specify the connection settings for apps that connect automatically to the Internet and to private networks. This policy is only available on Windows Pocket PCs.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **More**, and then, under **Network Access**, click **Connection manager**. The **Connection Manager** policy information page appears.

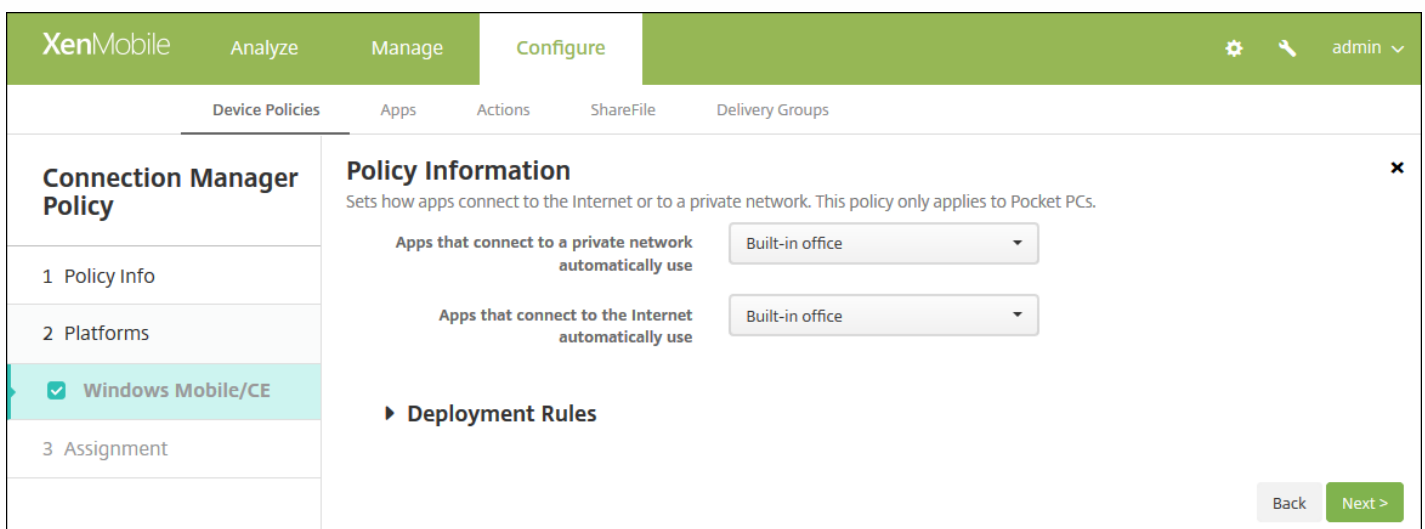


The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Connection Manager Policy' and includes a 'Policy Information' section. The 'Policy Name' field is empty, and the 'Description' field is also empty. A 'Next >' button is visible at the bottom right.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Windows Mobile/CE Platform** page appears.



The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Connection Manager Policy' and includes a 'Policy Information' section. The 'Apps that connect to a private network automatically use' dropdown is set to 'Built-in office'. The 'Apps that connect to the Internet automatically use' dropdown is also set to 'Built-in office'. A 'Deployment Rules' section is visible below. 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons are visible at the bottom right.

6. Configure these settings.

**Note: Built-in office** means all connections are to your company's intranet and **Built-in Internet** means that all connections are to the Internet.

- **Apps that connect to a private network automatically use:** In the list, click either **Built-in office** or **Built-in Internet**. The default is **Built-in office**.
- **Apps that connect to the Internet automatically use:** In the list, click either **Built-in office** or **Built-in Internet**. The default is **Built-in office**.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Connection Manager** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configuration console. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' section is active, with sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Connection Manager Policy' and includes a description: 'Sets how apps connect to the Internet or to a private network. This policy only applies to Pocket PCs.' Below this, there are two main sections: 'Choose delivery groups' and 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment'. The 'Choose delivery groups' section has a search box and a 'Search' button. It lists 'AllUsers' (checked) and 'sales' (unchecked). The 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' section shows 'AllUsers' in a list. At the bottom, there is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a right-pointing arrow and a help icon. 'Back' and 'Save' buttons are located in the bottom right corner.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app** assignment list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.



# Connection scheduling device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You create connection scheduling policies to control how and when users' devices connect to XenMobile. Note that you can configure this policy for devices enabled for Android for Work as well.

You can specify that users connect their devices manually, that devices stay connected permanently, or that devices connect within a defined time frame.

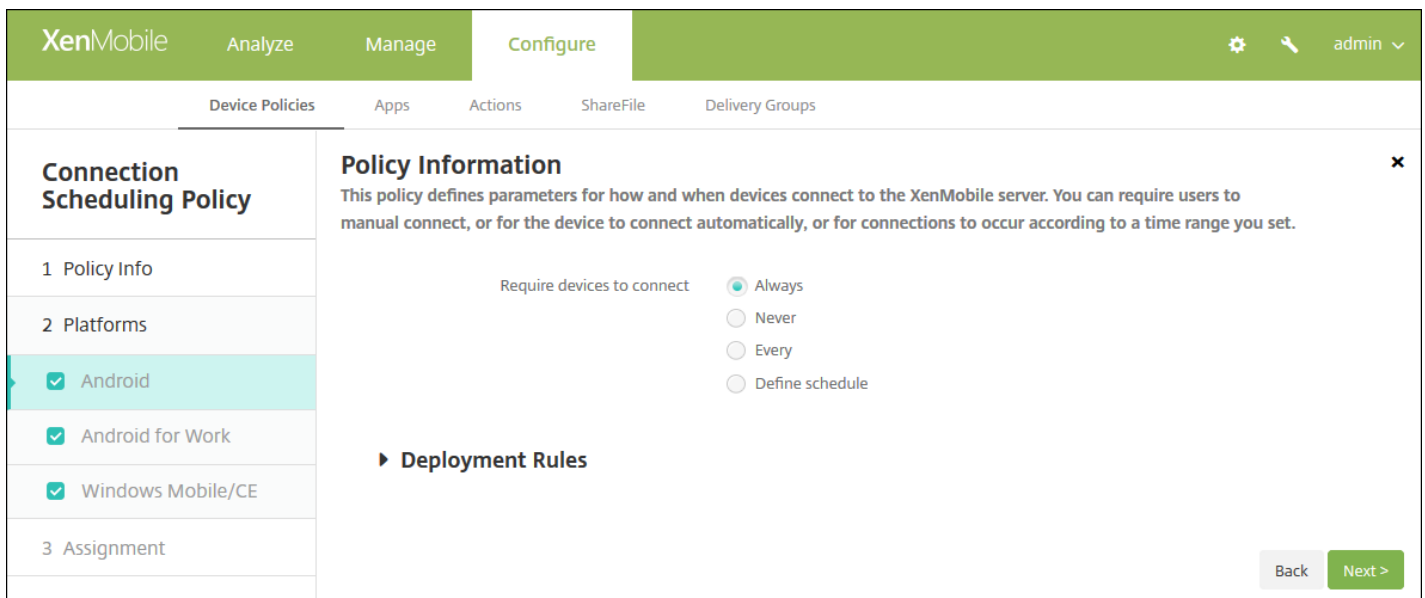
1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **Scheduling**. The **Connection Scheduling Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is active. Below the navigation bar, there are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' sub-tab is selected. On the left, a sidebar titled 'Connection Scheduling Policy' has three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', three options are checked: 'Android', 'Android for Work', and 'Windows Mobile/CE'. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a description: 'This policy defines parameters for how and when devices connect to the XenMobile server. You can require users to manual connect, or for the device to connect automatically, or for connections to occur according to a time range you set.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' (a text box) and 'Description' (a larger text area). A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the main area.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.



6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 8 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

7. Configure the following settings for each of the platforms you selected:

- **Require devices to connect:** Click the option you want to set for this schedule.
  - **Always:** Keep the connection alive permanently. XenMobile on the user's device attempts to reconnect to the XenMobile server after a network connection loss and will monitor the connection by transmitting control packets at regular intervals. Citrix recommends this option for optimized security. When you choose **Always**, also use for the device **Tunnel Policy**, the **Define connection time-out** setting to ensure the connection is not draining battery. By keeping the connection alive, you can push security commands like wipe or lock to the device on-demand. You must also select the **Deployment Schedule** option **Deploy for always-on connections** in each policy deployed to the device.
  - **Never:** Connect manually. Users must initiate the connection from XenMobile on their devices. Citrix doesn't recommend this option for production deployments because it prevents you from deploying security policies to devices, thus users will never receive any new apps or policies.
  - **Every:** Connect at the designated interval. When this option is in effect and you send a security policy such as a lock or a wipe, XenMobile processes the action on the device the next time the device connects. When you select this option, the **Connect every N minutes** field appears where you must enter the number of minutes after which the device must reconnect. The default is **20**.
  - **Define schedule:** When enabled, XenMobile on the user's device attempts to reconnect to the XenMobile server after a network connection loss and monitors the connection by transmitting control packets at regular intervals within the time frame you define. See [Defining a connection time frame](#) for how to define a connection time frame.
    - **Maintain permanent connection during these hours:** Users' devices must be connected for the defined time frame.
    - **Require a connection within each of these ranges:** Users' devices must be connected at least once in any of the defined time frames.
    - **Use local device time rather than UTC:** Synchronize the defined time frames to local device time rather than Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

## Defining a connection time frame

When you enable the following options, a timeline appears where you can define the time frames you want. You can enable either or both options to require a permanent connection during specific hours or to require a connection within certain time frames. Each square in the timeline is 30 minutes, so if you want a connection between 8:00 AM and 9:00 AM every weekday, you click the two squares on the timeline between 8 AM and 9 AM every weekday.

For example, the two timelines in the following figure require a permanent connection between 8:00 AM and 9:00 AM every weekday, a permanent connection between 12:00 AM Saturday and 1:00 AM Sunday, and at least one connection every weekday between 5:00 AM and 8:00 AM or between 10:00 AM and 11:00 PM.

The screenshot shows a configuration interface for defining connection schedules. It features two main sections, each with a toggle switch set to 'ON'.

**Section 1: Maintain permanent connection during these hours**

- Timeline: 1 AM to 12 AM.
- Days: Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat, Sun.
- Configuration: Green squares are placed in the 8:00 AM to 9:00 AM slots for Monday through Friday. A single green square is placed in the 12:00 AM to 1:00 AM slot for Saturday.

**Section 2: Require a connection within each of these ranges**

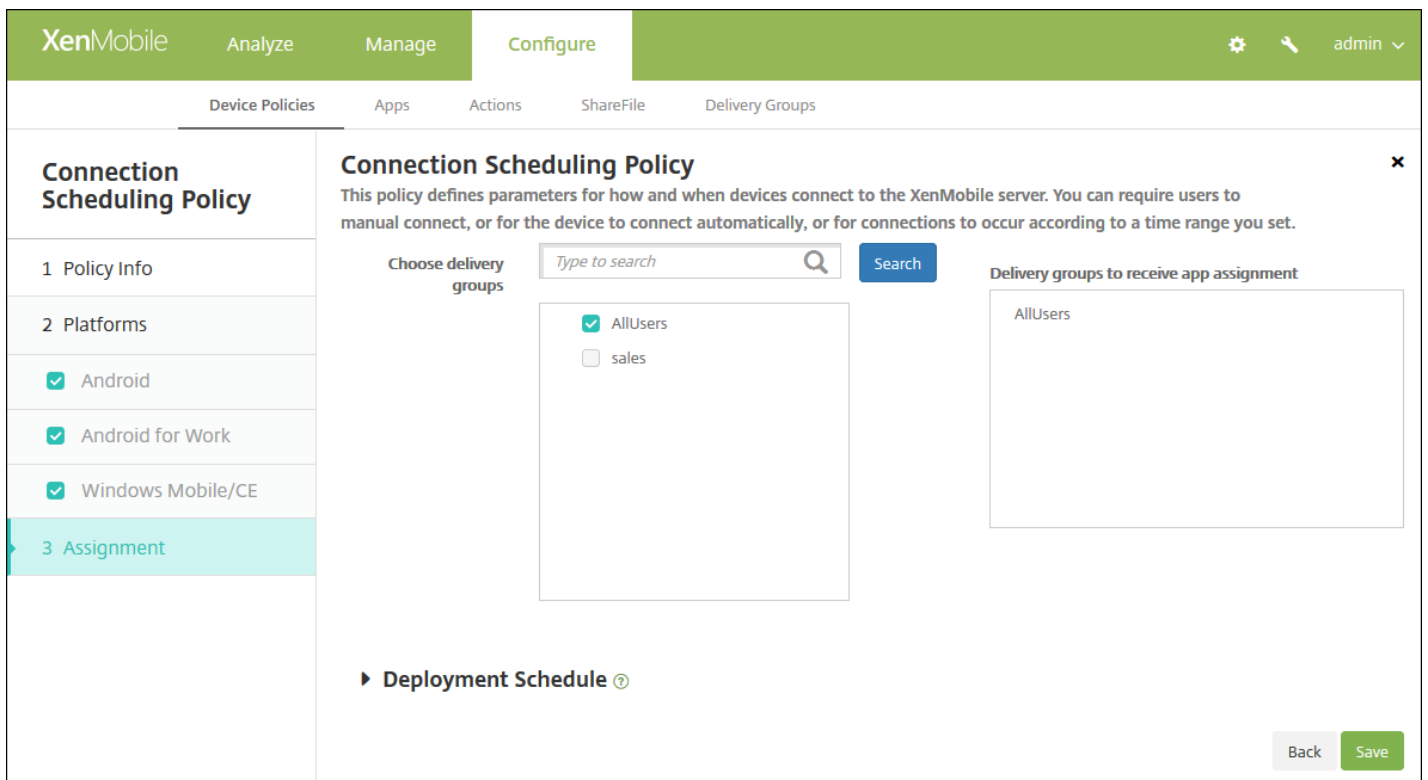
- Timeline: 1 AM to 12 AM.
- Days: Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat, Sun.
- Configuration: Green squares are placed in the 5:00 AM to 8:00 AM slots for Monday through Friday. Additionally, green squares are placed in the 10:00 AM to 11:00 PM slots for Monday through Friday.

**Section 3: Use local device time rather than UTC**

- Toggle: OFF.

### [8. Configure the deployment rules](#)

9. Click **Next**. The **Connection Scheduling Policy** assignment page appears.



10. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

11. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

12. Click **Save**.

# Contacts (CardDAV) device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can add a device policy in XenMobile to add an iOS contacts (CardDAV) account to users' iOS or Mac OS X devices to enable them to synchronize contact data with any server that supports CardDAV.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Security**, click **Contacts CardDAV**. The **CardDAV Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. Below that, there are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'CardDAV Policy' and is divided into three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The 'Policy Information' section is active, showing a description: 'This policy lets you add contacts (CardDAV) accounts for iOS and Mac OS X to an iOS or Mac OS X device to enable synchronization of contact data with any server that supports CardDAV.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' (a text box) and 'Description' (a larger text area). A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the 'Policy Information' section.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, Type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS settings

**CardDAV Policy**

1 Policy Info

2 Platforms

iOS

Mac OS X

3 Assignment

**Policy Information**

This policy lets you add contacts (CardDAV) accounts for iOS and Mac OS X to an iOS or Mac OS X device to enable synchronization of contact data with any server that supports CardDAV.

Account description \*

Host name \*

Port \* 8443

Principal URL \*

User name \*

Password

Use SSL **ON**

**Policy Settings**

Remove policy  Select date  Duration until removal (in days)

Allow user to remove policy Always

► **Deployment Rules**

Back Next >

Configure these settings:

- **Account description:** Type an account description. This field is required.
- **Host name:** Type the address of the CardDAV server. This field is required.
- **Port:** Type the port on which to connect to the CardDAV server. This field is required. The default is **8443**.
- **Principal URL:** Type the base URL to the user's calendar.
- **User name:** Type the user's logon name. This field is required.
- **Password:** Type an optional user password.
- **Use SSL:** Select whether to use a Secure Socket Layer connection to the CardDAV server. The default is **ON**.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to Removal password, type the necessary password.

Configure Mac OS X settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### CardDAV Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy lets you add contacts (CardDAV) accounts for iOS and Mac OS X to an iOS or Mac OS X device to enable synchronization of contact data with any server that supports CardDAV.

Account description\*

Host name\*

Port\*

Principal URL\*

User name\*

Password

Use SSL

#### Policy Settings

Remove policy  Select date  Duration until removal (in days)

Allow user to remove policy

Profile scope  OS X 10.7+

► Deployment Rules

Configure these settings:

- **Account description:** Type an account description. This field is required.
- **Host name:** Type the address of the CardDAV server. This field is required.
- **Port:** Type the port on which to connect to the CardDAV server. This field is required. The default is **8443**.
- **Principal URL:** Type the base URL to the user's calendar.
- **User name:** Type the user's logon name. This field is required.
- **Password:** Type an optional user password.
- **Use SSL:** Select whether to use a Secure Socket Layer connection to the CardDAV server. The default is **ON**.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to Removal password, type the necessary password.
  - Next to **Profile scope**, click either **User** or **System**. The default is **User**. This option is available only on OS X 10.7 and later.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **CardDAV Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for a CardDAV Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'CardDAV Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you add contacts (CardDAV) accounts for iOS and Mac OS X to an iOS or Mac OS X device to enable synchronization of contact data with any server that supports CardDAV.' The 'Choose delivery groups' section has a search box and a list of groups: AllUsers (checked), Sales, and RG. The 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' section shows AllUsers. At the bottom, there is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a question mark icon, and 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

### Note:

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.



# Copy Apps to Samsung Container device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can specify apps that are already installed on a device be copied to a SEAMS container or to a KNOX container on supported Samsung devices (for information about supported devices, see Samsung's [Samsung KNOX Supported Devices](#) page). Apps copied to the SEAMS container are available on users' home screens; apps copied to the KNOX container are only available when users sign in to the KNOX container.

## Prerequisites:

- Device must be enrolled on XenMobile.
- The Samsung MDM keys (ELM and KLM) must be deployed (for how to do this, see Samsung MDM License Key device policies).
- Apps are already installed on device
- Initialize KNOX on the device to copy apps to the KNOX container.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**.

2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.

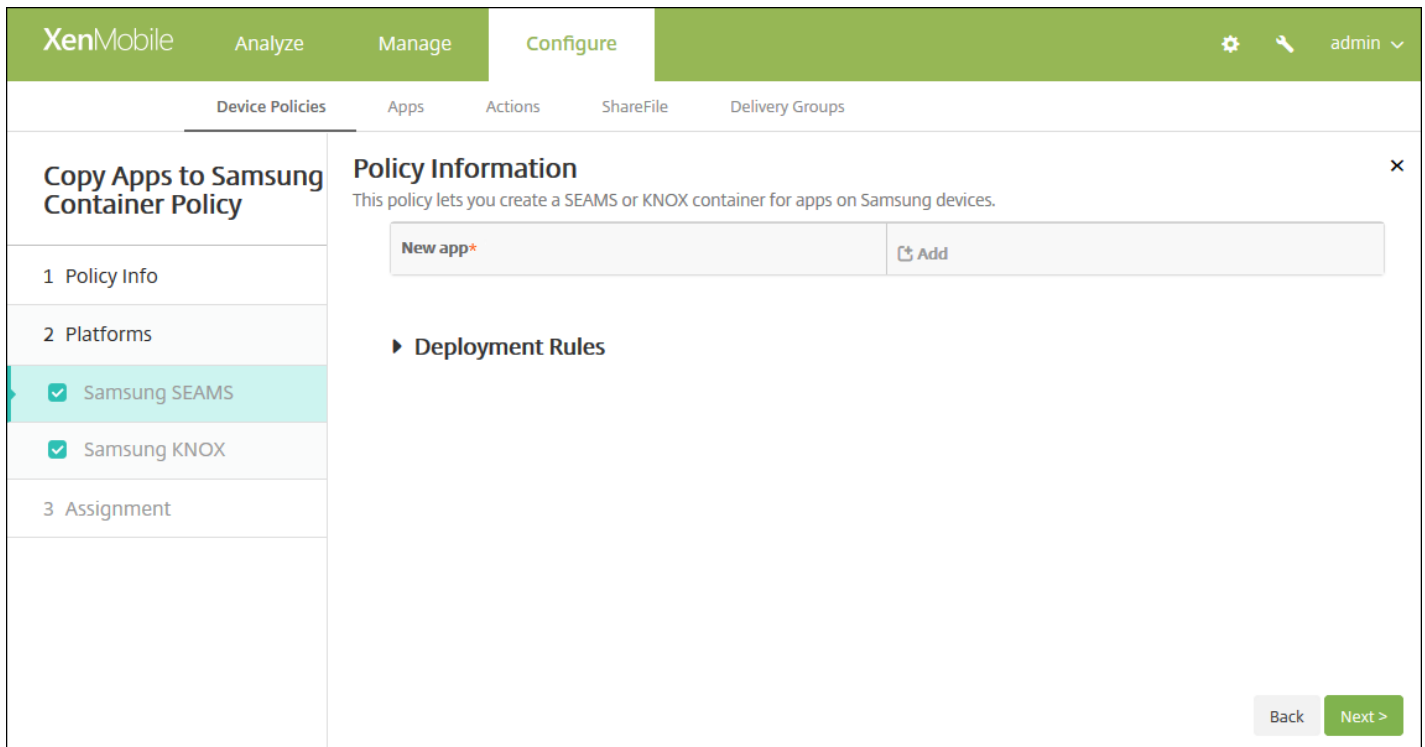
3. Expand **More**, and then under **Security**, click **Copy Apps to Samsung Container**. The **Copy Apps to Samsung Container Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Copy Apps to Samsung Container Policy' and 'Policy Information'. The description states: 'This policy lets you create a SEAMS or KNOX container for apps on Samsung devices.' There are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. The 'Policy Name\*' field is currently empty. The 'Description' field is also empty. On the left side, there is a sidebar with three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', there are two checked options: 'Samsung SEAMS' and 'Samsung KNOX'. At the bottom right, there is a green 'Next >' button.

4. On the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.



6. Under Platforms, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 8 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

7. Configure the following setting for each platform you select.

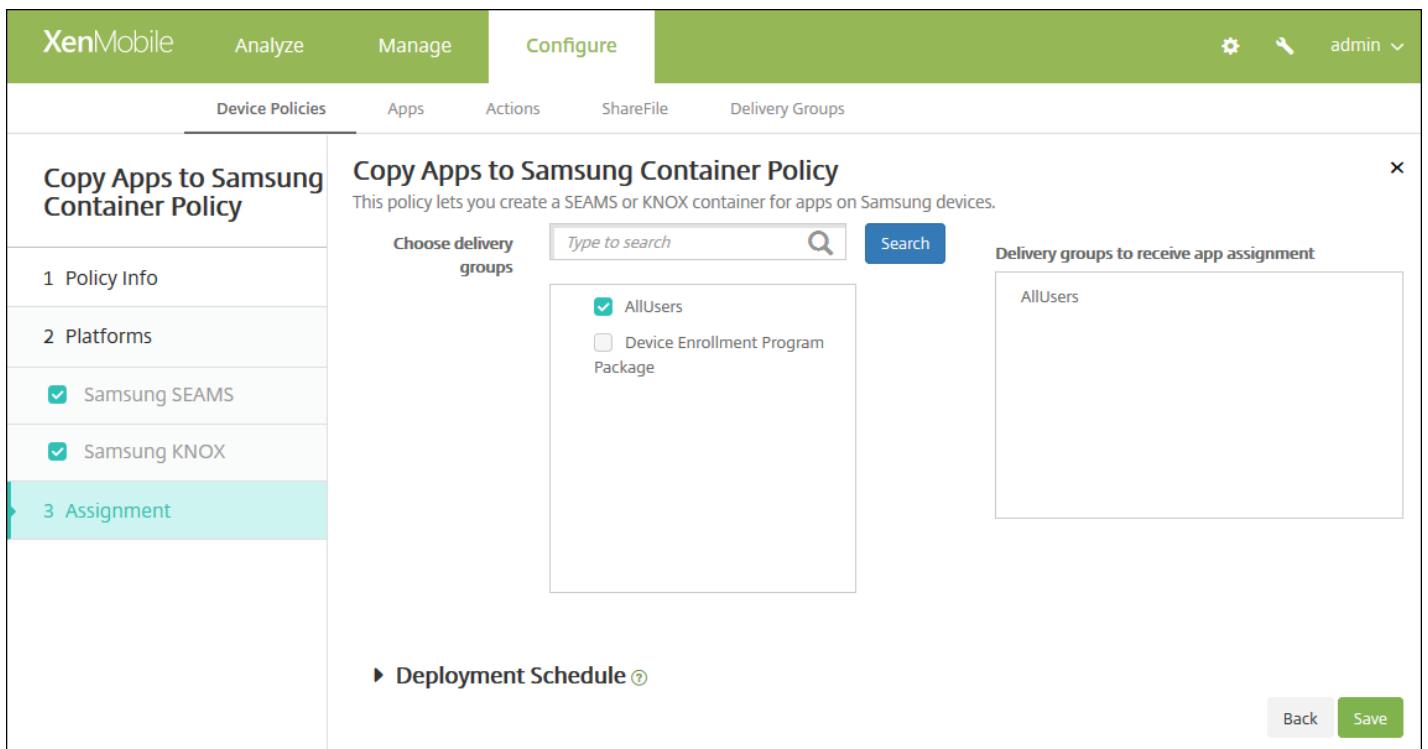
- **New app:** For each app you want to add to the list, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - Type a package ID; for example, com.mobiwolf.lacingart fo the LacingArt app.
  - Click **Save** or **Cancel**.

**Note:** To delete an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

#### 8. Configure the deployment rules

9. Click **Next**. The next platform page or **Copy Apps to Samsung Container Policy** assignment page appears.



10. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

11. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in Settings > Server Properties. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for Deploy for always on connection, which does not apply to iOS.

12. Click **Save** to save the policy.

After the policy is successfully deployed, the SEAMS apps appear on the **Device details** page under the heading **Location: Enterprise SEAMS Location**, and the KNOX apps appear under the heading **Location: Enterprise Location**.

# Credentials device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can create credentials device policies in XenMobile to enable integrated authentication with your PKI configuration in XenMobile, such as a PKI entity, a keystore, a credential provider, or a server certificate. For more information about credentials, see [Certificates](#).

You can create credential policies for iOS, Mac OS X, Android, Android for Work, Windows desktop/tablet, Windows Mobile/CE, and Windows Phone devices. Each platform requires a different set of values, which are described in this article.

[iOS settings](#)

[Mac OS X settings](#)

[Android and Android for Work settings](#)

[Windows desktop/tablet settings](#)

[Windows Mobile/CE settings](#)

[Windows Phone settings](#)

Before you can create this policy, you need the credential information you plan to use for each platform, plus any certificates and passwords.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Security**, click **Credentials**. The **Credentials Policy** information page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Credentials Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
  - Android
  - Android for Work
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Desktop/Tablet
  - Windows Mobile/CE
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy lets you deliver certificates to devices. On iOS, the certificates, such as a certificate for WiFi authentication, can also be used as part of another policy. For Windows Phone, the policy is supported only on Windows 10 and later supervised devices.

Policy Name\*

Description

Next >

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

## Configure iOS settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. Below that, there are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Credentials Policy' and has a sidebar with sections '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', several operating systems are listed with checkboxes: iOS, Mac OS X, Android, Android for Work, Windows Phone, Windows Desktop/Tablet, and Windows Mobile/CE. The 'Policy Information' section contains a description and several input fields: 'Credential type' (set to 'Certificate (.cer, .crt, .der and .pem)'), 'Credential name' (empty), and 'The credential file path' (empty) with a 'Browse' button. The 'Policy Settings' section includes 'Remove policy' (radio buttons for 'Select date' and 'Duration until removal (in days)') and 'Allow user to remove policy' (set to 'Always'). At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure the following settings:

- **Credential type:** In the list, click the type of credential to use with this policy and then enter the following information for the selected credential:
  - **Certificate**
    - **Credential name:** Enter a unique name for the credential.
    - **The credential file path:** Select the credential file by clicking Browse and navigating to the file's location.
  - **Keystore**
    - **Credential name:** Enter a unique name for the credential.
    - **The credential file path:** Select the credential file by clicking Browse and navigating to the file's location.
    - **Password:** Enter the keystore password for the credential.
  - **Server certificate**
    - **Server certificate:** In the list, click the certificate to use.
  - **Credential provider**

- **Credential provider:** In the list, click the name of the credential provider.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy list**, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

## Configure Mac OS X settings

**XenMobile** Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Credentials Policy

This policy lets you deliver certificates to devices. On iOS, the certificates, such as a certificate for WiFi authentication, can also be used as part of another policy. For Windows Phone, the policy is supported only on Windows 10 and later supervised devices.

**Credential type**: Certificate (.cer, .crt, .der and .pem)

**Credential name\***:

**The credential file path**:  **Browse**

**Policy Settings**

**Remove policy**:  Select date  Duration until removal (in days)

**Allow user to remove policy**: Always

**Profile scope**: User OS X 10.7+

► **Deployment Rules**

## Configure the following settings:

- **Credential type:** In the list, click the type of credential to use with this policy and then, enter the following information for the selected credential:
  - **Certificate**
    - **Credential name:** Enter a unique name for the credential.
    - **The credential file path:** Select the credential file by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.
  - **Keystore**
    - **Credential name:** Enter a unique name for the credential.
    - **The credential file path:** Select the credential file by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.
    - **Password:** Enter the keystore password for the credential.
  - **Server certificate**
    - **Server certificate:** In the list, click the certificate to use.
  - **Credential provider**
    - **Credential provider:** In the list, click the name of the credential provider.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.

- In the **Allow user to remove policy list**, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
- If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.
- Next to **Policy scope**, click either **User** or **System**. The default is **User**. This option is available only on OS X 10.7 and later.

## Configure Android and Android for Work settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Credentials Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you deliver certificates to devices. On iOS, the certificates, such as a certificate for WiFi authentication, can also be used as part of another policy. For Windows Phone, the policy is supported only on Windows 10 and later supervised devices.' The configuration options include a 'Credential type' dropdown menu set to 'Certificate (.cer, .crt, .der and .pem)', a text input field for 'The credential file path', and a 'Browse' button. Below this is a section for 'Deployment Rules'. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure the following settings:

- **Credential type:** In the list, click the type of credential to use with this policy and then, enter the following information for the selected credential:
  - **Certificate**
    - **Credential name:** Type a unique name for the credential.
    - **The credential file path:** Select the credential file by clicking **Browse** and then navigating to the file's location.
  - **Keystore**
    - **Credential name:** Type a unique name for the credential.
    - **The credential file path:** Select the credential file by clicking **Browse** and then navigating to the file location.
    - **Password:** Type the keystore password for the credential.
  - **Server certificate**
    - **Server certificate:** In the list, click the certificate to use.
  - **Credential provider**
    - **Credential provider:** In the list, click the name of the credential provider.

## Configure Windows Desktop/Tablet settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Credentials Policy

This policy lets you deliver certificates to devices. On iOS, the certificates, such as a certificate for WiFi authentication, can also be used as part of another policy. For Windows Phone, the policy is supported only on Windows 10 and later supervised devices.

- OS version\* 10
- Certificate Type ROOT
- Store device root
- Location System
- Credential type Certificate (.cer, .crt, .der and .pem)
- Credential file path\*  Browse

► Deployment Rules

Back Next >

Configure the following settings:

**OSVersion:** In the list, click either **8.1** for Windows 8.1 or **10** for Windows 10. The default is **10**.

- [Windows 10 settings](#) ▼
- [Windows 8.1 Phone settings](#) ▼

Configure Windows Mobile/CE settings



Configure the following settings:

- **Store device:** In the list, click the location of the certificate store for the credential. The default is **root**. Options are:
  - **Privileged execution trust authorities** - Applications signed with a certificate belonging to this store will run with privileged trust level.
  - **Unprivileged execution trust authorities** - Applications signed with a certificate belonging to this store will run with normal trust level.
  - **SPC (Software Publisher Certificate)** - The Software Publishing Certificate (SPC) is used for signing .cab files.
  - **root** - A certificate store that contains root, or self-signed, certificates.
  - **CA** - A certificate store that contains cryptographic information, including intermediary certification authorities.
  - **MY** - A certificate store that contains end-user personal certificates.
- **Credential type:** Certificate is the only credential type for Windows Mobile/CE devices.
- **The credential file path:** Select the credential file by clicking **Browse** and then navigating to the file's location.

Configure Windows Phone settings

Configure the following settings:

- **Certificate Type:** In the list, click either **ROOT** or **CLIENT**.
- If you click **ROOT**, configure these settings:
  - **Store device:** In the list, click **root**, **My**, or **CA** for the location of the certificate store for the credential. **My** stores the certificate in users' certificate stores.
  - **Location:** System is the only location for Windows phones.
  - **Credential type:** Certificate is the only credential type for Windows phones.
  - **Credential file path:** Select the certificate file by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.
- If you click **CLIENT**, configure these settings:
  - **Location:** **System** is the only location for Windows phones.
  - **Credential type:** **Keystore** is the only credential type for Windows phones.
  - **Credential name:** Type the name of the credential. This field is required.
  - **Credential file path:** Select the certificate file by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.
  - **Password:** Type the password associated with the credential. This field is required.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Credentials Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for a 'Credentials Policy'. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The left sidebar shows a list of policy sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment' (which is highlighted). The '2 Platforms' section is expanded, showing a list of operating systems with checkboxes: iOS, Mac OS X, Android, Android for Work, Windows Phone, Windows Desktop/Tablet, and Windows Mobile/CE. The main content area is titled 'Credentials Policy' and contains a description: 'This policy lets you deliver certificates to devices. On iOS, the certificates, such as a certificate for WiFi authentication, can also be used as part of another policy. For Windows Phone, the policy is supported only on Windows 10 and later supervised devices.' Below the description is a 'Choose delivery groups' section with a search input field and a 'Search' button. A list of delivery groups is shown below the search field, with 'AllUsers' and 'Sales' as options. There is also a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a help icon. At the bottom right of the main content area, there are 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Custom XML device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can create custom XML policies in XenMobile when you want to customize the following features on Windows Phone, Windows Desktop/Tablet, and Windows Mobile/CE devices:

- Provisioning, which includes configuring the device, and enabling or disabling features
- Device configuration, which includes allowing users to change settings and device parameters
- Software upgrades, which includes providing new software or bug fixes to be loaded onto the device, including apps and system software
- Fault management, which includes receiving error and status reports from the device

You create your custom XML configuration by using the Open Mobile Alliance Device Management (OMA DM) API in Windows. Creating custom XML with the OMA DM API is beyond the scope of this topic. For more information about using the OMA DM API, see [OMA Device Management](#) on the Microsoft Developer Network site.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then under **Custom**, click **Custom XML**. The **Custom XML Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there are navigation tabs: XenMobile, Analyze, Manage, and Configure. Below these are sub-tabs: Device Policies, Apps, Actions, ShareFile, and Delivery Groups. The main content area is titled 'Custom XML Policy' and is divided into three sections: 1 Policy Info, 2 Platforms, and 3 Assignment. In the '2 Platforms' section, three checkboxes are checked: Windows Phone, Windows Desktop/Tablet, and Windows Mobile/CE. The '3 Assignment' section is currently empty. The 'Policy Information' pane is active, showing a text box for 'Policy Name\*' and a larger text area for 'Description'. A note above the text boxes states: 'This policy lets you create custom XML for your policies. After you enter the XML, you can check the syntax.'

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

7. Configure the following setting for each platform you selected:

- **XML content:** Type, or cut and paste, the custom XML code you want to add to the policy.

#### 8. Configure the deployment rules

9. Click **Next**. XenMobile checks the XML content syntax. Any syntax errors appear below the content box. You must fix any errors before you can continue.

If there are no syntax errors, the **Custom XML Policy** assignment page appears.

10. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

11. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

#### Note:

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms.

12. Click **Save**.

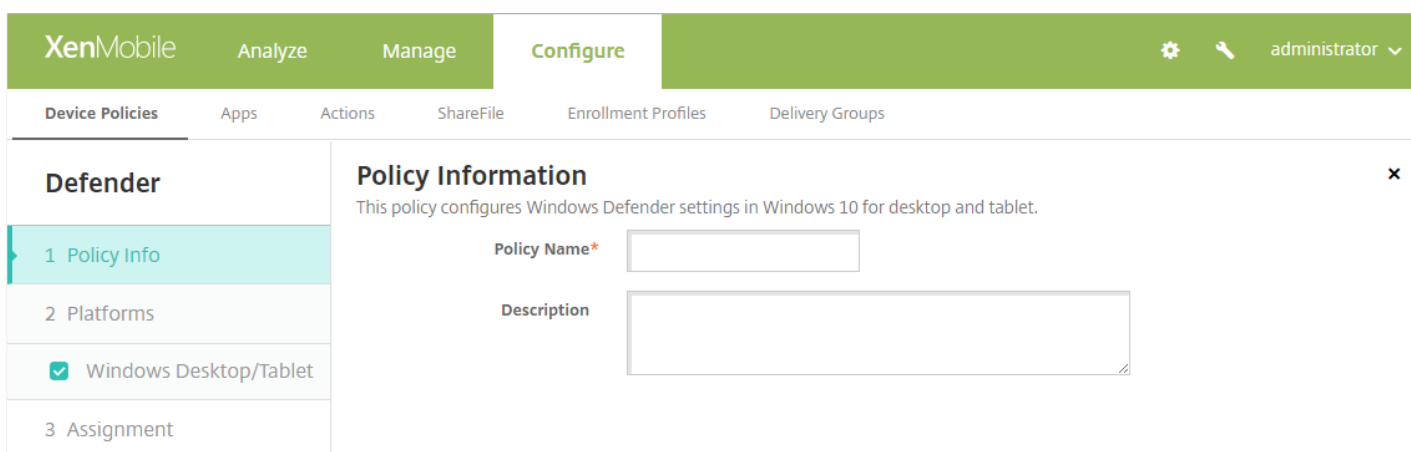


# Defender device policy

Feb 27, 2017

Windows Defender is malware protection included with Windows 10. You can use the XenMobile device policy, Defender, to configure the Microsoft Defender policy for Windows 10 for desktop and tablet.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Start typing **Defender** and then click that name in the search results. The **Defender Policy information** page appears.



The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with tabs for 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is active. Below the navigation bar, there is a sub-navigation bar with tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' tab is selected. On the left side, there is a sidebar with a search bar containing 'Defender'. Below the search bar, there are three items: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '1 Policy Info' item is selected. The main content area shows the 'Policy Information' page for the 'Defender' policy. The page title is 'Policy Information' and it includes a close button (X). Below the title, there is a description: 'This policy configures Windows Defender settings in Windows 10 for desktop and tablet.' There are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. The 'Policy Name\*' field is empty, and the 'Description' field is also empty.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

**Defender**

This policy configures Windows Defender settings in Windows 10 for desktop and tablet.

- Allows scanning of archives: OFF
- Allows cloud protection: ON
- Allows a full scan of removable drives: ON
- Allows Windows Defender Real-time Monitoring functionality: ON
- Allows scanning of network files: ON
- Allows user access to the Windows Defender UI: ON
- Excluded extensions:
- Excluded paths:
- Excluded processes:
- Submit samples consent: Send safe samples

► Deployment Rules

Configure these settings:

- **Allows scanning of archives:** Allows or disallows Defender to scan archived files. Defaults to **OFF**.
- **Allows cloud protection:** Allows or disallows Defender to send information to Microsoft about malware activity. Defaults to **ON**.
- **Allows a full scan of removable drives:** Allows or disallows Defender to scan removable drives such as USB sticks. Defaults to **ON**.
- **Allows Windows Defender Real-time Monitoring functionality:** Defaults to **ON**.
- **Allows scanning of network files:** Allows or disallows Defender to scan network files. Defaults to **ON**.
- **Allows user access to the Windows Defender UI:** Specifies whether users can access the Windows Defender user interface. This setting takes effect the next time the user device starts. If this setting is **OFF**, users don't receive any Windows Defender notifications. Defaults to **ON**.
- **Excluded extensions:** The extensions to exclude from real-time or scheduled scans. To separate extensions, use the | character. For example, ".lib|.obj".
- **Excluded paths:** The paths to exclude from real-time or scheduled scans. To separate paths, use the | character. For example, "C:\Example|C:\Example1".
- **Excluded processes:** The processes to exclude from real-time or scheduled scans. To separate processes, use the | character. For example, "C:\Example.exe|C:\Example1.exe".
- **Submit samples consent:** Controls whether to send to Microsoft files that might require further analysis to determine if they are malicious. Options: **Always prompt**, **Send safe samples**, **Never send**, **Send all samples**. Defaults to **Send safe samples**.





7. Click **Next**. The **Defender** assignment page appears.

8. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group. To assign the policy to a group or groups, select the groups in the list. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

9. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you click **OFF**, other options don't apply.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then choose the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

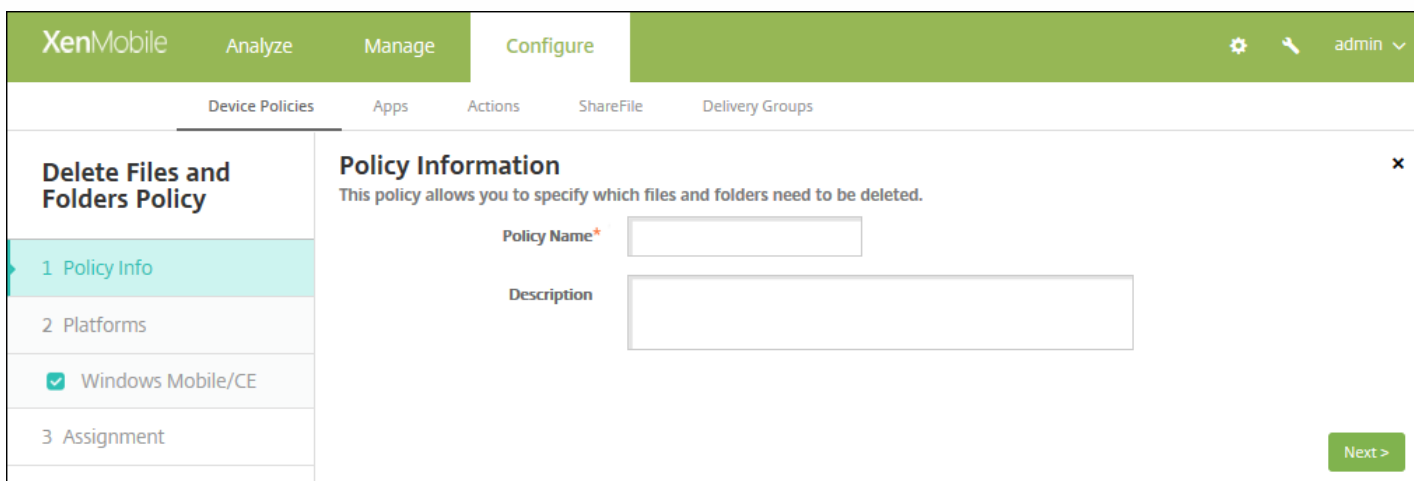
10. Click **Save** to save the policy.

# Delete files and folders device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can create a policy in XenMobile to delete specific files or folders from Windows Mobile/CE devices.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Apps**, click **Delete Files and Folders**. The **Delete Files and Folders Policy** information page appears.



XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Delete Files and Folders Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
- Windows Mobile/CE
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy allows you to specify which files and folders need to be deleted.

Policy Name\*

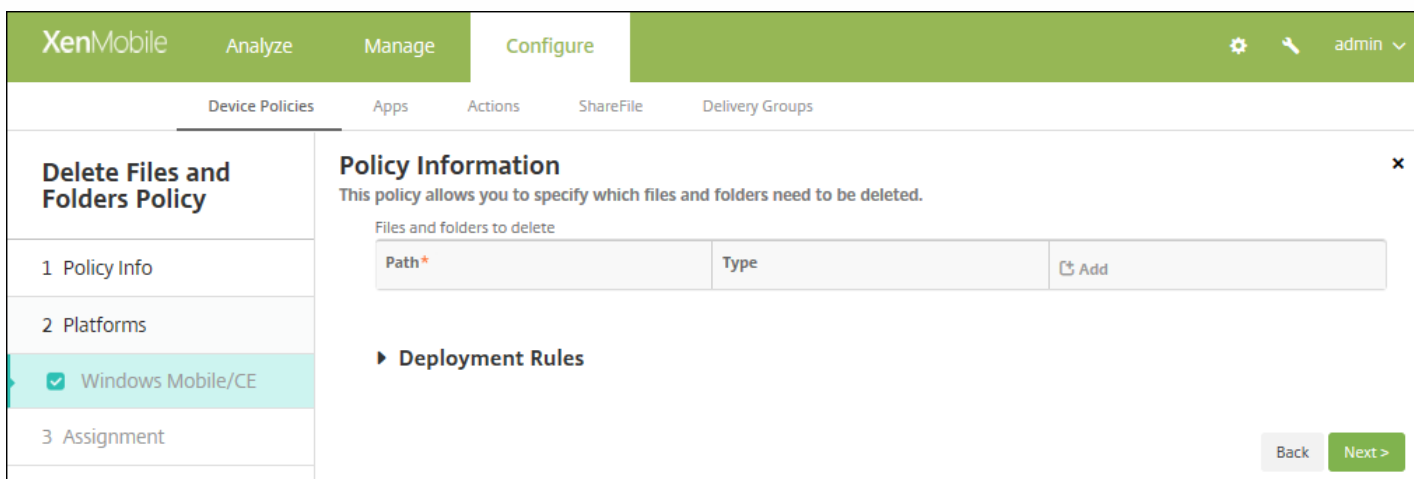
Description

Next >

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Windows Mobile/CE Platform** page appears.



XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Delete Files and Folders Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
- Windows Mobile/CE
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy allows you to specify which files and folders need to be deleted.

Files and folders to delete

Path*	Type	Add
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/>

► Deployment Rules

Back Next >

6. Configure these settings:

- **Files and folders to delete:** for each file or folder you want to delete, click Add and then do the following:
  - **Path:** Type the path to the file or folder.
  - **Type:** In the list, click File or Folder. The default is File.
  - Click **Save** to save the file or folder, or click **Cancel** to not save the file or folder.

**Note:** To delete an existing listing, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing listing, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Delete Files and Folders Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile 'Configure' page for the 'Delete Files and Folders Policy'. The page is divided into a left sidebar and a main content area. The sidebar contains a navigation menu with four items: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', '3 Assignment' (which is highlighted in light blue), and 'Deployment Schedule'. The main content area has a title 'Delete Files and Folders Policy' and a subtitle 'This policy allows you to specify which files and folders need to be deleted.' Below the subtitle, there is a section titled 'Choose delivery groups' with a search input field containing 'Type to search' and a 'Search' button. A list of delivery groups is shown below, with 'AllUsers' selected (checked) and 'sales' unselected. To the right of this list is a box titled 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' which contains the text 'AllUsers'. At the bottom of the main content area, there is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a right-pointing arrow and a help icon. At the bottom right of the page, there are 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Delete registry keys and values device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can create a policy in XenMobile to delete specific registry keys and values from Windows Mobile/CE devices.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Apps**, click **Delete Registry Keys and Values**. The **Delete Registry Keys and Values Policy** information page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Delete Registry Keys and Values Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
- Windows Mobile/CE
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy allows you to specify which registry keys and values need to be deleted. An empty value means that the entry is a registry key.

Policy Name\*

Description

Next >

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Windows Mobile/CE Platform** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Delete Registry Keys and Values Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
- Windows Mobile/CE
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy allows you to specify which registry keys and values need to be deleted. An empty value means that the entry is a registry key.

Registry keys and values to delete

Key*	Value	Add
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/>

► Deployment Rules

Back Next >

6. Configure these settings:

- **Registry keys and values to delete:** for each registry key and value you want to delete, click **Add** and then do the following:

- **Key:** Type the registry key path. This is a required field. The registry key path should either start with HKEY\_CLASSES\_ROOT\ or HKEY\_CURRENT\_USER\ or HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\ or HKEY\_USERS\.
- **Value:** Type the value name to be deleted or leave this field blank to delete the entire registry key.
- Click **Save** to save the key and value, or click **Cancel** to not save the key and value.

**Note:** To delete an existing listing, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing listing, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Delete Registry Keys and Values Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface for configuring a policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Delete Registry Keys and Values Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy allows you to specify which registry keys and values need to be deleted. An empty value means that the entry is a registry key.' There is a search bar for 'Choose delivery groups' with a 'Search' button. Below the search bar is a list of delivery groups: 'AllUsers' (checked) and 'sales' (unchecked). To the right, there is a box titled 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' which contains 'AllUsers'. At the bottom of the main content area, there is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a right-pointing arrow and a help icon. At the bottom right of the page, there are 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The

default option is **On every connection**.

- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Device Health Attestation device policy

Feb 27, 2017

In XenMobile, you can require Windows 10 devices to report the state of their health by having those devices send specific data and runtime information to the Health Attestation Service (HAS) for analysis. The HAS creates and returns a Health Attestation Certificate that the device then sends to XenMobile. When XenMobile receives the Health Attestation Certificate, based on the contents of the Health Attestation Certificate, it can deploy automatic actions that you have set up previously.

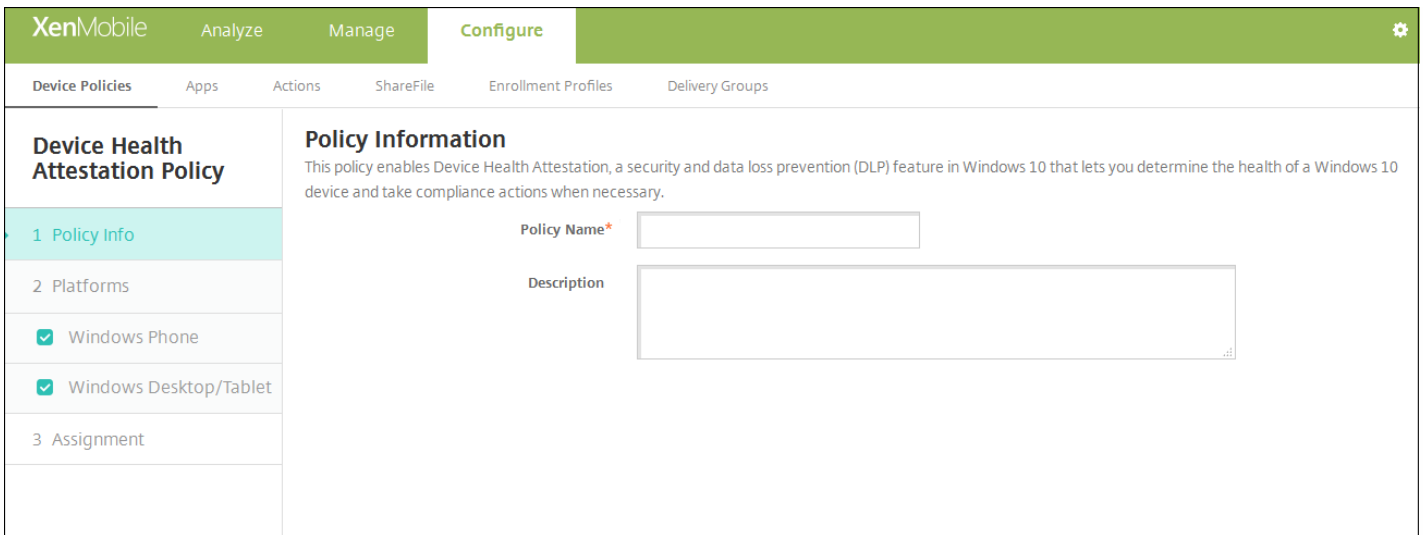
The data verified by the HAS are:

- AIK Present
- Bit Locker Status
- Boot Debugging Enabled
- Boot Manager Rev List Version
- Code Integrity Enabled
- Code Integrity Rev List Version
- DEP Policy
- ELAM Driver Loaded
- Issued At
- Kernel Debugging Enabled
- PCR
- Reset Count
- Restart Count
- Safe Mode Enabled
- SBCP Hash
- Secure Boot Enabled
- Test Signing Enabled
- VSM Enabled
- WinPE Enabled

For more information, refer to the Microsoft [HealthAttestation CSP](#) page.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add** to add a new policy. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **More**, and then under **Custom**, click **Device Health Attestation policy**. The **Device Health Attestation Policy** information page appears.





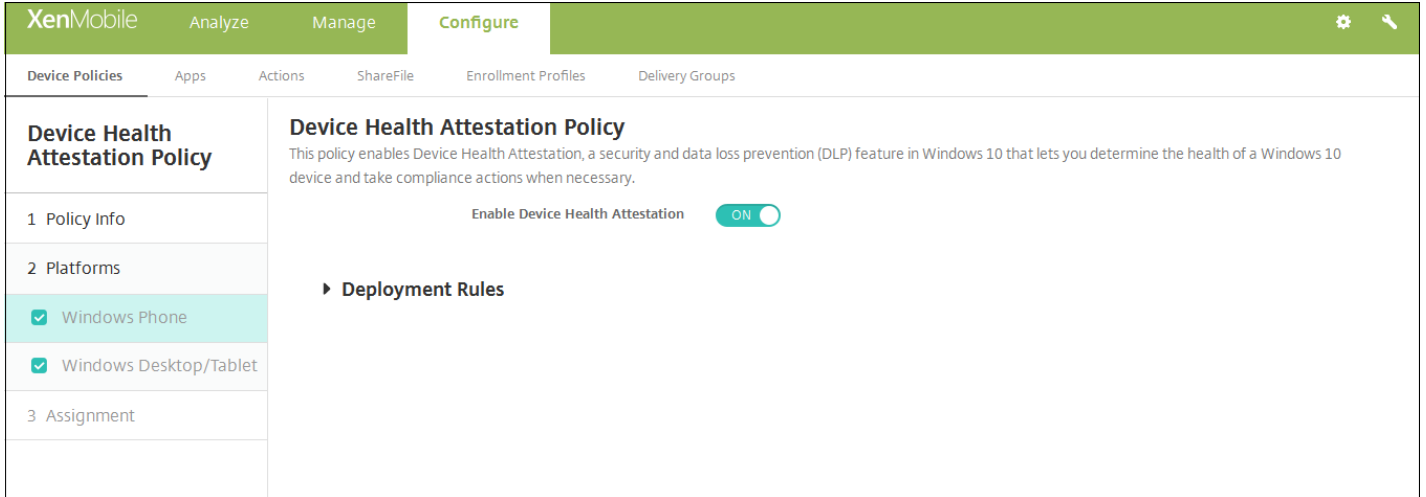
4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

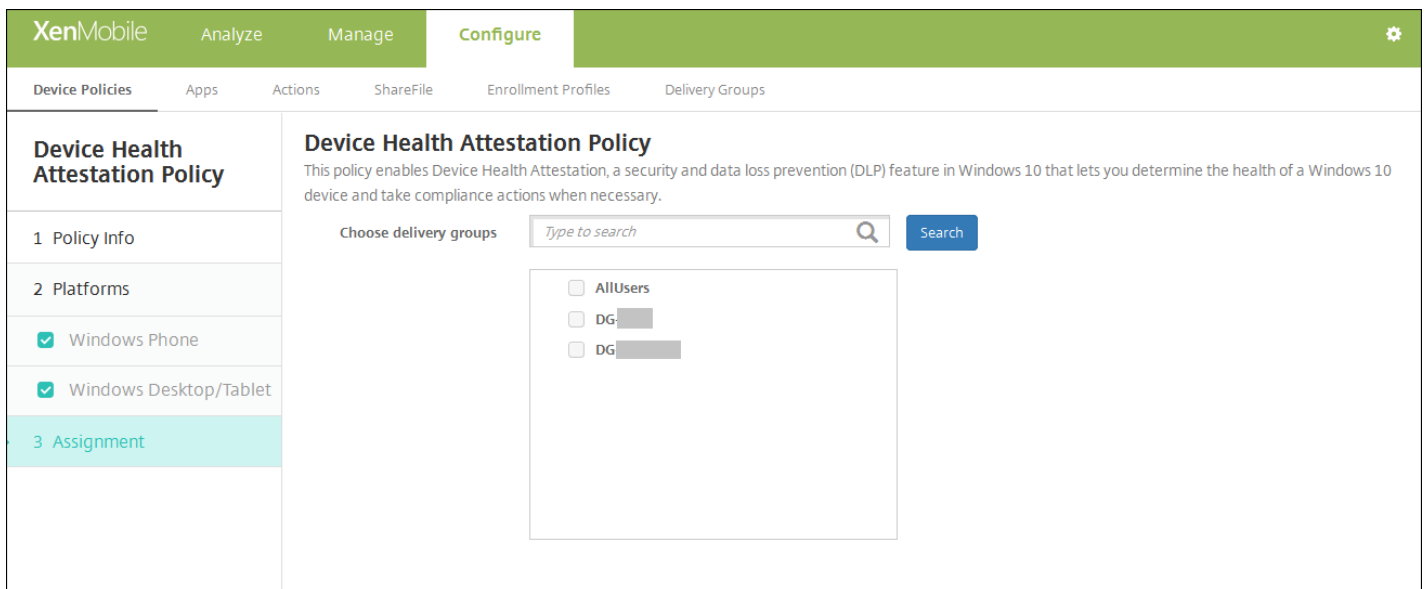


Configure this setting for each platform that you choose:

- **Enable Device Health Attestation:** Select whether to require Device Health Attestation. The default is **OFF**.

#### 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Device Health Attestation** policy assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app** assignment list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Device name device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can set the names on iOS and Mac OS X devices so that you can easily identify the devices. You can use macros, text, or a combination of both to define the device's name. For example, to set the device name as the serial number of the device, you would use `${device.serialnumber}`. To set the device name as a combination of the user's name and your domain, you would use `${user.username}@example.com`. See [Macros in XenMobile](#) for more information about macros.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** page appears.
3. Expand **More**, and under **End User**, click **Device name**. The **Device Name Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is active. Below the navigation bar, there are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' sub-tab is selected. The main content area is titled 'Device Name Policy' and contains a 'Policy Information' section. This section has a subtitle: 'This policy lets you apply a name on a supervised device on iOS and Mac OS X devices. Available in iOS 8 and later.' Below the subtitle, there are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' (a text input field) and 'Description' (a text area). The 'Policy Name\*' field is currently empty. The 'Description' field is also empty. Below the 'Policy Information' section, there are three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '2 Platforms' section is expanded, showing two options: 'iOS' and 'Mac OS X', both of which are checked with a green checkmark. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the page.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

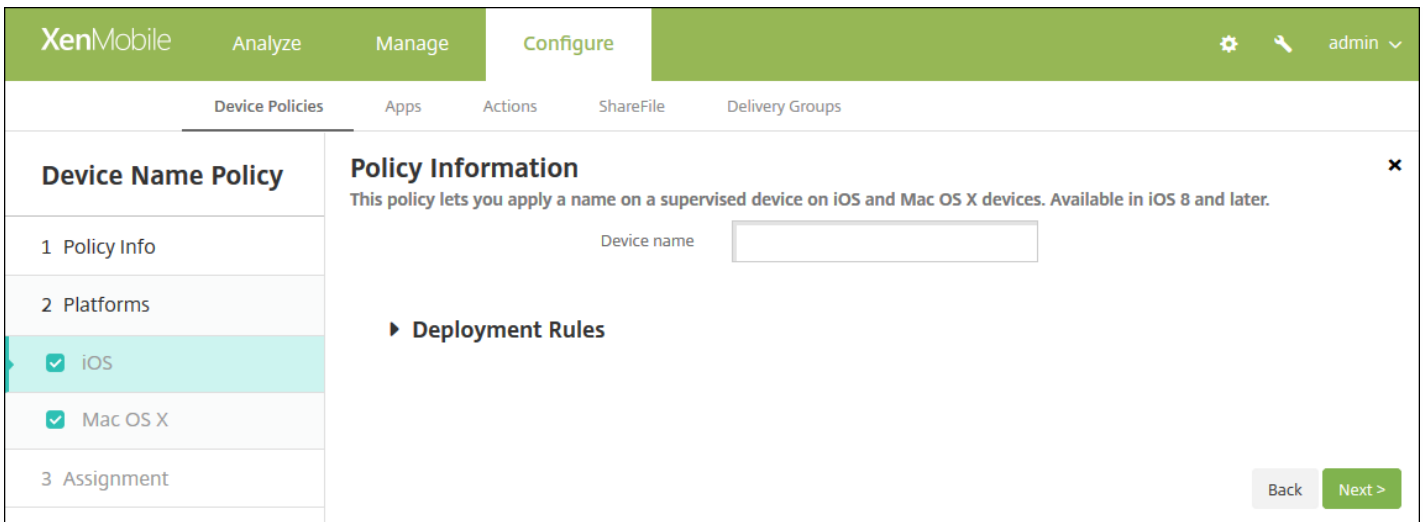
- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS and Mac OS X settings

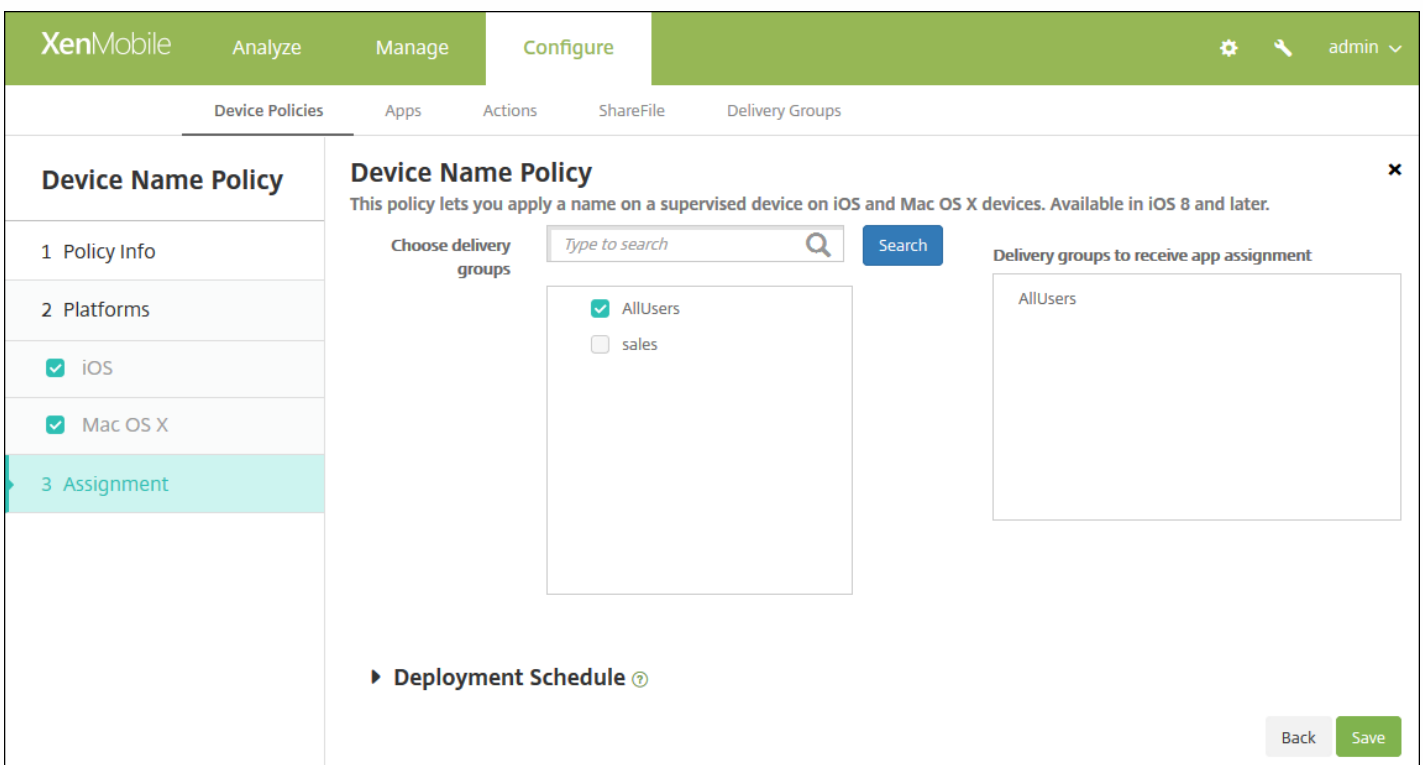


Configure this setting for the platforms you choose:

- **Device name:** Type the macro, a combination of macros, or a combination of macros and text to name each device uniquely. For example, use `${device.serialnumber}` to set the device names to each device's serial number, or use `${device.serialnumber} ${user.username}` to include the user's name in the device name.

#### 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Device Name Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save** to save the policy.

# Enterprise Hub device policy

Feb 27, 2017

An Enterprise Hub device policy for Windows Phone lets you distribute apps through the Enterprise Hub Company store.

Before you can create the policy, you need the following:

- An AET (.aetx) signing certificate from Symantec
- The Citrix Company Hub app signed by using the Microsoft app signing tool (XapSignTool.exe)

**Note:** XenMobile supports only one Enterprise Hub policy for one mode of Windows Phone Secure Hub. For example, to upload Windows Phone Secure Hub for XenMobile Enterprise Edition, you should not create multiple Enterprise Hub policies with different versions of Work Home for XenMobile Enterprise Edition. You can only deploy the initial Enterprise Hub policy during device enrollment.

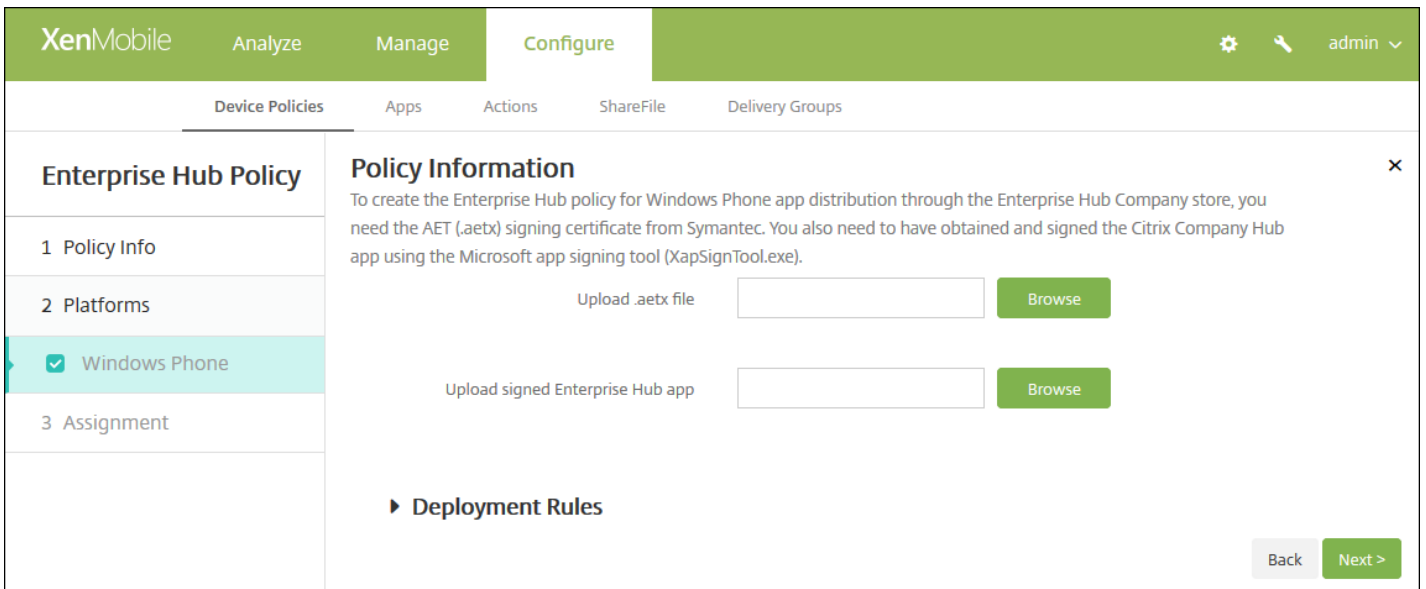
1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **XenMobile agent**, click **Enterprise Hub**. The **Enterprise Hub Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Enterprise Hub Policy' and features a sidebar on the left with three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '1 Policy Info' section is currently selected. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a text box for 'Policy Name\*' and a larger text box for 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located in the bottom right corner of the main content area.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Windows Phone** platform page appears.

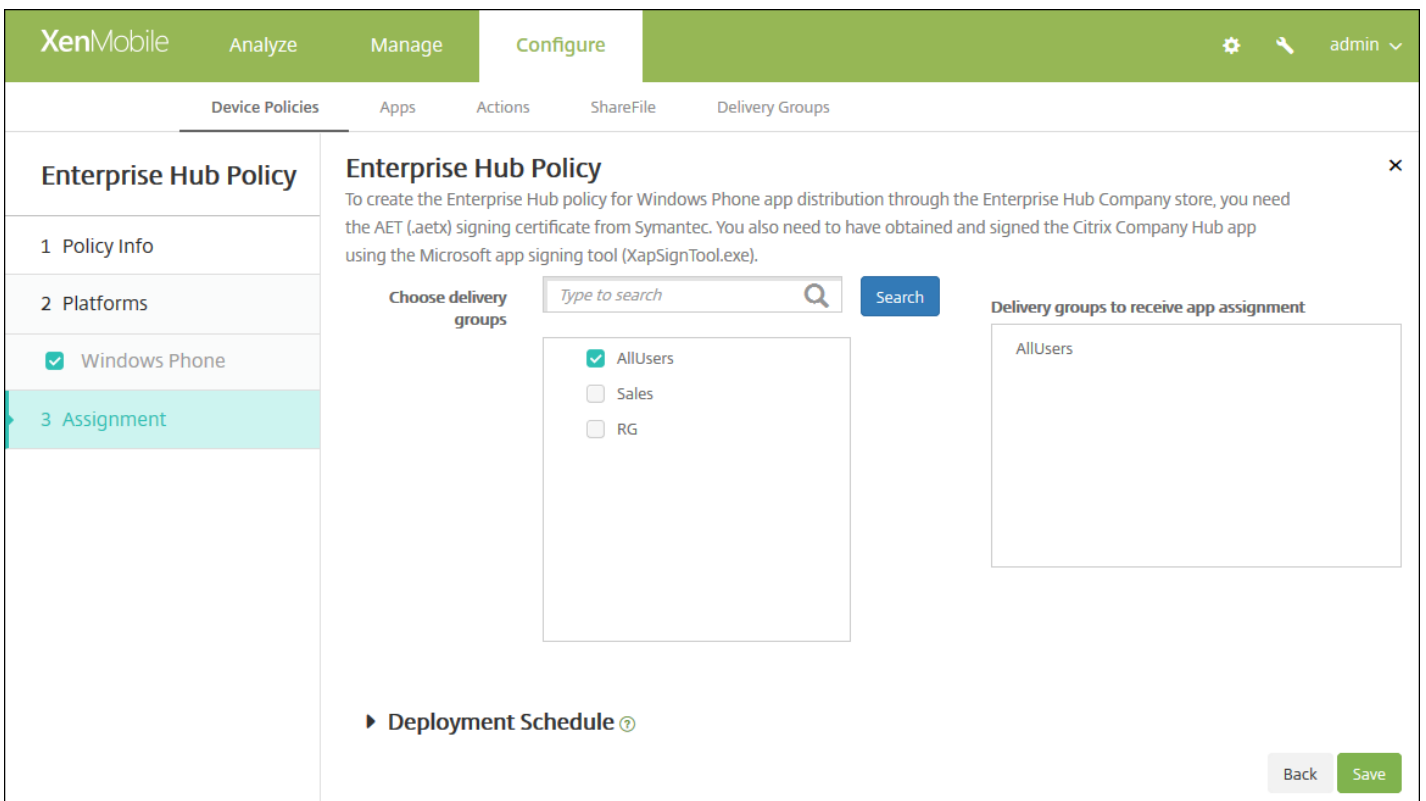


6. Configure these settings:

- **Upload .aetx file:** Select the .aetx file by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.
- **Upload signed Enterprise Hub app:** Select the Enterprise Hub app by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the app's location.

7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Enterprise Hub Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.



# Files device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can add script files to XenMobile that perform certain functions for users, or you can add document files that you want Android device users to be able to access on their devices. When you add the file, you can also specify the directory in which you want the file to be stored on the device. For example, if you want Android users to receive a company document or .pdf file, you can deploy the file to the device and let users know where the file is located.

You can add the following file types with this policy:

- Text-based files (.xml, .html, .py, and so on)
- Other files, such as documents, pictures, spreadsheets, or presentations
- For Windows Mobile and Windows CE only: Script files created with MortScript

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Apps**, click **Files**. The **Files Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. Below that, there are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Files Policy' page is active, showing a sidebar with '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a description: 'This policy lets you upload files and executable scripts to devices.' There are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the form.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The left sidebar shows 'Files Policy' with sections for '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', 'Android' and 'Windows Mobile/CE' are selected. The main area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the following fields:

- File to be imported\***: A text input field with a 'Browse' button.
- File type**: Radio buttons for 'File' (selected) and 'Script'.
- Replace macro expressions**: A toggle switch set to 'OFF'.
- Destination folder**: A dropdown menu showing '%XenMobile Folder%'.
- Destination file name**: A text input field.
- Copy file only if different**: A dropdown menu.

At the bottom, there is a 'Deployment Rules' section and 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others. When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

### Configure Android settings

This screenshot is identical to the one above, showing the XenMobile Configure interface with the 'Files Policy' configuration for 'Android' and 'Windows Mobile/CE'. The 'Policy Information' section contains the same fields: 'File to be imported\*', 'File type' (File selected), 'Replace macro expressions' (OFF), 'Destination folder' (%XenMobile Folder%), 'Destination file name', and 'Copy file only if different'. The 'Deployment Rules' section and 'Back'/'Next >' buttons are also visible.

Configure the following settings:

- **File to be imported:** Select the file to import by clicking Browse and navigating to the file's location.
- **File type:** Select either **File** or **Script**. When you select **Script**, **Execute immediately** appears. Select whether the script is executed as soon as the file is uploaded. The default is **OFF**.
- **Replace macro expressions:** Select whether to replace macro token names in a script with a device or user property. The default is **OFF**.
- **Destination folder:** In the list, select the location in which to store the uploaded file or click **Add new** to choose an unlisted file location. In addition, you can use the macros %XenMobile Folder%\ or %Flash Storage%\ as the start of a path identifier.
- **Destination file name:** Optionally, type a different name for the file if it must be changed before being deployed on a device.
- **Copy file only if different:** In the list, select whether to copy the file if it is different from the existing file. The default is to copy the file only if it is different.

Configure Windows Mobile/CE settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' section is active, and the 'Files Policy' is selected. The left sidebar shows 'Files Policy' with sub-sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms' (with 'Android' and 'Windows Mobile/CE' checked), and '3 Assignment'. The main area displays 'Policy Information' for 'Files Policy', with a description: 'This policy lets you upload files and executable scripts to devices.' The configuration options are: 'File to be imported\*' (text input with 'Browse' button), 'File type' (radio buttons for 'File' and 'Script'), 'Replace macro expressions' (toggle set to 'OFF'), 'Destination folder' (dropdown menu showing '%My Documents%\'), 'Destination file name' (text input with a help icon), 'Copy file only if different' (dropdown menu), 'Read only file' (toggle set to 'OFF'), and 'Hidden file' (toggle set to 'OFF'). At the bottom, there is a 'Deployment Rules' section and 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure the following settings:

- **File to be imported:** Select the file to import by clicking Browse and navigating to the file's location.
- **File type:** Select either **File** or **Script**. When you select **Script**, **Execute immediately** appears. Select whether the script

is executed as soon as the file is uploaded. The default is **OFF**.

- **Replace macro expressions:** Select whether to replace macro token names in a script with a device or user property. The default is **OFF**.
- **Destination folder:** In the list, select the location in which to store the uploaded file or click **Add new** to choose an unlisted file location. In addition, you can use any of the following macros as the start of a path identifier:
  - %Flash Storage%\
  - %XenMobile Folder%\
  - %Program Files%\
  - %My Documents%\
  - %Windows%\
- **Destination file name:** Optionally, type a different name for the file if it must be changed before being deployed on a device.
- **Copy file only if different:** In the list, select whether to copy the file if it is different from the existing file. The default is to copy the file only if it is different.
- **Read only file:** Select whether the file is to be read-only. The default is **OFF**.
- **Hidden file:** Select whether the file is not to be shown in the file list. The default is **OFF**.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Files Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface for configuring a Files Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Files Policy' section is active, showing a sidebar with 'Policy Info', 'Platforms', and 'Assignment' (selected). The main content area is titled 'Files Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you upload files and executable scripts to devices.' Under 'Choose delivery groups', there is a search bar and a list of groups: 'AllUsers' (checked), 'DG-ex12', 'Device Enrollment Program Package', 'SharedUser\_1', 'SharedUser\_2', and 'SharedUser\_Enroller'. To the right, 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' shows 'AllUsers'. At the bottom, there is a 'Deployment Schedule' section and 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app** assignment list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.

- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save** to save the policy.

# Font device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can add a device policy in XenMobile to add additional fonts to users' iOS and Mac OS X devices. Fonts must be TrueType (.ttf) or OpenType (.oft) fonts. Font collections (.ttc or .otc) are not supported.

**Note:** For iOS, this policy applies only to iOS 7.0 and later.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **End user**, click **Font**. The **Font Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. Below this, there's a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Font Policy' and has a sidebar on the left with three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '2 Platforms' section is expanded, showing 'iOS' and 'Mac OS X' both checked. The main area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a text box for 'Policy Name\*' and a larger text box for 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is visible in the bottom right corner.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS setting

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for a Font Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The left sidebar shows the 'Font Policy' configuration steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', 'iOS' and 'Mac OS X' are both checked. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the following fields:

- User-visible name:** A text input field with a help icon.
- Font file:** A text input field with a 'Browse' button.
- Policy Settings:**
  - Remove policy:** Radio buttons for 'Select date' (selected) and 'Duration until removal (in days)'.
  - Remove policy date:** A date picker field.
  - Allow user to remove policy:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'Always'.

At the bottom of the main area, there is a 'Deployment Rules' section with a right-pointing arrow. At the bottom right of the page, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure the following settings:

- **User-visible name:** Type the name that users see in their font lists.
- **Font file:** Select the font file to be added to users' devices by clicking **Browse** and then navigating to the file's location.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

Configure Mac OS X settings

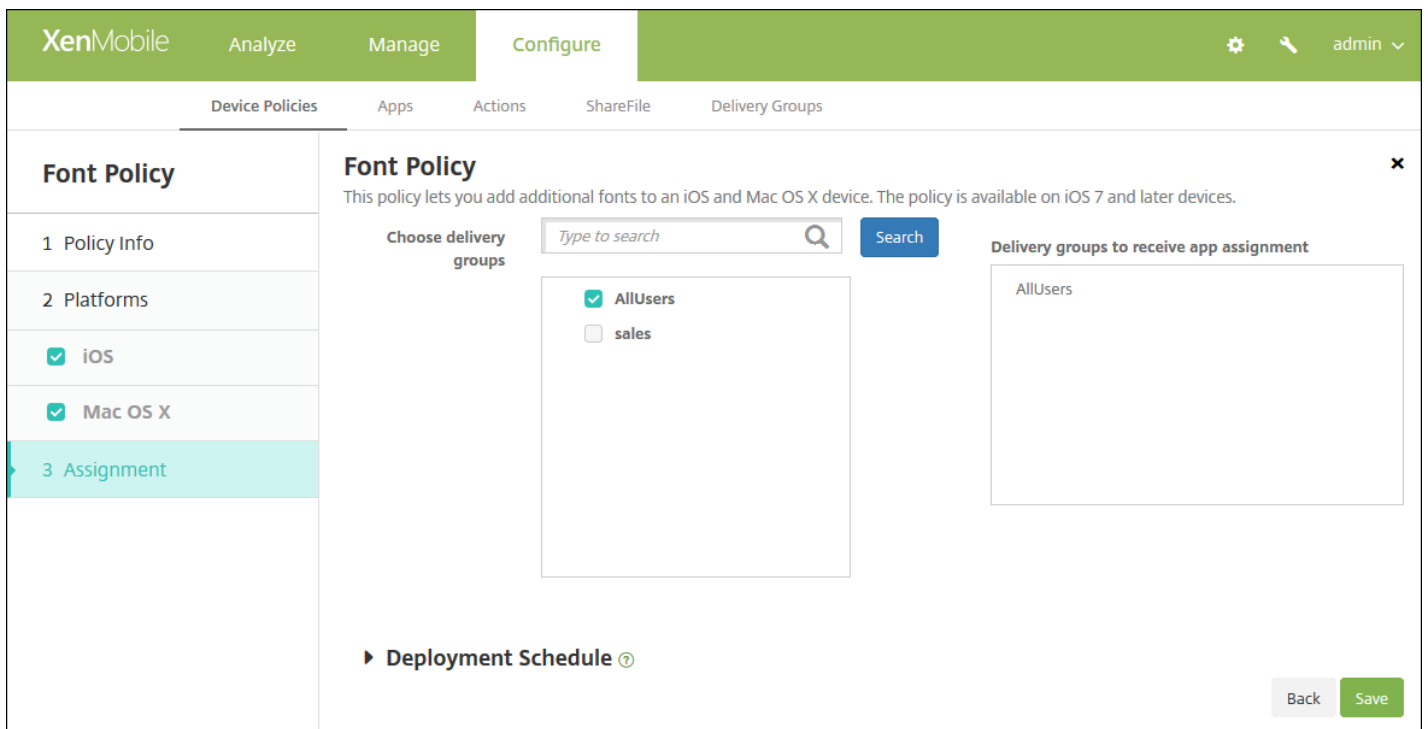
Configure the following settings:

- **User-visible name:** Type the name that users see in their font lists.
- **Font file:** Select the font file to be added to users' devices by clicking **Browse** and then navigating to the file's location.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.
  - Next to **Profile scope**, click either **User** or **System**. The default is **User**. This option is available only on OS X 10.7 and later.

7. [Configure the deployment rules](#)

8. Click **Next**. The **Font Policy** assignment page appears.





9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Home screen layout device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can specify the layout of apps and folders for the iOS Home screen. The Home screen layout device policy is for iOS 9.3 and later supervised devices.

## Note

Deploying multiple Home Screen Layout polices to a device results in an iOS error on the device. This limitation applies whether you define the home screen through this XenMobile policy or through the Apple Configurator.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Start typing **Home Screen Layout** and then click that name in the search results. The **Home Screen Layout Policy information** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below that, there's a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Home Screen Layout Policy' and has a sidebar on the left with three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The 'Policy Information' pane is active, showing a description: 'This policy defines a layout of apps and folders for the home screen. It is supported only on iOS 9.3 and later supervised devices. For an application you should enter the bundle identifier as value. For a folder, you should enter a list of bundle identifiers separated with a comma.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **iOS** pane appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** administrator

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### Home Screen Layout Policy

This policy defines a layout of apps and folders for the home screen. It is supported only on iOS 9.3 and later supervised devices. For an application you should enter the bundle identifier as value. For a folder, you should enter a list of bundle identifiers separated with a comma.

**Dock**

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Add
			+ Add

**Page 1**

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Add
			+ Add

**Page 2**

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Add
			+ Add

**Page 3**

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Add
			+ Add

**Page 4**

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Add
			+ Add

**Page 5**

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Add
			+ Add

**Policy Settings**

Remove policy  Select date  Duration until removal (in days)

Allow user to remove policy

6. Configure the settings:

- For each of the screen areas you want to configure (such as **Dock** or **Page 1**), click **Add**.
- **Type**: Choose either **Application** or **Folder**.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** administrator

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### Home Screen Layout Policy

This policy defines a layout of apps and folders for the home screen. It is supported only on iOS 9.3 and later supervised devices. For an application you should enter the bundle identifier as value. For a folder, you should enter a list of bundle identifiers separated with a comma.

**Dock**

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Save	Cancel
Application	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Save	Cancel

**Page 1**

Type	Display Name*	Value*	Add
			+ Add

- **Display Name:** The name to appear on the home screen for the app or folder.
- **Value:** For apps, the bundle identifier. For folders, a list of bundle identifiers, separated by commas.

### Policy Settings

- **Remove policy:** Either choose **Select date** and choose a date from the calendar, or choose **Duration until removal** and specify the number of days.
- **Allow user to remove policy:** Specify when to allow a user to remove the home screen definition: **Always, Passcode required** (only if they provide a passcode), or **Never**.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Windows Information Protection** policy assignment page appears.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group. To assign the policy to a group or groups, select the groups in the list. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, other options don't apply.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

#### Note:

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Import iOS & Mac OS X Profile device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can import device configuration XML files for iOS and OS X devices into XenMobile. The file contains device security policies and restrictions that you prepare with the Apple Configurator.

You can place an iOS device in Supervised mode with the Apple Configurator, as described later in this article. For more information about using the Apple Configurator to create a configuration file, see the Apple [Configurator Help](#) page.

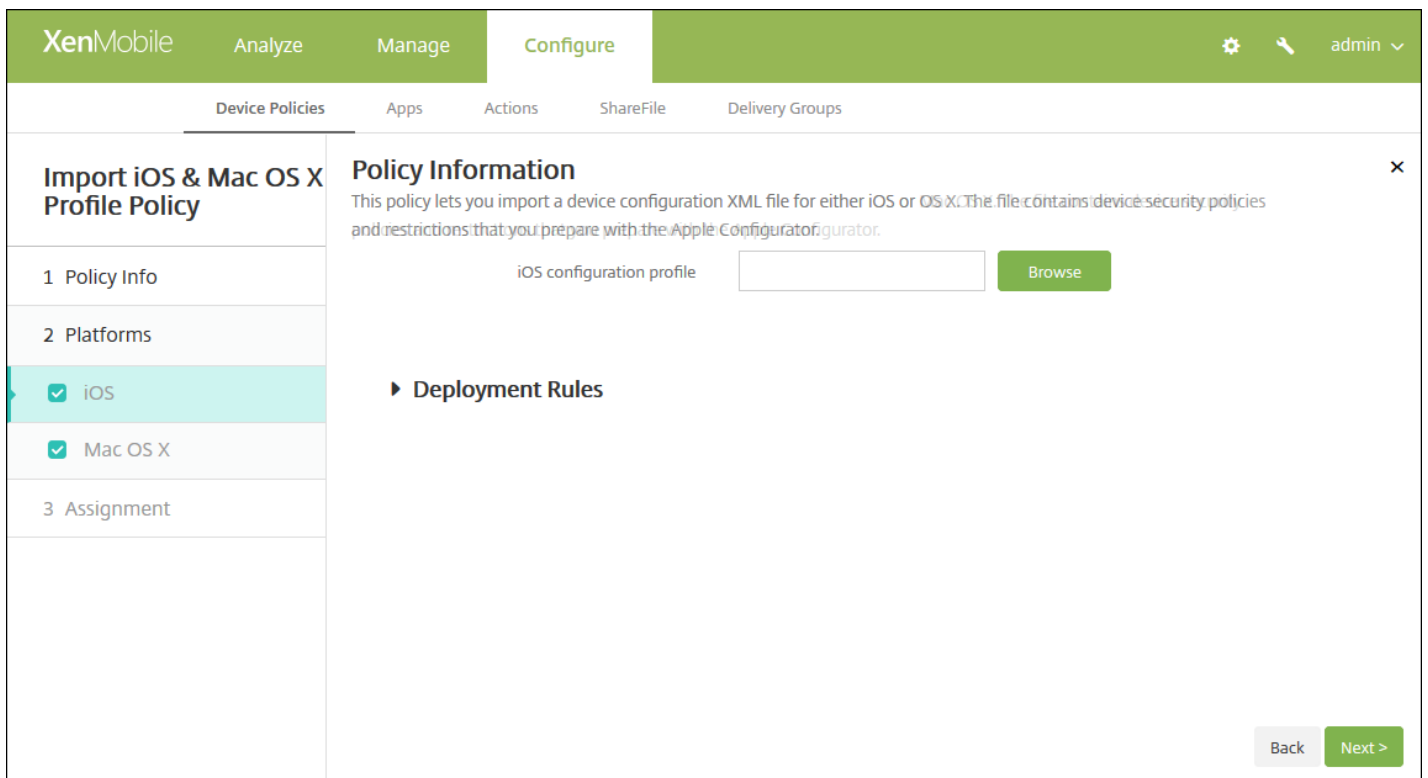
1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More**, and then under **Custom**, click **Import iOS & Mac OS X Profile**. The **Import iOS & Mac OS X Profile Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Import iOS & Mac OS X Profile Policy' and contains a 'Policy Information' section. The description states: 'This policy lets you import a device configuration XML file for either iOS or Mac OS X. The file contains device security policies and restrictions that you prepare with the Apple Configurator.' There are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' (a text box) and 'Description' (a larger text area). On the left, a sidebar shows a progress indicator with three steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', 'iOS' and 'Mac OS X' are both checked. A green 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the main content area.

4. On the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.



6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

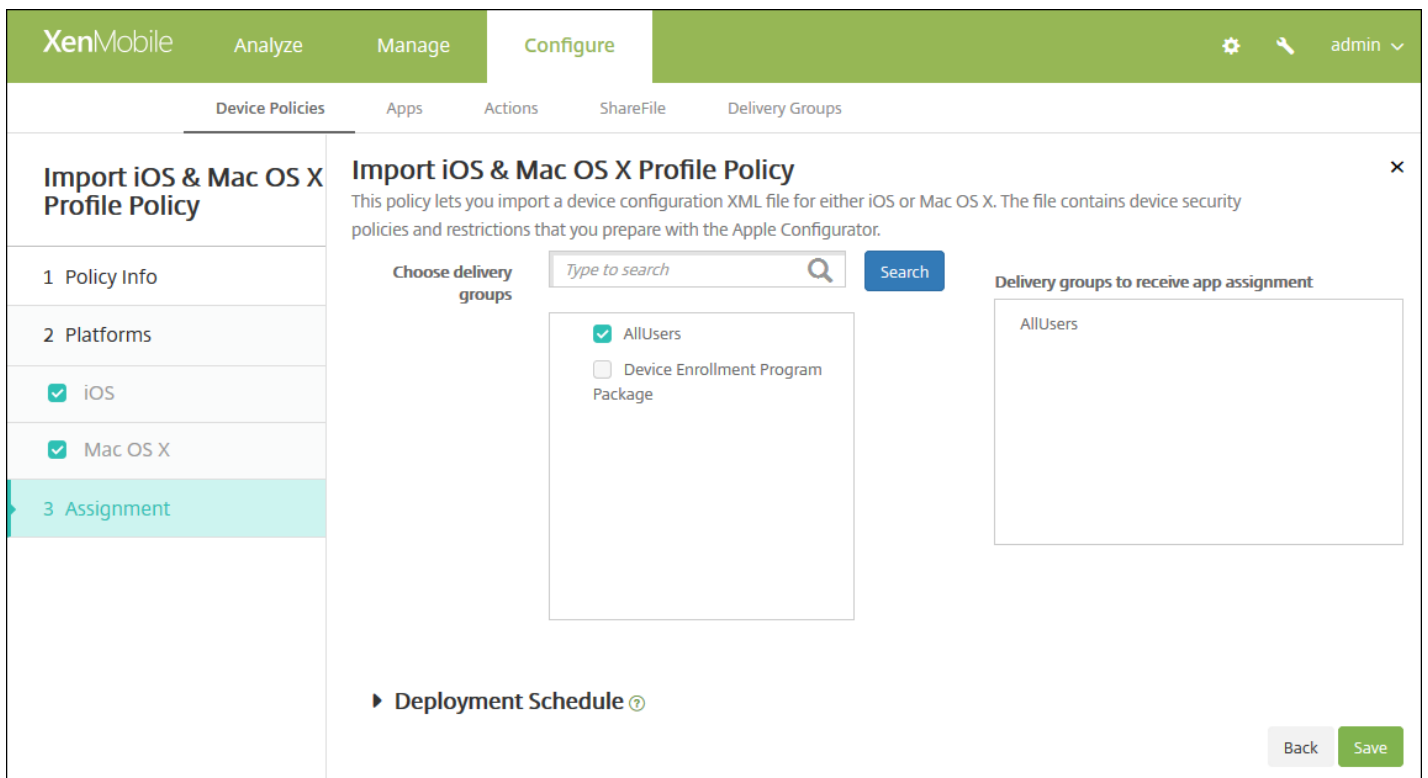
When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 8 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

7. Configure this setting for each platform you selected:

- **iOS configuration profile** or **Mac OS X configuration profile**: Select the configuration file to import by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.

#### 8. Configure the deployment rules

9. Click **Next**. The **Import iOS & Mac OS X Profile Policy** assignment page appears.



10. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

11. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

12. Click **Save** to save the policy.

Place an iOS device in Supervised mode with the Apple Configurator

To use the Apple Configurator, you need an Apple computer running OS X 10.7.2 or later.

## Important

Placing a device into Supervised mode will install the selected version of iOS on the device, completely wiping the device of any previously stored user data or apps.

1. Install the [Apple Configurator](#) from iTunes.
2. Connect the iOS device to your Apple computer.
3. Start the Apple Configurator. The Configurator shows that you have a device to prepare for supervision.
4. To prepare the device for supervision:
  - a. Switch the **Supervision** control to **On**. Citrix recommends that you choose this setting if you intend to maintain control of the device on an ongoing basis by reapplying a configuration regularly.
  - c. Optionally, provide a name for the device.
  - c. In iOS, click **Latest** for the latest version of iOS you want to install.
5. When you are ready to prepare the device for supervision, click **Prepare**.



# Kiosk device policy for Samsung SAFE

Feb 27, 2017

You create a Kiosk policy in XenMobile to let you to specify that only a specific app or apps can be used on Samsung SAFE devices. This policy is useful for corporate devices that are designed to run only a specific type or class of apps. This policy also lets you choose custom images for the device home screen and lock screen wallpapers for when the device is in Kiosk mode.

## To put a Samsung SAFE device into Kiosk mode

1. Enable the Samsung SAFE API key on the mobile device, as described in [Samsung MDM license key device policies](#). This step lets you enable policies on Samsung SAFE devices.
2. Enable the Connection Scheduling Policy for Android devices, as described in [Connection scheduling device policies](#). This step enables Android devices connect back to XenMobile.
3. Add a Kiosk device policy, as described in the next section.
4. Assign those three device policies to the appropriate delivery groups. Consider whether you want to include other policies, such as App inventory, in those delivery groups.

If you later want to remove the devices from Kiosk mode, create a new Kiosk device policy that has **Kiosk mode** set to **Disable**. Update the delivery group(s) to remove the Kiosk policy that enabled Kiosk mode and to add the Kiosk policy that disables Kiosk mode.

## To add a Kiosk device policy

### Note:

- All apps that you specify for Kiosk mode must already be installed on the users' devices.
- Some options apply only to the Samsung Mobile Device Management (MDM) API 4.0 and later.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Security**, click **Kiosk**. The **Kiosk Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' (which is highlighted). On the right of the navigation bar are icons for settings, search, and a user profile labeled 'admin'. Below the navigation bar, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' tab is active, showing a list of policies on the left. The 'Kiosk Policy' is selected, and its configuration page is displayed. The page has a title 'Kiosk Policy' and a close button (X). Below the title is a description: 'This policy lets you activate Kiosk mode on an Android device, in which only a specific app or apps can run on the device.' There are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. The 'Policy Name\*' field is empty, and the 'Description' field is a large text area, also empty. At the bottom right of the configuration area is a green 'Next >' button. On the left side of the configuration page, there is a sidebar with three sections: '1 Policy Info' (highlighted in light blue), '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', there is a checked checkbox for 'Samsung SAFE'.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Samsung SAFE Platform** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The left sidebar shows a tree view for 'Kiosk Policy' with sub-items: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', '3 Assignment', and 'Samsung SAFE' (which is selected). The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the following settings:

- General**
  - Kiosk mode:  Enable,  Disable
  - Launcher package: [Text input field]
  - Emergency phone number: [Text input field] MDM 4.0+
  - Allow navigation bar:  ON MDM 4.0+
  - Allow multi-window mode:  ON MDM 4.0+
  - Allow status bar:  ON MDM 4.0+
  - Allow system bar:  ON
  - Allow task manager:  ON
  - Common SAFE passcode: [Text input field]
- Wallpapers**
  - Define a home wallpaper:  OFF
  - Define a lock wallpaper:  OFF MDM 4.0+
- Apps**
  - New app to add\*: [Text input field] Add
- Deployment Rules**: [Section header]

At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

6. Configure these settings:

- **Kiosk mode:** Click **Enable** or **Disable**. The default is **Enable**. When you click **Disable**, all the following options disappear.
- **Launcher package:** Citrix recommends you leave this field blank unless you have developed an in-house launcher to enable users to open the Kiosk app or apps. If you are using an in-house launcher, enter the full name of the launcher application package.
- **Emergency phone number:** Enter an optional phone number. This number can be used by anyone finding a lost device

to contact your company. Applies only to MDM 4.0 and later.

- **Allow navigation bar:** Select whether to let users see and use the navigation bar while in Kiosk mode. Applies only to MDM 4.0 and later. The default is **ON**.
- **Allow multi-window mode:** Select whether to let users use multiple windows while in Kiosk mode. Applies only to MDM 4.0 and later. The default is **ON**.
- **Allow status bar:** Select whether to let users see the status bar while in Kiosk mode. Applies only to MDM 4.0 and later. The default is **ON**.
- **Allow system bar:** Select whether to let users see the system bar while in Kiosk mode. The default is **ON**.
- **Allow task manager:** Select whether to let users see and use the task manager while in Kiosk mode. The default is **ON**.
- **Common SAFE passcode:** If you have set a general passcode policy for all Samsung SAFE devices, enter that optional passcode in this field.
- **Wallpapers**
  - **Define a home wallpaper:** Select whether to use a custom image for the home screen while in Kiosk mode. The default is **OFF**.
    - **Home image:** When you enable **Define a home wallpaper**, select the image file by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.
  - **Define a lock wallpaper:** Select whether to use a custom image for the lock screen while in Kiosk mode. The default is **OFF**. Applies only to MDM 4.0 and later.
    - **Lock image:** When you enable **Define a lock wallpaper**, select the image file by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.
- **Apps:** For each app that you want to add to Kiosk mode, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **New app to add:** Enter the full name of the app to add. For example, com.android.calendar lets users use the Android calendar app.
  - Click **Save** to add the app or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the app.

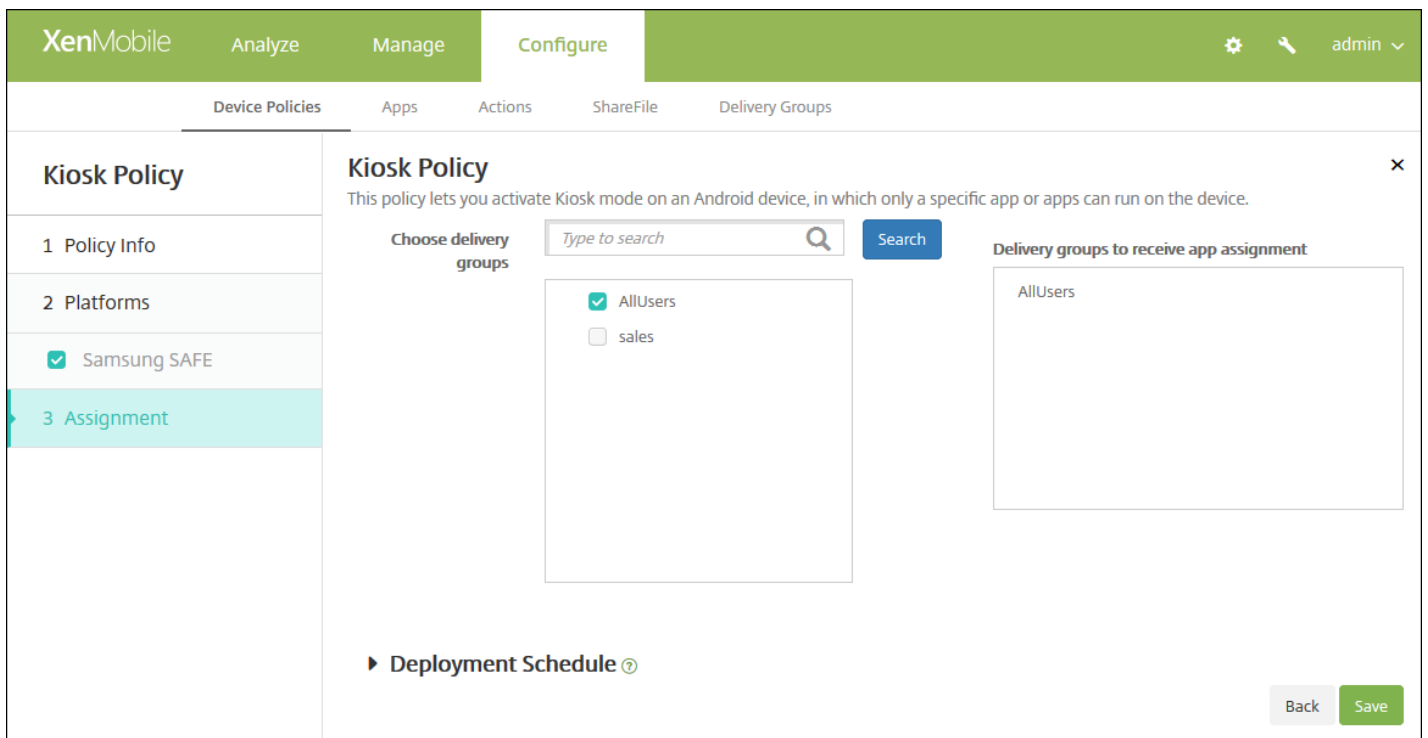
**Note:** To delete an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules



8. Click **Next**. The **Kiosk Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS

11. Click **Save**.

# Launcher configuration device policy for Android

Feb 27, 2017

Citrix Launcher lets you customize the user experience for Android devices deployed by XenMobile. You can add a Launcher Configuration policy to control these Citrix Launcher features:

- Manage Android devices so that users can access only the apps that you specify.
- Optionally specify a custom logo image for the Citrix Launcher icon and a custom background image for Citrix Launcher.
- Specify a password that users must enter to exit the launcher.

While Citrix Launcher enables you to apply those device-level restrictions, the launcher grants users the operational flexibility they need through built-in access to device settings such as WiFi settings, Bluetooth settings, and device passcode settings. Citrix Launcher isn't intended as an extra layer of security over what the device platform already provides.

After you deploy Citrix Launcher, XenMobile installs it, replacing the default Android launcher.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Start typing **Launcher** and then select **Launcher Configuration** from the list. The **Launcher Configuration Policy** page appears.
4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:
  - **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
  - **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.
5. Click **Next**. The **Android Platform** information page appears.

**Launcher Configuration Policy**

1 Policy Info

2 Platforms

Android

3 Assignment

**Policy Information**

This policy lets you define a configuration of an Android device launcher.

**Launcher app configuration**

Define a logo image

Logo image  **Browse**

Define a background image

Background image  **Browse**

Allowed apps

App name	Package Name*	Add
test	test.com	

Password

► **Deployment Rules**

**Back** **Next >**

6. Configure these settings:

- **Define a logo image:** Select whether to use a custom logo image for Citrix Launcher icon. The default is **OFF**.
- **Logo image:** When you enable **Define a logo image**, select the image file by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location. Supported file types are PNG, JPG, JPEG, and GIF.
- **Define a background image:** Select whether to use a custom image for the Citrix Launcher background. The default is **OFF**.
- **Background image:** When you enable **Define a background image**, select the image file by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location. Supported file types are PNG, JPG, JPEG, and GIF.
- **Allowed apps:** For each app that you want to allow in Citrix Launcher, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **New app to add:** Enter the full name of the app to add. For example, com.android.calendar for the Android calendar app.
  - Click **Save** to add the app or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the app.

**Note:** To delete an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing app, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

- **Password:** The password a user must enter to exit Citrix Launcher.

7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Launcher Configuration Policy** assignment page appears.

10. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

11. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

12. Click **Save**.

# LDAP device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You create an LDAP policy for iOS devices in XenMobile to provide information about an LDAP server to use, including any necessary account information. The policy also provides a set of LDAP search policies to use when querying the LDAP server.

You need the LDAP host name before configuring this policy.

[iOS settings](#)

[Mac OS X settings](#)

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add** to add a new policy. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **End user**, click **LDAP**. The **LDAP Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is selected. Below the navigation bar, there are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' sub-tab is active. On the left, there is a sidebar for the 'LDAP Policy' configuration, with three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The 'Policy Information' pane is open, showing a form with 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description' fields. The 'Policy Name\*' field is empty, and the 'Description' field is a large text area. A 'Next >' button is visible in the bottom right corner.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** information page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS settings



Configure the following settings:

- **Account description:** Enter an optional account description.
- **Account user name:** Enter an optional user name.
- **Account password:** Enter an optional password. Use this only with encrypted profiles.
- **LDAP host name:** Enter the LDAP server host name. This field is required.
- **Use SSL:** Select whether to use a Secure Socket Layer connection to the LDAP server. The default is **ON**.
- **Search Settings:** Add search settings to use when querying the LDAP server. You can enter as many search settings as you want, but you should add at least one search setting to make the account useful. Click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **Description:** Enter a description of the search setting. This field is required.
  - **Scope:** In the list, click **Base**, **One level**, or **Subtree** to define how deeply into the LDAP tree to search. The default is Base.
    - Base searches the node pointed to by Search base.
    - One level searches the Base node and one level below it.
    - Subtree searches the Base node, plus all of its children, regardless of depth.
  - **Search base:** Enter the path to the node at which to start searching. For example, ou=people or O=example corp. This field is required.
  - Click **Save** to add the search setting or click Cancel to cancel adding the search setting.
  - Repeat these steps for each search setting you want to add.

**Note:** To delete an existing search setting, hover over the line containing the listing and click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click Delete to delete the listing or Cancel to keep the listing.

To edit an existing search setting, hover over the line containing the listing and click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click Save to save the changed listing or Cancel to leave the listing unchanged.

- Under **Policy Settings**, next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
- If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
- In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
- If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

## Configure Mac OS X settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' section is active, showing tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'LDAP Policy' configuration page is open, with a sidebar on the left containing '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms' (with 'Mac OS X' selected), and '3 Assignment'. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you configure an LDAP server and search policies for querying the server.' Below this are input fields for 'Account description', 'Account user name', 'Account password', and 'LDAP host name\*'. A 'Use SSL' toggle is set to 'ON'. The 'Search Settings' section has a table with columns for 'Description\*', 'Scope', and 'Search base\*', and an 'Add' button. The 'Policy Settings' section includes 'Remove policy' options (radio buttons for 'Select date' and 'Duration until removal (in days)'), 'Allow user to remove policy' (a dropdown menu set to 'Always'), and 'Profile scope' (a dropdown menu set to 'User'). A 'Deployment Rules' section is partially visible at the bottom. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure the following settings:

- **Account description:** Enter an optional account description.
- **Account user name:** Enter an optional user name.
- **Account password:** Enter an optional password. Use this only with encrypted profiles.

- **LDAP host name:** Enter the LDAP server host name. This field is required.
- **Use SSL:** Select whether to use a Secure Socket Layer connection to the LDAP server. The default is **ON**.
- **Search Settings:** Add search settings to use when querying the LDAP server. You can enter as many search settings as you want, but you should add at least one search setting to make the account useful. Click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **Description:** Enter a description of the search setting. This field is required.
  - **Scope:** In the list, click **Base**, **One level**, or **Subtree** to define how deeply into the LDAP tree to search. The default is Base.
    - Base searches the node pointed to by Search base.
    - One level searches the Base node and one level below it.
    - Subtree searches the Base node, plus all of its children, regardless of depth.
  - **Search base:** Enter the path to the node at which to start searching. For example, ou=people or O=example corp. This field is required.
  - Click **Save** to add the search setting or click Cancel to cancel adding the search setting.
  - Repeat these steps for each search setting you want to add.

**Note:** To delete an existing search setting, hover over the line containing the listing and click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click Delete to delete the listing or Cancel to keep the listing.

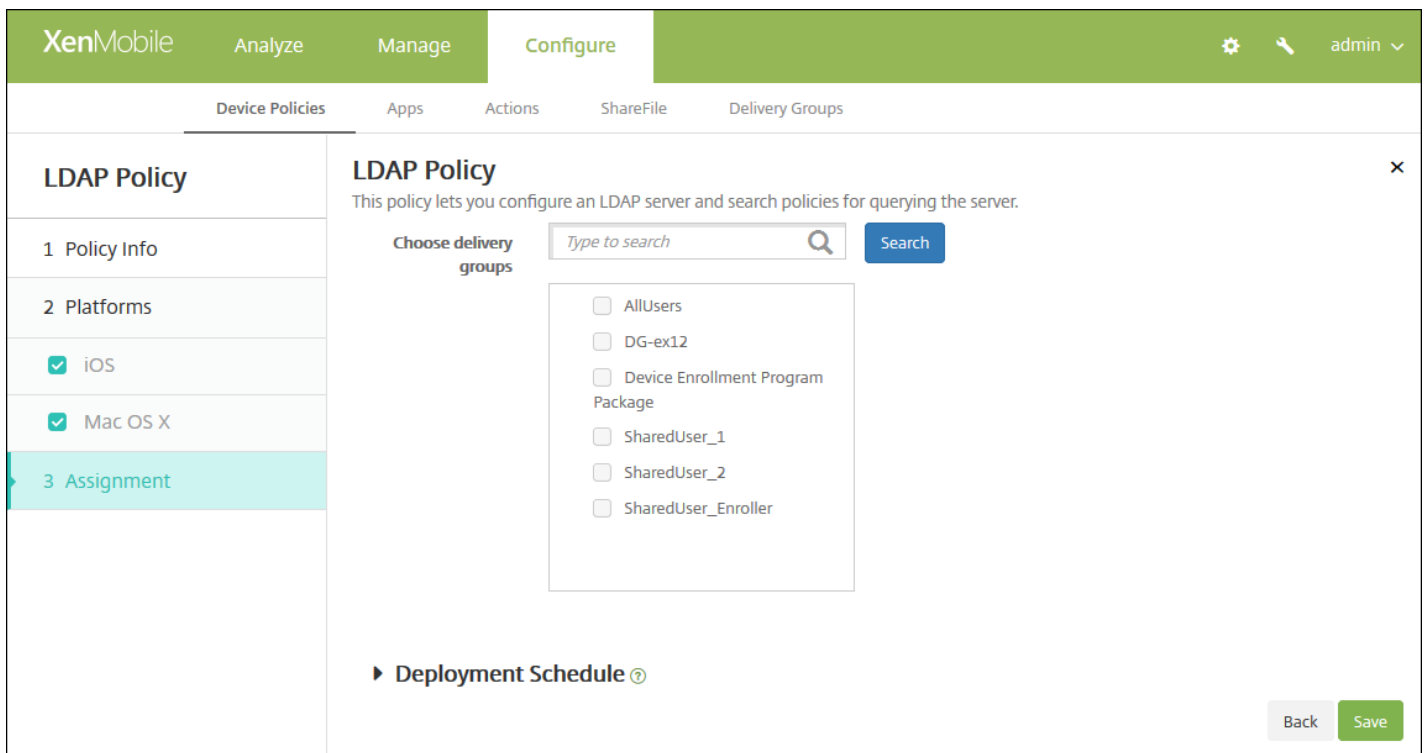
To edit an existing search setting, hover over the line containing the listing and click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click Save to save the changed listing or Cancel to leave the listing unchanged.

- Under **Policy Settings**, next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
- If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
- In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
- If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.
- In **Profile scope**, click either **User** or **System**. The default is **User**. This option is available only on OS X 10.7 and later.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules



8. Click **Next**. The **LDAP Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save** to save the policy.

# Location device policy

Mar 24, 2017

You create location device policies in XenMobile to enforce geographic boundaries. When users breach the defined boundary, also called a *geofence*, XenMobile can perform certain actions. For example, you can configure the policy to issue a warning message to users when they breach the defined perimeter. You can also configure the policy to wipe users' corporate data when they breach a perimeter, right away or after a delay. For information about security actions, such as enabling tracking and locating a device, see the Perform Security Actions section in [Devices](#).

You can create location device policies for iOS and Android. Each platform requires a different set of values, which are described in this article.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **Location**. The **Location Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' (highlighted). Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Location Policy' and has a sidebar on the left with three sections: '1 Policy Info' (highlighted), '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', there are two checkboxes: 'iOS' and 'Android', both of which are checked. The main area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a description: 'This policy lets you set geographic perimeters for devices, such as radius, latitude and longitude, and you can track the locations and movements of the devices. You can then perform a selective or full wipe if the device breaches the parameters.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' (with an asterisk indicating it's required) and 'Description'. At the bottom right of the main area, there is a green button labeled 'Next >'.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS settings

Configure these settings:

- **Location timeout:** Type a numeral and then, in the list, click **Seconds** or **Minutes** to set how often XenMobile attempts to fix the device's location. Valid values are 60-900 seconds or 1-15 minutes. The default is 1 minute.
- **Tracking duration:** Type a numeral and then, in the list, click **Hours** or **Minutes** to set how long XenMobile tracks the device. Valid values are 1-6 hours or 10-360 minutes. The default is 6 hours.
- **Accuracy:** Type a numeral and then, in the list, click **Meters**, **Feet**, or **Yards** to set how close to a device XenMobile tracks the device. Valid values are 10-5000 yards or meters, or 30-15000 feet. The default is 328 feet.
- **Report if Location Services are disabled:** Select whether the device sends a report to XenMobile when GPS is disabled. The default is **OFF**.
- **Geofencing**

When you enable Geofencing, configure these settings:

- **Radius:** Type a numeral and then, in the list, click the units to be used to measure the radius. The default is 16,400 feet. Valid values for radius are:
  - 164-164000 feet
  - 50-50000 meters
  - 54-54680 yards
  - 1-31 miles
- **Center point latitude:** Type a latitude, such as 37.787454, to define the geofence center point's latitude.
- **Center point longitude:** Type a longitude, such as 122.402952, to define the geofence center point's longitude.
- **Warn user on perimeter breach:** Select whether to issue a warning message when users breach the defined perimeter. The default is **OFF**. No connection to XenMobile is required to display the warning message.
- **Wipe corporate data on perimeter breach:** Select whether to wipe users' devices when they breach the perimeter. The default is **OFF**. When you enable this option, the **Delay on local wipe field** appears.
  - Type a numeral and then, in the list, click **Seconds** or **Minutes** to set the length of time to delay before wiping corporate data from users' devices. This gives users an opportunity to return to the allowed location before XenMobile selectively wipes their devices. The default is 0 seconds.

## Configure Android settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile 'Configure' interface for a 'Location Policy'. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Location Policy' and contains a 'Policy Information' section with a description: 'This policy lets you set geographic perimeters for devices, such as radius, latitude and longitude, and you can track the locations and movements of the devices. You can then perform a selective or full wipe if the device breaches the parameters.' Underneath, the 'Device agent configuration' section includes: 'Poll interval' set to '10' with a 'Minutes' dropdown; 'Report if Location Services is disabled' set to 'OFF'; and 'Geofencing' set to 'OFF'. A 'Deployment Rules' section is partially visible at the bottom. The left sidebar shows the configuration steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms' (with 'iOS' and 'Android' selected), and '3 Assignment'. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

- **Poll interval:** Type a numeral and then, in the list, click **Minutes** or **Hours**, or **Days** to set how often XenMobile attempts to fix the device's location. Valid values are 1-1440 minutes, 1-24 hours, or any number of days. The default is 10 minutes. Setting this value to less than 10 minutes may adversely affect the device's battery life.
- **Report if Location Services are disabled:** Select whether the device sends a report to XenMobile when GPS is disabled. The default is **OFF**.
- **Geofencing**

Geofencing

Radius

Center point latitude\*

Center point longitude\*

Warn user on perimeter breach  ?

Device connects to XenMobile for policy refresh

- Perform no action on perimeter breach
- Wipe corporate data on perimeter breach
- Lock device locally

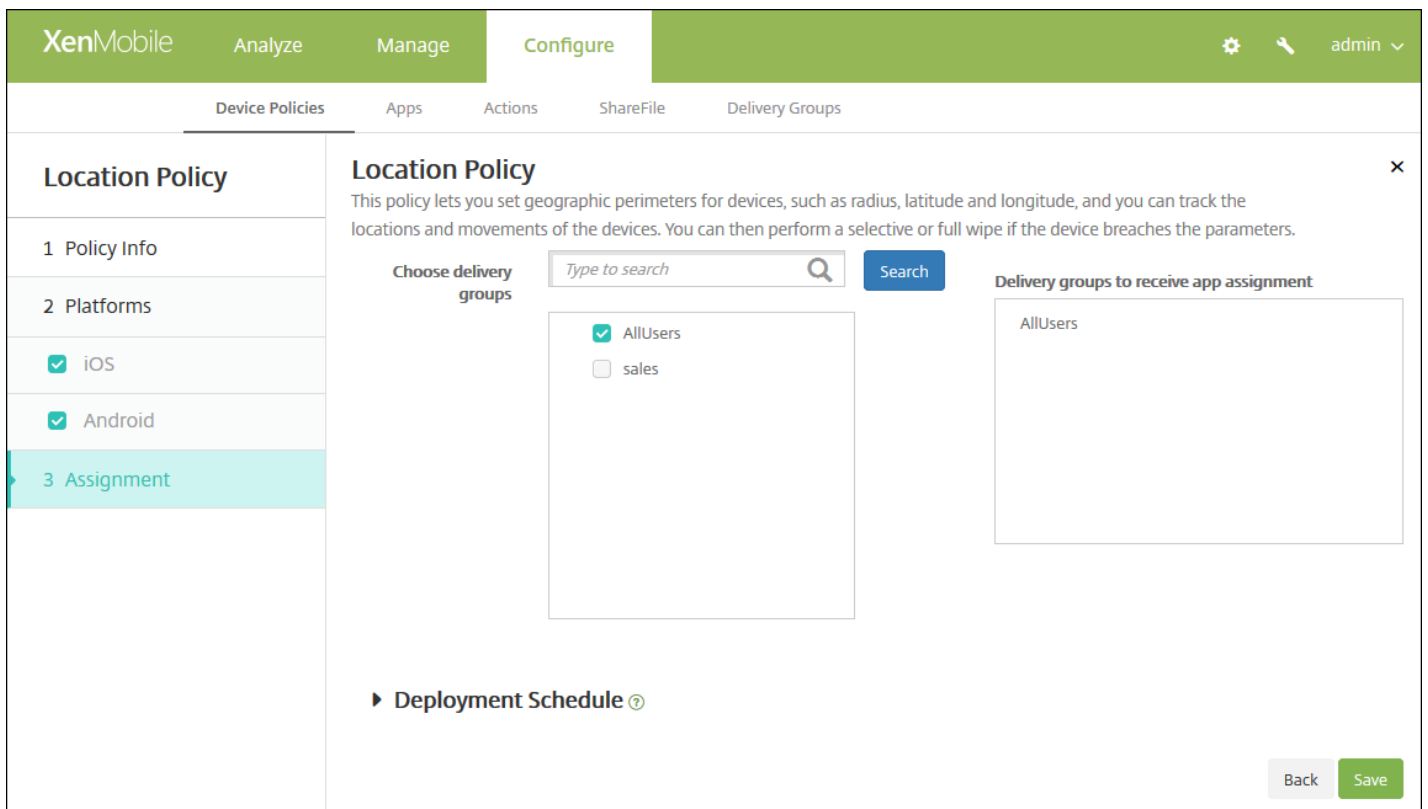
When you enable Geofencing, configure these settings:

- **Radius:** Type a numeral and then, in the list, click the units to be used to measure the radius. The default is 16,400 feet. Valid values for radius are:
  - 164-164000 feet
  - 1-50 kilometers
  - 50-50000 meters
  - 54-54680 yards
  - 1-31 miles
- **Center point latitude:** Type a latitude, such as 37.787454, to define the geofence center point's latitude.
- **Center point longitude:** Type a longitude, such as 122.402952, to define the geofence center point's longitude.
- **Warn user on perimeter breach:** Select whether to issue a warning message when users breach the defined perimeter. The default is **OFF**. No connection to XenMobile is required to display the warning message.
- **Device connects to XenMobile for policy refresh:** Select one of the following options for when users breach the perimeter:
  - **Perform no action on perimeter breach:** Do nothing. This is the default.
  - **Wipe corporate data on perimeter breach:** Wipe corporate data after a specified length of time. When you enable this option, the **Delay on local wipe** field appears.
    - Type a numeral and then, in the list, click Seconds or Minutes to set the length of time to delay before wiping corporate data from users' devices. This gives users an opportunity to return to the allowed location before XenMobile selectively wipes their devices. The default is 0 seconds.
  - **Delay on lock:** Lock users' devices after a specified length of time. When you enable this option, the **Delay on lock field** appears.
    - Type a numeral and then, in the list, click Seconds or Minutes to set the length of time to delay before locking users' devices. This gives users an opportunity to return to the allowed location before XenMobile locks their devices. The default is 0 seconds.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Location Policy** assignment page appears.





9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Mail device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can add a mail device policy in XenMobile to configure an email account on users' iOS or Mac OS X devices.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add** to add a new policy. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **More** and then, under **End user**, click **Mail**. The **Mail Policy** page appears.


The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' tab is active, and the 'Mail Policy' page is displayed. The page has a sidebar on the left with three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', 'iOS' and 'Mac OS X' are both checked. The main area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a 'Policy Name\*' text field and a 'Description' text area. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Mail Policy Platforms** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' tab is active, and the 'Mail Policy' page is displayed. The page has a sidebar on the left with three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', 'iOS' and 'Mac OS X' are both checked. The main area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains several fields: 'Account description\*', 'Account type' (set to IMAP), 'Path prefix', 'User display name\*', 'Email address\*', and 'Incoming email' section with 'Email server host name\*'. A close button (X) is in the top right corner.

Email server port*	<input type="text" value="143"/>
User name*	<input type="text"/>
Authentication type	<input type="text" value="Password"/>
Password	<input type="text"/>
Use SSL	<input type="checkbox" value="OFF"/>
<b>Outgoing email</b>	
Email server host name*	<input type="text"/>
Email server port*	<input type="text"/>
User name*	<input type="text"/>
Authentication type	<input type="text" value="Password"/>
Password	<input type="text"/>
Outgoing password same as incoming	<input type="checkbox" value="OFF"/>
Use SSL	<input type="checkbox" value="OFF"/>
<b>Policy</b>	
Authorize email move between accounts	<input type="checkbox" value="OFF"/> iOS 5.0+
Sending email only from mail app	<input type="checkbox" value="OFF"/> iOS 5.0+
Disable mail recents syncing	<input type="checkbox" value="OFF"/> iOS 6.0+
Enable S/MIME	<input type="checkbox" value="OFF"/> iOS 5.0+
<b>Policy Settings</b>	
Remove policy	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Select date <input type="radio"/> Duration until removal (in days)
	<input type="text"/> 
Allow user to remove policy	<input type="text" value="Always"/>
<b>► Deployment Rules</b>	

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others. When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 8 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

7. Configure the following settings for the platforms you selected.

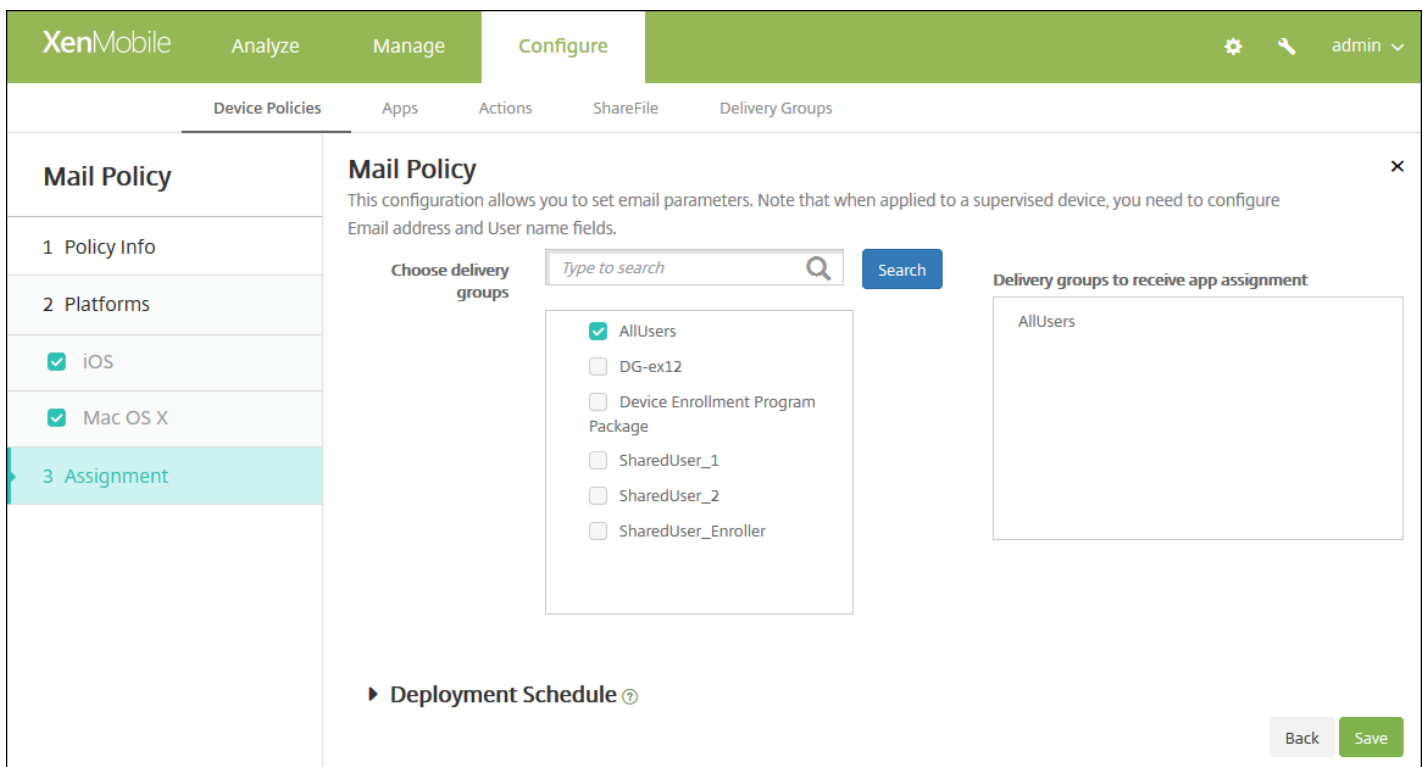
- **Account description:** Type an account description that appears in the Mail and Settings apps. This field is required.
- **Account type:** In the list, click either **IMAP** or **POP** to select the protocol to be used for user accounts. The default is **IMAP**. When you select **POP**, the following **Path** prefix option disappears.

- **Path prefix:** Type **INBOX** or your IMAP mail account path prefix if it is not **INBOX**. This field is required.
- **User display name:** Type the full user name to be used for messages and so on. This field is required.
- **Email address:** Type the full email address for the account. This field is required.
- **Incoming email settings**
  - **Email server host name:** Type the incoming mail server host name or IP address. This field is required.
  - **Email server port:** Type the incoming mail server port number. The default is **143**. This field is required.
  - **User name:** Type the user name for the email account. This name is generally the same as the user's email address up to the @ character. This field is required.
  - **Authentication type:** In the list, click to select the authentication type to be used. The default is **Password**. When **None** is selected, the following **Password** field disappears.
  - **Password:** Type an optional password for the incoming mail server.
  - **Use SSL:** Select whether the incoming mail server uses Secure Socket Layer authentication. The default is **OFF**.
- **Outgoing email settings**
  - **Email server host name:** Type the outgoing mail server host name or IP address. This field is required.
  - **Email server port:** Type the outgoing mail server port number. If no port, you do not enter a port number, the default port for the given protocol is used.
  - **User name:** Type the user name for the email account. This is generally the same as the user's email address up to the @ character. This field is required.
  - **Authentication type:** In the list, click to select the authentication type to be used. The default is **Password**. When **None** is selected, the following **Password** field disappears.
  - **Password:** Type an optional password for the outgoing mail server.
  - **Outgoing password same as incoming:** Select whether the incoming and outgoing passwords are the same. The default is **OFF**, which means the passwords are different. When set to **ON**, the preceding **Password** field disappears.
  - **Use SSL:** Select whether the outgoing mail server uses Secure Socket Layer authentication. The default is **OFF**.
- **Policy**
  - **Note:** When you are configuring iOS settings, these options apply only to iOS 5.0 and later; there are no restrictions when you are configuring Mac OS X.
  - **Authorize email move between accounts:** Select whether to allow users to move email out of this account into another account and to forward and reply from a different account. The default is **OFF**.
  - **Sending email only from mail app:** Select whether to restrict users to the iOS mail app for sending email.
  - **Disable mail recents syncing:** Select whether to prevent users from syncing recent addresses. The default is **OFF**. This option applies only to iOS 6.0 and later.
  - **Enable S/MIME:** Select whether this account supports S/MIME authentication and encryption. The default is **OFF**. When set to **ON**, the following two fields appear.
  - **Signing identity credential:** In the list, select the signing credential to be used.
  - **Encryption identity credential:** In the list, select the encryption credential to be used.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.
  - Next to **Profile scope**: In the list, click either **User** or **System**. The default is **User**. This option is available only on Mac OS X 10.7 and later.

## 8. Configure the deployment rules



9. Click **Next**. The **Mail Policy** assignment page appears.



10. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

11. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

12. Click **Save** to save the policy.

# Managed domains device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can define managed domains that apply to email and the Safari browser. Managed domains help you protect corporate data by controlling which apps can open documents downloaded from domains using Safari.

For iOS 8 and later supervised devices, you specify URLs or subdomains to control how users can open documents, attachments, and downloads from the browser. For iOS 9.3 and later supervised devices, you can specify the URLs from which users can save passwords in Safari.

For the steps on setting an iOS device to supervised mode, see [To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator](#).

When a user sends email to a recipient whose domain is not on the managed email domains list, the message is flagged on the user's device to warn them that they are sending a message to someone outside your corporate domain.

For items such as documents, attachments, or downloads: When a user opens an item by using Safari from a web domain that is on the managed web domains list, the appropriate corporate app opens the item. If the item is not from a web domain on the managed web domains list, the user cannot open the item with a corporate app. They must use a personal, unmanaged app.

For supervised devices, even if you do not specify Safari password autofill domains: If the device is configured as ephemeral multi-user, users can't save passwords. However, if the device isn't configured as ephemeral multi-user, users can save all passwords.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Security**, click **Managed domains**. The **Managed Domains Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. The 'Configure' tab is active. Below this, there are sub-tabs: 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' sub-tab is selected. On the left, a sidebar titled 'Managed Domains Policy' contains three sections: '1 Policy Info' (highlighted), '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', the 'iOS' option is checked. The main area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a sub-header: 'This policy lets you define managed domains that apply to the Safari browser. The policy is supported only on iOS 8 and later devices.' Below this, there are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' (a text box) and 'Description' (a larger text area). At the bottom right of the main area, there is a green button labeled 'Next >'.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **iOS Platform** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** administrator

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### Managed Domains Policy

This policy lets you define managed domains that apply to the Safari browser. The policy is supported only on iOS 8 and later devices.

**Managed Domains**

Unmarked Email Domains

Managed Email Domain

Managed Safari Web Domains

Managed Web Domain

Safari Password AutoFill Domains

Safari Password AutoFill Domain

**Policy Settings**

Remove policy  Select date  Duration until removal (in days)

Allow user to remove policy

► **Deployment Rules**

Back

[How to specify domains](#)

6. Configure these settings:

• **Managed Domains**

- **Unmarked Email Domains:** For each email domain you want to include in the list, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **Managed Email Domain:** Type the email domain.
  - Click **Save** to save the email domain or click **Cancel** to not save the email domain.
- **Managed Safari Web Domains:** For each web domain you want to include in the list, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **Managed Web Domain:** Type the web domain.
  - Click **Save** to save the web domain or click **Cancel** to not save the web domain.
- **Safari Password AutoFill Domains:**

For each autofill domain you want to include in the list, click **Add** and then do the following:

  - **Safari Password AutoFill Domain:** Type the autofill domain.
  - Click **Save** to save the autofill domain or click **Cancel** to not save the autofill domain.

**Note:** To delete an existing domain, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.



To edit an existing domain, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel**.

- **Policy Settings**

- Under **Policy Settings**, next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
- If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
- In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
- If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Assignment** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The user is logged in as 'administrator'. The main content area is titled 'Managed Domains Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you define managed domains that apply to the Safari browser. The policy is supported for email and web domains only on iOS 8 and later devices. The policy is supported for Safari password autofill domains only on iOS 9.3 and later supervised devices.' Below the description, there is a 'Choose delivery groups' section with a search bar and a list of groups: 'AllUsers' (checked), 'DG02', 'DG03', 'DG04', 'DG05', 'DG06', 'DG07', 'DG08', and 'DG09'. To the right, there is a 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' list containing 'AllUsers'. At the bottom, there is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a right-pointing arrow and a help icon.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.

- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# MDM options device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can create a device policy in XenMobile to manage Find My Phone/iPad Activation Lock on supervised iOS 7.0 and later phone devices. For the steps on setting an iOS device to supervised mode, see [To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator](#).

Activation Lock is a feature of Find My iPhone/iPad that is designed to prevent reactivation of lost or stolen devices by requiring the user's Apple ID and password before anyone can turn off Find My iPhone, erase the device, or reactivate and use the device. In XenMobile, you can bypass the Apple ID and password requirement by enabling Activation Lock in the MDM Options device policy. When a user returns a device with Find My iPhone enabled, you can manage the device from the XenMobile console without their Apple credentials.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **End user**, click **MDM Options**. The **MDM Options Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there are navigation tabs: 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below these are sub-tabs: 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'MDM Options Policy' and contains a 'Policy Information' section with the following fields:

- Policy Name\***: A text input field.
- Description**: A larger text area for entering a description.

On the left side, there is a sidebar with three sections:

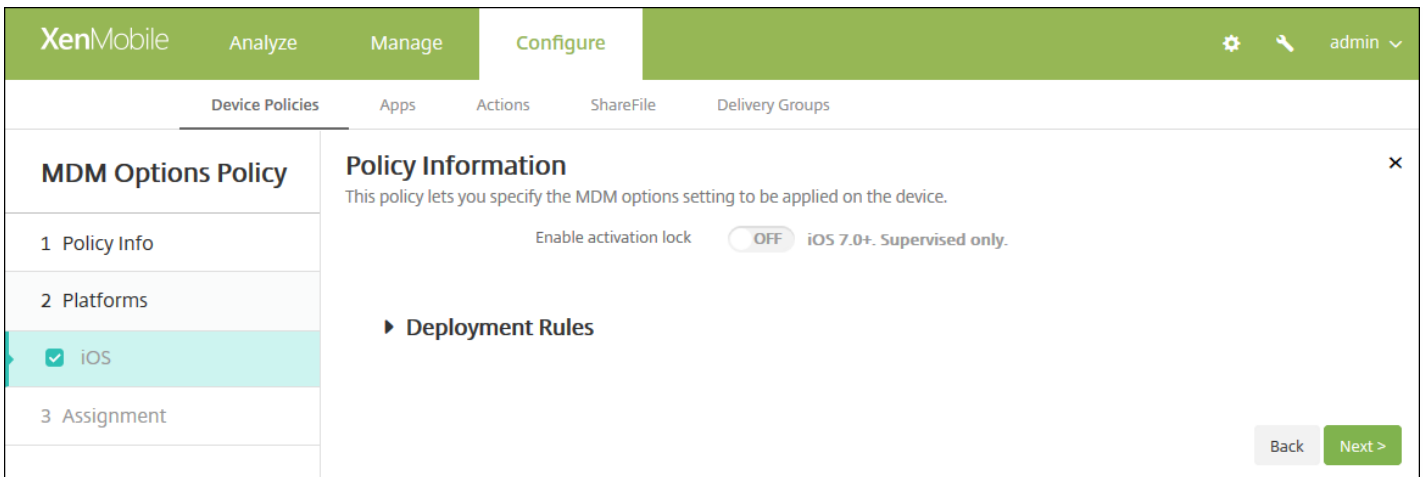
- 1 Policy Info**: The active section, highlighted in light blue.
- 2 Platforms**: A section with a list of platforms, where 'iOS' is selected with a checkmark.
- 3 Assignment**: A section for assigning the policy to users or groups.

A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the form.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **iOS MDM Policy Platform** page appears.

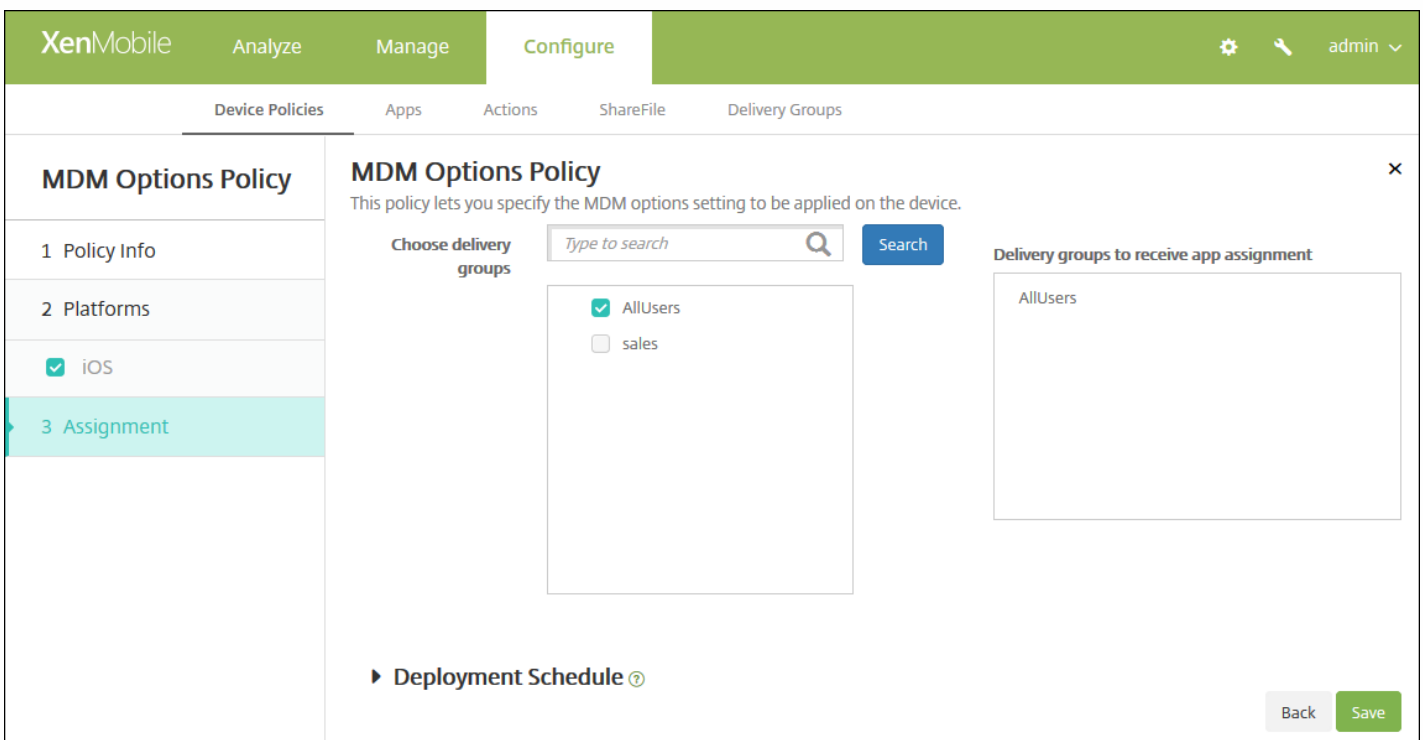


6. Configure this setting:

- **Enable Activation Lock:** Select whether to enable Activation Lock on the devices to which you deploy this policy. The default is **OFF**.

7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **MDM Options Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can use the Exchange ActiveSync device policy to configure an email client on users' devices to let them access their corporate email hosted on Exchange. You can create policies for iOS, Mac OS X, Android HTC, Android TouchDown, Android for Work, Samsung SAFE, Samsung KNOX, and Windows Phone. Each platform requires a different set of values, which are described in detail in the following sections.

[iOS settings](#)

[Mac OS X settings](#)

[Android HTC settings](#)

[Android TouchDown settings](#)

[Android for Work settings](#)

[Samsung SAFE and Samsung KNOX settings](#)

[Windows Phone settings](#)

Before you can create this policy, you will need to know the host name or IP address of the Exchange Server.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears:
3. Click **Exchange**. The **Exchange Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. At the top, there's a green navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Exchange Policy' section is selected, and its configuration is shown in a modal window. On the left, a sidebar lists steps: '1 Policy Info' (highlighted), '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', several options are checked: iOS, Mac OS X, Android HTC, Android TouchDown, Android for Work, Samsung SAFE, Samsung KNOX, and Windows Phone. The 'Policy Information' pane on the right contains a text input for 'Policy Name\*' and a larger text area for 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the modal.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below these are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Exchange Policy' section is active, showing a list of platforms on the left and a 'Policy Information' form on the right. The form includes fields for account name, host name, SSL status, domain, user, email address, password, sync interval, and identity credential.

Configure these settings:

- **Exchange ActiveSync account name:** Type the description of the email account that is displayed on users' devices.
- **Exchange ActiveSync host name:** Type the address of the email server.
- **Use SSL:** Select whether to secure connections between users' devices and the Exchange Server. The default is **ON**.
- **Domain:** Enter the domain in which the Exchange Server resides. You can use the system macro `${user.domainname}` in this field to automatically look up users' domain names.
- **User:** Specify the user name for the Exchange user account. You can use the system macro `${user.username}` in this field to automatically look up users' names.
- **Email address:** Specify the user's full email address. You can use the system macro `${user.mail}` in this field to automatically look up users' email accounts.
- **Password:** Enter an optional password for the Exchange user account.
- **Email sync interval:** In the list, choose how often email is synced with the Exchange Server. The default is **3 days**.
- **Identity credential (keystore or PKI):** In the list, click an optional identity credential if you have configured an identity provider for XenMobile. This field is only required when Exchange requires a client certificate authentication. The default is **None**.
- **Authorize email move between accounts:** Select whether to allow users to move email out of this account into another account and to forward and reply from a different account. The default is **OFF**.
- **Send email only from email app:** Select whether to restrict users to the iOS mail app for sending email. The default is **OFF**.
- **Disable email recent syncing:** Select whether to prevent users from syncing recent addresses. The default is **OFF**. This option applies only to iOS 6.0 and later.
- **Enable S/MIME:** Select whether this account supports S/MIME authentication and encryption. The default is **OFF**. When set to **ON**, the following two fields appear:



- **Signing identity credential.** The default is **None**.
- **Encryption identity credential.** The default is **None**.
- **Enable per message S/MIME switch:** Select whether to allow users to encrypt outgoing email on a per-message basis. The default is **OFF**.

## Configure Mac OS X settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Exchange Policy' and is divided into three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', several operating systems are listed with checkboxes: iOS, Mac OS X (selected), Android HTC, Android TouchDown, Android for Work, Samsung SAFE, Samsung KNOX, and Windows Phone. The 'Policy Information' section contains the following fields and controls:

- Exchange ActiveSync account name\* (text input)
- User\* (text input)
- Email address\* (text input)
- Password (text input)
- Internal Exchange host (text input)
- Internal server port (text input)
- Internal server path (text input)
- Use SSL for internal Exchange host (toggle switch, currently ON)
- External Exchange host (text input)

At the bottom right of the form, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

## Configure these settings:

- **Exchange ActiveSync account name:** Type the description of the email account that is displayed on users' devices.
- **User:** Specify the user name for the Exchange user account. You can use the system macro `${user.username}` in this field to automatically look up users' names.
- **Email address:** Specify the user's full email address. You can use the system macro `${user.mail}` in this field to automatically look up users' email accounts.
- **Password:** Enter an optional password for the Exchange user account.
- **Internal Exchange host:** If you want your internal and external Exchange host names to be different, type an optional internal Exchange host name.
- **Internal server port:** If you want your internal and external Exchange server ports to be different, type an optional internal Exchange server port number.
- **Internal server path:** If you want your internal and external Exchange server paths to be different, type an optional internal Exchange server path.
- **Use SSL for internal Exchange host:** Select whether to secure connections between users' devices and the internal Exchange host. The default is **ON**.
- **External Exchange host:** If you want your internal and external Exchange host names to be different, type an optional

external Exchange host name.

- **External server port:** If you want your internal and external Exchange server ports to be different, type an optional external Exchange server port number.
- **External server path:** If you want your internal and external Exchange server paths to be different, type an optional external Exchange server path.
- **Use SSL for external Exchange host:** Select whether to secure connections between users' devices and the internal Exchange host. The default is **ON**.
- **Allow Mail Drop:** Select whether to allow users to share files wirelessly between two Macs, without having to connect to an existing network. The default is **OFF**.

## Configure Android HTC settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' section is active, showing a sidebar with 'Device Policies' and a list of policies. The 'Exchange Policy' is selected, and the 'Policy Information' tab is active. The 'Policy Information' section contains the following fields and controls:

- Configuration display name\***: Text input field.
- Server address\***: Text input field.
- User ID\***: Text input field.
- Password**: Text input field.
- Domain**: Text input field.
- Email address\***: Text input field.
- Use SSL**: Toggle switch set to **ON**.

Below the fields is a section for **Deployment Rules**. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **Configuration display name:** Type the name for this policy that appears on users' devices.
- **Server address:** Type the Exchange Server host name or IP address.
- **User ID:** Specify the user name for the Exchange user account. You can use the system macro `${user.username}` in this field to automatically look up users' names.
- **Password:** Enter an optional password for the Exchange user account.
- **Domain:** Enter the domain in which the Exchange Server resides. You can use the system macro `${user.domainname}` in this field to automatically look up users' domain names.
- **Email address:** Specify the user's full email address. You can use the system macro `${user.mail}` in this field to automatically look up users' email accounts.
- **Use SSL:** Select whether to secure connections between users' devices and the Exchange Server. The default is **ON**.

## Configure Android TouchDown settings

**Exchange Policy**

1 Policy Info

2 Platforms

- iOS
- Mac OS X
- Android HTC
- Android TouchDown**
- Android for Work
- Samsung SAFE
- Samsung KNOX
- Windows Phone

3 Assignment

### Policy Information

This policy configures Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync so users can run Exchange email on their devices. When you create this policy, you need the host name or IP address for the Exchange Server.

Server name or IP address\*

Domain

User ID\*

Password

Email address

Identity credential (keystore or PKI)

#### Policies and Apps

App Setting

Name	Value	Add
------	-------	-----

Policy

Name	Value	Add
------	-------	-----

Back Next >

Configure these settings:

- **Server name or IP address:** Type the Exchange Server host name or IP address.
- **Domain:** Type the domain in which the Exchange Server resides. You can use the system macro `${user.domainname}` in this field to automatically look up users' domain names.
- **User ID:** Specify the user name for the Exchange user account. You can use the system macro `${user.username}` in this field to automatically look up users' names.
- **Password:** Type an optional password for the Exchange user account.
- **Email address:** Specify the user's full email address. You can use the system macro `${user.mail}` in this field to automatically look up users' email accounts.
- **Identity credential (keystore or PKI):** In the list, click an optional identity credential if you have configured an identity provider for XenMobile. This field is only required when Exchange requires a client certificate authentication. The default is **None**.
- **App Setting:** Optionally, add TouchDown app settings for this policy.
- **Policy:** Optionally, add TouchDown policies for this policy.

Configure Android for Work

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below these are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Exchange Policy' is selected in the left sidebar. The main area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the following fields:

- Server name or IP address\*
- Domain
- User ID\*
- Password
- Email address
- Identity credential (keystore or PKI) with a dropdown menu showing 'None'

Below the fields is a section for 'Deployment Rules'. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **Server name or IP address:** Type the Exchange Server host name or IP address.
- **Domain:** Type the domain in which the Exchange Server resides. You can use the system macro `${user.domainname}` in this field to automatically look up users' domain names.
- **User ID:** Specify the user name for the Exchange user account. You can use the system macro `${user.username}` in this field to automatically look up users' names.
- **Password:** Type an optional password for the Exchange user account.
- **Email address:** Specify the user's full email address. You can use the system macro `${user.mail}` in this field to automatically look up users' email accounts.
- **Identity credential (keystore or PKI):** In the list, click an optional identity credential if you have configured an identity provider for XenMobile. This field is only required when Exchange requires a client certificate authentication. The default is **None**.

Configure Samsung SAFE and Samsung KNOX settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for an Exchange Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The left sidebar shows the 'Exchange Policy' configuration steps: 1 Policy Info, 2 Platforms, and 3 Assignment. Under '2 Platforms', several operating systems are listed with checkboxes: iOS, Mac OS X, Android HTC, Android TouchDown, Android for Work, Samsung SAFE (highlighted), Samsung KNOX, and Windows Phone. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a description: 'This policy configures Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync so users can run Exchange email on their devices. When you create this policy, you need the host name or IP address for the Exchange Server.' Below the description are several input fields: 'Server name or IP address\*', 'Domain', 'User ID\*', 'Password', 'Email address\*', and 'Identity credential (keystore or PKI)' with a dropdown menu set to 'None'. At the bottom of the main area, there are three toggle switches: 'Use SSL connection' (ON), 'Sync contacts' (ON), and 'Sync calendar' (ON). At the bottom right of the main area, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **Server name or IP address:** Type the Exchange Server host name or IP address.
- **Domain:** Type the domain in which the Exchange Server resides. You can use the system macro `${user.domainname}` in this field to automatically look up users' domain names.
- **User ID:** Specify the user name for the Exchange user account. You can use the system macro `${user.username}` in this field to automatically look up users' names.
- **Password:** Type an optional password for the Exchange user account.
- **Email address:** Specify the user's full email address. You can use the system macro `${user.mail}` in this field to automatically look up users' email accounts.
- **Identity credential (keystore or PKI):** In the list, click an optional identity credential if you have configured an identity provider for XenMobile. This field is only required when Exchange requires a client certificate authentication.
- **Use SSL connection:** Select whether to secure connections between users' devices and the Exchange Server. The default is **ON**.
- **Sync contacts:** Select whether to enable synchronization for users' contacts between their devices and the Exchange Server. The default is **ON**.
- **Sync calendar:** Select whether to enable synchronization for users' calendars between their devices and the Exchange Server. The default is **ON**.
- **Default account:** Select whether to make users' Exchange account the default for sending email from their devices. The default is **ON**.

Configure Windows Phone settings

**Exchange Policy**

1 Policy Info

2 Platforms

- iOS
- Mac OS X
- Android HTC
- Android TouchDown
- Android for Work
- Samsung SAFE
- Samsung KNOX
- Windows Phone

3 Assignment

### Policy Information

This policy configures Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync so users can run Exchange email on their devices. When you create this policy, you need the host name or IP address for the Exchange Server.

Account name or display name\*

Server name or IP address\*

Domain

User ID or user name\*

Email address\*

Use SSL connection **OFF**

**Sync items**

Past days to sync: All content

**Sync scheduling**

Frequency: When item arrives

Back Next >

Configure these settings:

**Note:** This policy does not allow you to set the user password. Users must set that parameter from their devices after you push the policy.

- **Account name or display name:** Type the Exchange ActiveSync account name.
- **Server name or IP address:** Type the Exchange Server host name or IP address.
- **Domain:** Enter the domain in which the Exchange Server resides. You can use the system macro `${user.domainname}` in this field to automatically look up users' domain names.
- **User ID or user name:** Specify the user name for the Exchange user account. You can use the system macro `${user.username}` in this field to automatically look up users' names.
- **Email address:** Specify the user's full email address. You can use the system macro `${user.mail}` in this field to automatically look up users' email accounts.
- **Use SSL connection:** Select whether to secure connections between users' devices and the Exchange Server. The default is **OFF**.
- **Past days to sync:** In the list, click how many days into the past to sync all content on the device with the Exchange Server. The default is **All content**.
- **Frequency:** In the list, click the schedule to use when syncing data that is sent to the device from the Exchange Server. The default is **When it arrives**.
- **Logging level:** In the list, click **Disabled**, **Basic**, or **Advanced** to specify the level of detail when logging Exchange activity. The default is **Disabled**.

[7. Configure the deployment rules](#)

8. Click **Next**. the **Exchange Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Exchange Policy' and contains a description: 'This policy configures Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync so users can run Exchange email on their devices. When you create this policy, you need the host name or IP address for the Exchange Server.' There are two main sections: 'Choose delivery groups' and 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment'. The 'Choose delivery groups' section has a search box and a list of groups: 'AllUsers' (checked), 'DG-helen', and 'DG-ex12'. The 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' section shows 'AllUsers' in a list. At the bottom, there is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a right-pointing arrow and a help icon. In the bottom right corner, there are 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app** assignment list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Organization information device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can add a device policy in XenMobile to specify your organization's information for alert messages that are pushed from XenMobile to iOS devices. The policy is available for iOS 7 and later devices.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **More** and then, under **End user**, click **Organization info**. The **Organization Info Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Organization Info Policy' and has a sidebar on the left with three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '1 Policy Info' section is selected and highlighted in teal. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a text box for 'Policy Name\*' and a larger text box for 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located in the bottom right corner of the main content area.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** If desired, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **iOS Platform Information** page appears.



The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. The 'Configure' tab is active. Below the navigation bar, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' tab is selected.

On the left side, there is a sidebar with the following sections:

- Organization Info Policy
- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
- 3 Assignment

The main area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the following fields:

- Name:  ⓘ ⓘ iOS 7.0+
- Address:  ⓘ ⓘ iOS 7.0+
- Phone:  ⓘ ⓘ iOS 7.0+
- Email:  ⓘ ⓘ iOS 7.0+
- Magic:  ⓘ ⓘ iOS 7.0+

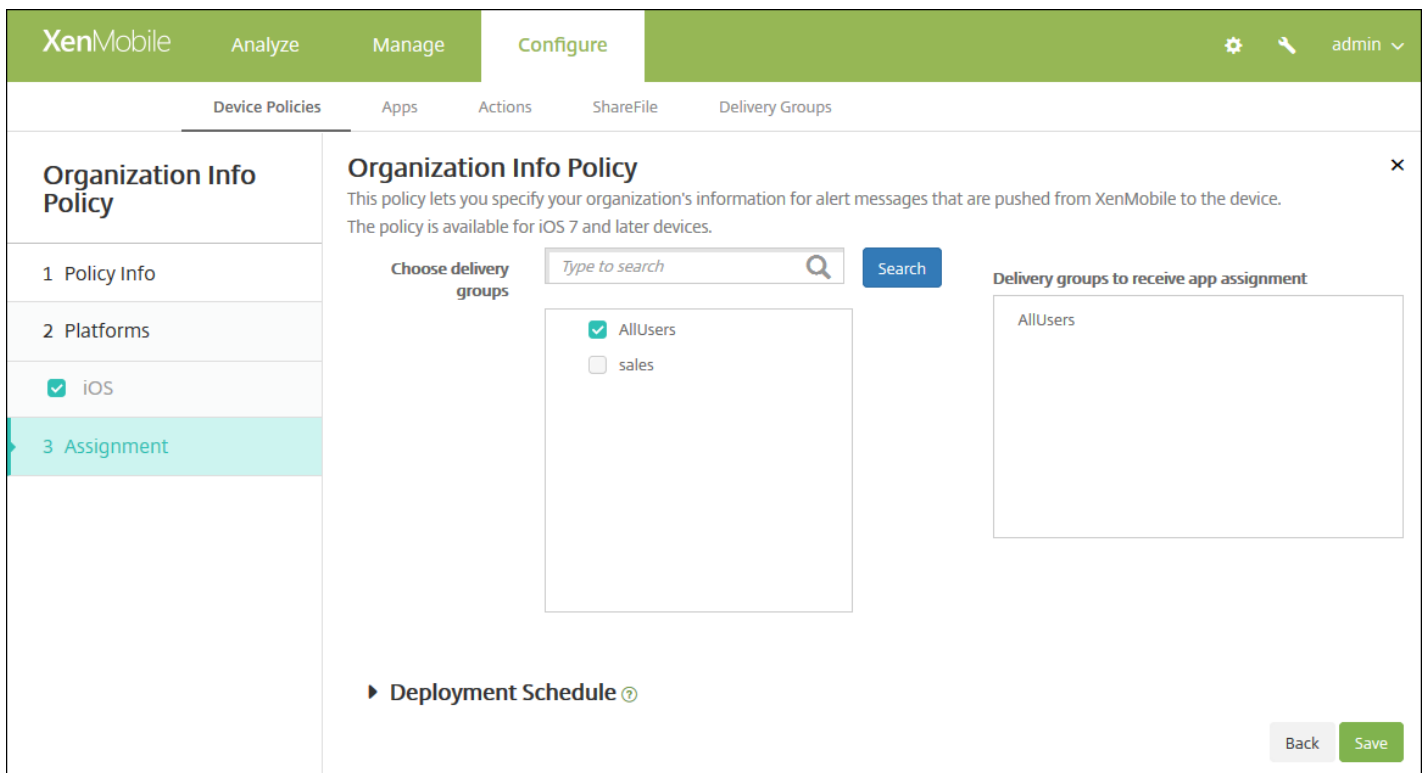
At the bottom of the main area, there is a section for 'Deployment Rules' with a right-pointing arrow. In the bottom right corner, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **Name:** Type the name of the organization running XenMobile.
- **Address:** Type the organization's address.
- **Phone:** Type the organization's support phone number.
- **Email:** Type the support email address.
- **Magic:** Type a word or phrase that describes the services managed by the organization.

7. [Configure the deployment rules](#) 

8. Click **Next**. The **Organization Info Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Passcode device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You create a passcode policy in XenMobile based on your organization's standards. You can require passcodes on users' devices and can set various formatting and passcode rules. You can create policies for iOS, Mac OS X, Android, Samsung KNOX, Android for Work, Windows Phone, and Windows desktop/tablet. Each platform requires a different set of values, which are described in this article.

[iOS settings](#)

[Mac OS X settings](#)

[Android settings](#)

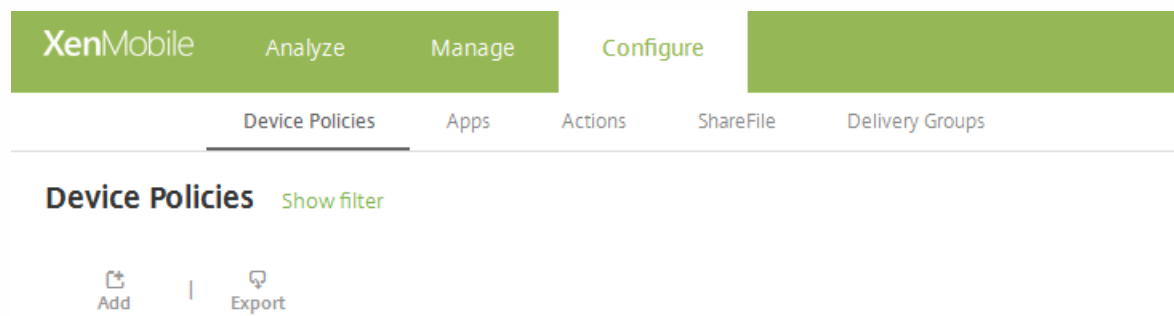
[Samsung KNOX settings](#)

[Android for Work settings](#)

[Windows Phone settings](#)

[Windows Desktop/Tablet settings](#)

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.



2. Click **Add**. The Add New Policy page appears.

3. Click **Passcode**. The Passcode Policy information page appears.

**Passcode Policy**

1 Policy Info

2 Platforms

- iOS
- Mac OS X
- Android
- Samsung KNOX
- Android for Work
- Windows Phone
- Windows Desktop/Tablet

3 Assignment

**Policy Information**

This policy creates a passcode policy based on the standards of your organization. You can require a code on the device and can set formatting rules and other passcode rules, such as the grace period before device lock.

Policy Name\*

Description

Next >

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS settings

Configure the following settings:

- **Passcode required:** Select this option to require a passcode and to display the configuration options for an iOS passcode device policy. The page expands to let you configure settings for passcode requirements, passcode security, and policy settings.
- **Passcode requirements**
  - **Minimum length:** In the list, click the minimum passcode length. The default is **6**.
  - **Allow simple passcodes:** Select whether to allow simple passcodes. Simple passcodes are a repeated or sequential set of characters. The default is **ON**.
  - **Required characters:** Select whether to require passcodes to have at least one letter. The default is **OFF**.
  - **Minimum number of symbols:** In the list, click the number of symbols the passcode must contain. The default is **0**.
- **Passcode security**
  - **Device lock grace period (minutes of inactivity):** In the list, click the length of time before users must enter a passcode to unlock a locked device. The default is **None**.
  - **Lock device after (minutes of inactivity):** In the list, click the length of time a device can be inactive before it is locked. The default is **None**.
  - **Passcode expiration in days (1-730):** Type the number of days after which the passcode expires. Valid values are 1-730. The default is **0**, which means the passcode never expires.
  - **Previous passwords saved (0-50):** Type the number of used passwords to save. Users are unable to use any password found in this list. Valid values are 0-50. The default is **0**, which means users can reuse passwords.
  - **Maximum failed sign-on attempts:** In the list, click the number of times a user can fail to sign in successfully after which the device is fully wiped. The default is **Not defined**.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

## Configure Mac OS X settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Passcode Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy creates a passcode policy based on the standards of your organization. You can require a code on the device and can set formatting rules and other passcode rules, such as the grace period before device lock.' The configuration is divided into three sections: 'Passcode requirements', 'Passcode security', and 'Assignment'. The 'Passcode requirements' section includes a toggle for 'Passcode required' (set to ON), a dropdown for 'Minimum length' (set to 6), a toggle for 'Allow simple passcodes' (set to ON), and a toggle for 'Required characters' (set to OFF). The 'Passcode security' section includes dropdowns for 'Device lock grace period (minutes of inactivity)' (set to None), 'Lock device after (minutes of inactivity)' (set to None), text input for 'Passcode expiration in days (1-730)' (set to 0), text input for 'Previous passwords saved (0-50)' (set to 0), and a dropdown for 'Maximum failed sign-on attempts' (set to Not defined). A sidebar on the left shows a list of platforms with 'Mac OS X' selected. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **Passcode required:** Select this option to require a passcode and to display the configuration options for an iOS passcode device policy. The page expands to let you configure settings for passcode requirements, passcode security, and policy settings.
- If you do not enable **Passcode required**, next to **Delay after failed sign-on attempts, in minutes**, type the number of minutes to delay before allowing users to reenter their passcodes.
- If you enable **Passcode required**, configure the following settings:
- **Passcode requirements**
  - **Minimum length:** In the list, click the minimum passcode length. The default is **6**.
  - **Allow simple passcodes:** Select whether to allow simple passcodes. Simple passcodes are a repeated or sequential set of characters. The default is **ON**.
  - **Required characters:** Select whether to require passcodes to have at least one letter. The default is **OFF**.
  - **Minimum number of symbols:** In the list, click the number of symbols the passcode must contain. The default is **0**.
- **Passcode security**
  - **Device lock grace period (minutes of inactivity):** In the list, click the length of time before users must enter a passcode to unlock a locked device. The default is **None**.
  - **Lock device after (minutes of inactivity):** In the list, click the length of time a device can be inactive before it is locked. The default is **None**.
  - **Passcode expiration in days (1-730):** Type the number of days after which the passcode expires. Valid values are 1-730. The default is **0**, which means the passcode never expires.
  - **Previous passwords saved (0-50):** Type the number of used passwords to save. Users are unable to use any password found in this list. Valid values are 0-50. The default is **0**, which means users can reuse passwords.
  - **Maximum failed sign-on attempts:** In the list, click the number of times a user can fail to sign in successfully after which the device is locked. The default is **Not defined**.

- **Delay after failed sign-on attempts, in minutes:** Type the number of minutes to delay before allowing a user to reenter a passcode.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.
  - Next to **Profile scope**, click either **User** or **System**. The default is **User**. This option is available only on OS X 10.7 and later.

## Configure Android settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Configure' tab is active, and the 'Passcode Policy' section is selected in the left sidebar. The main content area displays the 'Passcode Policy' configuration for Android. The 'Passcode Required' toggle is turned ON. Under 'Passcode requirements', the 'Minimum length' is set to 6, 'Biometric recognition' is OFF, 'Required characters' is 'No restriction', and 'Advanced rules' is OFF. Under 'Passcode security', 'Lock device after (minutes of inactivity)' is set to 'None', 'Passcode expiration in days (1-730)' is 0, 'Previous passwords saved (0-50)' is 0, and 'Maximum failed sign-on attempts' is 'Not defined'. There are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons at the bottom right.

Configure these settings:

**Note:** The default setting for Android is **OFF**.

- **Passcode required:** Select this option to require a passcode and to display the configuration options for an Android passcode device policy. The page expands to let you configure settings for passcode requirements, passcode security, encryption, and Samsung SAFE.
- **Passcode requirements**
  - **Minimum length:** In the list, click the minimum passcode length. The default is 6.
  - **Biometric recognition:** Select whether to enable biometric recognition. If you enable this option, the Required characters field is hidden. The default is **OFF**.
  - **Required characters:** In the list, click No Restriction, Both numbers and letters, Numbers only, or Letters only to configure how passcodes are composed. The default is No restriction.
  - **Advanced rules:** Select whether to apply advanced passcode rules. This option is available for Android 3.0 and later. The default is **OFF**.

- When you enable **Advanced rules**, from each of the following lists, click the minimum number of each character type that a passcode must contain:
  - **Symbols**: The minimum number of symbols.
  - **Letters**: The minimum number of letters.
  - **Lowercase letters**: The minimum number of lowercase letters.
  - **Uppercase letters**: The minimum number of uppercase letters.
  - **Numbers or symbols**: The minimum number of numbers or symbols.
  - **Numbers**: The minimum number of numbers.
- **Passcode security**
  - **Lock device after (minutes of inactivity)**: In the list, click the length of time a device can be inactive before it is locked. The default is **None**
  - **Passcode expiration in days (1-730)**: Type the number of days after which the passcode expires. Valid values are 1-730. The default is **0**, which means the passcode never expires.
  - **Previous passwords saved (0-50)**: Type the number of used passwords to save. Users are unable to use any password found in this list. Valid values are 0-50. The default is **0**, which means users can reuse passwords.
  - **Maximum failed sign-on attempts**: In the list, click the number of times a user can fail to sign in successfully after which the device is wiped. The default is **Not defined**.
- **Encryption**
  - **Enable encryption**: Select whether to enable encryption. This option is available for Android 3.0 and later. The option is available regardless of the **Passcode required** setting.

**Note:** To encrypt their devices, users must start with a charged battery and keep the device plugged in for the hour or more that encryption takes. If they interrupt the encryption process, they may lose some or all of the data on their devices. After a device is encrypted, the process cannot be reversed except by doing a factory reset, which erases all the data on the device.

- **Samsung SAFE**
  - **Use same passcode across all users**: Select whether to use the same passcode for all users. The default is **OFF**. This setting applies only to Samsung SAFE devices and is available regardless of the **Passcode required** setting.
  - When you enable **Use same passcode across all users**, type the passcode to be used by all users in the **Passcode** field.
  - When you enable **Passcode required**, configure the following Samsung SAFE settings:
    - **Changed characters**: Type the number of characters users must change from their previous passcode. The default is **0**.
    - **Number of times a character can occur**: Type the maximum number of times a character can occur in a passcode. The default is **0**.
    - **Alphabetic sequence length**: Type the maximum length of an alphabetic sequence in a passcode. The default is **0**.
    - **Numeric sequence length**: Type the maximum length of a numeric sequence in a passcode. The default is **0**.
    - **Allow users to make password visible**: Select whether users can make their passcodes visible. The default is **ON**.
    - **Forbidden strings**: You create forbidden strings to prevent users from using insecure strings that are easy to guess like "password", "pwd", "welcome", "123456", "111111", and so on. For each string you want to deny, click **Add** and then do the following:
      - **Forbidden strings**: Type the string users may not use.
      - Click **Save** to add the string or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the string.

**Note:** To delete an existing string, hover over the line containing the listing and click the trash can icon on



the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing string, hover over the line containing the listing and click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

## Configure Samsung KNOX settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface for a Passcode Policy. The left sidebar has a 'Platforms' section with the following items checked: iOS, Mac OS X, Android, Samsung KNOX, Android for Work, Windows Phone, and Windows Desktop/Tablet. The main configuration area is titled 'Passcode Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy creates a passcode policy based on the standards of your organization. You can require a code on the device and can set formatting rules and other passcode rules, such as the grace period before device lock.' The 'Passcode requirements' section has a 'Minimum length' dropdown set to 6 and a toggle for 'Allow users to make password visible' set to OFF. The 'Forbidden Strings' section has an 'Add' button. The 'Passcode security' section has several input fields for 'Minimum number of': 'Changed characters', 'Symbols', 'Number of times a character can occur', 'Alphabetic sequence length', and 'Numeric sequence length', all set to 0. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

### • Passcode requirements

- **Minimum length:** In the list, click the minimum passcode length. The default is **6**.
- **Allow users to make password visible:** Select whether to let users make the password visible.
- **Forbidden strings:** You create forbidden strings to prevent users from using insecure strings that are easy to guess like "password", "pwd", "welcome", "123456", "111111", and so on. For each string you want to deny, click Add and then do the following:
  - **Forbidden strings:** Type the string users may not use.
  - Click **Save** to add the string or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the string.

**Note:** To delete an existing string, hover over the line containing the listing and click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing string, hover over the line containing the listing and click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

- **Minimum number of**
  - **Changed characters:** Type the number of characters users must change from their previous passcode. The default is **0**.
  - **Symbols:** Type the minimum number of required symbols in a passcode. The default is **0**.
- **Maximum number of**
  - **Number of times a character can occur:** Type the maximum number of times a character can occur in a passcode. The default is **0**.
  - **Alphabetic sequence length:** Type the maximum length of an alphabetic sequence in a passcode. The default is **0**.
  - **Numeric sequence length:** Type the maximum length of a numeric sequence in a passcode. The default is **0**.
- **Passcode security**
  - **Lock device after (minutes of inactivity):** In the list, click the number of seconds a device can be inactive before it is locked. The default is **None**.
  - **Passcode expiration in days (1-730):** Type the number of days after which the passcode expires. Valid values are 1-730. The default is **0**, which means the passcode never expires.
  - **Previous passwords saved (0-50):** Type the number of used passwords to save. Users are unable to use any password found in this list. Valid values are 0-50. The default is **0**, which means users can reuse passwords.
  - **If the number of failed sign on attempts is exceeded, the device is locked:** In the list, click the number of times a user can fail to sign on successfully after which the device is locked. The default is **Not defined**.
  - **If the number of failed sign on attempts is exceeded, the device is wiped:** In the list, click the number of times a user can fail to sign on successfully, after which the KNOX container (along with the KNOX data) is wiped from the device. Users need to reinitialize the KNOX container after the wiping occurs. The default is **Not defined**.

## Configure Android for Work settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Passcode Policy' and is divided into two sections: 'Policy Information' and 'Passcode security'.

**Policy Information:** This section contains a description: "This policy creates a passcode policy based on the standards of your organization. You can require a code on the device and can set formatting rules and other passcode rules, such as the grace period before device lock." It includes a 'Passcode Required' toggle switch set to 'ON'.

**Passcode requirements:** This section includes several settings:

- Minimum length:** A dropdown menu set to '6'.
- Biometric recognition:** A toggle switch set to 'OFF'.
- Required characters:** A dropdown menu set to 'No restriction'.
- Advanced rules:** A toggle switch set to 'OFF' with a sub-setting 'A 3.0+'.

**Passcode security:** This section includes several settings:

- Lock device after (minutes of inactivity):** A dropdown menu set to 'None'.
- Passcode expiration in days (1-730):** A text input field set to '0'.
- Previous passwords saved (0-50):** A text input field set to '0' with a help icon.
- Maximum failed sign-on attempts:** A dropdown menu set to 'Not defined' with a help icon.

On the left side of the 'Passcode Policy' section, there is a sidebar with '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', the following options are listed:

- iOS
- Mac OS X
- Android
- Samsung KNOX
- Android for Work
- Windows Phone
- Windows Desktop/Tablet

Configure these settings:

- **Passcode required:** Select this option to require a passcode and to display the configuration options for an Android for Work passcode device policy. The page expands to let you configure settings for passcode requirements and passcode

security.

- **Passcode requirements**
  - **Minimum length:** In the list, click the minimum passcode length. The default is **6**.
  - **Biometric recognition:** Select whether to enable biometric recognition. If you enable this option, the **Required characters** field is hidden. The default is **OFF**. Note that this feature is not currently supported.
  - **Required characters:** In the list, click **No Restriction**, **Both numbers and letters**, **Numbers only**, or **Letters only** to configure how passcodes are composed. The default is **No restriction**.
  - **Advanced rules:** Select whether to apply advanced passcode rules. This option is not available for Android devices earlier than Android 5.0. The default is **OFF**.
  - When you enable **Advanced rules**, from each of the following lists, click the minimum number of each character type that a passcode must contain:
    - **Symbols:** The minimum number of symbols.
    - **Letters:** The minimum number of letters.
    - **Lowercase letters:** The minimum number of lowercase letters.
    - **Uppercase letters:** The minimum number of uppercase letters.
    - **Numbers or symbols:** The minimum number of numbers or symbols.
    - **Numbers:** The minimum number of numbers.
- **Passcode security**
  - **Lock device after (minutes of inactivity):** In the list, click the number of minutes a device can be inactive before it is locked. The default is **None**
  - **Passcode expiration in days (1-730):** Type the number of days after which the passcode expires. Valid values are 1-730. The default is **0**, which means the passcode never expires.
  - **Previous passwords saved (0-50):** Type the number of used passwords to save. Users are unable to use any password found in this list. Valid values are 0-50. The default is **0**, which means users can reuse passwords.
  - **Maximum failed sign-on attempts:** In the list, click the number of times a user can fail to sign on successfully, after which the KNOX container (along with the KNOX data) is wiped from the device. Users need to reinitialize the KNOX container after the wiping occurs. The default is **Not defined**.

Configure Windows Phone settings

Configure these settings:

- **Passcode required:** Select this option to not require a passcode for Windows Phone devices. The default setting is **ON**, which requires a passcode. The page collapses and the following options disappear when you disable this setting.
- **Allow simple passcodes:** Select whether to allow simple passcodes. Simple passcodes are a repeated or sequential set of characters. The default is OFF.
- **Passcode requirements**
  - **Minimum length:** In the list, click the minimum passcode length. The default is **6**.
  - **Characters required:** In the list, click **Numeric or alphanumeric**, **Letters only**, or **Numbers only** to configure how passcodes are composed. The default is **Letters only**.
  - **Minimum number of symbols:** In the list, click the number of symbols the passcode must contain. The default is **1**.
- **Passcode security**
  - **Lock device after (minutes of inactivity):** Type the number of minutes a device can be inactive before it is locked. The default is **0**.
  - **Passcode expiration in 0-730 days:** Type the number of days after which the passcode expires. Valid values are 0-730. The default is **0**, which means the passcode never expires.
  - **Previous passwords saved (0-50):** Type the number of used passwords to save. Users are unable to use any password found in this list. Valid values are 0-50. The default is **0**, which means users can reuse passwords.
  - **Maximum failed sign-on attempts before wipe (0-999):** Type the number of times a user can fail to sign on successfully after which corporate data is wiped from the device. The default is **0**.

Configure Windows Desktop/Tablet settings

Configure these settings:

- **Disallow convenience logon:** Select whether to allow users to access their devices with picture passwords or biometric logons. The default is **OFF**.
- **Minimum passcode length:** In the list, click the minimum passcode length. The default is **6**.
- **Maximum passcode attempts before wipe:** In the list, click the number of times a user can fail to sign in successfully after which corporate data is wiped from the device. The default is **4**.
- **Passcode expiration in days (0-730):** Type the number of days after which the passcode expires. Valid values are 0-730. The default is **0**, which means the passcode never expires.
- **Passcode history: (1-24):** Type the number of used passcodes to save. Users are unable to use any passcode found in this list. Valid values are 1-24. You must enter a number between 1 and 24 in this field. The default is **0**.
- **Maximum inactivity before device lock in minutes (1-999):** Type the length of time in minutes that a device can be inactive before it is locked. Valid values are 1-999. You must enter a number between 1 and 999 in this field. The default is **0**.

#### 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Passcode Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile 'Configure' interface for a 'Passcode Policy'. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The left sidebar shows a navigation menu with three items: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment' (which is highlighted in light blue). The main content area is titled 'Passcode Policy' and contains the following elements:
 

- A description: 'This policy creates a passcode policy based on the standards of your organization. You can require a code on the device and can set formatting rules and other passcode rules, such as the grace period before device lock.'
- A 'Choose delivery groups' section with a search input field containing 'Type to search' and a 'Search' button.
- A list of delivery groups: 'AllUsers' and 'Sales', each with an unchecked checkbox.
- A 'Deployment Schedule' section with a right-pointing arrow and a help icon.
- At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Back' (grey) and 'Save' (green).

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Personal hotspot device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can allow users to connect to the Internet when they are not in range of a WiFi network by using the cellular data connection through their iOS devices' personal hotspot functionality. Available on iOS 7.0 and later.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** page appears.
3. Expand **More**, and then under **Network Access**, click **Personal Hotspot**. The **Personal Hotspot Policy** information page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Personal Hotspot Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
- iOS
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy lets you enable or disable a personal hotspot on a device. This policy is available for iOS 7 and later devices.

Policy Name\*

Description

Next >

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **iOS Platform** information page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Personal Hotspot Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
- iOS
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy lets you enable or disable a personal hotspot on a device. This policy is available for iOS 7 and later devices.

Disable personal hotspot  OFF iOS 7.0+

► Deployment Rules

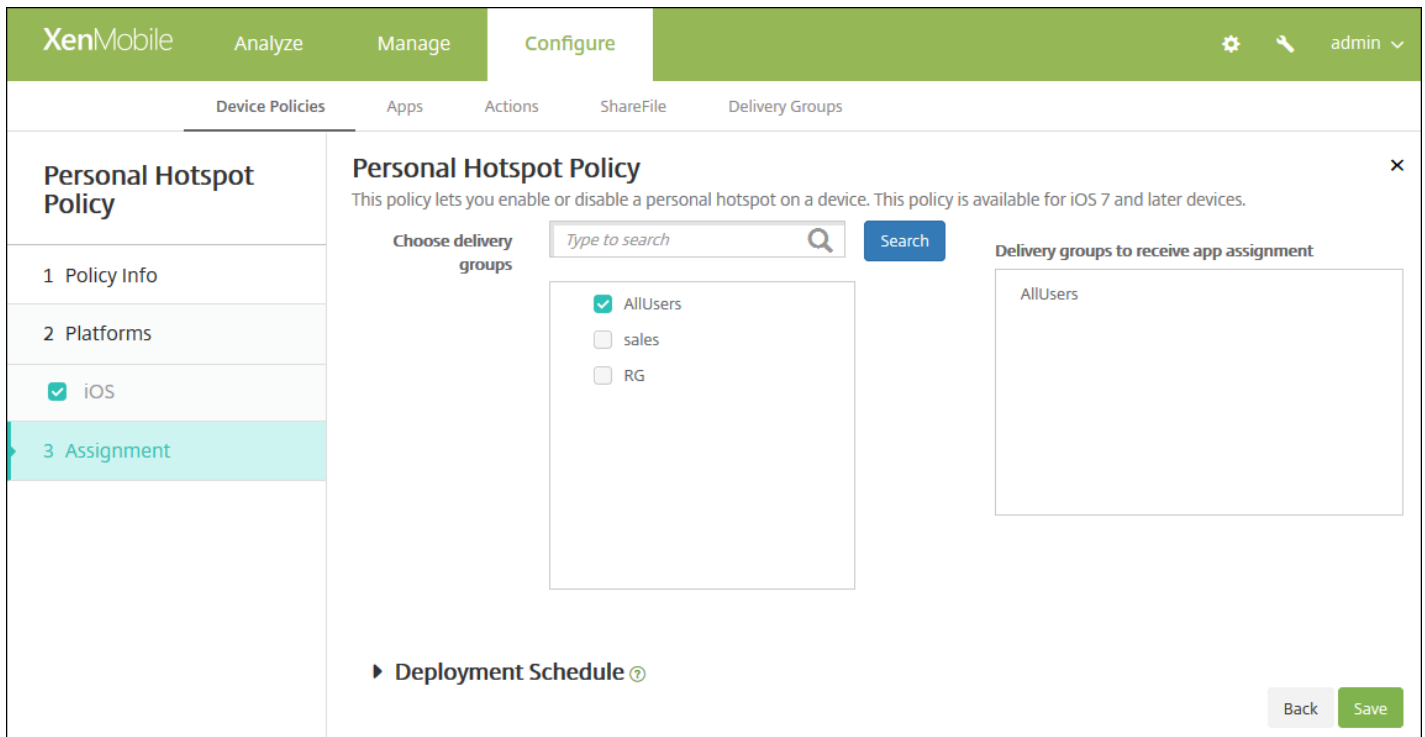
Back Next >

6. Configure this setting:

- **Disable personal hotspot:** Select whether to disable the personal hotspot functionality on users' devices. The default is **OFF**, which switches off the personal hotspot on users devices. This policy does not disable the functionality; users can still use the personal hotspot on their devices, but when the policy is deployed, the personal hotspot is turned off so that it doesn't remain on by default.

### 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Personal Hotspot Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

#### Note:

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.



- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Profile Removal device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can create an app profile removal device policy in XenMobile. The policy, when deployed, removes the app profile from users' iOS or Mac OS X devices.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The Device Policies page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Removal**, click **Profile Removal**. The **Profile Removal Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. Below this, there are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Profile Removal Policy' and 'Policy Information'. A sidebar on the left contains three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', there are two checked checkboxes: 'iOS' and 'Mac OS X'. The 'Policy Information' section contains a 'Policy Name\*' text input field and a 'Description' text area. A 'Next >' button is located in the bottom right corner of the main content area.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS setting

**Profile Removal Policy**

1 Policy Info

2 Platforms

- iOS
- Mac OS X

3 Assignment

**Policy Information**

This policy lets you remove a profile for iOS or Mac OS X from a device.

Profile ID\*

Comment

► Deployment Rules

Back Next >

Configure these settings:

- **Profile ID:** In the list, click the app profile ID. This field is required.
- **Comment:** Type an optional comment.

Configure Mac OS X settings

**Profile Removal Policy**

1 Policy Info

2 Platforms

- iOS
- Mac OS X

3 Assignment

**Policy Information**

This policy lets you remove a profile for iOS or Mac OS X from a device.

Profile ID\*

Deployment scope  OS X 10.7+

Comment

► Deployment Rules

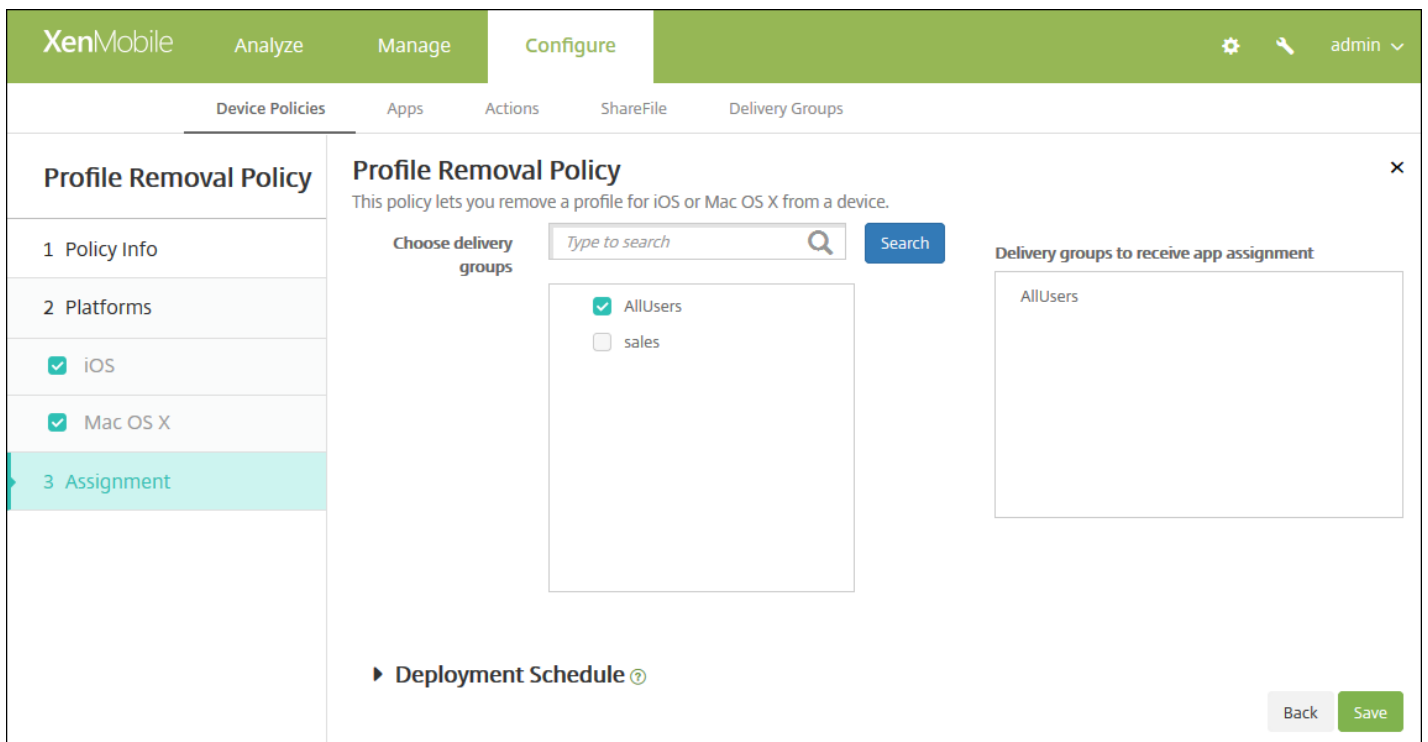
Back Next >

Configure these settings:

- **Profile ID:** In the list, click the app profile ID. This field is required.
- **Deployment scope:** In the list, click either **User** or **System**. The default is **User**. This option is available only on OS X 10.7 and later.
- **Comment:** Type an optional comment.

7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Profile Removal Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app** assignment list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

Note:

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Provisioning profile device policy

Feb 27, 2017

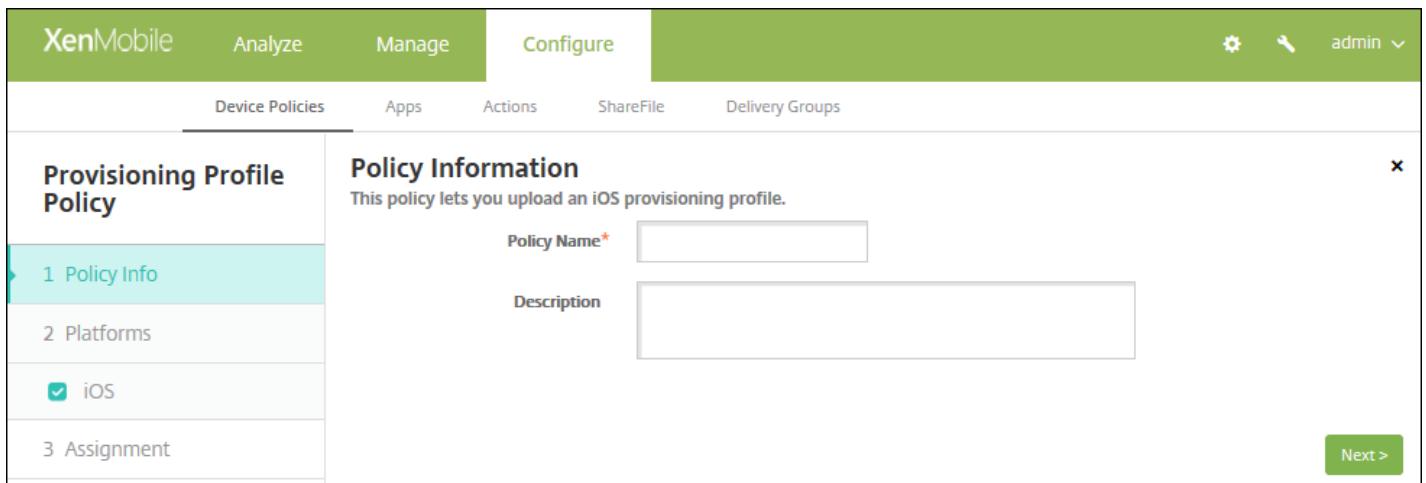
When you develop and code sign an iOS enterprise app, you usually include an enterprise distribution provisioning profile, which Apple requires for the app to run on an iOS device. If a provisioning profile is missing or has expired, the app crashes when a user taps to open it.

The primary problem with provisioning profiles is that they expire one year after they are generated on the Apple Developer Portal and you must keep track of the expiration dates for all your provisioning profiles on all iOS devices enrolled by your users. Tracking the expiration dates not only involves keeping track of the actual expiration dates, but also which users are using which version of the app. Two solutions are to email provisioning profiles to users or to put them on a web portal for download and installation. These solutions work, but they are prone to error because they require users to react to instructions in an email or to go to the web portal and download the correct profile and then install it.

To make this process transparent to users, in XenMobile you can install and remove provisioning profiles with device policies. Missing or expired profiles are removed as necessary and the up-to-date profiles are installed on users' devices, so that tapping an app simply opens it for use.

Before you can create a provisioning profile policy, you must create a provisioning profile file. For more information, see [Creating Provisioning Profiles](#) on the Apple Developer site.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** page appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Apps**, click **Provisioning Profile**. The **Provisioning Profile Policy** information page appears.

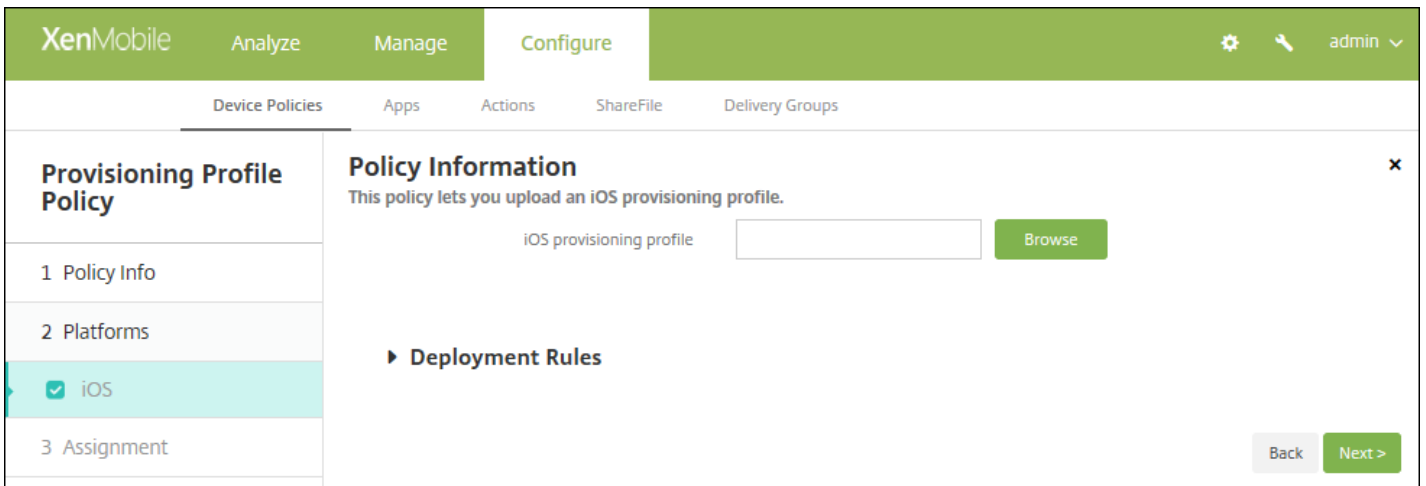


The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' section is active, showing a breadcrumb trail: 'Device Policies > Apps > Actions > ShareFile > Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Provisioning Profile Policy' and contains a 'Policy Information' pane. This pane includes a sub-header 'Policy Information' and a description: 'This policy lets you upload an iOS provisioning profile.' Below this, there are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. The 'Policy Name\*' field is currently empty. The 'Description' field is also empty. On the left side of the main content area, there is a sidebar with three items: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '1 Policy Info' item is selected and highlighted in light blue. Below the sidebar, there is a checkbox labeled 'iOS' which is checked. At the bottom right of the main content area, there is a green button labeled 'Next >'. The top right corner of the console shows a settings icon, a search icon, and the user name 'admin' with a dropdown arrow.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **iOS Platform** information page appears.

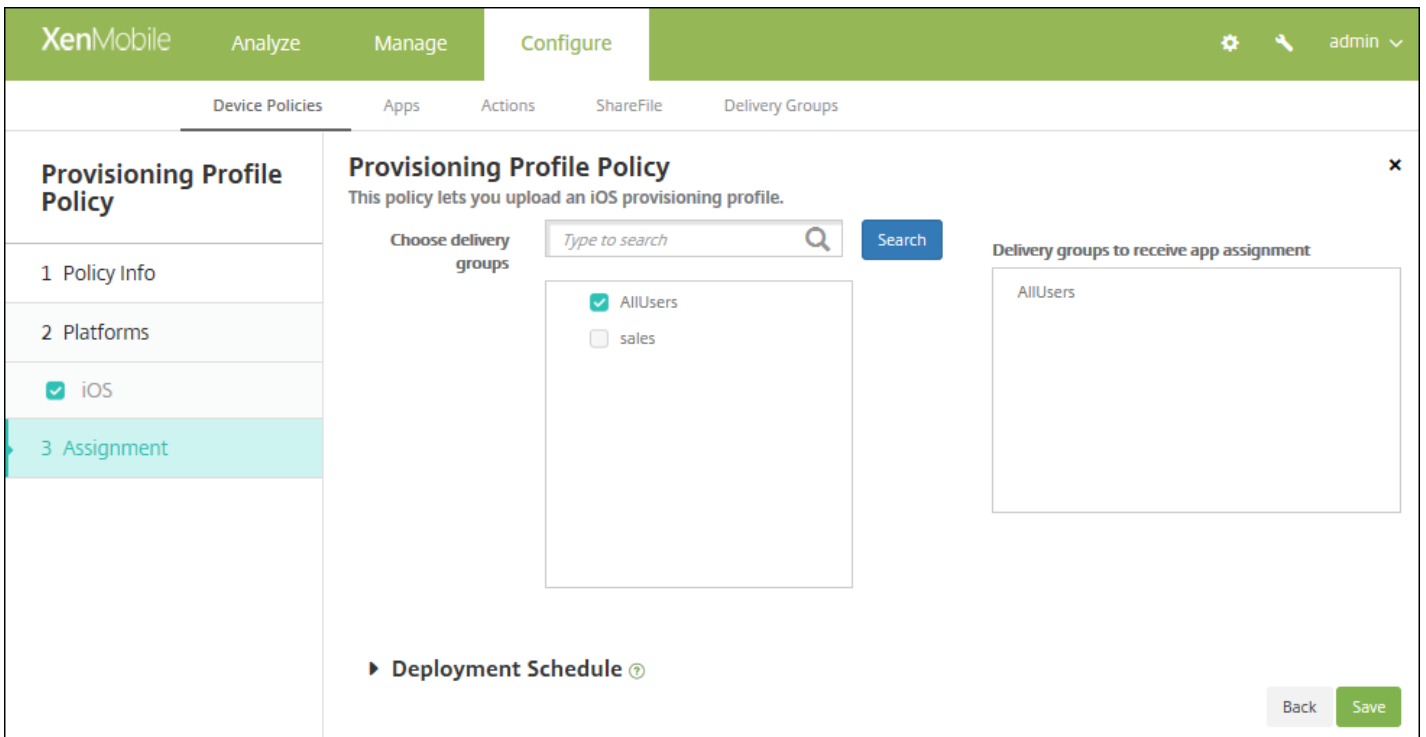


6. Configure this setting:

- **iOS provisioning profile:** Select the provisioning profile file to import by clicking **Browse** and then navigating to the file's location.

7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Provisioning Profile Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings >Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Provisioning profile removal device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can remove iOS provisioning profiles with device policies. For more information on provisioning profiles, see [adding a provisioning profile](#).

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** page appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Removal**, click **Provisioning Profile removal**. The **Provisioning Profile Removal Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Provisioning Profile Removal Policy' and contains a 'Policy Information' section. This section has a description: 'This policy lets remove a provisioning profile from an iOS device.' There are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the form.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **iOS Platform** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Provisioning Profile Removal Policy' and contains a description: 'This policy lets remove a provisioning profile from an iOS device.' There are two input fields: 'iOS provisioning profile\*' (a dropdown menu) and 'Comment'. A 'Deployment Rules' section is visible below. 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons are located at the bottom right of the form.

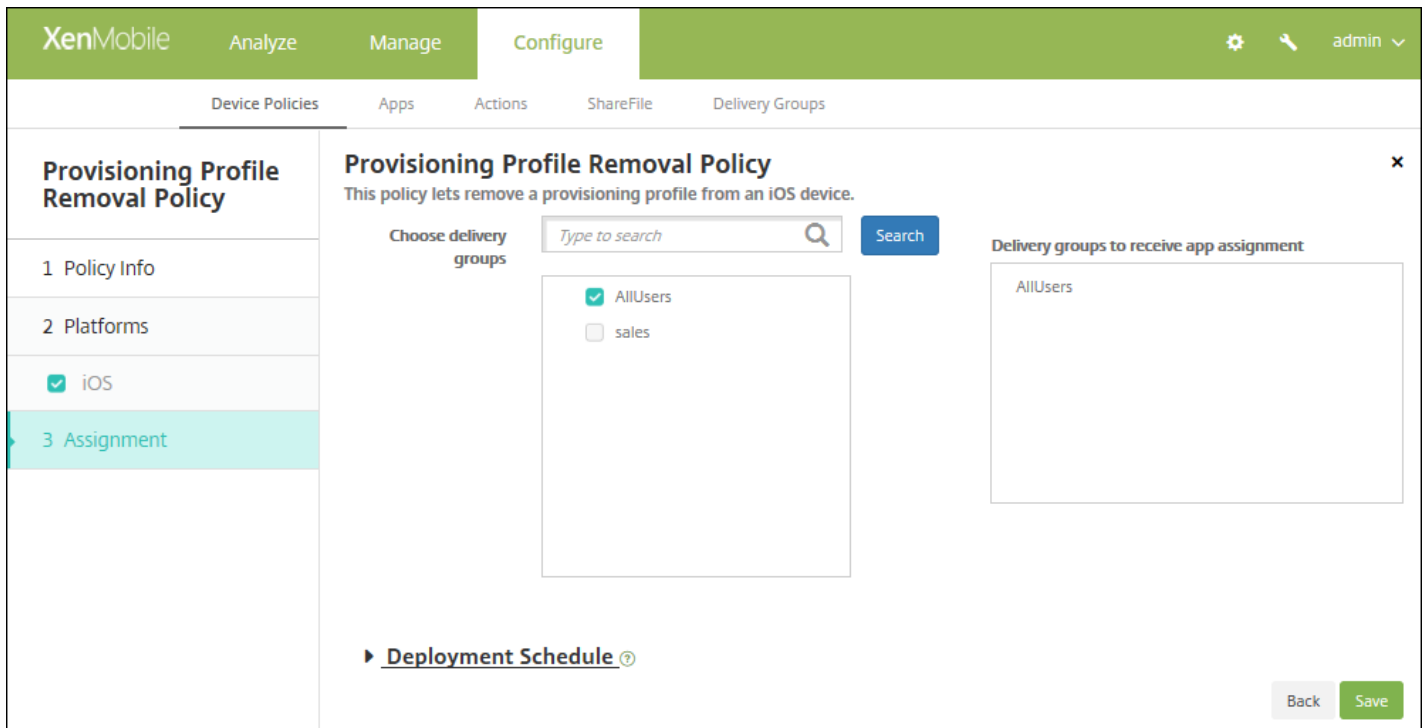


6. Configure these settings:

- **iOS provisioning profile:** In the list, click the provisioning profile you want to remove.
- **Comment:** Optionally, add a comment.

7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Provisioning Profile Removal Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Proxy device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can add a device policy in XenMobile to specify global HTTP proxy settings for devices running Windows Mobile/CE and iOS 6.0 or later. You can deploy only one global HTTP proxy policy per device.

**Note:** Before deploying this policy, be sure to set all iOS devices for which you want to set a global HTTP proxy into Supervised mode. For details, see [To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator](#).

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **More** and then, under **Network access**, click **Proxy**. The **Proxy Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. Below that, there are sub-tabs: 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' tab is active, showing a 'Proxy Policy' configuration page. On the left, there's a sidebar with three sections: '1 Policy Info' (selected), '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', 'iOS' and 'Windows Mobile/CE' are both checked. The main area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a description: 'This policy lets you configure a single, or global, HTTP proxy to be used by all apps that send traffic through HTTP. For iOS, the policy is available for iOS 6. You must also set the iOS device into supervised mode.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' (a text box) and 'Description' (a larger text area). At the bottom right, there is a green 'Next >' button.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Enter a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, enter a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS settings

**Proxy Policy**

1 Policy Info

2 Platforms

iOS

Windows Mobile/CE

3 Assignment

**Policy Information**

This policy lets you configure a single, or global, HTTP proxy to be used by all apps that send traffic through HTTP. For iOS, the policy is available for iOS 6. You must also set the iOS device into supervised mode.

Proxy configuration: Manual

Host name or IP address for the proxy server \*

Port for the proxy server \*

User name

Password

Allow bypassing proxy to access captive networks: OFF

Policy Settings

Remove policy:  Select date,  Duration until removal (in days)

Allow user to remove policy: Always

Deployment Rules

Back Next >

Configure these settings:

- **Proxy configuration:** Click **Manual** or **Automatic** for how the proxy will be configured on users' devices.
  - If you click **Manual**, configure these settings:
    - **Hostname or IP address for the proxy server:** Type the host name or IP address of the proxy server. This field is required.
    - **Port for the proxy server:** Type the proxy server port number. This field is required.
    - **User name:** Type an optional user name to authenticate to the proxy server.
    - **Password:** Type an optional password to authenticate to the proxy server.
  - If you click **Automatic**, configure these settings:
    - **Proxy PAC URL:** Type URL of the PAC file that defines the proxy configuration.
    - **Allow direct connection if PAC is unreachable:** Select whether to allow users to connect directly to the destination if the PAC file is unreachable. The default is **ON**. This option is available only on iOS 7.0 and later.
- **Allow bypassing proxy to access captive networks:** Select whether to allow bypassing the proxy to access captive networks. The default is **OFF**.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy list**, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

## Configure Windows Mobile/CE settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Proxy Policy' section is active, showing a sidebar with '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', 'iOS' and 'Windows Mobile/CE' are checked. The 'Policy Information' section contains the following fields:

- Network:** Built-in office (dropdown)
- Network:** HTTP (dropdown)
- Host name or IP address for the proxy server:** (text input)
- Port for the proxy server:** 80 (text input)
- User name:** (text input)
- Password:** (text input)
- Domain name:** (text input)
- Enable:** ON (toggle switch)

At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **Network:** In the list, click the network type to use. The default is **Built-in office**. Possible options are:
  - User-defined office
  - User-defined Internet
  - Built-in office
  - Built-in Internet
- **Network:** In the list, click the network connection protocol to use. The default is **HTTP**. Possible options are:
  - HTTP
  - WAP
  - Socks 4
  - Socks 5
- **Hostname or IP address for the proxy server:** Type the host name or IP address of the proxy server. This field is required.
- **Port for the proxy server:** Type the proxy server port number. This field is required. The default is **80**.
- **User name:** Type an optional user name to authenticate to the proxy server.
- **Password:** Type an optional password to authenticate to the proxy server.
- **Domain name:** Type an optional domain name.
- **Enable:** Select whether to enable the proxy. The default is **ON**.

8. Click **Next**. The **Proxy Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for a Proxy Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Proxy Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you configure a single, or global, HTTP proxy to be used by all apps that send traffic through HTTP. For iOS, the policy is available for iOS 6. You must also set the iOS device into supervised mode.' There is a search bar for 'Choose delivery groups' with a 'Search' button. Below the search bar, there are two checkboxes: 'AllUsers' (checked) and 'sales' (unchecked). To the right, there is a box titled 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' containing 'AllUsers'. At the bottom, there is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a right-pointing arrow and a help icon. The bottom navigation bar has 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Registry device policy

Feb 27, 2017

The Windows Mobile/CE registry stores data about apps, drivers, user preferences, and configuration settings. In XenMobile, you can define the registry keys and values that let you administer Windows Mobile/CE devices.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Custom**, click **Registry**. The **Registry Policy** information page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Registry Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
- Windows Mobile/CE
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy allows you to specify which registry keys and values need to be defined on the device. An empty value means that the entry is a registry key.

Policy Name\*

Description

Next >

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Windows Mobile/CE Platform** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Registry Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
- Windows Mobile/CE
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy allows you to specify which registry keys and values need to be defined on the device. An empty value means that the entry is a registry key.

Registry key path*	Registry value name	Type	Value	Add
--------------------	---------------------	------	-------	-----

Deployment Rules

Back Next >

6. Configure these settings:

- For each registry key or registry key/value pair you want to add, click **Add** and do the following:
- **Registry key path:** Type the full path for the registry key. For example, type `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows` to specify the route to the Windows key from the HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE root key.
- **Registry value name:** Type the name for the registry key value. For example, type `ProgramFilesDir` to add that value name to the registry key path `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion`. If you leave this field blank, it means that you are adding a registry key and not a registry key/value pair.
- **Type:** In the list, click the data type for the value. The default is **DWORD**. Possible options are:
  - **DWORD:** A 32-bit unsigned integer.
  - **String:** Any string.
  - **Extended string:** A string value that can contain environment variables like `%TEMP%` or `%USERPROFILE%`.
  - **Binary:** Any arbitrary binary data.
- **Value:** Type the value associated with Registry value name. For example, to specify the value of `ProgramFilesDir`, type `C:\Program Files`.
- Click **Save** to save the registry key information or click **Cancel** to not save the registry key information.

**Note:** To delete an existing registry key, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing registry key, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Registry Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile 'Configure' page for a 'Registry Policy'. The page is divided into several sections:

- Navigation:** Top bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. A user profile 'admin' is visible in the top right.
- Policy Overview:** A sidebar on the left shows 'Registry Policy' with three steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment' (which is currently selected and highlighted in light blue).
- Policy Description:** The main content area has a title 'Registry Policy' and a sub-header 'This policy allows you to specify which registry keys and values need to be defined on the device. An empty value means that the entry is a registry key.'
- Configuration Options:**
  - Choose delivery groups:** A search box with the placeholder 'Type to search' and a 'Search' button. Below it is a list of delivery groups: 'AllUsers' (checked), 'sales', '#RGTE', and 'test'.
  - Delivery groups to receive app assignment:** A box containing the 'AllUsers' group.
- Footer:** A 'Deployment Schedule' link and 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Remote support device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You create a remote support policy in XenMobile to give you remote access to users' Samsung KNOX devices. You can configure two types of support:

- **Basic**, which lets you view diagnostic information about the device, such as system information, processes that are running, task manager (memory and CPU usage), installed software folder contents, and so on.
- **Premium**, which lets you remotely control the device's screen, including control over colors (in either the main window, or in a separate, floating window), the ability to establish a Voice-over-IP session (VoIP) between the help desk and the user, to configure settings, and to establish a chat session between the help desk and the user.

Note: To implement this policy, you must do the following:

- Install the XenMobile Remote Support app in your environment.
- Configure a remote support app tunnel. For details, see [App tunneling device policies](#).
- Configure a Samsung KNOX remote support device policy as described in this topic.
- Deploy both the app tunnel remote support policy and the Samsung KNOX remote support policy to users' devices.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.

2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.

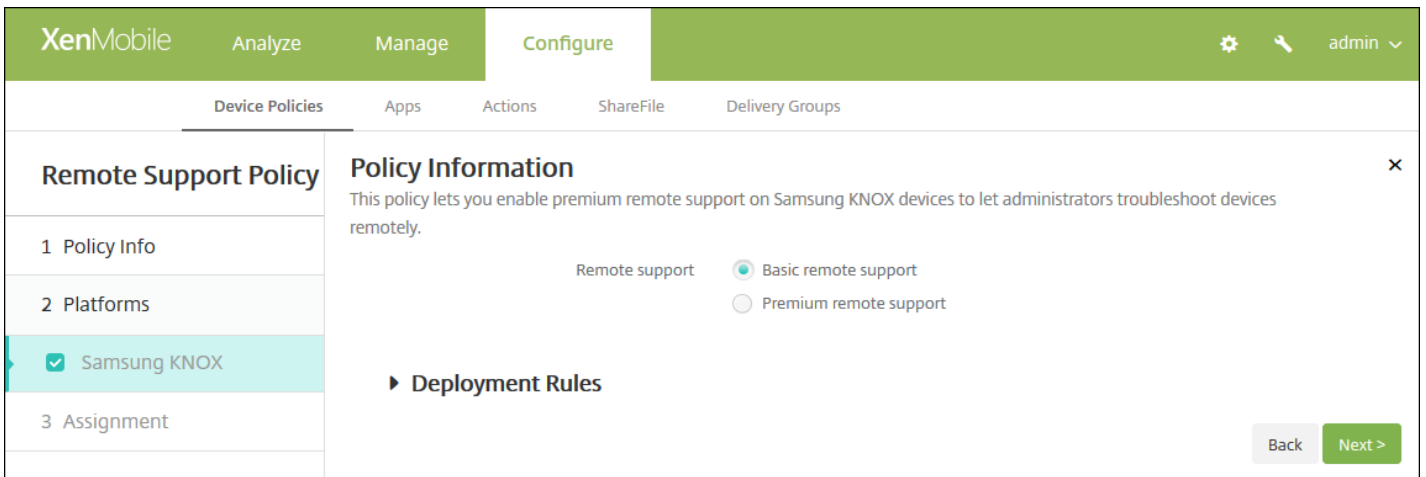
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Network access**, click **Remote Support**. The **Remote Support Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface for configuring a Remote Support Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', 'Configure', and 'admin'. Below the navigation bar, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Remote Support Policy' and contains a 'Policy Information' section. The 'Policy Information' section has a description: 'This policy lets you enable premium remote support on Samsung KNOX devices to let administrators troubleshoot devices remotely.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. The 'Policy Name\*' field is empty, and the 'Description' field is a large text area. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the form. The left sidebar shows a navigation menu with '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', '3 Assignment', and 'Samsung KNOX' (checked).

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

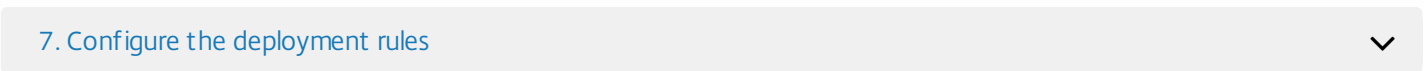
- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Samsung KNOX** platform information page appears.

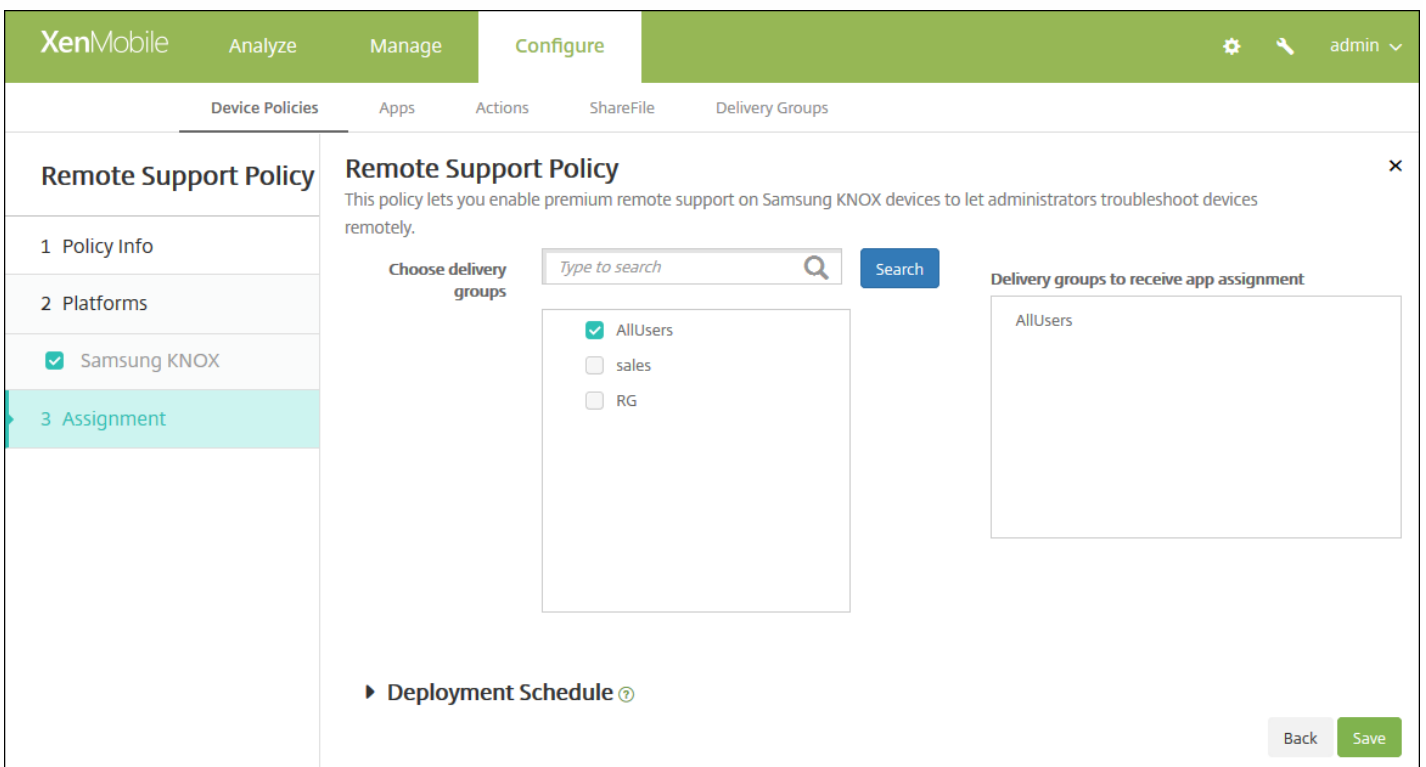


6. Configure this setting:

- **Remote support:** Select **Basic remote support** or **Premium remote support**. The default is **Basic remote support**.



8. Click **Next**. The **Remote Support Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you

choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.

- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Restrictions device policy

Feb 27, 2017

The Restrictions device policy allows or restricts certain features or functionality on user devices, such as the camera. You can also set security restrictions, as well as restrictions on media content and restrictions on the types of apps users can and cannot install. Most of the restriction settings default to **ON**, or *allows*. The main exceptions are the iOS Security - Force feature and all Windows Tablet features, which default to **OFF**, or *restricts*.

**Tip:** Any option for which you select **ON** means that the user can perform the operation or use the feature. For example:

- **Camera.** If **ON**, the user can use the camera on their device. If **OFF**, the user cannot use the camera on their device.
- **Screen shots.** If **ON**, the user can take screen shots on their device. If **OFF**, the user cannot take screen shots on their device.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.

2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** page appears.

3. Click **Restrictions**. The restrictions **Policy information** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### Restrictions Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
  - Samsung SAFE
  - Samsung KNOX
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Desktop/Tablet
  - Amazon
  - Windows Mobile/CE
- 3 Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy allows or restricts users from using certain features on their devices, such as the camera. You can also set security restrictions, as well as restrictions on media content and on certain types of apps users can and cannot install.

Policy Name\*

Description

Next >

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

4. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

5. Under **Platforms**, select the platform or platforms you want to add. You can then change the policy information for each platform you selected. Click to restrict any of the features in the following sections, which changes the setting to **OFF**. Unless otherwise noted, the default setting is to enable the feature.

**If you selected:**

- [iOS, configure these settings](#)
- [Mac OS X, configure these settings](#)
- [Samsung SAFE, configure these settings](#)
- [Samsung KNOX, configure these settings](#)
- [Windows Phone, configure these settings](#)
- [Windows Tablet, configure these settings](#)
- [Amazon, configure these settings](#)
- [Windows Mobile/CE, configure these settings](#)

When you finish setting the restrictions for a platform, refer to Step 7 later in this article for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

If you selected iOS, configure these settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Restrictions Policy' and is divided into three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '2 Platforms' section is expanded, showing a list of platforms with checkboxes: iOS (checked), Mac OS X (checked), Samsung SAFE (checked), Samsung KNOX (checked), Windows Phone (checked), Windows Tablet (checked), Amazon (checked), and Windows Mobile/CE (checked). The 'Policy Information' section is open, displaying a description: 'This policy allows or restricts users from using certain features on their devices, such as the camera. You can also set security restrictions, as well as restrictions on media content and on certain types of apps users can and cannot install.' Below this, there are several sections of settings, each with a title and a list of features with toggle switches or checkboxes. The 'Allow hardware controls' section includes Camera (ON), FaceTime (checked), Screen shots (ON), Photo streams (ON, iOS 5.0+), Shared photo streams (ON, iOS 6.0+), Voice dialing (ON), and Siri (ON). The 'Installing apps' section includes 'Allow while device is locked' (checked) and 'Siri profanity filter' (unchecked). At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

[iOS settings](#)

[Configure Mac OS X settings](#)

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Restrictions Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
  - Samsung SAFE
  - Samsung KNOX
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Tablet
  - Amazon
  - Windows Mobile/CE
- 3 Assignment

### Policy Information

This policy allows or restricts users from using certain features on their devices, such as the camera. You can also set security restrictions, as well as restrictions on media content and on certain types of apps users can and cannot install.

**Preferences**

- Restrict items in System Preferences  OFF

**Apps**

- Allow use of Game Center  ON OS X 10.11+
- Allow adding Game Center friends  ON
- Allow multiplayer gaming  ON
- Allow Game Center account modification  ON
- Allow App Store adoption  ON
- Allow Safari AutoFill  ON
- Require admin password to install or update apps  OFF

Back Next >

[Mac OS X settings](#) ▾

Configure Samsung SAFE settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### Restrictions Policy

This policy allows or restricts users from using certain features on their devices, such as the camera. You can also set security restrictions, as well as restrictions on media content and on certain types of apps users can and cannot install.

**Allow hardware controls**

- Enable ODE Trusted Boot Verification
- Allow Development Mode
- Allow Emergency Calls Only
- Allow Firmware Recovery
- Allow Fast Encryption
- Common Criteria Mode
- Factory reset
- Date Time Change
- DOD boot banner
- Settings changes
- Backup
- Over The Air Upgrade  ⓘ
- Background data
- Camera

Back Next >

Samsung SAFE settings

Configure Samsung KNOX settings



### Restrictions Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
  - Samsung SAFE
  - Samsung KNOX**
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Desktop/Tablet
  - Amazon
  - Windows Mobile/CE
- 3 Assignment

### Restrictions Policy

This policy allows or restricts users from using certain features on their devices, such as the camera. You can also set security restrictions, as well as restrictions on media content and on certain types of apps users can and cannot install.

- Allow use of camera
- Enable Revocation Check
- Move Apps To Container
- Enforce Multifactor Authentication
- Enable TIMA Key store
- Enforce Auth For Container
- Share List
- Enable Audit Log
- Use Secure Keypad
- Enable Google Apps
- Authentication Smart Card Browser

► Deployment Rules

Back Next >

[Samsung KNOX settings](#) ▼

Configure Windows Phone settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Restrictions Policy

- Policy Info
- Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
  - Samsung SAFE
  - Samsung KNOX
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Tablet
  - Amazon
  - Windows Mobile/CE
- Assignment

### Policy Information ✕

This policy allows or restricts users from using certain features on their devices, such as the camera. You can also set security restrictions, as well as restrictions on media content and on certain types of apps users can and cannot install.

**WiFi Settings**

- Allow WiFi
- Allow Internet sharing
- Allow auto-connect to WiFi Sense hotspots
- Allow hotspot reporting
- Allow manual configuration

**Connectivity**

- Allow NFC
- Allow bluetooth
- Allow VPN over cellular
- Allow VPN over cellular while roaming

Back Next >

Windows Phone settings
▾

Configure Windows Desktop/Tablet settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Restrictions Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
  - Samsung SAFE
  - Samsung KNOX
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Tablet
  - Amazon
  - Windows Mobile/CE
- 3 Assignment

### Policy Information ✕

This policy allows or restricts users from using certain features on their devices, such as the camera. You can also set security restrictions, as well as restrictions on media content and on certain types of apps users can and cannot install.

**Network**

Roaming data  OFF

**Security**

User account control

Enable Windows error reporting  OFF

Enable smart screen  OFF

**Other**

Enterprise client sync product's URL enable  OFF

Enterprise client sync product's URL

**▶ Deployment Rules**

Windows Desktop/Tablet settings ▾

Configure Amazon settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Restrictions Policy

- Policy Info
- Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
  - Samsung SAFE
  - Samsung KNOX
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Tablet
  - Amazon
  - Windows Mobile/CE
- Assignment

### Policy Information ✕

This policy allows or restricts users from using certain features on their devices, such as the camera. You can also set security restrictions, as well as restrictions on media content and on certain types of apps users can and cannot install.

**Allow hardware controls**

- Factory reset
- Profiles

**Allow apps**

- Non-Amazon Appstore apps
- Social networks

**Network**

- Bluetooth
- WiFi switch
- WiFi settings
- Cellular data

Back Next >

Amazon settings ▾

Configure Windows Mobile/CE settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### Restrictions Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
  - Samsung SAFE
  - Samsung KNOX
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Tablet
  - Amazon
  - Windows Mobile/CE
- 3 Assignment

### Policy Information

This policy allows or restricts users from using certain features on their devices, such as the camera. You can also set security restrictions, as well as restrictions on media content and on certain types of apps users can and cannot install.

- Bluetooth/infrared beaming (Obex)
- Camera
- WiFi switch
- Bluetooth

### Deployment Rules

Back **Next >**

- Windows Mobile/CE settings ▾
- 7. Configure the deployment rules ▾

8. Click **Next** and the **Restrictions Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configuration console. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Restrictions Policy' and includes a sidebar with sections: 1 Policy Info, 2 Platforms, and 3 Assignment. The Platforms section is expanded, showing a list of operating systems with checkboxes: iOS, Mac OS X, Samsung SAFE, Samsung KNOX, Windows Phone, Windows Tablet, Amazon, and Windows Mobile/CE. The main content area shows a search bar for delivery groups, a list of delivery groups (AllUsers and Device Enrollment Program Package), and a section for Deployment Schedule. The Assignment section is highlighted in the sidebar. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

10. Click **Save** to save the policy.

# Roaming device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can add a device policy in XenMobile to configure whether to allow voice and data roaming on users' iOS and Windows Mobile/CE devices. When voice roaming is disabled, data roaming is automatically disabled. For iOS, this policy is available only on iOS 5.0 and later devices.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **More** and then, under **Network access**, click **Roaming**. The **Roaming Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. Below that, there's a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Roaming Policy' and has a sidebar on the left with three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The 'Policy Information' pane is open, showing a 'Policy Name\*' field and a 'Description' text area. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the pane.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

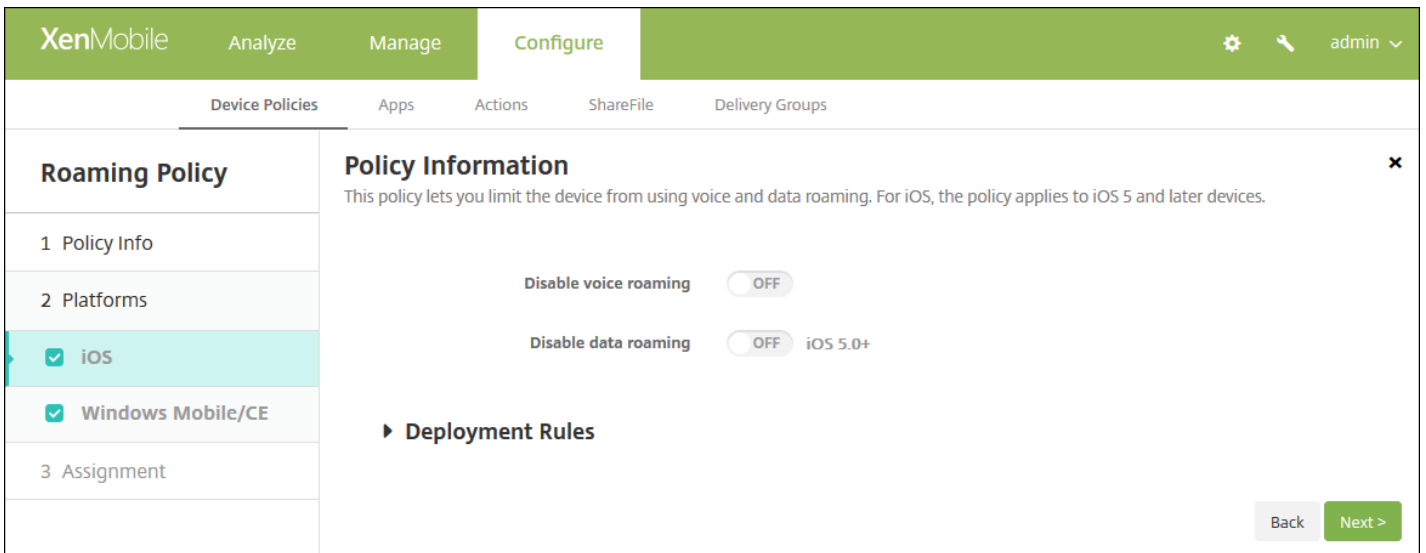
- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

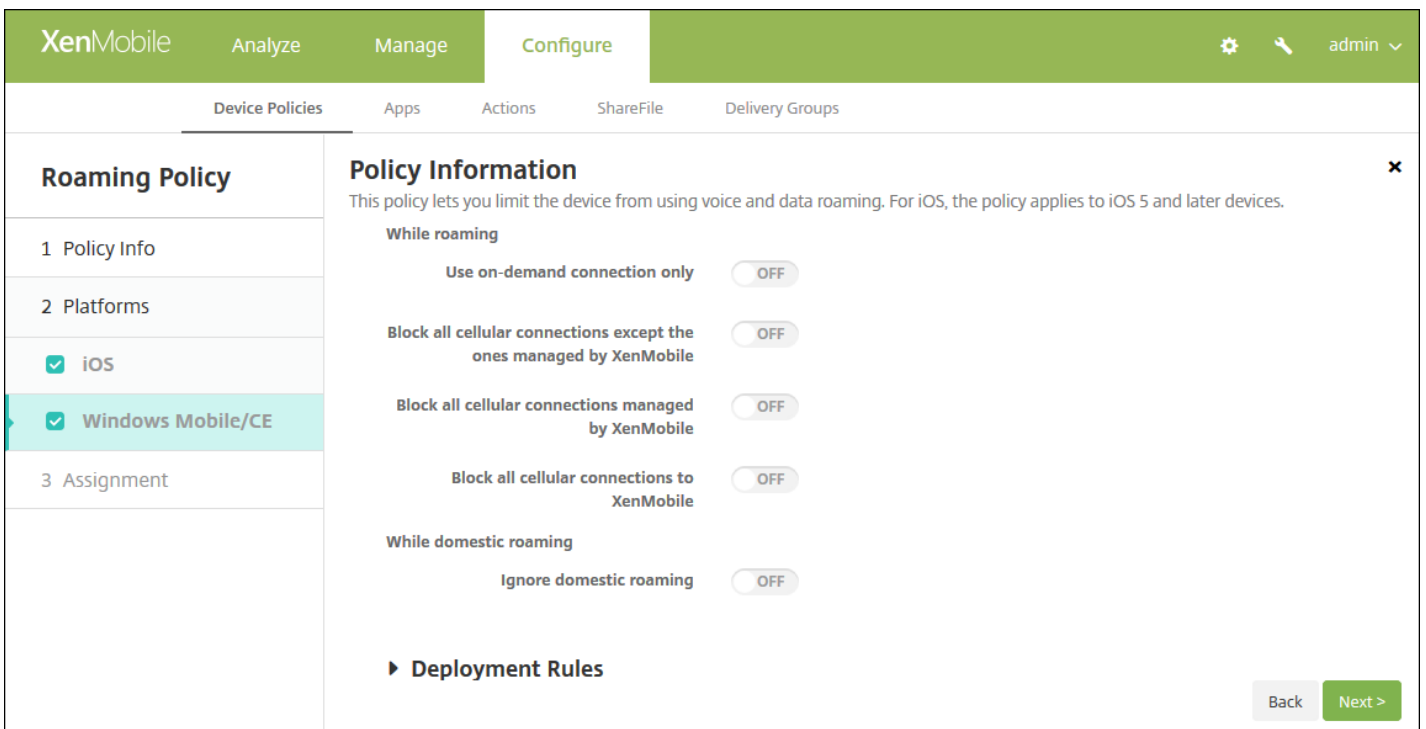
Configure iOS settings



Configure these settings:

- **Disable voice roaming:** Select whether to disable voice roaming. When this option is enabled, data roaming is automatically disabled. The default is **OFF**, which allows voice roaming.
- **Disable data roaming:** Select whether to disable data roaming. This option is available only when voice roaming is enabled. The default is **OFF**, which allows data roaming.

Configure Windows Mobile/CE settings



Configure these settings:

- **While roaming**



- **Use on-demand connection only:** The device only connects to XenMobile if users manually trigger the connection on their devices, or if a mobile application requests a forced connection (such as a push mail request if the Exchange Server has been set accordingly). Note that this option temporarily disables the default device connection schedule policy.
- **Block all cellular connections except the ones managed by XenMobile:** Except for the data traffic officially declared in a XenMobile application tunnel or other XenMobile device management task, no other data is sent or received by the device. For example, this option disables all connections to the Internet through the device's web browser.
- **Block all cellular connections managed by XenMobile:** All application data transiting through a XenMobile tunnel is blocked (including XenMobile Remote Support). The data traffic related to pure device management, however, is not blocked.
- **Block all cellular connections to XenMobile:** In this case, until the device is either reconnected through USB, WiFi, or its default mobile operator cellular network, there is no traffic transiting between the device and XenMobile.
- **While domestic roaming**
  - **Ignore domestic roaming:** No data is blocked while users roam domestically.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Roaming Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface for the 'Roaming Policy' assignment. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Roaming Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you limit the device from using voice and data roaming. For iOS, the policy applies to iOS 5 and later devices.' There are two main sections for selecting delivery groups: 'Choose delivery groups' and 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment'. The 'Choose delivery groups' section has a search box and a list with 'AllUsers' (checked) and 'sales' (unchecked). The 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' section shows 'AllUsers' in a list. At the bottom, there is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a right-pointing arrow and a help icon. A 'Back' button and a green 'Save' button are located at the bottom right.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.

- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Samsung MDM license key device policy

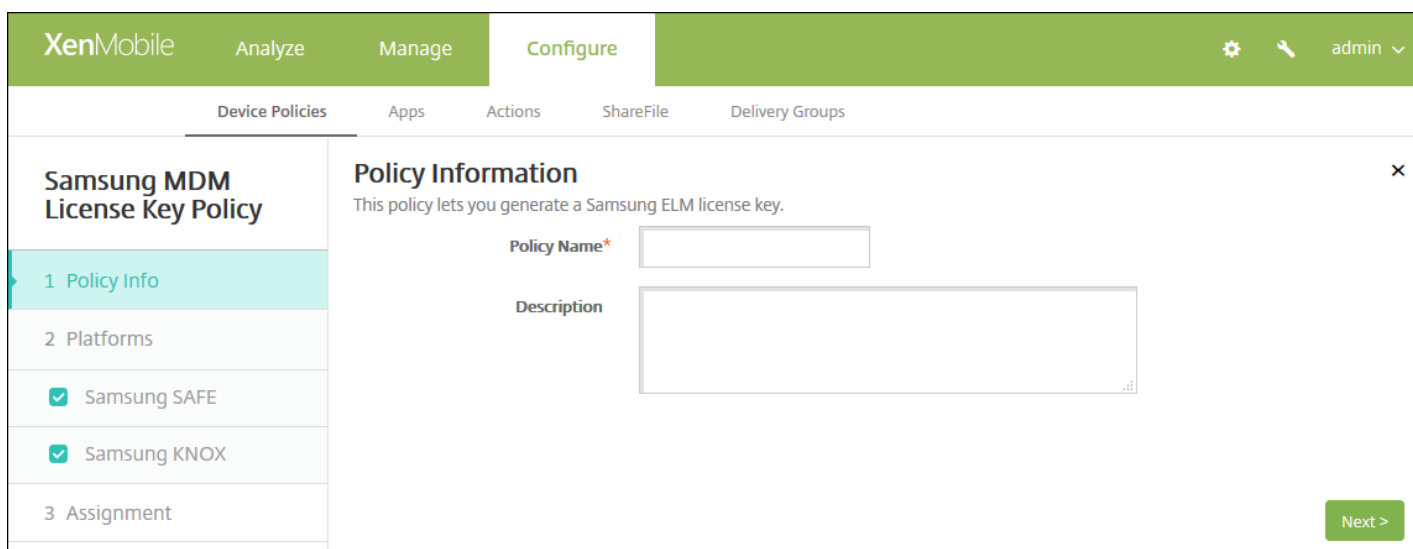
Feb 27, 2017

XenMobile supports and extends both Samsung for Enterprise (SAFE) and Samsung KNOX policies. SAFE is a family of solutions that provides security and feature enhancements for business use through integration with mobile device management solutions. Samsung KNOX is a solution within the SAFE program that provides a more secure Android platform for enterprise use.

You must enable the SAFE APIs by deploying the built-in Samsung Enterprise License Management (ELM) key to a device before you can deploy SAFE policies and restrictions. To enable the Samsung KNOX API, you also need to purchase a Samsung KNOX Workspace license using the Samsung KNOX License Management System (KLMS), in addition to deploying the Samsung ELM key. The Samsung KLMS provisions valid licenses to mobile device management solutions to enable them to activate Samsung KNOX APIs on mobile devices. These licenses must be obtained from Samsung and are not provided by Citrix.

You must deploy Secure Hub along with the Samsung ELM key to enable the SAFE and Samsung KNOX APIs. You can verify that the SAFE APIs are enabled by checking the device properties. When the Samsung ELM key is deployed, the **Samsung MDM API available** setting is set to **True**.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog appears.
3. Click **More** and then, under **Security**, click **Samsung MDM License Key**. The **Samsung MDM License Key Policy** information page appears.



The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' section is active, showing a breadcrumb trail: 'Device Policies > Apps > Actions > ShareFile > Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Samsung MDM License Key Policy' and contains a 'Policy Information' pane. This pane includes a sub-header 'Policy Information' and a description: 'This policy lets you generate a Samsung ELM license key.' Below this, there are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' (a text box) and 'Description' (a larger text area). A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the 'Policy Information' pane. On the left side of the main content area, there is a sidebar with a list of steps: '1 Policy Info' (highlighted), '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Below the '2 Platforms' step, there are two checked checkboxes: 'Samsung SAFE' and 'Samsung KNOX'.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others. When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

### Configure Samsung SAFE settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface in the 'Configure' tab. The left sidebar shows the 'Samsung MDM License Key Policy' with a progress indicator for '2 Platforms'. Under '2 Platforms', 'Samsung SAFE' and 'Samsung KNOX' are both checked. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the text 'This policy lets you generate a Samsung ELM license key.' Below this is a form field labeled 'ELM license key\*' with the value '\${elm.license.key}'. A 'Deployment Rules' section is visible below the form. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure this setting:

- **ELM License key:** This field should already contain the macro that generates the ELM license key. If the field is blank, type the macro `${elm.license.key}`.

### Configure Samsung KNOX settings

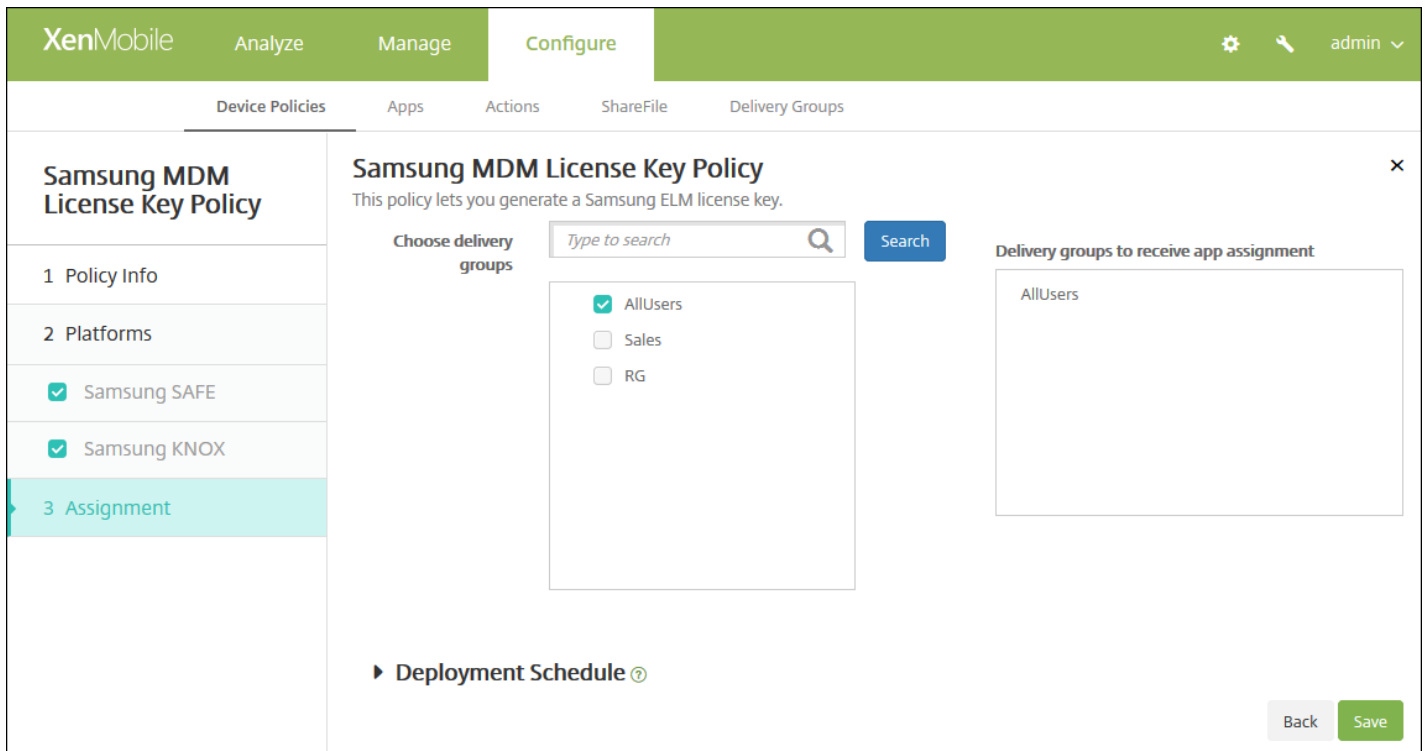
The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface in the 'Configure' tab. The left sidebar shows the 'Samsung MDM License Key Policy' with a progress indicator for '2 Platforms'. Under '2 Platforms', 'Samsung SAFE' and 'Samsung KNOX' are both checked. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the text 'This policy lets you generate a Samsung ELM license key.' Below this is a form field labeled 'KNOX license key\*' which is currently empty. A help icon (?) is visible to the right of the field. A 'Deployment Rules' section is visible below the form. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure this setting:

- **KNOX License key:** Type the KNOX license key that you obtained from Samsung.

### 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Samsung MDM License Key Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

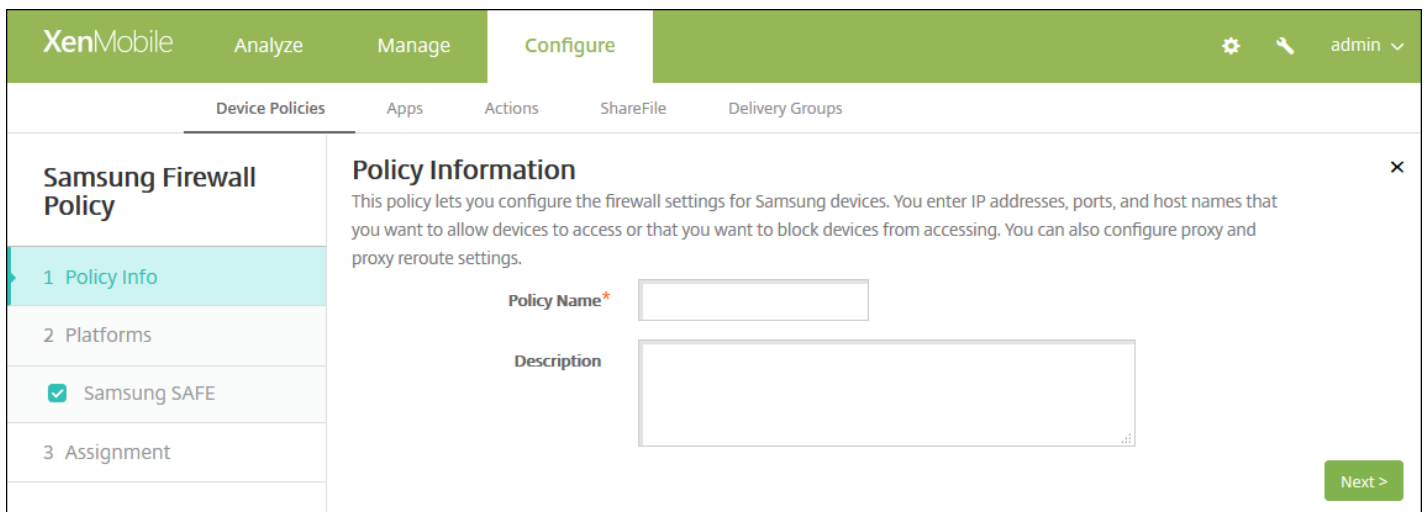
11. Click **Save**.

# Samsung SAFE firewall device policy

Feb 27, 2017

This policy lets you configure the firewall settings for Samsung devices. You enter IP addresses, ports, and host names that you want to allow devices to access or that you want to block devices from accessing. You can also configure proxy and proxy reroute settings.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Network access**, click **Samsung Firewall**. The **Samsung Firewall Policy** page appears.



The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' section is active, showing a sub-menu with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' section is expanded, showing a list of policies. The 'Samsung Firewall Policy' is selected, and the 'Policy Information' pane is open. The 'Policy Information' pane contains a description of the policy and two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is visible in the bottom right corner of the pane.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Samsung SAFE** platform information page appears.

6. Configure these settings:

- **Allow/Deny hosts**

- For each host to which you want to allow or deny access, click **Add** and do the following:
  - **Host name/IP range:** Type the host name or IP address range of the site you want to affect.
  - **Port/port range:** Type the port or port range.
  - **Allow/deny rule filter:** Select Whitelist to allow access or click Blacklist to deny access to the site.
  - Click **Save** or **Cancel**.

- **Reroute configuration**

- For each proxy you want to configure, click **Add** and do the following:
  - **Host name/IP range:** Type the host name or IP address range for the proxy reroute.
  - **Port/port range:** Type the port or port range.
  - **Proxy IP:** Type the proxy IP address.
  - **Proxy port:** Type the proxy port.
  - Click **Save** or **Cancel**.

**Note:** To delete an existing item, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing item, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

- **Proxy Configuration**

- **Proxy IP:** Type the IP address of the proxy server.
- **Port:** Type the proxy server port.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Samsung Firewall Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for the Samsung Firewall Policy. The interface is divided into several sections:

- Header:** XenMobile, Analyze, Manage, Configure, and a user profile (admin).
- Navigation:** Device Policies, Apps, Actions, ShareFile, Delivery Groups.
- Left Sidebar:** Samsung Firewall Policy, 1 Policy Info, 2 Platforms,  Samsung SAFE, 3 Assignment (highlighted).
- Main Content Area:**
  - Samsung Firewall Policy:** This policy lets you configure the firewall settings for Samsung devices. You enter IP addresses, ports, and host names that you want to allow devices to access or that you want to block devices from accessing. You can also configure proxy and proxy reroute settings.
  - Choose delivery groups:** A search bar with the placeholder text "Type to search" and a "Search" button. Below the search bar is a list of delivery groups:  AllUsers,  sales, and  RG.
  - Delivery groups to receive app assignment:** A list box containing "AllUsers".
  - Deployment Schedule:** A section with a right-pointing arrow and a help icon.
  - Buttons:** "Back" and "Save" buttons at the bottom right.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

### Note:

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.



# SCEP device policy

Feb 27, 2017

This policy allows you to configure iOS and Mac OS X devices to retrieve a certificate using Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) from an external SCEP server. If you want to deliver a certificate to the device using SCEP from a PKI that is connected to XenMobile, you should create a PKI entity and a PKI provider in distributed mode. For details, see [PKI Entities](#).

[iOS settings](#)

[Mac OS X settings](#)

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Security**, click **SCEP**. The **SCEP Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'SCEP Policy' and has a sidebar with three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The 'Policy Info' section is active. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a description: 'This policy lets you create an Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) profile to enable devices to obtain certificates from a Certificate Authority.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' (required) and 'Description'.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### SCEP Policy

- Policy Info
- Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Tablet
- Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy lets you create an Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) profile to enable devices to obtain certificates from a Certificate Authority. For Windows Phone/Tablet, the payloads are supported only on Windows 10 and later supervised devices.

URL base\*

Instance name\*

Subject X.500 name (RFC 2253)

Subject alternative names type None ▾

Maximum retries

Retry delay

Challenge password

Key size (bits) 1024 ▾

Use as digital signature OFF

Use for key encipherment OFF

SHA1/MD5 fingerprint (hexadecimal string)

#### Policy Settings

Remove policy  Select date  
 Duration until removal (in days)

📅

Allow user to remove policy Always ▾

► **Deployment Rules**

Back Next >

Configure these settings:

- **URL base:** Type the address of the SCEP server to define where SCEP requests are sent, over HTTP or HTTPS. The private key isn't sent with the Certificate Signing Request (CSR), so it may be safe to send the request unencrypted. If, however, the one-time password is allowed to be reused, you should use HTTPS to protect the password. This step is required.
- **Instance name:** Type any string that the SCEP server recognizes. For example, it could be a domain name like example.org. If a CA has multiple CA certificates, you can use this field to distinguish the required domain. This step is required.
- **Subject X.500 name (RFC 2253):** Type the representation of a X.500 name represented as an array of Object Identifier (OID) and value. For example, /C=US/O=Apple Inc./CN=foo/1.2.5.3=bar, which would translate to: [ ["C", "US"], [ "O",

"Apple Inc."], ..., [ ["1.2.5.3", "bar" ] ]]. You can represent OIDs as dotted numbers with shortcuts for country (C), locality (L), state (ST), organization (O), organizational unit (OU), and common name (CN).

- **Subject alternative names type:** In the list, click an alternative name type. The SCEP policy can specify an optional alternative name type that provides values required by the CA for issuing a certificate. You can specify **None**, **RFC 822 name**, **DNS name**, or **URI**.
- **Maximum retries:** Type the number of times a device should retry when the SCEP server sends a PENDING response. The default is **3**.
- **Retry delay:** Type the number of seconds to wait between subsequent retries. The first retry is attempted without delay. The default is **10**.
- **Challenge password:** Enter a pre-shared secret.
- **Key size (bits):** In the list, click the key size in bits, either **1024** or **2048**. The default is **1024**.
- **Use as digital signature:** Specify whether you want the certificate to be used as a digital signature. If someone is using the certificate to verify a digital signature, such as verifying whether a certificate was issued by a CA, the SCEP server would verify that the certificate can be used in this manner prior to using the public key to decrypt the hash.
- **Use for key encipherment:** Specify whether you want the certificate to be used for key encipherment. If a server is using the public key in a certificate provided by a client to verify that a piece of data was encrypted using the private key, the server would first check to see whether the certificate can be used for key encipherment. If not, the operation fails.
- **SHA1/MD5 fingerprint (hexadecimal string):** If your CA uses HTTP, use this field to provide the fingerprint of the CA certificate, which the device uses to confirm authenticity of the CA response during enrollment. You can enter a SHA1 or MD5 fingerprint, or you can select a certificate to import its signature.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Under **Policy Settings**, next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

Configure Mac OS X settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### SCEP Policy

- Policy Info
- Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Tablet
- Assignment

#### Policy Information

This policy lets you create an Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) profile to enable devices to obtain certificates from a Certificate Authority. For Windows Phone/Tablet, the payloads are supported only on Windows 10 and later supervised devices.

URL base\*

Instance name\*

Subject X.500 name (RFC 2253)

Subject alternative names type

Maximum retries

Retry delay

Challenge password

Key size (bits)

Use as digital signature

Use for key encipherment

SHA1/MD5 fingerprint (hexadecimal string)

Certificate expiration notification threshold

#### Policy Settings

Remove policy  Select date  Duration until removal (in days)

📅

Allow user to remove policy

Profile scope  OS X 10.7+

▶ Deployment Rules

Configure these settings:

- **URL base:** Type the address of the SCEP server to define where SCEP requests are sent, over HTTP or HTTPS. The private key isn't sent with the Certificate Signing Request (CSR), so it may be safe to send the request unencrypted. If, however, the one-time password is allowed to be reused, you should use HTTPS to protect the password. This step is required.
- **Instance name:** Type any string that the SCEP server recognizes. For example, it could be a domain name like example.org. If a CA has multiple CA certificates, you can use this field to distinguish the required domain. This step is

required.

- **Subject X.500 name (RFC 2253):** Type the representation of a X.500 name represented as an array of Object Identifier (OID) and value. For example, /C=US/O=Apple Inc./CN=foo/1.2.5.3=bar, which would translate to: [ [ ["C", "US"] ], [ ["O", "Apple Inc." ] ], ..., [ ["1.2.5.3", "bar" ] ] ]. You can represent OIDs as dotted numbers with shortcuts for country (C), locality (L), state (ST), organization (O), organizational unit (OU), and common name (CN).
- **Subject alternative names type:** In the list, click an alternative name type. The SCEP policy can specify an optional alternative name type that provides values required by the CA for issuing a certificate. You can specify **None**, **RFC 822 name**, **DNS name**, or **URI**.
- **Maximum retries:** Type the number of times a device should retry when the SCEP server sends a PENDING response. The default is **3**.
- **Retry delay:** Type the number of seconds to wait between subsequent retries. The first retry is attempted without delay. The default is **10**.
- **Challenge password:** Type a pre-shared secret.
- **Key size (bits):** In the list, click the key size in bits, either **1024** or **2048**. The default is **1024**.
- **Use as digital signature:** Specify whether you want the certificate to be used as a digital signature. If someone is using the certificate to verify a digital signature, such as verifying whether a certificate was issued by a CA, the SCEP server would verify that the certificate can be used in this manner prior to using the public key to decrypt the hash.
- **Use for key encipherment:** Specify whether you want the certificate to be used for key encipherment. If a server is using the public key in a certificate provided by a client to verify that a piece of data was encrypted using the private key, the server would first check to see whether the certificate can be used for key encipherment. If not, the operation fails.
- **SHA1/MD5 fingerprint (hexadecimal string):** If your CA uses HTTP, use this field to provide the fingerprint of the CA certificate, which the device uses to confirm authenticity of the CA response during enrollment. You can enter a SHA1 or MD5 fingerprint, or you can select a certificate to import its signature.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Under **Policy Settings**, next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.
  - Next to **Profile scope**, click either **User** or **System**. The default is **User**. This option is available only on OS X 10.7 and later.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules



8. Click **Next**. The **SCEP Policy** assignment page appears.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save** to save the policy.

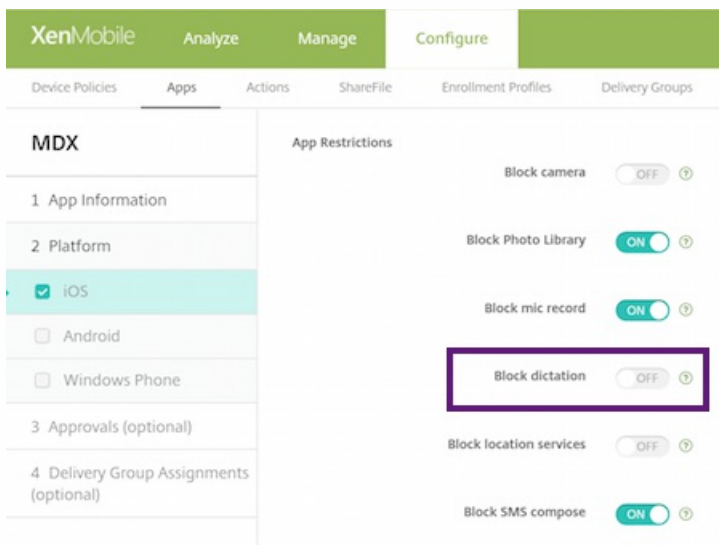
# Siri and dictation policies

Feb 27, 2017

When users ask Siri something or dictate text on managed iOS devices, Apple collects the voice data for purposes of improving Siri. The voice data passes through Apple's cloud-based services, and therefore exists outside the secure XenMobile container. The text that results from dictation, however, remains within the container.

XenMobile allows you to block Siri and dictation services, as your security needs require.

In MAM deployments, the **Block dictation** policy for each app is **On** by default, which disables the device's microphone. Set it to **Off** if you want to allow dictation. You can find the policy in the XenMobile console at **Configure > Apps**. Select the app, click **Edit**, then click **iOS**.



In MDM deployments, you can also disable Siri with the Siri policy at **Configure > Device Policies > Restrictions Policy > iOS**. The use of Siri is allowed by default.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### Restrictions Policy

1 Policy Info

2 Platforms

- iOS
- Mac OS X
- Samsung SAFE
- Samsung KNOX
- Windows Phone
- Windows Desktop/Tablet
- Amazon
- Windows Mobile/CE

3 Assignment

### Restrictions Policy

This policy allows or restricts users from using certain features on their devices, such as the camera. You can also set security restrictions, as well as restrictions on media content and on certain types of apps users can and cannot install.

**Allow hardware controls**

- Camera  ON
- FaceTime
- Screen shots  ON
- Photo streams  ON iOS 5.0+
- Shared photo streams  ON iOS 6.0+
- Voice dialing  ON
- Siri  ON
- Allow while device is locked
- Siri profanity filter

Back Next >

A few points to keep in mind when deciding whether to allow Siri and dictation:

- According to information that Apple has made public, Apple keeps Siri and dictation voice clip data for up to two years. The data is assigned a random number to represent the user, and voice files are associated with this random number. For more information, see this Wired article, [Apple reveals how long Siri keeps your data](#).
- You can review the Apple privacy policy by going to **Settings > General > Keyboards** on any iOS device and tapping the link under **Enable Dictation**.



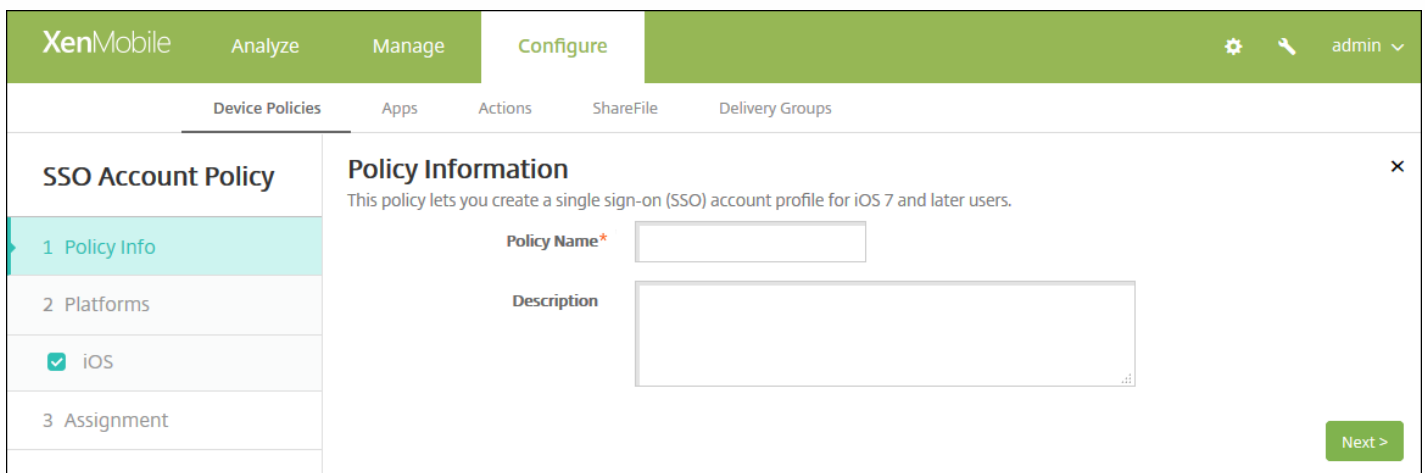
# SSO account device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You create single sign-on (SSO) accounts in XenMobile to let users sign on one-time only to access XenMobile and your internal company resources from various apps. Users do not need to store any credentials on the device. The SSO account enterprise user credentials are used across apps, including apps from the App Store. This policy is designed to work with a Kerberos authentication backend.

**Note:** This policy applies only to iOS 7.0 and later.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **More** and then, under **End user**, click **SSO Account**. The **SSO Account Policy** page appears.



The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is active, and the 'Device Policies' sub-tab is selected. The main content area is titled 'SSO Account Policy' and contains a 'Policy Information' section. This section includes a description: 'This policy lets you create a single sign-on (SSO) account profile for iOS 7 and later users.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the form. On the left side, there is a sidebar with three steps: '1 Policy Info' (selected), '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The 'iOS' platform is checked under the '2 Platforms' step.

4. In the **SSO Account Policy information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **iOS Platform** information page appears.

6. Configure these settings:

- **Account name:** Enter the Kerberos SSO account name that appears on users' devices. This field is required.
- **Kerberos principal name:** Enter the Kerberos principal name. This field is required.
- **Identity credential (Keystore or PKI credential):** In the list, click an optional identity credential that can be used to renew the Kerberos credential without user interaction.
- **Kerberos realm:** Enter the Kerberos realm for this policy. This is typically your domain name in all capital letters (for example, EXAMPLE.COM). This field is required.
- **Permitted URLs:** For each URL for which you want to require SSO, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **Permitted URL:** Enter a URL that you want to require SSO when a user visits the URL from the iOS device. For example, when a user tries to browse to a site and the web site initiates a Kerberos challenge, if that site is not in the URL list, the iOS device does not attempt SSO by providing the Kerberos token that Kerberos might have cached on the device from a previous Kerberos logon. The match has to be exact on the host part of the URL; for example, `http://shopping.apple.com` is valid, but `http://*.apple.com` is not. Also, if Kerberos is not activated based on host matching, the URL still falls back to a standard HTTP call. This could mean almost anything including a standard password challenge or an HTTP error if the URL is only configured for SSO using Kerberos.
    - Click **Add** to add the URL or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the URL.
- **App Identifiers:** For each app that is allowed to use this login, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **App Identifier:** Enter an app identifier for an app that is allowed to use this login. If you do not add any app

identifiers, this login matches **all** app identifiers.

- Click **Add** to add the app identifier or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the app identifier.

**Note:** To delete an existing URL or app identifier, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click Delete to delete the listing or Cancel to keep the listing.

To edit an existing URL or app identifier, hover over the line containing the listing and click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click Save to save the changed listing or Cancel to leave the listing unchanged.

- **Policy Settings**

- Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
- If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
- In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
- If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **SSO Account Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot displays the XenMobile configuration interface for the SSO Account Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'SSO Account Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you create a single sign-on (SSO) account profile for iOS 7 and later users.' On the left, a sidebar shows the policy configuration steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment' (which is currently selected). Under 'Choose delivery groups', there is a search input field and a list of groups: 'AllUsers' (checked) and 'sales' (unchecked). To the right, a box titled 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' contains 'AllUsers'. At the bottom of the configuration area, there is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a dropdown arrow. The bottom right corner features 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.

- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Storage encryption device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You create storage encryption device policies in XenMobile to encrypt internal and external storage, and, depending on the device, to prevent users from using a storage card on their devices.

You can create policies for Samsung SAFE, Windows Phone, and Android Sony devices. Each platform requires a different set of values, which are described in detail in this article.

[Samsung SAFE settings](#)

[Windows Phone settings](#)

[Android Sony settings](#)

**Note:** For Samsung SAFE devices, before configuring this policy, make sure the following requirements are met:

- You must set the Screen Lock option on users' devices.
- Users' devices must be plugged in and 80% charged.
- The device must require a password containing both numbers and letters or symbols.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.

2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.

3. Click **More** and then, under **Security**, click **Storage Encryption**. The **Storage Encryption Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is active. Below the navigation bar, there are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' sub-tab is selected. On the left side, there is a sidebar with a 'Storage Encryption Policy' section. Under this section, there are three main areas: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '2 Platforms' area is expanded, showing three checked options: 'Samsung SAFE', 'Windows Phone', and 'Android Sony'. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a text box for 'Policy Name\*' and a larger text area for 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the main content area.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

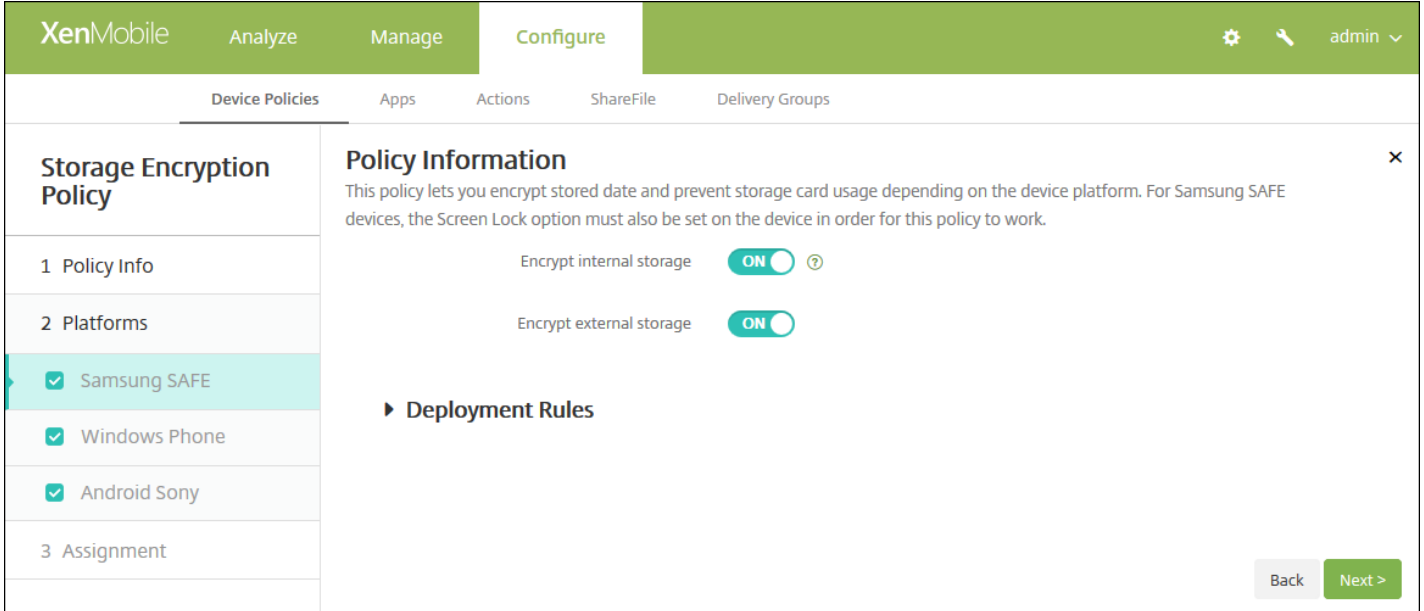
- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

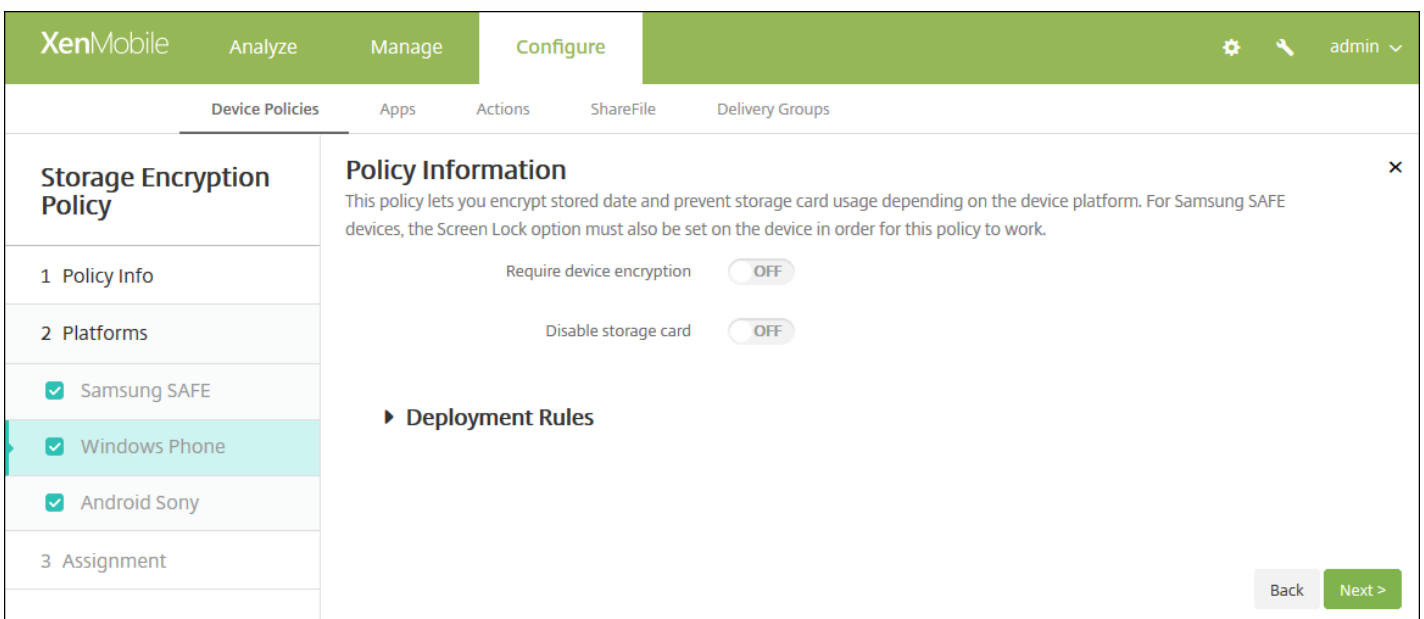
### Configure Samsung SAFE settings



Configure these settings:

- **Encrypt internal storage:** Select whether to encrypt internal storage on users' devices. Internal storage includes device memory and internal storage. The default is **ON**.
- **Encrypt external storage:** Select whether to encrypt external storage on users' devices. The default is **ON**.

### Configure Windows Phone settings



Configure these settings:

- **Require device encryption:** Select whether to encrypt users' devices. The default is **OFF**.
- **Disable storage card:** Select whether to prevent users from using a storage card on their devices. The default is **OFF**.

Configure Android Sony settings

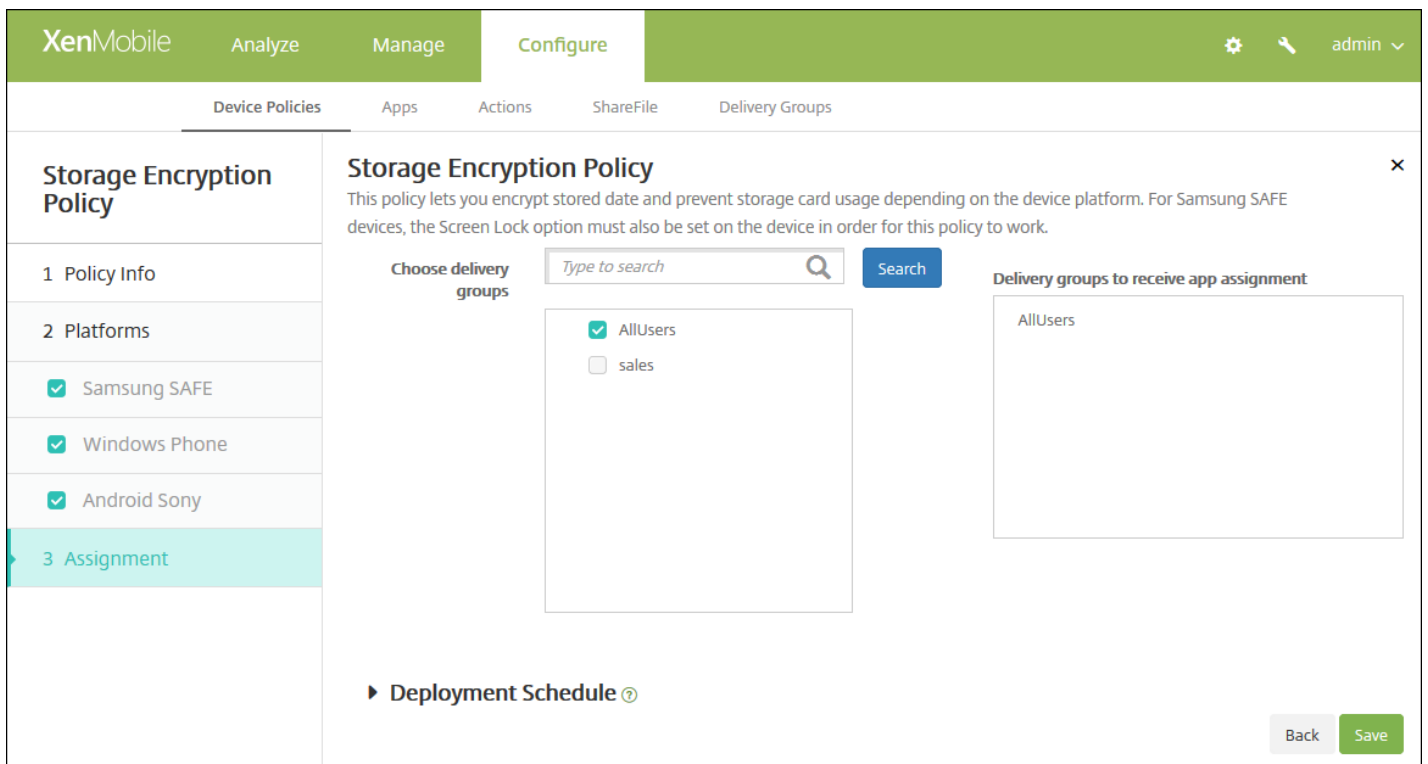
The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface. At the top, there are navigation tabs: XenMobile, Analyze, Manage, and Configure (which is active). On the right, there are icons for settings, search, and a user profile labeled 'admin'. Below the navigation, there are sub-tabs: Device Policies (active), Apps, Actions, ShareFile, and Delivery Groups. The main content area is titled 'Storage Encryption Policy' and includes a 'Policy Information' section with a close button (X). The information states: 'This policy lets you encrypt stored data and prevent storage card usage depending on the device platform. For Samsung SAFE devices, the Screen Lock option must also be set on the device in order for this policy to work.' Below this, there is a toggle switch for 'Encrypt external storage' which is currently turned 'ON'. A section for 'Deployment Rules' is visible but collapsed. On the left, a sidebar shows a progress list: 1 Policy Info, 2 Platforms (with sub-items for Samsung SAFE, Windows Phone, and Android Sony, which is highlighted), and 3 Assignment. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure this setting:

- **Encrypt external storage:** Select whether to encrypt external storage on users' devices. The device must require a password containing both numbers and letters or symbols. The default is **ON**.

7. [Configure the deployment rules](#)

8. Click **Next**. The **Storage Encryption Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.



# Store device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can create a policy in XenMobile to specify whether iOS, Android, or Windows Tablet devices display a XenMobile Store webclip on the devices' home screen.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More**, and then under **Apps**, click **Store**. The **Store Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Store Policy' page is active, showing a sidebar with '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a description: 'This policy specifies when devices display a Store webclip on the devices.' There are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** If desired, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Platforms** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Store Policy' page is active, showing a sidebar with '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The main content area is titled 'Store Policy' and contains a description: 'This policy specifies when devices display a Store webclip on the devices.' There is a toggle switch for 'ios' which is currently 'ON'. Below this is a section for 'Deployment Rules'.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.
7. For each platform that you configure, select whether a XenMobile Store webclip appears on users' devices. The default is **ON**.

After you configure each platform, refer to Step 8 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

#### 8. Configure the deployment rules



9. Click **Next**, the **XenMobile Store Policy** assignment page appears.
10. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.
11. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:
  - Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
  - Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
  - If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
  - Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
  - Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

#### Note:

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

12. Click **Save**.

# Subscribed calendars device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can add a device policy in XenMobile to add a subscribed calendar to the calendars list on users' iOS devices. The list of public calendars to which you can subscribe is available at [www.apple.com/downloads/macosx/calendars](http://www.apple.com/downloads/macosx/calendars).

Note: You must have subscribed to a calendar before you can add it to the subscribed calendars list on users' devices.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **More** and then, under **End user**, click **Subscribed Calendars**. The **Subscribed Calendars Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. The 'Configure' tab is active. Below the navigation bar, there are several sub-tabs: 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Device Policies' sub-tab is selected. On the left side, there is a sidebar titled 'Subscribed Calendars Policy' with three steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '1 Policy Info' step is highlighted. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a description: 'This policy adds the parameters for a subscribed calendar to a users' calendars list.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the form.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **iOS Platform Information** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for a 'Subscribed Calendars Policy'. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', 'Configure', and 'admin'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The left sidebar is titled 'Subscribed Calendars Policy' and contains a list of steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', '3 Assignment', and 'iOS' (which is currently selected). The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the following fields and options:

- Description\***: A text input field with a help icon.
- URL\***: A text input field with a help icon.
- User name\***: A text input field.
- Password**: A text input field with a password icon.
- Use SSL**: A toggle switch currently set to 'OFF'.
- Policy Settings**:
  - Remove policy**: Two radio button options: 'Select date' (selected) and 'Duration until removal (in days)'.
  - Allow user to remove policy**: A dropdown menu currently set to 'Always'.

At the bottom of the main content area, there is a section for 'Deployment Rules' and two buttons: 'Back' and 'Next >'.

6. Configure these settings:

- **Description:** Enter a description of the calendar. This field is required.
- **URL:** Enter the calendar URL. You can enter a `webcal://` URL or an `http://` link to an iCalendar file (.ics). This field is required.
- **User name:** Enter the user's logon name. This field is required.
- **Password:** Enter an optional user password.
- **Use SSL:** Select whether to use a Secure Socket Layer connection to the calendar. The default is Off.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

#### 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Subscribed Calendars Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below these are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Subscribed Calendars Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy adds the parameters for a subscribed calendar to a users' calendars list.' There is a search bar for 'Choose delivery groups' with a 'Search' button. Below the search bar is a list of delivery groups: 'AllUsers' (checked) and 'sales' (unchecked). To the right, there is a box titled 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' which contains 'AllUsers'. At the bottom, there is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a right-pointing arrow and a help icon. In the bottom right corner, there are 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Terms and conditions device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You create terms and conditions device policies in XenMobile when you want users to accept your company's specific policies governing connections to the corporate network. When users enroll their devices with XenMobile, they are presented with the terms and conditions and must accept them to enroll their devices. Declining the terms and conditions cancels the enrollment process.

You can create different policies for terms and conditions in different languages if your company has international users and you want them to accept terms and conditions in their native languages. You must provide a file for each platform and language combination you plan to deploy. For Android and iOS devices, you must supply PDF files. For Windows devices, you must supply text (.txt) files and accompanying image files.

[iOS and Android settings](#)

[Windows Phone and Windows Tablet settings](#)

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **Terms & Conditions**. The **Terms & Conditions Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Terms & Conditions Policy' and features a sidebar on the left with three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', four options are listed with checkboxes: 'iOS', 'Android', 'Windows Phone', and 'Windows Tablet', all of which are checked. The main area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a text box for 'Policy Name\*' and a larger text box for 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the main area.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

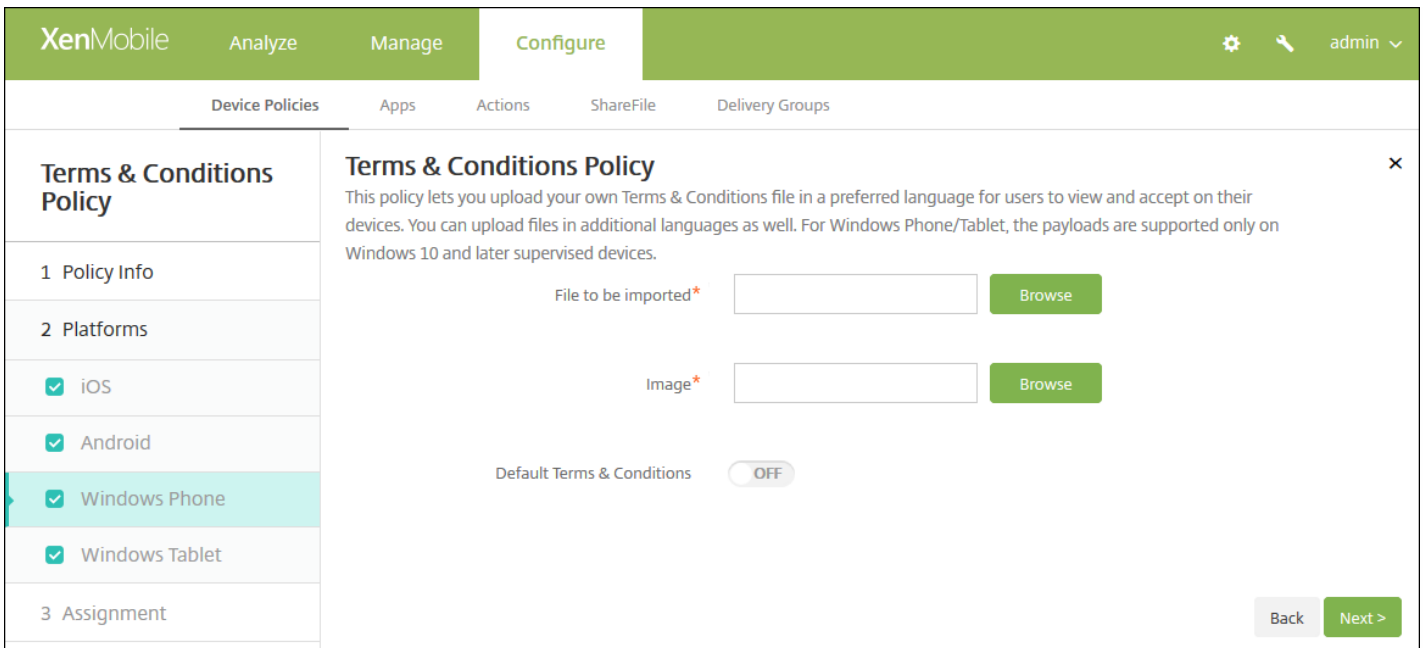
5. Click **Next**. The **Terms & Conditions Platforms** information page appears.

## iOS and Android settings

Configure these settings:

- **File to be imported:** Select the terms and conditions file to import by clicking **Browse** and then navigating to the file's location.
- **Default Terms & Conditions:** Select whether this file is the default document for users who are members of multiple groups with different terms and conditions. The default is **OFF**.

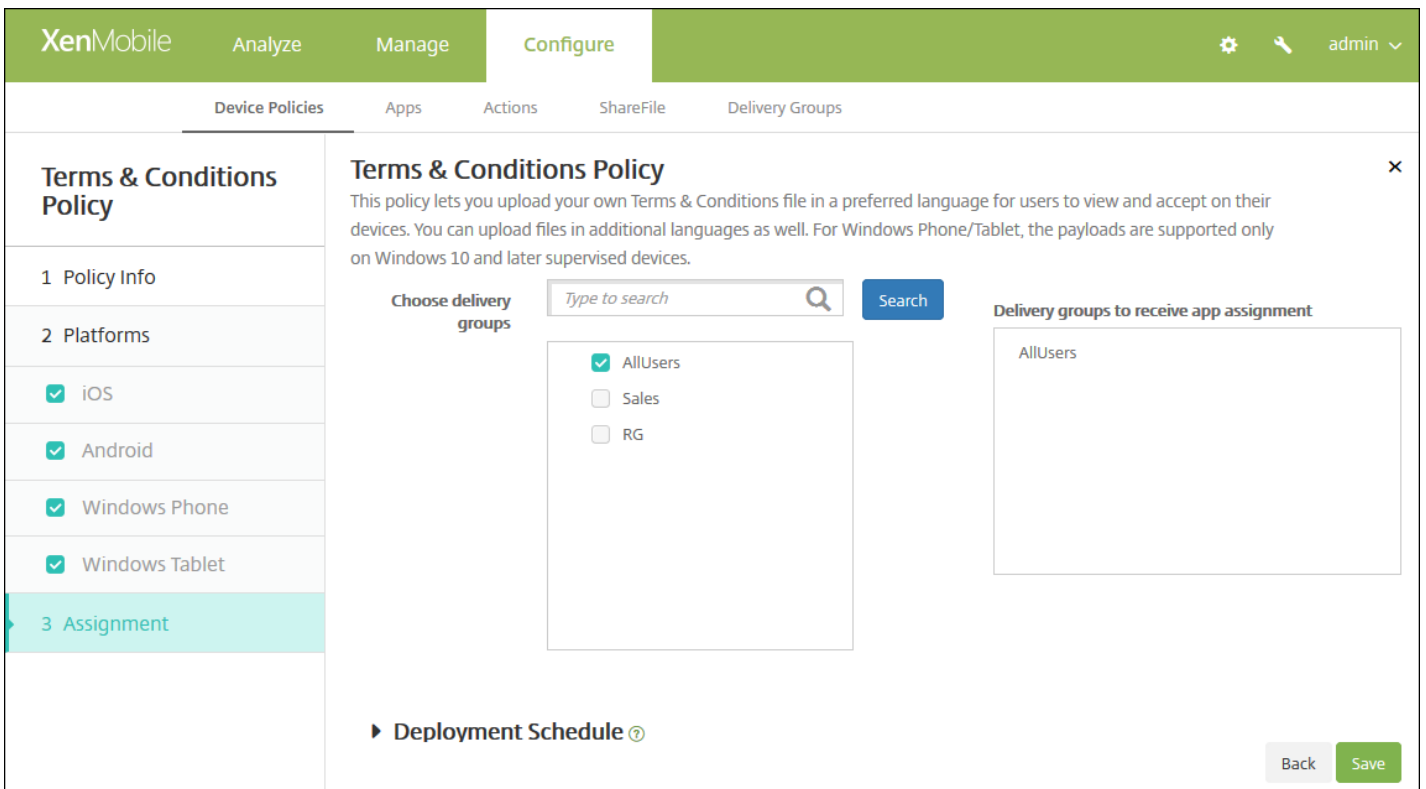
## Windows Phone and Windows Tablet settings



Configure these settings:

- **File to be imported:** Select the terms and conditions file to import by clicking **Browse** and then navigating to the file's location.
- **Image:** Select the image file to import by clicking **Browse** and then navigating to the file's location.
- **Default Terms & Conditions:** Select whether this file is the default document for users who are members of multiple groups with different terms and conditions. The default is **OFF**.

6. Click **Next**. The **Terms & Conditions Policy** assignment page appears.





7. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

8. Click **Save**.

# VPN device policy

May 07, 2017

You can add a device policy in XenMobile to configure virtual private network (VPN) settings that enable users' devices to connect securely to corporate resources. You can configure the VPN policy for the following platforms: iOS, Android (which includes devices enabled for Android for Work), Samsung SAFE, Samsung KNOX, Windows Tablet, Windows Phone, and Amazon. Each platform requires a different set of values, which are described in detail in this article.

[iOS settings](#)

[Mac OS X settings](#)

[Android settings](#)

[Samsung SAFE settings](#)

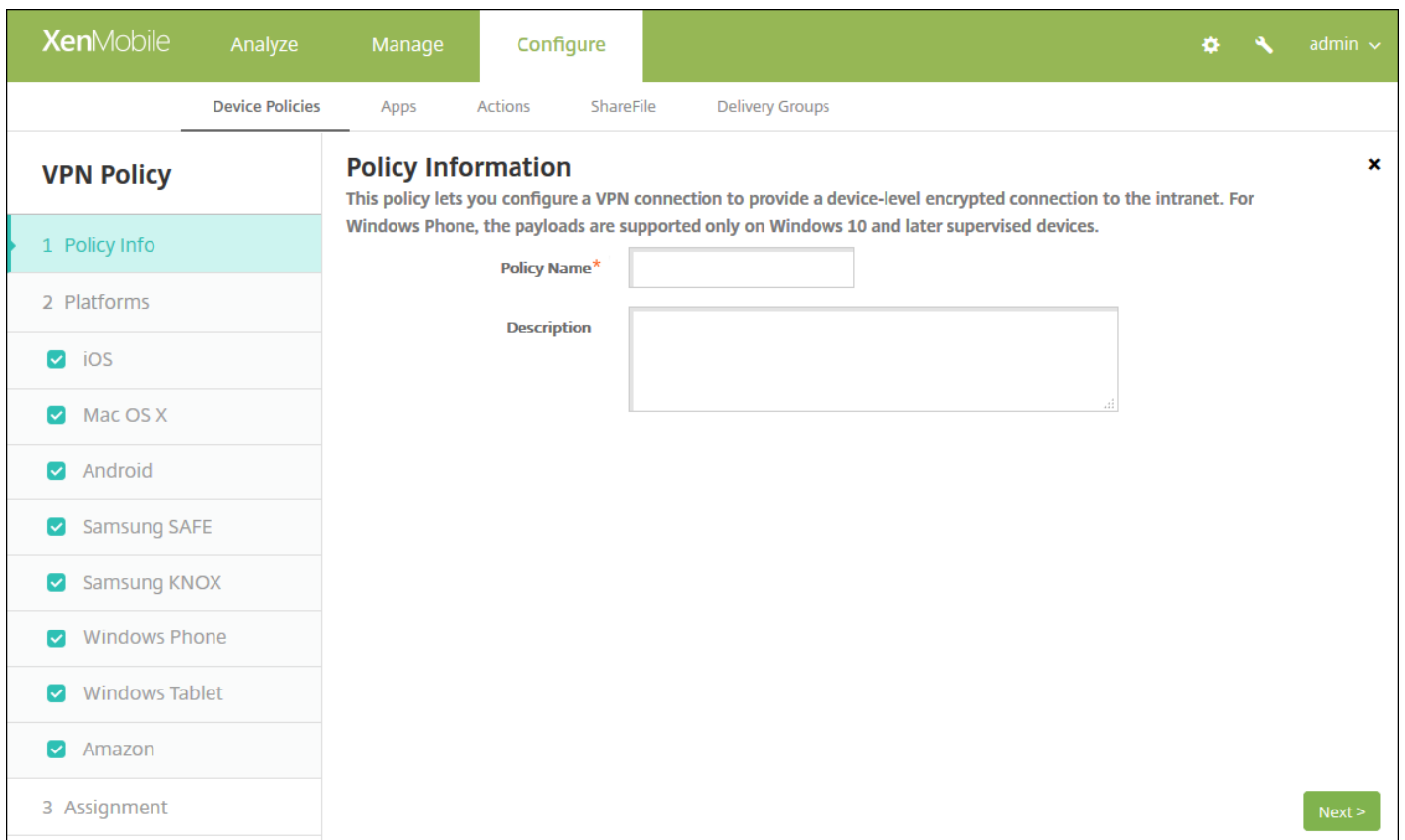
[Samsung KNOX settings](#)

[Windows Phone settings](#)

[Windows Tablet settings](#)

[Amazon settings](#)

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **VPN**. The **VPN Policy** page appears.



4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears. When the **Policy Platform** page appears, all platforms are selected and you see the iOS platform first.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platform or platforms you want to add. Clear those platforms that you do not want to configure.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure iOS settings

**XenMobile** Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### VPN Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
  - Android
  - Samsung SAFE
  - Samsung KNOX
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Tablet
  - Amazon
- 3 Assignment

### Policy Information

This policy lets you configure a VPN connection to provide a device-level encrypted connection to the intranet. For Windows Phone, the payloads are supported only on Windows 10 and later supervised devices.

Connection name

Connection type **L2TP**

Server name or IP address\*

User account

Password authentication  
 RSA SecureID authentication

Shared secret

Send all traffic **OFF**

**Proxy**

Proxy configuration **None**

**Policy Settings**

Remove policy  Select date  
 Duration until removal (in days)

Allow user to remove policy **Always**

**Deployment Rules**

Back Next >

Configure these settings

- **Connection name:** Type a name for the connection.
- **Connection type:** In the list, click the protocol to be used for this connection. The default is **L2TP**.
  - **L2TP:** Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with pre-shared key authentication.
  - **PPTP:** Point-to-Point Tunneling.
  - **IPSec:** Your corporate VPN connection.
  - **Cisco AnyConnect:** Cisco AnyConnect VPN client.
  - **Juniper SSL:** Juniper Networks SSL VPN client.
  - **F5 SSL:** F5 Networks SSL VPN client.
  - **SonicWALL Mobile Connect:** Dell unified VPN client for iOS.
  - **Ariba VIA:** Ariba Networks Virtual Internet Access client.
  - **IKEv2 (iOS only):** Internet Key Exchange version 2 for iOS only.
  - **Citrix VPN:** Citrix VPN client for iOS.
  - **Custom SSL:** Custom Secure Socket Layer.

The following sections list the configuration options for each of the preceding connection types.

<a href="#">Configure L2TP Protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure PPTP Protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure IPSec Protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure Cisco AnyConnect Protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure Juniper SSL Protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure F5 SSL Protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure SonicWALL Protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure Ariba VIA protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure IKEv2 protocols</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure Citrix VPN protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure Custom SSL protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure Enable VPN on demand options</a>	▼

- **Proxy**

- **Proxy configuration:** In the list, click how the VPN connection routes through a proxy server. The default is **None**.
  - If you enable **Manual**, configure these settings:
    - **Host name or IP address for the proxy server:** Type the host name or IP address for the proxy server. This field is required.
    - **Port for the proxy server:** Type the proxy server port number. This field is required.
    - **User name:** Type an optional proxy server user name.
    - **Password:** Type an optional proxy server password.
  - If you configure **Automatic**, configure this setting:
    - **Proxy server URL:** Type the URL for the proxy server. This field is required.

- **Policy Settings**

- Under **Policy Settings**, next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
- If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
- In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
- If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

Configure Mac OS X settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### VPN Policy

- Policy Info
- Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
  - Android
  - Samsung SAFE
  - Samsung KNOX
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Tablet
  - Amazon
- Assignment

### Policy Information

This policy lets you configure a VPN connection to provide a device-level encrypted connection to the intranet. For Windows Phone, the payloads are supported only on Windows 10 and later supervised devices.

Connection name

Connection type **L2TP**

Server name or IP address\*

User account

Password authentication  
 RSA SecureID authentication  
 Kerberos authentication  
 CryptoCard authentication

Shared secret

Send all traffic **OFF**

**Proxy**

Proxy configuration **None**

**Policy Settings**

Remove policy  Select date  
 Duration until removal (in days)

Allow user to remove policy **Always**

Profile scope **User** OS X 10.7+

► **Deployment Rules**

Back Next >

Configure these settings:

- **Connection name:** Type a name for the connection.
- **Connection type:** In the list, click the protocol to be used for this connection. The default is L2TP.
  - **L2TP:** Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with pre-shared key authentication.
  - **PPTP:** Point-to-Point Tunneling.
  - **IPSec:** Your corporate VPN connection.
  - **Cisco AnyConnect:** Cisco AnyConnect VPN client.
  - **Juniper SSL:** Juniper Networks SSL VPN client.
  - **F5 SSL:** F5 Networks SSL VPN client.
  - **SonicWALL Mobile Connect:** Dell unified VPN client for iOS.

- **Ariba VIA:** Ariba Networks Virtual Internet Access client.
- **Citrix VPN:** Citrix VPN client.
- **Custom SSL:** Custom Secure Socket Layer.

The following sections list the configuration options for each of the preceding connection types.

<a href="#">Configure L2TP Protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure PPTP Protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure IPSec Protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure Cisco AnyConnect Protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure Juniper SSL Protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure F5 SSL Protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure SonicWALL Protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure Ariba VIA protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure Citrix VPN protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure Custom SSL protocol</a>	▼
<a href="#">Configure Enable VPN on demand options</a>	▼

- **Proxy**

- **Proxy configuration:** In the list, click how the VPN connection routes through a proxy server. The default is **None**.
  - If you enable **Manual**, configure these settings:
    - **Host name or IP address for the proxy server:** Type the host name or IP address for the proxy server. This field is required.
    - **Port for the proxy server:** Type the proxy server port number. This field is required.
    - **User name:** Type an optional proxy server user name.
    - **Password:** Type an optional proxy server password.
  - If you configure **Automatic**, configure this setting:
    - **Proxy server URL:** Type the URL for the proxy server. This field is required.

- **Policy Settings**

- Under **Policy Settings**, next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
- If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
- In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
- If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.
- Next to **Profile scope**, click either **User** or **System**. The default is **User**. This option is available only on OS X 10.7 and later.

Configure Android settings

**VPN Policy**

1 Policy Info

2 Platforms

- iOS
- Mac OS X
- Android
- Samsung SAFE
- Samsung KNOX
- Windows Phone
- Windows Tablet
- Amazon

3 Assignment

**Policy Information**

This policy lets you configure a VPN connection to provide a device-level encrypted connection to the intranet. For Windows Phone, the payloads are supported only on Windows 10 and later supervised devices.

**Cisco AnyConnect VPN**

Connection name\*

Server name or IP address\*

Backup VPN server

User group

Identity credential None

**Trusted Networks**

Automatic VPN policy OFF

**Deployment Rules**

Back Next >

Configure these settings:

- **Cisco AnyConnect VPN**
  - **Connection name:** Type a name for the Cisco AnyConnect VPN connection. This field is required.
  - **Server name or IP address:** Type the name or IP address of the VPN server. This field is required.
  - **Backup VPN server:** Type the backup VPN server information.
  - **User group:** Type the user group information.
  - **Identity credential:** In the list, select an identity credential.
- **Trusted Networks**
  - **Automatic VPN policy:** Enable or disable this option to set how the VPN reacts to trusted and untrusted networks. If enabled, configure these settings:
    - **Trusted network policy:** In the list, click the desired policy. The default is **Disconnect**. Possible options are:
      - **Disconnect:** The client terminates the VPN connection in the trusted network. This is the default.
      - **Connect:** The client initiates a VPN connection in the trusted network.
      - **Do Nothing:** The client takes no action.
      - **Pause:** Suspends the VPN session (rather than disconnecting it) when a user enters a network configured as trusted after establishing a VPN session outside the trusted network. When the user leaves the trusted network again, the session resumes. This eliminates the need to establish a new VPN session after leaving a trusted network.
    - **Untrusted network policy:** In the list, click the desired policy. The default is **Connect**. Possible options are:
      - **Connect:** The client initiates a VPN connection in the untrusted network.
      - **Do Nothing:** The client starts a VPN connection in the untrusted network. This option disables always-on VPN.
  - **Trusted domains:** For each domain suffix that the network interface may have when the client is in the trusted network, click **Add** to do the following:



- **Domain:** Type the domain to be added.
- Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.
- **Trusted servers:** For each server address that a network interface may have when the client is in the trusted network, click **Add** and do the following:
  - **Servers:** Type the server to be added.
  - Click **Save** to save the server or click **Cancel** to not save the server.

**Note:** To delete an existing server, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash can icon on the right-hand side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit an existing server, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right-hand side. Make any changes to the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

## Configure Samsung SAFE settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' section is active, showing a sidebar with 'Device Policies' selected. Under 'Device Policies', 'VPN Policy' is expanded, showing a list of platforms: iOS, Mac OS X, Android, Samsung SAFE (highlighted), Samsung KNOX, Windows Phone, Windows Tablet, and Amazon. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the following fields:

- Connection name\* (text input)
- Vpn Type (dropdown menu, currently set to 'L2TP with pre-shared key')
- Host name\* (text input)
- User name (text input)
- Password (password input)
- Pre-shared key\* (password input)

Below the fields is a section for 'Deployment Rules'. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **Connection name:** Type a name for the connection.
- **Vpn type:** In the list, click the protocol to be used for this connection. The default is **L2TP with pre-shared key**. Possible options are:
  - **L2TP with pre-shared key:** Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with pre-shared key authentication. This is the default setting.
  - **L2TP with certificate:** Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with certificate.

- **PPTP:** Point-to-Point Tunneling.
- **Enterprise:** Your corporate VPN connection. Applicable to SAFE versions earlier than 2.0.
- **Generic:** A generic VPN connection. Applicable to SAFE versions 2.0 or higher.

The following sections list the configuration options for each of the preceding VPN types.

[Configure L2TP with pre-shared key protocol](#)



[Configure L2TP with certificate protocol](#)



[Configure PPTP protocol](#)



[Configure Enterprise protocol](#)



[Configure Generic protocol](#)



Configure Samsung KNOX settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### VPN Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
  - Android
  - Samsung SAFE
  - Samsung KNOX
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Tablet
  - Amazon
- 3 Assignment

### Policy Information

This policy lets you configure a VPN connection to provide a device-level encrypted connection to the intranet. For Windows Phone, the payloads are supported only on Windows 10 and later supervised devices.

Vpn Type: Enterprise

Connection name\*:

Host name\*:

Enable backup server: OFF

Enable user authentication: OFF

Group name:

Authentication method: Certificate

Identity credential: None

CA certificate: Select certificate

Enable default route: OFF

Enable smartcard authentication: OFF

Enable mobile option: OFF

Diffie-Hellman group value (key strength): 0

Split tunnel type: Auto

SuiteB Type: GCM-128

**Forward routes**

Forward route

Forward route	Add
	<input type="button" value="Add"/>

► **Deployment Rules**

Back Next >

**Note:** When you configure any policy for Samsung KNOX, it applies only inside the Samsung KNOX container.

Configure these settings:

- **Vpn Type:** In the list, click the type of VPN connection to configure, either **Enterprise** (applicable to KNOX versions earlier than 2.0) or **Generic** (applicable to KNOX versions 2.0 or higher). The default is **Enterprise**.

The following sections list the configuration options for each of the preceding connection types.

[Configure Enterprise protocol](#) ▼

[Configure generic protocol](#) ▼

## Configure Windows Phone settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' section is active, showing a sidebar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'VPN Policy' and includes a 'Policy Information' section with a warning: 'This policy lets you configure a VPN connection to provide a device-level encrypted connection to the intranet. For Windows Phone, the payloads are supported only on Windows 10 and later supervised devices.' The configuration options are as follows:

Connection name*	<input type="text"/>
Profile type	Native
VPN server name*	<input type="text"/>
Tunneling protocol*	L2TP
Authentication method*	EAP
EAP method*	TLS
DNS suffix	<input type="text"/>
Trusted networks	<input type="text"/>
Require smart card certificate	OFF
Automatically select client certificate	OFF
Remember credential	OFF
Always-on VPN	OFF
Bypass For Local	OFF

At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

**Note:** These settings are supported only on Windows 10 and later supervised phones.

Configure these settings:

- **Connection name:** Enter a name for the connection. This field is required.
- **Profile type:** In the list, click either **Native** or **Plugin**. The default is **Native**. The following sections describe the settings for each of these options.
- **Configure Native profile type settings** - These settings apply to the VPN built into users' Windows phones.
  - **VPN server name:** Type the FQDN or IP address for the VPN server. This field is required.
  - **Tunneling protocol:** In the list, click the type of VPN tunnel to use. The default is **L2TP**. Possible options are:

- **L2TP:** Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with pre-shared key authentication.
- **PPTP:** Point-to-Point Tunneling.
- **IKEv2:** Internet Key Exchange version 2.
- **Authentication method:** In the list, click the authentication method to use. The default is **EAP**. Possible options are:
  - **EAP:** Extended Authentication Protocol.
  - **MSChapV2:** Use Microsoft challenge-handshake authentication for mutual authentication. This option is not available when you select IKEv2 for the tunnel type. When you choose MSChapV2, an **Automatically use Windows credentials** option appears; the default is **OFF**.
- **EAP method:** In the list, click the EAP method to be used. The default is **TLS**. This field is not available when MSChapV2 authentication is enabled. Possible options are:
  - **TLS:** Transport Layer Security
  - **PEAP:** Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol
- **DNS Suffix:** Type the DNS suffix.
- **Trusted networks:** Type a list of networks separated by commas that do not require a VPN connection for access. For example, when users are on your company wireless network, they can access protected resources directly.
- **Require smart card certificate:** Select whether to require a smart card certificate. The default is OFF.
- **Automatically select client certificate:** Select whether to automatically choose the client certificate to use for authentication. The default is OFF. This option is unavailable when Require smart card certificate is enabled.
- **Remember credential:** Select whether to cache the credential. The default is OFF. When enabled, credentials are cached whenever possible.
- **Always on VPN:** Select whether the VPN is always on. The default is OFF. When enabled, the VPN connection remains on until the user manually disconnects.
- **Bypass For Local:** Type the address and port number to allow local resources to bypass the proxy server.
- **Configure Plugin protocol type** - These settings apply to VPN plug-ins obtained from the Windows Store and installed on users' devices.
  - **Server address:** Type the URL, host name, or IP address for the VPN server.
  - **Client app ID:** Type the package family name for the VPN plug-in.
  - **Plugin Profile XML:** Select the custom VPN plugin profile to be used by clicking Browse and navigating to the file's location. Contact the plugin provider for format and details.
  - **DNS Suffix:** Type the DNS suffix.
  - **Trusted networks:** Type a list of networks separated by commas that do not require a VPN connection for access. For example, when users are on your company wireless network, they can access protected resources directly.
  - **Remember credential:** Select whether to cache the credential. The default is OFF. When enabled, credentials are cached whenever possible.
  - **Always on VPN:** Select whether the VPN is always on. The default is OFF. When enabled, the VPN connection remains on until the user manually disconnects.
  - **Bypass For Local:** Type the address and port number to allow local resources to bypass the proxy server.

Configure Windows Tablet settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Delivery Groups

### VPN Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
  - Android
  - Samsung SAFE
  - Samsung KNOX
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Tablet**
  - Amazon
- 3 Assignment

### Policy Information

This policy lets you configure a VPN connection to provide a device-level encrypted connection to the intranet. For Windows Phone, the payloads are supported only on Windows 10 and later supervised devices.

OS version\*

Connection name\*

Profile type

Server address\*

Remember credential

DNS suffix

Tunnel type\*

Authentication method\*

EAP method\*

Trusted networks

Require smart card certificate

Automatically select client certificate

Always-on VPN

Bypass For Local

► **Deployment Rules**

[Back](#) [Next >](#)

https://web.mail.comcast.net/zimbra/mail?app=mail#1

Configure these settings:

[Configure Windows 10 settings](#) ▾

Configure Amazon settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile 'Configure' page for a VPN Policy. The interface includes a top navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'VPN Policy' and is divided into three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', several operating systems are listed with checkboxes: iOS, Android, Samsung SAFE, Samsung KNOX, Windows Tablet, Windows Phone, and Amazon (which is highlighted). The 'Policy Information' section contains the following fields:

- Connection name\* (text input)
- Vpn Type (dropdown menu, currently set to L2TP PSK)
- Server address\* (text input)
- User name (text input)
- Password (text input)
- L2TP Secret (text input)
- IPSec Identifier (text input)
- IPSec pre-shared key (text input)
- DNS search domains (text input)
- DNS servers (text input)
- Forwarding routes (text input)

At the bottom of the 'Policy Information' section, there is a 'Deployment Rules' link and two buttons: 'Back' and 'Next >'.

Configure these settings:

- **Connection name:** Enter a name for the connection.
- **Vpn type:** Click the connection type. Possible options are:
  - **L2TP PSK:** Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with pre-shared key authentication. This is the default.
  - **L2TP RSA:** Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with RSA authentication.
  - **IPSEC XAUTH PSK:** Internet Protocol Security with pre-shared key and extended authentication.
  - **IPSEC HYBRID RSA:** Internet Protocol Security with hybrid RSA authentication.
  - **PPTP:** Point-to-Point Tunneling.

The following sections list the configuration options for each of the preceding connection types.

- [Configure L2TP PSK settings](#) ▼
- [Configure L2TP RSA settings](#) ▼
- [Configure IPSEC XAUTH PSK settings](#) ▼

Configure IPSEC AUTH RSA settings



Configure IPSEC HYBRID RSA settings



Configure PPTP settings



7. Configure the deployment rules



8. Click **Next**, the **VPN Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for a VPN Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'VPN Policy' and contains a description: 'This policy lets you configure a VPN connection to provide a device-level encrypted connection to the intranet. For Windows Phone, the payloads are supported only on Windows 10 and later supervised devices.' The interface is divided into three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '2 Platforms' section lists various operating systems and devices, all of which are checked. The '3 Assignment' section is currently selected. Below the platforms, there is a 'Choose delivery groups' section with a search box and a list of groups: 'AllUsers' (checked) and 'sales' (unchecked). To the right, there is a 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' list containing 'AllUsers'. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**. This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.



**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Wallpaper device policy

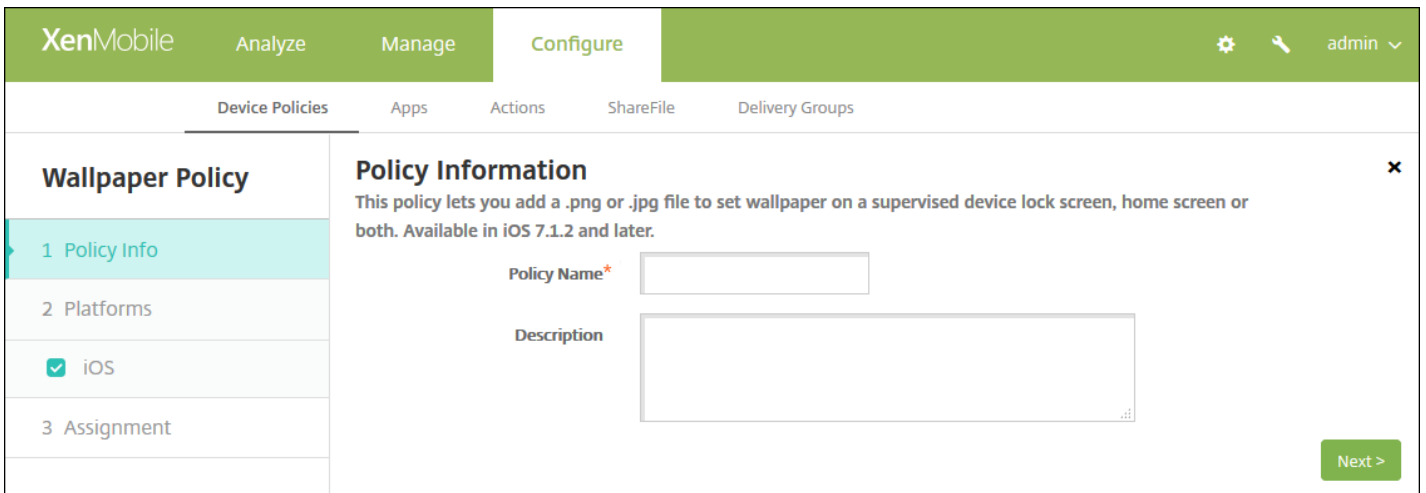
Feb 27, 2017

You can add a .png or .jpg file to set wallpaper on an iOS device lock screen, home screen, or both. Available in iOS 7.1.2 and later. To use different wallpaper on iPads and iPhones, you need to create different wallpaper policies and deploy them to the appropriate users.

The following table lists Apple's recommended image dimensions for iOS devices.

Device		Image dimensions in pixels
iPhone	iPad	
4, 4s		640 x 960
5, 5c, 5s		640 x 1136
6, 6s		750 x 1334
6 Plus		1080 x 1920
	Air, 2	1536 x 2048
	4, 3	1536 x 2048
	Mini 2, 3	1536 x 2048
	Mini	768 x 1024

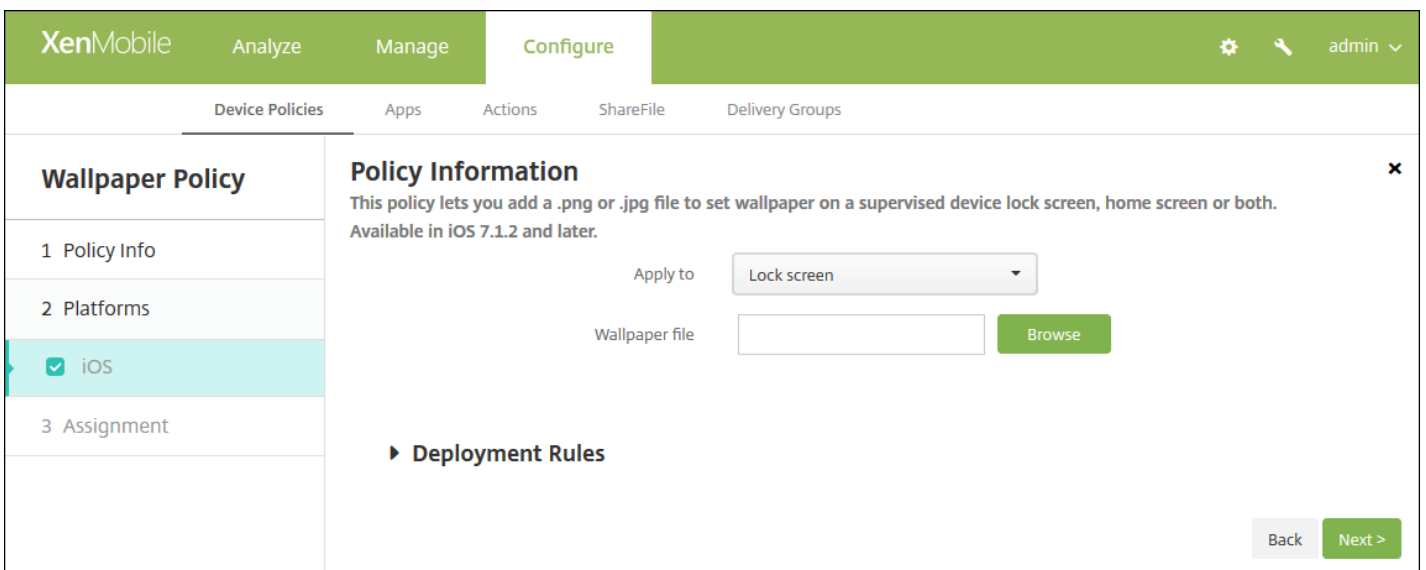
1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **End User**, click **Wallpaper**. The **Wallpaper Policy** page appears.



4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

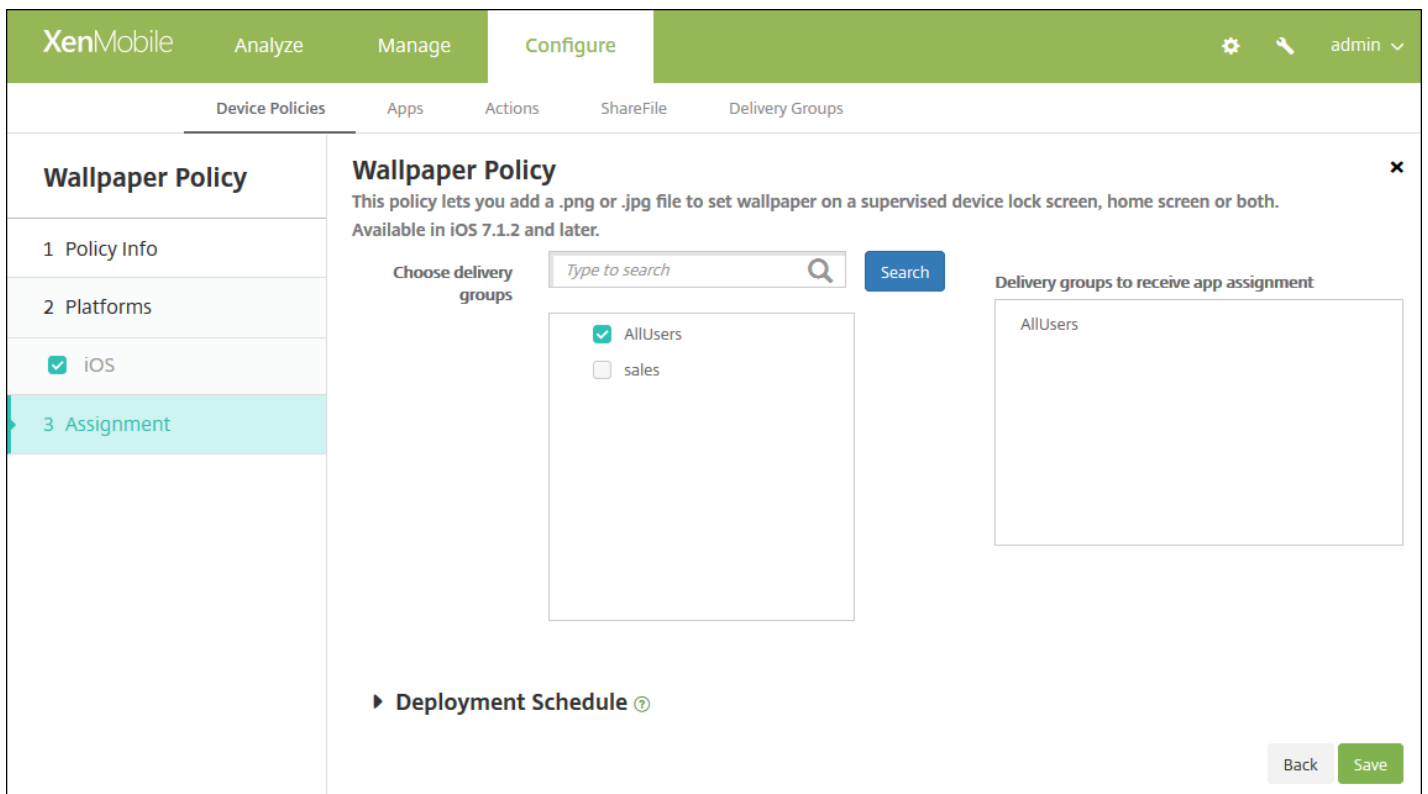


Configure these settings:

- **Apply to:** In the list, select **Lock screen, Home (icon list) screen,** or **Lock and home screens** to set where the wallpaper is to appear.
- **Wallpaper file:** Select the wallpaper file by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.

[7. Configure the deployment rules](#)

8. Click **Next**. The **Wallpaper Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply

11. Click **Save**.

# Web content filter device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can add a device policy in XenMobile to filter web content on iOS devices by using Apple's auto-filter function in conjunction with specific sites that you add to whitelists and blacklists. This policy is available only on iOS 7.0 and later devices in Supervised mode. For information about placing an iOS device into Supervised mode, see [To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator](#).

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **More** and then, under **Security**, click **Web Content Filter**. The **Web Content Filter Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Web Content Filter Policy' and has a sidebar on the left with three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '1 Policy Info' section is selected. The main area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains a text box for 'Policy Name\*' and a larger text box for 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the main area.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **iOS Platform** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Web Content Filter Policy' configuration page in XenMobile. The left sidebar has a 'Web Content Filter Policy' section with sub-items: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', '3 Assignment', and 'iOS' (which is selected). The main area is titled 'Policy Information' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you whitelist and blacklist specific URLs. The policy is supported only on iOS 7 and later supervised devices.' Below this, there are several sections: 'Filter type' (Built-in), 'Web Content Filter' (Auto filter enabled: OFF), 'Permitted URLs' (with an 'Add' button), 'Blacklisted URLs' (with an 'Add' button), 'Bookmark Whitelist' (with columns for URL\*, Bookmark Folder, Title\*, and an 'Add' button), and 'Policy Settings' (Remove policy: Select date, Duration until removal (in days) with a calendar icon, Allow user to remove policy: Always). At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

6. Configure these settings:

- **Filter type:** In the list, click either **Built-in** or **Plug-in**, and then follow the procedures that follow for the option you choose. The default is **Built-in**.

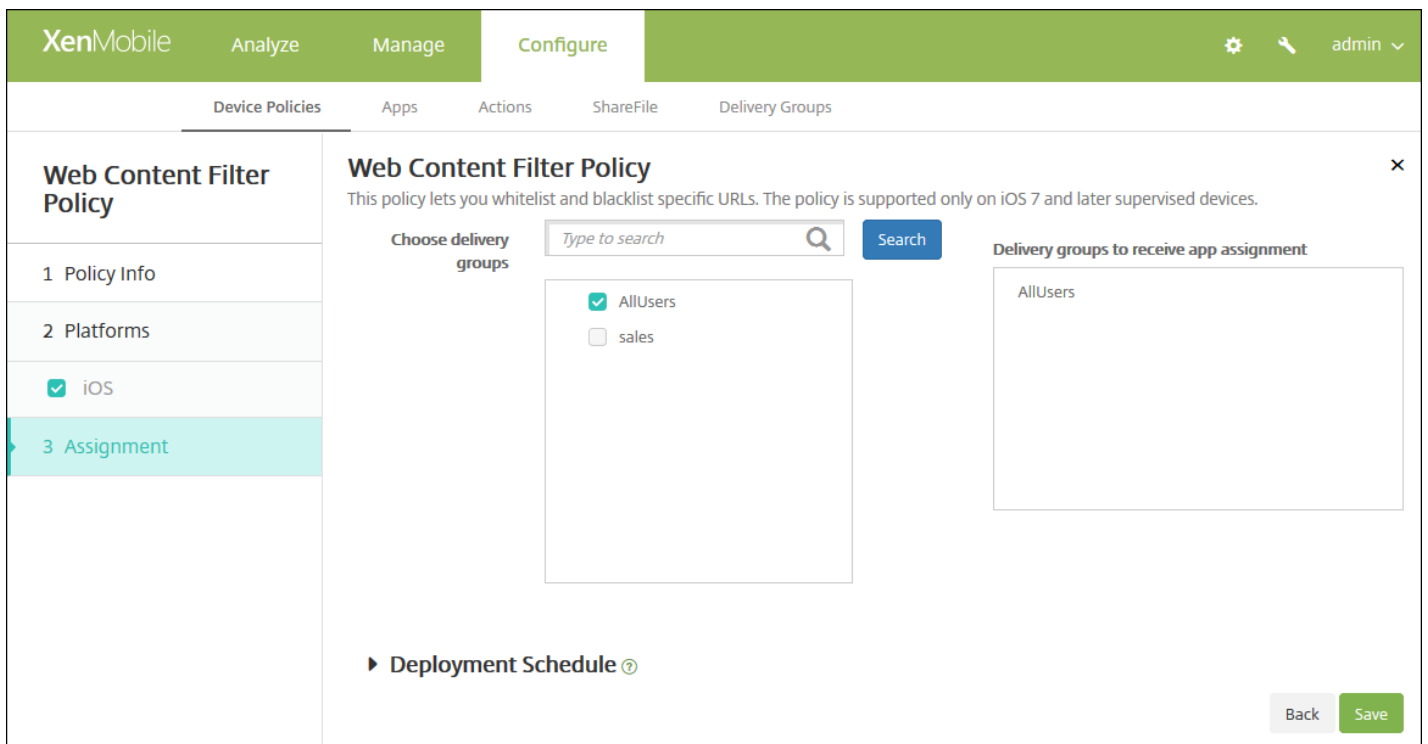
[Built-in filter type settings](#) ▼

[Plug-in filter type settings](#) ▼

- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

[7. Configure the deployment rules](#) ▼

8. Click **Next**. The **Web Content Filter Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Webclip device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can place shortcuts, or webclips, to websites to appear alongside apps on users' devices. You can specify your own icons to represent the webclips for iOS, Mac OS X, and Android devices; Windows tablet only requires a label and a URL.

[iOS settings](#)

[Mac OS X settings](#)

[Android settings](#)

[Windows Desktop/Tablet settings](#)

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Apps**, click **Webclip**. The **Webclip Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Webclip Policy' and is divided into three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The 'Policy Information' pane is active, displaying a description: 'This policy lets you place shortcuts, or webclips, to websites to appear alongside apps on devices.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' (a text box) and 'Description' (a larger text area). The 'Platforms' section in the sidebar shows four options, all of which are checked: iOS, Mac OS X, Android, and Windows Desktop/Tablet.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.



## Configure iOS settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for a Webclip Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Webclip Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you place shortcuts, or webclips, to websites to appear alongside apps on devices.' The interface is divided into three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', the 'iOS' checkbox is selected. The 'Policy Settings' section includes the following options: 'Label\*' (text input), 'URL\*' (text input with a help icon), 'Removable' (toggle set to OFF), 'Icon to be updated' (text input with a 'Browse' button), 'Precomposed icon' (toggle set to OFF), 'Full screen' (toggle set to OFF), 'Remove policy' (radio buttons for 'Select date' and 'Duration until removal (in days)', with 'Select date' selected), and 'Allow user to remove policy' (dropdown menu set to 'Always' with a help icon).

Configure these settings:

- **Label:** Type the label that is to appear with the webclip.
- **URL:** Type the URL associated with the webclip. The URL must begin with a protocol, for example, `http://server`.
- **Removable:** Select whether users can remove the webclip. The default is **OFF**.
- **Icon to be updated:** Select the icon to be used for the webclip by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.
- **Precomposed icon:** Select whether the icon has effects (rounded corners, drop shadow, and reflective shine) applied to it. The default is **OFF**, which adds the effects.
- **Full screen:** Select whether the linked web page opens in full-screen mode. The default is **OFF**.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

Configure Mac OS X settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile 'Configure' page for a 'Webclip Policy'. The interface includes a top navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is split into a left sidebar and a right configuration panel. The sidebar has sections for 'Webclip Policy', '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', 'Mac OS X', 'Android', and 'Windows Desktop/Tablet' are checked. The configuration panel has a title 'Webclip Policy' and a description: 'This policy lets you place shortcuts, or webclips, to websites to appear alongside apps on devices.' It contains several form fields: 'Label\*' (text input), 'URL\*' (text input with a help icon), 'Icon to be updated' (text input with a 'Browse' button), 'Policy Settings' section with 'Remove policy' options: 'Select date' (selected) and 'Duration until removal (in days)', a date picker, and 'Allow user to remove policy' (dropdown menu set to 'Always' with a help icon). At the bottom, there is a 'Deployment Rules' section with a right-pointing arrow.

Configure these settings:

- **Label:** Type the label that is to appear with the webclip.
- **URL:** Type the URL associated with the webclip. The URL must begin with a protocol, for example, http://server.
- **Icon to be updated:** Select the icon to be used for the webclip by clicking Browse and navigating to the file's location.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.
  - In the **Profile scope** list, click **User** or **System**. This option is available on OS X 10.7 and later.

Configure Android settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface for a Webclip Policy. The left sidebar has a 'Webclip Policy' header and three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', 'Android' is selected with a checkmark, while 'iOS' and 'Mac OS X' are unselected. The main content area is titled 'Webclip Policy' and includes the text: 'This policy lets you place shortcuts, or webclips, to websites to appear alongside apps on devices.' Below this, there are settings for 'Rule' (radio buttons for 'Add' and 'Remove', with 'Add' selected), 'Label\*' (text input field), 'URL\*' (text input field), and 'Define an icon' (toggle switch set to 'OFF'). A 'Deployment Rules' section is partially visible at the bottom.

Configure these settings:

- **Rule:** Select whether this policy adds or removes a webclip. The default is **Add**.
- **Label:** Type the label that is to appear with the webclip.
- **URL:** Type the URL associated with the webclip.
- **Define an icon:** Select whether to use an icon file. The default is **OFF**.
- **Icon file:** If **Define an icon** is **ON**, select the icon file to use by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.

Configure Windows Desktop/Tablet settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface for a Webclip Policy. The left sidebar has a 'Webclip Policy' header and three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', 'Windows Desktop/Tablet' is selected with a checkmark, while 'iOS' and 'Mac OS X' are unselected. The main content area is titled 'Webclip Policy' and includes the text: 'This policy lets you place shortcuts, or webclips, to websites to appear alongside apps on devices.' Below this, there are settings for 'Name\*' (text input field) and 'URL\*' (text input field). A 'Deployment Rules' section is partially visible at the bottom.

Configure these settings:

- **Name:** Type the label that is to appear with the webclip.
- **URL:** Type the URL associated with the webclip.

7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **Webclip Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for a Webclip Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Webclip Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you place shortcuts, or webclips, to websites to appear alongside apps on devices.' There is a search box for 'Choose delivery groups' with a 'Search' button. Below the search box is a list of delivery groups: 'AllUsers', 'DG-...', and 'DG-...'. A 'Deployment Schedule' section is partially visible at the bottom.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server**

**Properties.** The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.

- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply

11. Click **Save** to save the policy.

# WiFi device policy

Apr 24, 2017

You create new or edit existing WiFi device policies in XenMobile by using the **Configure > Device Policies** page. WiFi policies let you manage how users connect their devices to WiFi networks by defining the following items:

- Network names and types
- Authentication and security policies
- Proxy server use
- Other WiFi-related details

You can configure WiFi settings for users for the following platforms. Each platform requires a different set of values, which are described in detail in this article.

[iOS settings](#)

[Mac OS X settings](#)

[Android settings](#) (includes devices enabled for Android for Work)

[Windows Phone settings](#)

[Windows Desktop/Tablet settings](#)

## Important

Before you create a policy, be sure that you complete these steps:

- Create any delivery groups that you plan to use.
- Know the network name and type.
- Know any authentication or security types that you plan to use.
- Know any proxy server information that you might need.
- Install any necessary CA certificates.
- Have any necessary shared keys.
- Create the PKI entity for certificate-based authentication.
- Configure credential providers.

For more information, see [Authentication](#) and its subarticles.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Click **WiFi**. The **WiFi Policy** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### WiFi Policy

- 1 Policy Info
- 2 Platforms
  - iOS
  - Mac OS X
  - Android
  - Windows Phone
  - Windows Desktop/Tablet
  - Windows Mobile/CE
- 3 Assignment

### Policy Information

This policy lets you configure a WiFi profile for devices.

**Policy Name\***

**Description**

Next >

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 to set deployment rules for that platform.

Configure iOS settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### WiFi Policy

This policy lets you configure a WiFi profile for devices.

**1 Policy Info**

**2 Platforms**

- iOS
- Mac OS X
- Android
- Windows Phone
- Windows Desktop/Tablet
- Windows Mobile/CE

**3 Assignment**

**Network type**: Standard

**Network name\***:

**Hidden network (enable if network is open or off)**: OFF

**Auto join (automatically join this wireless network)**: ON

**Security type**: None

**Proxy server settings**

**Proxy configuration**: None

**Policy Settings**

**Remove policy**:  Select date  Duration until removal (in days)

**Allow user to remove policy**: Always

**Deployment Rules**

Back Next >

Configure these settings:

- **Network type:** In the list, choose **Standard**, **Legacy Hotspot**, or **Hotspot 2.0** to set the network type you plan to use.
- **Network Name:** Type the SSID that is seen in the list of available networks for the device. Does not apply to **Hotspot 2.0**.
- **Hidden network (enable if network is open or off):** Choose whether the network is hidden.
- **Auto join (automatically join this wireless network):** Choose whether the network is joined automatically. The default is **ON**.
- **Security type:** In the list, choose the security type you plan to use. Does not apply to **Hotspot 2.0**.
  - None - Requires no further configuration.
  - WEP
  - WPA/WPA2 Personal
  - Any (Personal)
  - WEP Enterprise
  - WPA/WPA2 Enterprise: For the latest release of Windows 10, use of WPA-2 Enterprise requires that you configure SCEP. XenMobile can then send the certificate to devices to authenticate to the WiFi server. To configure SCEP, go to Distribution page of **Settings > Credential Providers**. For more information, see [Credential providers](#).
  - Any (Enterprise)

The following sections list the options you configure for each of the preceding connection types.

WPA, WPA Personal, Any (Personal) ▼

WEP Enterprise, WPA Enterprise, WPA2 Enterprise, Any (Enterprise) ▼

- **Proxy server settings**
  - **Proxy configuration:** In the list, choose **None**, **Manual**, or **Automatic** to set how the VPN connection routes through a proxy server and then configure any additional options. The default is **None**, which requires no further configuration.
  - If you choose **Manual**, configure these settings:
    - **Hostname/IP address:** Type the host name or IP address of the proxy server.
    - **Port:** Type the proxy server port number.
    - **User name:** Type an optional user name to authenticate to the proxy server.
    - **Password:** Type an optional password to authenticate to the proxy server.
  - If you choose **Automatic**, configure these settings:
    - **Server URL:** Type URL of the PAC file that defines the proxy configuration.
    - **Allow direct connection if PAC is unreachable:** Choose whether to allow users to connect directly to the destination if the PAC file is unreachable. The default is **ON**. This option is available only on iOS 7.0 and later.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, choose either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.
  - If you choose **Select date**, click the calendar to choose the specific date for removal.
  - In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, choose **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  - If you choose **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.



The screenshot shows the 'Configure Mac OS X settings' page in the XenMobile console. The 'WiFi Policy' configuration is active, with 'Mac OS X' selected in the left-hand navigation pane. The main configuration area includes the following settings:

- Network type:** Standard
- Network name\*:** (Empty text field)
- Hidden network (enable if network is open or off):** OFF
- Auto join (automatically join this wireless network):** ON
- Security type:** None
- Proxy server settings:** Proxy configuration: None
- Policy Settings:**
  - Remove policy:** Select date
  - Allow user to remove policy:** Always
  - Profile scope:** User (OS X 10.7+)

At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **Network type:** In the list, choose **Standard**, **Legacy Hotspot**, or **Hotspot 2.0** to set the network type you plan to use.
- **Network Name:** Type the SSID that is seen in the list of available networks for the device. Does not apply to **Hotspot 2.0**.
- **Hidden network (enable if network is open or off):** Choose whether the network is hidden.
- **Auto join (automatically join this wireless network):** Choose whether the network is joined automatically. The default is **ON**.
- **Security type:** In the list, choose the security type you plan to use. Does not apply to **Hotspot 2.0**.
  - None - Requires no further configuration.
  - WEP
  - WPA/WPA2 Personal
  - Any (Personal)
  - WEP Enterprise
  - WPA/WPA2 Enterprise
  - Any (Enterprise)

The following sections list the options you configure for each of the preceding connection types.

WPA, WPA Personal, WPA 2 Personal, Any (Personal) ▾

WEP Enterprise, WPA Enterprise, WPA2 Enterprise, Any (Enterprise) ▾

- **Use as a Login Window configuration:** Choose whether to use the same credentials entered at the login window to authenticate the user.
- **Proxy server settings**
  - **Proxy configuration:** In the list, choose **None**, **Manual**, or **Automatic** to set how the VPN connection routes through a proxy server and then configure any additional options. The default is **None**, which requires no further configuration.
  - If you choose **Manual**, configure these settings:
    - **Hostname/IP address:** Type the host name or IP address of the proxy server.
    - **Port:** Type the proxy server port number.
    - **User name:** Type an optional user name to authenticate to the proxy server.
    - **Password:** Type an optional password to authenticate to the proxy server.
  - If you choose **Automatic**, configure these settings:
    - **Server URL:** Type URL of the PAC file that defines the proxy configuration.
    - **Allow direct connection if PAC is unreachable:** Choose whether to allow users to connect directly to the destination if the PAC file is unreachable. The default is **ON**. This option is available only on iOS 7.0 and later.
- **Policy Settings**
  - Next to **Remove policy**, choose either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in days)**.

- If you choose **Select date**, click the calendar to choose the specific date for removal.
- In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, choose **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
- If you choose **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.
- Next to **Profile scope**, choose either **User** or **System**. The default is **User**. This option is available only for OS X 10.7 and later.

#### Configure Android settings

#### Configure these settings:

- **Network name:** Type the SSID that is in the list of available networks on the user device.
- **Authentication:** In the list, choose the type of security to use with the WiFi connection.
  - Open
  - Shared
  - WPA
  - WPA-PSK
  - WPA2
  - WPA2-PSK
  - 802.1x EAP

The following sections list the options you configure for each of the preceding connection types.

- Open, Shared
- WPA, WPA-PSK, WPA2, WPA2-PSK
- 802.1x

- **Hidden network (Enable if network is open or off):** Choose whether the network is hidden.

#### Configure Windows Phone settings

**XenMobile** Analyze Manage **Configure**

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### WiFi Policy

This policy lets you configure a WiFi profile for devices.

**1 Policy Info**

**2 Platforms**

- iOS
- Mac OS X
- Android
- Windows Phone
- Windows Desktop/Tablet
- Windows Mobile/CE

**3 Assignment**

**Network name\***  ⓘ

**Authentication**

**Encryption**

**EAP Type**

**Connect if hidden**  OFF

**Connect automatically**  ON

**Push certificate via SCEP**  ON

**Credential provider for SCEP\***

**Proxy server settings**

**Host name or IP address**

**Port**

Configure these settings:

- **Network name:** Type the SSID that is in the list of available networks on the user device.
- **Authentication:** In the list, choose the type of security to use with the WiFi connection.
  - Open
  - WPA Personal
  - WPA-2 Personal
  - WPA-2 Enterprise: For the latest release of Windows 10, use of WPA-2 Enterprise requires that you configure SCEP. SCEP configuration enables XenMobile to send the certificate to devices to authenticate to the WiFi server. To configure SCEP, go to **Distribution** page of **Settings > Credential Providers**. For more information, see [Credential providers](#).

The following sections list the options you configure for each of the preceding connection types.

- Open ▼
- WPA Personal, WPA-2 Personal ▼
- WPA-2 Enterprise ▼

- **Proxy server settings**
  - **Host name or IP address:** Type the name or IP address of the proxy server.
  - **Port:** Type the port number for the proxy server.

Configure Windows Desktop/Tablet settings

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure**

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### WiFi Policy

This policy lets you configure a WiFi profile for devices.

**1 Policy Info**

**2 Platforms**

- iOS
- Mac OS X
- Android
- Windows Phone
- Windows Desktop/Tablet
- Windows Mobile/CE

**3 Assignment**

**OS version\*** 10

**Network name\*** WiFi\_24G

**Authentication** WPA-2 Enterprise

**Encryption** AES

**EAP Type** PEAP-MSCHAPv2

**Hidden network (enable if network is open or off)** OFF

**Connect automatically** ON

**Enable SCEP?** ON

**Credential provider for SCEP\*** certsrv-cpwifi

**Proxy server settings**

**Host name or IP address**

**Port**

Configure the following settings:

### Windows 10 settings

- **Authentication:** In the list, click the type of security to use with the WiFi connection.
  - Open
  - WPA Personal
  - WPA-2 Personal
  - WPA Enterprise
  - WPA-2 Enterprise: For the latest release of Windows 10, use of WPA-2 Enterprise requires that you configure SCEP. SCEP configuration enables XenMobile to send the certificate to devices to authenticate to the WiFi server. To configure SCEP, go to **Distribution** page of **Settings > Credential Providers**. For more information, see [Credential providers](#).

The following sections list the options you configure for each of the preceding connection types.

- Open
- WPA Personal, WPA-2 Personal
- WPA-2 Enterprise

Configure Windows Mobile/CE

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure admin

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### WiFi Policy

This policy lets you configure a WiFi profile for devices.

**1 Policy Info**

**2 Platforms**

- iOS
- Mac OS X
- Android
- Windows Phone
- Windows Desktop/Tablet
- Windows Mobile/CE

**3 Assignment**

**WiFi Policy**

**Network name\***

**Device-to-device connection (ad-hoc)**  OFF

**Network** Internet

**Authentication** Open

**Encryption** WEP

**Key provided (automatic)**  OFF

**Password**

**Key index** 1

**Deployment Rules**

Back Next >

Configure these settings:

- **Network name:** Type the SSID that is in the list of available networks on the user device.
- **Device-to-device connection (ad-hoc):** Allows two devices to connect directly. Default is **Off**.
- **Network:** Choose whether the device is connected to an external internet source or an Office intranet.
- **Authentication:** In the list, choose the type of security to use with the WiFi connection.
  - Open
  - WPA Personal
  - WPA-2 Personal
  - WPA-2 Enterprise

The following sections list the options you configure for each of the preceding connection types.

Open

WPA Personal, WPA-2 Personal

WPA-2 Enterprise

- **Key provided (automatic):** Choose whether the key is automatically provided. Default is **Off**.
- **Password:** Type the password in this field.
- **Key index:** Choose the key index. Available options are **1, 2, 3,** and **4**.

7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **WiFi Policy Assignment** page appears.

8. Click **Next**. The WiFi Policy **Assignment** page appears.

8. Click **Next**. The WiFi Policy **Assignment** page appears.

8. Click **Next**. The WiFi Policy **Assignment** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface for a WiFi Policy. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The main navigation menu has 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The left sidebar shows 'WiFi Policy' with three sub-sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '2 Platforms' section is expanded, showing checkboxes for 'iOS', 'Mac OS X', 'Android', 'Windows Phone', 'Windows Desktop/Tablet', and 'Windows Mobile/CE', all of which are checked. The main content area is titled 'WiFi Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you configure a WiFi profile for devices.' Below this is a 'Choose delivery groups' section with a search input field containing 'Type to search' and a 'Search' button. A list of delivery groups is shown: 'AllUsers' (checked), 'DG-ex12', and 'DG-Testprise'. To the right is a 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' section with a list containing 'AllUsers'. Below these sections is a 'Deployment Schedule' section with a dropdown arrow. At the bottom right of the main content area are 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Windows CE certificate device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can create a device policy in XenMobile to create and deliver Windows Mobile/CE certificates from an external PKI to users' devices. See [Certificates](#) for more information about Certificates and PKI entities.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **Security**, click **Windows CE Certificate**. The **Windows CE Certificate Policy** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Windows CE Certificate Policy' and is divided into two sections. On the left, there is a sidebar with a list of steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', '3 Assignment', and '4 Windows Mobile/CE' (which is checked). The main section is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the following text: 'This configuration allows you to create and deliver a certificate from an External PKI to your device.' Below this text are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the main section.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, type the following information:
  - **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
  - **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.
5. Click **Next**. The **Windows CE Certificate Policy Platform** information page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below these are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The left sidebar shows a tree view with 'Windows CE Certificate Policy' selected. The main content area is titled 'Policy Information' and contains the following fields:

- Credential Provider\*: None (dropdown)
- Password of generated PKCS#12\*: (text input)
- Destination folder: %My Documents% (dropdown)
- Destination file name\*: (text input)

Below these fields is a section for 'Deployment Rules'. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

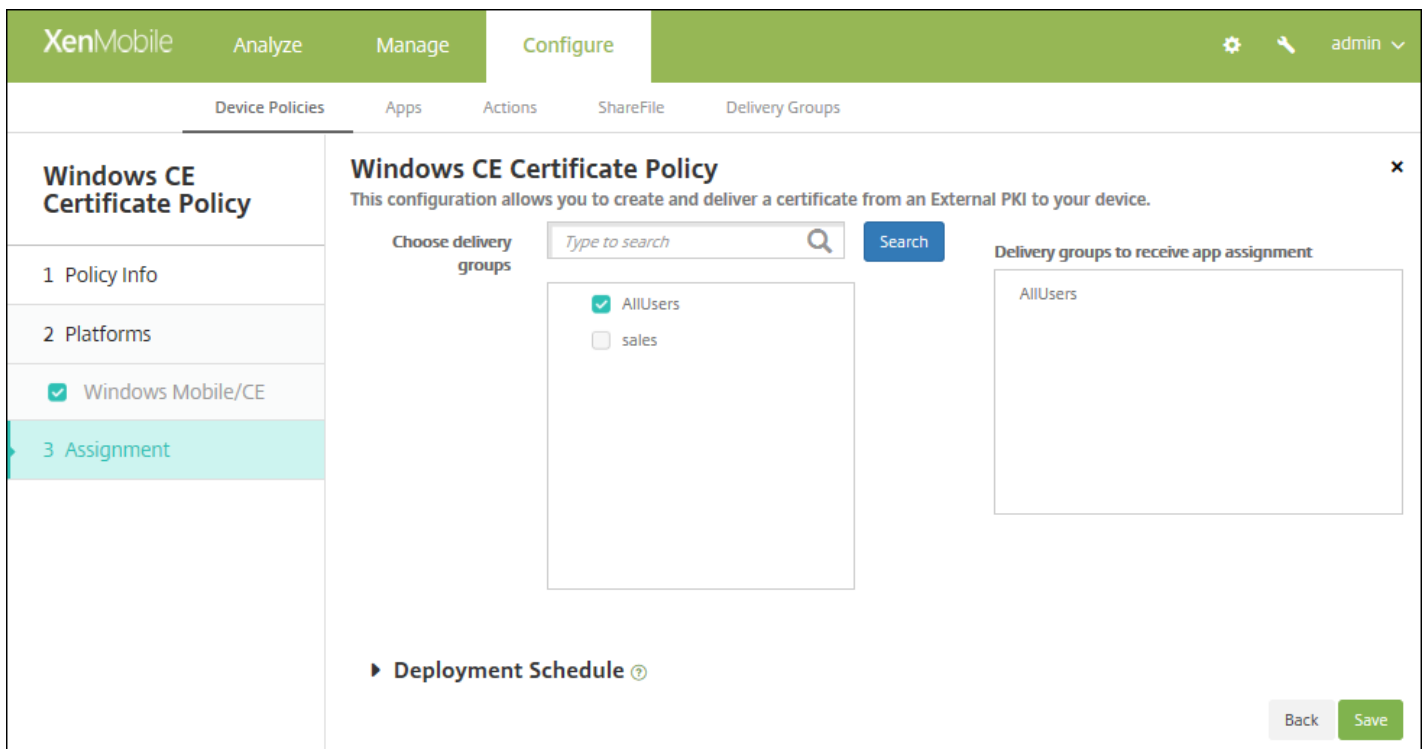
6. Configure these settings:

- **Credential provider:** In the list, click the credential provider. The default is **None**.
- **Password of generated PKCS#12:** Type the password used to encrypt the credential.
- **Destination folder:** In the list, click the destination folder for the credential or click **Add new** to add a folder not already in the list. The predefined options are:
  - %Flash Storage%\
  - %XenMobile Folder%\
  - %Program Files%\
  - %My Documents%\
  - %Windows%\
- **Destination file name:** Type the name of the credential file.

7. [Configure the deployment rules](#)

8. Click **Next**. The **Windows CE Certificate Policy** assignment page appears.





9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is On every connection.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is OFF.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# XenMobile options device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You add a XenMobile options policy to configure Secure Hub behavior when connecting to XenMobile from Android and Windows Mobile/CE devices.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **XenMobile agent**, click **XenMobile Options**. The **XenMobile Options Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar is green and contains the text 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', 'Configure', and 'admin'. Below the navigation bar, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'XenMobile Options Policy' and has a sub-header 'Policy Information'. Below the sub-header, there is a description: 'This policy lets you configure parameters for connections to XenMobile.' There are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. The 'Policy Name\*' field is a single-line text box, and the 'Description' field is a larger multi-line text box. To the left of the main content area, there is a sidebar with a list of steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. Under '2 Platforms', there are two checked checkboxes: 'Android' and 'Windows Mobile/CE'. At the bottom right of the main content area, there is a green button labeled 'Next >'. The top navigation bar also includes a gear icon, a magnifying glass icon, and a dropdown menu for 'admin'.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure Android settings

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' (which is active). Below these are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'XenMobile Options Policy' and includes a description: 'This policy lets you configure parameters for connections to XenMobile.' It is divided into two sections: 'Device agent configuration' and 'Remote support'. Under 'Device agent configuration', there are three settings: 'Traybar notification - hide traybar icon' (set to OFF), 'Connection time-out(s)\*' (set to 20), and 'Keep-alive interval(s)\*' (set to 120). Under 'Remote support', there are two settings: 'Prompt the user before allowing remote control' (set to OFF) and 'Before a file transfer' (set to 'Do not warn the user'). A 'Deployment Rules' section is partially visible at the bottom. On the left, a sidebar shows 'XenMobile Options Policy' and 'Platforms' with 'Android' and 'Windows Mobile/CE' selected. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **Traybar notification - hide traybar icon:** Select whether the traybar icon is hidden or visible. The default is **OFF**.
- **Connection: time-out(s):** Type the length of time in seconds that a connection can be idle before the connection times out. The default is 20 seconds.
- **Keep-alive interval(s):** Type the length of time in seconds to keep a connection open. The default is 120 seconds.
- **Prompt the user before allowing remote control:** Select whether to prompt the user before allowing remote support control. The default is **OFF**.
- **Before a file transfer:** In the list, click whether to warn the user about a file transfer or whether to ask the user for permission. Available values: **Do not warn the user**, **Warn the user**, and **Ask for user permission**. The default is **Do not warn the user**.

Configure Windows Mobile/CE settings

The screenshot displays the XenMobile configuration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'XenMobile Options Policy' and includes a sub-header 'This policy lets you configure parameters for connections to XenMobile.' The configuration is divided into several sections: 'Device agent configuration' with settings for backup configuration (Disabled), network connections (all ON), traybar notification (OFF), connection time-out (20s), and keep-alive interval (120s); 'Remote support' with 'Prompt the user before allowing remote control' set to OFF and 'Before a file transfer' set to 'Do not warn the user'; and a partially visible 'Deployment Rules' section. The left sidebar shows 'XenMobile Options Policy' with sections for '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms' (with 'Android' and 'Windows Mobile/CE' selected), and '3 Assignment'. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

Configure these settings:

- **Device agent configuration**
  - **XenMobile backup configuration:** In the list, click an option for backing up the XenMobile configuration on the users' devices. The default is **Disabled**. Available options are:
    - Disabled
    - At first connection after XenMobile installation
    - At first connection after each device reboot
  - **Connect to the office network**
  - **Connect to the Internet network**
  - **Connect to the built-in office network:** When set to **ON**, XenMobile automatically detects the network.
  - **Connect to the built-in Internet network:** When set to **ON**, XenMobile automatically detects the network.
  - **Traybar notification - hide traybar icon:** Select whether the traybar icon is hidden or visible. The default is **OFF**.
  - **Connection time-out(s):** Type the length of time in seconds that a connection can be idle before the connection times out. The default is 20 seconds.
  - **Keep-alive interval(s):** Type the length of time in seconds to keep a connection open. The default is 120 seconds.
- **Remote support**
  - **Prompt the user before allowing remote control:** Select whether to prompt the user before allowing remote support control. The default is **OFF**.

- **Before a file transfer:** In the list, click whether to warn the user about a file transfer or whether to ask the user for permission. Available values: **Do not warn the user**, **Warn the user**, and **Ask for user permission**. The default is **Do not warn the user**.

## 7. Configure the deployment rules

8. Click **Next**. The **XenMobile Options Policy** assignment page appears.

The screenshot shows the 'XenMobile Options Policy' configuration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The left sidebar shows the 'XenMobile Options Policy' with a list of sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', '3 Assignment' (highlighted), and 'Deployment Schedule'. The main content area is titled 'XenMobile Options Policy' and contains a description: 'This policy lets you configure parameters for connections to XenMobile.' Below this, there is a 'Choose delivery groups' section with a search bar and a list of groups: 'AllUsers' (checked) and 'sales' (unchecked). To the right, there is a 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' section with a list containing 'AllUsers'. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Save' buttons.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

### Note:

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# XenMobile uninstall device policy

Feb 27, 2017

You can add a device policy in XenMobile to uninstall XenMobile from Android and Window Mobile/CE devices. When deployed, this policy removes XenMobile from all devices in the deployment group.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under **XenMobile agent**, click **XenMobile Uninstall**. The **XenMobile Uninstall Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'XenMobile Uninstall Policy' and contains a 'Policy Information' section. This section has a description: 'This policy lets you choose to uninstall XenMobile on Android, Windows Mobile, and Windows CE devices upon deployment of the policy.' Below the description are two input fields: 'Policy Name\*' and 'Description'. The 'Policy Name\*' field is a text box, and the 'Description' field is a larger text area. To the left of the 'Policy Information' section is a sidebar with a list of steps: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '1 Policy Info' step is currently selected. Below the 'Policy Information' section is a 'Next >' button.

4. In the **Policy Information** pane, enter the following information:

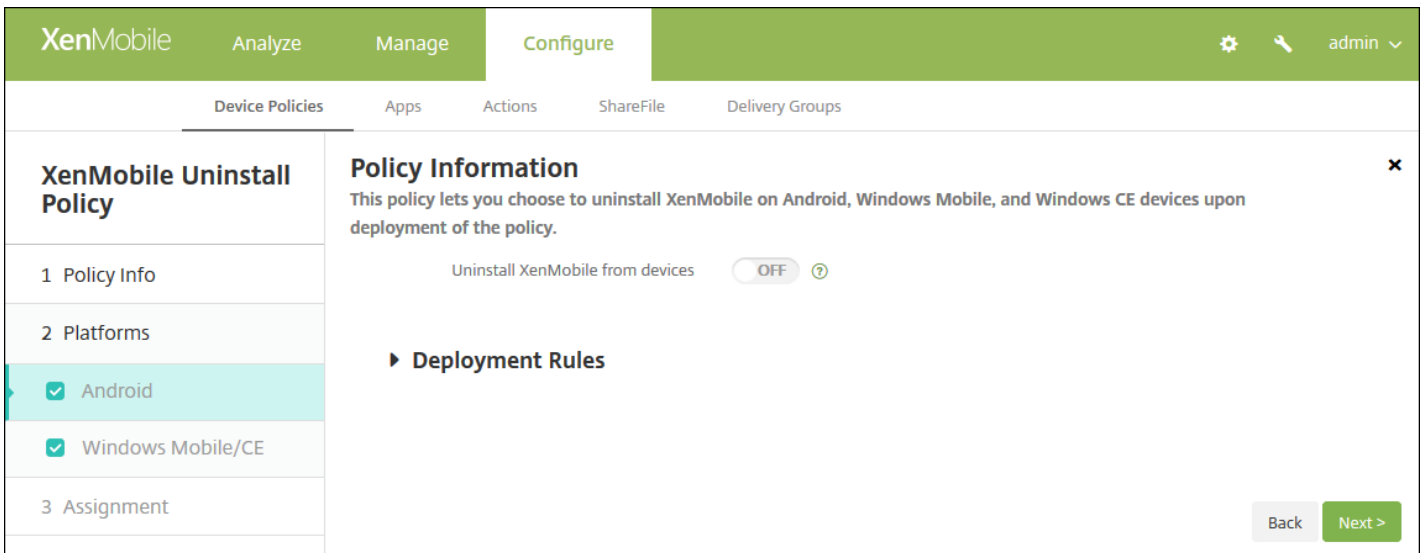
- **Policy Name:** Type a descriptive name for the policy.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click **Next**. The **Policy Platforms** information page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 7 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

Configure Android and Windows Mobile/CE settings

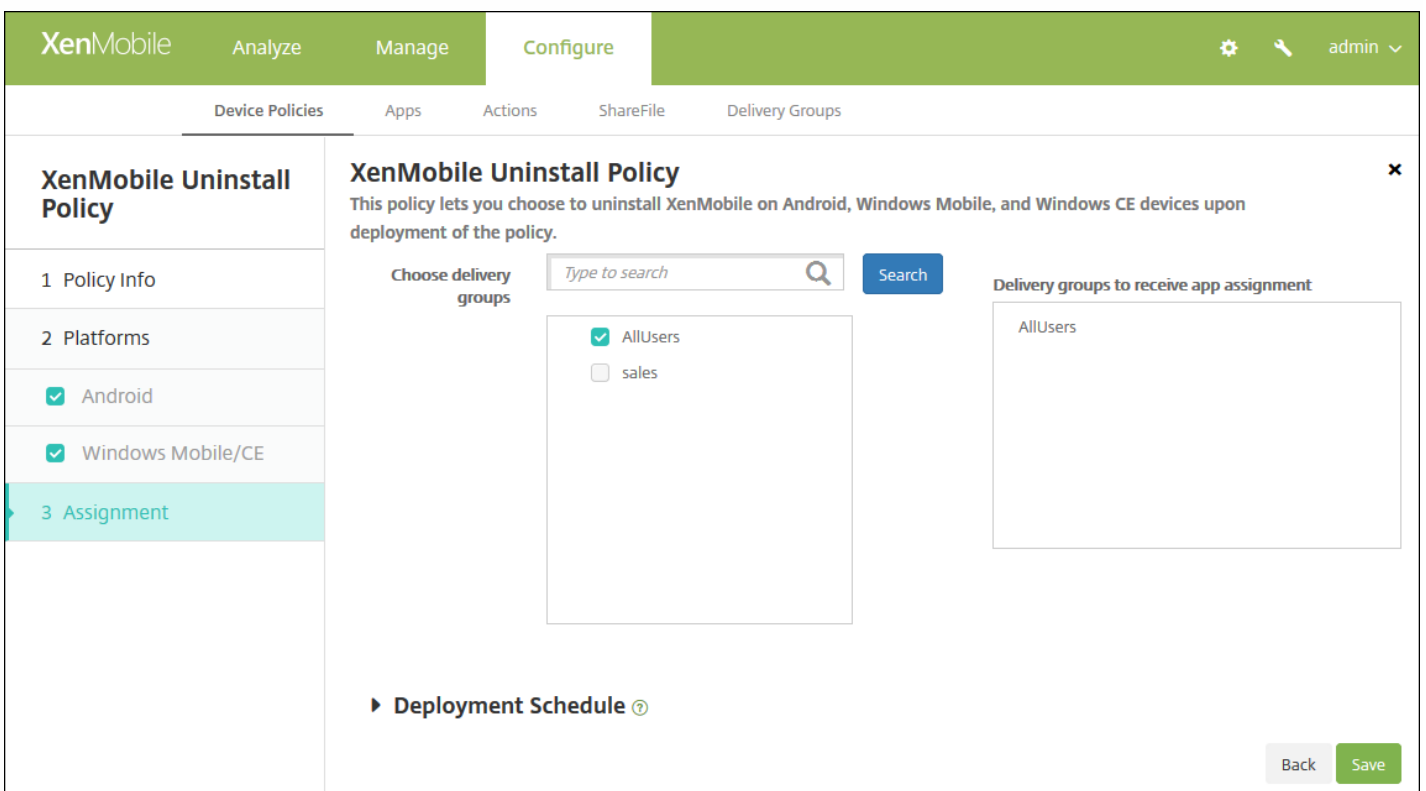


Configure this setting for each platform you choose:

- **Uninstall XenMobile from devices:** Select whether to uninstall XenMobile from every device to which you deploy this policy. The default is **OFF**.

7. [Configure the deployment rules](#)

8. Click **Next**. The **XenMobile Uninstall Policy** assignment page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want



to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

# Add apps

May 10, 2017

You add apps to XenMobile for management. You add the apps to the XenMobile console, where you can then arrange the apps in categories and deploy the apps to users.

You can add the following types of apps to XenMobile:

- **MDX.** These are apps wrapped with the MDX Toolkit (and associated policies). You deploy MDX apps that you get from internal and public stores.
- **Public App Store.** These apps include free or paid apps available in a public app store, such as iTunes or Google Play. For example, GoToMeeting.
- **Web and SaaS.** These apps include apps accessed from an internal network (web apps) or over a public network (SaaS). You can create your own apps, or choose from a set of app connectors for single sign-on authentication to existing Web apps. For example, GoogleApps\_SAML.
- **Enterprise.** These apps are native apps that are not wrapped with the MDX Toolkit and do not contain the policies associated with MDX apps.
- **Web Link.** This is a Web address (URL) to a public or private site, or to a web app that does not require single sign-on.

## Note

Citrix supports the silent installation of iOS and Samsung Android apps. Silent installation means that users are not prompted to install apps that you deploy to the device. The apps install silently in the background. You must meet these prerequisites to implement silent installation:

- For iOS apps, put the managed iOS device in supervised mode. For details, see [Import iOS & Mac OS X Profile device policies](#).
- For Android apps, enable Samsung for Enterprise (SAFE) or KNOX policies on the device. To do so, you set the Samsung MDM license key device policy to generate Samsung ELM and KNOX license keys. For details, see [Samsung MDM license key device policies](#).

## How Mobile and MDX Apps Work

XenMobile supports iOS, Android, and Windows apps, including XenMobile Apps, such as Secure Hub, Secure Mail and Secure Web, and the use of MDX policies. Using the XenMobile console, you can upload apps and then deliver the apps to user devices. In addition to the XenMobile Apps, you can add the following types of apps:

- Apps you develop for your users.
- Apps in which you want to allow or restrict device features by using MDX policies.

To distribute XenMobile Apps for iOS and Android, you download the public-store MDX files from Citrix, upload those files to the XenMobile console (**Configure > Apps**), update MDX policies as needed, and then upload the MDX files to the public app stores. For more information, see [Add an MDX app](#) in this article.

To distribute XenMobile Apps for Windows, you download the app files from Citrix, wrap them using the MDX toolkit, upload them to the XenMobile console, modify the MDX policies as needed, and deliver the apps to user devices through delivery groups. For details, see [Public App Store Delivery of XenMobile Apps](#) in the XenMobile Apps documentation.

Citrix provides the MDX Toolkit that wraps apps for iOS, Android, and Windows devices with Citrix logic and policies. The tool can securely wrap an app that was created within your organization or an app created outside the company.

### How Web and SaaS Apps Work

XenMobile comes with a set of application connectors, which are templates that you can configure for single sign-on (SSO) to web and Software as a Service (SaaS) applications. In some cases, you can configure the templates for user account creation and management. XenMobile includes Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) connectors. SAML connectors are used for web applications that support SAML protocol for SSO and user account management. XenMobile supports SAML 1.1 and SAML 2.0.

You can also build your own enterprise SAML connectors.

For more information, see [Add a Web or SaaS app](#) in this article.

### How Enterprise Apps Work

Enterprise applications typically reside in your internal network. Users can connect to the apps by using Secure Hub. When you add an enterprise app, XenMobile creates the app connector for it. For more information, see [Add an enterprise app](#) in this article.

### How the Public App Store Works

You can configure settings to retrieve app names and descriptions from the Apple App Store, Google Play, and the Windows Store. When you retrieve the app information from the store, XenMobile overwrites the existing name and description. For more information, see [Add a public app store app](#) in this article.

### How Web Links Work

A web link is a web address to an Internet or intranet site. A web link can also point to a web application that doesn't require SSO. When you finish configuring a web link, the link appears as an icon in the XenMobile Store. When users log on with Secure Hub, the link appears with the list of available apps and desktops. For more information, see [Add a Web Link app](#) in this article.

## Add an MDX app

When you receive a wrapped MDX mobile app for an iOS, Android, or Windows Phone device, you can upload the app to XenMobile. After you upload the app, you can configure app details and policy settings. For more information about the app policies that are available for each device platform type, see [MDX Policies at a Glance](#). Detailed policy descriptions also in that section.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Apps**. The **Apps** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** administrator

Device Policies **Apps** Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

**Apps** Show filter

Add | Category | Export

<input type="checkbox"/>	Icon	App Name	Type	Category	Created On	Last Updated	Disable	▼
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh viber	Public App Store	Default	10/18/16 7:55 AM	10/18/16 7:55 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh ebay	Public App Store	Default	10/18/16 8:04 AM	10/18/16 8:04 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh green	Enterprise	Default	10/18/16 8:07 AM	10/18/16 8:07 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh pink	Enterprise	Default	10/18/16 8:08 AM	10/18/16 8:08 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh web & saas	Web & SaaS	Default	10/18/16 8:09 AM	10/18/16 8:09 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh weblink	Web Link	Default	10/18/16 8:10 AM	10/18/16 8:10 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		MRF Android Enterprise TD	Enterprise	Default	10/18/16 8:12 AM	10/18/16 8:12 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh UWH	Enterprise	Default	10/18/16 8:17 AM	10/18/16 8:17 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh WW	MDX	Default	10/18/16 8:18 AM	10/18/16 8:18 AM		

2. Click **Add**. The **Add App** dialog box appears.

## Add App ✕

Click an app type and then follow the steps to add a deployable app. The app appears in the app table after you complete the steps.

**MDX**

Apps wrapped with the MDX Toolkit to include app policies. You can deploy MDX apps obtained from internal and public stores.

Example: WorxMail

**Public App Store**

Free or paid apps available in a public app store, such as iTunes or Google Play, for download.

Example: GoToMeeting

**Web & SaaS**

Apps accessed from an internal network (Web apps) or over a public network (SaaS). You can create your own apps or choose from a set of app connectors for single sign-on authentication to web apps.

Example: GoogleApps\_SAML

**Enterprise**

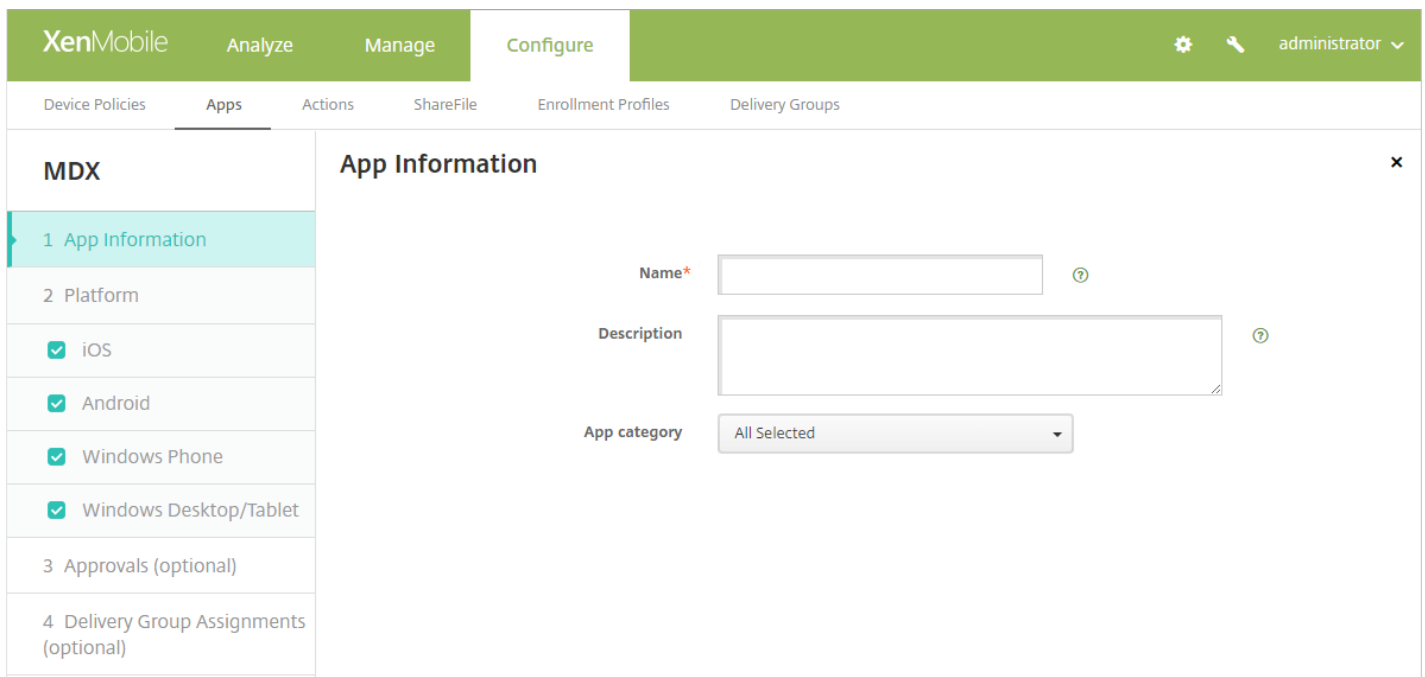
Native apps not wrapped with the MDX Toolkit and that do not contain the policies found in MDX apps.

Example: Quick-iLaunch

**Web Link**

A Web address (URL) to a public or private site or to a Web app that doesn't require single sign-on.

3. Click **MDX**. The **MDX App Information** page appears.



4. On the **App Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Name:** Type a descriptive name for the app. This will appear under **App Name** on the **Apps** table.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the app.
- **App category:** Optionally, in the list, click the category to which you want to add the app. For more information about app categories, see [Create app categories](#).

5. Click **Next**. The **App Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 11 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

7. Select an .mdx file to upload by clicking **Upload** and navigating to the file's location.

- If you are adding an iOS VPP B2B app, click **Your application is a VPP B2B application?** and in the list, click the B2B VPP account to use.

8. Click **Next**. The app details page appears.

9. Configure these settings:

- **File name:** Type the file name associated with the app.
- **App Description:** Type a description for the app.
- **App version:** Optionally, type the app's version number.
- **Minimum OS version:** Optionally, type the oldest operating system version that the device can run to use the app.
- **Maximum OS version:** Optionally, type the most recent operating system that the device must run to use the app.
- **Excluded devices:** Optionally, type the manufacturer or models of devices that cannot run the app.
- **Remove app if MDM profile is removed:** Select whether to remove the app from a device when the MDM profile is removed. The default is **ON**.
- **Prevent app data backup:** Select whether to prevent users from backing up app data. The default is **ON**.

- **Force app to be managed:** Select whether, when the app is installed unmanaged, to prompt users to allow the app to be managed on unsupervised devices. The default is **ON**. Available in iOS 9.0 and later.

10. Configure the **MDX Policies**. MDX policies vary by platform and include options for such policy areas as Authentication, Device Security, Encryption, App Interaction, and App Restrictions. In the console, each of the policies has a tooltip that describes the policy. For more information about app policies for MDX apps that includes a table showing which policies apply to which platform types, see [MDX Policies at a Glance](#).

11. [Configure the deployment rules.](#)

12. Expand **XenMobile Store Configuration**.

▼ **Store Configuration**

App FAQ

Add a new FAQ question and answer

App screenshots

Choose File

Choose File

Choose File

Choose File

Choose File

Choose File

Allow app ratings

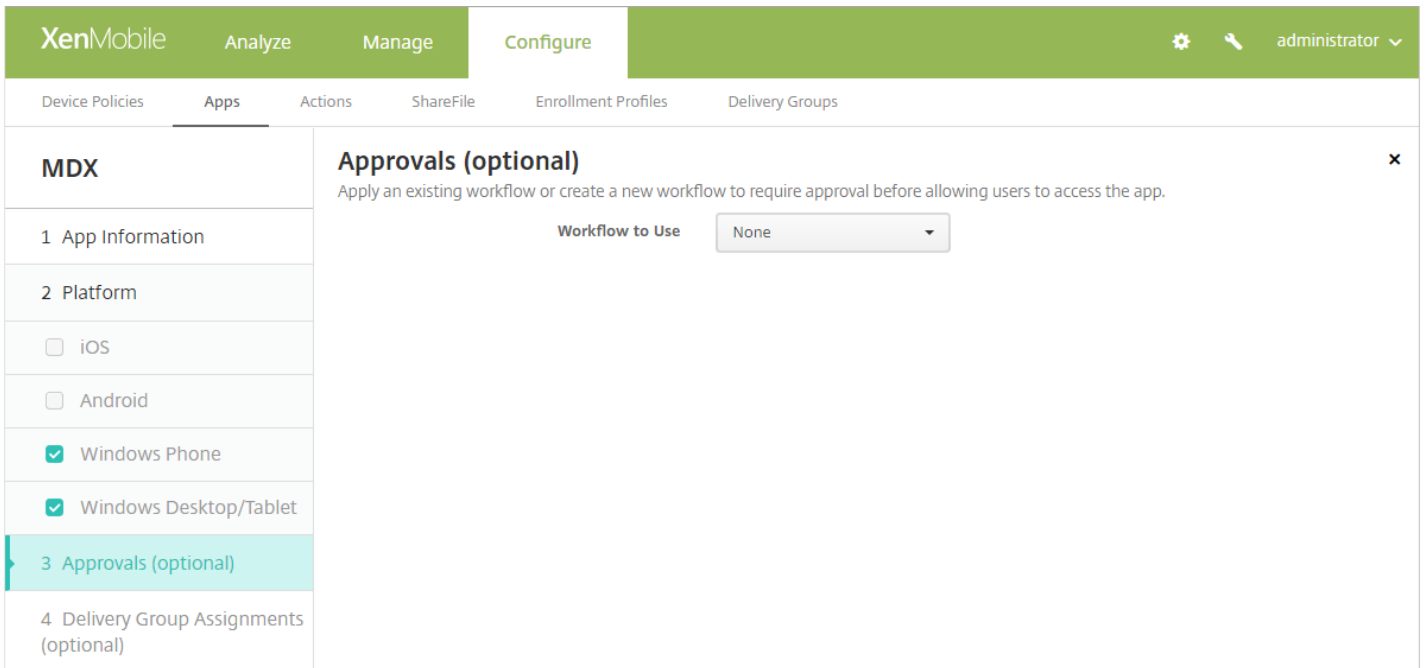
Allow app comments

Optionally, you can add an FAQ for the app or screen captures that appear in the XenMobile Store. You can also set whether users can rate or comment on the app.

- Configure these settings:
  - **App FAQ:** Add FAQ questions and answers for the app.
  - **App screenshots:** Add screen captures to help classify the app in the XenMobile Store. The graphic you upload must be a PNG. You cannot upload a GIF or JPEG image.

- **Allow app ratings:** Select whether to permit a user to rate the app. The default is **ON**.
- **Allow app comments:** Select whether to permit users to comment about the selected app. The default is **ON**.

13. Click **Next**. The **Approvals** page appears.



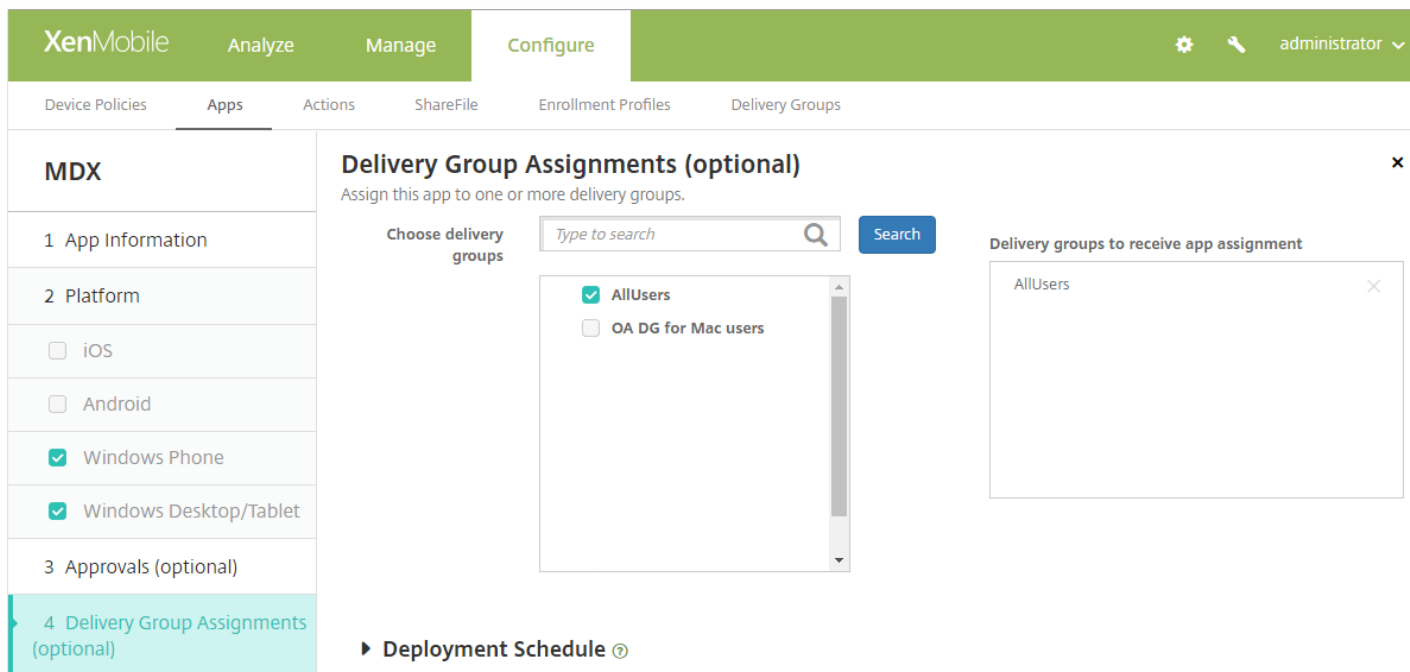
You use workflows when you need approval when creating user accounts. If you don't need to set up approval workflows, you can skip to Step 15.

Configure this setting if you need assign or create a workflow:

- **Workflow to Use:** In the list, click an existing workflow or click **Create a new workflow**. The default is **None**.
- If you select **Create a new workflow**, configure these settings. For more information, see [Create and manage workflows](#).
  - **Name:** Type a unique name for the workflow.
  - **Description:** Optionally, type a description for the workflow.
  - **Email Approval Templates:** In the list, select the email approval template to be assigned. When you click the eye icon to the right of this field, a dialog box appears where you can preview the template.
  - **Levels of manager approval:** In the list, select the number of levels of manager approval required for this workflow. The default is 1 level. Possible options are:
    - Not Needed
    - 1 level
    - 2 levels
    - 3 levels
  - **Select Active Directory domain:** In the list, select the appropriate Active Directory domain to be used for the workflow.
  - **Find additional required approvers:** Type the additional required person's name in the search field and then click **Search**. Names originate in Active Directory.
  - When the person's name appears in the field, select the check box next to his or her name. The person's name and email address appear in the **Selected additional required approvers** list.

- To remove a person from the **Selected additional required approvers** list, do one of the following:
  - Click **Search** to see a list of all the persons in the selected domain.
  - Type a full or partial name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the search results.
  - Persons in the **Selected additional required approvers** list have check marks next to their name in the search results list. Scroll through the list and clear the check box next to each name you want to remove.

14. Click **Next**. The **Delivery Group Assignment** page appears.



15. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the app. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

16. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to Deployment schedule, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

17. Click **Save**.

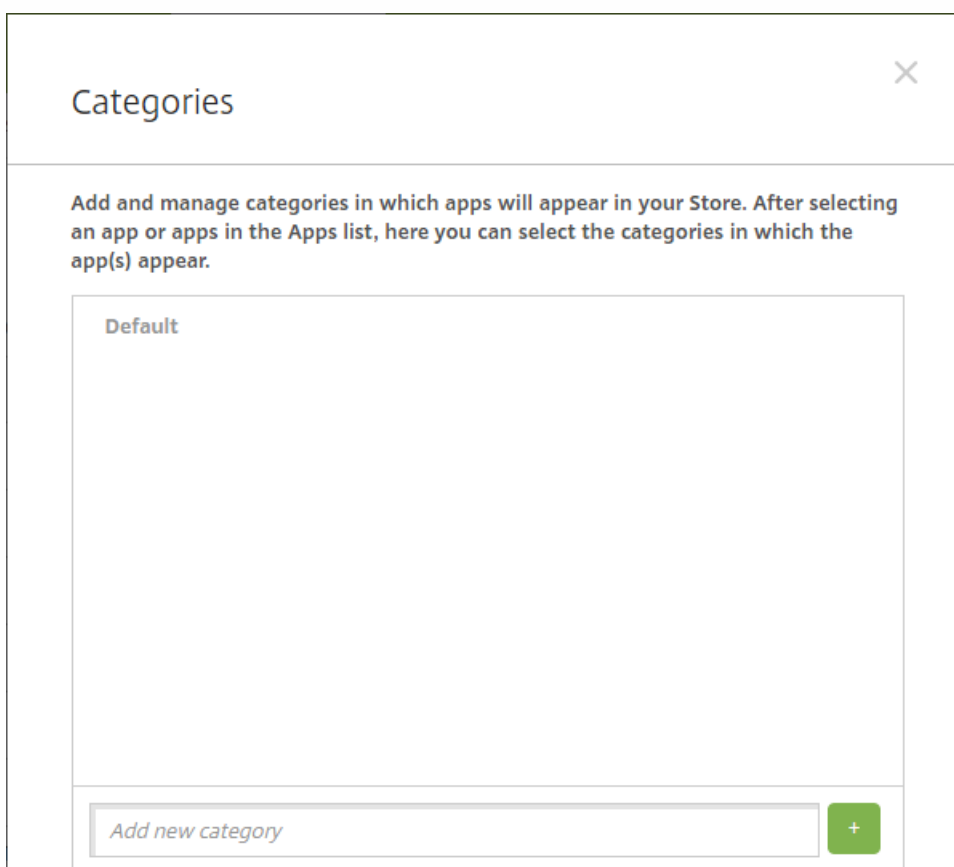


# Create app categories

When users log on to Secure Hub, they receive a list of the apps, web links, and stores that you have added and set up in XenMobile. You can use app categories to let users access only the apps, stores, or web links that you want. For example, you can create a Finance category and then add apps to the category that only pertain to finance. Or, you can configure a Sales category to which you assign sales apps.

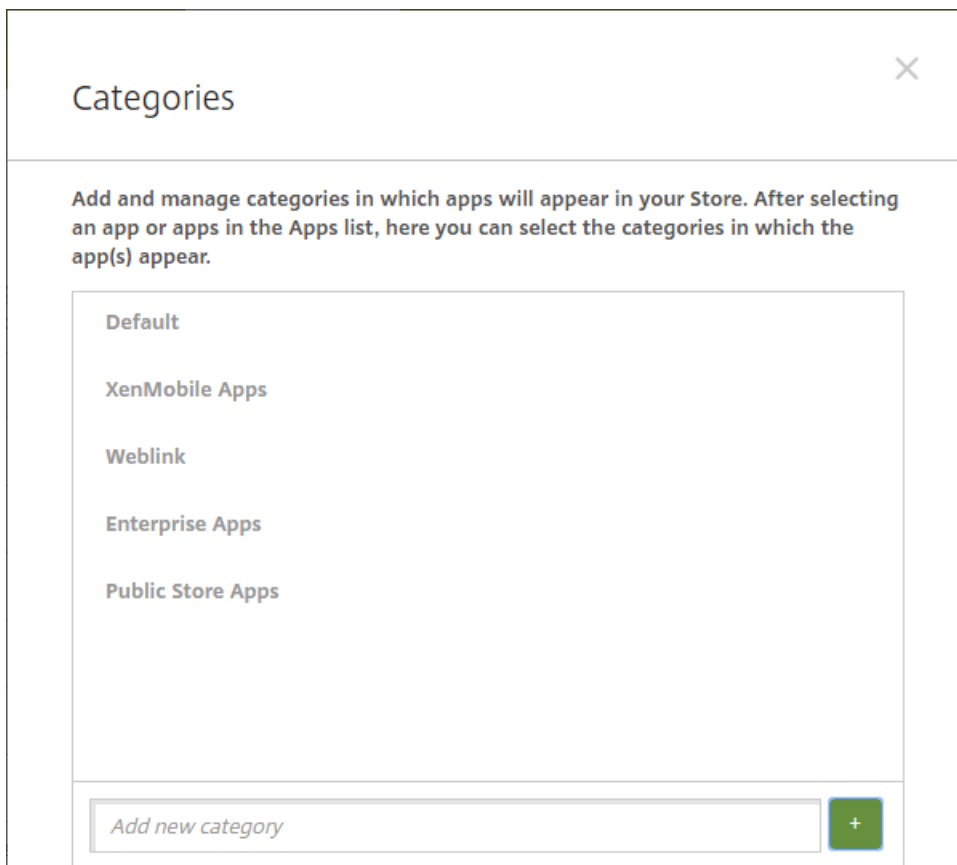
You configure categories on the **Apps** page in the XenMobile console. Then, when you add or edit an app, web link, or store, you can add the app to one or more of the categories you've configured.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Apps**. The **Apps** page appears.
2. Click **Category**. The **Categories** dialog box appears.



3. For each category you want to add, do the following:

- Type the name of the category you want to add in the **Add a new category** field at the bottom of the dialog box. For example, you could type Enterprise Apps to create a category for enterprise apps.
- Click the plus sign (+) to add the category. The newly created category is added and appears in the **Categories** dialog box.



4. When you're done adding categories, close the **Categories** dialog box.
5. On the **Apps** page, you can place an existing app into a new category.
  - Select the app you want to categorize.
  - Click **Edit**. The **App Information** page appears.
  - In the **App category** list, apply the new category by selecting the category check box. Clear the check boxes for any existing categories that you don't want to apply to the app.
  - Click the **Delivery Groups Assignments** tab or click **Next** on each of the following pages to step through the remaining app set-up pages.
  - Click **Save** on the **Delivery Groups Assignments** page to apply the new category. The new category is applied to the app and appears in the **Apps** table.

## Add a public app store app

You can add free or paid apps to XenMobile that are available in a public app store, such as iTunes or Google Play. For example, GoToMeeting. Also, when you add a paid public app store app for an Android for Work, you can review the Bulk Purchase licensing status - the total number of licenses available and the number currently in use, as well as the email address of each user consuming the licenses. The Bulk Purchase plan for Android for Work simplifies the process of finding, buying, and distributing apps and other data in bulk for an organization.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure** > **Apps**. The **Apps** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** administrator

Device Policies **Apps** Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

**Apps** [Show filter](#)

[Add](#) | [Category](#) | [Export](#)

<input type="checkbox"/>	Icon	App Name	Type	Category	Created On	Last Updated	Disable	▼
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh viber	Public App Store	Default	10/18/16 7:55 AM	10/18/16 7:55 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh ebay	Public App Store	Default	10/18/16 8:04 AM	10/18/16 8:04 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh green	Enterprise	Default	10/18/16 8:07 AM	10/18/16 8:07 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh pink	Enterprise	Default	10/18/16 8:08 AM	10/18/16 8:08 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh web & saas	Web & SaaS	Default	10/18/16 8:09 AM	10/18/16 8:09 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh weblink	Web Link	Default	10/18/16 8:10 AM	10/18/16 8:10 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		MRF Android Enterprise TD	Enterprise	Default	10/18/16 8:12 AM	10/18/16 8:12 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh UWH	Enterprise	Default	10/18/16 8:17 AM	10/18/16 8:17 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		hh WW	MDX	Default	10/18/16 8:18 AM	10/18/16 8:18 AM		

2. Click **Add**. The **Add App** dialog box appears.

## Add App ✕

Click an app type and then follow the steps to add a deployable app. The app appears in the app table after you complete the steps.

**MDX**

Apps wrapped with the MDX Toolkit to include app policies. You can deploy MDX apps obtained from internal and public stores.

Example: WorxMail

**Public App Store**

Free or paid apps available in a public app store, such as iTunes or Google Play, for download.

Example: GoToMeeting

**Web & SaaS**

Apps accessed from an internal network (Web apps) or over a public network (SaaS). You can create your own apps or choose from a set of app connectors for single sign-on authentication to web apps.

Example: GoogleApps\_SAML

**Enterprise**

Native apps not wrapped with the MDX Toolkit and that do not contain the policies found in MDX apps.

Example: Quick-iLaunch

**Web Link**

A Web address (URL) to a public or private site or to a Web app that doesn't require single sign-on.

3. Click **Public App Store**. The **App Information** page appears.

4. On the **App Information** pane, type the following information:

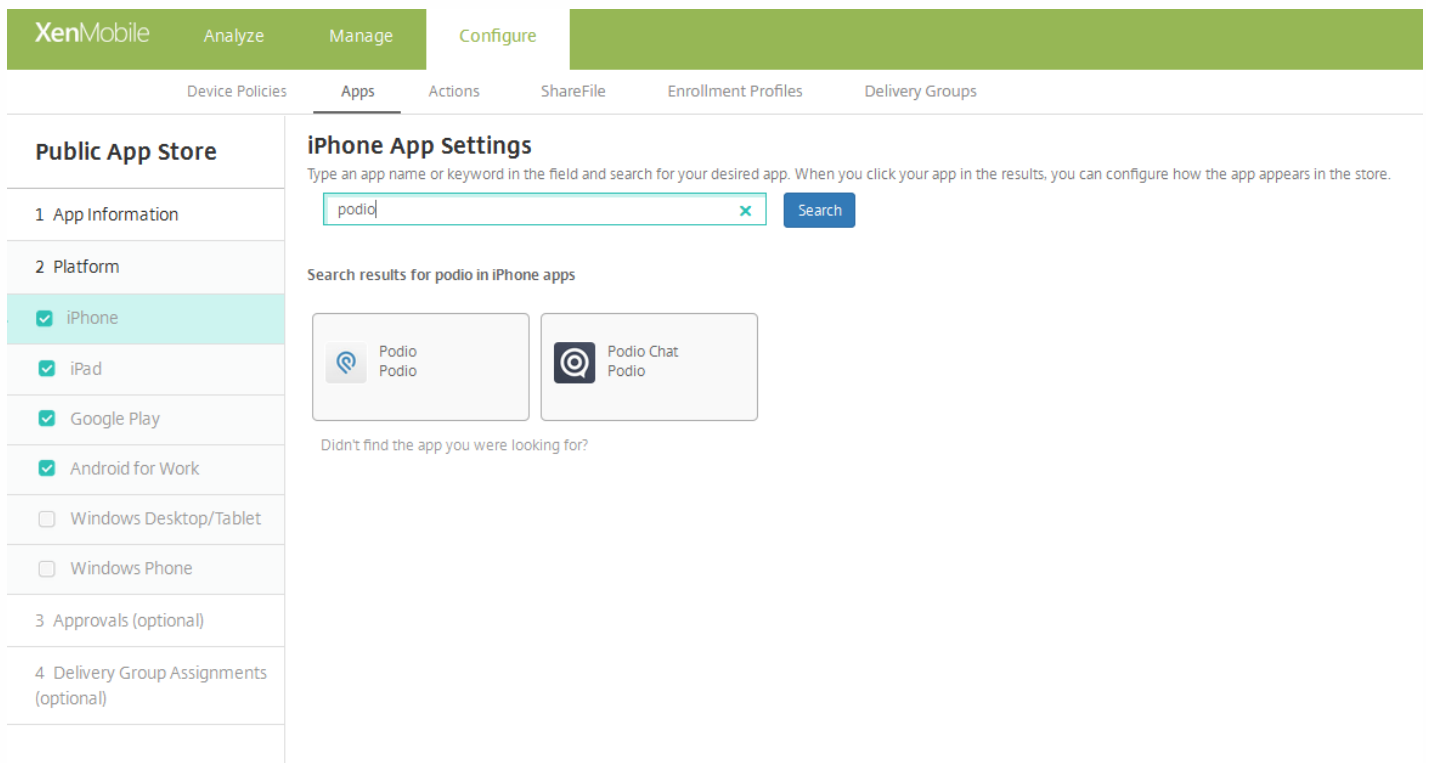
- **Name:** Type a descriptive name for the app. This will appear under **App Name** on the **Apps** table.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the app.
- **App category:** Optionally, in the list, click the category to which you want to add the app. For more information about app categories, see [Create app categories](#).

5. Click **Next**. The **App Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 10 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

7. Select an app to add by typing the app name in the search box and clicking **Search**. Apps matching the search criteria appear. The following figure shows the result of searching for "podio".



8. Click the app you want to add. The **App Details** fields are pre-populated with information related to the chosen app (including the name, description, version number, and associated image).

## App Details

The screenshot shows the 'App Details' configuration interface. It includes the following fields and controls:

- Name\***: Text input field containing 'Podio'.
- Description\***: Text area containing 'The ultimate companion app for Podio – enabling you to run your projects and collaborate with your team from anywhere.' and 'Take your content and conversations with you, no matter where your workday takes you.'
- Version**: Text input field containing '5.0.1'.
- Image**: Image selection icon.
- Paid app**: Toggle switch set to 'OFF'.
- Remove app if MDM profile is removed**: Toggle switch set to 'ON'.
- Prevent app data backup**: Toggle switch set to 'ON'.
- Force app to be managed**: Toggle switch set to 'OFF' with a help icon.
- Force license association to device**: Toggle switch set to 'ON'.

Navigation buttons: 'Back' (grey) and 'Next >' (green).

### 9. Configure these settings:

- If necessary, change the name and description for the app.
- **Paid app**: This field is preconfigured and cannot be changed.
- **Remove app if MDM profile is removed**: Select whether to remove the app if the MDM profile is removed. The default is **ON**.
- **Prevent app data backup**: Select whether to prevent the app from backing up data. The default is **ON**.
- **Force app to be managed**: Select whether, when the app is installed unmanaged, to prompt users to allow the app to be managed on unsupervised devices. The default is **OFF**. Available in iOS 9.0 and later.
- **Force license to association to device**: Select whether to associate an app that has been developed with device association enabled to a device rather than to a user. Available in IOS 9 and later. If the app you chose does not support assignment to a device, this field can't be changed.

### 10. Configure the deployment rules.

### 11. Expand **XenMobile Store Configuration**.

▼ **Store Configuration**

App FAQ

Add a new FAQ question and answer

App screenshots

Choose File

Choose File

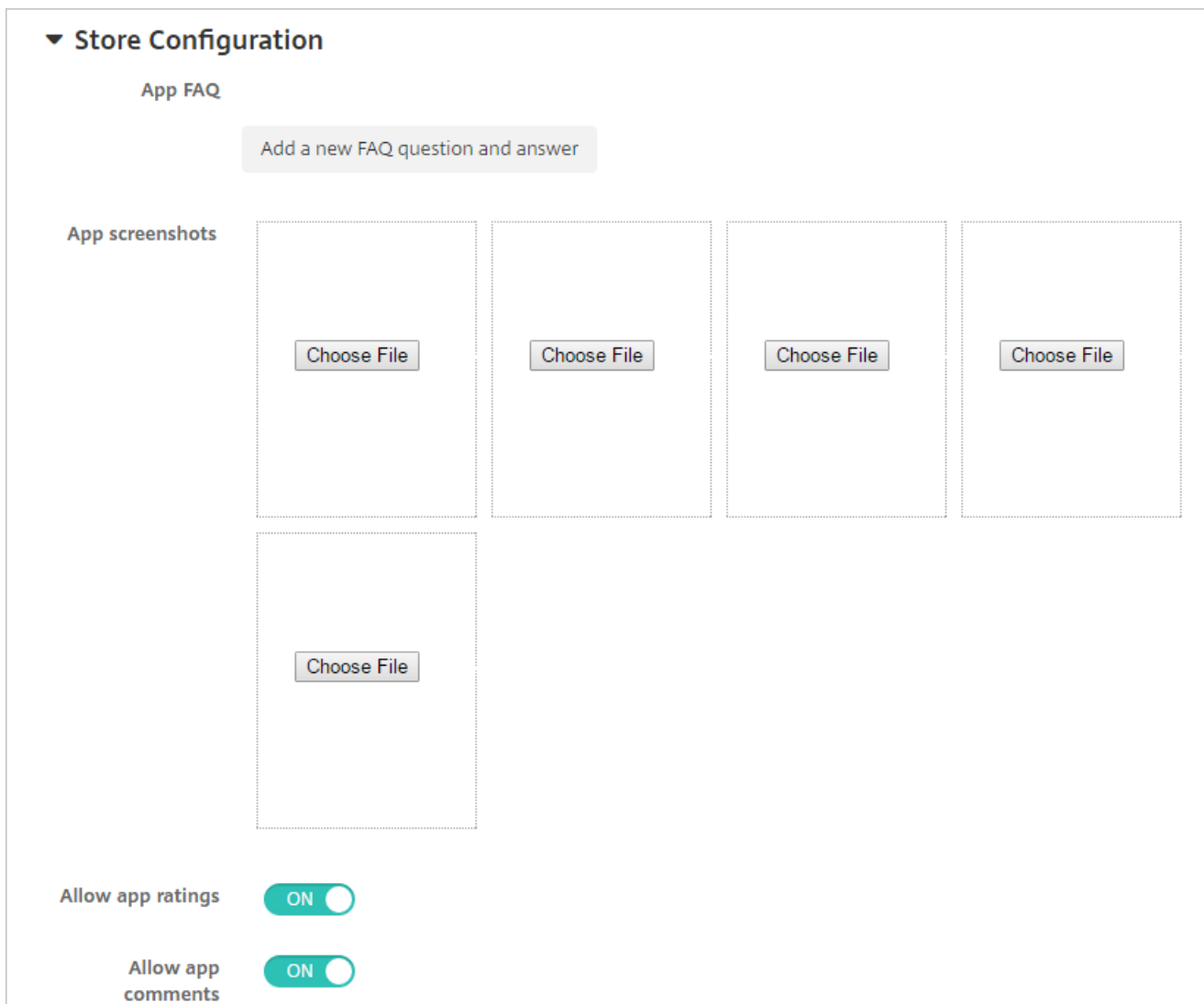
Choose File

Choose File

Choose File

Allow app ratings

Allow app comments

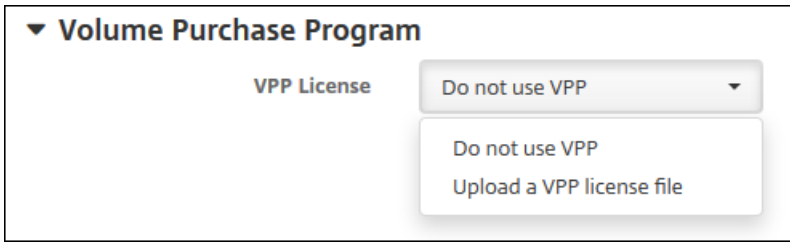


Optionally, you can add an FAQ for the app or screen captures that appear in the XenMobile Store. You can also set whether users can rate or comment on the app.

- Configure these settings:
  - **App FAQ:** Add FAQ questions and answers for the app.
  - **App screenshots:** Add screen captures to help classify the app in the XenMobile Store. The graphic you upload must be a PNG. You cannot upload a GIF or JPEG image.
  - **Allow app ratings:** Select whether to permit a user to rate the app. The default is ON.
  - **Allow app comments:** Select whether to permit users to comment about the selected app.

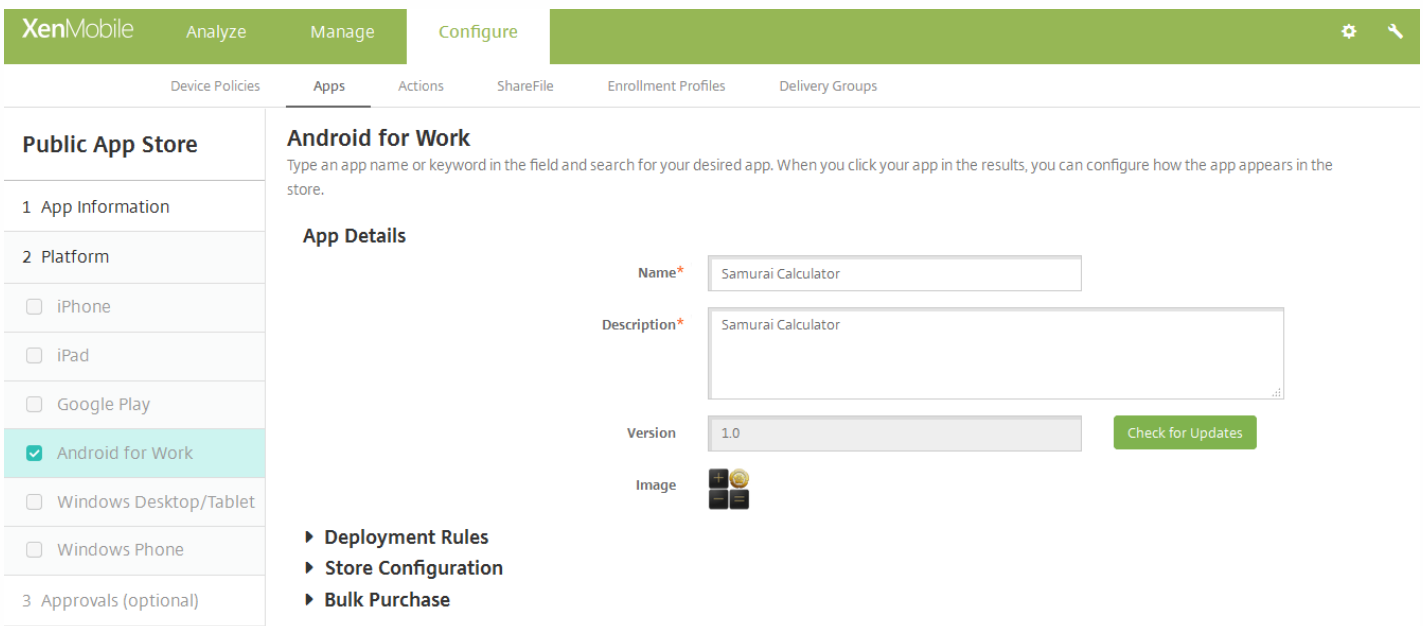
12. Expand **Volume Purchase Program** or in the case of Android for Work, expand **Bulk Purchase**.

For the Volume Purchase Program, complete the following steps.

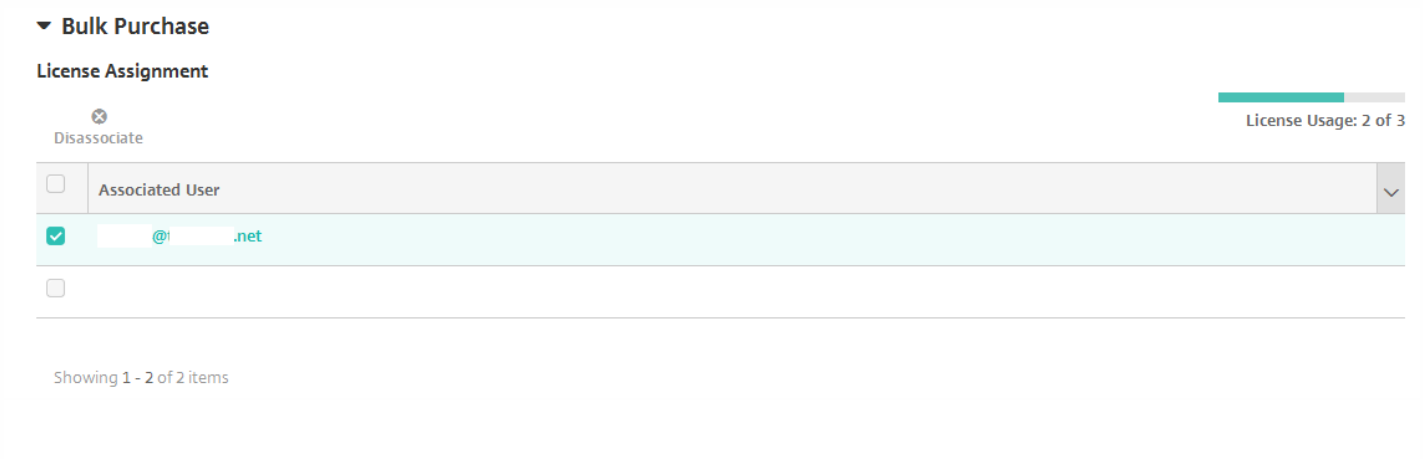


- a. In the **VPP license** list, click **Upload a VPP license** file if you want to enable XenMobile to apply a VPP license for the app.
- b. In the dialog box that appears, import the license.

For Android for Work Bulk Purchase, expand the **Bulk Purchase** section.



In the License Assignment table, you'll see how many licenses are currently being used for the app out of the total available. You can select a user and then click **Disassociate** to end their license assignment and free up a license for another user. You can only disassociate the license, however, if the user is not part of a delivery group that contains the specific app.



13. Click **Next**. The **Approvals** page appears.

You use workflows when you need approval when creating user accounts. If you don't need to set up approval workflows, you can skip to the next step.

Configure these settings if you need to assign or create a workflow:

- **Workflow to Use:** In the list, click an existing workflow or click **Create a new workflow**. The default is **None**.
- If you select **Create a new workflow**, configure these settings:
  - **Name:** Type a unique name for the workflow.
  - **Description:** Optionally, type a description for the workflow.
  - **Email Approval Templates:** In the list, select the email approval template to be assigned. When you click the eye icon to the right of this field, a dialog box appears where you can preview the template.
  - **Levels of manager approval:** In the list, select the number of levels of manager approval required for this workflow. The default is **1 level**. Possible options are:
    - Not Needed
    - 1 level
    - 2 levels
    - 3 levels
  - **Select Active Directory domain:** In the list, select the appropriate Active Directory domain to be used for the workflow.
  - **Find additional required approvers:** Type the additional required person's name in the search field and then click **Search**. Names originate in Active Directory.
  - When the person's name appears in the field, select the check box next to his or her name. The person's name and email address appear in the **Selected additional required approvers** list.
    - To remove a person from the **Selected additional required approvers** list, do one of the following:
      - Click **Search** to see a list of all the persons in the selected domain.
      - Type a full or partial name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the search results.
      - Persons in the **Selected additional required approvers** list have check marks next to their name in the search results list. Scroll through the list and clear the check box next to each name you want to remove.

14. Click **Next**. The **Delivery Group Assignment** page appears.

15. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the app. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

16. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.



- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

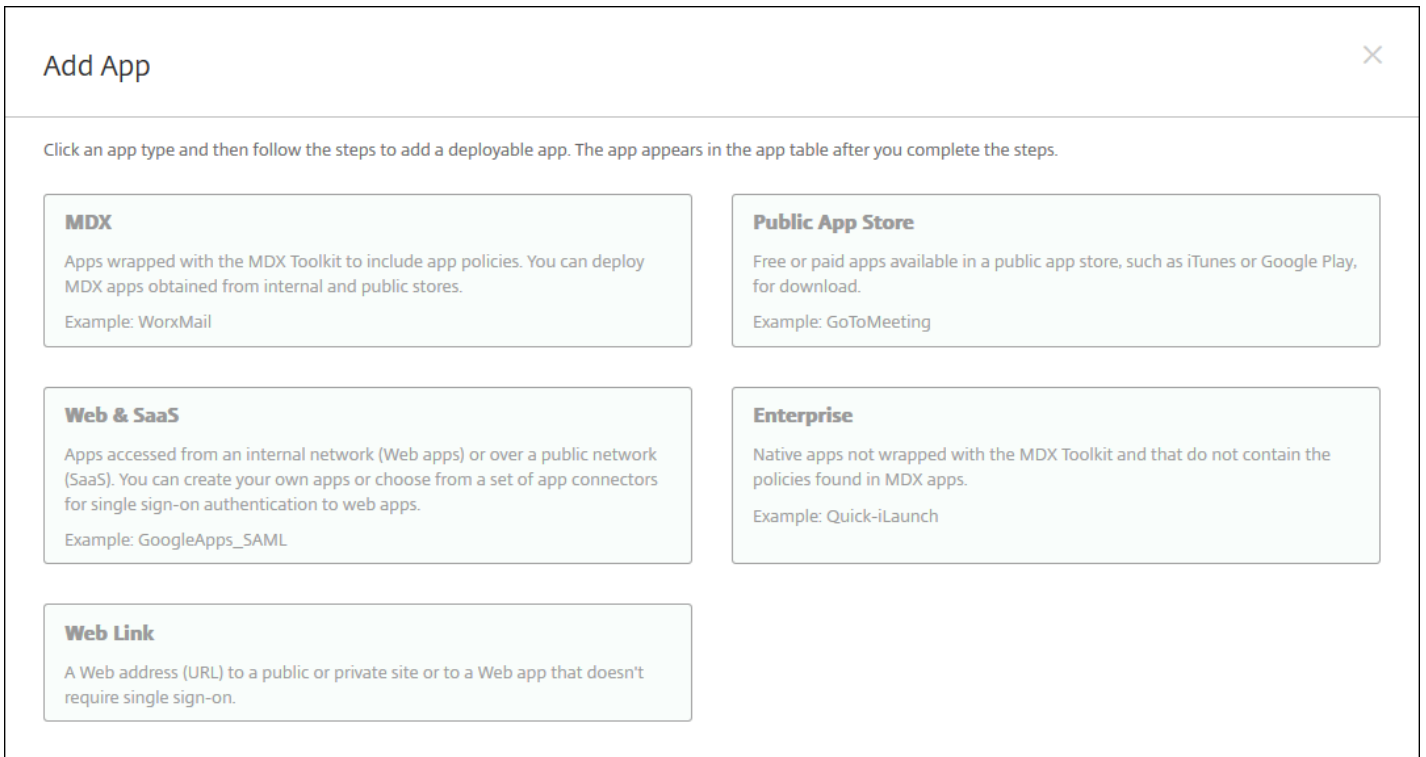
17. Click **Save**.

## Add a Web or SaaS app

Using the XenMobile console, you can give users single sign-on (SSO) authorization to your mobile, enterprise, web, and SaaS apps. You can enable apps for SSO by using application connector templates. For a list of connector types available in XenMobile, see [Application connector types](#). You can also you build your own connector in XenMobile when you add a Web or SaaS app.

If an app is available for SSO only, when you finish configuring the preceding settings, you save the settings and the app appears on the **Apps** tab in the XenMobile console.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Apps**. The **Apps** page opens.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add App** dialog box appears.

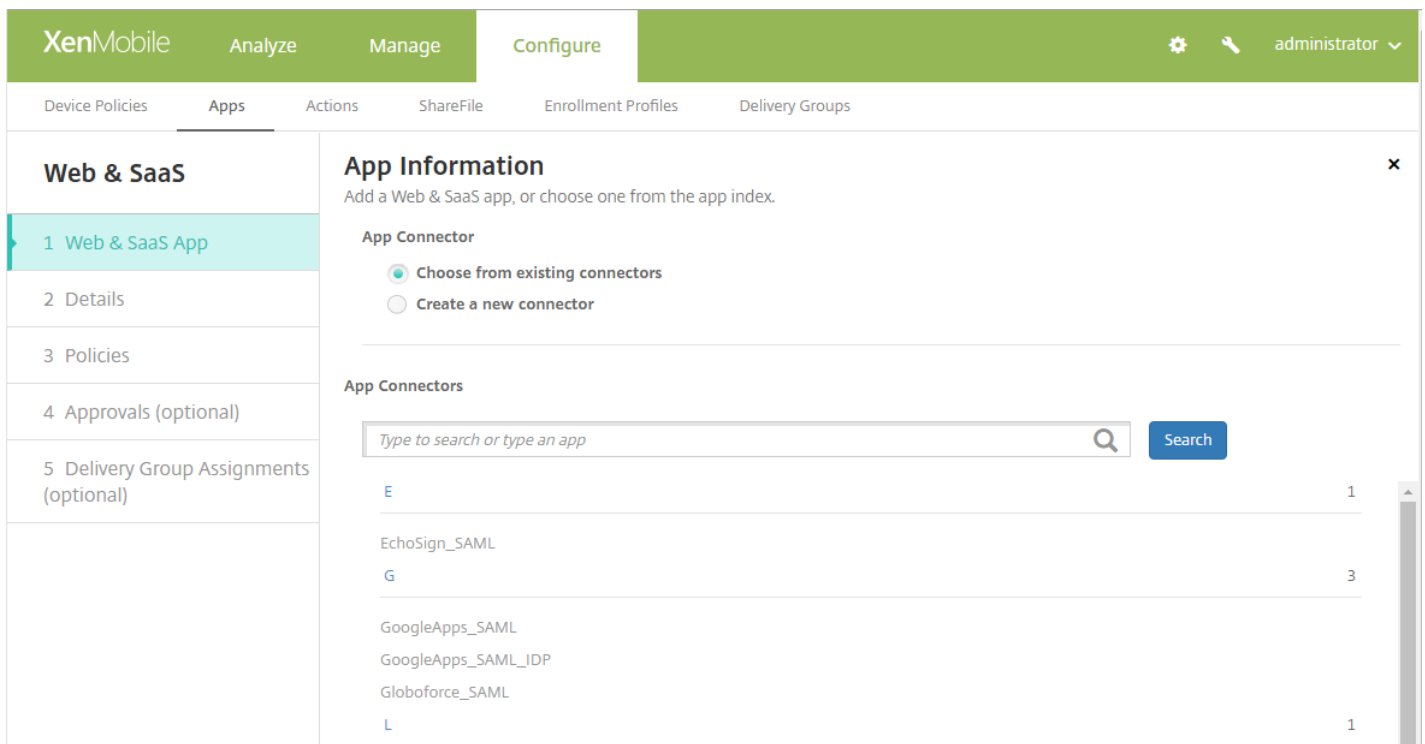


**Add App** ×

Click an app type and then follow the steps to add a deployable app. The app appears in the app table after you complete the steps.

- MDX**  
Apps wrapped with the MDX Toolkit to include app policies. You can deploy MDX apps obtained from internal and public stores.  
Example: WorxMail
- Public App Store**  
Free or paid apps available in a public app store, such as iTunes or Google Play, for download.  
Example: GoToMeeting
- Web & SaaS**  
Apps accessed from an internal network (Web apps) or over a public network (SaaS). You can create your own apps or choose from a set of app connectors for single sign-on authentication to web apps.  
Example: GoogleApps\_SAML
- Enterprise**  
Native apps not wrapped with the MDX Toolkit and that do not contain the policies found in MDX apps.  
Example: Quick-iLaunch
- Web Link**  
A Web address (URL) to a public or private site or to a Web app that doesn't require single sign-on.

3. Click **Web & SaaS**. The **App Information** page appears.



4. Configure an existing or new app connector, as follows.

### To configure an existing app connector

In the **App Information** page, **Choose from existing connectors** is already selected, as shown above. Click the connector you want to use in the **App Connectors** list. The app connector information appears.

Configure these settings:

- **App name:** Accept the pre-filled name or type a new name.
- **App description:** Accept the pre-filled description or type one of your own.
- **URL:** Accept the pre-filled URL or type the web address for the app. Depending on the connector you choose, this field may contain a placeholder that you must replace before you can move to the next page.
- **Domain name:** If applicable, type the domain name of the app. This field is required.
- **App is hosted in internal network:** Select whether the app is running on a server in your internal network. If users connect from a remote location to the internal app, they must connect through NetScaler Gateway. Setting this option to **ON** adds the VPN keyword to the app and allows users to connect through NetScaler Gateway. The default is **OFF**.
- **App category:** In the list, click an optional category to apply to the app.
- **User account provisioning:** Select whether to create user accounts for the application. If you use the Globoforce\_SAML connector, you must enable this option to ensure seamless SSO integration.
- If you enable **User account provisioning**, configure these settings:
  - **Service Account**
    - **User name:** Type the name of the app administrator. This field is required.
    - **Password:** Type the app administrator password. This field is required.
  - **User Account**
    - **When user entitlement ends:** In the list, click the action to take when users are no longer allowed access to the app. The default is Disable account. Possible options are:
      - Disable account

- Keep account
- Remove account
- **User Name Rule**
  - For each user name rule you want to add, do the following:
    - **User attributes:** In the list, click the user attribute to add to the rule.
    - **Length (characters):** In the list, click the number of characters from the user attribute to use in the user name rule. The default is **All**.
    - **Rule:** Each user attribute you add is automatically appended to the user name rule.
- **Password Requirement**
  - **Length:** Type the minimum user password length. The default is **8**.
- **Password Expiration**
  - **Validity (days):** Type the number of days the password is valid. Valid values are **0-90**. The default is 90.
  - **Automatically reset password after it expires:** Select whether to reset the password automatically when it expires. The default is **OFF**. If you don't enable this field, users can't open the app after their passwords expire.

### To configure a new app connector

In the **App Information** page, select **Create a new connector**. The app connector fields appear.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface with the 'Configure' tab active. The 'App Information' page is open, showing options to 'Choose from existing connectors' or 'Create a new connector'. The 'Create a new connector' option is selected. The form contains the following fields and options:

- Name\***: Text input field.
- Description\***: Text area.
- Logon URL\***: Text input field.
- SAML version**: Radio buttons for 1.1 (selected) and 2.0.
- Entity ID\***: Text input field.
- Relay state URL**: Text input field.
- Name ID format**: Radio buttons for Email Address (selected) and Unspecified.
- ACS URL\***: Text input field.
- Image**: Radio buttons for Use default (selected) and Upload your own app image.

An **Add** button is located at the bottom of the form.

Configure these settings:

- **Name:** Type a name for the connector. This field is required.
- **Description:** Type a description for the connector. This field is required.
- **Logon URL:** Type, or copy and paste, the URL where users log on to the site. For example, if the app you want to add has a logon page,, open a web browser and go to the logon page for the app. For example, it might be <http://www.example.com/logon>. This field is required.
- **SAML version:** Select either **1.1** or **2.0**. The default is **1.1**.
- **Entity ID:** Type the identity for the SAML app.
- **Relay state URL:** Type the web address for the SAML application. The relay state URL is the response URL from the app.
- **Name ID format:** Select either **Email Address** or **Unspecified**. The default is **Email Address**.
- **ACS URL:** Type the Assertion Consumer Service URL of the identity provider or service provider. The ACS URL gives users SSO capability.
- **Image:** Select whether to use the default Citrix image or to upload you own app image. The default is Use default.
  - If you want to upload your own image, select it by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location. The file must be a .PNG file; you can't upload a JPEG or GIF file. When you add a custom graphic, you can't change it at a later time.
  - When you're finished, click **Add**. The **Details** page appears.

5. Click **Next**. The **App Policy** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' section is active, showing a breadcrumb trail: 'Device Policies' > 'Apps' > 'Actions' > 'ShareFile' > 'Enrollment Profiles' > 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Apps' section is expanded to show 'Web & SaaS' with a sub-menu containing: '1 Web & SaaS App', '2 Details', '3 Policies' (highlighted), '4 Approvals (optional)', and '5 Delivery Group Assignments (optional)'. The 'App Policy' configuration page is displayed, with the following settings:

- Device Security:**
  - Block jailbroken or rooted: **ON**
- Network Requirements:**
  - WiFi required: **OFF**
  - Internal network required: **OFF**
  - Internal WiFi networks: (empty text box)

At the bottom of the configuration area, there is a 'Store Configuration' section and two buttons: 'Back' and 'Next >'.

- Configure these settings:
  - **Device Security**
    - **Block jailbroken or rooted:** Select whether to block jailbroken or rooted devices from accessing the app. The default is **ON**.

- **Network Requirements**

- **WiFi required:** Select whether a WiFi connection is required to run the app. The default is **OFF**.
- **Internal network required:** Select whether an internal network is required to run the app. The default is **OFF**.
- **Internal WiFi networks:** If you enabled WiFi required, type the internal WiFi networks to use.

6. Expand **XenMobile Store Configuration**.

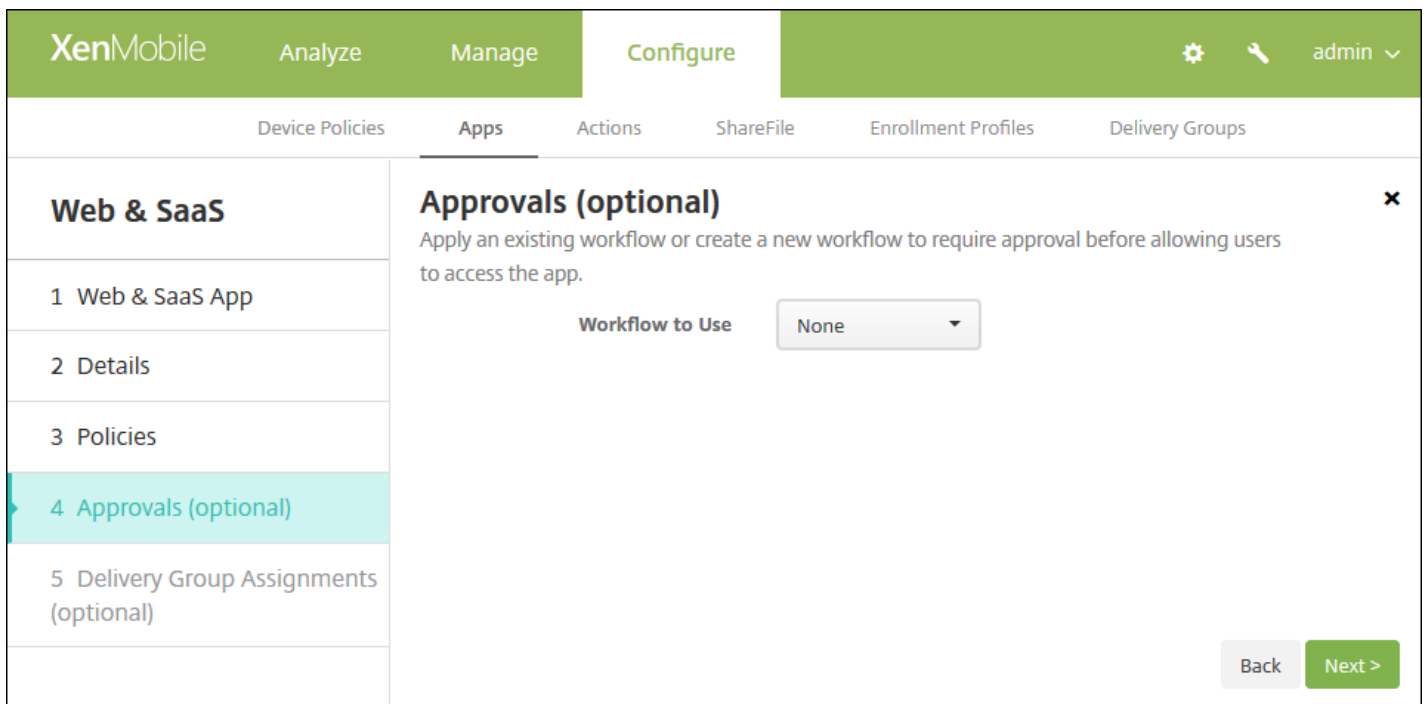
The screenshot shows the 'Store Configuration' section of the XenMobile Store interface. It is expanded to show three main areas:

- App FAQ:** A section with a sub-header 'App FAQ' and a button labeled 'Add a new FAQ question and answer'.
- App screenshots:** A section with a sub-header 'App screenshots' and five placeholder boxes, each containing a 'Choose File' button.
- Allow app ratings:** A toggle switch that is currently turned 'ON'.
- Allow app comments:** A toggle switch that is currently turned 'ON'.

Optionally, you can add an FAQ for the app or screen captures that appear in the XenMobile Store. You can also set whether users can rate or comment on the app.

- Configure these settings:
  - **App FAQ:** Add FAQ questions and answers for the app.
  - **App screenshots:** Add screen captures to help classify the app in the XenMobile Store. The graphic you upload must be a PNG. You cannot upload a GIF or JPEG image.
  - **Allow app ratings:** Select whether to permit a user to rate the app. The default is **ON**.
  - **Allow app comments:** Select whether to permit users to comment about the selected app. The default is **ON**.

7. Click **Next**. The **Approvals** page appears.

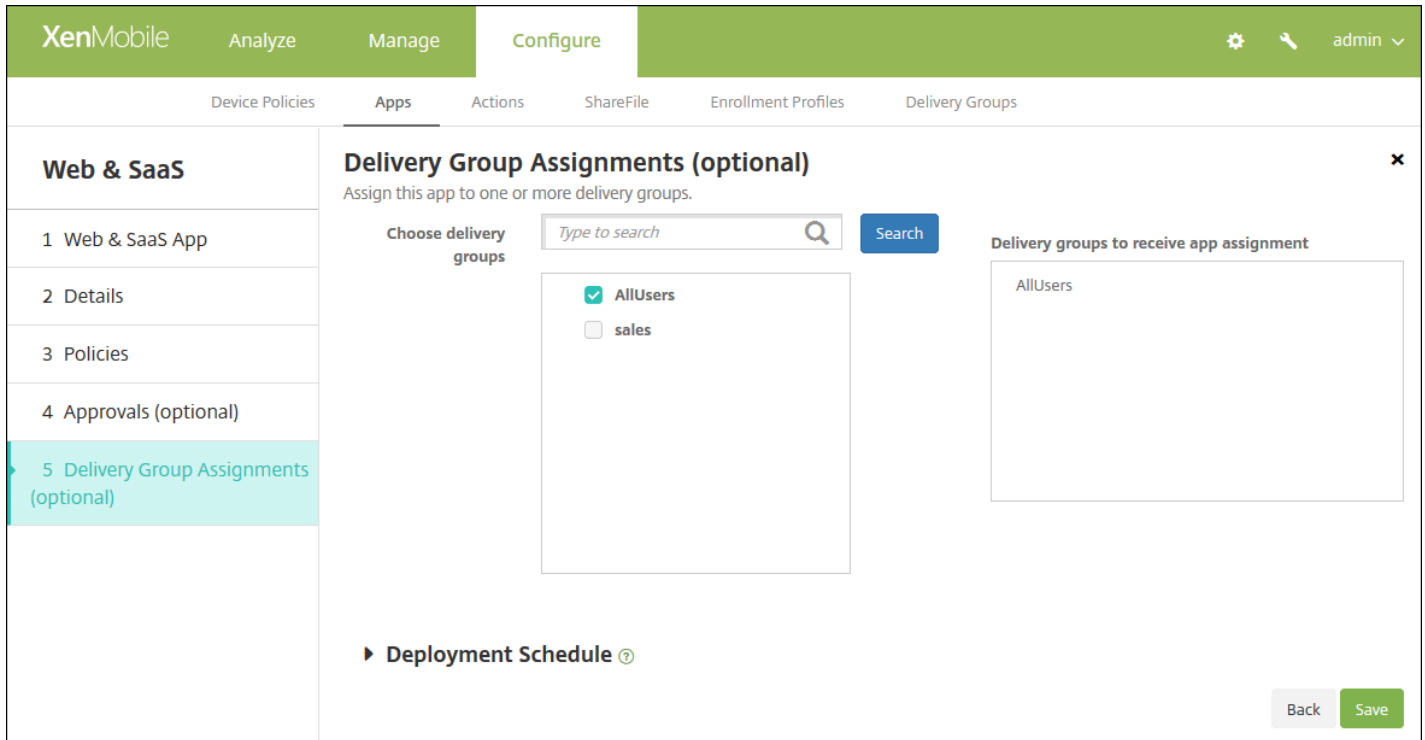


You use workflows when you need approval when creating user accounts. If you don't need to set up approval workflows, you can skip to Step 8.

Configure these settings if you need to assign or create a workflow:

- **Workflow to Use:** In the list, click an existing workflow or click **Create a new workflow**. The default is **None**.
- If you select **Create a new workflow**, configure these settings:
  - **Name:** Type a unique name for the workflow.
  - **Description:** Optionally, type a description for the workflow.
  - **Email Approval Templates:** In the list, select the email approval template to be assigned. When you click the eye icon to the right of this field, a dialog box appears where you can preview the template.
  - **Levels of manager approval:** In the list, select the number of levels of manager approval required for this workflow. The default is **1 level**. Possible options are:
    - Not Needed
    - 1 level
    - 2 levels
    - 3 levels
  - **Select Active Directory domain:** In the list, select the appropriate Active Directory domain to be used for the workflow.
  - **Find additional required approvers:** Type the additional required person's name in the search field and then click **Search**. Names originate in Active Directory.
  - When the person's name appears in the field, select the check box next to his or her name. The person's name and email address appear in the **Selected additional required approvers** list.
    - To remove a person from the **Selected additional required approvers** list, do one of the following:
      - Click **Search** to see a list of all the persons in the selected domain.
      - Type a full or partial name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the search results.
      - Persons in the **Selected additional required approvers** list have check marks next to their name in the search results list. Scroll through the list and clear the check box next to each name you want to remove.

8. Click **Next**. The **Delivery Group Assignment** page appears.



9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the app. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

11. Click **Save**.

## Add an enterprise app

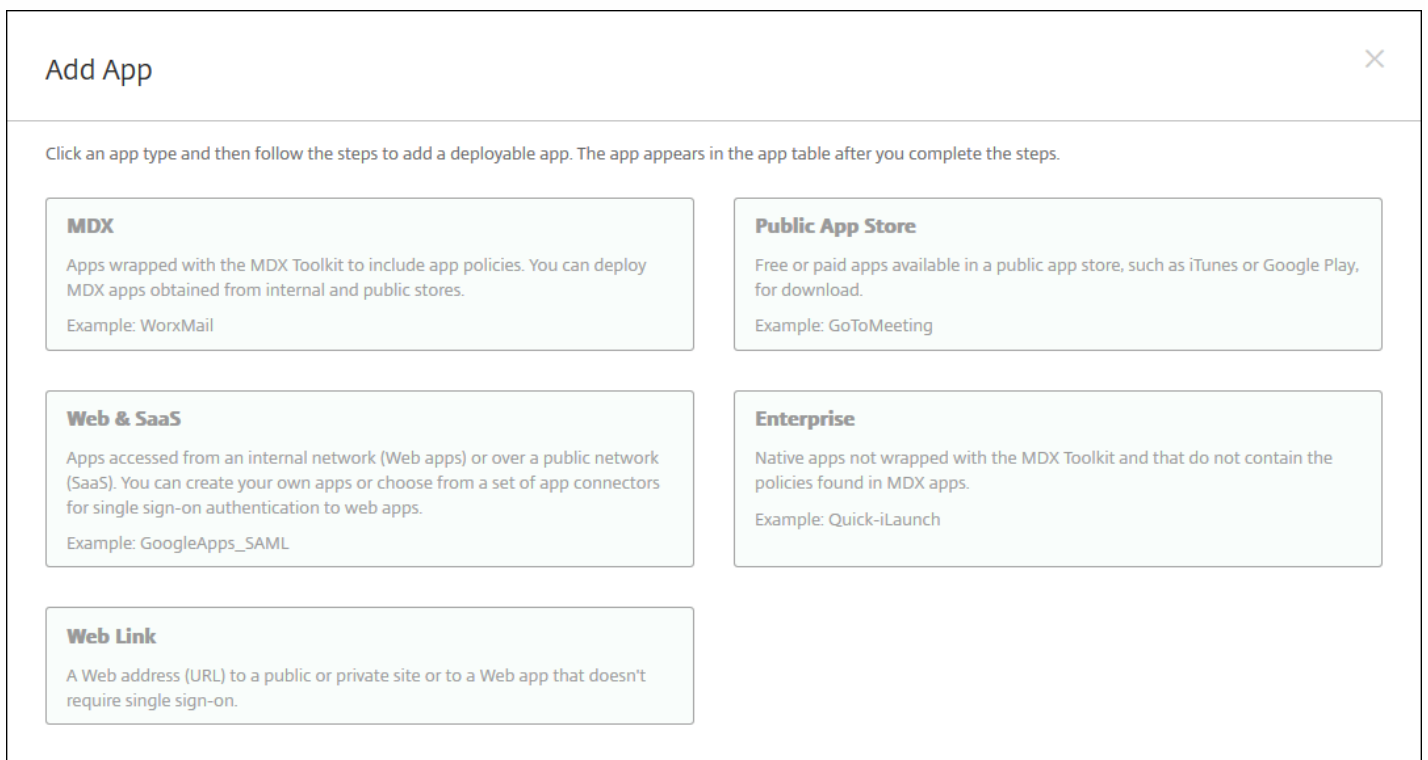
Enterprise apps in XenMobile represent native apps that are not wrapped with the MDX Toolkit and do not contain the

policies associated with MDX apps. You can upload an enterprise app on the **Apps** tab in the XenMobile console. Enterprise apps support the following platforms (and corresponding file types):

- iOS (.ipa file)
- Android (.apk file)
- Samsung KNOX (.apk file)
- Android for Work (.apk file)
- Windows Phone (.xap or .appx file)
- Windows Tablet (.appx file)
- Windows Mobile/CE (.cab file)

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Apps**. The **Apps** page opens.

2. Click **Add**. The **Add App** dialog box appears.



**Add App**

Click an app type and then follow the steps to add a deployable app. The app appears in the app table after you complete the steps.

**MDX**  
Apps wrapped with the MDX Toolkit to include app policies. You can deploy MDX apps obtained from internal and public stores.  
Example: WorxMail

**Public App Store**  
Free or paid apps available in a public app store, such as iTunes or Google Play, for download.  
Example: GoToMeeting

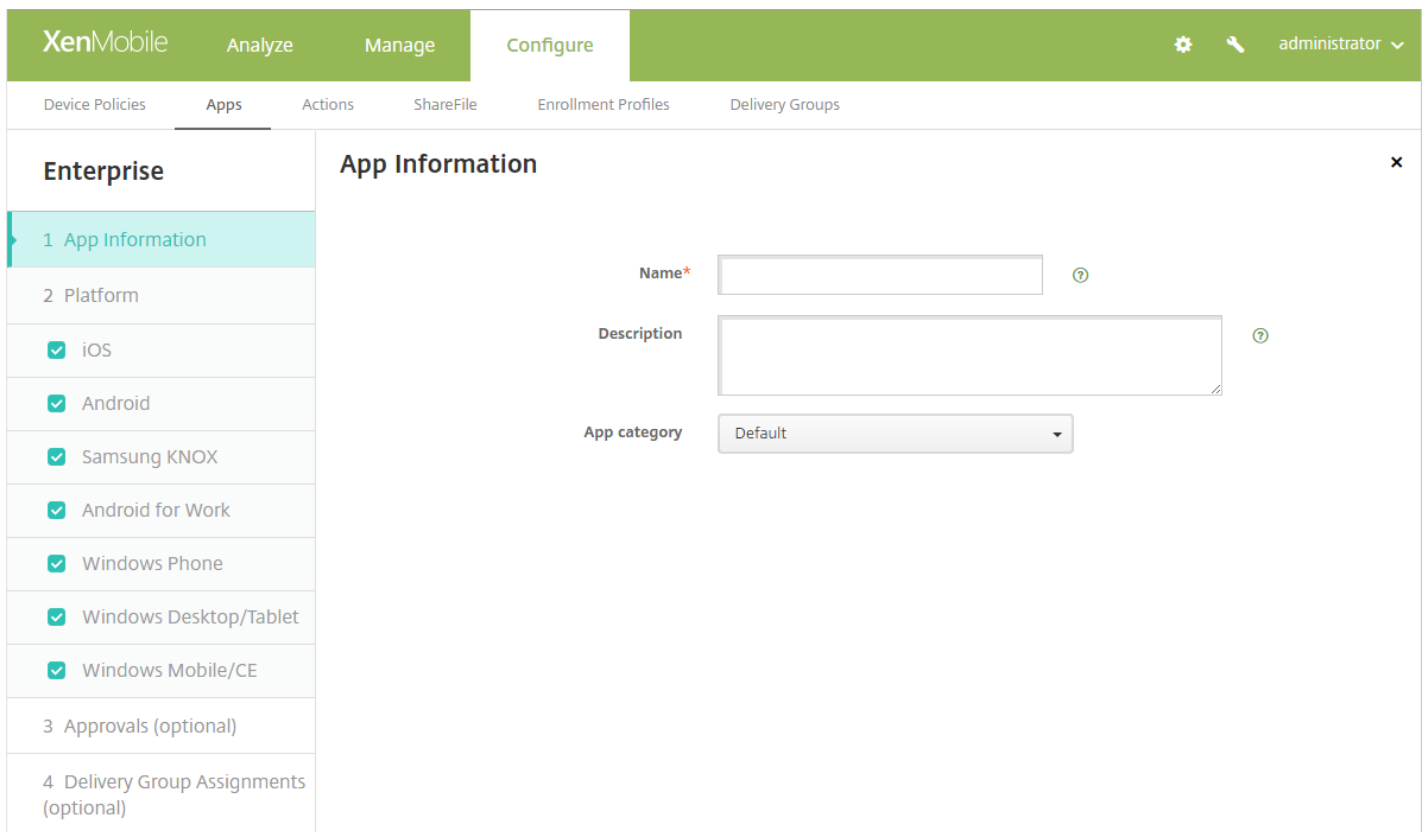
**Web & SaaS**  
Apps accessed from an internal network (Web apps) or over a public network (SaaS). You can create your own apps or choose from a set of app connectors for single sign-on authentication to web apps.  
Example: GoogleApps\_SAML

**Enterprise**  
Native apps not wrapped with the MDX Toolkit and that do not contain the policies found in MDX apps.  
Example: Quick-iLaunch

**Web Link**  
A Web address (URL) to a public or private site or to a Web app that doesn't require single sign-on.

3. Click **Enterprise**. The **App Information** page appears.





4. On the **App Information** pane, type the following information:

- **Name:** Type a descriptive name for the app. This is listed under App Name on the Apps table.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the app.
- **App category:** Optionally, in the list, click the category to which you want to add the app. For more information about app categories, see [Creating App Categories in XenMobile](#).

5. Click **Next**. The **App Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, refer to Step 10 for how to set that platform's deployment rules.

7. For each platform you chose, select the file to upload by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.

8. Click **Next**. The app information page for the platform appears.

9. Configure the settings for the platform type, such as:

- **File name:** Optionally, type a new name for the app.
- **App description:** Optionally, type a new description for the app.
- **App version:** You can't change this field.
- **Minimum OS version:** Optionally, type the oldest operating system version that the device can run to use the app.
- **Maximum OS version:** Optionally, type the most recent operating system that the device must run to use the app.
- **Excluded devices:** Optionally, type the manufacturer or models of devices that cannot run the app.
- **Remove app if MDM profile is removed:** Select whether to remove the app from a device when the MDM profile is removed. The default is **ON**.

- **Prevent app data backup:** Select whether to prevent the app from backing up data. The default is **ON**.
- **Force app to be managed:** If you are installing an unmanaged app, select **ON** if you want users on unsupervised devices to be prompted to allow management of the app. If they accept the prompt, the app is managed. This setting applies to iOS 9.x devices.

10. Configure the deployment rules.



11. Expand **XenMobile Store Configuration**.

**▼ Store Configuration**

**App FAQ**

Add a new FAQ question and answer

**App screenshots**

Choose File

Choose File

Choose File

Choose File

Choose File

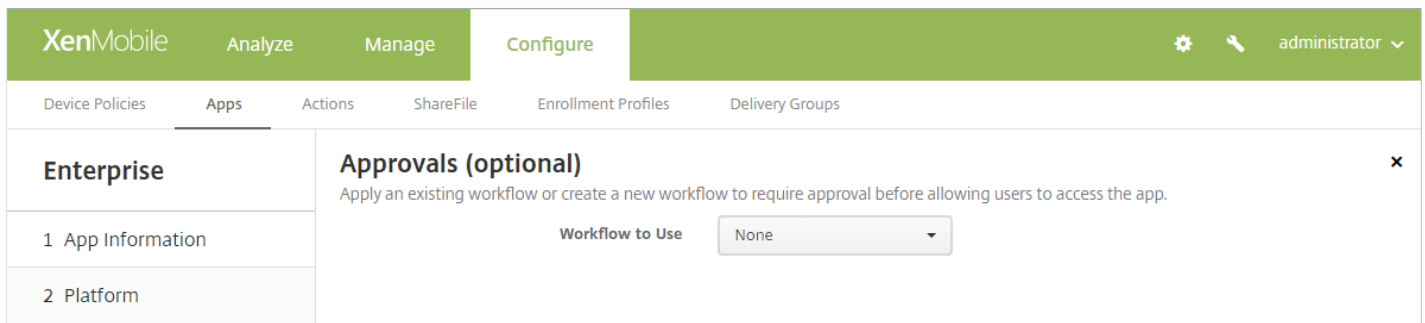
**Allow app ratings**

**Allow app comments**

Optionally, you can add an FAQ for the app or screen captures that appear in the XenMobile Store. You can also set whether users can rate or comment on the app.

- Configure these settings:
  - **App FAQ:** Add FAQ questions and answers for the app.
  - **App screenshots:** Add screen captures to help classify the app in the XenMobile Store. The graphic you upload must be a PNG. You cannot upload a GIF or JPEG image.
  - **Allow app ratings:** Select whether to permit a user to rate the app. The default is **ON**.
  - **Allow app comments:** Select whether to permit users to comment about the selected app. The default is **ON**.

12. Click **Next**. The **Approvals** page appears.



The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure page. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' section is active, with sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Apps' tab is selected, and the 'Enterprise' app is chosen. The 'Approvals (optional)' section is visible, with a sub-header 'Approvals (optional)' and a description: 'Apply an existing workflow or create a new workflow to require approval before allowing users to access the app.' Below this, there is a 'Workflow to Use' dropdown menu currently set to 'None'. A sidebar on the left shows '1 App Information' and '2 Platform'.

You use workflows when you need approval when creating user accounts. If you don't need to set up approval workflows, you can skip to Step 13.

Configure these settings if you need to assign or create a workflow:

- **Workflow to Use:** In the list, click an existing workflow or click **Create a new workflow**. The default is **None**.
- If you select **Create a new workflow**, configure these settings:
  - **Name:** Type a unique name for the workflow.
  - **Description:** Optionally, type a description for the workflow.
  - **Email Approval Templates:** In the list, select the email approval template to be assigned. When you click the eye icon to the right of this field, a dialog box appears where you can preview the template.
  - **Levels of manager approval:** In the list, select the number of levels of manager approval required for this workflow. The default is **1 level**. Possible options are:
    - Not Needed
    - 1 level
    - 2 levels
    - 3 levels
  - **Select Active Directory domain:** In the list, select the appropriate Active Directory domain to be used for the workflow.
  - **Find additional required approvers:** Type the additional required person's name in the search field and then click **Search**. Names originate in Active Directory.
  - When the person's name appears in the field, select the check box next to his or her name. The person's name and email address appear in the **Selected additional required approvers** list.
    - To remove a person from the **Selected additional required approvers** list, do one of the following:
      - Click **Search** to see a list of all the persons in the selected domain.
      - Type a full or partial name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the search results.
      - Persons in the **Selected additional required approvers** list have check marks next to their name in the search results list. Scroll through the list and clear the check box next to each name you want to remove.

13. Click **Next**. The **Delivery Group Assignment** page appears.

14. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the app. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

15. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

16. Click **Save**.

## Add a Web link

In XenMobile, you can establish a web address (URL) to a public or private site, or to a web app that doesn't require single sign-on (SSO).

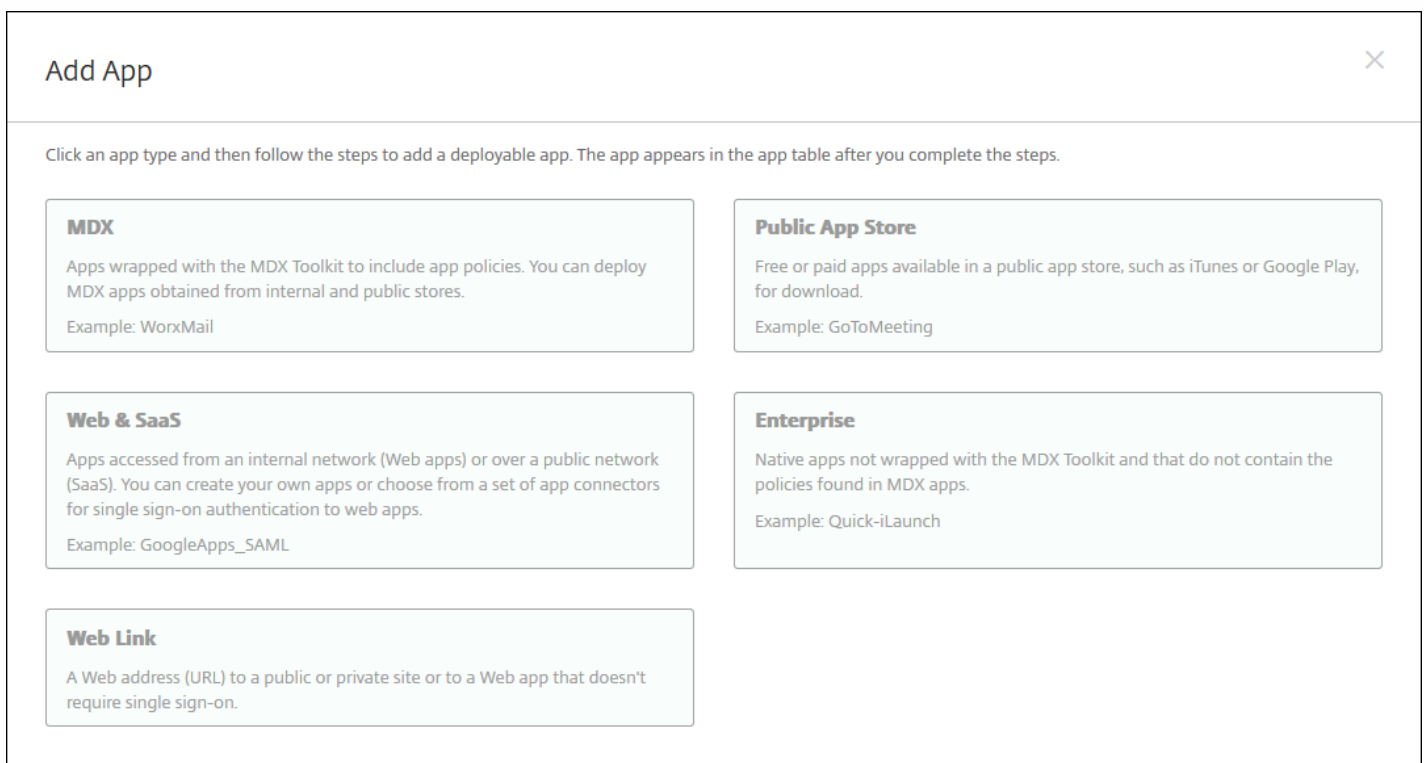
You can configure web links from the **Apps** tab in the XenMobile console. When you finish configuring the web link, the link appears as a link icon in the list in the **Apps** table. When users log on with Secure Hub, the link appears with the list of

available apps and desktops.

To add the link, you provide the following information:

- Name for the link
- Description of the link
- Web address (URL)
- Category
- Role
- Image in .png format (optional)

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Apps**. The **Apps** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add App** dialog box appears.



3. Click **Web Link**. The **App Information** page appears.

4. Configure these settings:

- **App name:** Accept the pre-filled name or type a new name.
- **App description:** Accept the pre-filled description or type one of your own.
- **URL:** Accept the pre-filled URL or type the web address for the app. Depending on the connector you choose, this field may contain a placeholder that you must replace before you can move to the next page.
- **App is hosted in internal network:** Select whether the app is running on a server in your internal network. If users connect from a remote location to the internal app, they must connect through NetScaler Gateway. Setting this option to **ON** adds the VPN keyword to the app and allows users to connect through NetScaler Gateway. The default is **OFF**.
- **App category:** In the list, click an optional category to apply to the app.
- **Image:** Select whether to use the default Citrix image or to upload your own app image. The default is Use default.

- If you want to upload your own image, select it by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location. The file must be a .PNG file; you can't upload a JPEG or GIF file. When you add a custom graphic, you can't change it at a later time.

5. Expand **XenMobile Store Configuration**.

The screenshot shows the 'Store Configuration' section of the XenMobile Store interface. It is divided into three main areas:

- App FAQ:** A section with a button labeled 'Add a new FAQ question and answer'.
- App screenshots:** A section containing five placeholder boxes, each with a 'Choose File' button, for uploading app screenshots.
- Settings:** Two toggle switches at the bottom: 'Allow app ratings' and 'Allow app comments', both of which are currently turned 'ON'.

Optionally, you can add an FAQ for the app or screen captures that appear in the XenMobile Store. You can also set whether users can rate or comment on the app.

- Configure these settings:
  - **App FAQ:** Add FAQ questions and answers for the app.
  - **App screenshots:** Add screen captures to help classify the app in the XenMobile Store. The graphic you upload must be a PNG. You cannot upload a GIF or JPEG image.
  - **Allow app ratings:** Select whether to permit a user to rate the app. The default is **ON**.
  - **Allow app comments:** Select whether to permit users to comment about the selected app. The default is **ON**.

6. Click **Next**. The **Delivery Group Assignment** page appears.

7. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the app. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

8. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

9. Click **Save**.

## Enable Microsoft 365 apps

You can open the MDX container to allow Secure Mail, Secure Web and ShareFile to transfer documents and data to Microsoft Office 365 apps. For details, see [Allowing Secure Interaction with Office 365 Apps](#).

## Create and manage workflows

You can use workflows to manage the creation and removal of user accounts. Before you can use a workflow, you need to identify individuals in your organization who have the authority to approve user account requests. Then, you can use the workflow template to create and approve user account requests.

When you set up XenMobile for the first time, you configure workflow email settings, which must be set before you can use workflows. You can change workflow email settings at any time. These settings include the email server, port, email address, and whether the request to create the user account requires approval.

You can configure workflows in two places in XenMobile:

- In the Workflows page in the XenMobile console. On the Workflows page, you can configure multiple workflows for use with app configurations. When you configure workflows on the Workflows page, you can select the workflow when you configure the app.
- When you configure an application connector in the app, you provide a workflow name and then configure the individuals who can approve the user account request.

You can assign up to three levels for manager approval of user accounts. If you need other persons to approve the user account, you can search for and select additional persons by using the person's name or email address. When XenMobile finds the person, you then add him or her to the workflow. All individuals in the workflow receive emails to approve or deny the new user account.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.

2. Click **Workflows**. The **Workflows** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure

Settings > Workflows

## Workflows

Add

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Description	Workflow email template
<input type="checkbox"/>	WF 1	Workflow Approval Request	

Showing 1 - 1 of 1 items

3. Click **Add**. The **Add Workflow** page appears.



XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure ⚙️ 🔧 admin ▾

Settings > Workflows > Add Workflow

## Add Workflow

**Name\***

**Description**

**Email Approval Templates** Workflow Approval Request

**Levels of manager approval** 1 level ▾

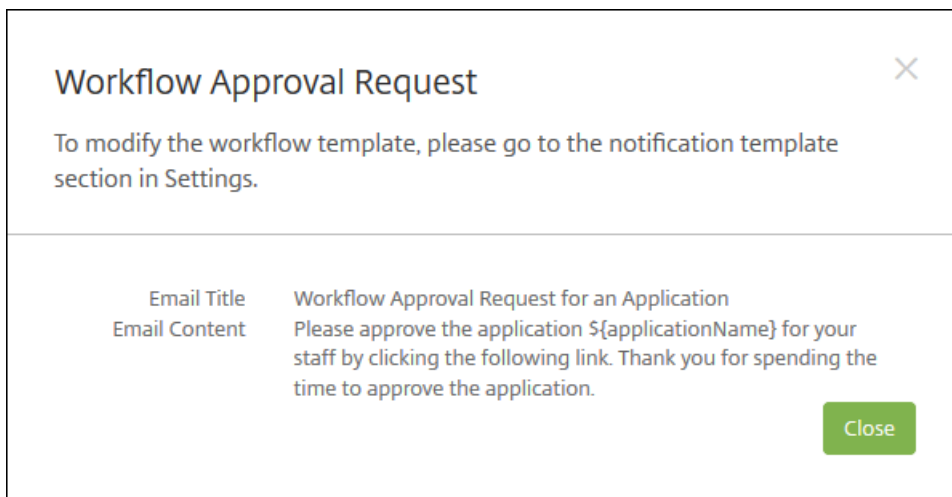
**Select Active Directory domain** agsag.com ▾

**Find additional required approvers**

**Selected additional required approvers**

4. Configure these settings:

- **Name:** Type a unique name for the workflow.
- **Description:** Optionally, type a description for the workflow.
- **Email Approval Templates:** In the list, select the email approval template to be assigned. You create email templates in the Notification Templates section under Settings in the XenMobile console. When you click the eye icon to the right of this field, the following dialog box appears.



- **Levels of manager approval:** In the list, select the number of levels of manager approval required for this workflow. The default is 1 level. Possible options are:
    - Not Needed
    - 1 level
    - 2 levels
    - 3 levels
  - **Select Active Directory domain:** In the list, select the appropriate Active Directory domain to be used for the workflow.
  - **Find additional required approvers:** Type the additional required person's name in the search field and then click Search. Names originate in Active Directory.
  - When the person's name appears in the field, select the check box next to his or her name. The person's name and email address appear in the **Selected additional required approvers** list.
    - To remove a person from the **Selected additional required approvers** list, do one of the following:
      - Click **Search** to see a list of all the persons in the selected domain.
      - Type a full or partial name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the search results.
      - Persons in the **Selected additional required approvers** list have check marks next to their name in the search results list. Scroll through the list and clear the check box next to each name you want to remove.
5. Click **Save**. The created workflow appears on the **Workflows** page.

After you create the workflow, you can view the workflow details, view the apps associated with the workflow, or delete the workflow. You cannot edit a workflow after you create the workflow. If you need a workflow with different approval levels or approvers, you must create a new workflow.

#### To view details and delete a workflow

1. On the **Workflows** page, in the list of existing workflows, select a specific workflow by clicking the row in the table or by checking the check box next to the workflow.
2. To delete a workflow, click **Delete**. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** again.

**Important:** You cannot undo this operation.

# App connector types

Feb 27, 2017

The following table lists the connectors and the types of connectors that are available in XenMobile when you add a Web or SaaS app. You can also add a new connector to XenMobile when you add a Web or SaaS app.

The table indicates whether the connector supports user account management, which lets you create new accounts automatically or by using a workflow.

Connector name	SSO SAML	Supports user account management
EchoSign_SAML	Y	Y
Globoforce_SAML		<b>Note:</b> When using this connector, you must enable User Management for Provisioning to ensure seamless SSO integration.
GoogleApps_SAML	Y	Y
GoogleApps_SAML_IDP	Y	Y
Lynda_SAML	Y	Y
Office365_SAML	Y	Y
Salesforce_SAML	Y	Y
Salesforce_SAML_SP	Y	Y
SandBox_SAML	Y	
SuccessFactors_SAML	Y	
ShareFile_SAML	Y	
ShareFile_SAML_SP	Y	
WebEx_SAML_SP	Y	Y

# Upgrade MDX or enterprise apps

Feb 27, 2017

To upgrade an MDX or Enterprise app in XenMobile, you disable the app in the XenMobile console, and then you upload the new version of the app.

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Apps**. The **Apps** page appears.

2. For managed devices (devices enrolled in XenMobile for mobile device management), skip to Step 3. For unmanaged devices (devices enrolled in XenMobile for enterprise app management purposes only), do the following:

- In the **Apps** table, select the check box next to the app or click the line containing the app you want to update.
- Click **Disable** in the menu that appears.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Icon	App Name	Type	Category	Created On	Last Updated	Disable	▼
<input type="checkbox"/>		Onebug	Web Link	Weblink	10/26/15 1:04 PM	11/6/15 9:14 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		Worxmail	MDX	Worxapps	10/26/15 1:06 PM	11/10/15 3:13 PM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		worxweb	MDX	Worxapps				
<input type="checkbox"/>		Angrybird	Public App Store	Public				
<input type="checkbox"/>		WorxTasks	MDX	Default				
<input type="checkbox"/>		WorxMail2	MDX	MDX				
<input type="checkbox"/>		WorxNotes-iOS	MDX	MDX				
<input type="checkbox"/>		worxweb2	MDX	MDX				
<input type="checkbox"/>		ShareFile1	MDX	MDX				

Showing 1 - 9 of 9 items

- Click **Disable** in the confirmation dialog box. *Disabled* appears in the **Disable** column for the app.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Icon	App Name	Type	Category	Created On	Last Updated	Disable	▼
<input type="checkbox"/>		Onebug	Web Link	Weblink	10/26/15 1:04 PM	11/6/15 9:14 AM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		Worxmail	MDX	Worxapps	10/26/15 1:06 PM	11/11/15 8:55 AM	Disabled	

**Note:** Disabling an app puts the app in maintenance mode. While the app is disabled, users cannot reconnect to the app

after they log off. Disabling an app is an optional setting, but we recommend disabling the app to avoid issues with app functionality. Issues may result from policy updates, for example, or if users request a download at the same time you are uploading the app to XenMobile.

3. In the **Apps** table, click the check box next to the app or click the line containing the app you want to update.

4. Click **Edit** in the menu that appears. The **App Information** page appears with the platforms you originally chose for the app selected.

5. Configure these settings:

- **Name:** Optionally, change the app name.
- **Description:** Optionally, change the app description.
- **App category:** Optionally, change the app category.

6. Click **Next**. The first selected platform page appears. Do the following for each selected platform:

- Choose the replacement file you want to upload by clicking **Upload** and navigating to the file's location. The app uploads to XenMobile.
- Optionally, change the app details and policy settings for the platform.
- Optionally, configure deployment rules (see Step 7) and XenMobile Store configurations (see Step 8).

#### [7. Configure the deployment rules](#)



8. Expand **Store Configuration**.

▼ **Store Configuration**

App FAQ

Add a new FAQ question and answer

App screenshots

Choose File

Choose File

Choose File

Choose File

Choose File

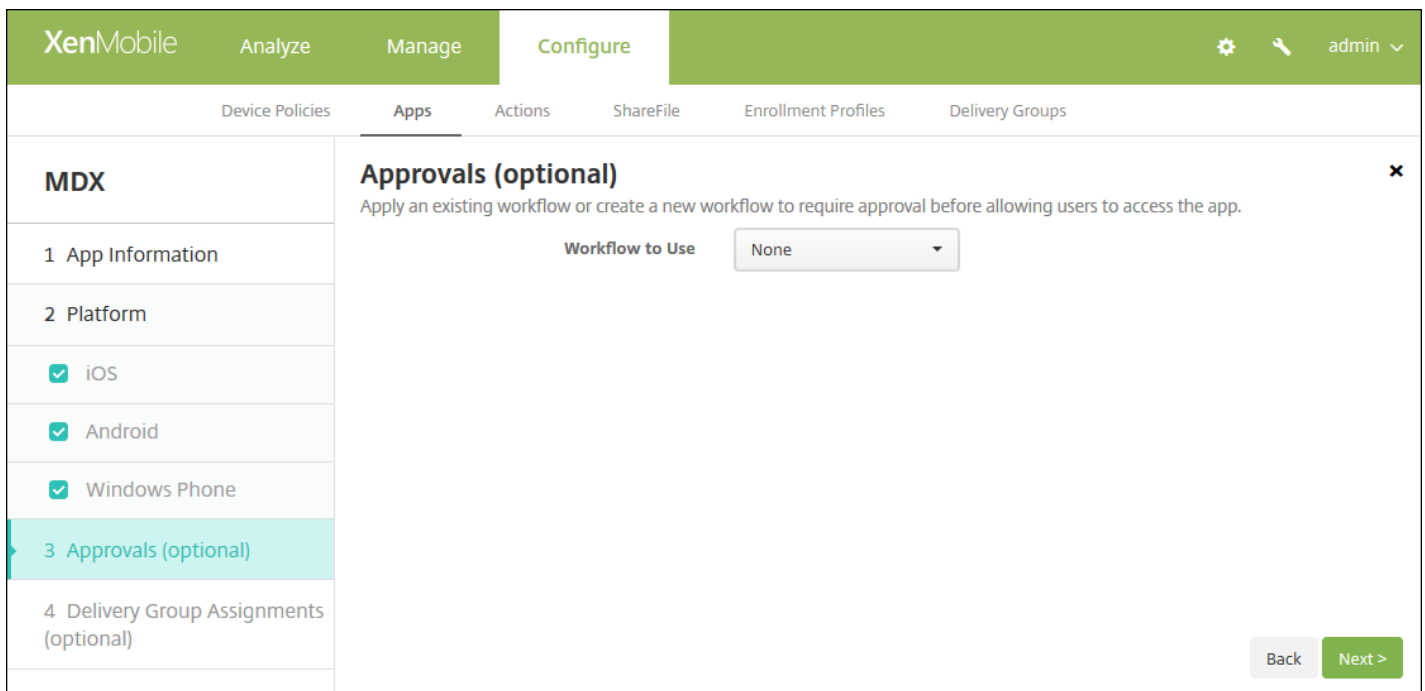
Allow app ratings

Allow app comments

Optionally, you can add an FAQ for the app or screen captures that appear in the XenMobile Store. You can also set whether users can rate or comment on the app.

- Configure these settings:
  - **App FAQ:** Add FAQ questions and answers for the app.
  - **App screenshots:** Add screen captures to help classify the app in the XenMobile Store. The graphic you upload must be a PNG. You cannot upload a GIF or JPEG image.
  - **Allow app ratings:** Select whether to permit a user to rate the app. The default is **ON**.
  - **Allow app comments:** Select whether to permit users to comment about the selected app. The default is **ON**.

9. Click **Next**. The **Approvals** page appears.

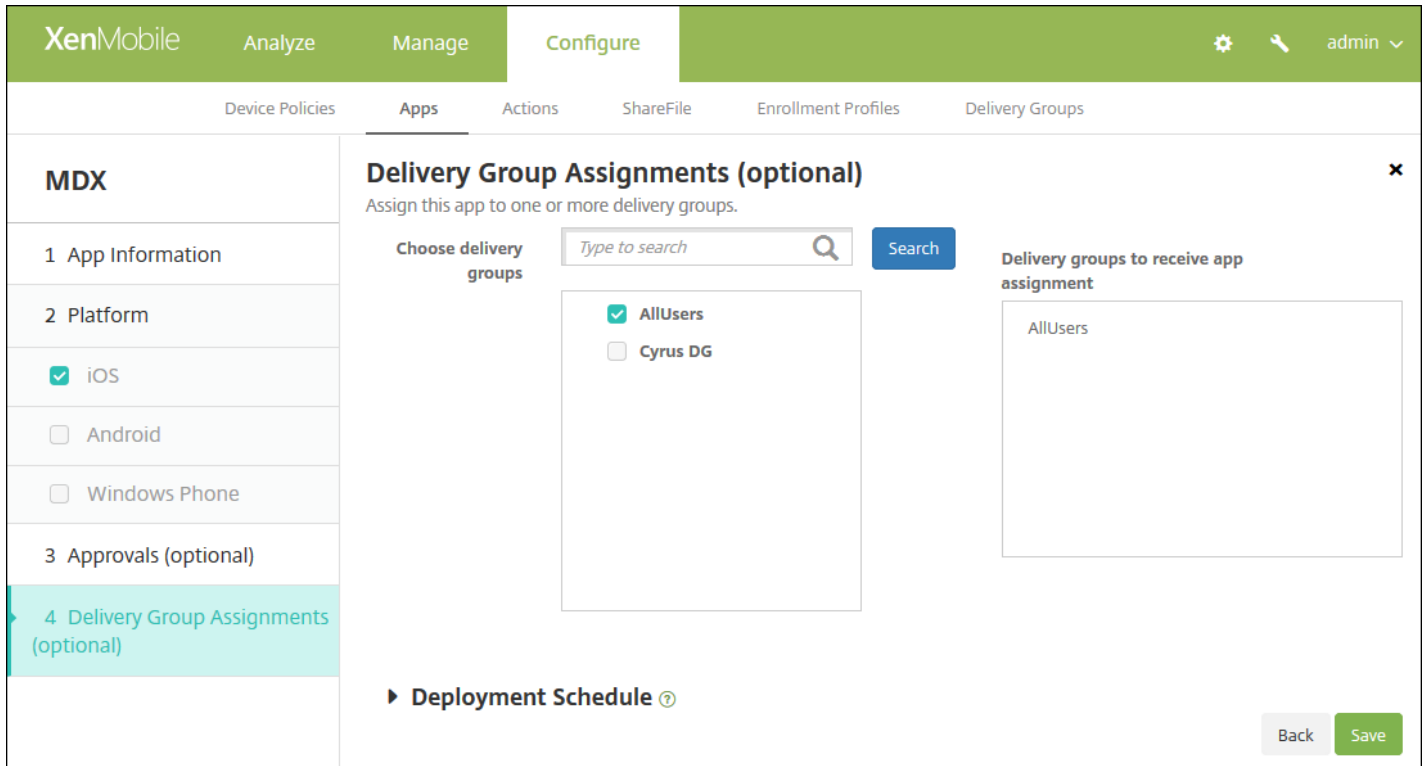


10. You use workflows when you need approval when creating user accounts. If you don't need to set up approval workflows, you can skip to Step 11.

Configure this setting if you need to assign or create a workflow:

- **Workflow to Use:** In the list, click an existing workflow or click **Create a new workflow**. The default is **None**.
- If you select **Create a new workflow**, configure these settings:
  - **Name:** Type a unique name for the workflow.
  - **Description:** Optionally, type a description for the workflow.
  - **Email Approval Templates:** In the list, select the email approval template to be assigned. When you click the eye icon to the right of this field, a dialog box appears where you can preview the template.
  - **Levels of manager approval:** In the list, select the number of levels of manager approval required for this workflow. The default is **1 level**. Possible options are:
    - Not Needed
    - 1 level
    - 2 levels
    - 3 levels
  - **Select Active Directory domain:** In the list, select the appropriate Active Directory domain to be used for the workflow.
  - **Find additional required approvers:** Type the additional required person's name in the search field and then click **Search**. Names originate in Active Directory.
  - When the person's name appears in the field, select the check box next to his or her name. The person's name and email address appear in the **Selected additional required approvers** list.
  - To remove a person from the Selected additional required approvers list, do one of the following:
    - Click **Search** to see a list of all the persons in the selected domain.
    - Type a full or partial name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the search results.
    - Persons in the **Selected additional required approvers** list have check marks next to their name in the search results list. Scroll through the list and clear the check box next to each name you want to remove.

11. Click **Next**. The **Deliver Group Assignment** page appears.



12. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the app. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

13. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment** schedule, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:**

- This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.
- The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

14. Click **Save**. The **Apps** page appears.

15. If you disabled the app in Step 2, do the following:

- In the **Apps** table, click to select the app you updated and then in the menu that appears, click **Enable**.
- In the confirmation dialog box that appears, click **Enable**. Users can now access the app and receive a notification



prompting them to upgrade the app.

# MDX app policies at a glance

Feb 27, 2017

For a table listing the MDX app policies for iOS, Android, and Windows with notes on restrictions and Citrix recommendations, see [MDX Apps Policies at a Glance](#) in the MDX Toolkit documentation.

# XenMobile Store and Citrix Secure Hub branding

Feb 27, 2017

You can set how apps appear in the store and add a logo to brand Secure Hub and the XenMobile Store. These branding features are available for iOS and Android devices.

**Note:** Before you begin, make sure you have your custom image ready and accessible.

The custom image must meet these requirements:

- The file must be in .png format
- Use a pure white logo or text with a transparent background at 72 dpi.
- The company logo should not exceed this height or width: 170 px x 25 px (1x) and 340 px x 50 px (2x).
- Name the files as Header.png and Header@2x.png.
- Create a .zip file from the files, not a folder with the files inside it.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. The top navigation bar is green and contains the following items from left to right: 'XenMobile', 'Dashboard', 'Manage', 'Configure', a gear icon, and 'Admin' with a dropdown arrow. Below the navigation bar, the page title is 'Settings'. The main content area is divided into three columns of settings categories:

- Certificate Management**: Certificates, Credential Providers, PKI Entities
- Client**: Client Branding, Client Properties, Client Support
- Notifications**: Carrier SMS Gateway, Notification Server, Notification Templates
- Platforms**: Android for Work, Google Play Credentials, iOS Bulk Enrollment, iOS Settings, Samsung KNOX
- Server**: ActiveSync Gateway, Enrollment, LDAP, Licensing, Local Users and Groups, Mobile Service Provider, NetScaler Gateway, Network Access Control, Release Management, Role-Based Access Control, Server Properties, SysLog, Workflows, XenApp/XenDesktop

On the right side, there is a 'Frequently Accessed' sidebar with the following items: Certificates, Enrollment, Licensing, Local Users and Groups, Role-Based Access Control, and Release Management.

2. Under **Client**, click **Client Branding**. The **Client Branding** page appears.

Settings &gt; Client Branding

## Client Branding

You can set the way apps appear in the store and add a logo to brand Secure Hub on mobile devices.

**Store name\***  ⓘ

**Default store view**

Category

A-Z

**Device**

Phone

Tablet

**Branding file**

**Note:**

- The file must be in .png format (pure white logo/text with transparent background at 72 dpi).
  - The company logo should not exceed this height or width: 170px x 25px (1x) + 340px x 50px (2x).
  - Files should be named as Header.png and Header@2x.png.
- A .zip file should be created from the files, not a folder with the files inside of it.

Configure the following settings:

- **Store name:** The store name appears on the in the user's account information. Changing the name also changes the URL used to access store services. You typically do not need to change the default name.
- **Default store view:** Select either **Category** or **A-Z**. The default is **A-Z**
- **Device option:** Select either **Phone** or **Tablet**. The default is **Phone**.
- **Branding file:** Select an image or .zip file of images to use for branding by, clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.

3. Click **Save**.

To deploy this package to users' devices, you need to create a deployment package and deploy the package to users' devices.

# Citrix Launcher

Feb 27, 2017

Citrix Launcher lets you customize the user experience for Android devices deployed by XenMobile. The minimum Android version supported for Secure Hub management of Citrix Launcher is Android 4.0.3. You can add the **Launcher Configuration Policy** to control these Citrix Launcher features:

- Manage Android devices so that users can access only the apps that you specify.
- Optionally specify a custom logo image for the Citrix Launcher icon and a custom background image for Citrix Launcher.
- Specify a password that users must enter to exit the launcher.

While Citrix Launcher enables you to apply those device-level restrictions, the launcher grants users built-in access to device settings such as WiFi settings, Bluetooth settings, and device passcode settings. Citrix Launcher isn't intended as an extra layer of security over what the device platform already provides.

To provide Citrix Launcher to Android devices, follow these general steps.

1. Download the Citrix Launcher app from the [Citrix XenMobile downloads](#) page for your XenMobile edition. The file name is CitrixLauncher.apk. The file is ready for uploading into XenMobile and doesn't require wrapping.
2. Add the device policy **Launcher Configuration Policy**: Go to **Configure > Device Policies**, click **Add**, and in the **Add a New Policy** dialog box, start typing **Launcher**. For more information, see [Launcher Configuration Policy](#).

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Launcher Configuration Policy' and is divided into three sections: '1 Policy Info', '2 Platforms', and '3 Assignment'. The '2 Platforms' section is expanded to show 'Android' selected. The 'Policy Information' section contains the following fields:

- Launcher app configuration**
  - Define a logo image**:  ON
  - Logo image**:
  - Define a background image**:  ON
  - Background image**:
- Allowed apps**

App name	Package Name*	<input type="button" value="Add"/>
test	test.com	
- Password**:

At the bottom, there is a 'Deployment Rules' section and 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

3. Add the Citrix Launcher app to XenMobile as an enterprise app. In **Configure > Apps**, click **Add** and then click **Enterprise**. For more information, see [Add an enterprise app](#).

## Add App ×

Click an app type and then follow the steps to add a deployable app. The app appears in the app table after you complete the steps.

**MDX**

Apps wrapped with the MDX Toolkit to include app policies. You can deploy MDX apps obtained from internal and public stores.

Example: WorxMail

**Public App Store**

Free or paid apps available in a public app store, such as iTunes or Google Play, for download.

Example: GoToMeeting

**Web & SaaS**

Apps accessed from an internal network (Web apps) or over a public network (SaaS). You can create your own apps or choose from a set of app connectors for single sign-on authentication to web apps.

Example: GoogleApps\_SAML

**Enterprise**

Native apps not wrapped with the MDX Toolkit and that do not contain the policies found in MDX apps.

Example: Quick-iLaunch

**Web Link**

A Web address (URL) to a public or private site or to a Web app that doesn't require single sign-on.

4. Create a Delivery Group for Citrix Launcher with the following configuration in **Configure > Delivery groups**:

- On the **Policies** page, add the **Launcher Configuration Policy**.
- On the **Apps** page, drag **Citrix Launcher** to **Required Apps**.
- On the **Summary** page, click **Deployment Order** and make sure that the **Citrix Launcher** app precedes the **Launcher Configuration** policy.

## Deployment Order ×

Change the deployment order by dragging the policies, apps and actions into position.

Citrix Launcher

Launcher Configuration

Cancel
Save

For more information, see [Deploy resources](#).

# iOS Volume Purchase Plan

Apr 04, 2017

You can manage iOS app licensing by using the Apple iOS Volume Purchase Program (VPP). The VPP solution simplifies the process to find, buy, and distribute apps and other data in bulk for an organization.

With VPP, you can use XenMobile to distribute public app store apps. VPP is not supported for XenMobile Apps or for apps wrapped by using the MDX Toolkit. Although you can distribute the XenMobile public store apps with VPP, the deployment is not optimal. Further enhancements to the XenMobile Server and the Secure Hub store are required to address the limitations. For a list of known issues with deploying the XenMobile public store apps via VPP and potential workarounds, see this article in the Citrix [knowledge center](#).

With VPP, you can distribute the applicable apps directly to your devices. Or, you assign content to your users by using redeemable codes. You configure settings specific to the iOS VPP in XenMobile.

XenMobile periodically reimports VPP licenses from Apple to ensure that the licenses reflect all changes. Such changes include when you manually delete an imported app from VPP. By default, XenMobile refreshes the VPP license baseline a minimum of every 720 minutes. You can change the baseline interval through the server property, VPP baseline interval (vpp.baseline). For information, see [Server properties](#).

This article focuses on using VPP with managed licenses, which enables you to use XenMobile to distribute apps. If you currently use redemption codes and want to change to managed distribution, see this Apple Support document: [Migrate from redemption codes to managed distribution with the Volume Purchase Program](#).

For information about the iOS VPP, see <http://www.apple.com/business/vpp/>. To enroll in VPP, go to <https://deploy.apple.com/qforms/open/register/index/avs>. To access your VPP store in iTunes, go to <https://vpp.itunes.apple.com/?l=en>.

After you save these iOS VPP settings in XenMobile, the purchased apps appear on the **Configure > Apps** page in the XenMobile console.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Under **Platform**, click **iOS Settings**. The **iOS Settings** configuration page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. On the right, there is a user profile 'admin' with a dropdown arrow. Below the navigation bar, the breadcrumb 'Settings > iOS Settings' is visible. The main content area is titled 'iOS Settings' and contains the following configuration options:

- Store user password in Secure Hub:** A checkbox that is checked.
- User property for VPP country mapping:** A text input field containing the value 'c'.

Below these settings is a section titled 'VPP Accounts' with an 'Add' button. A table lists the existing VPP accounts:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Suffix	Organization	Country	Expiration Date	User Login
<input type="checkbox"/>	VPP	VPP	CITRIX SYSTEMS, INC.	United States	04/12/2017 02:57:32 pm	TestAccount@outlook.com





6. Click **Save** to save the iOS settings.

A message appears stating that XenMobile adds the apps to the list on the **Configure > Apps** page. On that page, notice that the app names from your VPP account include the suffix you provided in the preceding configuration.

You can now configure the VPP app settings and then tune your delivery group and device policy settings for VPP apps. After you complete those configurations, users can enroll their devices. The following notes provide considerations for those processes.

- When configuring VPP app settings (**Configure > Apps**), enable **Force license association to device**. An advantage of using Apple VPP and DEP with supervised devices: The ability to use XenMobile to assign the app at the device (rather than user) level. As a result, you don't have to use an Apple ID device. Also, users don't receive an invitation to join the VPP program. Users can also download the apps without signing into their iTunes account.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile web interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is active, and the 'Apps' sub-tab is selected. The main content area is titled 'iPhone App Settings' and shows configuration options for the 'GoToMeeting' app. The 'Force license association to device' toggle is highlighted with a red box and is currently turned 'ON'. Other settings include 'Name' (GoToMeeting), 'Description', 'Version' (6.6.5.1134), 'Image', 'Paid app' (OFF), 'Remove app if MDM profile is removed' (ON), 'Prevent app data backup' (ON), and 'Force app to be managed' (ON). A 'Check for Updates' button is visible next to the version field. The left sidebar shows a 'Public App Store' with categories like 'App Information', 'Platform', and 'Approvals (optional)'. The 'Platform' section has 'iPhone', 'iPad', and 'Google Play' checked. At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

To view the VPP info for that app, expand **Volume Purchase Program**. Notice in the **VPP ID Assignment** table, the license is associated with a device. The device serial number appears in the **Associated Device** column. If the user removes the token and then imports it again, the word **Hidden** appears instead of the serial number, due to Apple privacy restrictions.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** administrator

Device Policies **Apps** Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### Public App Store

- 1 App Information
- 2 Platform
  - iPhone
  - iPad
  - Google Play
  - Android for Work
  - Windows Desktop/Tablet
  - Windows Phone
- 3 Approvals (optional)
- 4 Delivery Group Assignments (optional)

Remove app if MDM profile is removed

Prevent app data backup

Force app to be managed  ?

Force license association to device

► Deployment Rules

► Store Configuration

▼ Volume Purchase Program

VPP ID Assignment License Usage: 2 of 2

Disassociate

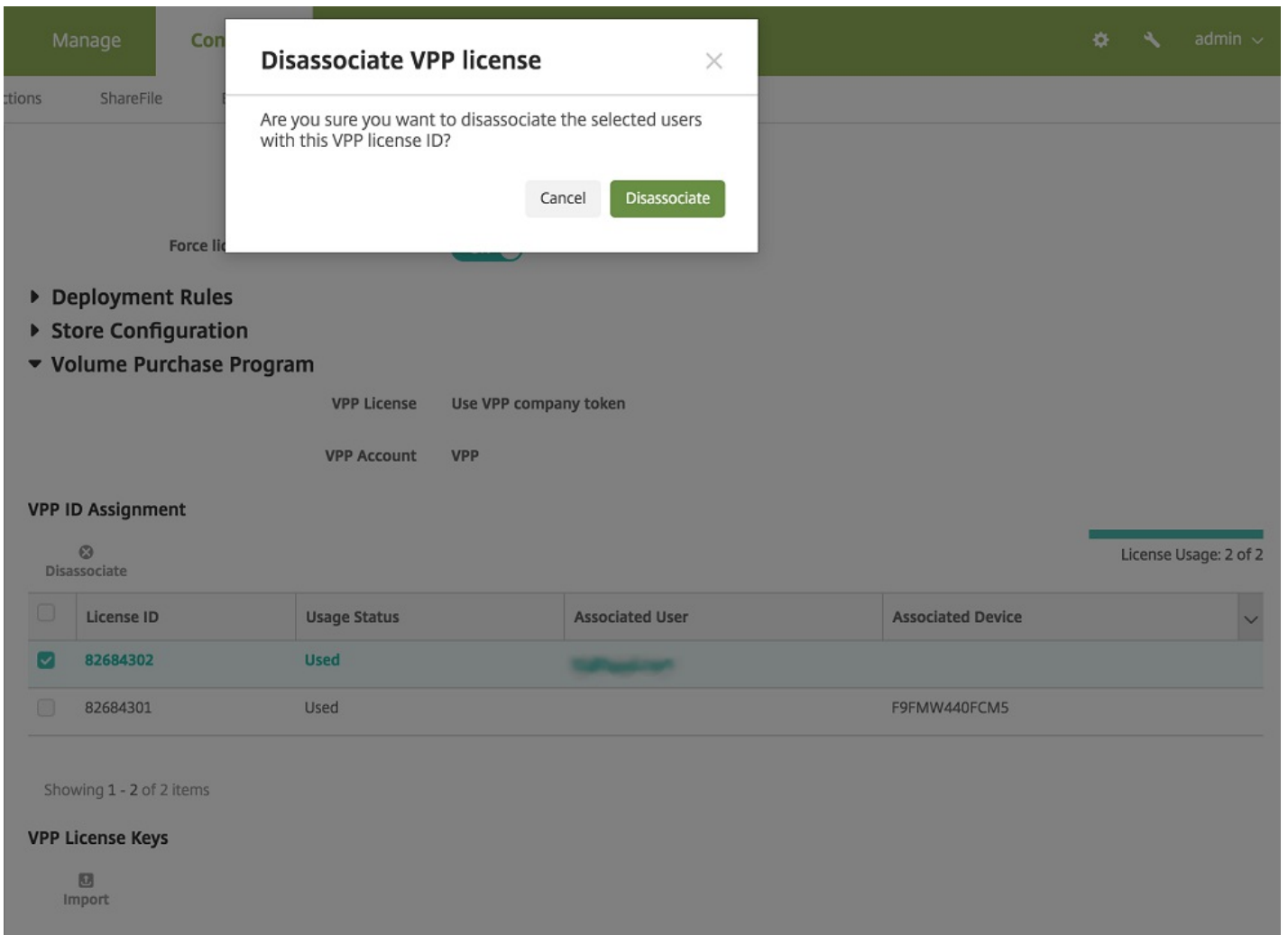
<input type="checkbox"/>	License ID	Usage Status	Associated User	Associated Device
<input type="checkbox"/>	82684302	Used		
<input type="checkbox"/>	82684301	Used		F9FMW440FCM5

Showing 1 - 2 of 2 items

VPP License Keys

Import

To disassociate a license, click the row for the license and then click **Disassociate**.



If you associate VPP licenses with users, XenMobile integrates users into your VPP account and associates their iTunes ID with the VPP account. The iTunes ID of users is never visible to your company or to the XenMobile Server. Apple transparently creates the association to retain user privacy. You can retire a user from the VPP program, to disassociate all licenses from the user account. To retire a user, go to **Manage > Devices**.

XenMobile Analyze **Manage** Configure admin

Devices Users Enrollment Invitations

### Device details

- General
- Properties
- User Properties**
- Assigned Policies
- Apps
- Actions
- Delivery Groups
- iOS Profiles
- iOS Provisioning Profiles
- Certificates
- Connections
- MDM Status

### User Properties

**User name**

**Password**

**Role\***

**Membership**  local\MSP [Manage Groups](#)

**VPP Accounts**  VPP [Retire](#)

[Back](#) [Next >](#)

- When you assign an app to a delivery group, by default XenMobile identifies the app as an optional app. To ensure that XenMobile deploys an app to devices, go to **Configure > Delivery Groups**. On the **Apps** page, move the app to the **Required Apps** list.
- When an update for a public app store app is available: When VPP pushes the app, the app doesn't automatically update on devices until you check for updates and apply them. To push an update for Secure Hub, when assigned to device and not to a user, do the following. In **Configure > Apps**, on a platform page, click **Check for Updates** and apply the update.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** administrator

Device Policies **Apps** Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

### Public App Store

- 1 App Information
- 2 Platform
  - iPhone
  - iPad
  - Google Play
  - Android for Work
  - Windows Desktop/Tablet
  - Windows Phone
- 3 Approvals (optional)
- 4 Delivery Group Assignments (optional)

## iPhone App Settings


Type an app name or keyword in the field and search for your desired app. When you click your app in the results, you can configure how the app appears in the store.

### App Details

**Name\***

**Description\***

**Version**  Check for Updates

**Image** 

**Paid app**  OFF

**Remove app if MDM profile is removed**  ON

**Prevent app data backup**  ON

**Force app to be managed**  ON ⓘ

**Force license association to device**  ON

▶ Deployment Rules  
 ▶ Store Configuration  
 ▶ Volume Purchase Program

Back
Next >

# XenApp and XenDesktop through Citrix Secure Hub

Feb 27, 2017

XenMobile can collect apps from XenApp and XenDesktop and make them available to mobile device users in the XenMobile Store. Users subscribe to the apps directly inside XenMobile Store and launch them from Secure Hub. Citrix Receiver must be installed on users' devices to launch the apps, but it does not need to be configured.

To configure this setting, you need the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or IP address and port number for the Web Interface site or StoreFront.

1. In the XenMobile web console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Click **XenApp/XenDesktop**. The **XenApp/XenDesktop** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile web console interface. At the top is a green navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and three tabs: 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below the navigation bar, the breadcrumb 'Settings > XenApp/XenDesktop' is visible. The main heading is 'XenApp/XenDesktop' with a sub-heading 'Allows users to add XenApp and XenDesktop through Secure Hub.' The configuration fields are: 'Host\*' with a text box containing 'example.com.net'; 'Port\*' with a text box containing '80'; 'Relative Path\*' with a text box containing '/Citrix/StoreAG3/PNAgent/config.xml'; and 'Use HTTPS' with a toggle switch set to 'OFF'. At the bottom, there is a green 'Test Connection' button and a green checkmark icon followed by the text 'Connection succeeded'.

3. Configure these settings:

- **Host:** Type the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or IP address for the Web Interface site or StoreFront.
- **Port:** Type the port number for the Web Interface site or StoreFront. The default is 80.
- **Relative Path:** Type the path. For example, /Citrix/PNAgent/config.xml
- **Use HTTPS:** Select whether to enable secure authentication between the Web Interface site or StoreFront and the client device. The default is **OFF**.

4. Click **Test Connection** to verify that XenMobile can connect to the specified XenApp and XenDesktop server.

5. Click **Save**.

# ShareFile use with XenMobile

Apr 24, 2017

XenMobile has two options for integrating with ShareFile: ShareFile Enterprise and StorageZone Connectors. Integration with ShareFile Enterprise or StorageZone Connectors requires XenMobile Enterprise Edition.

---

## ShareFile Enterprise

If you have XenMobile Enterprise Edition, you can configure XenMobile to provide access to your ShareFile Enterprise account. That configuration:

- Gives mobile users access to the full ShareFile feature set, such as file sharing, file sync, and StorageZone Connectors.
- Can provide ShareFile with single sign-on authentication of XenMobile App users, AD-based user account provisioning, and comprehensive access control policies.
- Provides ShareFile configuration, service level monitoring, and license usage monitoring through the XenMobile console.

For more information about configuring XenMobile for ShareFile Enterprise, see [SAML for single sign-on with ShareFile](#).

---

## StorageZone Connectors

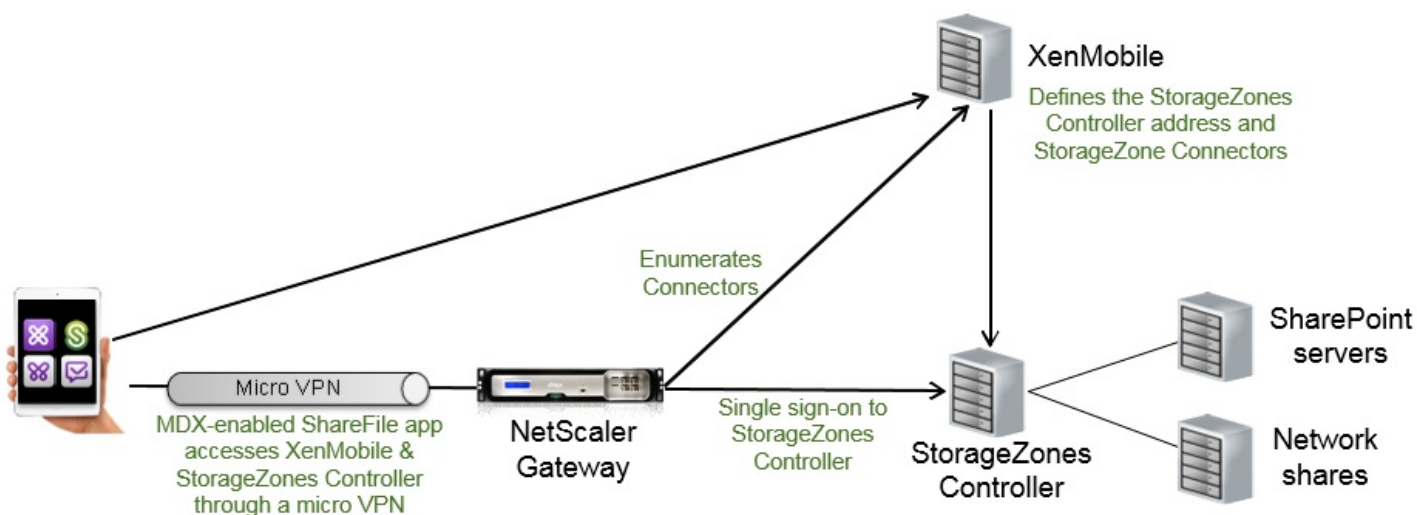
You can configure XenMobile to provide access only to StorageZone Connectors that you create through the XenMobile console. That configuration:

- Provides secure mobile access to existing on-premises storage repositories, such as SharePoint sites and network file shares.
- Doesn't require that you set up a ShareFile subdomain, provision users to ShareFile, or host ShareFile data.
- Provides users with mobile access to data through the ShareFile XenMobile Apps for iOS and Android. Users can edit Microsoft Office documents. Users can also preview and annotate Adobe PDF files from mobile devices.
- Complies with security restrictions against leaking user information outside of the corporate network.
- Provides simple setup of StorageZone Connectors through the XenMobile console. If you later decide to use the full ShareFile functionality with XenMobile, you can change the configuration in the XenMobile console.
- Requires XenMobile Enterprise Edition.

For a XenMobile integration with StorageZone Connectors only:

- ShareFile uses your single sign-on configuration to NetScaler Gateway to authenticate with StorageZones Controller.
- XenMobile doesn't authenticate through SAML because the ShareFile control plane isn't used.

The following diagram shows the high-level architecture for XenMobile use with StorageZone Connectors.



## Requirements

- Minimum component versions:
  - XenMobile Server 10.5 (on-premises)
  - ShareFile for iOS (MDX) 5.3
  - ShareFile for Android (MDX) 5.3
  - ShareFile StorageZones Controller 5.0

This article contains instructions for how to configure ShareFile StorageZones Controller 5.0
- Ensure that the server to run StorageZones Controller meets the system requirements. For requirements, see the following sections in "System requirements" in the ShareFile StorageZones Controller documentation:
  - [StorageZones Controller](#)
  - [StorageZone Connector for SharePoint](#)
  - [StorageZone Connector for Network File Shares](#)

The requirements for StorageZones for ShareFile Data and for Restricted StorageZones don't apply to a XenMobile integration with StorageZone Connectors only.

XenMobile doesn't support Documentum connectors.

- To run PowerShell scripts:
  - Run the scripts in the 32-bit (x86) version of PowerShell.

## Installation tasks

Complete the following tasks, in the order presented, to install and set up StorageZones Controller. These steps are specific to XenMobile integration with StorageZone Connectors only. Some of these articles are in the StorageZones Controller documentation.

### 1. [Configure NetScaler for StorageZones Controller](#)

You can use NetScaler as a DMZ proxy for StorageZones Controller.

### 2. [Install an SSL certificate](#)

A StorageZones Controller that hosts standard zones requires an SSL certificate. A StorageZones Controller that



hosts restricted zones and uses an internal address doesn't require an SSL certificate.

### 3. Prepare your server

IIS and ASP.NET setup is required for StorageZone Connectors.

### 4. Install StorageZones Controller

### 5. Prepare StorageZones Controller for use with StorageZone Connectors-only

### 6. Specify a proxy server for StorageZones

The StorageZones Controllers console enables you to specify a proxy server for StorageZones Controllers. You can also specify a proxy server using other methods.

### 7. Configure the domain controller to trust the StorageZones Controller for delegation

Configure the domain controller to support NTLM or Kerberos authentication on network shares or SharePoint sites.

### 8. Join a secondary StorageZones Controller to a StorageZone

To configure a StorageZone for high availability, connect at least two StorageZones Controllers to it.

## Install StorageZones Controller

### 1. Download and install the StorageZones Controller software:

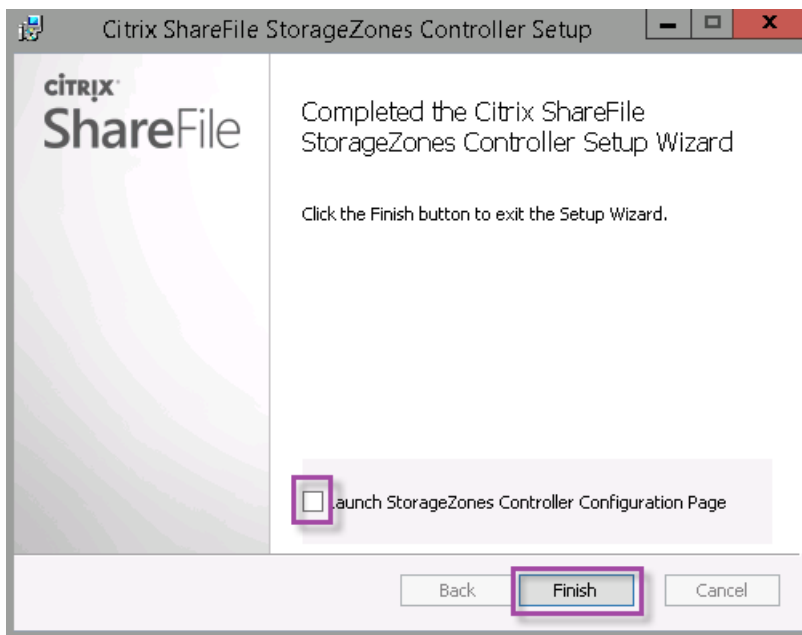
- a. From the ShareFile download page at <http://www.citrix.com/downloads/sharefile.html>, log on and download the latest StorageZones Controller installer.
- b. Installing StorageZones Controller changes the default website on the server to the installation path of the controller. Enable **Anonymous Authentication** on the default website.

### 2. On the server where you want to install StorageZones Controller, run StorageCenter.msi.

The ShareFile StorageZones Controller Setup wizard starts.

### 3. Respond to the prompts:

- In the **Destination Folder** page, if Internet Information Services (IIS) is installed in the default location, leave the defaults. If not, browse to the IIS installation location.
- When installation is complete, clear the check box for **Launch StorageZones Controller Configuration Page** and then click **Finish**.



4. When prompted, restart the StorageZones Controller.

5. To test that the installation was successful, navigate to <http://localhost/>. If the installation is successful, the ShareFile logo appears.

If the ShareFile logo does not appear, clear the browser cache and try again.

## Important

If you plan to clone the StorageZones Controller, capture the disk image before you proceed with configuring the StorageZones Controller.

### Prepare StorageZones Controller for use with StorageZone Connectors-only

For an integration only with StorageZone Connectors, you don't use the StorageZones Controller administrative console. That interface requires a ShareFile administrator account, which isn't necessary for this solution. As a result, you run a PowerShell script to prepare the StorageZones Controller for use without the ShareFile control plane. The script does the following:

- Registers the current StorageZones Controller as a primary StorageZones Controller. You can later join secondary StorageZones Controllers to the primary controller.
- Creates a zone and sets the passphrase for it.

1. From your StorageZone Controller server, download the PsExec tool: Navigate to Microsoft [Windows Sysinternals](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sysinternals/) and then click **Download PsTools**. Extract the tool to the root of the C drive.

# Windows Sysinternals

Home Learn **Downloads** Community

Windows Sysinternals > Downloads > Process Utilities > PsExec

## Utilities

- Sysinternals Suite
- Utilities Index


---

- File and Disk Utilities
- Networking Utilities

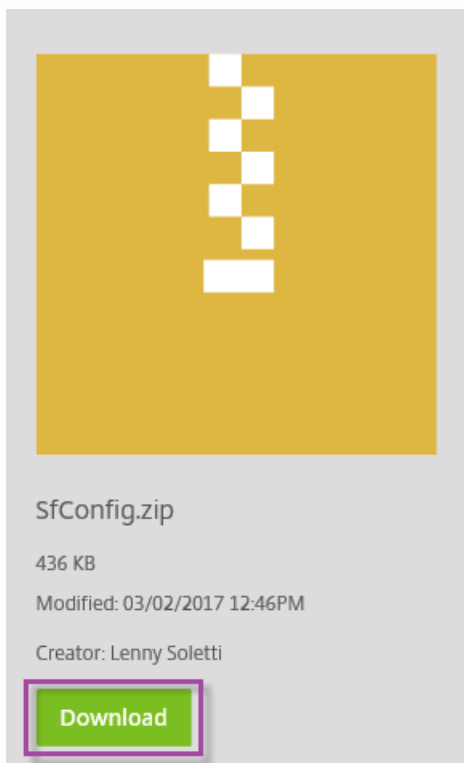
## PsExec v2.11

By Mark Russinovich

Published: May 2, 2014

 **Download PsTools**  
(1,648 KB)

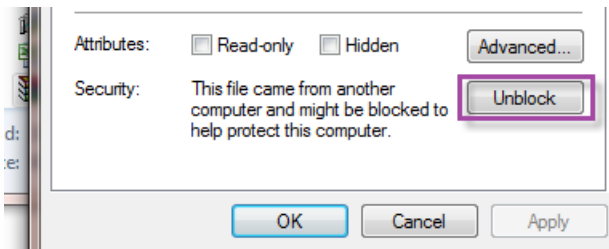
2. Download SfConfig.zip: Navigate to <https://labs.sharefile.com/d-sf083d50048a4e408> on the ShareFile Labs site and click **Download**.



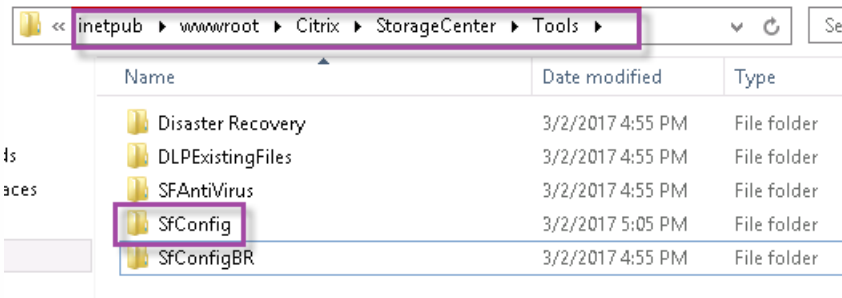
A file card for SfConfig.zip. It features a yellow square with a white checkered pattern. Below the image, the text reads: SfConfig.zip, 436 KB, Modified: 03/02/2017 12:46PM, Creator: Lenny Soletti. At the bottom, there is a green button with the word 'Download' in white text, which is highlighted with a purple border.

3. Save SfConfig.zip to C:\inetpub\wwwroot\Citrix\StorageCenter\Tools.

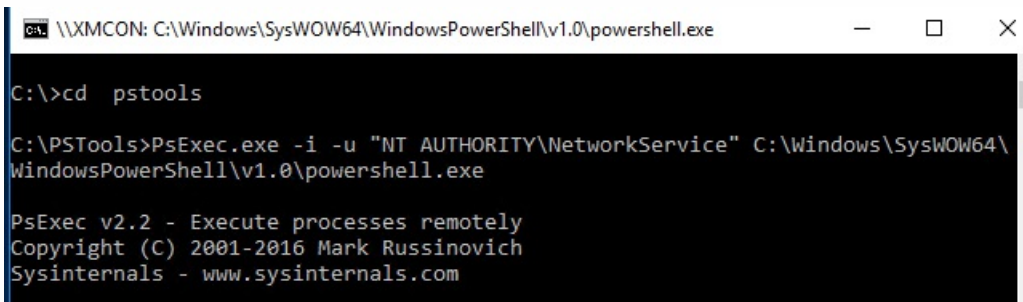
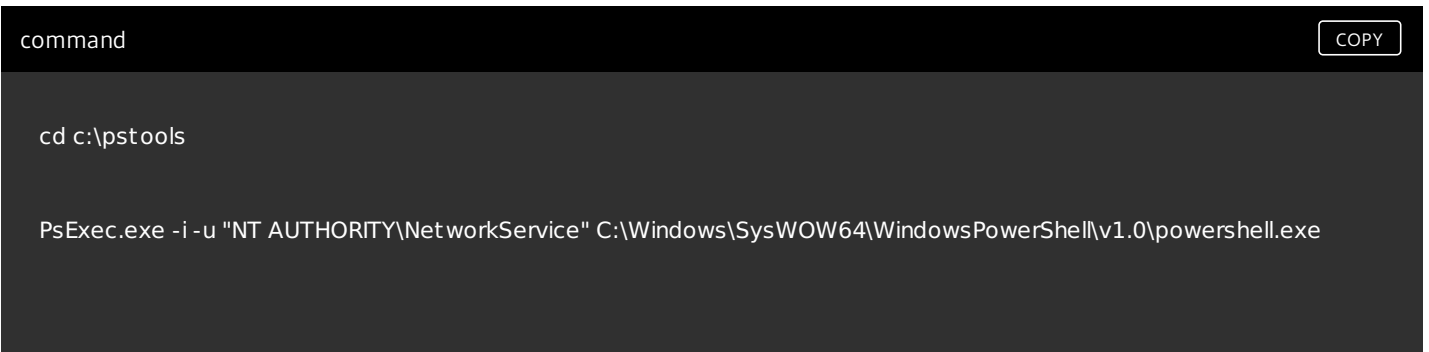
4. Right-click SfConfig.zip, choose **Properties**, and click **Unblock** to remove the security block.



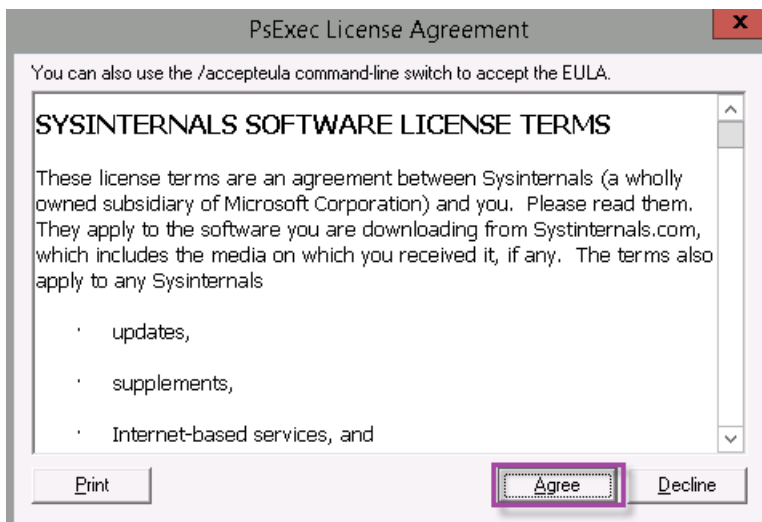
5. Extract the zip file to C:\inetpub\wwwroot\Citrix\StorageCenter\Tools.



6. Run the PsExec tool: Open the Command Prompt as the Administrator User and then type the following:



7. When prompted, click **Agree** to run the Sysinternals tool.



A PowerShell window opens.

8. In the PowerShell window, type the following:

```
command
```

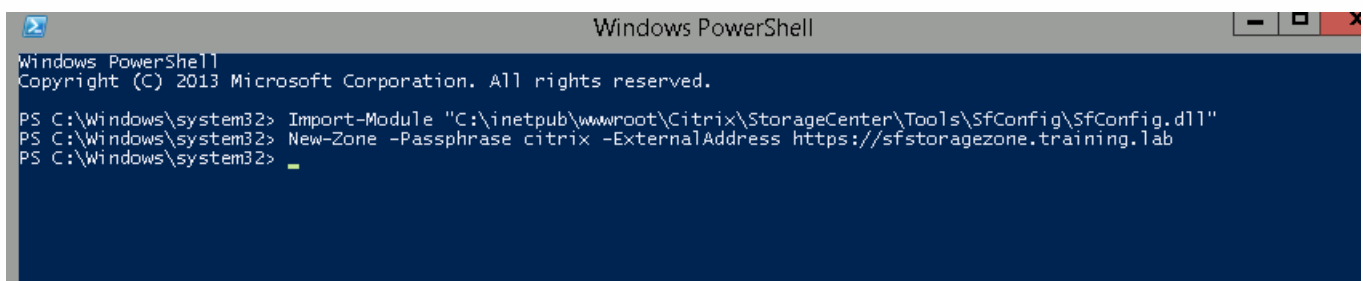
```
Import-Module "C:\inetpub\wwwroot\Citrix\StorageCenter\Tools\SfConfig\SfConfig.dll"
```

```
New-Zone -Passphrase passphrase -ExternalAddress https://szcfqdn.com
```

Where:

**Passphrase:** Is the passphrase you want to assign to the site. Make a note of it. You cannot recover the passphrase from the controller. If you lose the passphrase, you cannot reinstall StorageZones, join more StorageZones Controllers to the StorageZone, or recover the StorageZone if the server fails.

**ExternalAddress:** Is the external fully qualified domain name of the StorageZones Controller server.



Your primary StorageZones Controller is now ready.

Before you log in to XenMobile to create StorageZone Connectors: Complete the following configuration, if applicable:

[Specify a proxy server for StorageZones](#)

[Configure the domain controller to trust the StorageZones Controller for delegation](#)

[Join a secondary StorageZones Controller to a StorageZone](#)

To create StorageZone Connectors, see [Define StorageZones Controller connections in XenMobile](#).

[Join a secondary StorageZones Controller to a StorageZone](#)

To configure a StorageZone for high availability, connect at least two StorageZones Controllers to it. To join a secondary StorageZones Controller to a zone, install StorageZones Controller on a second server. Then join that controller to the zone of the primary controller.

1. Open a PowerShell window on the StorageZones Controller server that you want to join to the primary server.
2. In the PowerShell window, type the following:

```
Join-Zone -Passphrase <passphrase> -PrimaryController <HostnameOrIP>
```

For example:

```
Join-Zone -Passphrase secret123 -PrimaryController 10.10.110.210
```

[Define StorageZones Controller connections in XenMobile](#)

Before you add StorageZone Connectors, you configure connection information for each StorageZones Controller enabled for StorageZone Connectors. You can define StorageZones Controllers as described in this section, or when you add a connector.

On your first visit to the **Configure > ShareFile** page, the page summarizes the differences between using XenMobile with ShareFile Enterprise and with StorageZone Connectors.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 administrator ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions **ShareFile** Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

Choose a method for integrating ShareFile with XenMobile or learn more about which mode to select.

	ShareFile Enterprise	StorageZone Connectors Only
Access network shares and SharePoint data from mobile devices	✓	✓
Edit Microsoft Office documents from mobile devices	✓	✓
Preview and annotate Adobe PDF files from mobile devices	✓	✓
Store data in Citrix-managed or customer-managed StorageZones or both	✓	
Securely share files with people inside and outside the enterprise	✓	
Sync files and data across multiple devices	✓	
Access files through the ShareFile website	✓	
Access Office 365 content and Personal Cloud connectors from mobile devices	✓	
Use auditing and reporting capabilities	✓	

[Configure ShareFile Enterprise](#) [Configure Connectors](#)

Click **Configure Connectors** to continue with the configuration steps in this article.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔍 administrator ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions **ShareFile** Enrollment Profiles Delivery Groups

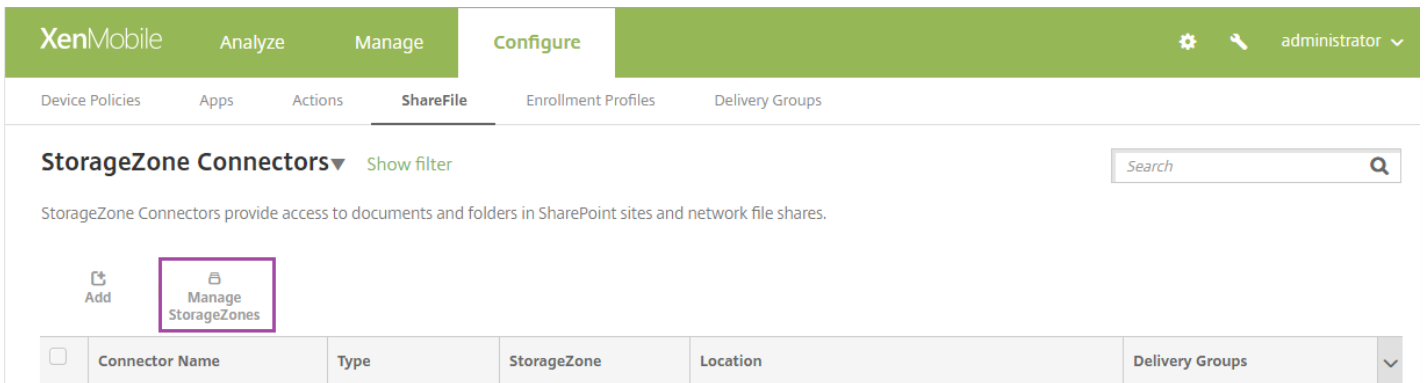
**StorageZone Connectors** ▾ [Show filter](#)  🔍

StorageZone Connectors provide access to documents and folders in SharePoint sites and network file shares.

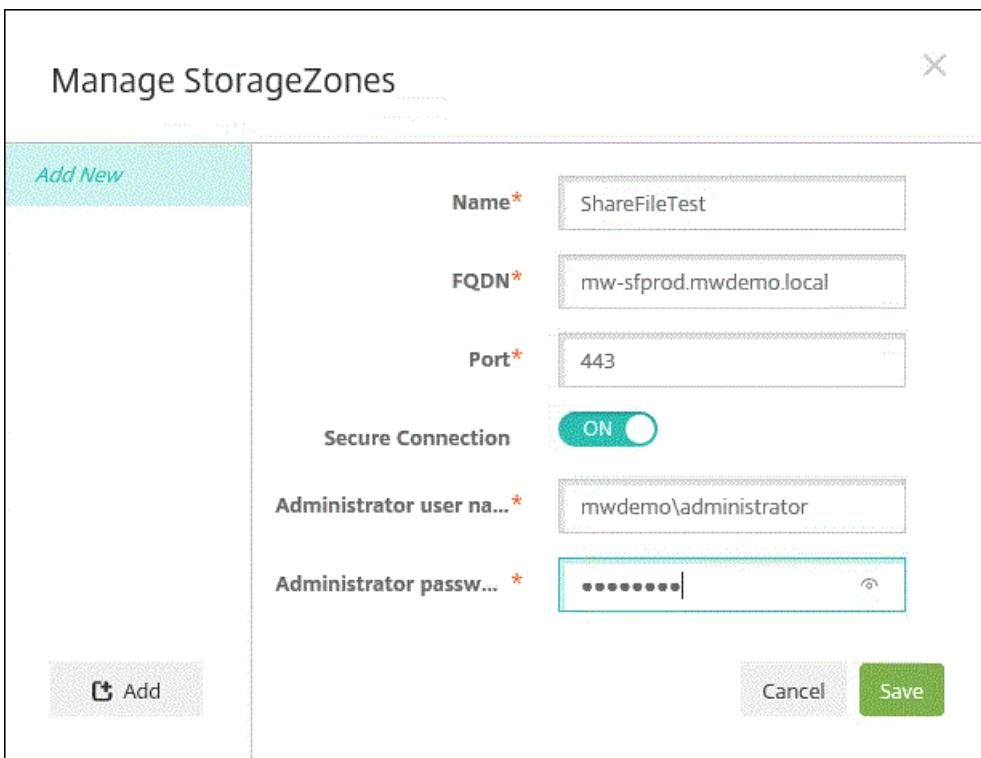
[Add](#) | [Manage StorageZones](#)

<input type="checkbox"/>	Connector Name	Type	StorageZone	Location	Delivery Groups
					▾

1. In **Configure > ShareFile**, click **Manage StorageZones**.



2. In **Manage StorageZones**, add the connection information.



- **Name:** A descriptive name for the StorageZone, used to identify the StorageZone in XenMobile. Don't include a space or special characters in the name.
- **FQDN and Port:** The fully qualified domain name and port number for a StorageZones Controller that is reachable from the XenMobile Server.
- **Secure Connection:** If you use SSL for connections to StorageZones Controller, use the default setting, ON. If you don't use SSL for connections, change this setting to OFF.
- **Administrator user name and Administrator password:** An administrator service account user name (in the form domain\admin) and password. Alternatively, a user account with read and write permissions on the StorageZones Controllers.

3. Click **Save**.

4. To test the connection, verify that XenMobile Server can reach the fully qualified domain name of the StorageZones



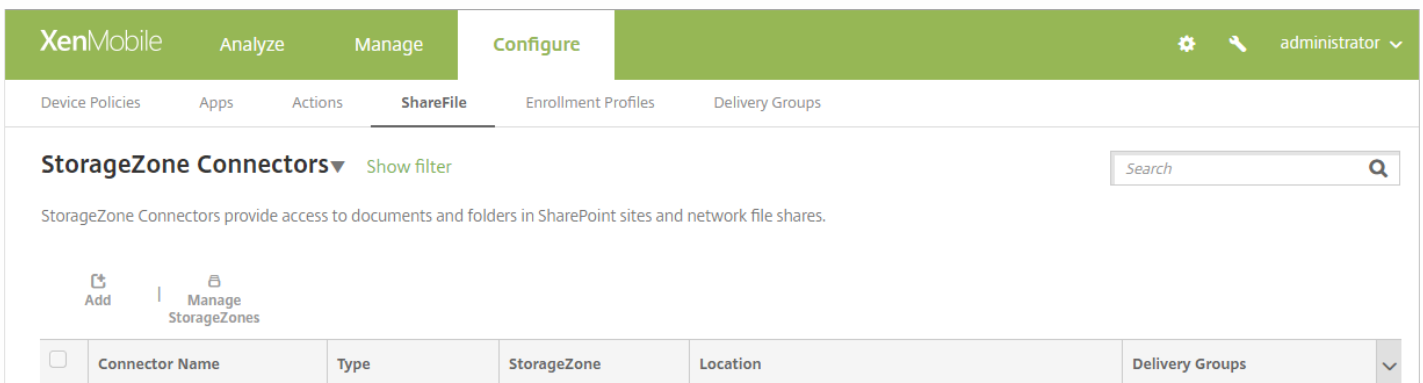
Controller on port 443.

5. To define another StorageZones Controller connection, click the **Add** button in **Manage StorageZones**.

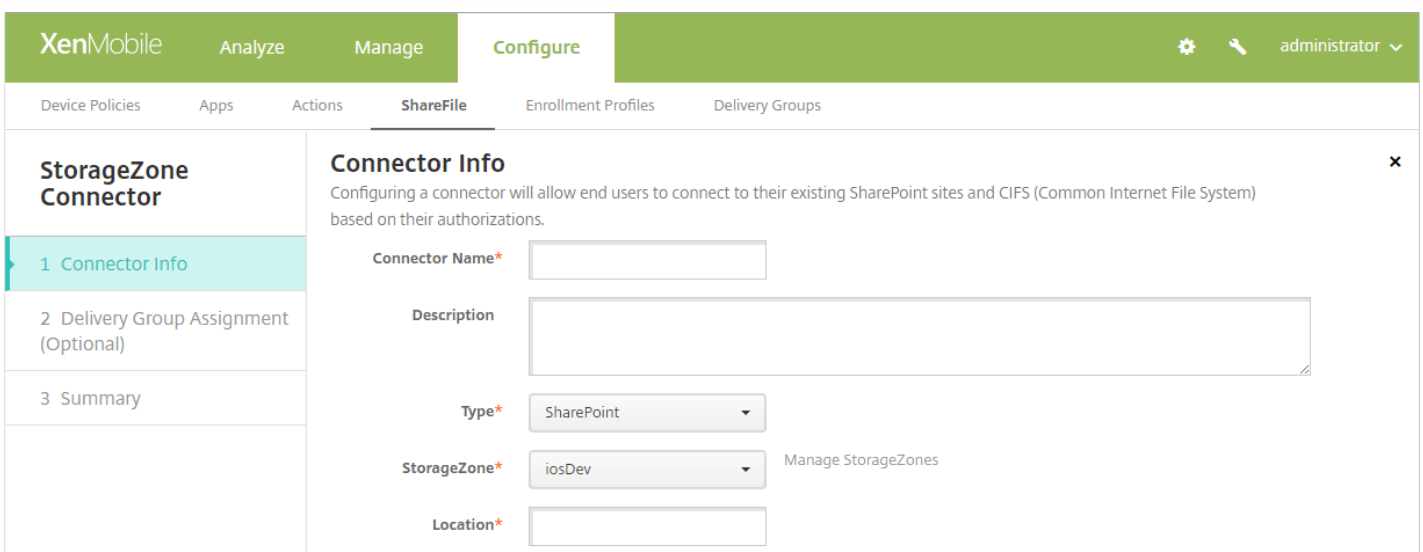
To edit or delete the information for a StorageZones Controller connection, select the connection name in **Manage StorageZones**. Then, click **Edit** or **Delete**.

Add a StorageZone Connector in XenMobile

1. Go to **Configure > ShareFile** and then click **Add**.

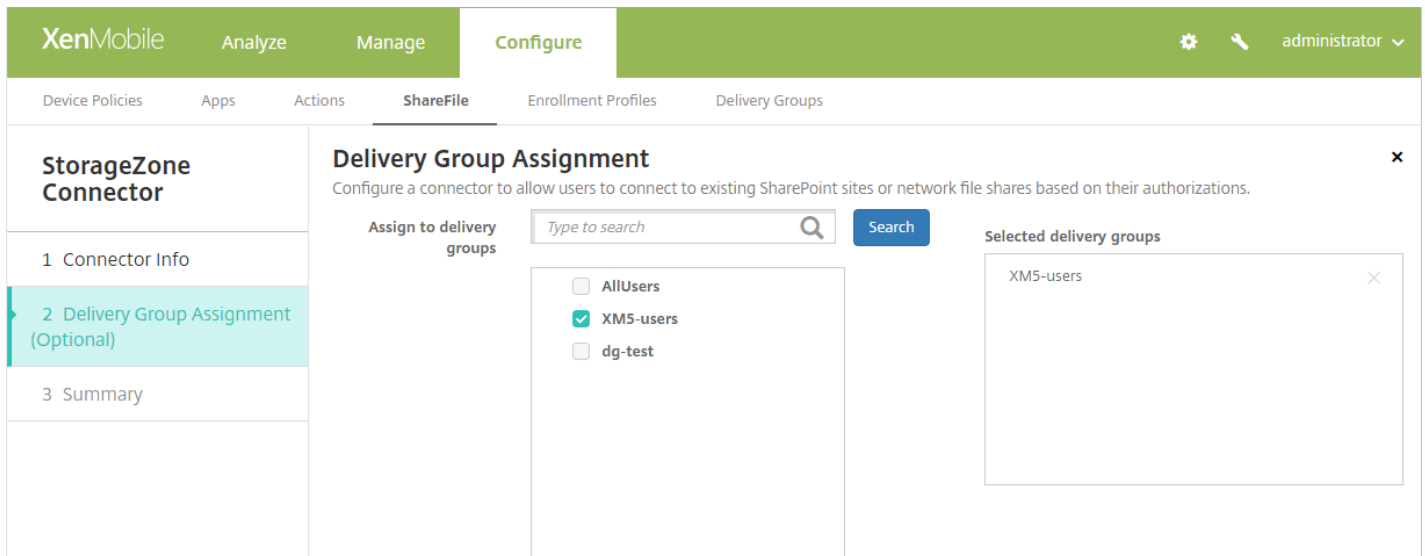


2. On the **Connector Info** page, configure these settings:



- **Connector Name:** A name that identifies the StorageZone Connector in XenMobile.
- **Description:** Optional notes about this Connector.
- **Type:** Choose either **SharePoint** or **Network**.
- **StorageZone:** Choose the StorageZone associated with the Connector. If the StorageZone isn't listed, click **Manage StorageZones** to define the StorageZones Controller.
- **Location:** For SharePoint, specify the URL of the SharePoint root-level site, site collection, or document library, in the form `https://sharepoint.company.com`. For a network share, specify the fully qualified domain name of the Uniform Naming Convention (UNC) path, in the form `\\server\share`.

3. On the **Delivery Group Assignment** page, optionally assign the Connector to delivery groups. Alternatively, you can associate connectors to delivery groups using **Configure > Delivery Groups**.



4. On the **Summary** page, you can review the options you configured. To adjust the configuration, click **Back**.

5. Click **Save** to save the Connector.

6. Test the connector:

a. When you wrap the ShareFile clients, do the following:

- Set the Network access policy to **Tunneled to the internal network**.

In this mode of operation, the XenMobile MDX framework intercepts all network traffic from the ShareFile client. The traffic redirects through NetScaler Gateway by using an app-specific micro VPN.

- Set the Preferred VPN mode policy to **Secure browse**.

In this mode of tunneling, the MDX framework terminates SSL/HTTP traffic from an MDX app. MDX then initiates new connections to internal connections on behalf of the user. This policy setting enables the MDX framework to detect and respond to authentication challenges issued by web servers.

b. Add the ShareFile clients to XenMobile. For details, see [To add ShareFile clients to XenMobile](#).

c. From a supported device, verify single sign-on to ShareFile and connectors.

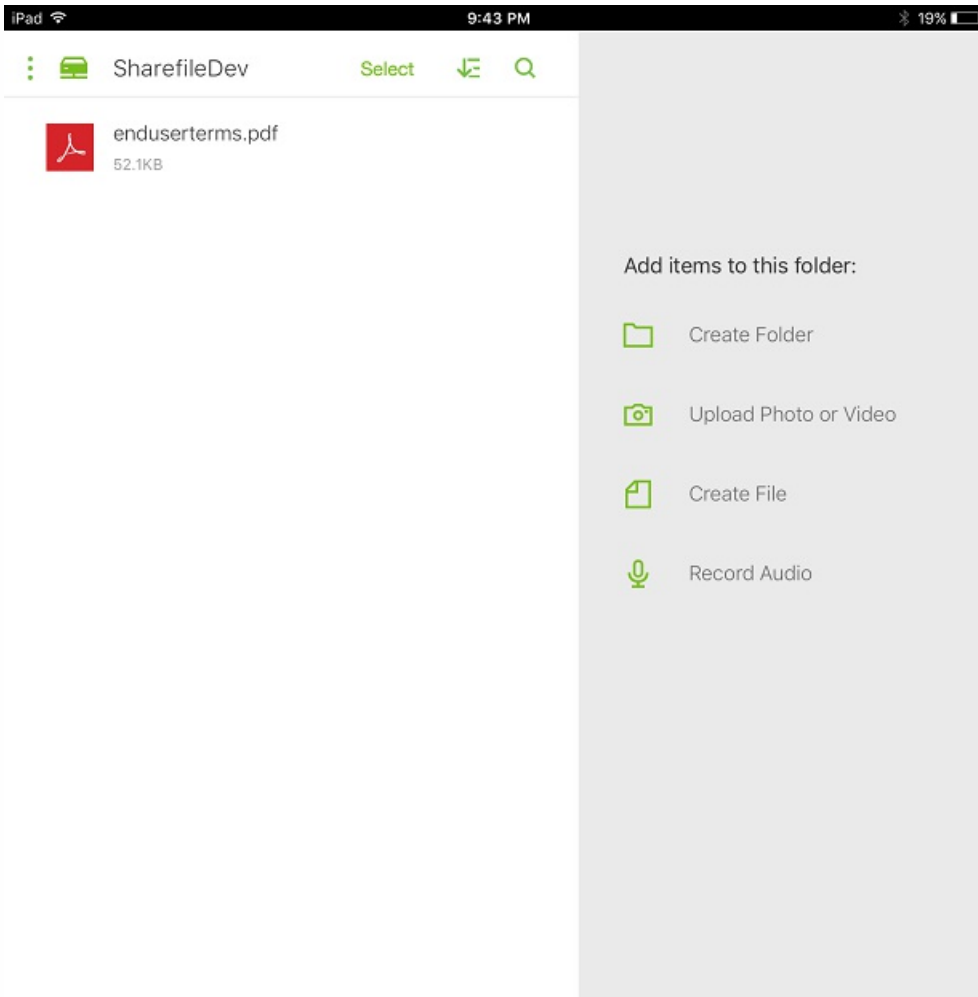
In the following samples, SharefileDev is the name of a connector.

-  Dashboard
-  SharefileDev

---

-  Queue
-  Settings





## Filter the StorageZone Connectors list

You can filter the list of StorageZone Connectors by Connector type, assigned delivery groups, and StorageZone.

1. Go to **Configure > ShareFile** and then click **Show filter**.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile 'Configure' page for 'ShareFile'. The navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'ShareFile' sub-tab is active. Below the navigation, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'StorageZone Connectors' section has a 'Show filter' button highlighted with a purple box. A search bar is also present. Below the search bar, there are 'Add' and 'Manage StorageZones' icons. A table lists the connectors:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Connector Name	Type	StorageZone	Location	Delivery Groups
<input type="checkbox"/>	TestNS	NetworkFile	iosDev	\\kylec-az-sz2\DevTestSZ	XM5-users
<input type="checkbox"/>	TestSP	Sharepoint	iosDev	http://sf-az-sp2013.sfazure.com:80	XM5-users,AllUsers

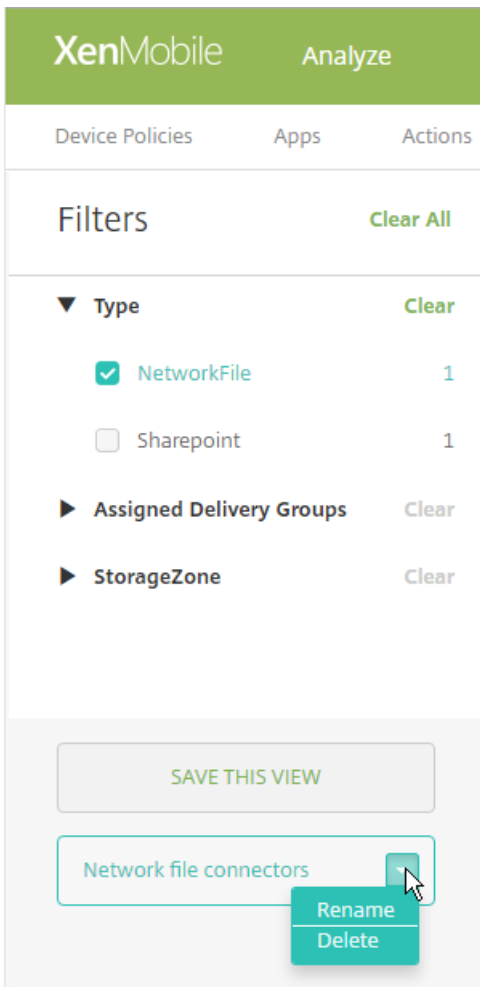
Showing 1 - 2 of 2 items

2. Expand the filter headings to make selections. To save a filter, click **Save This View**, type the filter name, and click **Save**.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' section is active, with sub-tabs for 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'ShareFile' tab is selected, displaying 'StorageZone Connectors'. On the left, a 'Filters' sidebar is expanded to show 'Type' with 'NetworkFile' selected (2 items) and 'Sharepoint' (1 item). Below the filters, a 'SAVE THIS VIEW' button is visible. The main content area shows a table of StorageZone Connectors with columns: Connector Name, Type, StorageZone, Location, and Delivery Groups. Two connectors are listed: 'TestNS' and 'testxm'. A search bar and 'Add'/'Manage StorageZones' buttons are also present.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Connector Name	Type	StorageZone	Location	Delivery Groups
<input type="checkbox"/>	TestNS	NetworkFile	sz2	\\sz2\Storagezone	XM5-users
<input type="checkbox"/>	testxm	NetworkFile	sz1	\\sz1\Storagezone	XM5-users

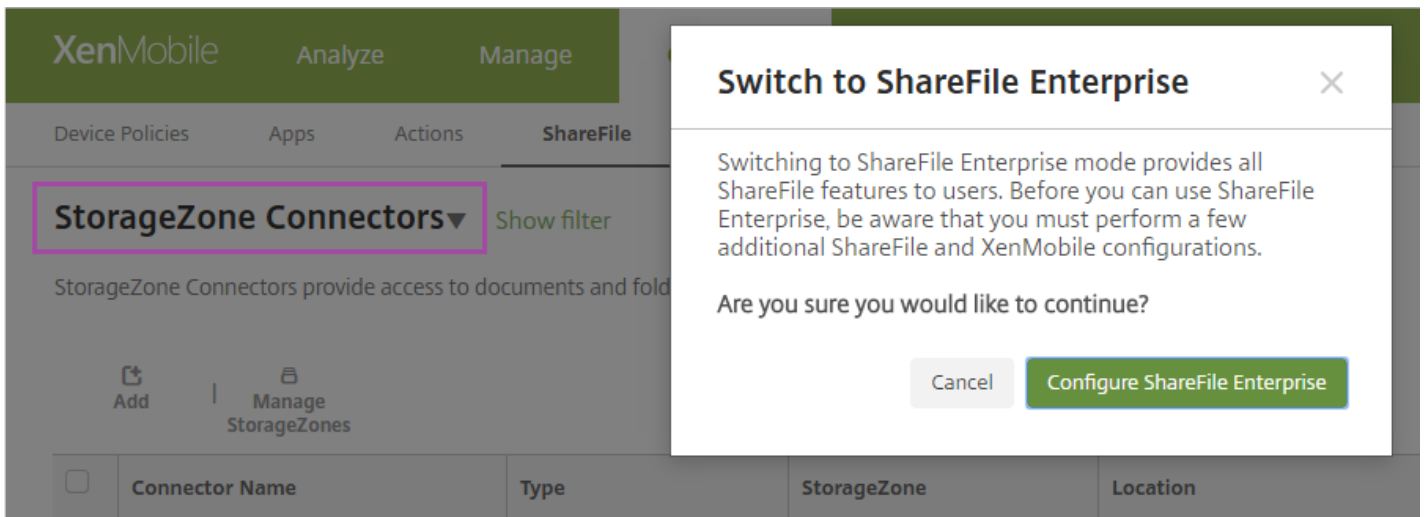
3. To rename or delete a filter, click the arrow icon beside the filter name.



## Switch to ShareFile Enterprise

After integrating StorageZone Connectors with XenMobile, you can later switch to the full ShareFile Enterprise feature set. Use of the ShareFile Enterprise feature set requires XenMobile Enterprise Edition. XenMobile retains your existing StorageZone Connector integration settings.

Go to **Configure > ShareFile**, click the **StorageZone Connectors** drop-down menu, and then click **Configure ShareFile Enterprise**.



For information about configuring ShareFile Enterprise, see [SAML for single sign-on with ShareFile](#).

# SmartAccess for HDX apps

Feb 27, 2017

This feature allows you to control access to HDX apps based on device properties, user properties of a device, or applications installed on a device. You use this feature by setting automated actions to mark the device as out of compliance to deny that device access. HDX apps used with this feature are configured in XenApp and XenDesktop by using a SmartAccess policy that denies access to out-of-compliance devices. XenMobile communicates the status of the device to StoreFront using a signed, encrypted tag. StoreFront then allows or denies access based on the access control policy of the app.

To use this feature, your deployment requires:

- XenApp and XenDesktop 7.6
- StoreFront 3.7 or 3.8
- XenMobile Server configured aggregate HDX apps from a StoreFront server
- XenMobile Server configured with a SAML certificate to be used for signing and encrypting tags. The same certificate without private key is uploaded on StoreFront server.

To start using this feature:

- Configure the XenMobile Server certificate to the StoreFront store
- Configure at least one XenApp and XenDesktop delivery group with the required SmartAccess policy
- Set the automated action in XenMobile

## Export and configure the XenMobile Server certificate and upload it to the StoreFront store

SmartAccess uses signed and encrypted tags to communicate between the XenMobile and StoreFront servers. To enable that communication, you add the XenMobile Server certificate to the StoreFront store.

Export the SAML certificate from the XenMobile Server

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears. Click **Certificates**.
2. Locate the SAML certificate for XenMobile Server.

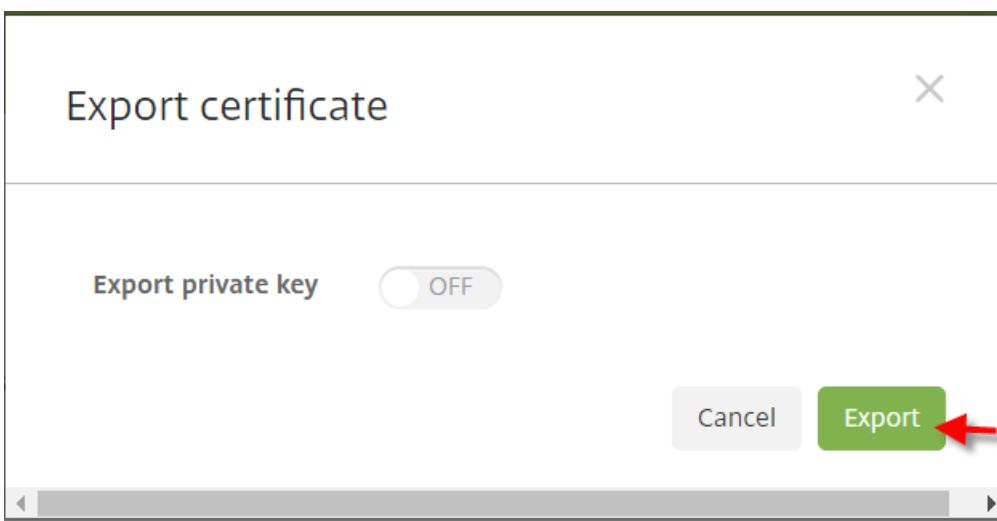


## Certificates

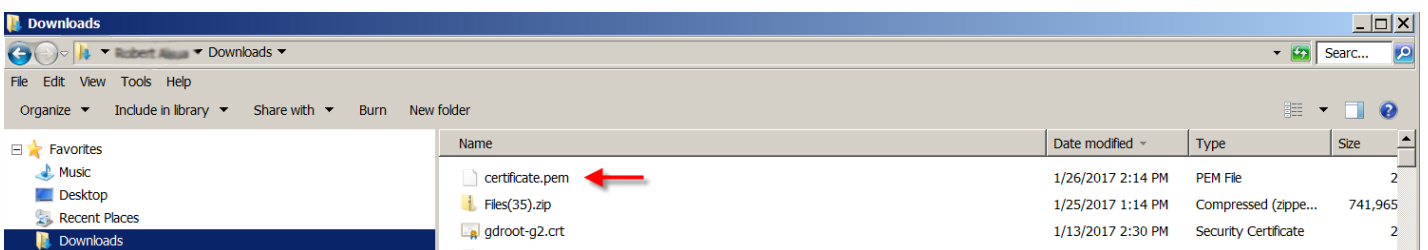
You must restart XenMobile on all nodes to commit and activate your changes to the SSL and Android for Work SAML certificates. To restart XenMobile, use the hypervisor console or command-line window.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Description	Status	Valid from	Valid to	Type	Private key
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	XMS.example.com	Self Signed/Generated	Up to date	2016-05-23	2026-05-21	SAML	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	*.mpg.citrix.com		Up to date	2016-04-20	2017-05-27	SSL Listener	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	cacerts.pem	Self Signed/Generated	Up to date	2016-05-23	2036-05-21	Devices CA	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Verizon Public SureServer CA G14-SHA2		Up to date	2014-04-09	2021-04-09	Root or intermediate	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Baltimore CyberTrust Root		Up to date	2000-05-12	2025-05-12	Root or intermediate	

3. Ensure that **Export private key** is set to **Off**. Click **Export** to export the certificate to your download directory.

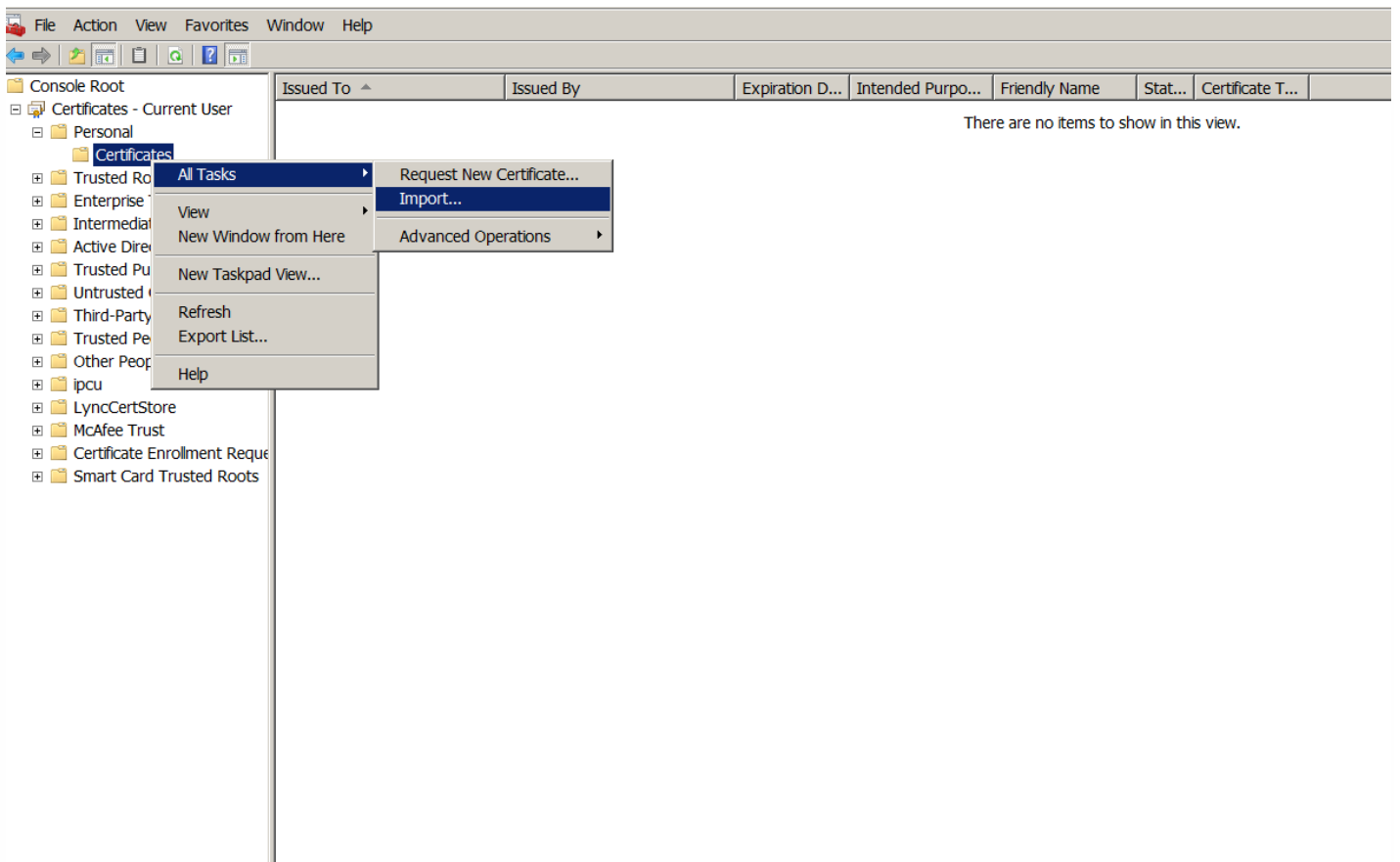


4. Locate the certificate in your download directory. The certificate is in PEM format.



Convert the certificate from PEM to CER

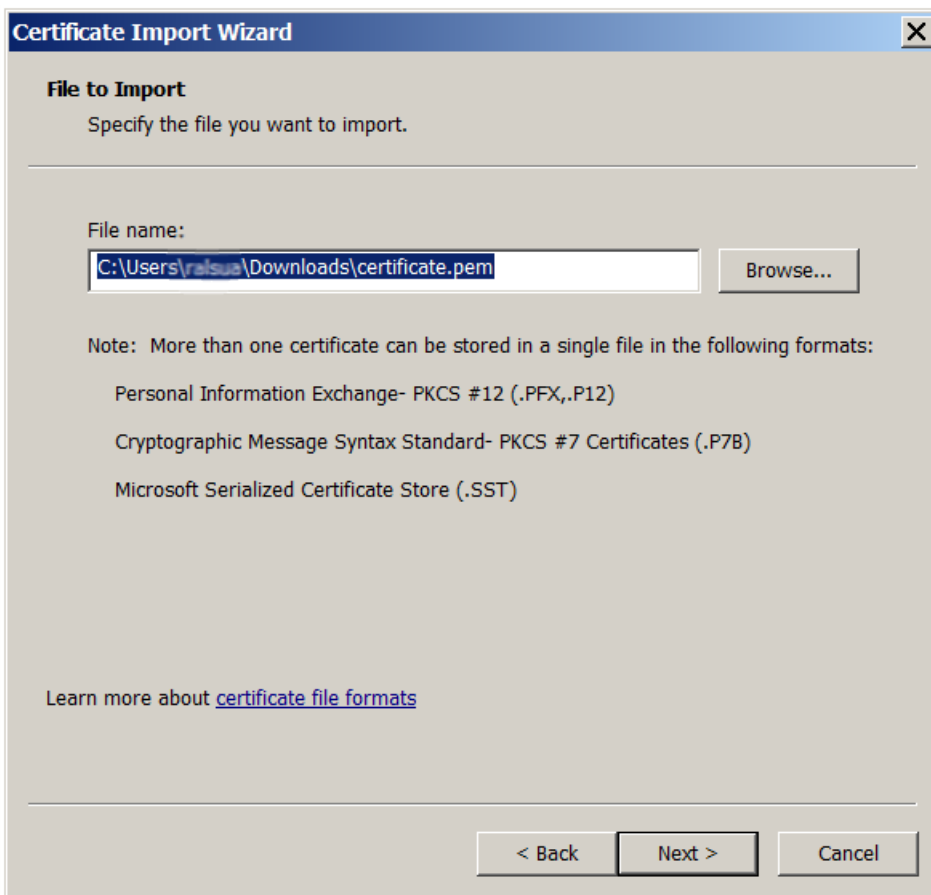
1. Open the Microsoft Management Console (MMC) and right-click **Certificates > All Tasks > Import**.



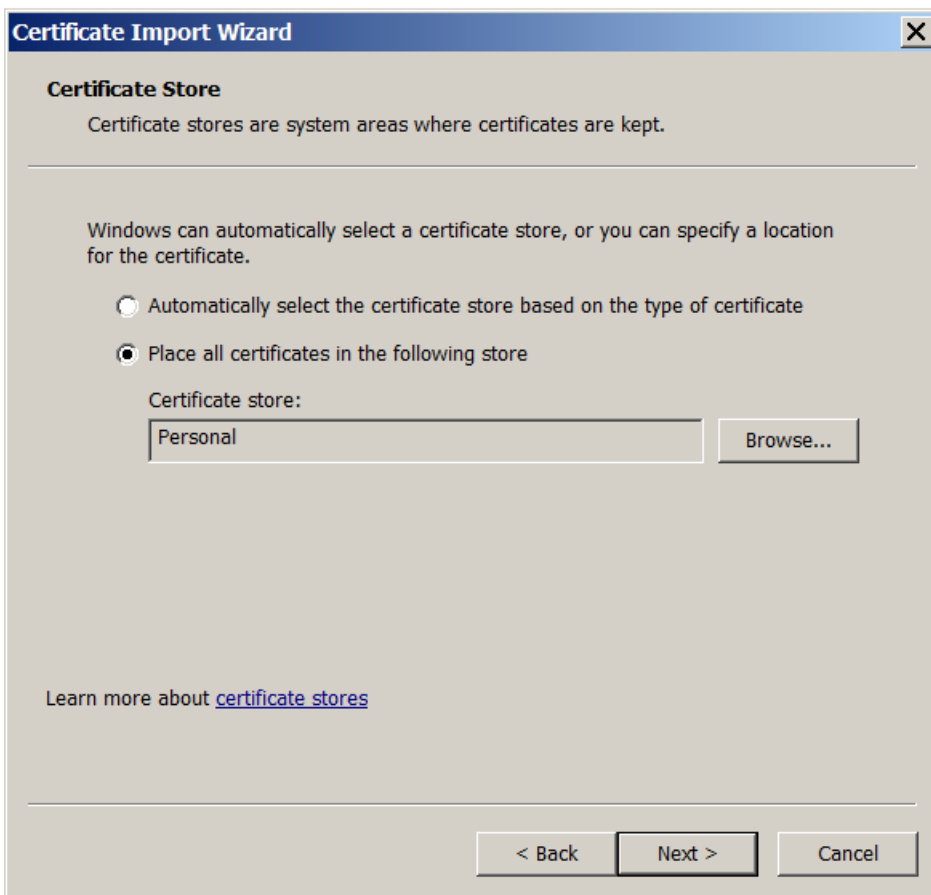
2. When the certificate import wizard appears, click **Next**.



3. Browse to the certificate in the download directory.

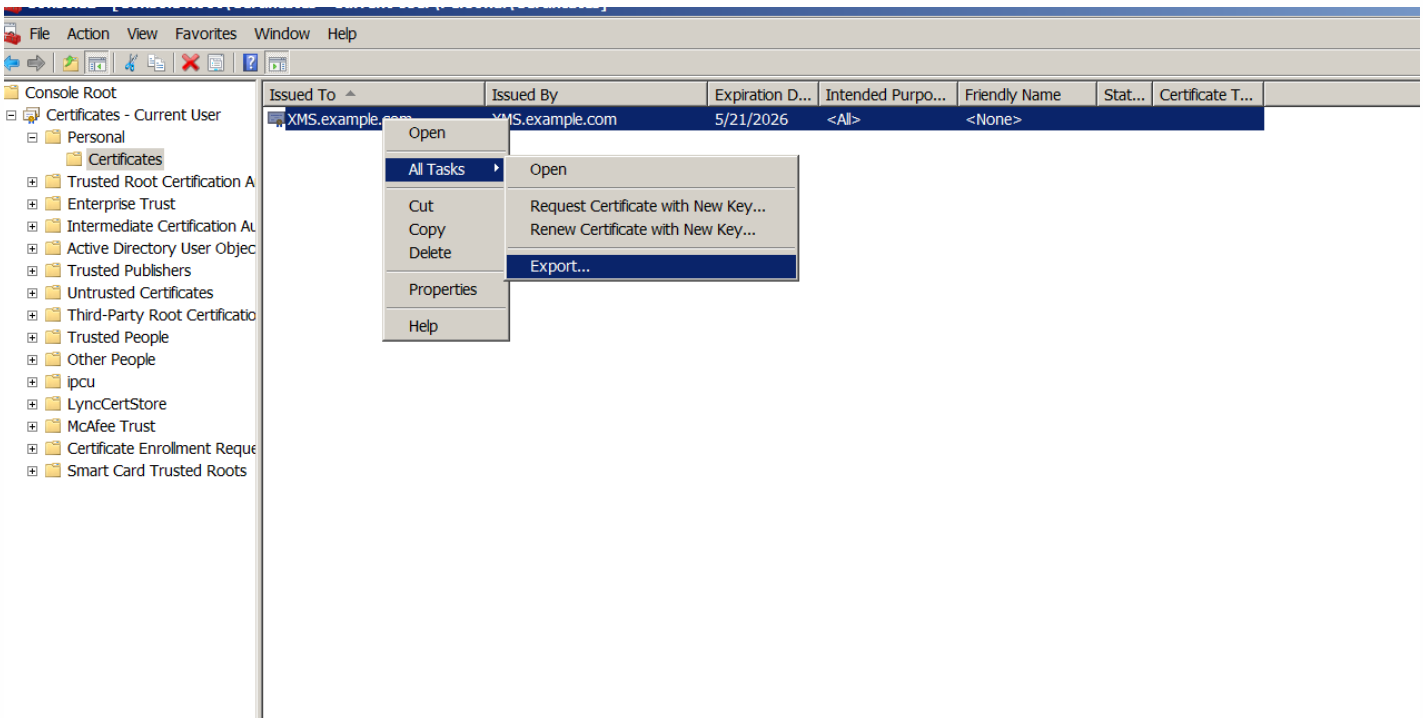


4. Select **Place all certificates in the following store** and select **Personal** as the certificate store. Click **Next**.



5. Review your selections and click **Finish**. Click **OK** to dismiss the confirmation window.

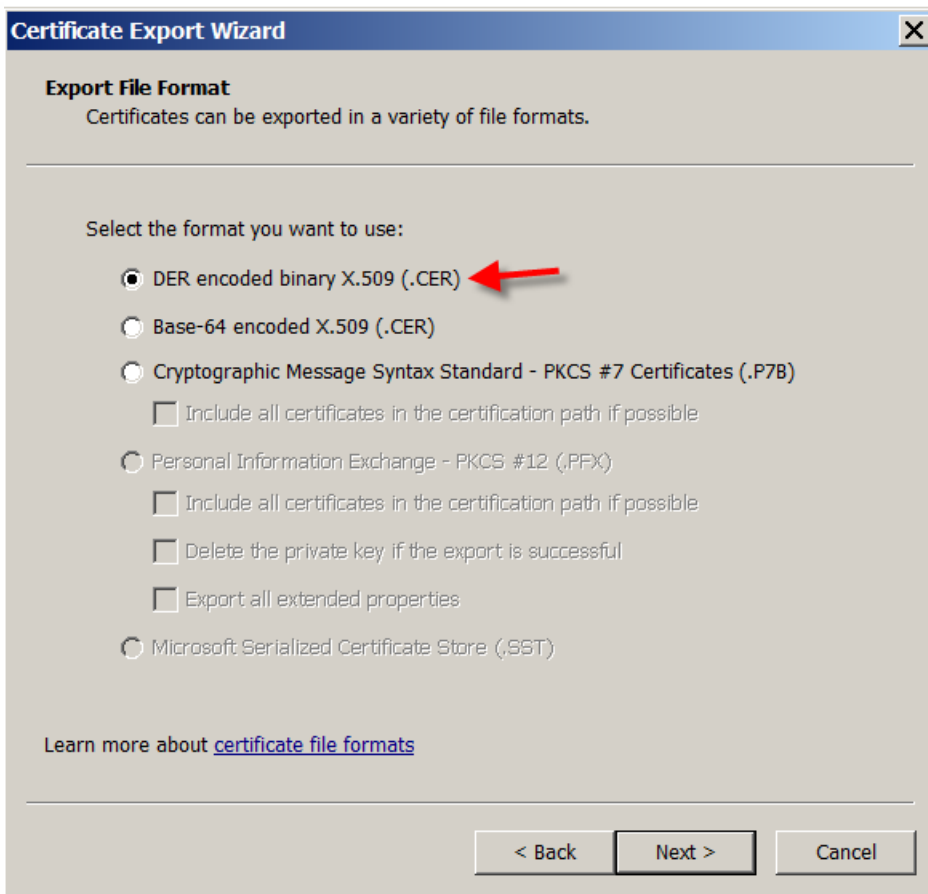
6. In the MMC, right-click the certificate and then choose **All Tasks > Export**.



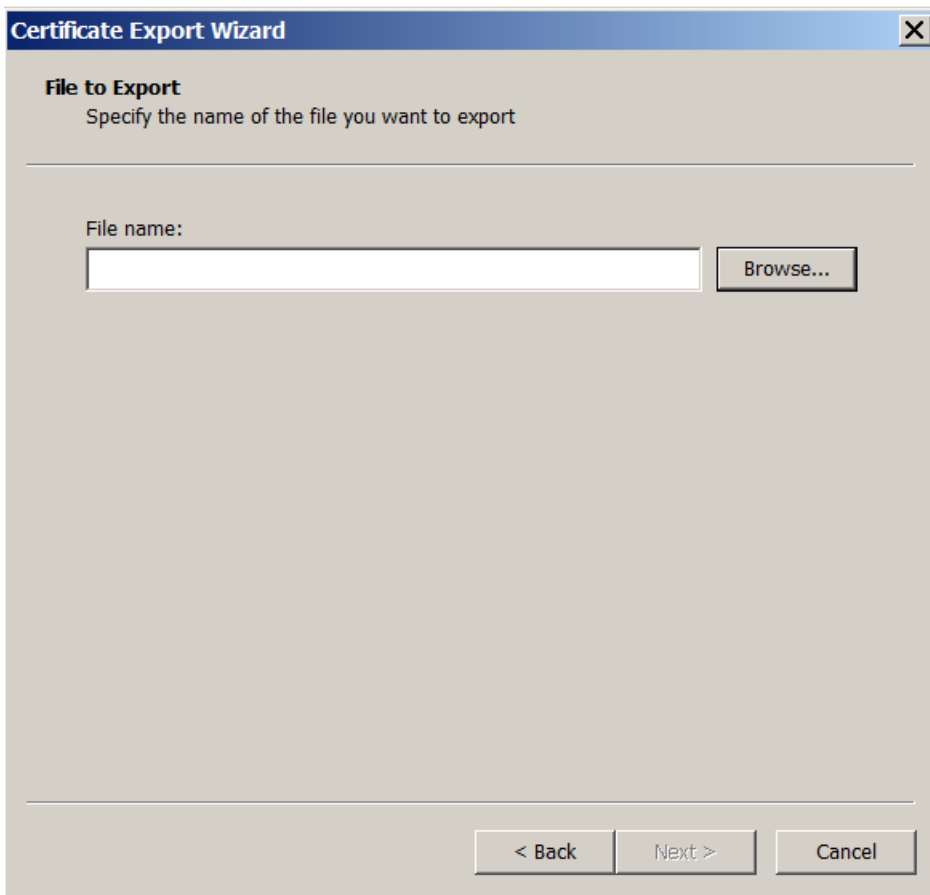
7. When the certificate export wizard appears, click **Next**.



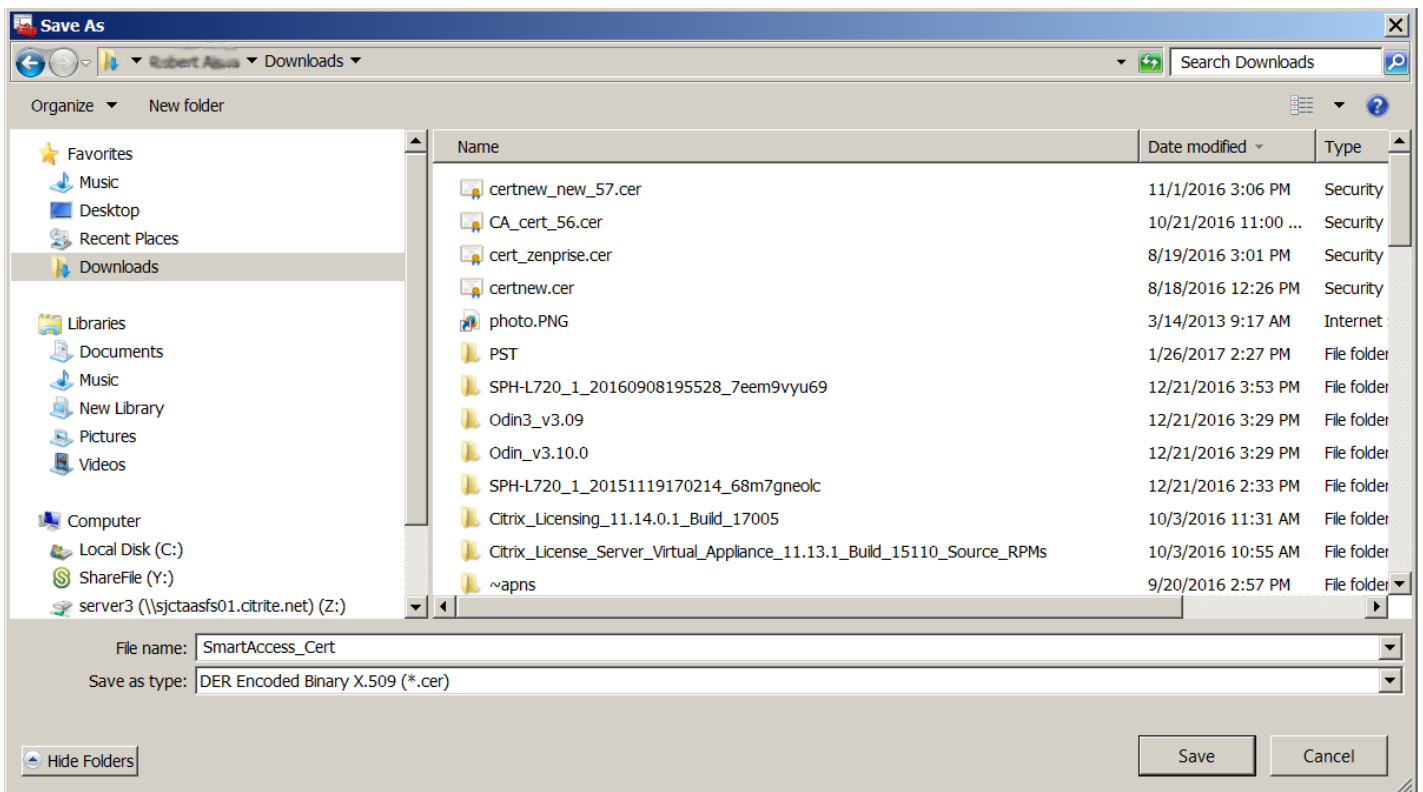
8. Choose the format **DER encoded binary X.509 (.CER)**. Click **Next**.



9. Browse to the certificate. Type a name for the certificate and then click **Next**.

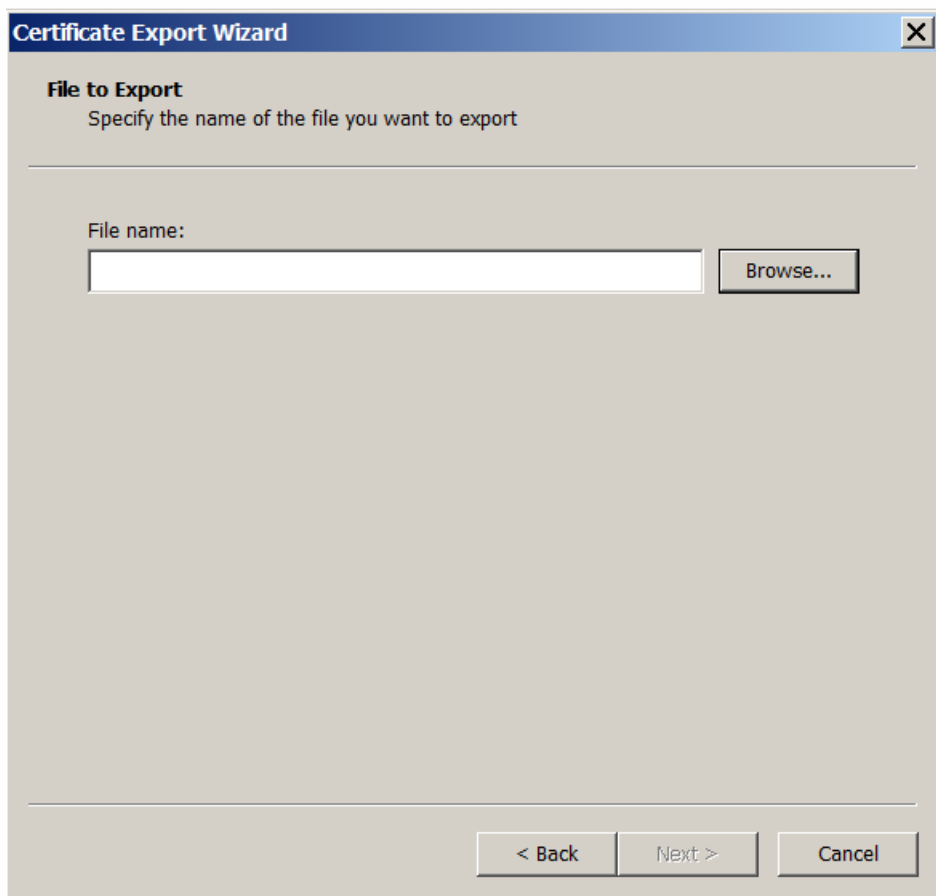


10. Save the certificate.

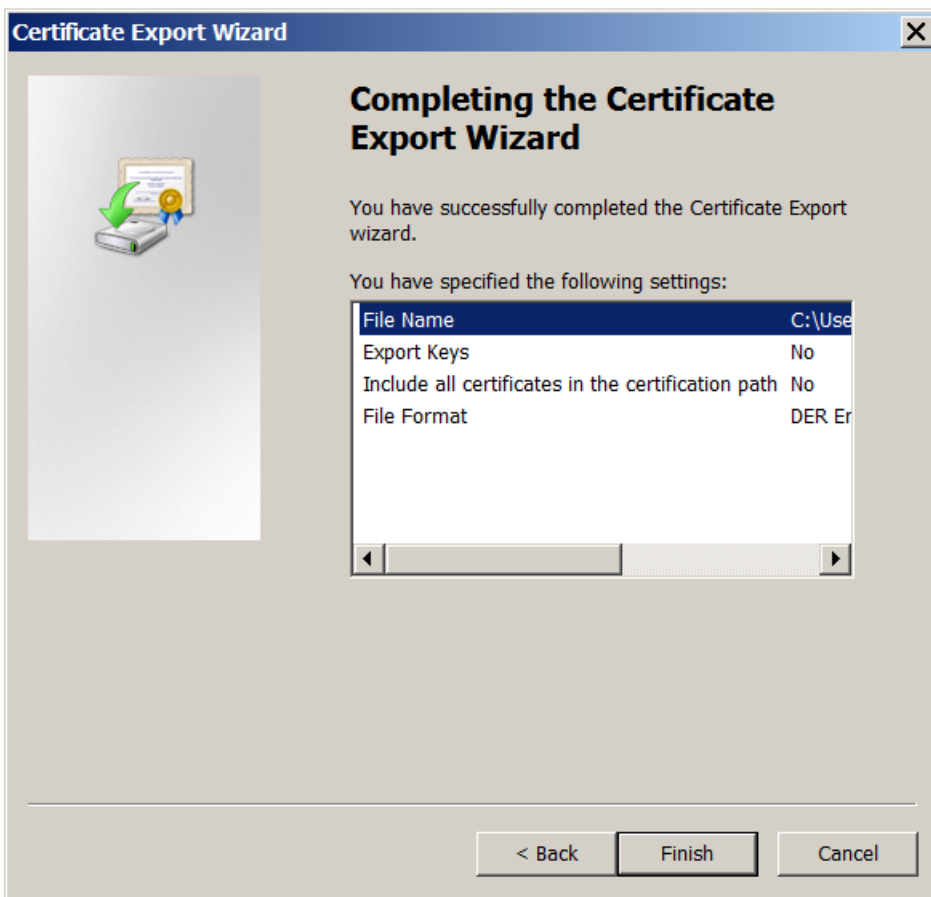




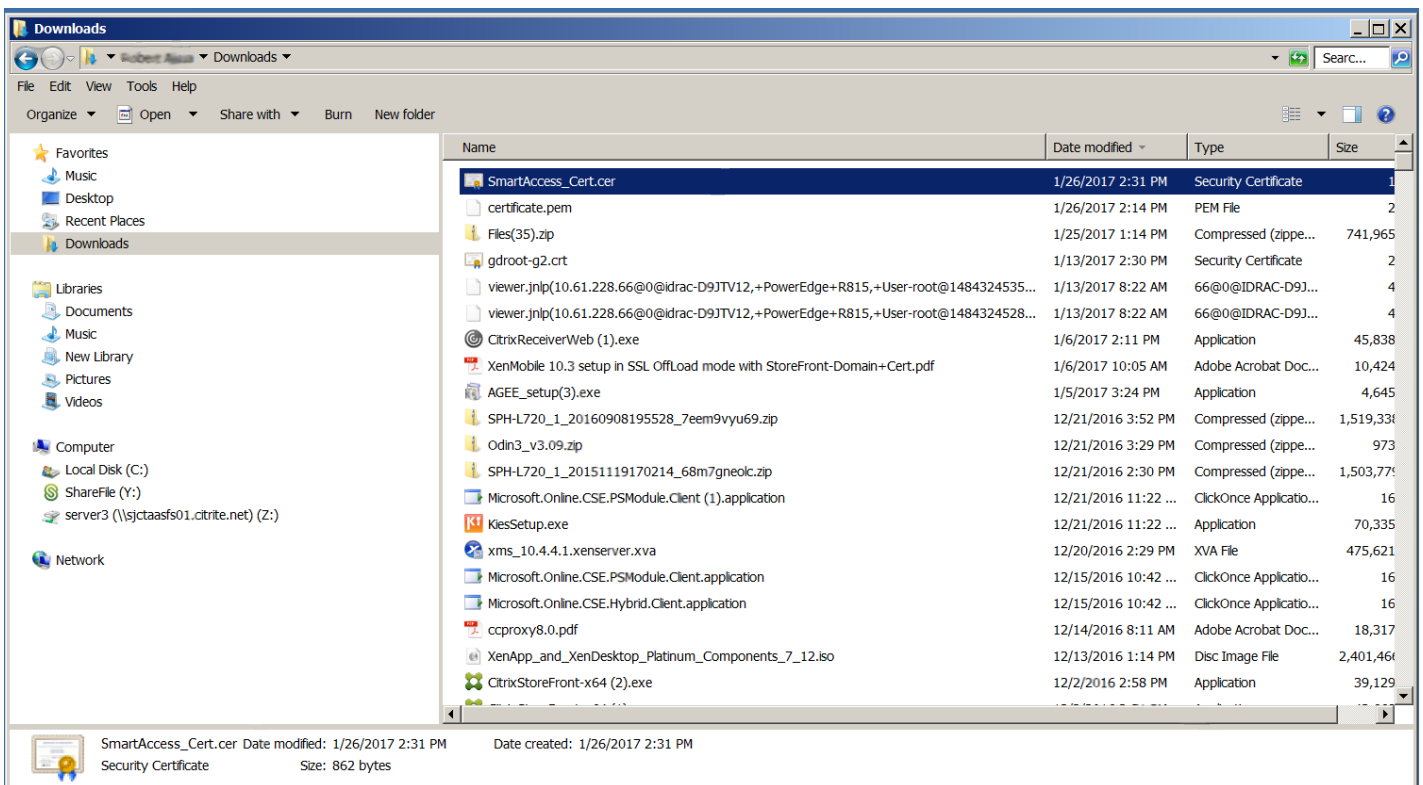
11. Browse to the certificate and click **Next**.



12. Review your selections and click **Finish**. Click **OK** to dismiss the confirmation window.

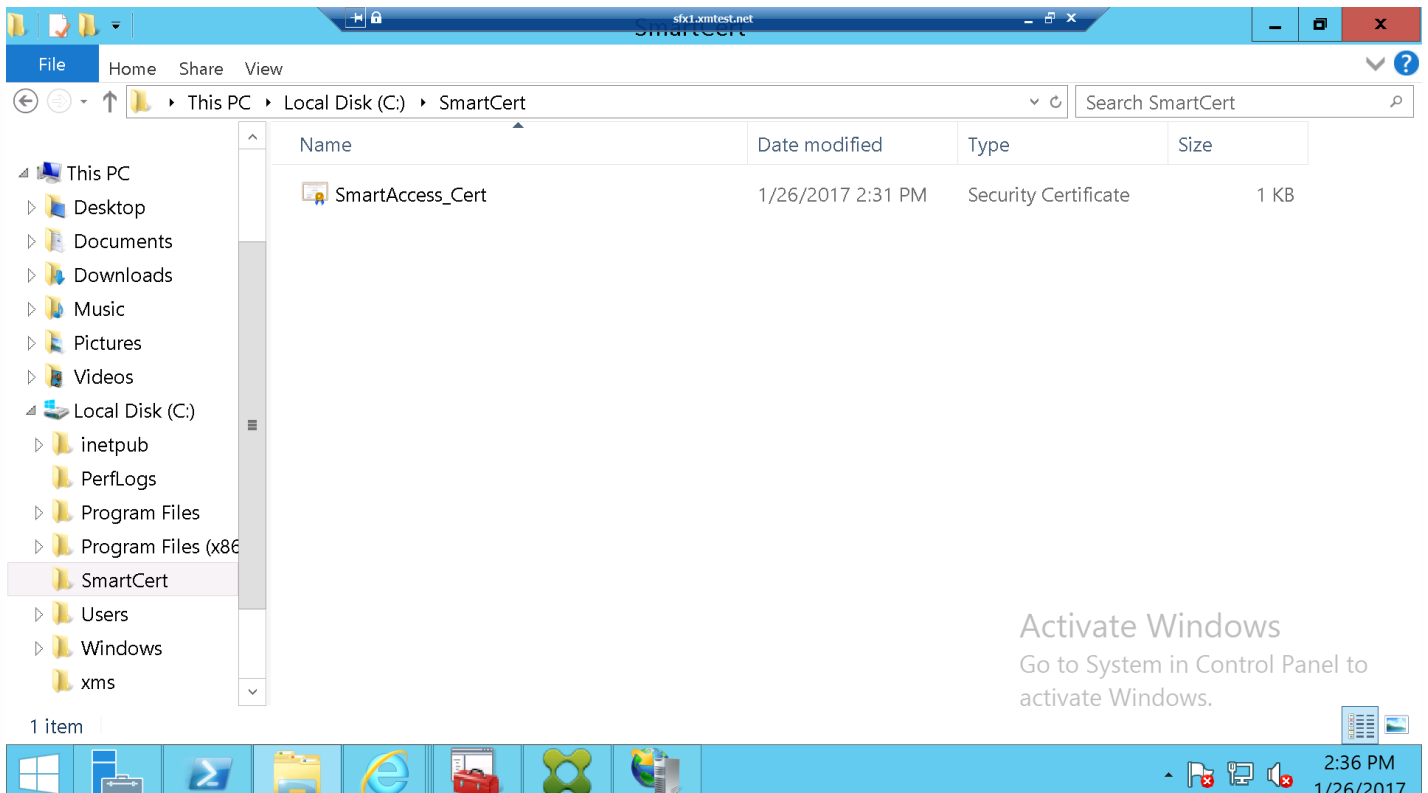


13. Locate the certificate in your download directory. Note that the certificate is in CER format.



## Copy the certificate to the StoreFront Server

1. On the StoreFront server, create a folder called **SmartCert**.
2. Copy the certificate to the **SmartCert** folder.



## Configure the certificate on the StoreFront store

On the StoreFront server, run this PowerShell command to configure the converted XenMobile Server certificate on the store:

command

COPY

```
Grant-STFStorePnaSmartAccess -StoreService $store -CertificatePath "C:\xms\xms.cer" -ServerName "XMS server"
```

```
Administrator: Windows PowerShell
Windows PowerShell
Copyright (C) 2014 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

PS C:\Windows\system32> $store =Get-STFStoreService -VirtualPath /Citrix/Store
PS C:\Windows\system32> Grant-STFStorePnaSmartAccess -StoreService $store -CertificatePath C:\SmartCert\SmartAccess_Cert
.cer -ServerName "XMS Server"

Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Grant-STFStorePnaSmartAccess" on target "Store: /Citrix/Store".
[Y] Yes [A] Yes to All [N] No [L] No to All [S] Suspend [?] Help (default is "Y"): y
PS C:\Windows\system32> _
```

If there are any existing certificates on the StoreFront store, run this PowerShell command to revoke them:

```
command COPY

Revoke-STFStorePnaSmartAccess -StoreService $store -All
```

```
PS C:\Windows\system32> $store =Get-STFStoreService -VirtualPath /Citrix/Store
PS C:\Windows\system32> Revoke-STFStorePnaSmartAccess -StoreService $store -All

Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Revoke-STFStorePnaSmartAccess" on target "Store: /Citrix/Store".
[Y] Yes [A] Yes to All [N] No [L] No to All [S] Suspend [?] Help (default is "Y"): y
PS C:\Windows\system32> _
```

Alternatively, you can run any of these PowerShell commands on the StoreFront server to revoke existing certificates on the StoreFront store:

- Revoke by name:

```
command COPY

$store = Get-STFStoreService -VirtualPath /Citrix/Store

Revoke-STFStorePnaSmartAccess -StoreService $store -ServerName "My XM Server"
```

- Revoke by thumbprint:

```
command COPY
```

```
$store = Get-STFStoreService -VirtualPath /Citrix/Store  
  
Revoke-STFStorePnaSmartAccess -StoreService $store -CertificateThumbprint "1094821dec7834d5d42 bb456329efe4fca8"
```

- Revoke by server object:

command

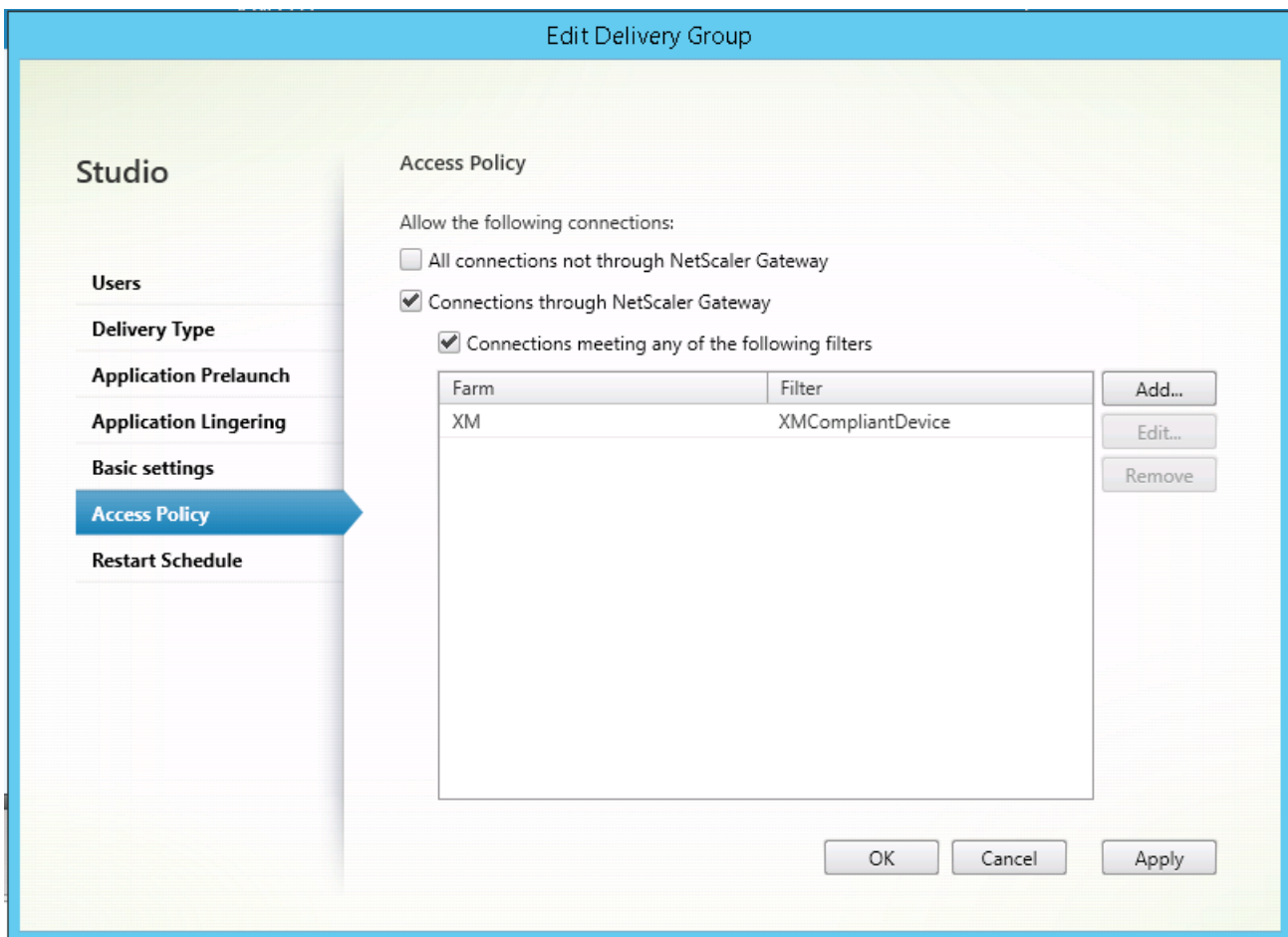
COPY

```
$store = Get-STFStoreService -VirtualPath /Citrix/Store  
  
$access = Get-STFStorePnaSmartAccess -StoreService $store  
  
Revoke-STFStorePnaSmartAccess -StoreService $store -SmartAccess $access.AccessConditionsTrusts[0]
```

## Configure the SmartAccess policy for XenApp and XenDesktop

To add the required SmartAccess policy to the delivery group delivering the HDX app:

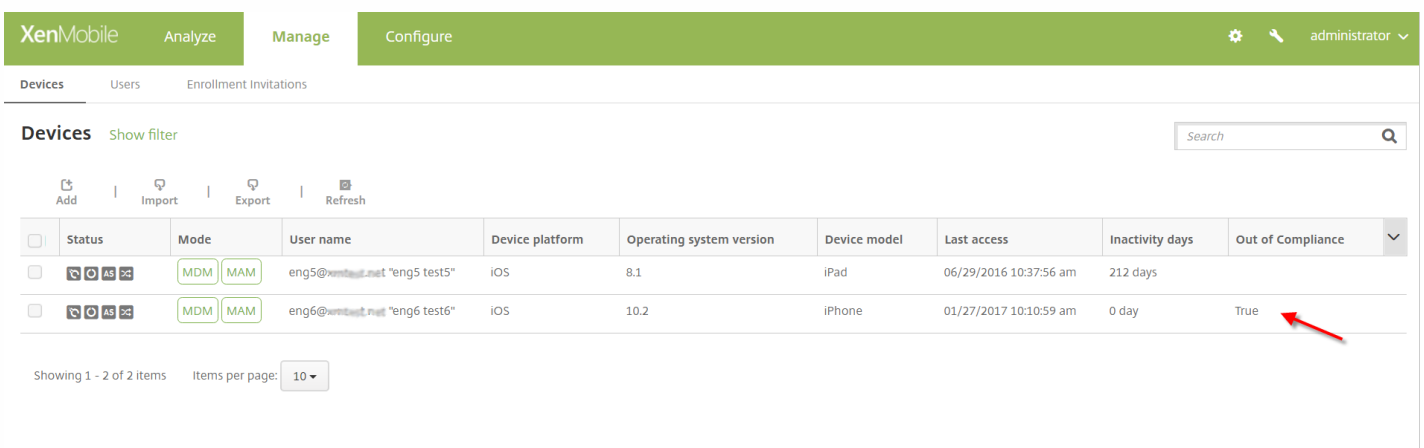
1. On the XenApp and XenDesktop server, open Citrix Studio.
2. Select **Delivery Groups** in the Studio navigation pane.
3. Select a group delivering the app or apps you want to control access to. Then select **Edit Delivery Group** in the **Actions** pane.
4. On the **Access Policy** page, select **Connections through NetScaler Gateway** and **Connection meeting any of the following**.
5. Click **Add**.
6. Add an access policy where **Farm** is **XM** and **Filter** is **XMCompliantDevice**.



7. Click **Apply** to apply any changes you made and keep the window open, or click **OK** to apply changes and close the window.

## Set automated actions in XenMobile

The SmartAccess policy that you set in the delivery group for an HDX app denies access to a device when the device is out of compliance. Use automated actions to mark the device as out of compliance.



1. From the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Actions**. The **Actions** page appears.
2. Click **Add** to add an action. The **Action Information** page appears.
3. On the **Action Information** page, type a name and description for the action.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Actions' tab is selected. On the left, there is a sidebar with 'Actions' and a list of steps: '1 Action Info', '2 Details', '3 Assignment (optional)', and '4 Summary'. The main area is titled 'Action Information' and contains the text 'Actions automate common compliance requirements based on specific trigger events.' Below this text are two form fields: 'Name\*' and 'Description'. The 'Name\*' field is empty, and the 'Description' field is also empty.

4. Click **Next**. The **Action details** page appears. In the following example, a trigger is created that immediately marks devices as out of compliance if they have the user property name **eng5** or **eng6**.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure' tabs. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Actions' tab is selected. On the left, there is a sidebar with 'Actions' and a list of steps: '1 Action Info', '2 Details', '3 Assignment (optional)', and '4 Summary'. The 'Details' step is selected. The main area is titled 'Action details' and contains the text 'Choose a trigger event and the associated action for that event.' Below this text are two main sections: 'Trigger\*' and 'Action\*'. The 'Trigger\*' section has four fields: 'User property' (dropdown), 'Name' (dropdown), 'Is' (dropdown), and a text field containing 'eng6 test6'. The 'Action\*' section has five fields: 'Mark the device as out of compliance' (dropdown), 'Is' (dropdown), 'True' (dropdown), a text field containing '0', and 'Hours' (dropdown). At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

5. In the **Trigger** list, choose **Device property**, **User property**, or **Installed app name**. SmartAccess doesn't support event triggers.

6. In the **Action** list:

- Choose **Mark the device as out of compliance**.
- Choose **Is**.
- Choose **True**.
- To set the action to mark the device as out of compliance immediately when the trigger condition is met, set the time frame to **0**.

7. Choose the XenMobile delivery group or groups to apply this action to.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with tabs for 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this is a sub-navigation bar with options: 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The main content area is titled 'Assign to Delivery Group' and includes a search bar for delivery groups, a list of delivery groups (currently showing 'AllUsers' with a checked checkbox), and a 'Delivery groups to receive app assignment' list. A 'Deployment Schedule' section is partially visible at the bottom. Navigation buttons for 'Back' and 'Next >' are located at the bottom right.

8. Review the summary of the action.



The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface with the 'Configure' tab selected. The 'Actions' section is active, and the 'Summary' tab is highlighted. The page displays the following information:

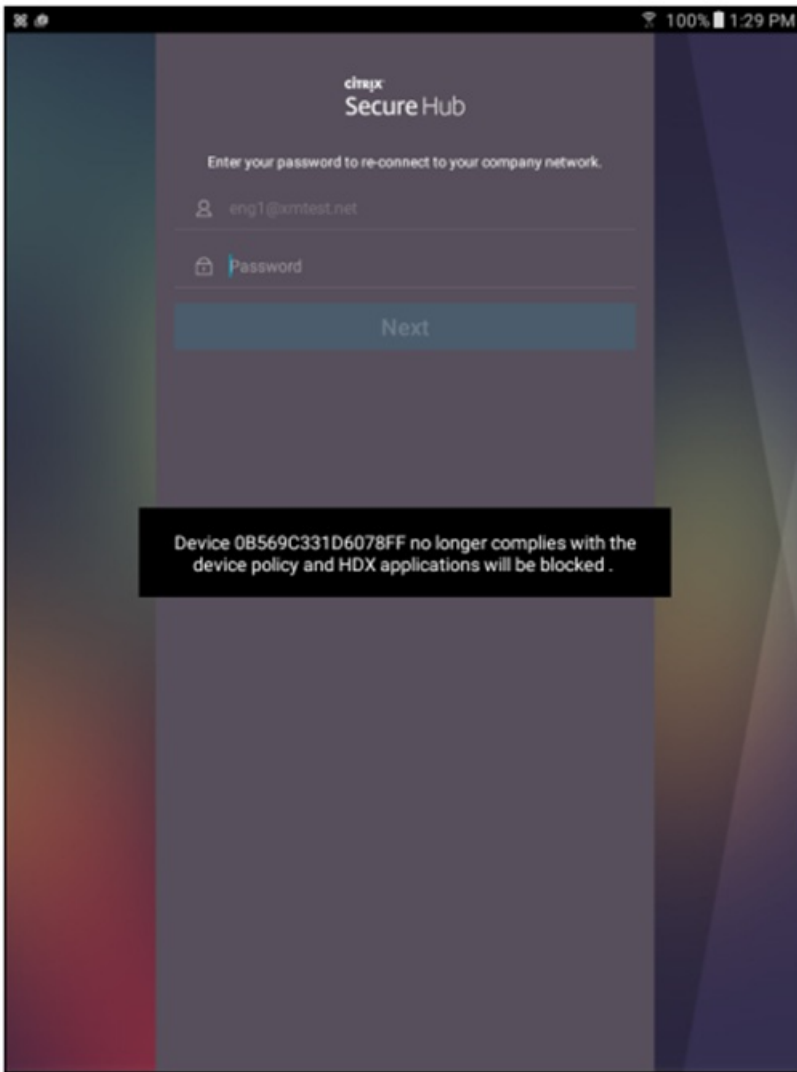
- Summary:** Review your settings, and then save or deploy this action.
- General:**
  - Name: [Field]
  - Name: [Field]
  - Description: [Field]
- Action details:** If name is "eng6 test6", then mark the device as out of compliance immediately.
- Assignment:**
  - Delivery groups: [Field]
  - AllUsers: [Field]

9. Click **Next** and then click **Save**.

When device is marked out of compliance, the HDX apps no longer appear in the Secure Hub store. The user is no longer subscribed to the apps. No notification is sent to the device and nothing in the Secure Hub store indicates that the HDX apps were previously available.

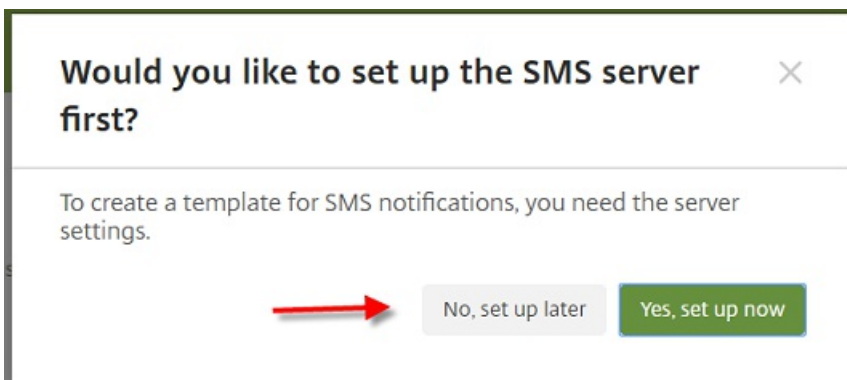
If you want users to be notified when a device is marked out of compliance, create a notification and then create an automated action to send that notification.

This example creates and sends this notification when a device is marked out of compliance: "Device serial number or telephone number no longer complies with the device policy and HDX applications will be blocked."



Create the notification users see when a device is marked as out of compliance

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Click **Notification Templates**. The **Notification Templates** page appears.
3. Click **Add** to add on the **Notification Templates** page.
4. When prompted to set up the SMS server first, click **No, set up later**.



5. Configure these settings:

- **Name:** HDX Application Block
- **Description:** Agent notification when device is out of compliance
- **Type:** Ad-Hoc Notification
- **Secure Hub:** Activated
- **Message:** Device `${firstNotNull(device.TEL_NUMBER,device.serialNumber)}` no longer complies with the device policy and HDX applications will be blocked.

The screenshot shows a configuration form for an action. The fields are as follows:

- Name\***: HDX Application Block
- Description**: (Empty text area)
- Type**: Ad-Hoc Notification (dropdown menu, with "Manual sending supported" text below it)
- SMTP**: Activate (green button)
- Sender**: (Empty text input)
- Recipient**: (Empty text input)
- Subject**: (Empty text input)
- Message**: (Empty text area)
- Secure Hub**: Activated (green button) / Deactivate (grey button)
- Message\***: Device `${firstNotNull(device.TEL_NUMBER,device.serialNumber)}` no longer complies with the device policy and HDX applications will be blocked .

At the bottom right, there are "Cancel" and "Save" buttons.

6. Click **Save**.

Create the action that sends the notification when a device is marked out of compliance

1. From the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Actions**. The **Actions** page appears.
2. Click **Add** to add an action. The **Action Information** page appears.
3. On the **Action Information** page, enter a name and description for the action:

- Name: HDX blocked notification
- **Description:** HDX blocked notification because device is out of compliance

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure page. The top navigation bar includes XenMobile, Analyze, Manage, and Configure. The left sidebar has tabs for Device Policies, Apps, Actions, ShareFile, Enrollment Profiles, and Delivery Groups. The main content area is titled 'Action Information' and contains a form with the following fields:

- Name\***: HDX blocked notification
- Description**: HDX blocked notification because device is out of compliance

Below the form is a list of steps: 1 Action Info, 2 Details, 3 Assignment (optional), and 4 Summary.

4. Click **Next**. The **Action details** page appears.

5. In the **Trigger** list:

- Choose **Device property**.
- Choose **Out of compliance**.
- Choose **Is**.
- Choose **True**.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure page with the 'Action details' form. The top navigation bar and left sidebar are the same as in the previous screenshot. The main content area is titled 'Action' and contains the following sections:

- Trigger\***:
  - Device property
  - Out of compliance
  - Is
  - True
- Action\***:
  - Send notification
  - HDX Application Block
  - Preview notification message: 0
  - Minutes
  - Specify an action repeat interval
  - Days

At the bottom right, there are 'Back' and 'Next >' buttons.

6. In the **Action** list, specify the actions that occur when the trigger is met:

- Choose **Send notification**

- Choose **HDX Application Block, the notification you created.**
- Choose **0.** Setting this value to 0 causes the notification to be sent as soon as the trigger condition is met.

7. Select the XenMobile delivery group or groups to apply this action to. In this example, choose **AllUsers.**

**Assign to Delivery Group**  
To deploy this action, assign it to one or more delivery groups.

Choose delivery groups

- AllUsers
- DG1
- DG2
- DG3
- DG4
- DG5
- DG6
- DG7
- DG8

Delivery groups to receive app assignment

AllUsers

► Deployment Schedule ⓘ

8. Review the summary of the action.

**Summary**  
Review your settings, and then save or deploy this action.

General

Name	HDX blocked notification
Description	HDX blocked notification because device is out of compliance

Action details

if device has been marked as Out of Compliance, then notify using the template "HDX Application Block" immediately.

Assignment

Delivery groups	AllUsers
-----------------	----------

9. Click **Next** and then click **Save**.

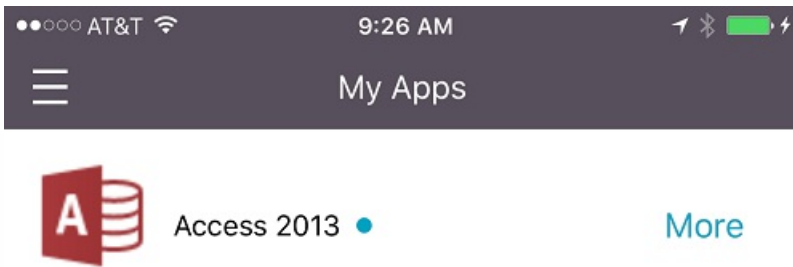
For more information on setting automated actions, see [Automated actions](#).

### How users regain access to HDX apps

Users can gain access to HDX apps again after the device is brought back into compliance:

1. On the device, go to the Secure Hub store to refresh the apps in the store.
2. Go to the app and tap **Add** to the app.

After the app is added, it appears in My Apps with a blue dot next to it, because it is a newly installed app.



# Deploy resources

Feb 27, 2017

Device configuration and management typically involves creating resources (policies and apps) and actions in the XenMobile console and then packaging them using delivery groups. The order in which XenMobile pushes resources and actions in a delivery group to devices is referred to as the *deployment order*. This article describes how to add, manage, and deploy delivery groups; how to change the deployment order of resources and actions in delivery groups; and how XenMobile determines deployment order when a user is in multiple delivery groups that have duplicate or conflicting policies.

Delivery groups specify the category of users to whose devices you deploy combinations of policies, apps, and actions. Inclusion in a delivery group is usually based on users' characteristics, such as company, country, department, office address, title, and so on. Delivery groups give you greater control over who gets what resources and when they get them. You can deploy a delivery group to everyone or to a more narrowly defined group of users.

Deploying to a delivery group means sending a push notification to all users with iOS, Windows Phone, and Windows tablet devices who belong to the delivery group to reconnect to XenMobile, so that you can reevaluate the devices and deploy apps, policies, and actions; users with other platform devices receive the resources immediately if they are already connected or, based on their scheduling policy, the next time they connect.

The default AllUsers delivery group is created when you install and configure XenMobile. It contains all local users and Active Directory users. You cannot delete the AllUsers group, but you can disable the group when you do not want to push resources to all users.

## Deployment Ordering

Deployment order is the sequence in which XenMobile pushes resources to devices. Deployment order is supported only for MDM mode.

When determining deployment order, XenMobile applies filters and control criteria, such as deployment rules and deployment schedule, to policies, apps, actions, and delivery groups. Before adding delivery groups, consider how the information in this section relates to your deployment goals.

Here's a summary of the main concepts related to deployment order:

- **Deployment order:** The sequence in which XenMobile pushes resources (policies and apps) and actions to a device. Deployment order for some policies, such as Terms and Conditions and Software Inventory, has no effect on other resources. The order in which actions are deployed has no effect on other resources, so their position is ignored when XenMobile deploys the resources.
- **Deployment rules:** XenMobile uses the deployment rules that you specify for device properties to filter policies, apps, actions, and delivery groups. For example, a deployment rule might specify to push the deployment package when a domain name matches a particular value.
- **Deployment schedule:** XenMobile uses the deployment schedule that you specify for actions, apps, and device policies to control deployment of those items. You can specify that a deployment occurs immediately, on a particular date and time, or according to deployment conditions.

The following table shows those and other criteria that you can associate with specific objects or resources to filter them or control their deployment.

Object/Resource	Filter/Control Criteria
Device policy	Device platform Deployment rule (based on device properties) Deployment schedule
App	Device platform Deployment rule (based on device properties) Deployment schedule
Action	Deployment rule (based on device properties) Deployment schedule
Delivery group	User/Groups Deployment rule (based on device properties)

It is very likely that, in a typical environment, multiple delivery groups become assigned to a single user, with the following possible results:

- Duplicate objects exist within the delivery groups.
- A specific policy is configured differently in more than one delivery group that is assigned to a user.

When either of those situations occur, XenMobile calculates a deployment order for all of the objects that it must deliver to a device or act upon. The calculation steps are independent of the device platform.

Calculation steps:

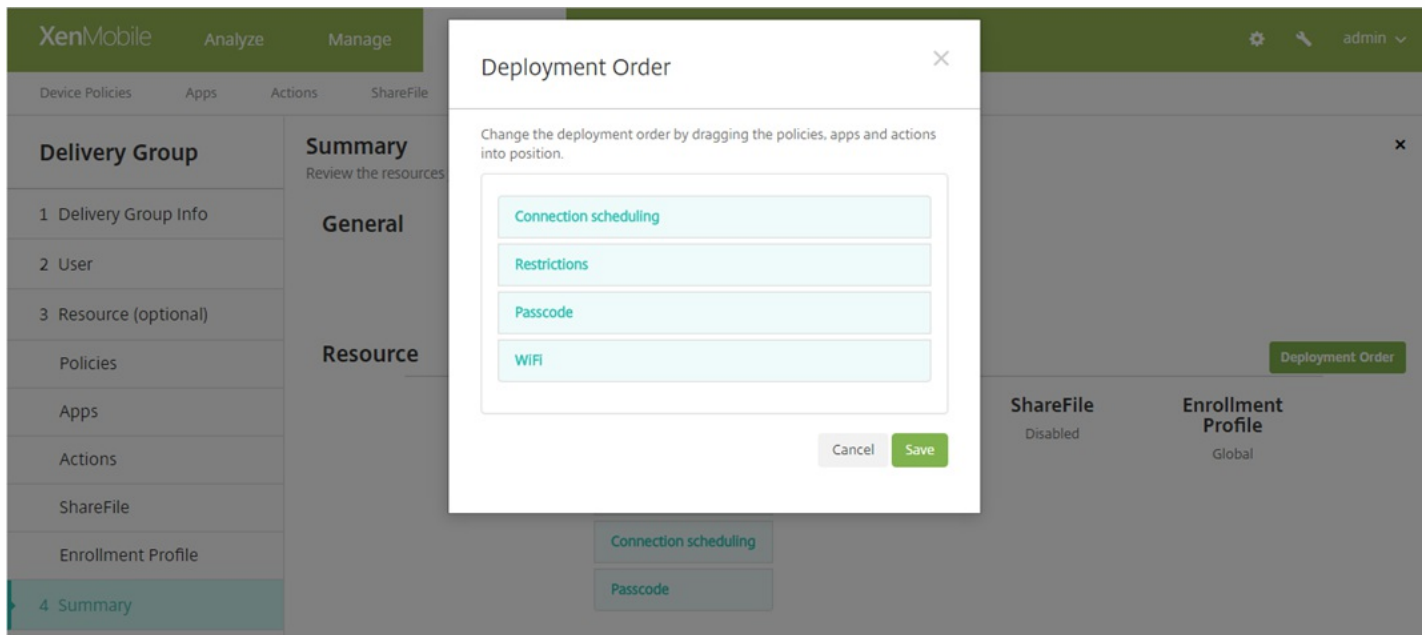
1. Determine all of the delivery groups for a specific user, based upon the filters of user/groups and the deployment rules.
2. Create an ordered list of all resources (policies, actions and apps) within the selected delivery groups that apply based on the filters of device platform, deployment rules and deployment schedule. The ordering algorithm is as follows:
  - a. Place resources from delivery groups that have a user-defined deployment order ahead of those without one. The rationale for this is described after these steps.
  - b. As a tie-breaker among delivery groups, order resources from delivery groups by delivery group name. For example, place resources from delivery group A ahead of those from delivery group B.
  - c. While sorting, if a user-defined deployment order is specified for resources of a delivery group, maintain that order. Otherwise, sort the resources within that delivery group by resource name.
  - d. If the same resource appears more than once, then remove the duplicate resource.



Resources that have a user-defined order associated with them deploy prior to resources without a user-defined order. A resource can exist in multiple delivery groups assigned to user. As indicated in the steps above, the calculation algorithm removes redundant resources and only delivers the first resource in this list. By removing duplicate resources in that way, XenMobile enforces the order defined by the XenMobile administrator.

For example, suppose that you have two delivery groups as follows:

- Delivery group, Account Managers 1: With **unspecified** order for resources; contains the policies **WiFi** and **Passcode**.
- Delivery group, Account Managers 2: With **specified** order for resources; contains the policies **Connection scheduling**, **Restrictions**, **Passcode**, and **WiFi**. In this case, you want to deliver the **Passcode** policy before the **WiFi** policy.



If the calculation algorithm ordered deployment groups only by name, XenMobile would perform the deployment in this order, starting with the delivery group Account Managers 1: **WiFi**, **Passcode**, **Connection scheduling**, and **Restrictions**. XenMobile would ignore **Passcode** and **WiFi**, both duplicates, from the Account Managers 2 delivery group.

However, because the Account Managers 2 group has an admin-specified deployment order, the calculation algorithm places resources from the Account Managers 2 delivery group higher in the list over those from the Account Managers 1 delivery group. As a result, XenMobile deploys the policies in this order: **Connection scheduling**, **Restrictions**, **Passcode**, and **WiFi**. XenMobile ignores the policies **WiFi** and **Passcode** from the Account Managers 1 delivery group, because they are duplicates. That algorithm therefore respects the order specified by the XenMobile administrator.

To add a delivery group

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Delivery Groups**. The **Delivery Groups** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔑 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles **Delivery Groups**

## Delivery Groups Show filter

🔍

➕ Add | 📄 Export

<input type="checkbox"/>	Status	Name	Last Updated	Disabled	▾
<input type="checkbox"/>		AllUsers			
<input type="checkbox"/>		Domain users	Jun 13 2016 5:10 PM		
<input type="checkbox"/>		Sales	Apr 13 2016 12:50 PM		

2. From the **Delivery Groups** page, click **Add**. The **Delivery Group Information** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** ⚙️ 🔑 admin ▾

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles **Delivery Groups**

### Delivery Group

- 1 Delivery Group Info
- 2 User
- 3 Resource (optional)
- Policies
- Apps
- Actions
- ShareFile
- Enrollment Profile
- 4 Summary

## Delivery Group Information ✕

Enter a name for the delivery group and any information that will help you keep track of it later.

**Name**

**Description**

3. In the **Delivery Group Information** page, enter the following information:

- **Name:** Type a descriptive name for the delivery group.
- **Description:** Type an optional description of the delivery group.

4. Click **Next**. The **User Assignments** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile configuration interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below these are sub-tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Delivery Groups' sub-tab is active, showing a 'Delivery Group' sidebar with steps: 1 Delivery Group Info, 2 User (highlighted), 3 Resource (optional), Policies, Apps, Actions, ShareFile, Enrollment Profile, and 4 Summary. The main area is titled 'User Assignments' and contains the following settings:

- Select domain:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'local'.
- Include user groups:** A search box with a magnifying glass icon and a blue 'Search' button to its right.
- Logic:** Two radio buttons labeled 'Or' (selected) and 'And'.
- Deploy to anonymous user:** A toggle switch currently set to 'OFF'.
- Deployment Rules:** A section header with a right-pointing arrow.

5. Configure these settings:

- **Select domain:** From the list, select the domain from which to choose users.
- **Include user groups:** Do one of the following:
  - In the list of user groups, click the groups you want to add. The selected groups appear in the **Selected user groups** list.
  - Click **Search** to see a list of all user groups in the selected domain.
  - Type a full or partial group name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the list of user groups.
    - To remove a user group from the **Selected user groups** list, do one of the following:
      - In the **Selected user groups** list, click the **X** next to each of the groups you want to remove.
      - Click **Search** to see a list of all user groups in the selected domain. Scroll through the list and clear the check box of each of the groups you want to remove.
      - Type a full or partial group name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the list of user groups. Scroll through the list and clear the check box of each of the groups you want to remove.
- **Or/And:** Select whether users may be in any group (Or) or whether they must be in all groups (And) for the resource to be deployed to them.
- **Deploy to anonymous user:** Select whether to deploy to unauthenticated users in the delivery group.

**Note:** Unauthenticated users are users whom you were not able to authenticate, but you allowed their devices to connect to XenMobile anyway.

## To add optional resources to delivery groups

You can add optional resources to delivery groups to apply specific policies, provide required and optional apps, add automatic actions, and enable ShareFile for single-sign on to content and data. The following sections describe how to add policies, apps, actions, and how to enable ShareFile. You can add any, all, or none of these resources to the delivery group.

To skip adding a resource, click **Summary**.

## Add policies

The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The 'Delivery Groups' tab is active, and a sidebar on the left shows a list of steps: '1 Delivery Group Info', '2 User', '3 Resource (optional)', 'Policies' (highlighted), 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profile', and '4 Summary'. The main content area is titled 'Policies' and contains the instruction 'Drag the policies that you want to include in the delivery group.' Below this is a search box with the placeholder 'Enter policy name' and a 'Search' button. A dropdown menu labeled 'Policies' is open, showing a list of policy categories: 'WiFi', 'Passcode', 'Connection scheduling', 'Restrictions', and 'Launcher Configuration'. A hand icon with an arrow points from the 'WiFi' policy to a large empty box on the right, indicating the drag-and-drop action.

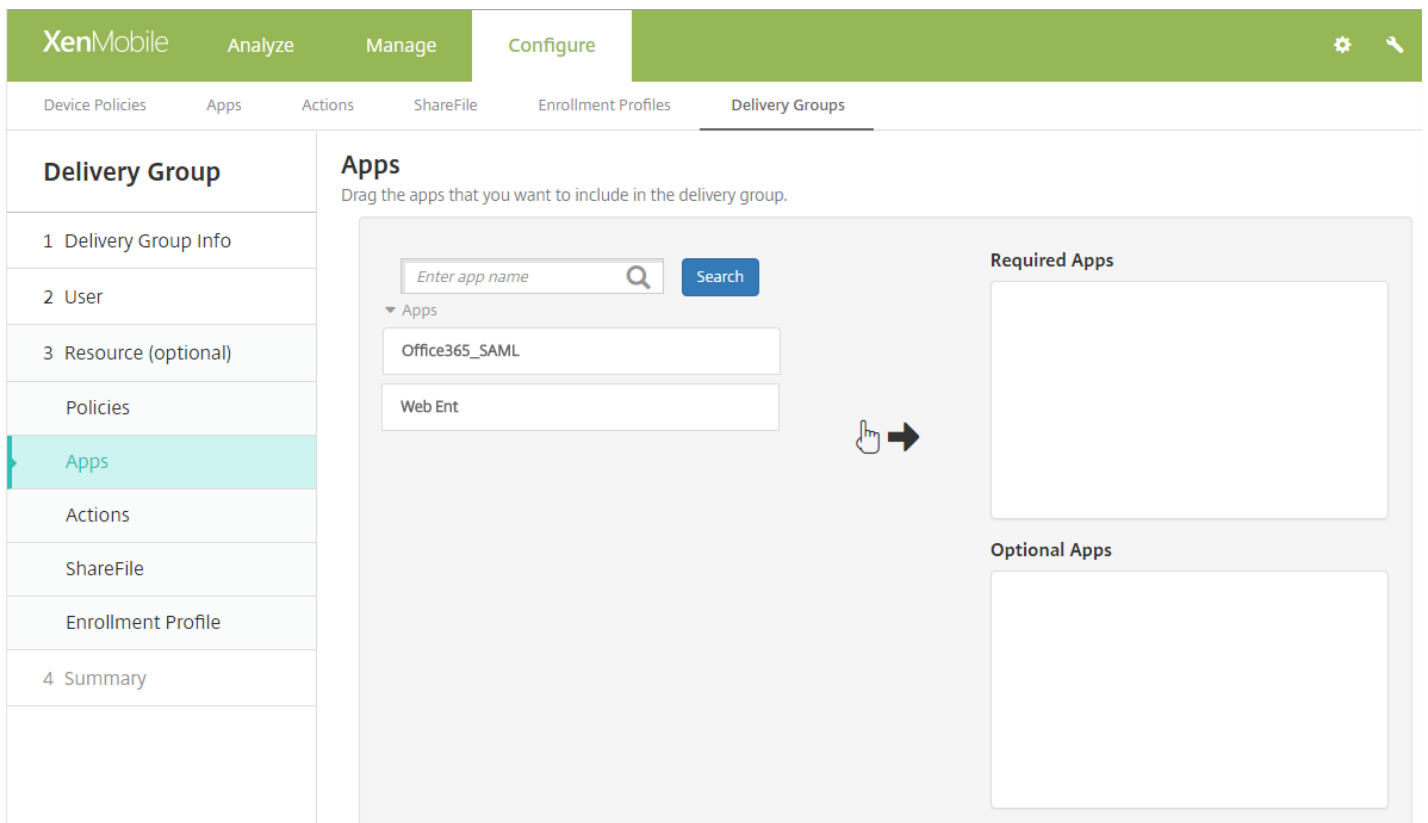
1. For each policy you want to add, do the following:

- Scroll through the list of available policies to find the policy you want to add.
- Or, to limit the list of policies, type a full or partial policy name in the search box, and then click **Search**.
- Click the policy you want to add and drag it into the right-hand box.

**Note:** To remove a policy, click the **X** next to the policy name in the right-hand box.

2. Click **Next**. The **Apps** page appears.

## Add apps



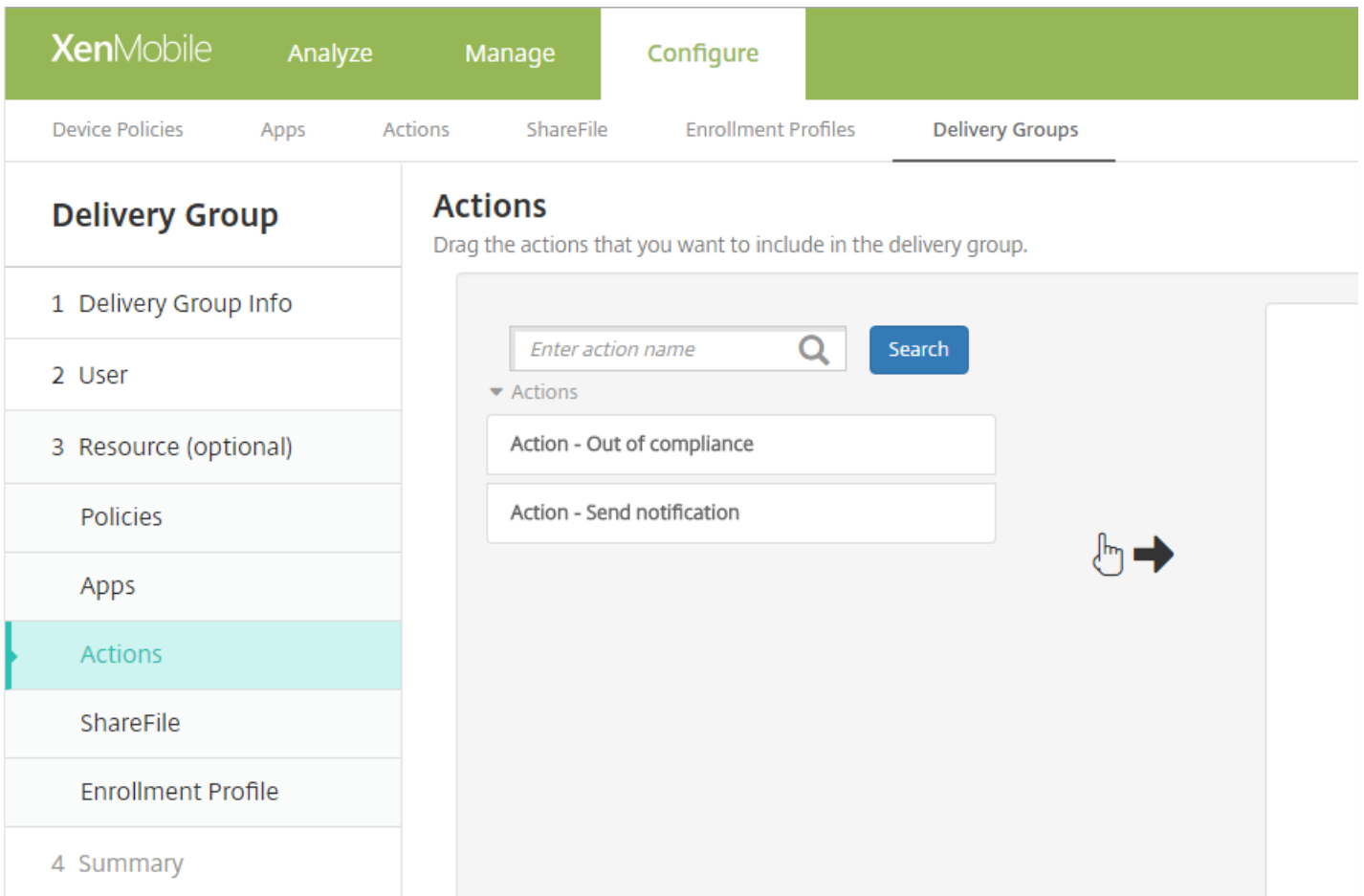
1. For each app you want to add, do the following:

- Scroll through the list of available apps to find the app you want to add.
- Or, to limit the list of apps, type a full or partial app name in the search box, and then click **Search**.
- Click the app you want to add and drag it into either the **Required Apps** box or the **Optional Apps** box.

**Note:** To remove an app, click the **X** next to the app name in the right-hand box.

2. Click **Next**. The **Actions** page appears.

## Add actions



1. For each action you want to add, do the following:

- Scroll through the list of available actions to find the action you want to add.
- Or, to limit the list of actions, type a full or partial action name in the search box, and then click **Search**.
- Click the action you want to add and drag it into the right-hand box.

**Note:** To remove an action, click the **X** next to the action name in the right-hand box.

2. Click **Next**. The **ShareFile** page appears.

## Apply the ShareFile configuration

The ShareFile page differs depending on whether you configured XenMobile (**Configure > ShareFile**) for ShareFile Enterprise or for StorageZone Connectors.

If you configured ShareFile Enterprise for use with XenMobile, set **Enable ShareFile** to **ON** to provide the delivery group single sign-on access to ShareFile content and data.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure**

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles **Delivery Groups**

### Delivery Group

- 1 Delivery Group Info
- 2 User
- 3 Resource (optional)
- Policies
- Apps
- Actions
- ShareFile
- Enrollment Profile
- 4 Summary

## ShareFile

Enable ShareFile to provide users in the delivery group with single sign-on (SSO) access to content and data.

**Enable ShareFile**  OFF

If you configured StorageZone Connectors for use with XenMobile, select the StorageZone Connectors to include in the delivery group.

XenMobile Analyze Manage **Configure** administrator

Device Policies Apps Actions ShareFile Enrollment Profiles **Delivery Groups**

### Delivery Group

- 1 Delivery Group Info
- 2 Resource (optional)
- Policies
- Apps
- Actions
- ShareFile
- Enrollment Profile
- 3 Summary

## ShareFile

Drag the StorageZone Connectors that you want to include in the delivery group.

▼ Connectors

TestNS

TestSP

→

TestSP

## Enrollment Profile

The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface with the 'Configure' tab selected. The navigation bar includes 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The left sidebar shows a 'Delivery Group' menu with options: '1 Delivery Group Info', '2 Resource (optional)', 'Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profile' (highlighted), and '3 Summary'. The main content area is titled 'Enrollment Profile' and contains the text: 'Select the enrollment profile that you want the users in this delivery group to see'. Below this, there is a section 'Enrollment Profile' with a radio button selected for 'Global'.

1. Configure this setting:

- **Enrollment Profile:** Select an Enrollment Profile. To create an enrollment profile, see [Device enrollment limit](#).

2. Click **Next**. The **Summary** page appears.

Review configured options and change deployment order

The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface with the 'Configure' tab selected. The navigation bar includes 'Device Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profiles', and 'Delivery Groups'. The left sidebar shows a 'Delivery Group' menu with options: '1 Delivery Group Info', '2 User', '3 Resource (optional)', 'Policies', 'Apps', 'Actions', 'ShareFile', 'Enrollment Profile', and '4 Summary' (highlighted). The main content area is titled 'Summary' and contains the text: 'Review the resources you are about to assign to the delivery group.' Below this, there is a section 'General' with a 'Name' field set to 'Local' and a 'Description' field. Below that, there is a section 'Resource' with a 'Deployment Order' button. The resources are listed as follows: 'Apps' (0), 'Policies' (0), 'Actions' (0), 'ShareFile' (Disabled), and 'Enrollment Profile' (Global).

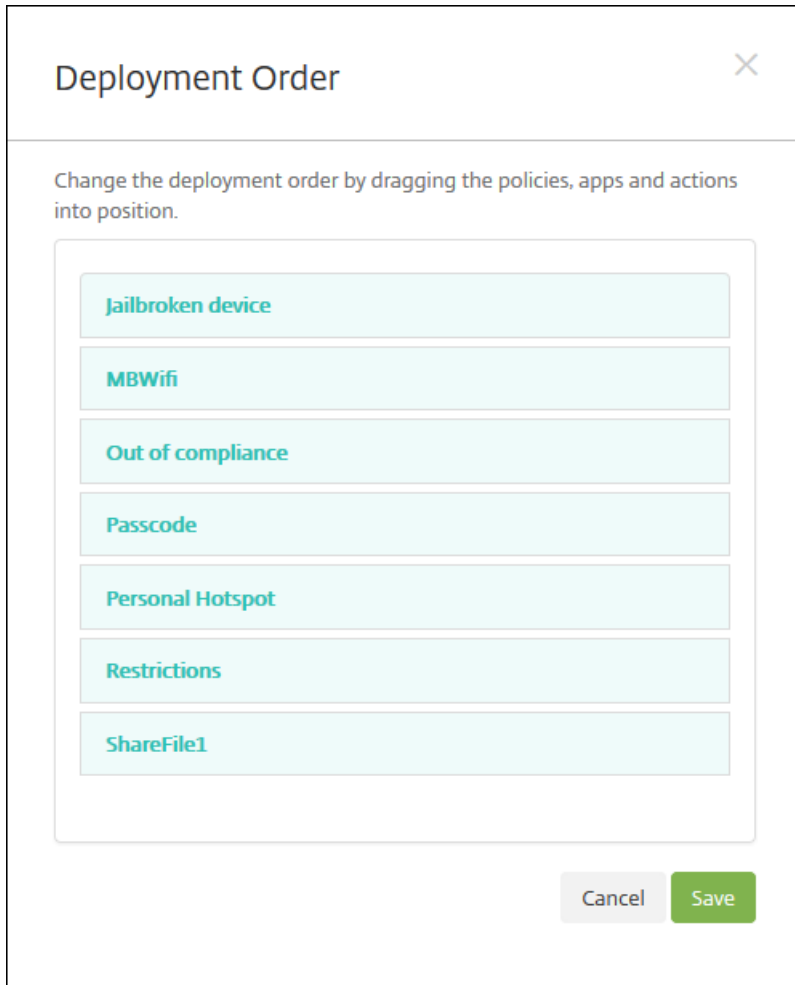


On the **Summary** page, you can review the options you have configured for the delivery group and change the deployment order of resources. The Summary page shows your resources by category; it doesn't reflect the deployment order.

1. Click **Back** to return to previous pages to make any necessary adjustments to the configuration.
2. Click **Deployment Order** to view the deployment order or to reorder the deployment order.
3. Click **Save** to save the delivery group.

To change the deployment order

1. Click the **Deployment Order** button. The **Deployment Order** dialog box appears.



2. Click on a resource and drag it to the location from which you want it deployed. After you change the deployment order, XenMobile deploys resources in the list from top to bottom.

3. Click **Save** to save the deployment order.

To edit a delivery group

1. On the **Delivery Groups** page, choose the delivery group you want to edit by selecting the check box next to its name or by clicking in the line containing its name and then click **Edit**. The **Delivery Group Information** edit page appears.

## Note

Depending on how you selected the delivery group, the **Edit** command appears above or to the right of the delivery group.

2. Add or change the **Description**.

**Note:** You cannot change the name of an existing delivery group.

3. Click **Next**. The **User Assignments** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile interface. At the top, there are navigation tabs: XenMobile, Analyze, Manage, and Configure. Below these are sub-tabs: Device Policies, Apps, Actions, ShareFile, Enrollment Profiles, and Delivery Groups. The main content area is split into two columns. The left column, titled 'Delivery Group', contains a list of options: 1 Delivery Group Info, 2 User (highlighted in light blue), 3 Resource (optional), Policies, Apps, Actions, ShareFile, Enrollment Profile, and 4 Summary. The right column, titled 'User Assignments', contains a 'Select domain' dropdown menu with 'local' selected, an 'Include user groups' search box with a magnifying glass icon and a 'Search' button, a large empty list box, radio buttons for 'Or' (selected) and 'And', a 'Deploy to anonymous user' toggle switch set to 'OFF', and a 'Deployment Rules' section with a right-pointing arrow.

4. In the **Select User Groups** page, enter or change the following information:

- **Select domain:** In the list, select the domain from which to choose users.
- **Include user groups:** Do one of the following:
  - In the list of user groups, click the groups you want to add. The selected groups appear in the **Selected user groups** list.
  - Click **Search** to see a list of all user groups in the selected domain.
  - Type a full or partial group name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the list of user groups.

**Note:** To remove user groups, click **Search**, and then in the list of user groups, clear the check box next to the group or

groups you want to remove. You can type a full or partial group name in the search box and then click **Search** to limit the number of user groups displayed in the list.

- **Or/And:** Select whether users may be in any group (Or) or whether they must be in all groups (And) for deployment.
- **Deploy to anonymous user:** Select whether to deploy to unauthenticated users in the delivery group.

**Note:** Unauthenticated users are users whom you were not able to authenticate, but whose devices you allowed to connect to XenMobile.

5. Expand **Deployment Rules** and then configure the settings as you did in Step 5 earlier in this procedure.
6. Click **Next**. The **Delivery Group Resources** page appears. Add or delete policies, apps, or actions here. To skip this step, under **Delivery Group**, click **Summary** to see a summary of the delivery group configuration.
7. When you are done modifying a resource, click **Next**, or under **Delivery Group**, click **Summary**.
8. On the **Summary** page, you can review the options you have configured for the delivery group and change the deployment order of resources.
9. Click **Back** to return to previous pages to make any necessary adjustments to the configuration.
10. Click **Deployment Order** to reorder the resource deployment order; for more information on changing deployment order, see [To change deployment order](#).
11. Click **Save** to save the delivery group.

To enable and disable the AllUsers delivery group

## Note

AllUsers is the only delivery group that you can enable or disable.

1. From the **Delivery Groups** page, choose the AllUsers delivery group by selecting the check box next to **AllUsers** or by clicking in the line containing AllUsers. Then do one of the following:

**Note:** Depending on how you selected AllUsers, the **Enable** or **Disable** command appears above or to the right of the AllUsers delivery group.

- Click **Disable** to disable the AllUsers delivery group. This command is only available if AllUsers is enabled (the default). **Disabled** appears under the **Disabled** heading in the delivery group table.
- Click **Enable** to enable the AllUsers delivery group. This command is only available if AllUsers is currently disabled. **Disabled** disappears from under the **Disabled** heading in the delivery group table.

To deploy to delivery groups

Deploying to a delivery group means sending a push notification to all users with iOS, Windows Phone, and Windows tablet devices who belong to the delivery group to reconnect to XenMobile. That way, you can reevaluate the devices and deploy apps, policies, and actions. Users with other platform devices receive the resources immediately if they are already connected; or, based on their scheduling policy, the next time they connect.

**Note:** For updated apps to appear in the Updated Available list in the XenMobile Store on users' Android devices, you must

first deploy an App Inventory policy to the users' devices.

1. On the **Delivery Groups** page, do one of the following:

- To deploy to more than one delivery group at a time, select the check boxes next to the groups you want to deploy.
- To deploy to a single delivery group, either select the check box next to its name or click the line containing its name.

2. Click **Deploy**.

**Note:** Depending on how you select a single delivery group, the **Deploy** command appears above or to the right of the delivery group.

Verify that the groups to which you want to deploy apps, policies, and actions are listed and then click **Deploy**. The apps, policies, and actions are deployed to the selected groups based on device platform and scheduling policy.

You can check deployment status on the **Delivery Groups** page in one of these ways:

- Look at the deployment icon under the **Status** heading for the delivery group, which indicates any deployment failure.
- Click the line containing the delivery group to display an overlay that indicates **Installed**, **Pending**, and **Failed** deployments.

The screenshot shows the 'Delivery Groups' interface. At the top, there is a search bar and a 'Show filter' link. Below the search bar are 'Add' and 'Export' buttons. The main area contains a table with the following columns: 'Status', 'Name', 'Last Updated', and 'Disabled'. The table lists three delivery groups: 'AllUsers', 'sales', and 'DG for CAT'. The 'sales' group is highlighted in light blue and has a deployment icon (a square with a right-pointing arrow) in the 'Status' column. A purple box highlights the 'Status' column header and the deployment icons for all three groups. An overlay window is open over the 'sales' group, showing 'Edit', 'Deploy', and 'Delete' buttons. Below these buttons is a 'Deployment' summary box with three colored boxes: a green box with '1 Installed', a light blue box with '0 Pending', and an orange box with '0 Failed'. A 'Show more >' link is at the bottom of the overlay. The text 'Showing 1 - 3 of 3 items' is visible at the bottom left of the table area.

To delete delivery groups

## Note

You cannot delete the AllUsers delivery group, but you can disable the group when you do not want to push resources to all users.

1. On the **Delivery Groups** page, do one of the following:

- To delete more than one delivery group at a time, select the check boxes next to the groups you want to delete.
- To delete a single delivery group, either select the check box next to its name or click the line containing its name.

2. Click **Delete**. The **Delete** dialog box appears.

**Note:** Depending on how you select a single delivery group, the **Delete** command appears above or to the right of the delivery group.

3. Click **Delete**.

## Important

You cannot undo this action.

To export the Delivery Groups table

1. Click the **Export** button above the **Delivery Groups** table. XenMobile extracts the information in the **Delivery Groups** table and converts it to a .csv file.

2. Open or save the .csv file. How you do this depends on the browser you are using. You can also cancel the operation.

# Macros

Feb 27, 2017

XenMobile provides powerful macros as a way to populate user or device property data within the text field of a profile, policy, notification, or enrollment template (for some Actions), among other uses. With macros, you can configure a single policy and deploy it to a large user base and have user-specific values appear for each targeted user. For example, you can prepopulate the mailbox value for a user in an Exchange profile across thousands of users.

This feature is currently only available in the context of configurations and templates for iOS and Android devices.

## Defining user macros

The following user macros are always available:

- loginname (username plus domainname)
- username (loginname minus the domain, if any)
- domainname (domain name, or the default domain)

The following administrator-defined properties might be available:

- c
- cn
- company
- companyname
- department
- description
- displayname
- distinguishedname
- facsimiletelephonenumber
- givenname
- homecity
- homecountry
- homefax
- homephone
- homestate
- homestreetaddress
- homezip
- iphone
- l
- mail
- middleinitial
- mobile
- officestreetaddress
- pager
- physicaldeliveryofficename
- postalcode
- postofficebox

- telephonenumber
- samaccountname
- sn
- st
- streetaddress
- title
- userprincipalname
- domainname (overrides property described previously)

Additionally, if the user is authenticated by using an authentication server, such as LDAP, all the properties associated with the user in that store are available.

## Macro syntax

A macro can take the following form:

- `#{type.PROPERTYNAME}`
- `#{type.PROPERTYNAME ['DEFAULT VALUE'] [ | FUNCTION [(ARGUMENT1, ARGUMENT2)]]}`

As a general rule, all syntax following the dollar sign (\$) must be enclosed in curly brackets ({ }).

- Qualified property names reference either a user property, a device property, or a custom property.
- Qualified property names consist of a prefix, followed by the actual property name.
- User properties take the form `#{user.[PROPERTYNAME] (prefix="user.")}`.
- Device properties take the form `#{device.[PROPERTYNAME] (prefix="device.")}`.

For example, `#{user.username}` populates the user name value in the text field of a policy. This is useful for configuring Exchange ActiveSync profiles and other profiles used by multiple users.

For custom macros (properties that you define), the prefix is `#{custom}`. You can omit the prefix.

**Note:** Property names are case-sensitive.

# Automated actions

Feb 27, 2017

You create automated actions in XenMobile to program a reaction to events, user or device properties, or the existence of apps on user devices. When you create an automated action, you establish the effect on the user's device when it is connected to XenMobile based on triggers in the action. When an event is triggered, you can send a notification to the user to correct an issue before more serious action is taken.

For example, if you want to detect an app that you have previously blacklisted (for example, Words with Friends), you can specify a trigger that sets the user's device out of compliance when Words with Friends is detected on their device. The action then notifies them that they must remove the app to bring their device back into compliance. You can set a time limit for how long to wait for the user to comply before taking more serious action, such as selectively wiping the device.

In cases in which a user's device is put into an out of compliance state, and then the user fixes the device so that the device is in compliance, you will need to configure a policy to deploy a package that resets the device into a compliant state.

The effects that you set to happen automatically range from the following:

- Fully or selectively wiping the device.
- Setting the device to out of compliance.
- Revoking the device.
- Sending a notification to the user to correct an issue before more severe action is taken.

This article explains how to add, edit, and filter automated actions in XenMobile, as well as how to configure app lock and app wipe actions for MAM-only mode.

## Note

Before you can notify users, you must have configured notification servers in Settings for SMTP and SMS so that XenMobile can send the messages, see [Notifications in XenMobile](#). Also, set up any notification templates you plan to use before proceeding. For details about setting up notification templates, see [To create or update notification templates in XenMobile](#).

1. From the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Actions**. The **Actions** page appears.

2. On the **Actions** page, do one of the following:

- Click **Add** to add a new action.
- Select an existing action to edit or delete. Click the option you want to use.

**Note:** When you select the check box next to an action, the options menu appears above the action list; when you click anywhere else in the list, the options menu appears on the right side of the listing.

3. The **Action Information** page appears.

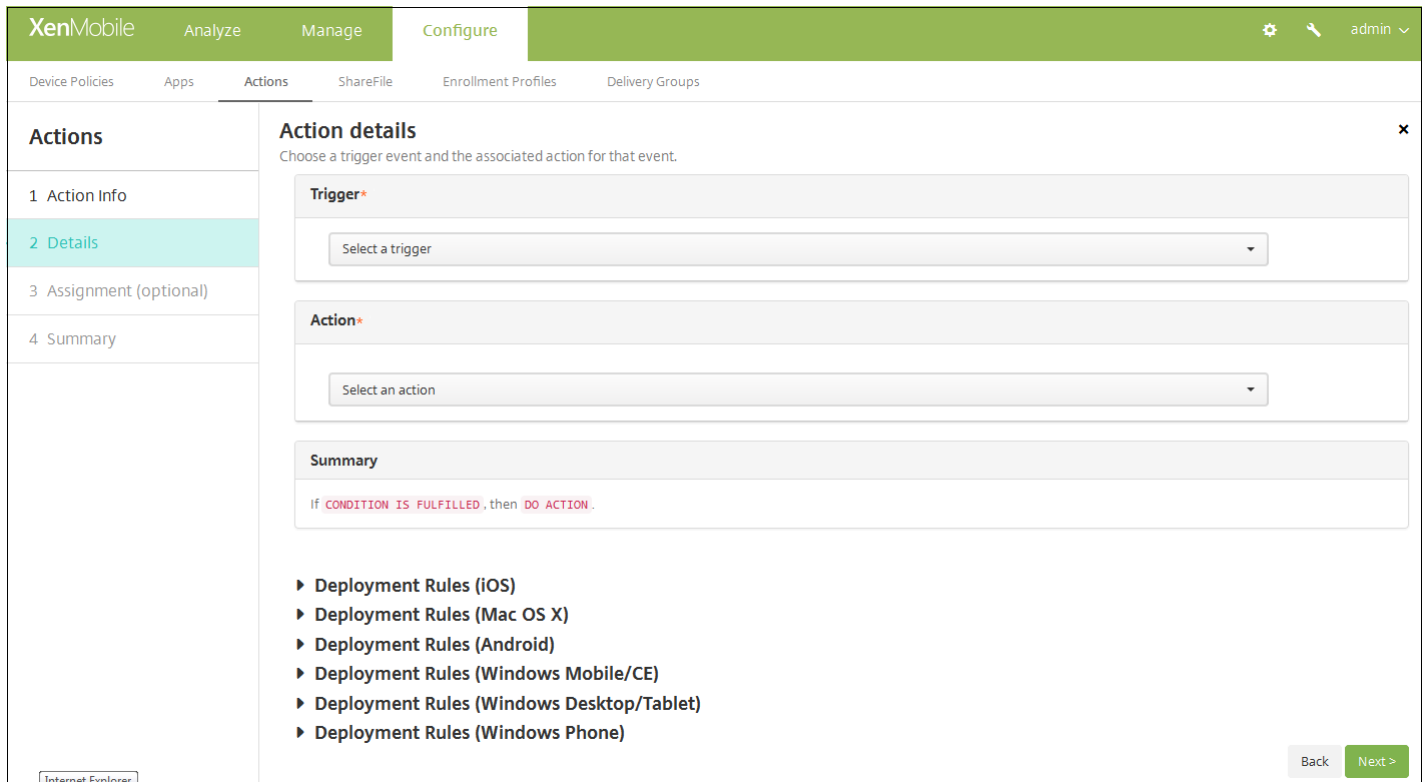
4. On the **Action Information** page, enter or modify the following information:

- **Name:** Type a name to uniquely identify the action. This field is required.
- **Description:** Describe what the action is meant to do.



5. Click **Next**. The **Action details** page appears.

**Note:** The following example shows how to set up an **Event** trigger. If you select a different trigger, the resulting options will be different from those shown here.



6. On the **Action details** page, enter or modify the following information:

- In the **Trigger** list, click the event trigger type for this action. The meaning of each trigger is as follows:
  - **Event**: Reacts to a predefined event.
  - **Device property**: Checks for a device attribute on the device gathered in MDM mode and reacts to it.
  - **User property**: Reacts to a user attribute, usually from Active Directory.
  - **Installed app name**: Reacts to an app being installed. Doesn't apply to MAM-only mode. Requires the app inventory policy to be enabled on the device. The app inventory policy is enabled on all platforms by default. For details, see [To add an app inventory device policy](#).

7. In the next list, click the response to the trigger.

8. In the **Action** list, click the action to be performed when the trigger criterion is met. With the exception of **Send notification**, you choose a time frame in which users can resolve the issue that caused the trigger. If the issue is not resolved within that time frame, the selected action is taken. The available actions are as follows:

- **Selectively wipe the device**: Erase all corporate data and apps from a device, leaving personal data and apps in place.
- **Completely wipe the device**: Erase all data and apps from a device, including memory cards, if the device has one.
- **Revoke the device**: Prohibit a device from connecting to XenMobile
- **App lock**: Deny access to all apps on a device. On Android, users will not be able to log into XenMobile at all. On iOS, users will still be able to log in, but they will be unable to access apps. For more information, see "App lock and App wipe actions for MAM-only mode," later in this article.

- **App wipe:** On Android, this deletes the user's XenMobile account. On iOS, this deletes the encryption key users need to be able to access XenMobile features. For more information, see "App lock and App wipe actions for MAM-only mode," later in this article.
- **Mark the device as out of compliance:** Set the device as out of compliance.
- **Send notification:** Send a message to the user.

If you pick **Send notification**, the remainder of this procedure explains how to send a notification action.

9. In the next list, select the template to use for the notification. Notification templates relevant to the selected event appear, unless a template doesn't yet exist for the notification type. In that case, you are prompted to configure a template with the message: No template for this event type. Create template using **Notification Template** in **Settings**.

**Note:** Before you can notify users, you must have configured notification servers in Settings for SMTP and SMS so that XenMobile can send the messages, see [Notifications in XenMobile](#). Also, set up any notification templates you plan to use before proceeding. For details on setting up notification templates, see [To create or update notification templates in XenMobile](#).

**Note:** After you select the template, you can preview the notification by clicking **Preview notification message**.

10. In the following fields, set the delay in days, hours, or minutes before taking action and the interval at which the action repeats until the user addresses the triggering issue.

1	
Hours	
0	
Minutes	

11. In **Summary**, verify that you created the automated action as you intended.

<b>Summary</b>
If The installed app name is " APP ", then notify USING TEMPLATE after 1 hour(s).

12. After you configure the action details, you can configure deployment rules for each platform individually. To do so, complete step 13 for each platform you choose.

13. Configure deployment rules ▼

14. When you are done configuring the platform deployment rules for the action, click **Next**. The **Actions assignment** page appears, where you assign the action to a delivery group or groups. This step is optional.

15. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list to which you want to assign the policy. The groups you select appear in the right-hand **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

16. Expand Deployment Schedule and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options need to be configured.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

**Note:** This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**. The always-on option is not available for iOS devices.

**Note:** The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always on connection**, which does not apply to iOS.

17. Click **Next**. The **Summary** page appears, where you can verify the action configuration.

18. Click **Save** to save the action.

### App lock and App wipe actions for MAM-only mode

You can wipe or lock apps on a device in response to all four categories of triggers listed in the XenMobile console: event,

device property, user property and installed app name.

### To configure automatic app wipe or app lock

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Configure > Actions**.
2. On the **Actions** page, click **Add**.
3. On the **Action Information** page, enter a name for the action and an optional description.
4. On the **Action Details** page, select the trigger you want.
5. In **Action**, select an action.

For this step, keep the following conditions in mind:

When the trigger type is **Event** and the value is not **Active Directory disabled user**, the **App wipe** and **App lock** actions will not appear.

When the trigger type is **Device property** and the value is **MDM lost mode enabled**, the following actions will not appear:

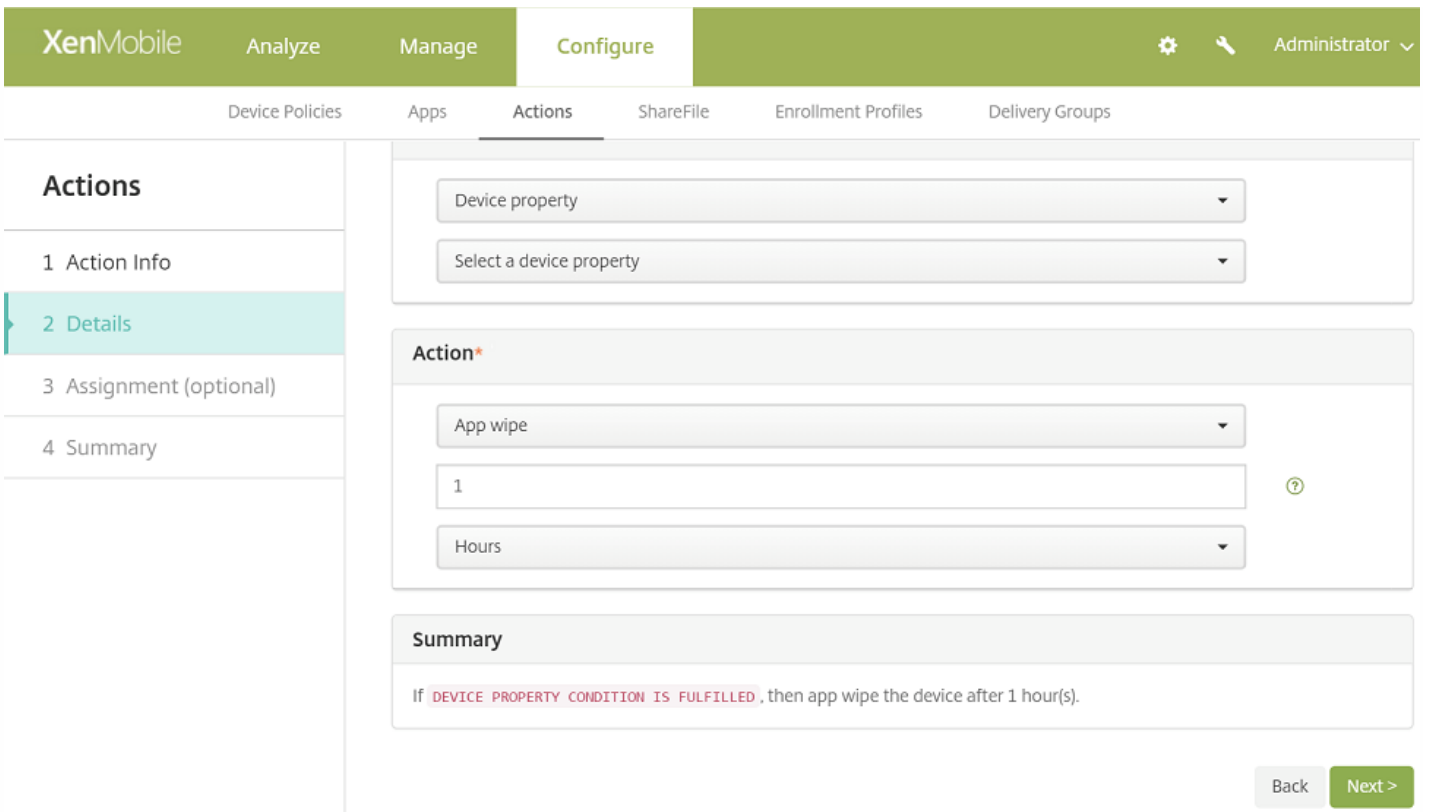
- Selectively wipe the device
- Completely wipe the device
- Revoke the device

For each option, a 1 hour delay is automatically set, but you can select the delay period in minutes, hours or days. The delay gives users time to fix an issue if possible before the action is carried out. You can learn more about the App wipe and App lock actions in the topic on [Configure roles with RBAC](#).

## Note

If you set the trigger to **event**, the repeat interval is automatically a minimum of 1 hour. The device must carry out a refresh of the policies to synchronize with the server for the notification to come in. Typically, a device synchronizes with the server when users sign on or manually refresh their policies through Secure Hub.

An additional delay of approximately 1 hour may occur before any action is carried out, to allow the Active Directory database to synchronize with XenMobile.



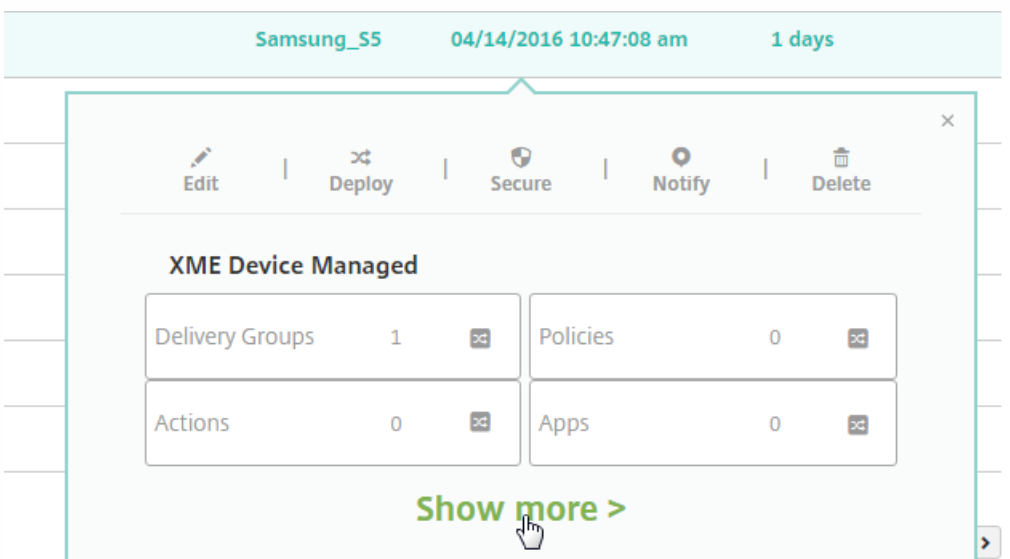
6. Configure deployment rules and then click **Next**.

7. Configure delivery group assignments and a deployment schedule and then click **Next**.

8. Click **Save**.

### To check app lock or app wipe status

1. Go to **Manage > Devices**, click a device and then click **Show more**.



2. Scroll to **Device App Wipe** and **Device App Lock**.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile Configure page. The top navigation bar includes 'XenMobile', 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. The 'Configure' tab is active. Below the navigation bar, there are tabs for 'Devices', 'Users', and 'Enrollment Invitations'. The main content area is titled 'Device details' and has a sidebar with a list of sections: 1 General (highlighted), 2 Properties, 3 User Properties, 4 Assigned Policies, 5 Apps, 6 Actions, 7 Delivery Groups, 8 Certificates, 9 Connections, and 10 TouchDown. The main content area is divided into sections: 'WiFi MAC Address' (NONE), 'Bluetooth MAC Address' (NONE), 'Device Ownership' (radio buttons for Corporate and BYOD), and 'Security'. The 'Security' section includes 'Strong ID' (YEMXRMSG), 'Full Wipe of Device' (No device wipe), 'Selective Wipe of Device' (No device selective wipe), 'Lock Device' (No device lock), 'Device locate' (No device locate), 'Device App Wipe' (No device App Wipe), and 'Device App Lock' (App Lock was requested at 04/15/2016 01:59:47 pm). A purple box highlights the 'Device App Wipe' and 'Device App Lock' settings. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the page.

Property	Value
WiFi MAC Address	NONE
Bluetooth MAC Address	NONE
Device Ownership	<input type="radio"/> Corporate <input type="radio"/> BYOD
<b>Security</b>	
Strong ID	YEMXRMSG
Full Wipe of Device	No device wipe.
Selective Wipe of Device	No device selective wipe.
Lock Device	No device lock.
Device locate	No device locate.
Device App Wipe	No device App Wipe.
Device App Lock	App Lock was requested at 04/15/2016 01:59:47 pm.

# Monitor and support

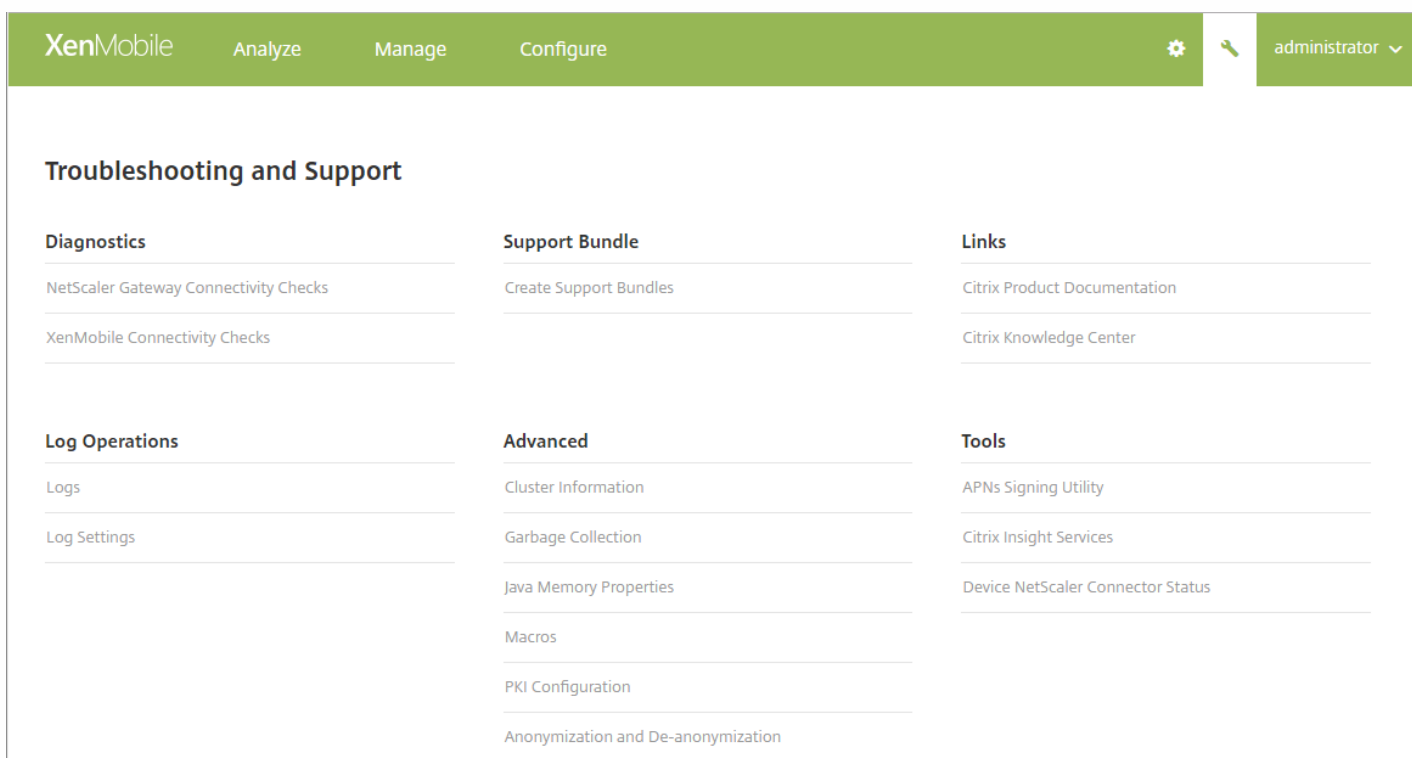
May 10, 2017

You can use the XenMobile Dashboard and the XenMobile Support page to monitor and troubleshoot your XenMobile Server. Use the XenMobile Support page to access several support-related information and tools. You can also carry out actions from the command-line interface. For details, see [Command-line interface options](#).

In the XenMobile console, click the wrench icon in the upper-right corner of the console.



The Support page appears.

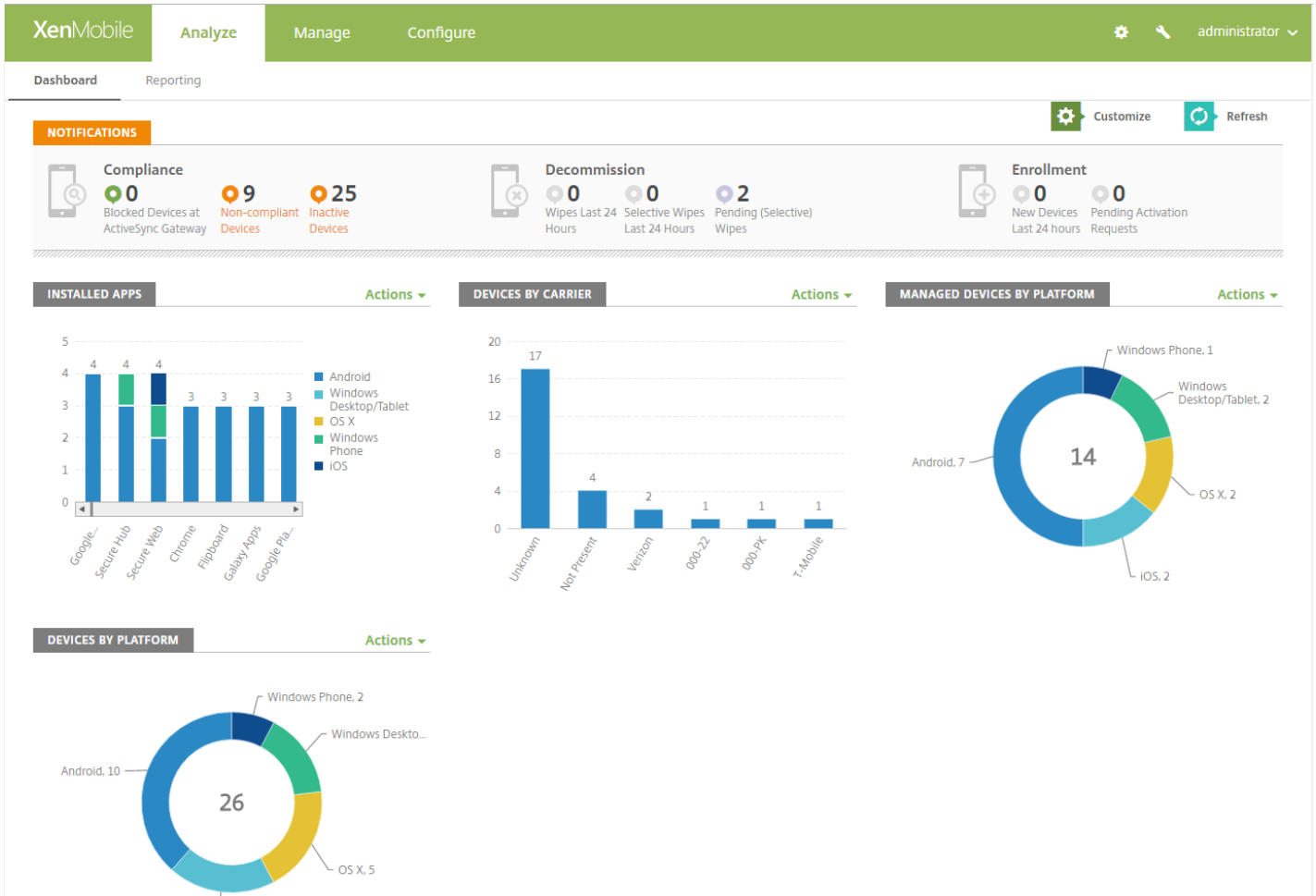


Use the XenMobile **Support** page to:

- Access diagnostics.
- Create support bundles.
- Access links to Citrix Product Documentation and the Knowledge Center.
- Access log operations.
- Select from a set of advanced information and configuration options.
- Access a set of tools and utilities.

You can also view information at a glance by accessing your XenMobile console dashboard. With this information, you can

see issues and successes quickly by using widgets.



The dashboard is usually the screen that first appears when you sign on to the XenMobile console. To access the dashboard from elsewhere in the console, click **Analyze**. Click **Customize** on the dashboard to edit the layout of the page and to edit the widgets that appear.

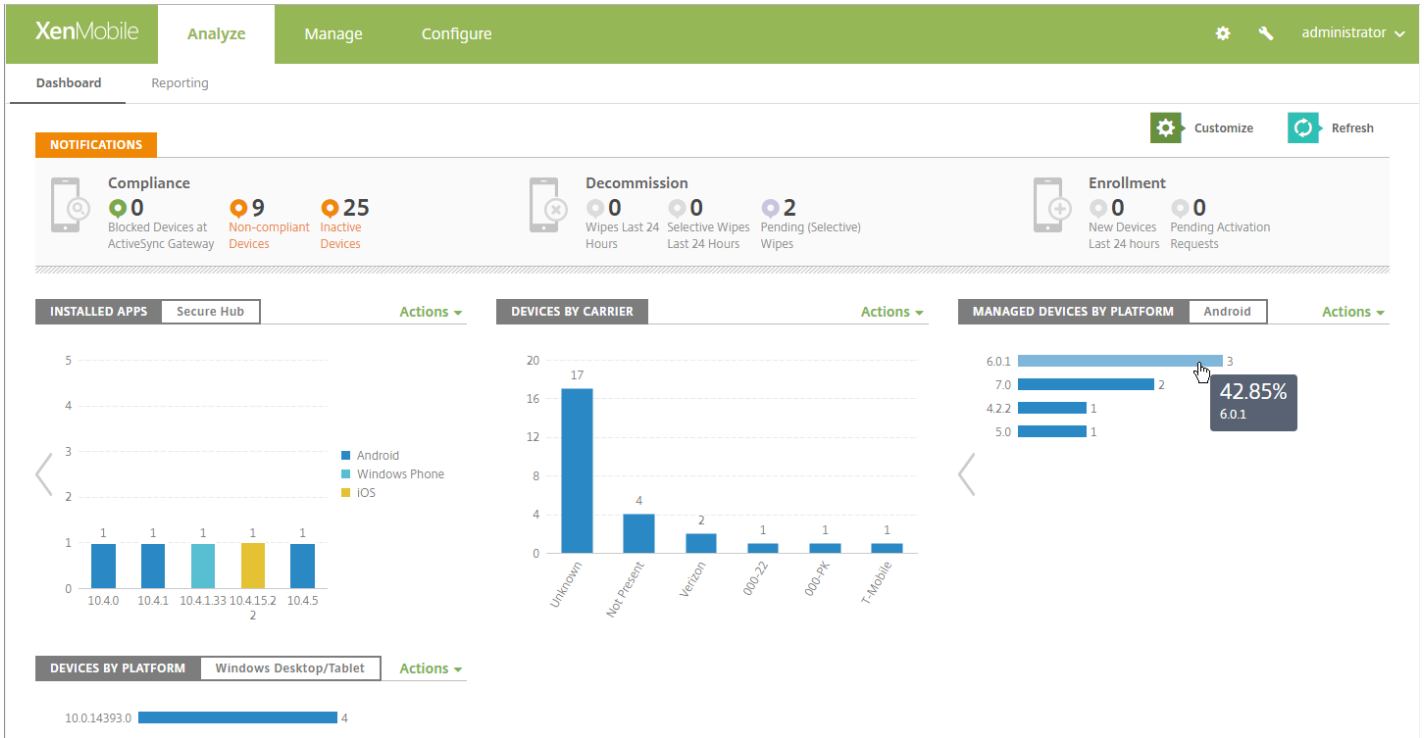
- **My Dashboards:** You can save up to four dashboards. You can edit these dashboards separately and view each one by selecting the saved dashboard.
- **Layout Style:** In this row, you can select how many widgets appear on your dashboard and how the widgets are laid out.
- **Widget Selection:** You can choose which information appears on your dashboard.
  - **Notifications:** Mark the check box above the numbers on the left to add a Notifications bar above your widgets. This bar shows the number of compliant devices, inactive devices, and devices wiped or enrolled in the last 24 hours.
  - **Devices By Platform:** Displays the number of managed and unmanaged devices by platform.
  - **Devices By Carrier:** Displays the number of managed and unmanaged devices by carrier. Click each bar to see a breakdown by platform.
  - **Managed Devices By Platform:** Displays the number of managed devices by platform.
  - **Unmanaged Devices By Platform:** Displays the number of unmanaged devices by platform. Devices that appear in this chart may have an agent installed on them, but have had their privileges revoked or have been wiped.
  - **Devices By ActiveSync Gateway Status:** Displays the number of devices grouped by ActiveSync Gateway status. The information shows Blocked, Allowed, or Unknown status. You can click each bar to break down the data by



platform.

- **Devices By Ownership:** Displays the number of devices grouped by ownership status. The information shows corporate-owned, employee-owned, or unknown ownership status.
- **Android TouchDown License Status:** Displays the number of devices that have a TouchDown license.
- **Failed Delivery Group Deployments:** Displays the total number of failed deployments per package. Only packages that have failed deployments appear.
- **Devices By Blocked Reason:** Displays the number of devices blocked by ActiveSync
- **Installed Apps:** By using this widget, you can type an app name, and a graph displays information about that app.
- **VPP Apps License Usage:** Displays license usage statistics for Apple Volume Purchase Program apps.

With each widget, you can click the individual parts to drill down for more information.



You can also export the information as a .csv file by clicking the **Action** drop-down.

NOTIFICATIONS



Compliance

0

Blocked Devices at  
ActiveSync Gateway

9

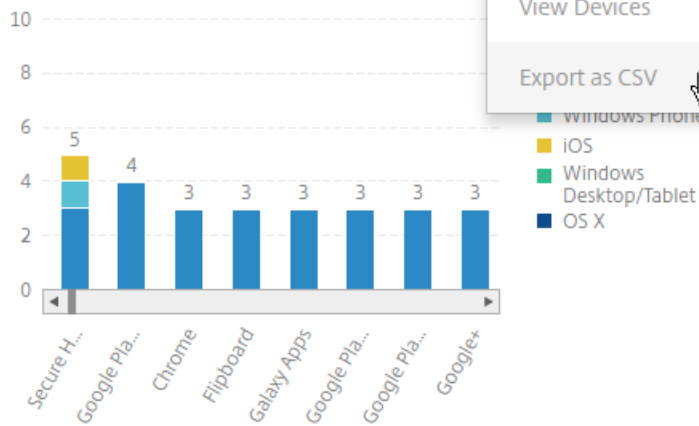
Non-compliant  
Devices

25

Inactive  
Devices

INSTALLED APPS

Actions



# Reports

Feb 27, 2017

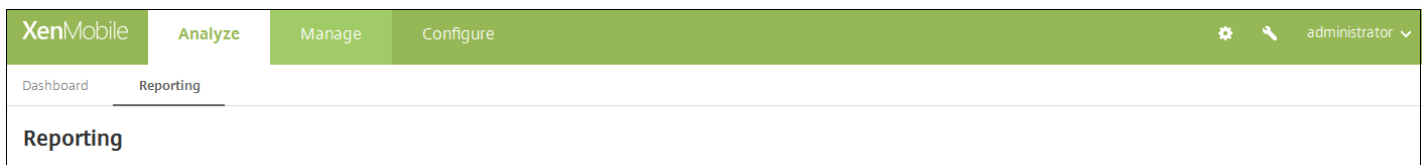
XenMobile provides the following pre-defined reports that let you analyze your app and device deployments:

- **Apps by Devices & User.** Lists managed apps that users have on their devices. This report does not include the personal apps installed on a device.
- **Terms & Conditions.** Lists users who have accepted and declined Terms and Conditions agreements.
- **Top 25 Apps.** Lists up to 25 apps that most users have on their devices.
- **Jailbroken/Rooted Devices.** Lists jailbroken iOS devices and rooted Android devices.
- **Top 10 Apps.** Failed Deployment - Lists up to 10 apps that have failed to deploy.
- **Inactive Devices.** Lists devices that have been inactive for a specified period of time.
- **Apps by Type & Category.** Lists apps by version, type, and category.
- **Device Enrollment.** Lists all enrolled devices.
- **Apps by Platform.** Lists apps and app versions by device platform and version.
- **Blacklisted Apps by Device & User.** Lists blacklisted apps that users have on their devices.
- **Devices & Apps.** Lists devices that are running managed apps.

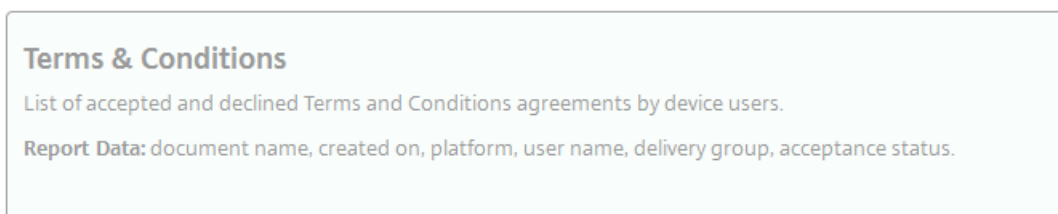
The reports are in .csv format, which you can open with programs like Microsoft Excel.

Follow these steps to create a report:

1. In the XenMobile console, click **Analyze**, and then click **Reporting**. The **Reporting** page appears.



Each report type includes a description of the information the report gathers, as well as the specific report data, as shown in the following example:



2. Click the report you want to create. Depending on the browser you are using, the file is automatically downloaded or you are asked to save the file.

3. Repeat step 2 for each report you want to create.

The following figure shows part of a Top 25 Apps report as it appears in Microsoft Excel:

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	APP_NAME	APP_VERSION	APP_CATEGORIES	AVAILABLE_DATE	APP_OWNER	DEPLOYMENT_TOTAL	DEPLOYMENT_SUCCESS	DEPLOYMENT_FAILED	DEPLOYMENT_PENDING	APP_TYPE
2	GoToMeeting	6.6.4.1127	Default	10/17/2016 14:21		7	7	0	0	Public App Store
3	Secure Web - Inception	10.4.0-11	Default	10/17/2016 14:37	citrix.com	7	6	0	1	MDX
4	Secure Mail	10.4.1-221	Default	10/17/2016 16:06	citrix.com	6	5	0	1	MDX
5	Twitter	6.64	appstore	10/17/2016 17:04		3	3	0	0	Public App Store
6	Salesforce1	11.0.3	Default	12/14/2016 17:52		2	2	0	0	Public App Store

## Important

Although it is possible to use SQL Server to create custom reports, Citrix does not recommend this method. Using the SQL Server database in this manner may have unforeseen consequences with your XenMobile deployment. If you do decide to pursue this method of reporting, ensure that SQL queries are run using a read-only account.

# Mobile Service Provider

Feb 27, 2017

You can enable XenMobile to use the Mobile Service Provider interface to query BlackBerry and Exchange ActiveSync devices and issue operations.

For example, your organization may have 1,000 users and each user may use one or more devices. After you communicate to every user that he or she must enroll their devices with XenMobile for management, the XenMobile console indicates the number of devices that users enroll. By configuring this setting, you can determine how many devices connect to Exchange Server. In this way, you can do the following:

- Determine if any users still need to enroll their devices.
- Issue commands to user devices that connect to Exchange Server, such as data wipes.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Under **Server**, click **Mobile Service Provider**. The **Mobile Service Provider** page appears.

The screenshot shows the XenMobile console interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'XenMobile' and tabs for 'Analyze', 'Manage', and 'Configure'. On the right, there is a gear icon and a user profile 'admin'. Below the navigation bar, the breadcrumb 'Settings > Mobile Service Provider' is visible. The main heading is 'Mobile Service Provider' with a sub-heading: 'Allows XenMobile to use the Mobile Service Provider interface to query BlackBerry and other Exchange ActiveSync devices and issue operations.' The form contains three input fields: 'Web service URL\*' with the value 'http://XmmServer/services/zdm', 'User name\*' with the value 'domain\admin', and 'Password\*'. Below these is a toggle switch for 'Automatically update BlackBerry and ActiveSync device connections' which is currently set to 'OFF'. A green 'Test Connection' button is located below the toggle. At the bottom right, there are 'Cancel' and 'Save' buttons.

3. Configure these settings:

- **Web service URL:** Type the URL of the Web service; for example, `http://XmmServer/services/xdmservice`
- **User name:** Type the user name in the format `domain\admin`.
- **Password:** Type the password.
- **Automatically update BlackBerry and ActiveSync device connections:** Select whether to automatically update device connections. The default is **OFF**
- Click **Test Connection** to verify connectivity.

4. Click **Save**.



# SysLog

Apr 13, 2017

You can configure XenMobile Server (on-premises only) to send log files to a systems log (syslog) server. You need the server host name or IP address.

Syslog is a standard logging protocol with two components: an auditing module (which runs on the appliance) and a server, which can run on a remote system. The Syslog protocol uses the user data protocol (UDP) for data transfer. Admin events and User events are recorded.

You can configure the server to collect the following types of information:

- System logs that contain a record of actions taken by XenMobile.
- Audit logs that contain a chronological record of system activities for XenMobile.

The log information that a syslog server collects from an appliance is stored in a log file in the form of messages. These messages typically contain the following information:

- The IP address of the appliance that generated the log message
- A time stamp
- The message type
- The log level associated with an event (Critical, Error, Notice, Warning, Informational, Debug, Alert, or Emergency)
- The message information

You can use this information to analyze the source of the alert and take corrective action if necessary.

## Note

In XenMobile Service (cloud) deployments, Citrix does not support syslog integration with an on-premises syslog server. Instead, you can download the logs from the Support page in the XenMobile console. When doing so, you must click **Download All** to get system logs. For details, see [View and analyze log files in XenMobile](#).

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Click **Syslog**. The **Syslog** page appears.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure

admin

Settings > SysLog

## SysLog

You can configure XenMobile to send log files to a systems log (syslog) server using the server host name or IP address.

Server\*

Port\*

Information to log

System Logs ?

Audit ?

Cancel Save

3. Configure these settings:

- **Server:** Type either the IP address or the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of your syslog server.
- **Port:** Type the port number. By default, the port is set to 514.
- **Information to log:** Select or clear **System Logs** and **Audit**.
  - System logs contain actions taken by XenMobile.
  - Audit logs contain a chronological record of system activities for XenMobile.

4. Click **Save**.



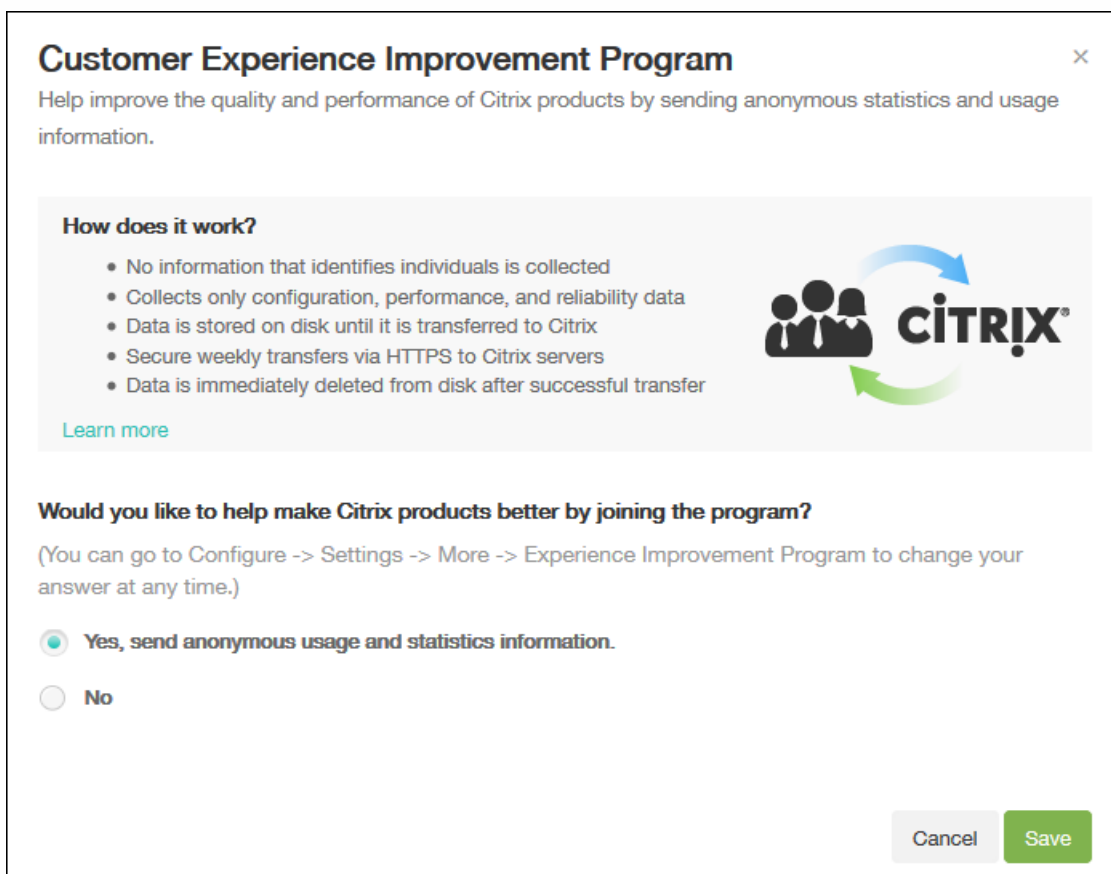
# Customer Experience Improvement Program

Feb 27, 2017

The Citrix Customer Experience Improvement Program (CEIP) gathers anonymous configuration and usage data from XenMobile and automatically sends the data to Citrix. This data helps Citrix improve the quality, reliability, and performance of XenMobile. Participation in the CEIP is completely voluntary. When you first install XenMobile, or when you install an update, you have the option to participate in the CEIP. When you opt-in, data is typically collected on a weekly basis, and performance and usage data is collected hourly. The data is stored on disk and transferred securely via HTTPS to Citrix weekly. You can change whether you participate in the CEIP in the XenMobile console. For more information on the CEIP, see [About the Citrix Customer Experience Improvement Program \(CEIP\)](#).

## Choosing to participate in the CEIP

The first time you install XenMobile or when you do an update, you see the following dialog box that prompts you to participate.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Customer Experience Improvement Program" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The main text reads: "Help improve the quality and performance of Citrix products by sending anonymous statistics and usage information." Below this is a section titled "How does it work?" with a list of five bullet points: "No information that identifies individuals is collected", "Collects only configuration, performance, and reliability data", "Data is stored on disk until it is transferred to Citrix", "Secure weekly transfers via HTTPS to Citrix servers", and "Data is immediately deleted from disk after successful transfer". To the right of the list is a graphic showing three stylized human figures with arrows forming a circle around the Citrix logo. Below the list is a "Learn more" link. The next section asks "Would you like to help make Citrix products better by joining the program?" with a sub-note: "(You can go to Configure -> Settings -> More -> Experience Improvement Program to change your answer at any time.)". There are two radio button options: "Yes, send anonymous usage and statistics information." (which is selected) and "No". At the bottom right are "Cancel" and "Save" buttons.

## Changing your CEIP participation setting

1. To change your CEIP participation setting, in the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console to open the **Settings** page.

2. Under **Server**, click **Experience Improvement Program**. The **Customer Experience Improvement Program** page appears. The exact page you see depends on whether you are currently participating in the CEIP.

Settings > [Experience Improvement Program](#)

## Customer Experience Improvement Program

Help improve the quality and performance of Citrix products by sending anonymous statistics and usage information.

### How does it work?

- No information that identifies individuals is collected
- Collects only configuration, performance, and reliability data
- Data is stored on disk until it is transferred to Citrix
- Secure weekly transfers via HTTPS to Citrix servers
- Data is immediately deleted from disk after successful transfer



[Learn more](#)

You are currently participating in the Customer Experience Improvement Program.

- Continue participating
- Stop participating

Cancel

Save

3. If you are currently participating in the CEIP and want to stop, click **Stop participating**.

4. If you are not currently participating in the CEIP and want to start, click **Start participating**.

5. Click **Save**.

# Support options and Remote Support

Apr 26, 2017

You can provide an email address for users to contact support staff. When users request assistance from their devices, they see the email address.

You can also configure how users send logs to the help desk from their devices. You can configure the logs to be sent directly or by email.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.

**Settings**

**Certificate Management**

- Certificates
- Credential Providers
- PKI Entities

**Client**

- Client Branding
- Client Properties
- Client Support

**Notifications**

- Carrier SMS Gateway
- Notification Server
- Notification Templates

**Platforms**

- Android for Work
- Google Play Credentials
- iOS Bulk Enrollment
- iOS Settings
- Samsung KNOX

**Server**

- ActiveSync Gateway
- Enrollment
- LDAP
- Licensing
- Local Users and Groups
- Mobile Service Provider
- NetScaler Gateway
- Network Access Control
- Release Management
- Role-Based Access Control
- Server Properties
- SysLog
- Workflows
- XenApp/XenDesktop

**Frequently Accessed**

- Certificates
- Enrollment
- Licensing
- Local Users and Groups
- Role-Based Access Control
- Release Management

2. Under **Client**, click **Client Support**. The **Client Support** page appears.

3. Configure the following settings:

- **Support email (IT help desk):** Type the email address for your IT help desk contact.
- **Send device logs to IT help desk:** Select whether device logs are sent **directly** or **by email**. The default is **by email**.
  - When you enable **directly**, settings for Store logs on ShareFile appear. If you enable Store logs on ShareFile, logs are sent directly to ShareFile. Otherwise, the logs are sent to XenMobile and then emailed to the help desk. In addition, the **If sending directly fails, use email** option appears, which is enabled by default. You can disable this option when you do not want to use the client email to send the logs for a server problem. When, however, you disable this option and a server problem occurs, the logs are not sent.
  - When you enable **by email**, the client email is always used to send the logs.

4. Click **Save**.

## Remote Support

Remote support enables your help desk representatives to take remote control of managed Windows and Android mobile devices.

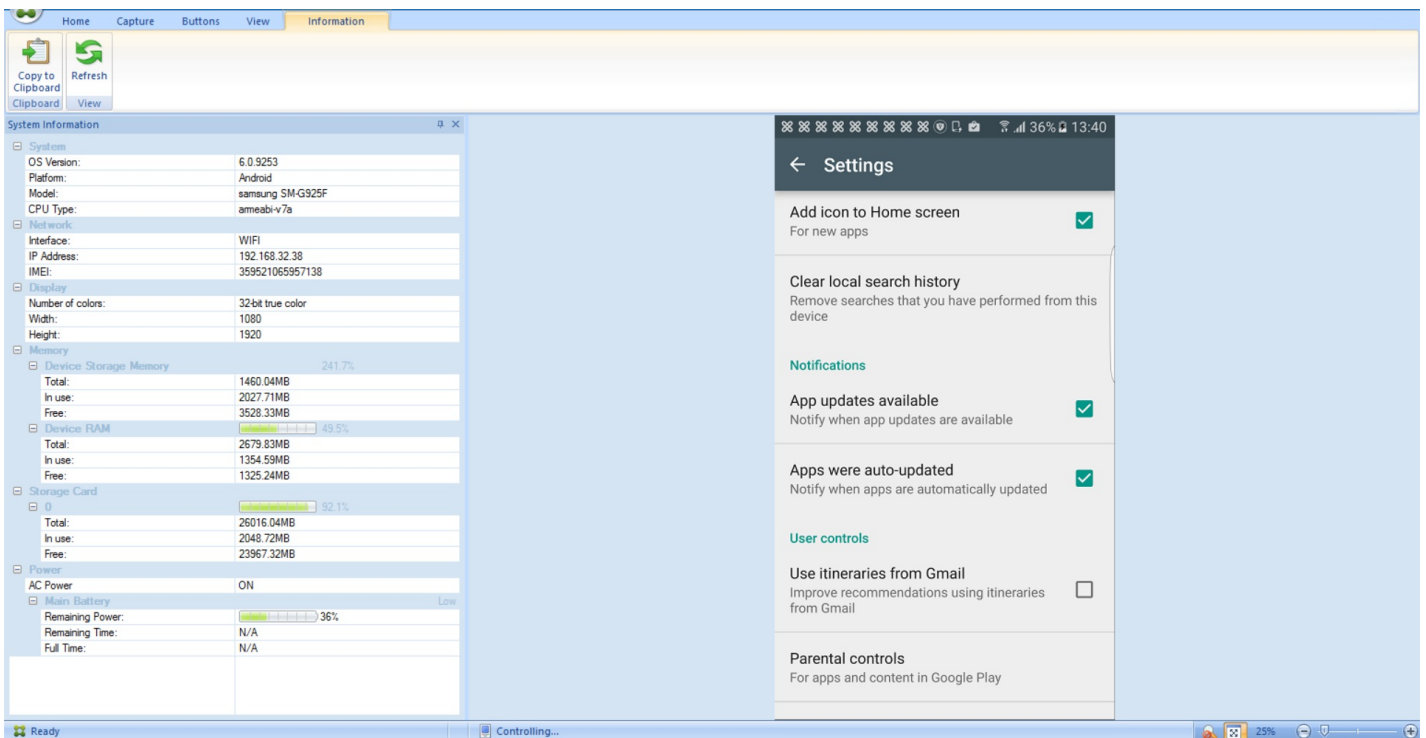
Remote Support is available on all Windows mobile devices and on Android Samsung SAFE devices and non-Samsung devices. The Remote Support client is not available in XenMobile Service versions 10.x for Windows CE and Samsung Android devices.

Screen cast is supported on Samsung KNOX devices only.

Remote control of iOS devices is not supported.

During a remote control session:

- Users see on their mobile device an icon indicating a remote control session is active.
- Remote Support users see the Remote Support application window and a Remote Control window that shows a rendering of the controlled device.



By using Remote Support, you can do the following:

- Remotely sign on to a user device and control the screen. Users can watch you navigate their screen, which can also be helpful for training purposes.
- Navigate and repair a remote device in real time. You can change configurations, troubleshoot operating system issues, and disable or stop problematic apps or processes.
- Isolate and contain threats before they spread to other mobile devices by remotely disabling network access, stopping rogue processes, and removing apps or malware.

- Remotely enable the device ringer and call the phone, to help the user to locate the device. When a user can't find the device, you can wipe it to ensure that your sensitive data is not compromised.

Remote Support also enables support personnel to:

- Display a list of all connected devices within one or more instances of XenMobile.
- Display system information including device model, operating system level, International Mobile Station Equipment Identity (IMEI), serial number, memory and battery status, and connectivity.
- Display the users and groups for XenMobile.
- Run the device task manager where you can display active processes, end active processes, and restart the mobile device.
- Run remote file transfer that includes bidirectional file transfer between mobile devices and a central file server.
- Download and install software programs as a batch to one or more mobile devices.
- Configure remote registry key settings on the device.
- Optimize response time over low-bandwidth cellular networks by using real-time device screen remote control.
- Display the device skin for most mobile device brands and models. Display a skin editor to add new device models and map physical keys.
- Enable device screen capture, record, and replay with the ability to capture a sequence of interactions on the device that creates a video AVI file.
- Conduct live meetings by using a shared whiteboard, VoIP-based voice communications and chat among mobile users and support personnel.

## Remote Support System Requirements

The Remote Support software installs on Windows-based computers which meet the following requirements. For port requirements, see [Port Requirements](#).

Supported platforms:

- Intel Xeon/Pentium 4 -1 GHz minimum Workstation class
- 512-MB RAM minimum
- 100-MB free disk space minimum

Supported operating systems:

- Microsoft Windows 2003 Server Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition SP1 or later
- Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional SP4
- Microsoft Windows XP SP2 or later
- Microsoft Windows Vista SP1 or later
- Microsoft Windows 10
- Microsoft Windows 8
- Microsoft Windows 7

## To install the Remote Support software

1. To download the Remote Support installer, go to the [XenMobile 10 download page](#) and log on to your account.
2. Expand **Tools** and then download XenMobile Remote Support v9.  
The Remote Support file name is XenMobileRemoteSupport-9.0.0.35265.exe.
3. Double-click the Remote Support installer and then follow the instructions in the installation wizard.

## To install Remote Support from the command line:

Run the following command:

```
RemoteSupport.exe /S
```

*RemoteSupport* is the name of the installation program. For example:

```
XenMobileRemoteSupport-9.0.0.35265.exe /S
```

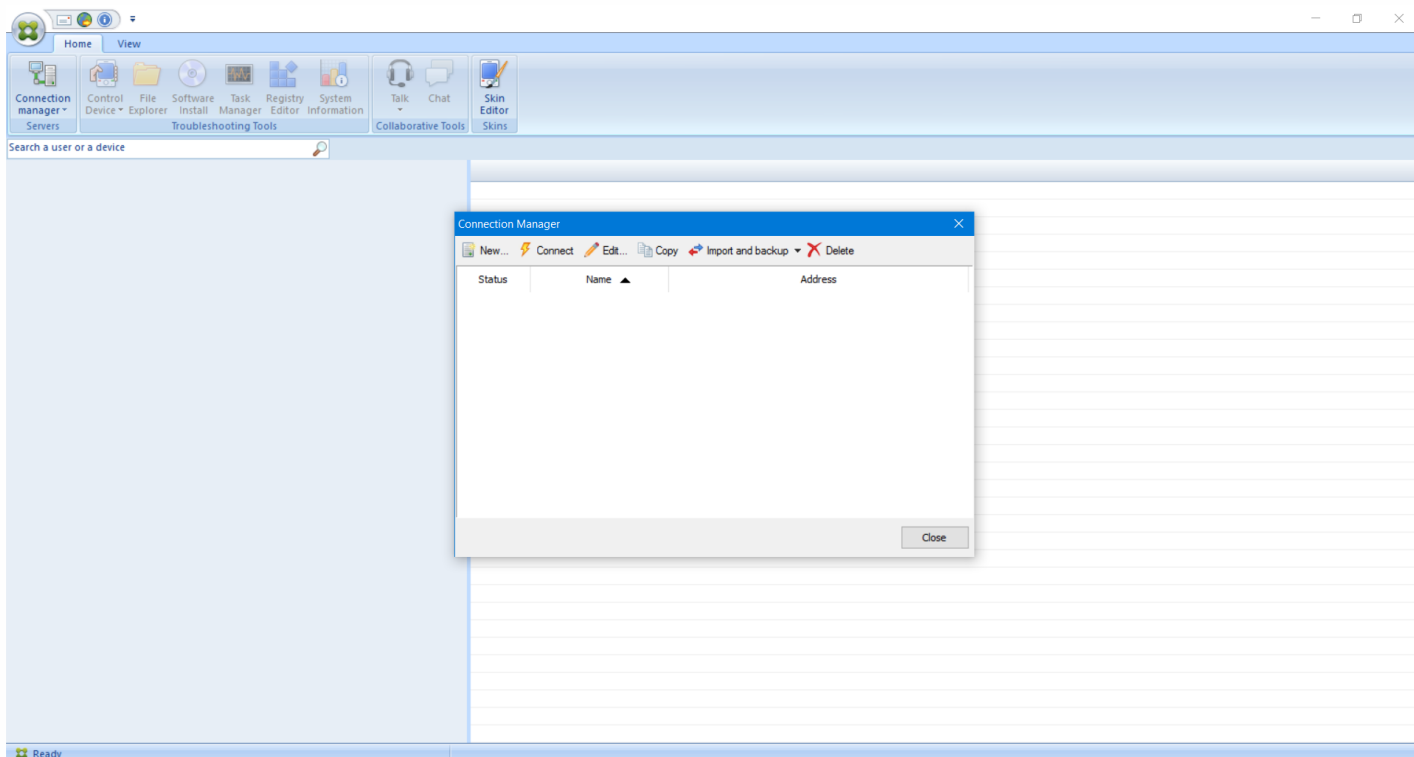
You can use the following variables when installing the Remote Support software:

- /S: to install the Remote Support software silently with the default parameters.
- /D=dir: to specify a custom installation directory.

## To connect Remote Support to XenMobile

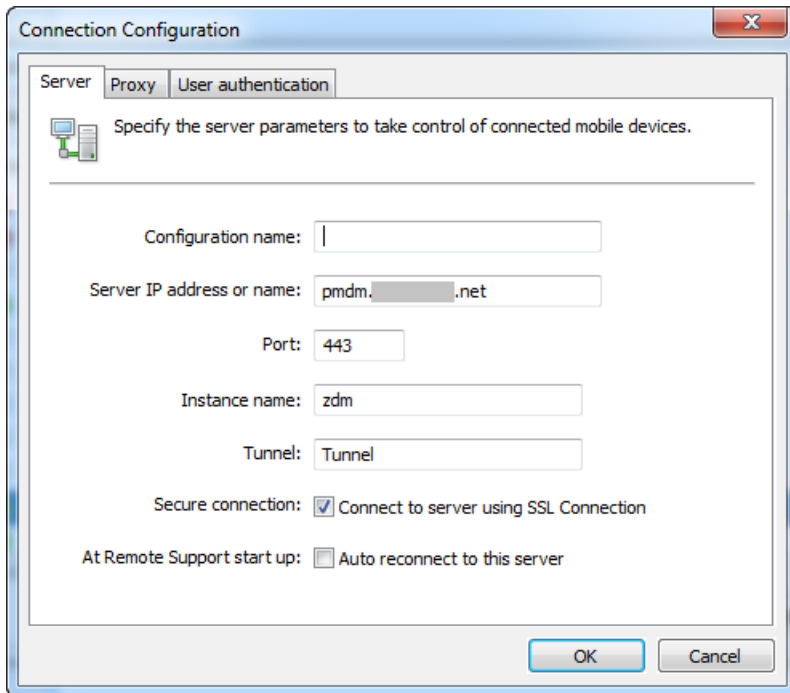
To establish remote support connections to managed devices, you must add a connection from Remote Support to one or more XenMobile Servers that manage the devices. That connection runs over an app tunnel that you define in the Tunnel MDM policy, a device policy for Android and Windows Mobile/CE devices. Define the app tunnel before you can connect Remote Support to XenMobile. For details, see [App tunneling device policies](#).

1. Start the Remote Support software and use your XenMobile credentials to sign on.
2. In **Connection Manager**, click **New**.

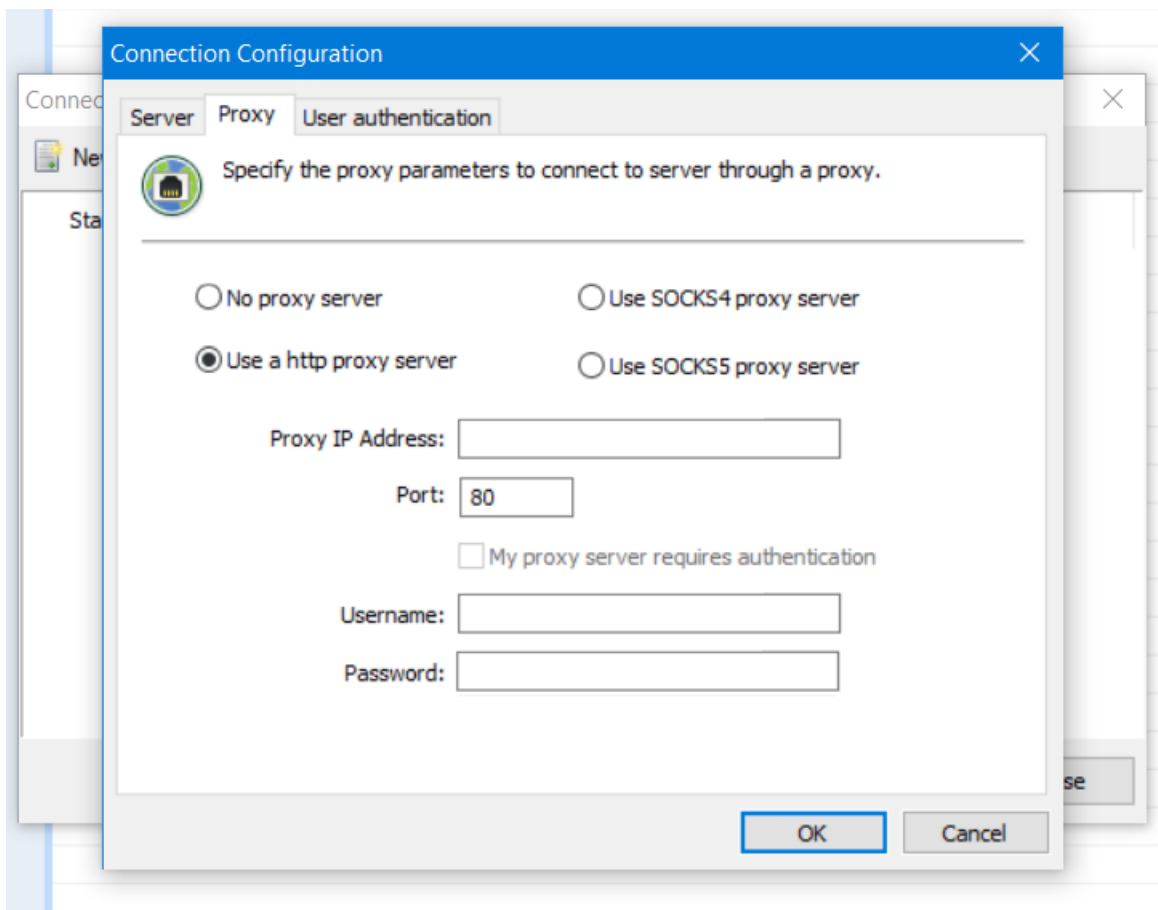


3. In the **Connection Configuration** dialog box, on the **Server** tab, type the following values:
  - a. In **Configuration name**, type a name for the configuration entry.

- b. In **Server IP address or name**, type the IP address or the DNS name of the XenMobile Server.
- c. In **Port**, type a TCP port number, as defined in the XenMobile Server configuration.
- d. In **Instance name**, when XenMobile is part of a multitenant deployment, type an instance name.
- e. In **Tunnel**, type the name of the Tunnel policy.
- f. Select the **Connect to server using SSL Connection** check box.
- g. Select the **Auto reconnect to this server** check box to connect to the configured XenMobile Server each time the Remote Support application starts.



4. On the **Proxy** tab, select **Use a http proxy server** and then type the following information:
- a. In **Proxy IP Address**, type the IP address of the proxy server.
  - b. In **Port**, type a TCP port number used by the proxy.
  - c. Select the **My proxy server requires authentication** check box when the proxy server requires authentication to allow traffic.
  - d. In **Username**, type the user name to be authenticated on the proxy server.
  - e. In **Password**, type the password to be authenticated on the proxy server.



5. On the **User Authentication** tab, select the **Remember my login and password** check box and enter the credentials.
6. Click **OK**.

To connect to XenMobile, double-click the connection you created and then enter the user name and password you configured for the connection.

## To enable remote support for Samsung KNOX devices

You create a Remote Support policy in XenMobile to give you remote access to Samsung KNOX devices. You can configure two types of support:

- **Basic:** Lets you view diagnostic information about the device. For example, system information, processes that are running, task manager (memory and CPU usage), and installed software folder contents.
- **Premium:** Lets you remotely control the device screen. For example, control window colors, establish a VoIP session between the help desk and user, and establish a chat session between the help desk and user.

Premium support requires that you configure the Samsung MDM License Key device policy in the XenMobile console. When you configure this policy, select the **Samsung KNOX** platform only. For the Samsung SAFE platform, the ELM key automatically deploys on Samsung devices when they enroll in XenMobile. Therefore, don't select the Samsung SAFE platform for this policy. For details, see [Samsung MDM license key](#).

For information about configuring the Remote Support Policy, see [Remote support device policy](#).



## To use a Remote Support session

After you start Remote Support, the left-side of the Remote Support application window presents XenMobile user groups as you defined in the XenMobile console. By default, only groups containing users who are currently connected appear. You can see the device for each user next to the user entry.

1. To see all users, expand each group from the left column.  
Those users currently connected to the XenMobile Server are indicated with a green icon.
2. To display all users, including those not currently connected, click **View** and select **Non-connected devices**.  
Non-connected users appear without the small green icon.

Devices connected to the XenMobile Server but not assigned to a user appear in Anonymous mode. (The string **Anonymous** appears in the list.) You can control these devices just like the device of a logged-in user.

To control a device, select the device by clicking its row and then clicking **Control Device**. A rendering of the device appears in the Remote Control window. You can interact with a controlled device in the following ways:

- Control the device screen, including control with colors, in either the main window, or in a separate, floating window.
- Establish a VoIP session between the help desk and the user. Configure VoIP settings.
- Establish a chat session with the user.
- Access the device task manager, to manage items such as memory usage, CPU usage, and running apps.
- Explore the mobile device local directories. Transfer files.
- Edit the device registry on Windows mobile devices.
- Display device system information and all installed software.
- Update the mobile device connection status with the XenMobile Server.

# Connectivity checks

Feb 27, 2017

From the XenMobile **Support** page, you can check the XenMobile connection to NetScaler Gateway and to other servers and locations.

## Conducting XenMobile Connectivity Checks

1. In the XenMobile console, click the wrench icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Support** page appears.
2. Under **Diagnostics**, click **XenMobile Connectivity Checks**. The **XenMobile Connectivity Checks** page appears. If your XenMobile environment contains clustered nodes, all nodes are shown.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Connectivity to	IP address or FQDN
<input type="checkbox"/>	Windows Phone Store	windowsphone.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	Database	.....net
<input type="checkbox"/>	Apple Feedback Push Notification Server	feedback.push.apple.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	LDAP	.....net
<input type="checkbox"/>	Domain Name System (DNS)	.....
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nexmo Gateway	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	Apple Push Notification Server	gateway.push.apple.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	iTunes Store/Volume Purchase Program (VPP)	ax.itunes.apple.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	Google Play	play.google.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	Windows Security Token Service	login.live.com

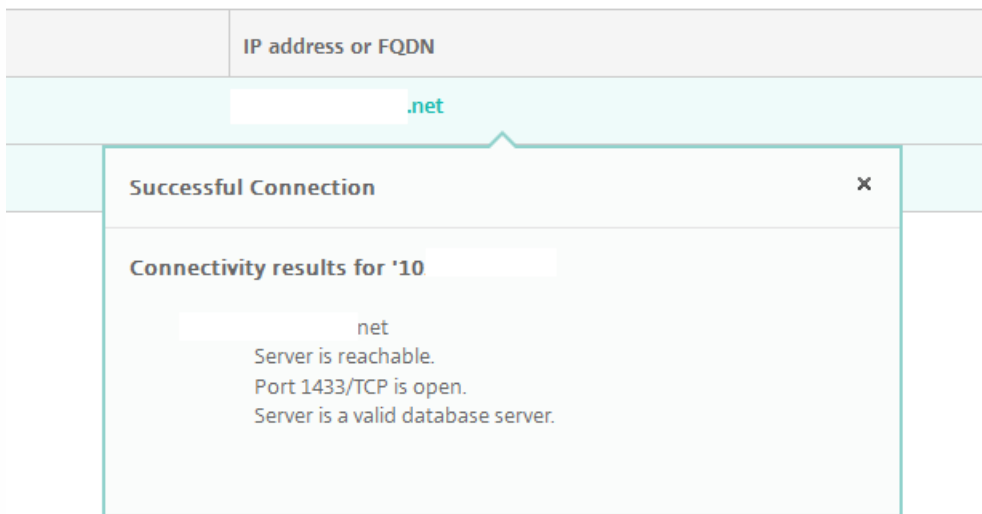
2. Select the servers you want to include in the connectivity test and then click **Test Connectivity**. The test results page appears.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Connectivity to	IP address or FQDN	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Database	.....net	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	Windows Phone Store	windowsphone.com	✓

Showing 1 - 2 of 2 items

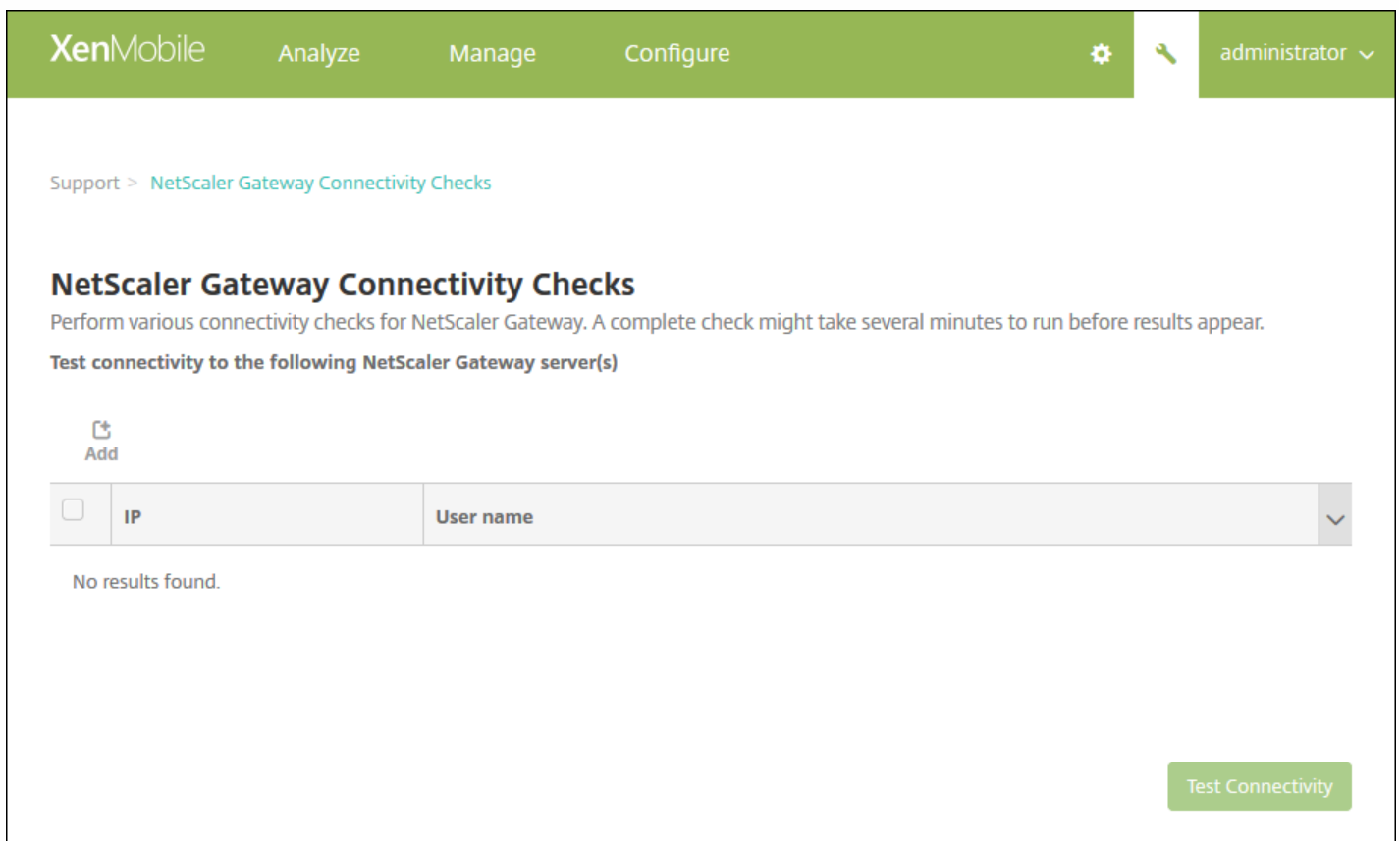
Clear Results Test Connectivity

3. Select a server in the test results table to see detailed results for that server.



## Conducting NetScaler Gateway Connectivity Checks

1. On the **Support** page, under **Diagnostics**, click **NetScaler Gateway Connectivity Checks**. The **NetScaler Gateway Connectivity Checks** page appears. The table is empty if you haven't added any NetScaler Gateway servers.



2. Click **Add**. The **Add NetScaler Gateway Server** dialog box appears.

Add NetScaler Gateway Server

NetScaler Gateway Management IP\*

User name\*

Password\*

Cancel Add

3. In **NetScaler Gateway Management IP**, type the management IP address for the server running NetScaler Gateway that you want to test.

**Note:** If you're conducting a connectivity check for a NetScaler Gateway server that has already been added before, the IP address is provided.

4. Type your administrator credentials for this NetScaler Gateway.

**Note:** If you're conducting a connectivity check for a NetScaler Gateway server that has already been added before, the user name is provided.

5. Click **Add**. The NetScaler Gateway is added to the table on the **NetScaler Gateway Connectivity Checks** page.

6. Select the NetScaler Gateway server and then click **Test Connectivity**. The results appear in a test results table.

7. Select a server in the test results table to see detailed results for that server.

# Support bundles

Feb 27, 2017

If you want to report an issue to Citrix or troubleshoot a problem, you can create a support bundle and then upload the support bundle to Citrix Insight Services (CIS).

1. In the XenMobile console, click the wrench icon in the right upper-hand corner. The **Support** page appears.
2. On the **Support** page, click **Create Support Bundles**. The **Create Support Bundles** page appears. If your XenMobile environment contains clustered nodes, all nodes are shown.

The image displays two screenshots of the XenMobile console's 'Create Support Bundles' page. The top screenshot shows the page with the 'Support Bundle for XenMobile' checkbox checked. Below it, the 'Support Bundle for\*' dropdown is set to 'Cluster' and the IP address '192.0.2.24' is selected. The bottom screenshot shows the same page with the 'Support Bundle for\*' dropdown set to '198.51.100.3'. The 'Include from database\*' section is expanded, showing radio buttons for 'No data' (selected), 'Custom data', 'All data', and checkboxes for 'Configuration data', 'Delivery group data', and 'Devices and user info'. A note at the bottom indicates 'Support data anonymization is turned on' with a link to 'Anonymization and de-anonymization'. A 'Create' button is visible at the bottom right of the page.

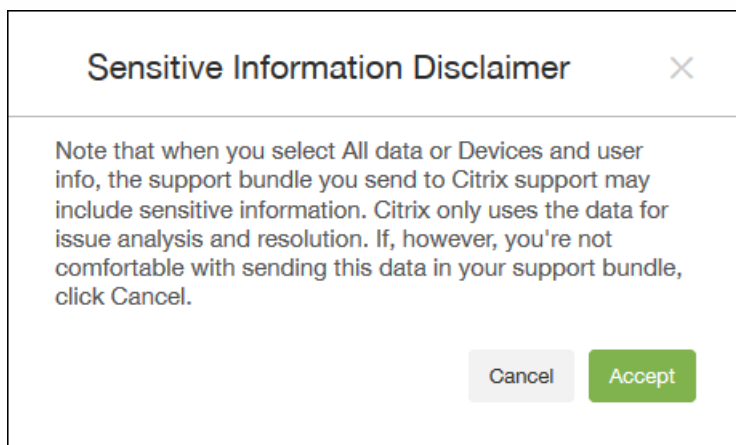
3. Make sure that the **Support Bundle for XenMobile** check box is selected.

4. If your XenMobile environment contains clustered nodes, in **Support Bundle for**, you can select all the nodes or any combination of nodes from which to draw data.

5. In **Include from database**, do one of the following:

- Click **No data**.
- Click **Custom data** and then select any or all of the following (by default, all options are selected):
  - **Configuration data**: Includes certificate configurations and device manager policies.
  - **Delivery group data**: Includes app delivery group information, containing app types and app delivery policy details.
  - **Devices and user info**: Includes device policies, apps, actions, and delivery groups.
- Click **All data**.

**Note:** If you choose **Devices and user info** or **All data**, and this is the first support bundle you have created, the **Sensitive Information Disclaimer** dialog box appears. Read the disclaimer and then click **Accept** or **Cancel**. If you click **Cancel**, the support bundle cannot be uploaded to Citrix. If you click **Accept**, you can upload the support bundle to Citrix and you will not see the disclaimer the next time you create a support bundle that includes device or user data.



6. The **Support data anonymization is turned on** option indicates that the default setting is to anonymize the data, which means that sensitive user, server, and network data is made anonymous in support bundles.

To change this setting, click **Anonymization and de-anonymization**. For more information about data anonymization, see [Anonymizing data in support bundles](#).

7. Select the **Support Bundle for NetScaler Gateway** check box if you want to include support bundles from NetScaler Gateway and then do the following:

- a. Click **Add**. The **Add NetScaler Gateway Server** dialog box appears.

**Add NetScaler Gateway Server** [X]

**NetScaler Gateway Management IP\***

**User name\***

**Password\***

b. In **NetScaler Gateway Management IP**, type the NetScaler management IP address for the NetScaler Gateway from which you want to draw your support bundle data.

**Note:** If you are creating a bundle from a NetScaler Gateway server that is already added, the IP address is provided.

c. In **User name** and **Password**, type the user credentials needed to access the server running NetScaler Gateway.

**Note:** If you are creating a bundle from a NetScaler Gateway server that is already added, the user name is provided.

7. Click **Add**. The new NetScaler Gateway support bundle is added to the table.

8. Repeat Step 7 to add more NetScaler Gateway support bundles.

9. Click **Create**. The support bundle is created and two new buttons, **Upload to CIS** and **Download to Client**, appear.

### Uploading Support Bundles to Citrix Insight Services

After creating a support bundle, you can upload the bundle to Citrix Insight Services (CIS) or download the bundle to your computer. These steps show you how to upload the bundle to CIS. You need a MyCitrix ID and password to upload to CIS.

1. On the **Create Support Bundles** page, click **Upload to CIS**. The **Upload to Citrix Insight Services (CIS)** dialog box appears.

Upload to Citrix Insight Services (CIS)

CIS Website cis.citrix.com

User name\* MyCitrix ID

Password\* MyCitrix password

Associate with SR#

Cancel Upload

2. In **User Name**, type your MyCitrix ID.

3. In **Password**, type your MyCitrix password.

4. If you want to connect this bundle with an existing service request number, select the **Associate with SR#** check box and in the two new fields that appear, do the following:

- In **SR#**, type the eight-digit service request number you want to associate this bundle with.
- In **SR Description**, type a description of the SR.

5. Click **Upload**.

If this is the first time you have uploaded a support bundle to CIS, and you haven't created an account on CIS through another product and accepted the Data Collection and Privacy agreement, the following dialog box appears; you must accept the agreement before the upload can begin. If you have an account on CIS and have previously accepted the agreement, the support bundle is uploaded immediately.

Data Collection and Privacy

By uploading your data to Citrix pursuant to the instructions on this website, you are agreeing that Citrix may store, transmit and use technical and related information about your use of your Citrix products, including configuration information, number and types of users, error reports, features enabled, performance, version and patch management information, and non-personally identifiable usage statistics ("Collected Data") to facilitate the provisioning of product updates, support, education, self-help tools, market assessment and analysis, product development, invoicing and online services. Collected Data is subject to Citrix's Privacy Policy.

Cancel Agree and upload



6. Read the agreement and then click **Agree and upload**. The support bundle is uploaded.

### Downloading support bundles to your computer

After you create a support bundle, you can upload the bundle to CIS or download the bundle to your computer. If you would like to troubleshoot the problem on your own, download the support bundle to your computer.

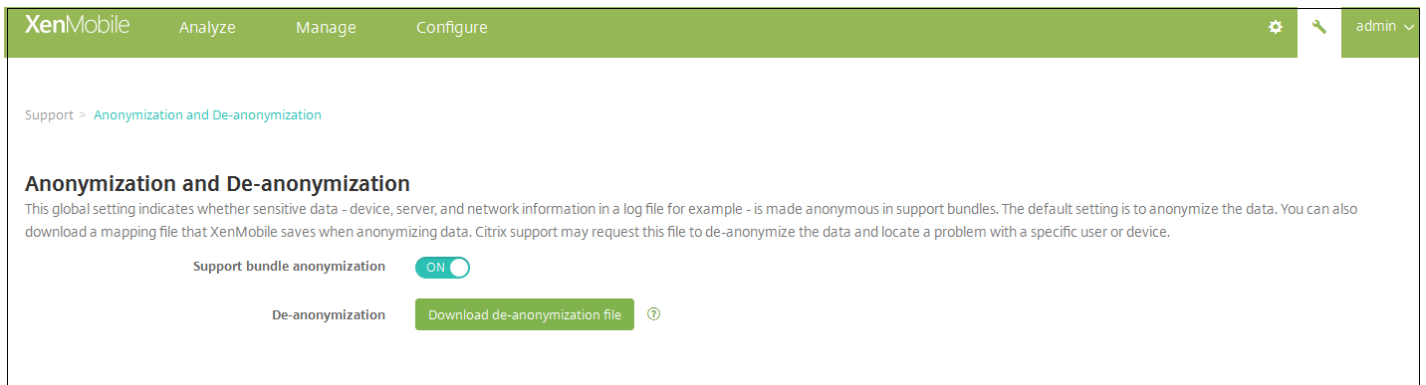
On the Create Support Bundles page, click Download to Client. The bundle is downloaded to your computer.

# Anonymize data in support bundles

Feb 27, 2017

When you create support bundles in XenMobile, sensitive user, server, and network data is made anonymous by default. You can change this behavior on the Anonymization and De-anonymization page. You can also download a mapping file that XenMobile saves when anonymizing data. Citrix support may request this file to de-anonymize the data and locate a problem with a specific user or device.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the wrench icon in the right upper-hand corner. The **Support** page appears.
2. On the **Support** page, under **Advanced**, click **Anonymization and De-anonymization**. The **Anonymization and De-anonymization** page appears.



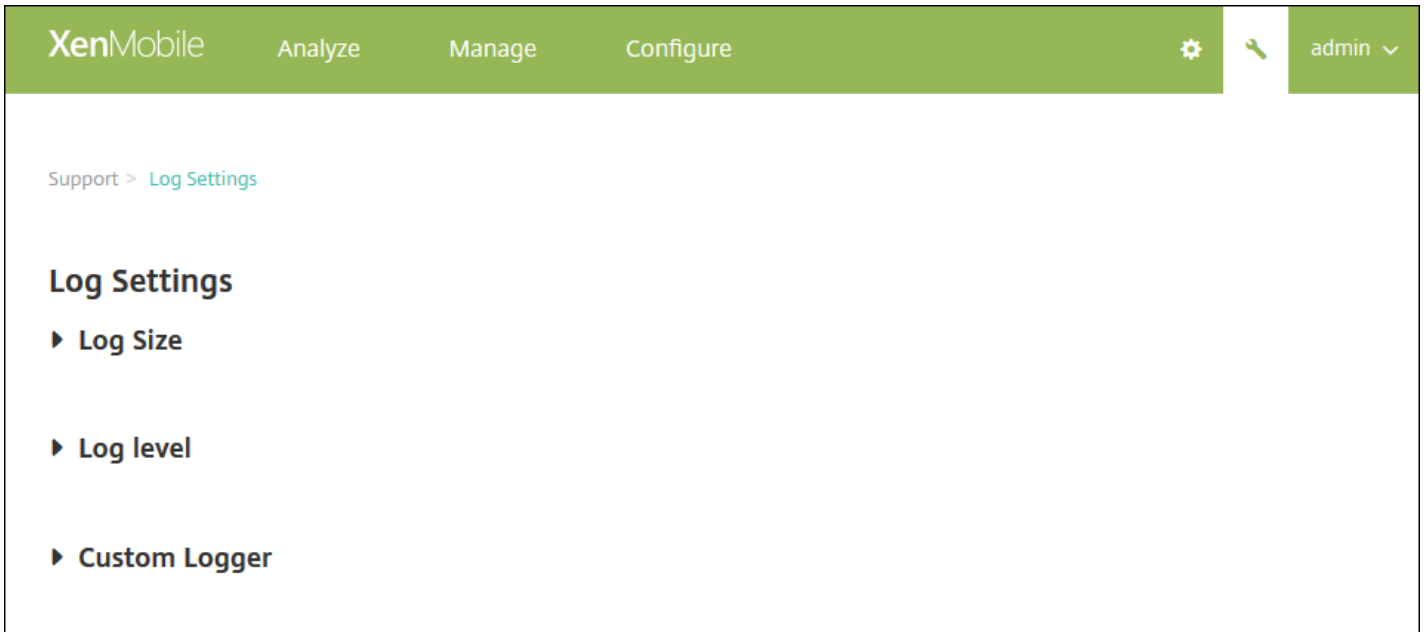
3. In **Support bundle anonymization**, select whether data is anonymized. The default is **ON**.
4. Next to **De-anonymization**, click **Download de-anonymization file** to download the mapping file to send to Citrix support when they need specific device or user information to diagnose an issue.

# Logs

Feb 27, 2017

You can configure log settings to customize the output of logs that XenMobile generates. If you have clustered XenMobile servers, when you configure log settings in the XenMobile console, those settings are shared with all other servers in the cluster.

1. In the XenMobile console, click the wrench icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Support** page appears.
2. Under **Log Operations**, click **Log Settings**. The **Log Settings** page appears.






On the **Log Settings** page you can access the following options:

- **Log Size.** Use this option to control the size of the log file and the maximum number of log backup files retained in the database. Log size applies to each of the logs supported by XenMobile (debug log, Admin activity log, and user activity log).
- **Log level.** Use this option to change the log level or to persist settings.
- **Custom Logger.** Use this option to create a custom logger; custom logs require a class name and the log level.

To configure the Log Size options

1. On the **Log Settings** page, expand **Log Size**.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure   admin 

[Support](#) > [Log Settings](#)

## Log Settings

▼ Log Size

Debug log file size (MB)	10
Maximum number of debug backup files	50
Admin activity log file size (MB)	10
Maximum number of admin activity backup files	300
User activity log file size (MB)	10
Maximum number of user activity backup files	600




2. Configure these settings:

- **Debug log file size (MB):** In the list, click a size between 5 MB and 20 MB to change the maximum size of the debug file. The default file size is **10 MB**.
- **Maximum number of debug backup files:** In the list, click the maximum number of debug files retained by the server. By default, XenMobile retains 50 backup files on the server.
- **Admin activity log file size (MB):** in the list, click a size between 5 MB and 20 MB to change the maximum size of the admin activity file. The default file size is **10 MB**.
- **Maximum number of admin activity backup files:** In the list, click the maximum number of admin activity files retained by the server. By default, XenMobile retains 300 backup files on the server.
- **User activity log file size (MB):** In the list, click a size between 5 MB and 20 MB to change the maximum size of the user activity file. The default file size is **10 MB**.
- **Maximum number of user activity backup files:** In the list, click the maximum number of user activity files retained by the server. By default, XenMobile retains 300 backup files on the server.

To configure Log Level options

Log level lets you specify what type of information XenMobile collects in the log. You can set the same level for all classes or you can set individual classes to specific levels.

1. On the **Log Settings** page, expand **Log level**. The table of all log classes appears.



XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure   admin 


Support > [Log Settings](#)

## Log Settings

▶ Log Size

▼ Log level

 Edit all |  Reset

<input type="checkbox"/>	Class	Sub-class	Log level	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Data Access	All	Info	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Data Access	XDM	Info	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Data Access	XAM	Info	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Data Access	Console	Info	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Data Access	OCA	Info	
<input type="checkbox"/>	IMI Services	All	Info	
<input type="checkbox"/>	IMI Services	Category Service	Info	
<input type="checkbox"/>	IMI Services	OPN Service	Info	

2. Do one of the following:

- Click the check box next to one Class and then, click **Set Level** to change just this class's log level.
- Click **Edit all** to apply the log level change to all classes in the table.

The **Set Log Level** dialog box appears where you can set the log level and select whether to have log level settings persist when you reboot the XenMobile server.

- **Class Name:** This field displays All when you are changing the log level for all classes or it displays the individual class name; it is not editable.
- **Sub-class name:** This field displays All when you are changing the log level for all classes or it displays the individual class sub-class name; it is not editable.
- **Log level:** In the list, click a log level. The supported log levels include:
  - Fatal
  - Error
  - Warning
  - Info
  - Debug
  - Trace
  - Off
- **Included Loggers:** This field is blank when you are changing the log level for all classes or it displays the currently configured loggers for an individual class; it is not editable.
- **Persist settings:** If you want the log level settings to persist when you reboot the server, select this check box. Not selecting this check box means that the log level settings revert to their defaults when you reboot the server.

3. Click **Set** to commit your changes.

To add a Custom Logger

1. On the **Log Settings** page, expand **Custom Logger**. The **Custom Logger** table appears. If you haven't added any custom loggers, the table is initially empty.

Support &gt; Log Settings

## Log Settings

### ▶ Log Size

### ▶ Log level

### ▼ Custom Logger

 Add |  Set Level |  Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Class	Logger	Log level	▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	Custom	All	Warning	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Custom	xms.oca.dao.hibernate	Trace	

Showing 1 - 2 of 2 items

2. Click **Add**. The **Add custom logger** dialog box appears.

### Add custom logger

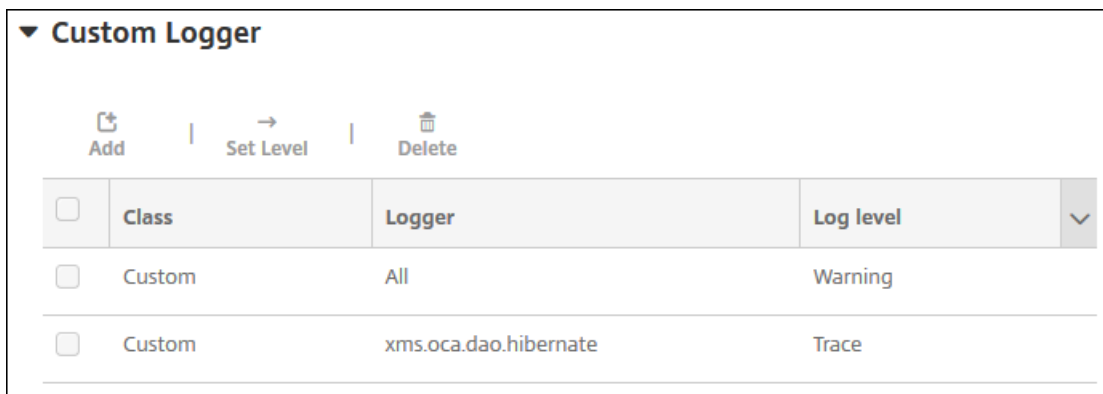
Custom

Fatal

3. Configure these settings:

- **Class Name:** This field displays **Custom**; it is not editable.
- **Log level:** In the list, click a log level. The supported log levels include:
  - Fatal
  - Error
  - Warning
  - Info
  - Debug
  - Trace
  - Off
- **Included Loggers:** Type the specific loggers you want to include in the custom logger or leave the field blank to include all loggers.

4. Click **Add**. The custom logger is added to the **Custom Logger** table.



<input type="checkbox"/>	Class	Logger	Log level	▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	Custom	All	Warning	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Custom	xms.oca.dao.hibernate	Trace	

To delete a Custom Logger

1. On the **Log Settings** page, expand **Custom Logger**.
2. Select the custom logger you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**. A dialog box appears asking whether you want to delete the custom logger. Click **OK**.

**Important:** You cannot undo this operation.



# XenMobile Analyzer Tool

Apr 10, 2017

XenMobile Analyzer is a cloud-based tool that you can use to diagnose and troubleshoot XenMobile-related issues with installation and other features. The tool checks for device or user enrollment and authentication issues within your XenMobile environment.

Configure the tool to point to your XenMobile Server and provide information, such as server deployment type, mobile platform, authentication type, and user credentials. The tool then connects to the server and scans your environment for configuration issues. If XenMobile Analyzer discovers issues, the tool provides recommendations to correct the issues.

In this article:

- [Accessing and starting the XenMobile Analyzer](#)
- [Performing an environment check](#)
- [Performing a NetScaler check](#)
- [Adding a schedule to environment checks](#)
- [Performing other informative checks](#)

## Key features

- Secure, cloud-based micro-service to troubleshoot all XenMobile related issues.
- Accurate recommendations to resolve XenMobile configuration issues.
- Reduced support calls and accelerated troubleshooting of XenMobile environments.
- Zero-day support for XenMobile Server releases.
- Ability to schedule health checks on a daily or weekly cadence.
- NetScaler configuration checks.
- Secure Web tests for reachability to intranet sites.
- Secure Mail autodiscovery service checks.
- ShareFile single sign-on (SSO) checks.

## Accessing and starting the XenMobile Analyzer

### Prerequisites

Product	Supported Version
XenMobile Server	10.3.0 and later
NetScaler Gateway	10.5 and later
Client Enrollment Simulation	iOS and Android

You use your My Citrix credentials to access the tool from <https://xenmobiletools.citrix.com>. On the XenMobile Management Tools page that opens, to start XenMobile Analyzer, click **Analyze and Troubleshoot my XenMobile Environment**.

All Management Tools

## What do you want to do?

XenMobile Management Tools can help you troubleshoot your XenMobile Server set up and enable key features in your XenMobile deployment.

Analyze and  
Troubleshoot my  
XenMobile  
environment

XenMobile Analyzer



Follow steps to identify and triage potential issues with your deployment.

Request Auto  
Discovery

Auto Discovery Service



Request and Configure Auto Discovery for your domain's XenMobile Server.

Request push  
notification  
certificate  
signature

Create APNs Certificate



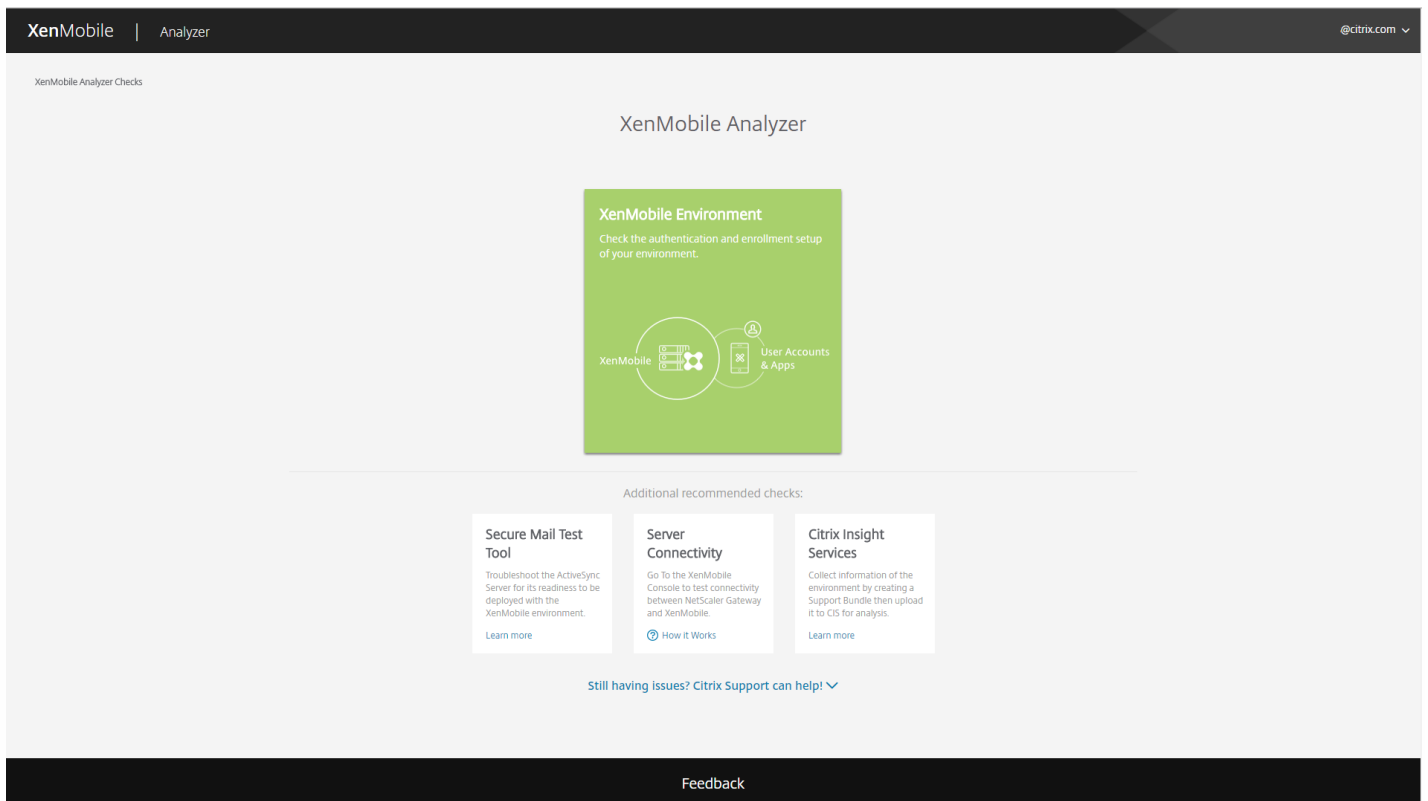
Submit a request to Citrix to sign an APNs certificate, which you then submit to Apple.

Enable APNs-based

XenMobile Analyzer contains five options designed to lead you through the triage process and reduce the number of support tickets. The options can lower costs for everyone.

The options are as follows:

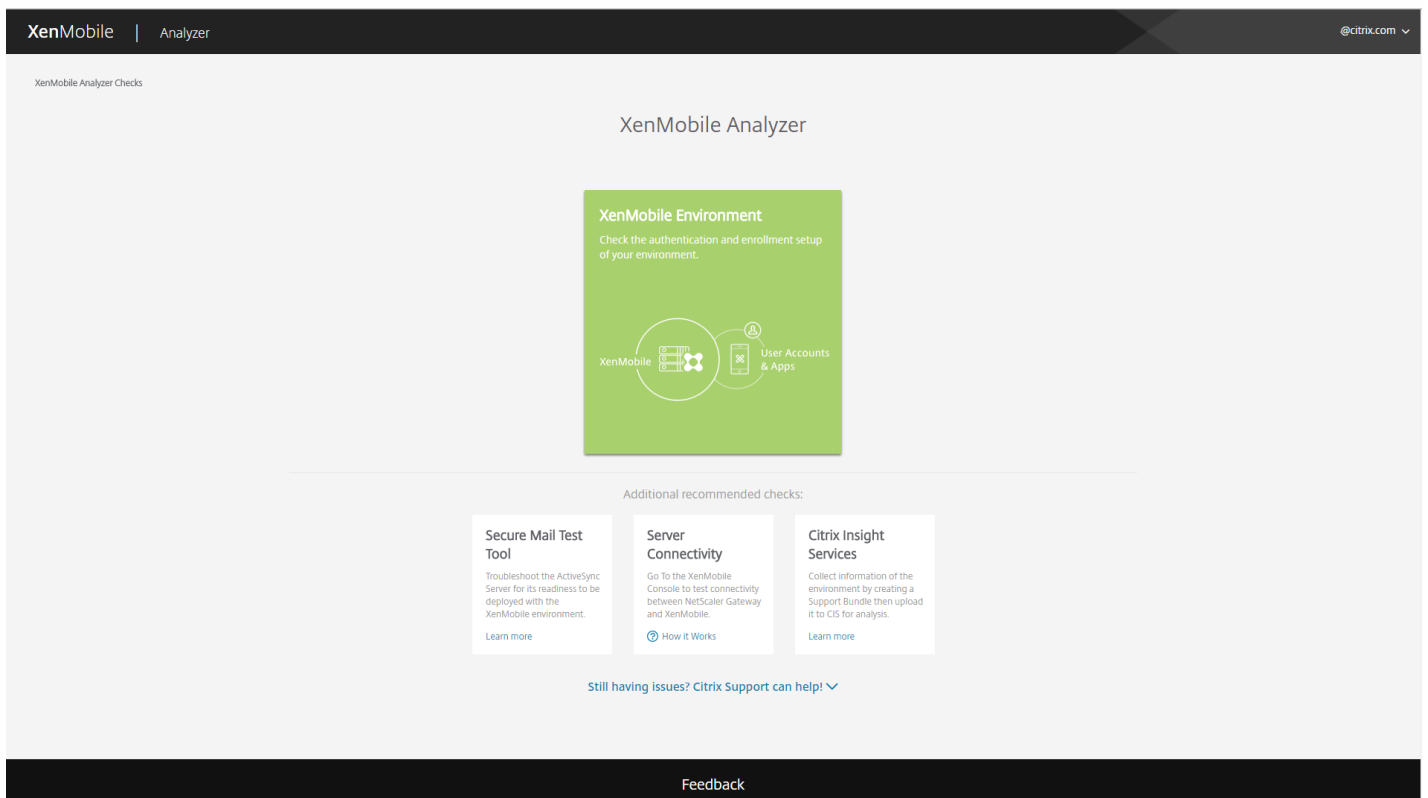
- **Environment Check** - This step guides you in setting up tests to check your set up for issues. The step also provides recommendations and solutions on device, user enrollment, and authentication issues.
- **NetScaler Check** - This step guides you in checking your NetScaler configurations for XenMobile deployment readiness.
- **Advanced Diagnostics** - This step provides information on using Citrix Insight Services to find further issues that the environment check may have missed.
- **Secure Mail Readiness** - This step directs you to download the XenMobile Exchange ActiveSync Test application. This tool helps troubleshoot the ActiveSync servers for their readiness to be deployed with a XenMobile environment.
- **Server Connectivity Checks** - This step instructs you to test the connectivity of your servers.
- **Contact Citrix support** - If you are still having issues, this step links you to the site where you can create a Citrix support case.



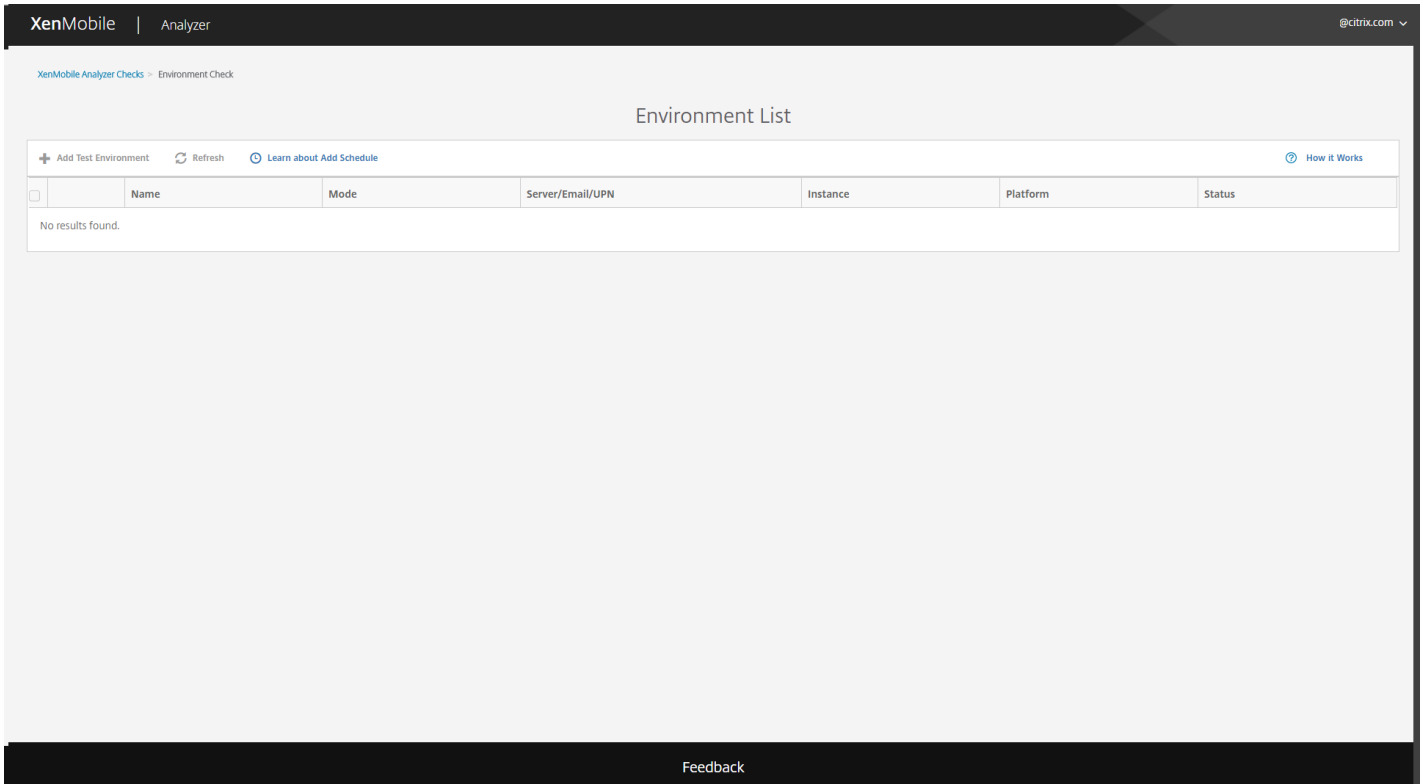
The following sections describe each option in more detail.

## Performing an environment check

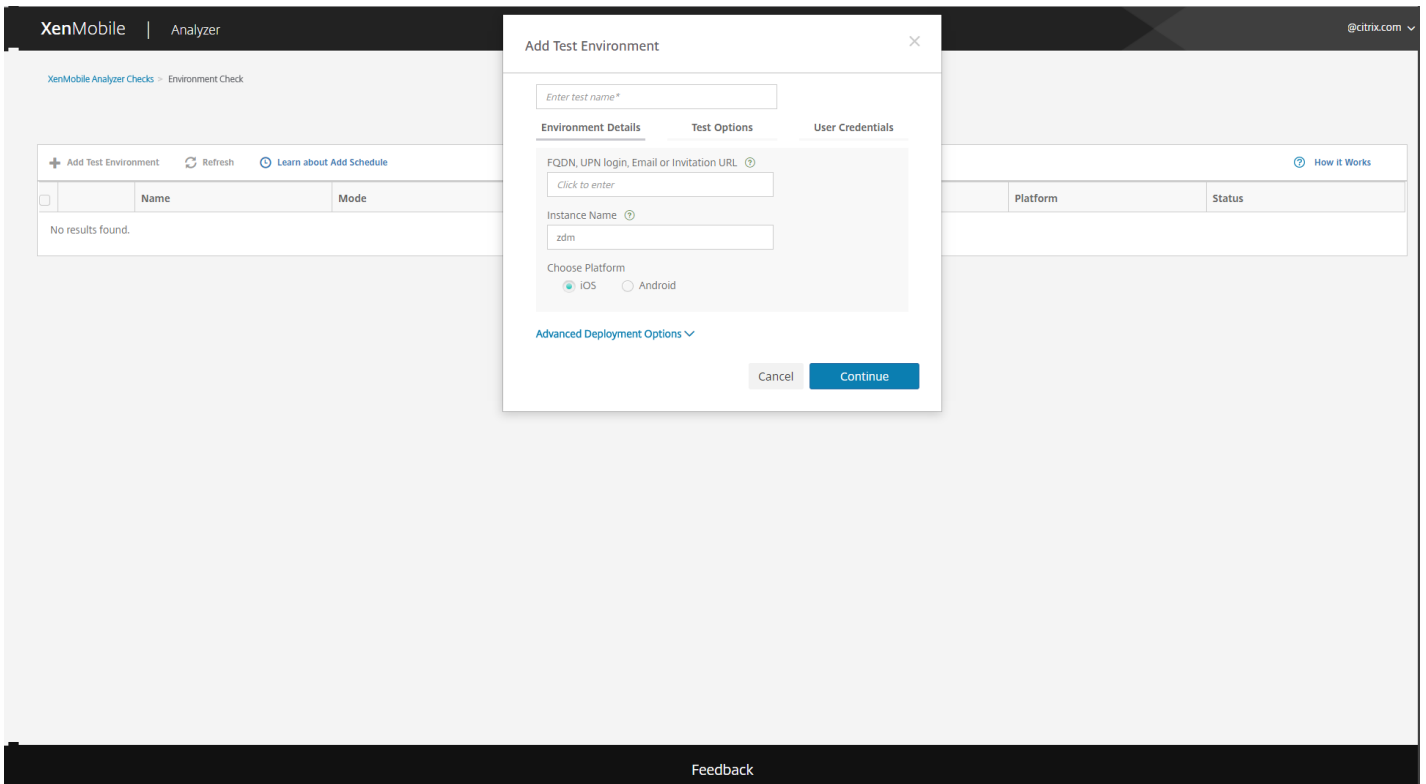
1. Log on to XenMobile Analyzer and then click **Environment Checks**.



## 2. Click **Add Test Environment**.

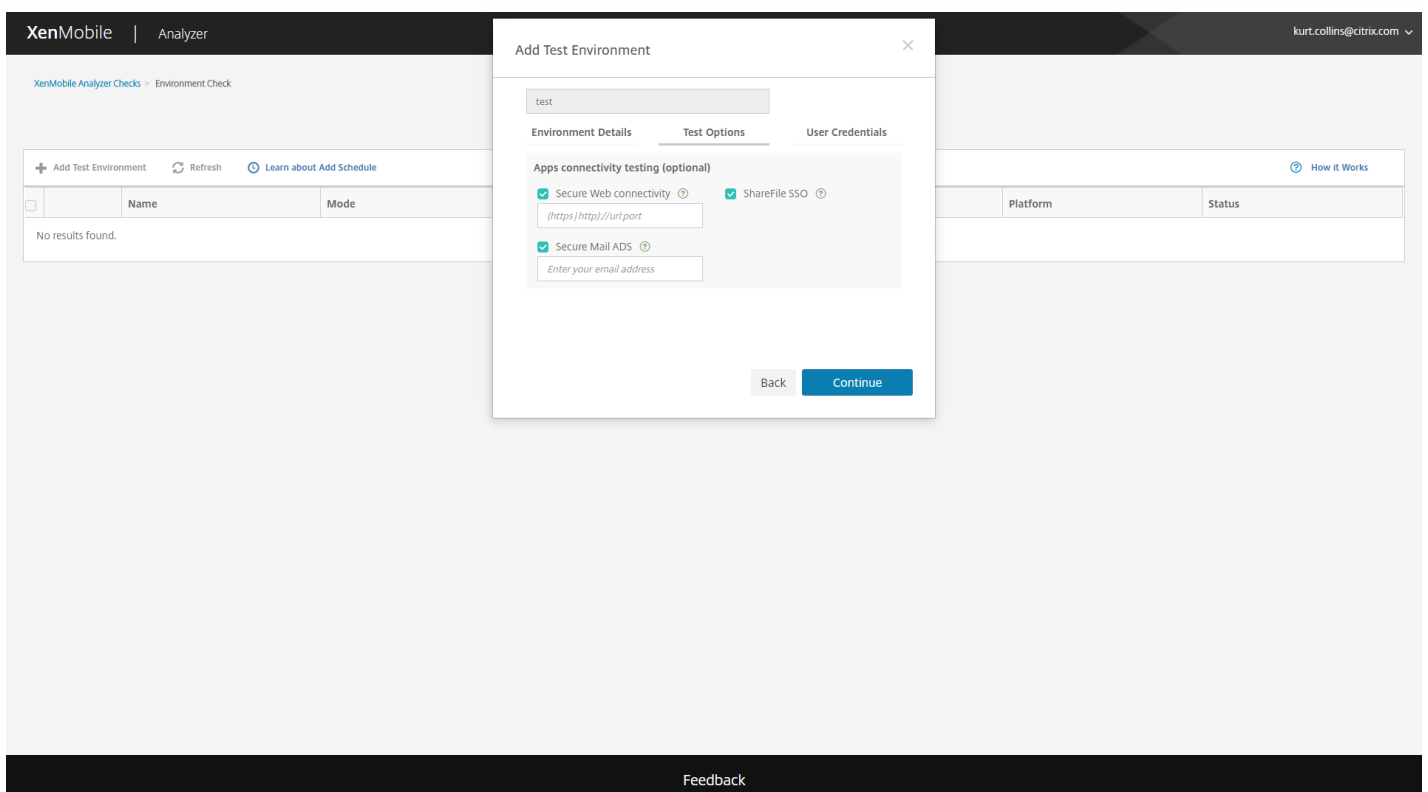


## 3. In the new **Add Test Environment** dialog box, do the following:



- a. Provide a unique name for the test that will help identify the test in the future.
- b. In the **FQDN, UPN login, Email or URL Invitation** field, enter the information that is used to access the server.
- c. In **XMS Instance**, if you use a custom instance, you can provide that value.
- d. In **Choose Platform**, select either **iOS** or **Android** as the platform for testing.
- e. If you expand **Advanced Deployment Options**, in the **Deployment Mode** list, you can select your XenMobile deployment mode. Available options are **Enterprise (MDM + MAM)**, **App Management (MAM)**, or **Device Management (MDM)**.

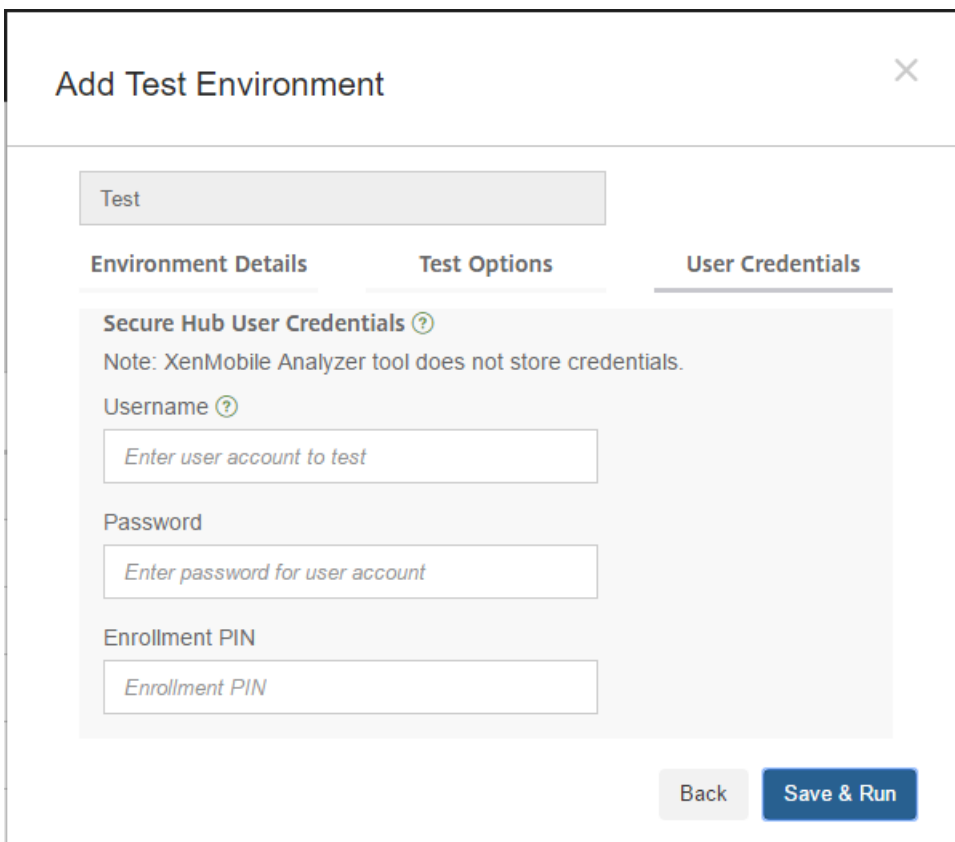
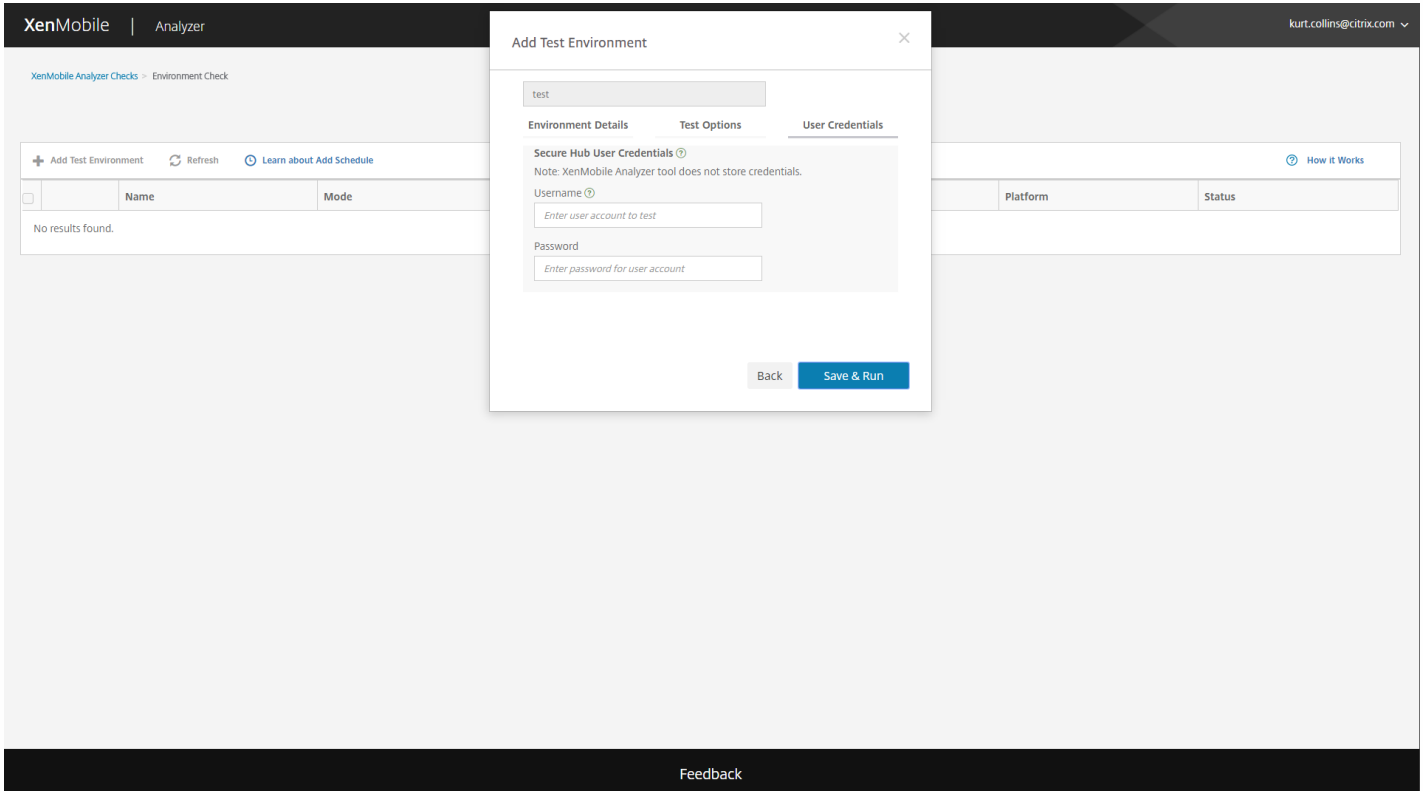
4. Click **Continue**.



5. You can choose application level tests to run. You can choose one or more of the following tests.

- a. **Secure Web Connectivity**. Provide an intranet URL. The tool tests for the reachability of the URL. This test detects if there are any connectivity issues that may potentially occur in the Secure Web app while trying to reach intranet URLs.
- b. **Secure Mail ADS**. Provide a user email ID. This ID is used to test the autodiscovery of the Microsoft Exchange Server in your XenMobile environment. It detects if there are any issues related to Secure Mail Auto Discovery.
- c. **ShareFile SSO**. If selected, XenMobile Analyzer tests if the ShareFile DNS resolution happens successfully and if ShareFile single sign-on (SSO) is compatible with the provided user credentials.

6. Click **Continue**.

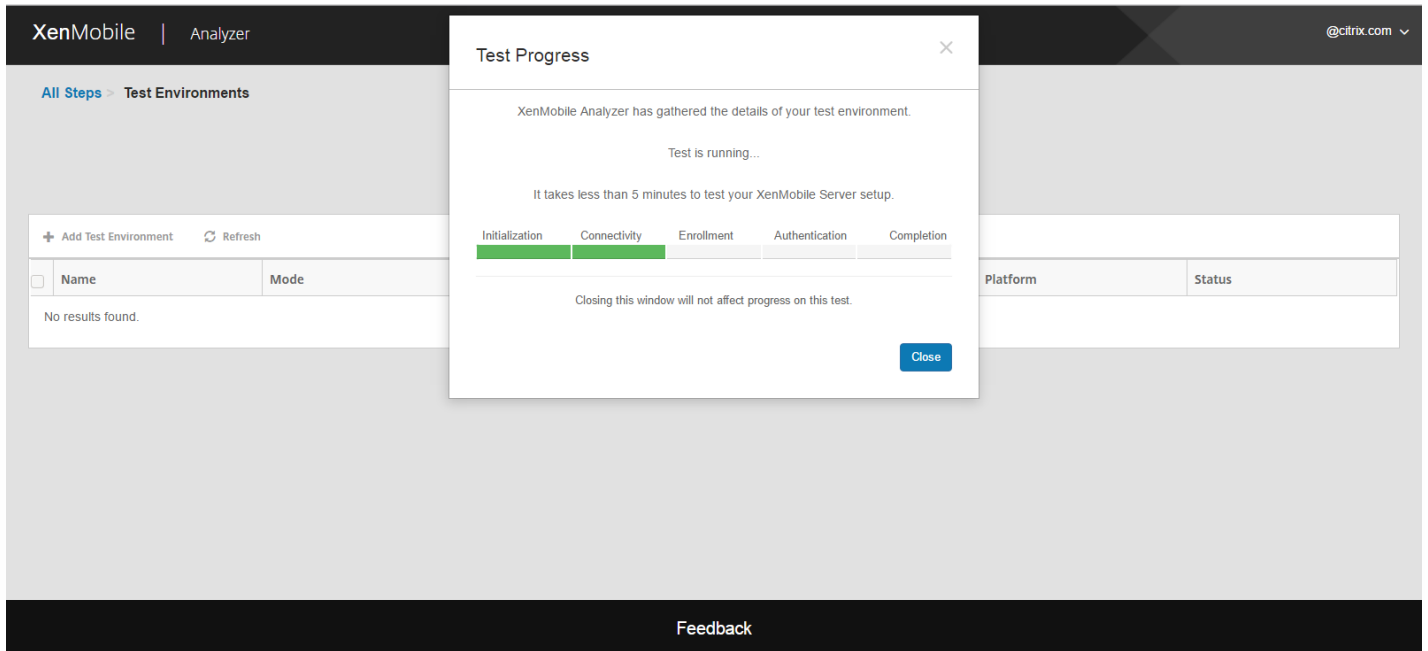


7. Depending on your server setup, you may see different fields available to enter User Credentials. The possible fields are **Username** alone, **Username** and **Password**, or **Username**, **Password**, and **Enrollment PIN**.

8. After entering this information, click **Save & Run** to start the tests.

A progress notification appears. You can leave the progress dialog box open or close the dialog box and the tests continue to run.

Tests that have passed appear in green. Tests that fail appear as red.



8. After closing the progress dialog box, you can return to the **Environments List** page and click the **View Report** icon to see test results.

The **Results** page displays Test Details, Recommendations, and Results.

XenMobile | Analyzer kurt.collins@citrix.com

XenMobile Analyzer Checks - Environment Check - Report

This test is not yet on a schedule. [Add Schedule](#) to run test in a selected frequency. [Learn more.](#)

## Check Report

Check Complete: No Issues Found

### Check Summary

Test Environment: test  
 Start Time: 2017-Mar-28 12:44 PM UTC  
 Deployment Mode: Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition  
 Server FQDN: kurt.collins@citrix.com  
 Platform: IOS

[Add Schedule](#) [Run Again](#)

**Do you need assistance?**

[Citrix Support is here to help!](#)

For additional information, please refer to the [Support Knowledge Center](#)  
 Download and share this report with your Citrix Support contact.

[Download Report](#)

Next, continue troubleshooting the XenMobile Environment using additional recommended checks:  
 Troubleshoot the ActiveSync server using Secure Mail Test Tool.  
 Test connectivity of XenMobile Server and NetScaler Gateway.  
 Analyze logs and scan for known issues using Citrix Insight Services.

[Go to XenMobile Analyzer Checks](#)

---

**Detailed Results** View all details of your test

	Category	Checks	Results
✓	Initialization and Connectivity	XenMobile Server FQDN DNS Resolution	Pass
		XenMobile Server FQDN Connectivity	Pass
		XenMobile Server Certificate Validation	Pass
		XenMobile Server instance name validation	Pass
✓	Enrollment	Enrollment Authentication	Pass
		XenMobile Enrollment	Pass
✓	Authentication	Is NetScaler Gateway configured?	Yes
		NetScaler Gateway Cert Auth Enabled?	No
		NetScaler Gateway DNS Resolution	Pass
		NetScaler Gateway Connectivity	Pass

[Feedback](#)

XenMobile | Analyzer @citrix.com

✓	Authentication	NetScaler Gateway DNS Resolution	Pass
		NetScaler Gateway Connectivity	Pass
		NetScaler Gateway Certificate Validation	Pass
		NetScaler Gateway Login	Pass
		XenMobile Server connectivity through NetScaler Gateway	Pass
		XenMobile Server Authentication	Pass
✓	App Enumeration	Store Connectivity	Pass
		Device Registration	Pass
		Store App Listing	Pass
		Secure Mail - Deprecated - Use A...	Pass
		Secure Notes - Deprecated - Use ...	Pass
		Podio	Pass
		ShareConnect - Deprecated - Use...	Pass
	Notepad++	Pass	
	ScanDirect - Public Store	Pass	
	Secure Forms - Public Store	Pass	
	Secure Notes - Public Store	Pass	
	Secure Tasks - Public Store	Pass	
	ShareConnect - Public Store	Pass	
	ShareFile - Public Store	Pass	
	Secure Web - Deprecated - Use A...	Pass	
⚠	Secure Web Connectivity	NetScaler Gateway DNS Resolution	Not Tested
		NetScaler Gateway server connectivity	Not Tested
✓	ShareFile	ShareFile Subdomain Discovery	Pass
		ShareFile SAML SSO	Pass
⚠	Secure Mail ADS	Secure Mail Auto Discovery	Not Tested
✓	Logout	XenMobile Server Logout	Pass
		NetScaler Gateway Logout	Pass

[Feedback](#)

If any recommendations have Citrix Knowledge Base articles associated with them, the articles are listed on this page.

9. Click the **Results** tab to display the individual Category and Tests that the tool performed, with their results.



- To download the report, click **Download Report**.
- To return to the list of test environments, click **Environment Check**.
- To rerun the same test, click **Run Again**.
- If you want to rerun another test, go back to **Test Environments**, select the test, and click **Start Test**.
- To select another XenMobile Analyzer option, click **Go To XenMobile Analyzer Checks**.

XenMobile | Analyzer @citrix.com

All Steps > Test Environments

### Test Environment List

Test your server setup before deploying

+ Add Test Environment Refresh Delete Start Test View Report

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Mode	Server/Email/UPN	Instance	Platform	Status
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	RGTE	Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition	rgte.xm.citrix.com	zdm	iOS	Completed: Issues Found

Showing 1 - 1 of 1 items Items per page: 10

Feedback

10. From the Test Environments page, you can copy and edit tests. To do so, select a test, and then click **Duplicate and Edit**. A copy of the selected test is created and the Add Test Environment dialog opens, allowing you to modify the new test.

XenMobile | Analyzer testuser

All Steps > Test Environments

### Test Environment List

Test your server setup before deploying

+ Add Test Environment Refresh

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Mode	Server/Email/UPN	Instance	Platform	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	a_xms97_mam(Duplicate2)	Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	iOS	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	a_xms97_mam(Duplicate)	Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition				Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	a_xms97_mam	Citrix XenMobile App Edition				Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	xms97_mam	Citrix XenMobile App Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	iOS	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	CXM-21425	Citrix XenMobile MDM Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	Android	Completed: No Issues Found

Start Test View Report Duplicate and Edit Delete

XenMobile | Analyzer testuser ▾

All Steps > Test Environments

### Test Environment List

Test your server setup before deploying

+ Add Test Environment
↻ Refresh
▶ Start Test
👁 View Report
📄 Duplicate and Edit
🗑 Delete

	Name	Mode	Server/Email/UPN	Instance	Platform	Status
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	a_xms97_mam(Duplicate2)	Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	iOS	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	a_xms97_mam(Duplicate)	Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	Android	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	a_xms97_mam	Citrix XenMobile App Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	Android	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	xms97_mam	Citrix XenMobile App Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	iOS	Completed: No Issues Found

XenMobile | Analyzer testuser ▾

All Steps > Test Environments

+ Add Test Environment
↻ Refresh

	Name	Mode	Server/Email/UPN	Instance	Platform	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	a_xms97_mam(Duplicate2)	Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	iOS	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	a_xms97_mam(Duplicate)	Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	Android	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	a_xms97_mam	Citrix XenMobile App Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	Android	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	xms97_mam	Citrix XenMobile App Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	iOS	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	CXM-21425	Citrix XenMobile MDM Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	Android	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	xms195	Citrix XenMobile App Edition	xms195.blrclt.com	zdm	iOS	Completed: Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	a_xms97	Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	Android	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	CXM-21364	Citrix XenMobile MDM Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	Android	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	NSG logout	Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition	xms170.blrclt.com	zdm	Android	Completed: Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	A_SB	Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition	rgte.xm.citrix.com	zdm	Android	Completed: No Issues Found

Add Test Environment ✕

Duplicating Test...

XenMobile | Analyzer testuser ▾

All Steps > Test Environments

+ Add Test Environment
↻ Refresh

	Name	Mode	Server/Email/UPN	Instance	Platform	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	a_xms97_mam(Duplicate2)	Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	iOS	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	a_xms97_mam(Duplicate)	Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	Android	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	a_xms97_mam	Citrix XenMobile App Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	Android	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	xms97_mam	Citrix XenMobile App Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	iOS	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	CXM-21425	Citrix XenMobile MDM Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	Android	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	xms195	Citrix XenMobile App Edition	xms195.blrclt.com	zdm	iOS	Completed: Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	a_xms97	Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	Android	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	CXM-21364	Citrix XenMobile MDM Edition	xms97.blrclt.com	zdm	Android	Completed: No Issues Found
<input type="checkbox"/>	NSG logout	Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition	xms170.blrclt.com	zdm	Android	Completed: Issues Found

Add Test Environment ✕

Environment Details
Test Options
User Credentials

FQDN, UPN login, Email or Invitation URL ⓘ

Instance Name ⓘ

Choose Platform

iOS
  Android

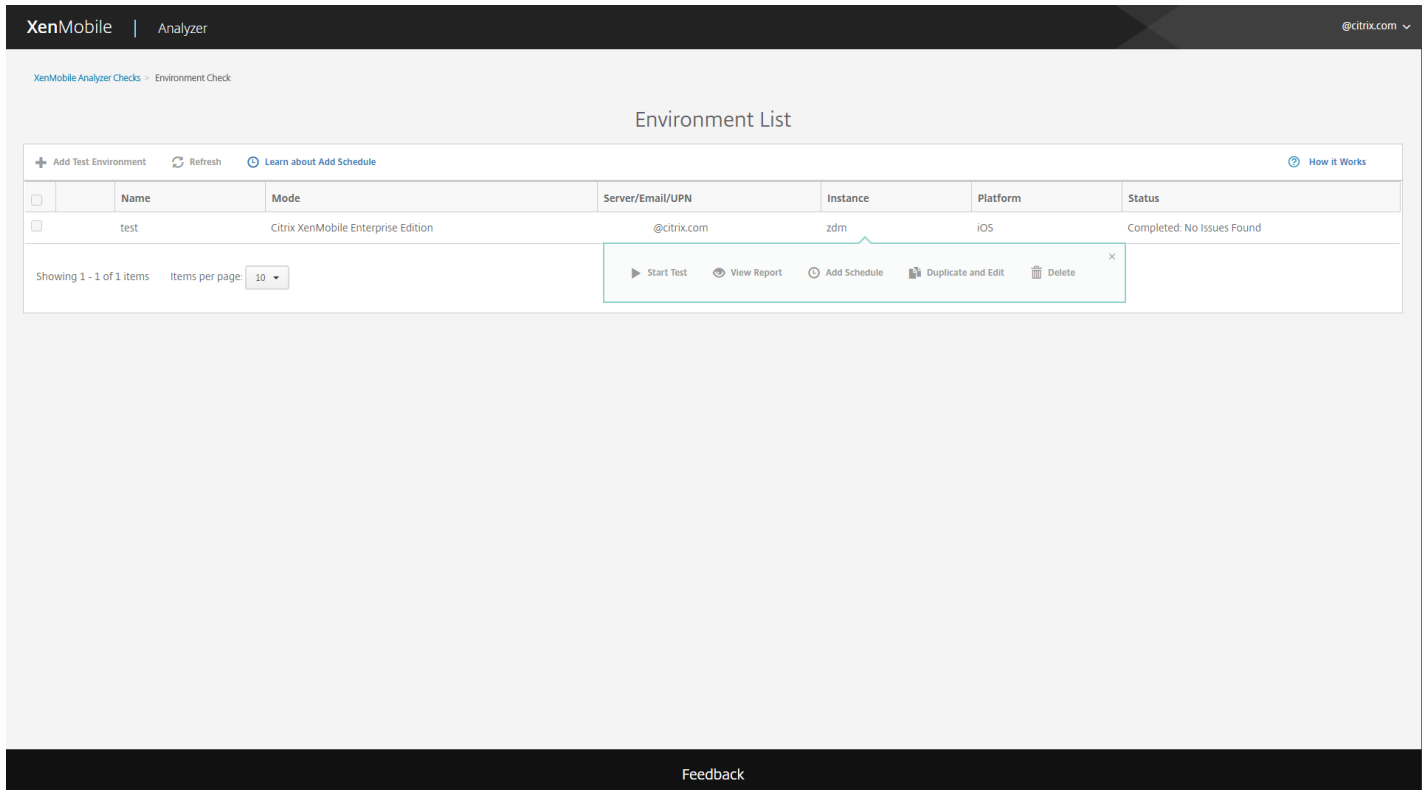
Advanced Deployment Options ▾

Cancel
Continue

## Adding a schedule to environment checks

You can configure tests to run on an automatic schedule with results sent to a list of users you configure.

1. On the **Environment List** page, select the environment for which you want to set up a schedule and click **Add Schedule**.

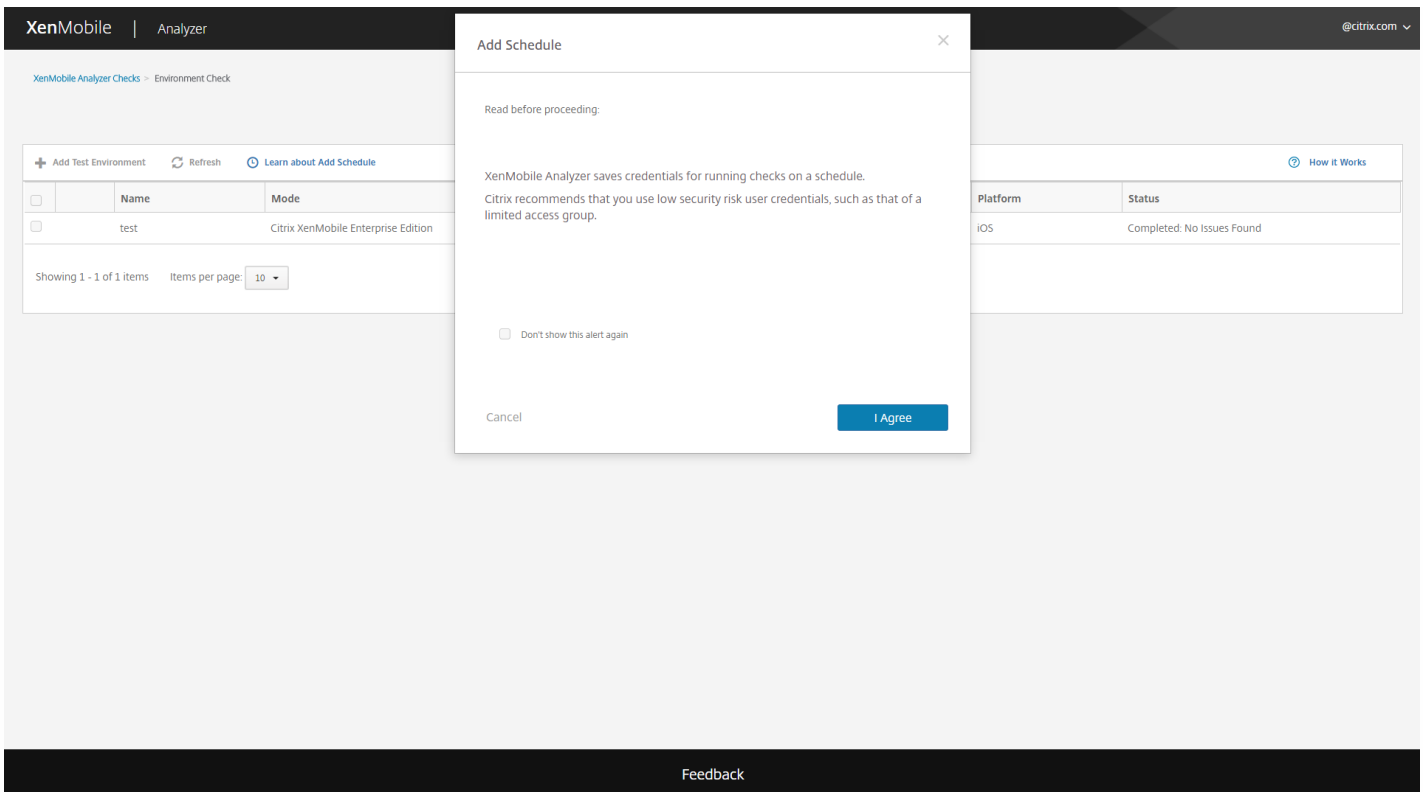


The screenshot shows the XenMobile Analyzer interface. At the top, there's a header with 'XenMobile | Analyzer' and a user profile '@citrix.com'. Below the header, the page title is 'Environment List'. There are navigation links: '+ Add Test Environment', 'Refresh', and 'Learn about Add Schedule'. A table lists environment details:

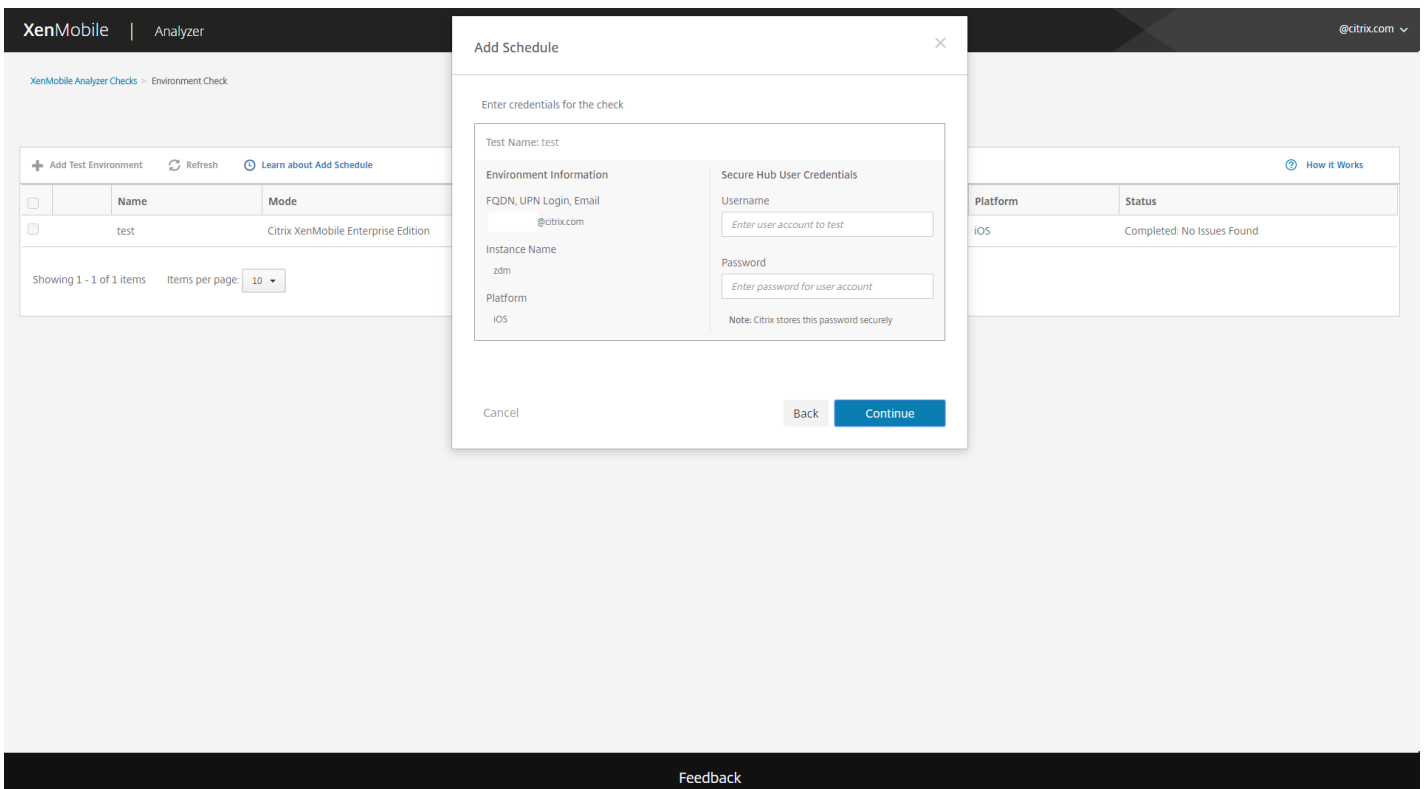
Name	Mode	Server/Email/UPN	Instance	Platform	Status
test	Citrix XenMobile Enterprise Edition	@citrix.com	zdm	iOS	Completed: No Issues Found

Below the table, it says 'Showing 1 - 1 of 1 items' and 'Items per page: 10'. A context menu is open over the 'zdm' instance, showing options: 'Start Test', 'View Report', 'Add Schedule', 'Duplicate and Edit', and 'Delete'. A 'Feedback' link is at the bottom of the page.

2. The **Add Schedule** window displays a message warning you that XenMobile Analyzer saves credentials for running tests on a schedule. Citrix recommends that you use an account with limited access for running scheduled tests. Click **Agree** to continue.

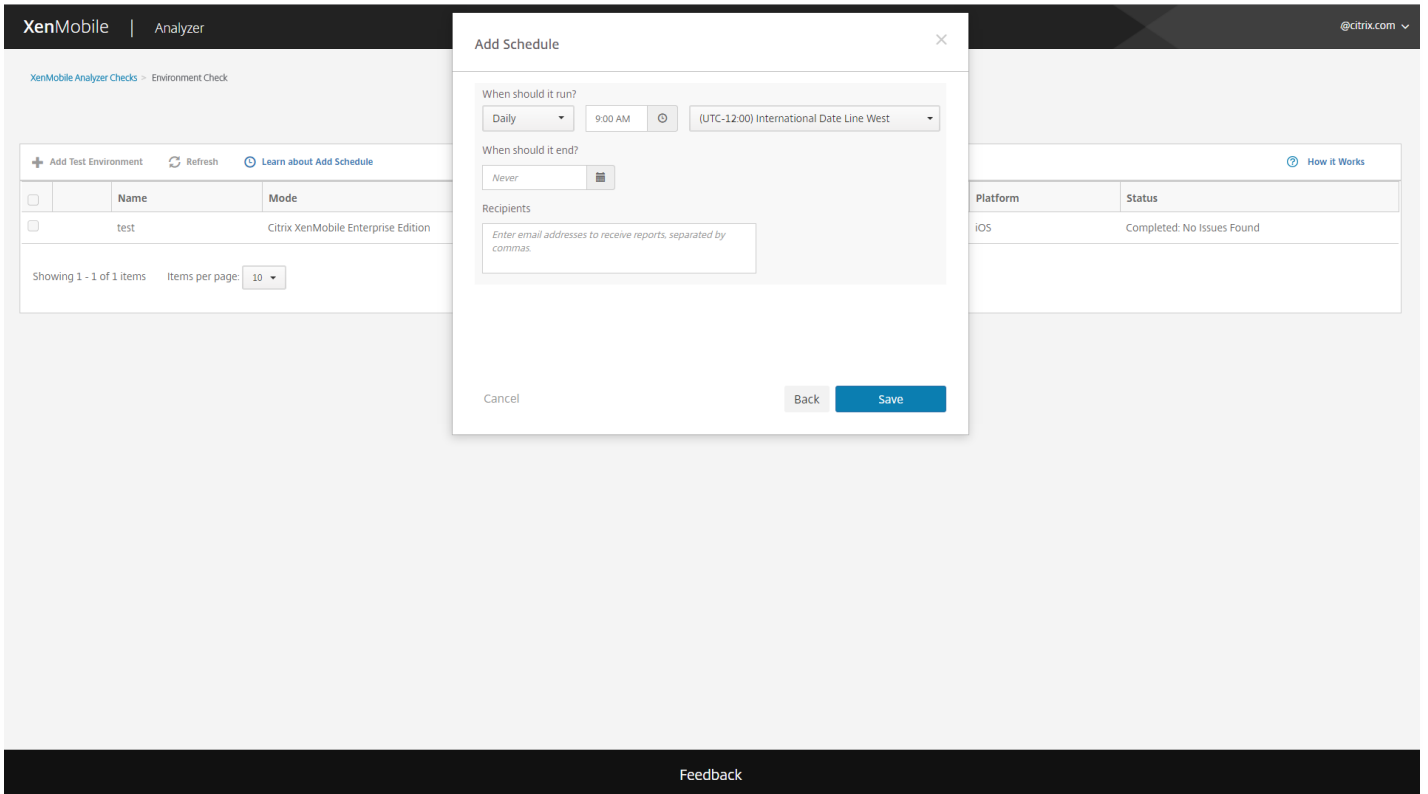


### 3. Enter a **Username** and **Password** for running the test.

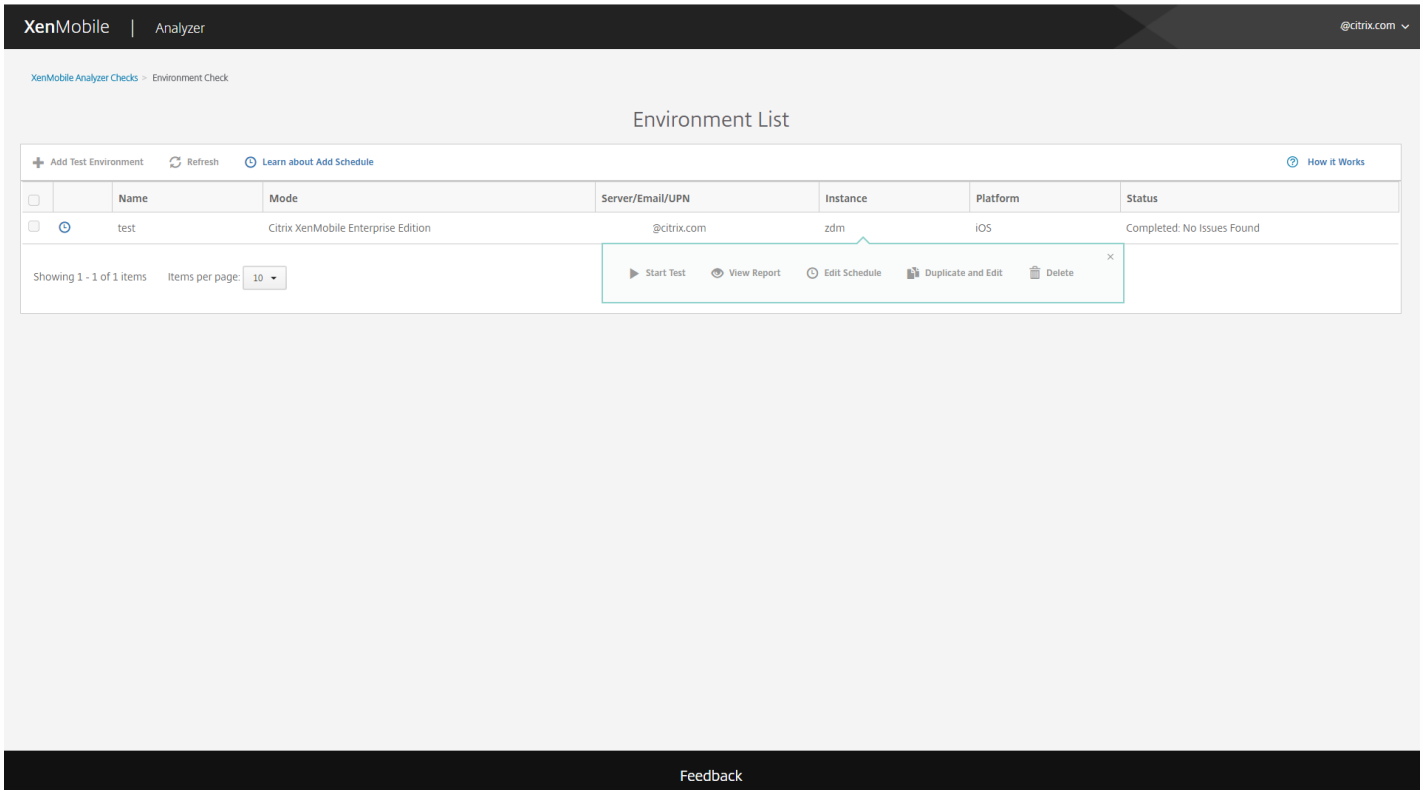


### 4. Configure a schedule for the test to run. You can select **Daily** or **Weekly** from the drop-down. Select a time of day for the test to run and a time zone. Use the date picker to select a date for the scheduled test to stop running or

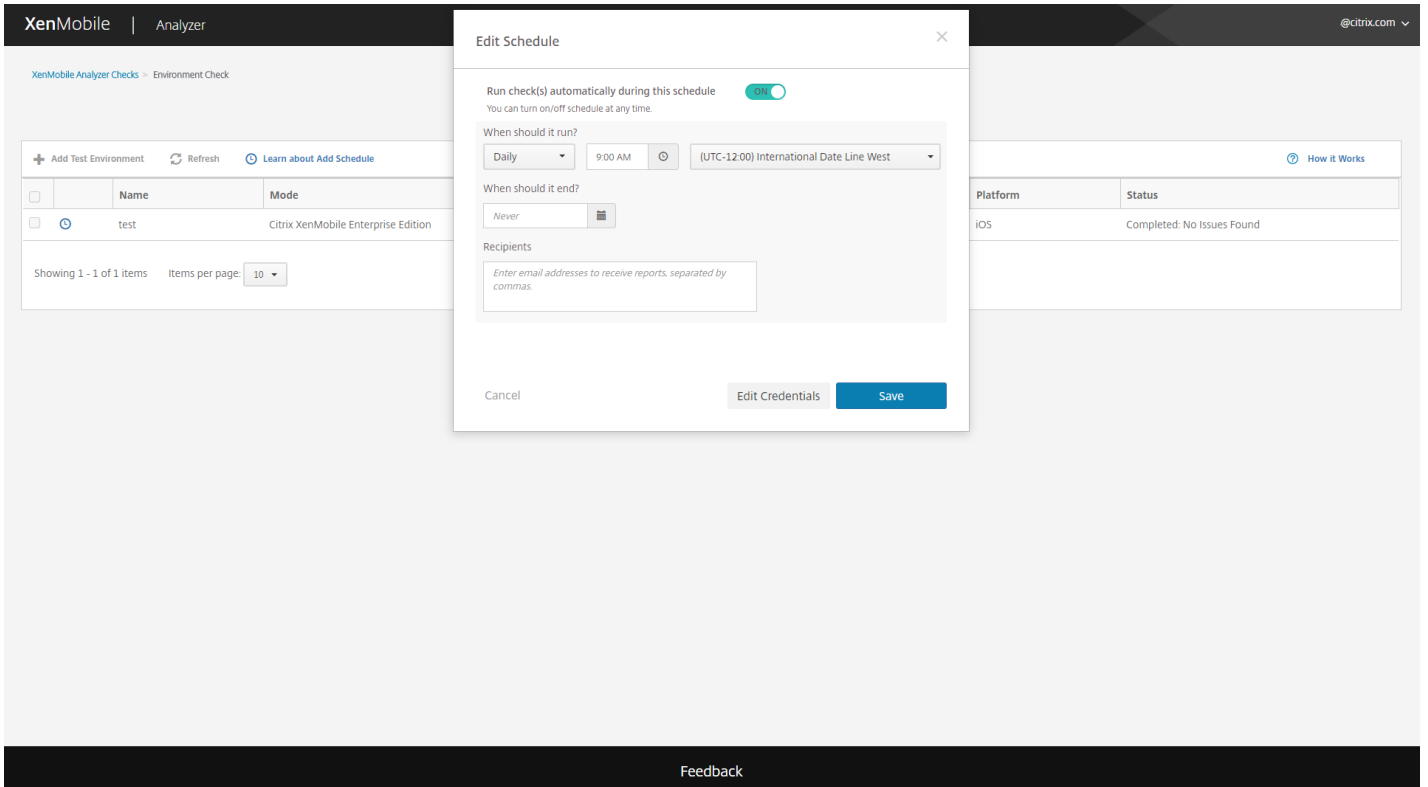
leave it blank for the test to run indefinitely. Enter a list of email addresses to receive reports, separated by commas. Click **Save**.



5. A clock symbol to the left of your test indicates that a schedule is configured. If you select your test, you can click **Edit Schedule** to change when the test runs.

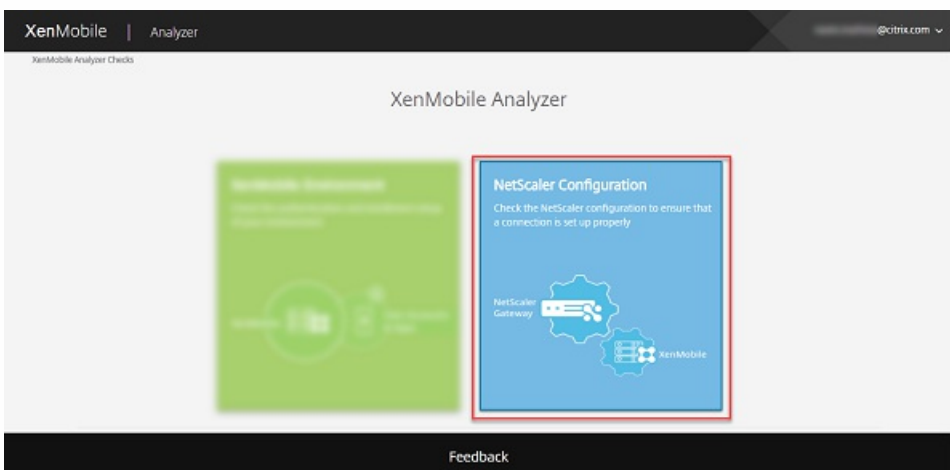


6. In this window, you can change when the test runs. You can also disable it, by clicking the switch at the top. Click **Save** when you're done.

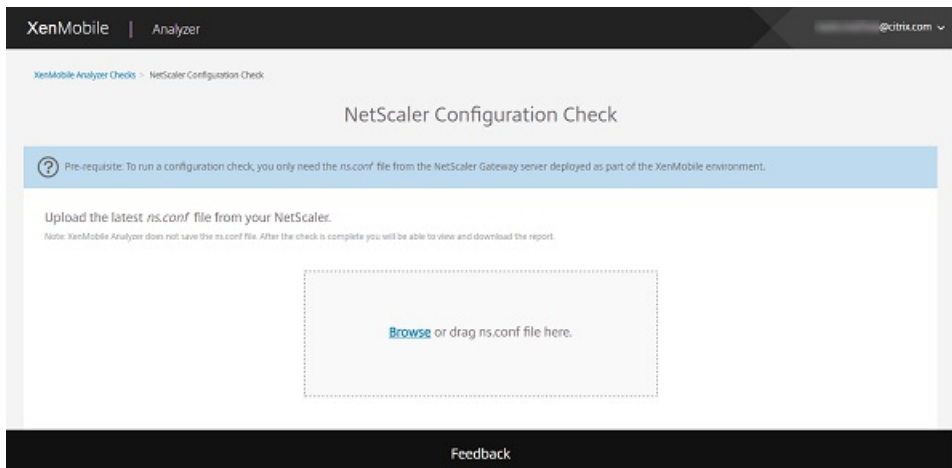


## Performing a NetScaler check

1. Log on to XenMobile Analyzer and then click **NetScaler Configuration**.



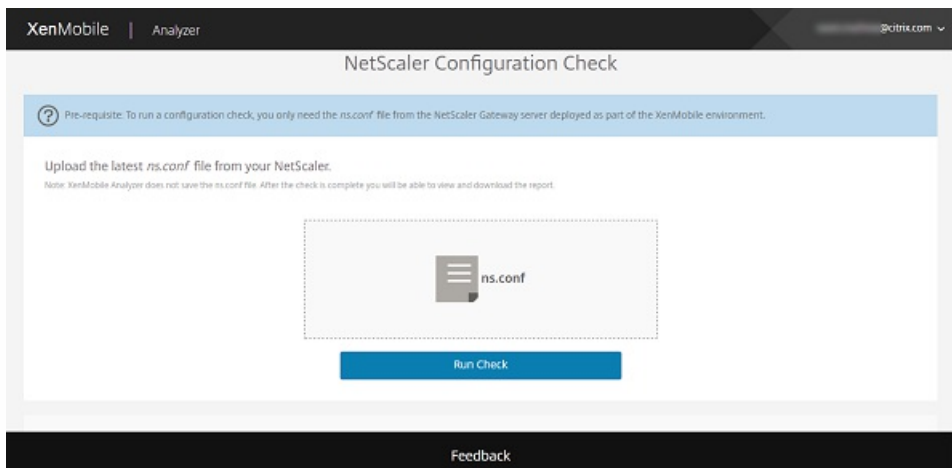
2. Upload the latest ns.conf file from your instance of NetScaler. You can either drag the file into the upload box or click **Browse** to search and add the ns.conf file. For more information on how you can download the latest ns.conf file, see the [Support Knowledge Center](#).



## Note

XenMobile Analyzer does not save the ns.conf file. After the check is complete, you can view and download the report.

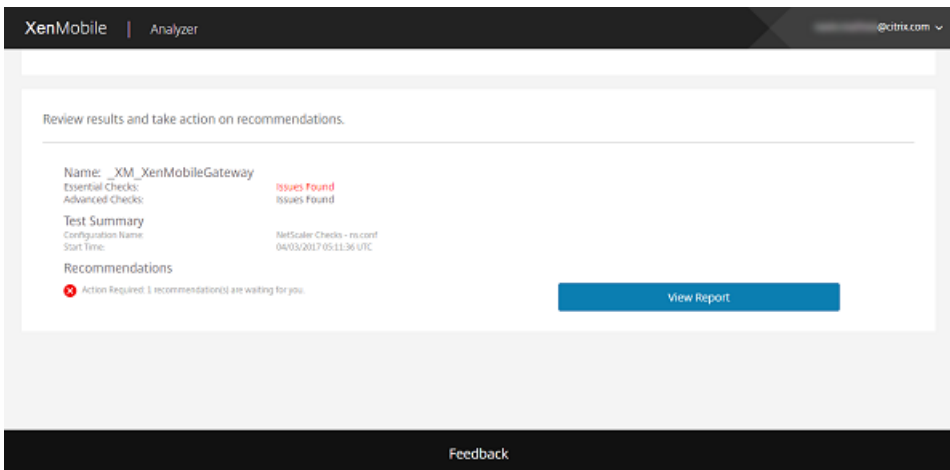
### 3. Click **Run Check**.



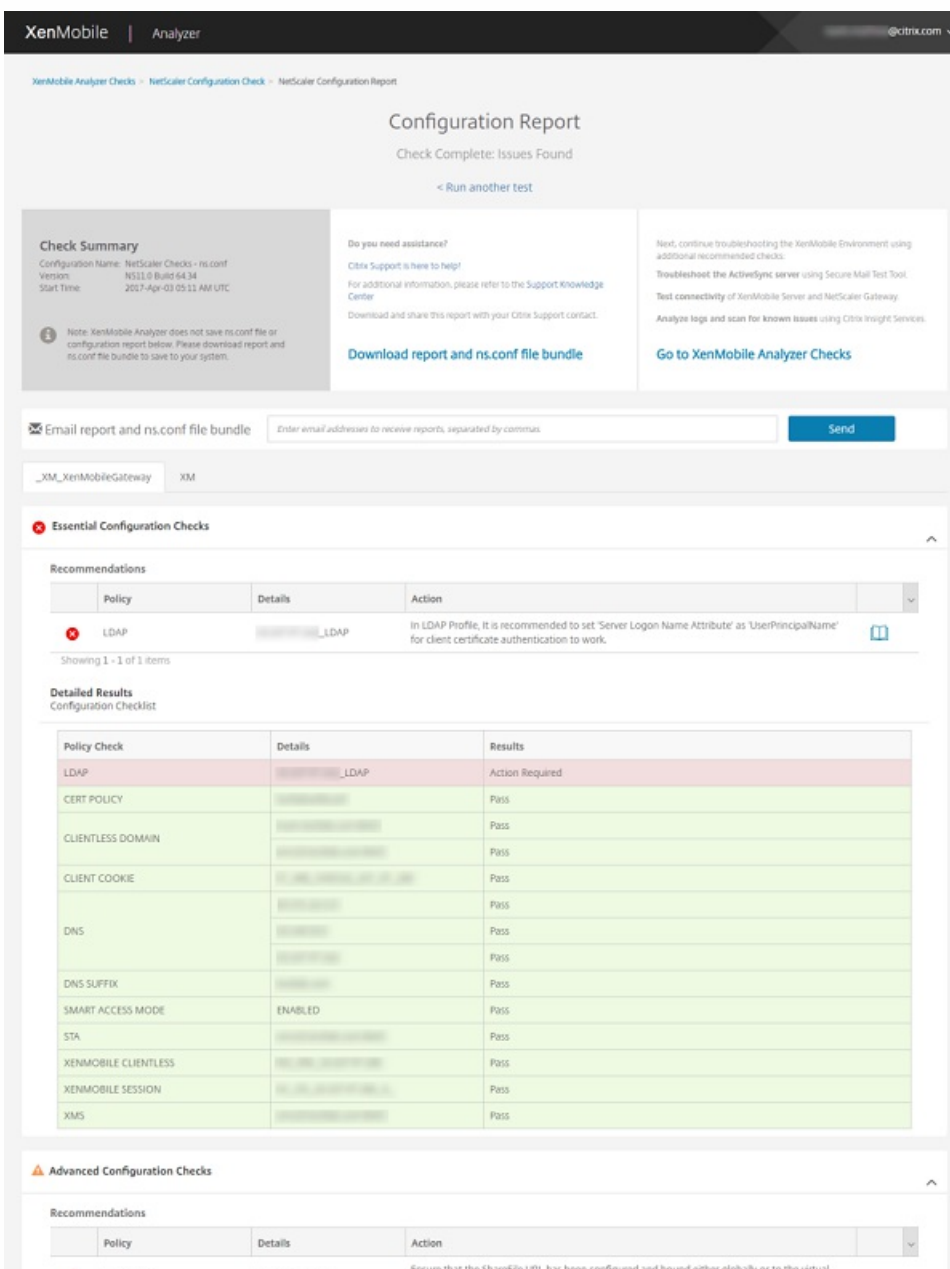
XenMobile Analyzer runs two types of configuration checks.

- Essential Checks looks for components that are critical for a successful XenMobile deployment.
- Advanced Checks looks for components that are not critical, but are complementary to XenMobile deployments.

### 4. To view recommendations on Essential and Advanced Checks for NetScaler, click **View Report**.



The **Configuration Report** page appears.





Policy Check	Details	Results
SHAREFILE	Not Configured	Action Recommended
SHAREFILE AUTH	Not Configured	Action Recommended
SHAREFILE STORAGE ZONE LB	Not Configured	Action Recommended
SPLIT TUNNEL	Not Configured	Action Recommended
XMC SERVER	Not Configured	Action Recommended
MAM LB	IP: 10.10.10.10, 10.10.10.10	Pass
MDM LB	IP: 10.10.10.10, 10.10.10.10	Pass
	IP: 10.10.10.10, 10.10.10.10	Pass

## Note

XenMobile Analyzer supports gateway servers configured through the NetScaler wizard. NetScaler Gateway instances always have the following title convention: ‘\_XM\_\*name-provided-by-user-when-deploying’.

The overall status is a Success when the essential configuration checks have passed.

When an Essential Configuration check fails, the Recommendations table lists the **Policy, Details, and Results (Action Required)**.

When an Advanced Configuration check fails, the Recommendations table lists the **Policy, Details, and Results (Action Recommended)**.



On the **Configuration Report** page, the following options are available.

- To view the details, click **Essential Configuration Checks/Advanced Configuration Checks** (or the expand icon).
- To run another NetScaler configuration check, click **Run another test**.
- To view other troubleshooting and analyzing tools, click **Go to XenMobile Analyzer Checks**.
- To download a report of the results, click **Download report and ns.conf file bundle** or in **Email report and**

**ns.conf bundle**, type your email address. Then, click **Send**.

## Performing other informative checks

You interact with the Environment Check step of XenMobile Analyzer directly to perform tests, whereas the other options are informative. Each of these options provides information concerning other support tools you can use to ensure that your XenMobile environment is set up correctly.

- **Advanced Diagnostics:** Instructs you to collect information on your environment and then upload the information to Citrix Insight Services. The tool analyzes your data and provides a personalized report with recommended resolutions.
- **Secure Mail Readiness:** Directs you to download and run the XenMobile Exchange ActiveSync Test application. The application troubleshoots ActiveSync servers for their readiness to be deployed with XenMobile environments. After the application runs, you can view reports or share them with others.
- **Server Connectivity Checks:** Provides you with instructions for checking your connections to XenMobile, Authentication, and ShareFile servers.
- **Contact Citrix support:** If all else fails, you can create a support ticket with Citrix support.

## Known Issues

The following issues are known concerning the XenMobile Analyzer:

- If the Platform Restriction Policy is set on XenMobile Server, the number of apps listed might vary based on the client.
- When performing the Secure Web Connectivity checks, entering multiple URLs in the text box is not supported.
- The shared devices authentication feature of Secure Hub is not supported.
- Secure Web tests only check the connectivity to the URLs entered and not the authentication to the corresponding sites.

## Fixed Issues

The following issues with XenMobile Analyzer have been fixed:

- When performing a check using enrollment invitation, the test passes but the enrollment invitation is not redeemed.

# View and analyze log files in XenMobile

Feb 27, 2017

1. In the XenMobile console, click the wrench icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Support** page opens.
2. Under **Log Operations**, click **Logs**. The **Logs** page appears. Individual logs appear in a table.

XenMobile Analyze Manage Configure administrator

Support > Logs

## Logs

Analyze the details of various types of logs.

Download All

<input type="checkbox"/>	Log Name	Log Type	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Debug Log File	Debug	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Admin Audit Log File	Admin Activity	
<input type="checkbox"/>	User Audit Log File	User Activity	

Showing 1 - 3 of 3 items



3. Select the log you want to view:

- Debug Log Files contain information useful for Citrix Support, such as error messages and server-related actions.
- Admin Audit Log Files contain audit information about activity on the XenMobile console.
- User Audit Log Files contain information related to configured users.

4. Use the actions at the top of the table to download all, view, rotate, download a single log, or delete the selected log.

## Logs

Analyze the details of various types of logs.

 Download All | 
  View | 
  Rotate | 
  Download | 
  Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Log Name	Log Type
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Debug Log File	Debug

### Note:






- If you select more than one log file, only **Download All** and **Rotate** are available.
- If you have clustered XenMobile servers, you can only view the logs for the server to which you are connected. To see logs for other servers, use one of the download options.

5. Do one of the following:

- **Download All:** The console downloads all the logs present on the system (including debug, admin audit, user audit, server logs, and so on).
- **View:** Shows the contents of the selected log below the table.
- **Rotate:** Archives the current log file and creates a new file to capture log entries. A dialog box appears when archiving a log file; click Rotate to continue.
- **Download:** The console downloads only the single log file type selected; it also downloads any archived logs for that same type.
- **Delete:** Permanently removes the selected log files.

### Logs

Analyze the details of various types of logs.

 Download All | 
  View | 
  Rotate | 
  Download | 
  Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Log Name	Log Type
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Debug Log File	Debug
<input type="checkbox"/>	Admin Audit Log File	Admin Activity
<input type="checkbox"/>	User Audit Log File	User Activity

Showing 1 - 3 of 3 items

Log contents for Debug Log File

```

2016-11-06T06:28:38.908-0800 | INFO | node.scheduled.executor-8 | com.citrix.feature.FeatureManagerFactory | Enabling local feature management
2016-11-06T06:29:38.926-0800 | INFO | node.scheduled.executor-10 | com.citrix.feature.FeatureManagerFactory | Enabling local feature management
2016-11-06T06:30:38.762-0800 | INFO | node.pooled.executor2 | com.citrix.cg.task.handlers.NonPrvsnTask | Begin method executeNonPrvsnTaskJob: Sun Nov 06 06:45:38 PST 2016
2016-11-06T06:30:38.766-0800 | INFO | node.pooled.executor2 | com.citrix.cg.task.handlers.NonPrvsnTask | The number of non provision tasks Picked 2.
2016-11-06T06:30:38.945-0800 | INFO | node.scheduled.executor-2 | com.citrix.feature.FeatureManagerFactory | Enabling local feature management
2016-11-06T06:31:38.965-0800 | INFO | node.scheduled.executor-9 | com.citrix.feature.FeatureManagerFactory | Enabling local feature management
2016-11-06T06:32:38.985-0800 | INFO | node.scheduled.executor-4 | com.citrix.feature.FeatureManagerFactory | Enabling local feature management
2016-11-06T06:33:39.3-0800 | INFO | node.scheduled.executor-2 | com.citrix.feature.FeatureManagerFactory | Enabling local feature management
2016-11-06T06:34:39.24-0800 | INFO | node.scheduled.executor-8 | com.citrix.feature.FeatureManagerFactory | Enabling local feature management
2016-11-06T06:35:39.42-0800 | INFO | node.scheduled.executor-5 | com.citrix.feature.FeatureManagerFactory | Enabling local feature management
2016-11-06T06:36:39.502-0800 | INFO | pool-7-thread-1 | com.zenoss.zdm.pli.pers.CsrResponderService | Reloading OCSP Service data

```



# REST APIs

Feb 27, 2017

With the XenMobile REST API, you can call services that are exposed through the XenMobile console. You can call REST services by using any REST client. The API does not require you to sign on to the XenMobile console to call the services.

For the complete current set of available APIs, download the [XenMobile REST API Reference PDF](#).

## Permissions required to access the REST API

Access to the REST API requires one of the following permissions:

- Public API access permission set as part of role-based access configuration (for more information on setting role-based access, see [Configuring roles with RBAC](#))
- Super user permission

## To invoke REST API services

You can invoke REST API services by using the REST client or CURL commands. The following examples use the Advanced REST client for Chrome.

### Note

In the following examples, change the host name and port number to match your environment.

#### Login

URL: `https://<host-name>:<port-number>/xenmobile/api/v1/authentication/login`

Request: `{ "login":"administrator", "password":"password" }`

Method type: POST

Content type: application/json

https://localhost:4443/xenmobile/api/v1/publicapi/login

GET
  POST
  PUT
  PATCH
  DELETE
  HEAD
  OPTIONS
  Other

Raw Form Headers

Raw Form Files (0) Payload

Encode payload Decode payload

```

{
  "login": "administrator",
  "password": "password"
}

```

application/json Set "Content-Type" header to overwrite this value.

Clear Send

Status **200 OK** Loading time: 265 ms

Request headers

```

User-Agent: Mozilla/5.0 (Windows NT 6.3; WOW64) AppleWebKit/537.36 (KHTML, like Gecko) Chrome/41.0.2272.101 Safari/537.36
Origin: chrome-extension://hgml0ofddfdnphfgcellkdfbfjeloo
Content-Type: application/json
Accept: */*
Accept-Encoding: gzip, deflate
Accept-Language: en-US,en;q=0.8
Cookie: JSESSIONID=6D607670BBCD51DE59CBFD6D91F9B163

```

Response headers

```

Server: Apache-Coyote/1.1
Content-Type: text/plain
Content-Length: 53
Date: Sun, 22 Mar 2015 22:43:48 GMT

```

Raw Parsed Response

Open output in new window Copy to clipboard Save as file Open in JSON tab

```

{"auth_token": "d4fdecf6-2e5a-4aed-8d60-f9a513b5c358"}

```

Code highlighting thanks to [Code Mirror](#)

# XenMobile Mail Manager 10.x

Feb 27, 2017

XenMobile Mail Manager provides the functionality that extends the capabilities of XenMobile in the following ways:

- Dynamic Access Control for Exchange Active Sync (EAS) devices. EAS devices can be automatically allowed or blocked access to Exchange services.
- Provides the ability for XenMobile to access EAS device partnership information provided by Exchange.
- Provides the ability for XenMobile to perform an EAS Wipe on a mobile device.
- Provides the ability for XenMobile to access information about Blackberry devices, and to perform control operations such as Wipe and ResetPassword.

To download XenMobile Mail Manager, go to the Server Components section under XenMobile 10 Server on [Citrix.com](http://Citrix.com).

## What's New in XenMobile Mail Manager 10.1

### Access Rules

The Rule Analysis window has a check box which, when selected, displays only those rules which are conflicts, overrides, redundancies, or supplements.

Default access (Allow, Block, or Unchanged) and ActiveSync command modes (PowerShell or Simulation) are set separately for each Microsoft Exchange environment configured in your XenMobile deployment.

### Snapshots

You can configure the maximum number of snapshots shown in the snapshot history.

You can configure which errors to ignore during a major snapshot. When a major snapshot returns errors that are not configured as ignorable, the results of the snapshots are discarded.

To configure errors as ignorable, edit the config.xml file using an XML editor:

- If the Exchange Server is Office 365, navigate to the `/ConfigRoot/EnvironmentBridge/AccessLayer/SpecialistsDefaults/PowerShells/PowerShell[@id='ExchangeOnline']/IgnorableErrors` node and add the text to be matched as a child element in the same format as the existing Error child element. Regular expressions are supported.
- If the Exchange Server is on-premises, navigate to the `/ConfigRoot/EnvironmentBridge/AccessLayer/SpecialistsDefaults/PowerShells/PowerShell[@id='ExchangeColocated']/IgnorableErrors` node and add the text to be matched as a child element in the same format as the existing Error child element. Regular expressions are supported.
- If there is more than one Exchange environment configured, navigate to the `/ConfigRoot/EnvironmentBridge/AccessLayer/Environments/Environment[@id='ID Corresponding to the desired Exchange environment']/ExchangeServer/Specialists/PowerShell` node. Add an IgnorableErrors child node to the PowerShell node for each error to be ignored. Add an Error child node to the IgnorableErrors node with the matching text contained in a CDATA section. Regular expressions are supported.

Save the config.xml and restart the XenMobile Mail Manager service.

### PowerShell and Exchange

XenMobile Mail Manager now dynamically determines which cmdlets to use based on the version of Exchange it is connected to. For example, for Exchange 2010, it uses Get-ActiveSyncDevice, but for Exchange 2013 and Exchange 2016, it uses Get-MobileDevice.



## Exchange Configuration

Exchange Server configurations can be edited and updated without restarting the XenMobile Mail Manager service.

Two new columns added to the Exchange environment summary tab display each environment's command mode (PowerShell or Simulation), and access mode (Allow, Block, or Unchanged).

## Troubleshooting and Diagnostics

A set of PowerShell utilities for troubleshooting is available in the Support\PowerShell folder.

Testing connectivity to the Exchange service using the Test Connectivity button in the Configuration window of the console runs every read-only cmdlet used by the service, runs RBAC permissions tests against the Exchange Server for the configured user, and displays any errors or warnings in color-coded fashion (blue-yellow for warnings, red-orange for errors).

A new troubleshooting tool performs in-depth analysis of user mailboxes and devices, detecting error conditions and potential areas of failure, and in-depth RBAC analysis of users. It can save raw output of all cmdlets to a text file.

In support scenarios, all properties for all mailboxes on all devices managed by XenMobile Mail Manager can be saved by selecting a diagnostic check box in the console.

In support scenarios, trace-level logging is now supported.

## Authentication

XenMobile Mail Manager supports Basic authentication for on-premises deployments. This enables XenMobile Mail Manager to be used when the XenMobile Mail Manager server is not a member of the domain in which the Exchange Server resides.

# Fixed Issues

## Access Rules

XenMobile Mail Manager applies local access control rules to all users in Active Directory (AD) groups, even if an AD group contains more than 1000 users. Previously, XenMobile Mail Manager applied local access control rules only to the first 1000 users of an AD group. [#548705]

The XenMobile Mail Manager console sometimes failed to respond when querying Active Directory groups containing 1000 users or more. [CXM-11729]

The LDAP Configuration window no longer displays an incorrect authentication mode. [CXM-5556]

## Snapshots

User names with apostrophes no longer cause minor snapshots to fail. [#617549]

In support scenarios where pipelining is disabled (the Disable Pipelining option is selected in the Configuration window of the XenMobile Mail Manager console), major snapshots no longer fail in on-premises Exchange environments. [#586083]

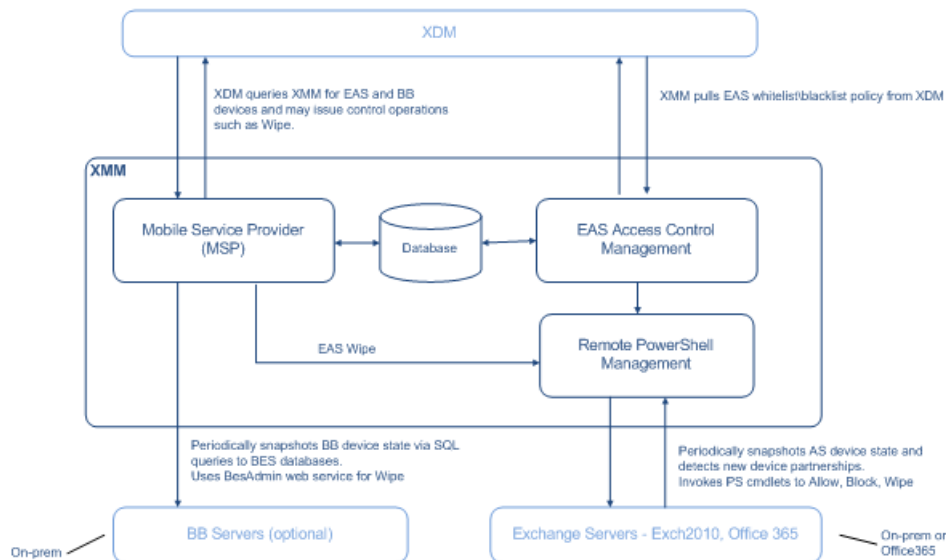
In support scenarios where pipelining is disabled (the Disable Pipelining option is selected in the Configuration window of the XenMobile Mail Manager console), data for deep snapshots is no longer collected regardless of whether the environment was configured for deep or shallow snapshots. Now data for deep snapshots is collected only when the environment is configured for deep snapshots. [#586092]

The first major snapshot after initial installation occasionally encountered an error that prevented XenMobile Mail Manager from running another major snapshot until the XenMobile Mail Manager service was restarted. This no longer occurs. [CXM-5536]

# Architecture

Feb 27, 2017

The following diagram shows the main components of XenMobile Mail Manager. For a detailed reference architecture diagram, see the XenMobile Deployment Handbook article, [Reference Architecture for On-Premises Deployments](#).



The three main components are:

- **Exchange ActiveSync Access Control Management.** Communicates with XenMobile to retrieve an Exchange ActiveSync policy from XenMobile, and merges this policy with any locally defined policy to determine the Exchange ActiveSync devices that should be allowed or denied access to Exchange. Local policy allows extending the policy rules to allow access control by Active Directory Group, User, Device Type, or Device User Agent (generally the mobile platform version).
- **Remote PowerShell Management.** Responsible for scheduling and invoking remote PowerShell commands to enact the policy compiled by Exchange ActiveSync Access Control Management. Periodically takes a snapshot of the Exchange ActiveSync database to detect new or changed Exchange ActiveSync devices.
- **Mobile Service Provider.** Provides a web service interface so that XenMobile can query Exchange ActiveSync and/or Blackberry devices, as well as issue control operations such as Wipe against them.

# System requirements and prerequisites

Feb 27, 2017

The following minimum system requirements are required to use XenMobile Mail Manager:

- Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2008 R2 (must be an English-based server)
- Microsoft SQL Server 2016, SQL Server 2012, SQL Server 2012 Express LocalDB, or SQL Server Express 2008
- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5
- Blackberry Enterprise Service, version 5 (optional)

## Minimum supported versions of Microsoft Exchange Server

- Microsoft Office 365
- Exchange Server 2016
- Exchange Server 2013
- Exchange Server 2010 SP2

## Device email clients

Not all email clients consistently return the same ActiveSync ID for a device. Because XenMobile Mail Manager expects a unique ActiveSync ID for each device, only email clients that consistently generate the same, unique ActiveSync ID for each device are supported. These email clients have been tested by Citrix and performed without errors:

- HTC native email client
- Samsung native email client
- iOS native email client
- Touchdown for Smartphones

## XenMobile Mail Manager Prerequisites

- Windows Management Framework must be installed.
  - PowerShell V5, V4, and V3
- The PowerShell execution policy must be set to RemoteSigned via Set-ExecutionPolicy RemoteSigned.
- TCP port 80 must be open between the computer running XenMobile Mail Manager and the remote Exchange Server.

## Requirements for on-premises computer running Exchange

**Permissions.** The credentials specified in the Exchange Configuration UI must be able to connect to the Exchange Server and be given full access to execute the following Exchange-specific PowerShell cmdlets.

- **For Exchange Server 2010 SP2:**
  - Get-CASMailbox
  - Set-CASMailbox
  - Get-Mailbox
  - Get-ActiveSyncDevice
  - Get-ActiveSyncDeviceStatistics
  - Clear-ActiveSyncDevice
  - Get-ExchangeServer
  - Get-ManagementRole
  - Get-ManagementRoleAssignment
- **For Exchange Server 2013 and Exchange Server 2016:**
  - Get-CASMailbox

- Set-CASMailbox
  - Get-Mailbox
  - Get-MobileDevice
  - Get-MobileDeviceStatistics
  - Clear-MobileDevice
  - Get-ExchangeServer
  - Get-ManagementRole
  - Get-ManagementRoleAssignment
- If XenMobile Mail Manager is configured to view the entire forest, permission must have been granted to run: Set-AdServerSettings - ViewEntireForest \$true
  - The supplied credentials must have been granted the right to connect to the Exchange Server via the remote Shell. By default, the user who installed Exchange has this right.
  - Per the Microsoft TechNet article, [about\\_Remote\\_Requirements](#), in order to establish a remote connection and run remote commands, the credentials must correspond to a user who is an administrator on the remote machine. Per this blog post, [You Don't Have to Be An Administrator to Run Remote PowerShell Commands](#), Set-PSSessionConfiguration can be used to eliminate the administrative requirement, but the support and discussion of the particulars of this command are beyond the scope of this document.
  - The Exchange Server must be configured to support remote PowerShell requests via HTTP. Typically, an administrator running the following PowerShell command on the Exchange Server is all that is required: WinRM QuickConfig.
  - Exchange has many throttling policies. One of the policies controls how many concurrent PowerShell connections are allowed per user. The default number of simultaneous connections allowed for a user is 18 on Exchange 2010. When the connection limit is reached, XenMobile Mail Manager is not able to connect to Exchange Server. There are ways to change the maximum allowed simultaneous connections via PowerShell that are beyond the scope of this documentation. If interested, investigate Exchange throttling policies as related to remote management with PowerShell.

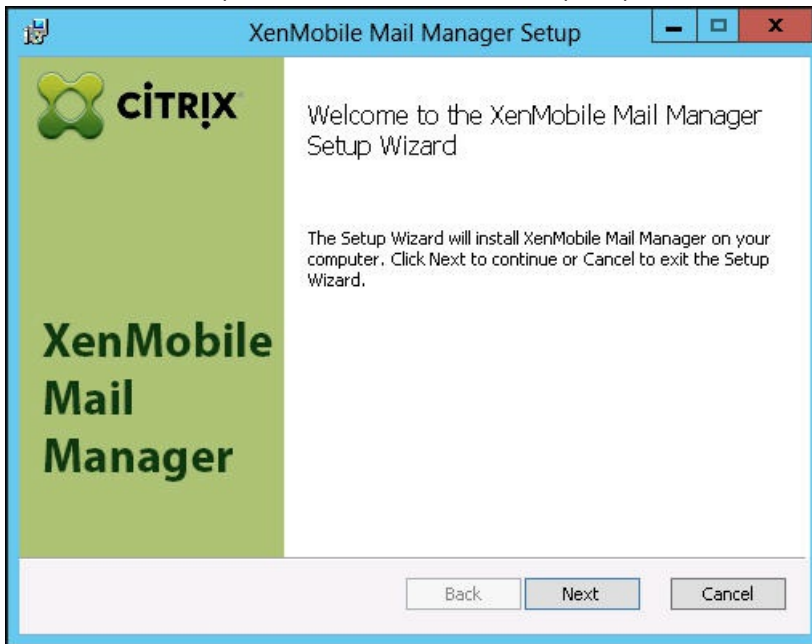
## Requirements for Office 365 Exchange

- **Permissions.** The credentials specified in the Exchange Configuration UI must be able to connect to Office 365 and be given full access to execute the following Exchange-specific PowerShell cmdlets:
  - Get-CASMailbox
  - Set-CASMailbox
  - Get-Mailbox
  - Get-MobileDevice
  - Get-MobileDeviceStatistics
  - Clear-MobileDevice
  - Get-ExchangeServer
  - Get-ManagementRole
  - Get-ManagementRoleAssignment
- **Privileges.** The supplied credentials must have been granted the right to connect to the Office 365 server via the remote Shell. By default, Office 365 online administrator has the requisite privileges.
- **Throttling policies.** Exchange has many throttling policies. One of the policies controls how many concurrent PowerShell connections are allowed per user. The default number of simultaneous connections allowed for a user is three on Office 365. When the connection limit is reached, XenMobile Mail Manager is not able to connect to Exchange Server. There are ways to change the maximum allowed simultaneous connections via PowerShell that are beyond the scope of this documentation. If interested, investigate Exchange throttling policies as related to remote management with PowerShell.

# Install and configure

Feb 27, 2017

1. Click the XmmSetup.msi file and then follow the prompts in the installer to install XenMobile Mail Manager.



2. Leave **Launch the Configure utility** selected in the last screen of the set-up wizard. Or, from the **Start** menu, open **XenMobile Mail Manager**.

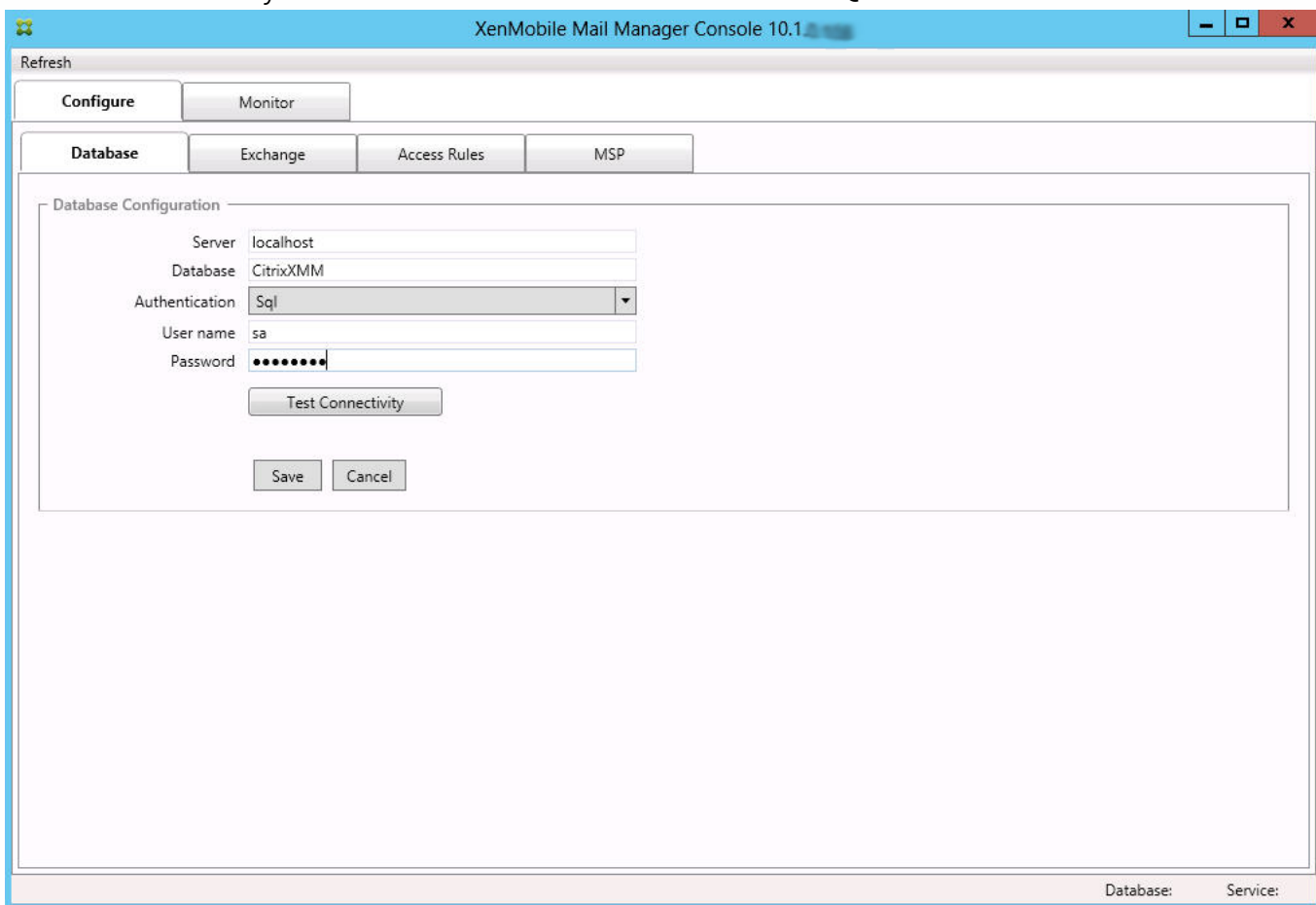


3. Configure the following database properties:
  1. Select the **Configure > Database** tab.
  2. Enter the name of the SQL Server (defaults to localhost).
  3. Keep the database as the default CitrixXmm.
  4. Select one of the following authentication modes used for SQL:
    - **Sql**. Enter the user name and password of a valid SQL user.

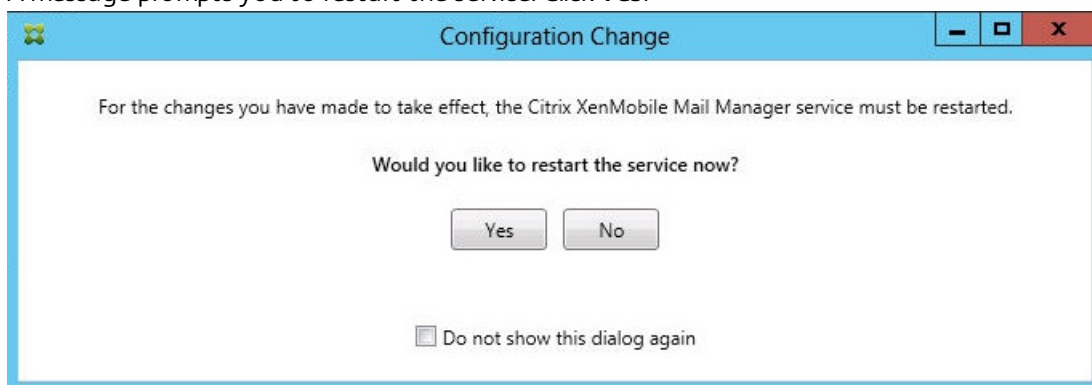
- **Windows Integrated.** If you select this option, the logon credentials of the XenMobile Mail Manager Service must be changed to a Windows account that has permissions to access the SQL Server. To do this, open **Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services**, right-click the XenMobile Mail Manager Service entry and then click the **Log On** tab.

**Note:** If Windows Integrated is also chosen for the BlackBerry database connection, the Windows account specified here must also be given access to the BlackBerry database.

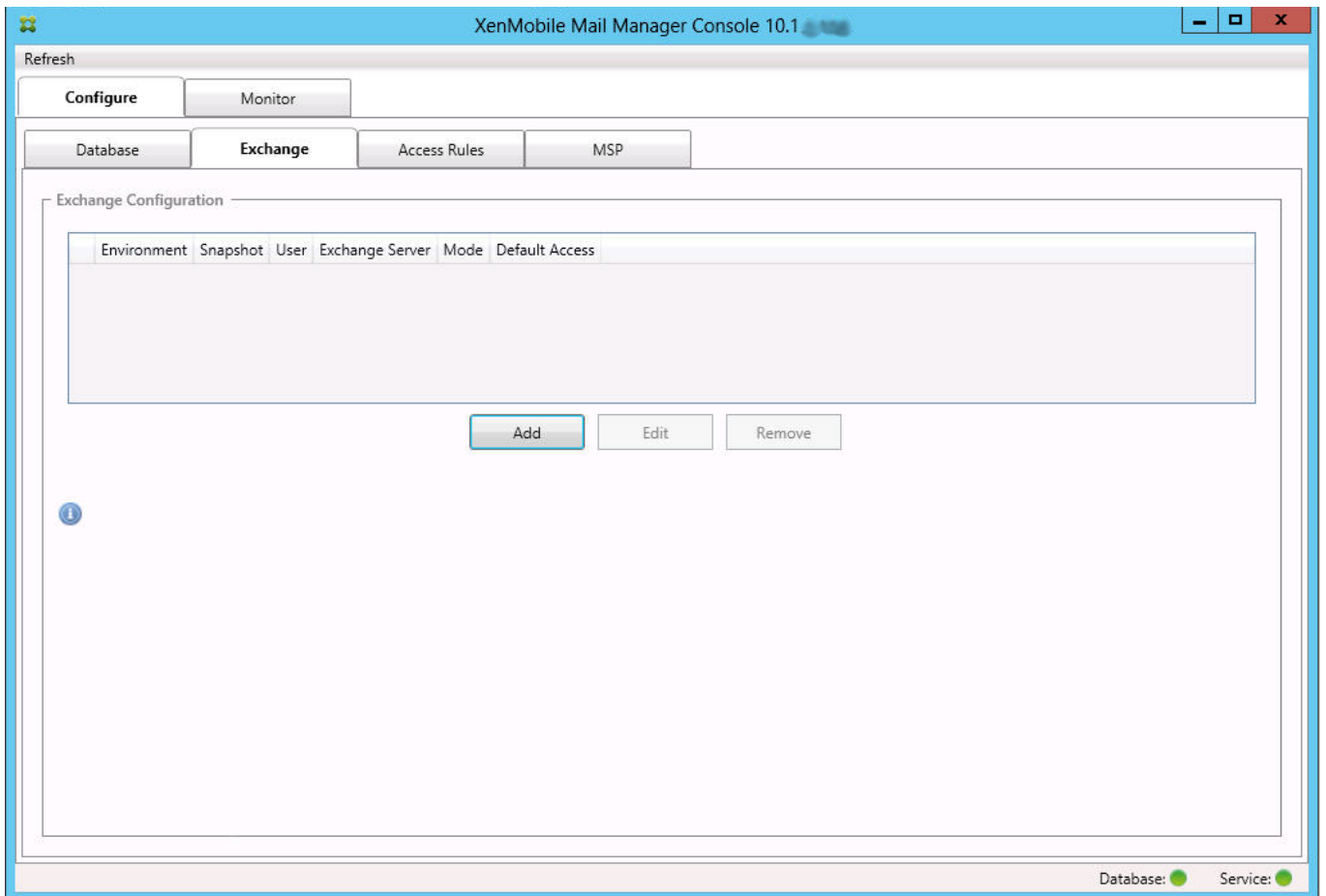
5. Click **Test Connectivity** to check that a connection can be made to the SQL Server and then click **Save**.



4. A message prompts you to restart the service. Click **Yes**.



5. Configure one or more Exchange Servers:
  1. If managing a single Exchange environment, you only need a single server specified. If managing multiple Exchange environments, you need a single Exchange Server specified for each Exchange environment.
  2. Select the **Configure > Exchange** tab.



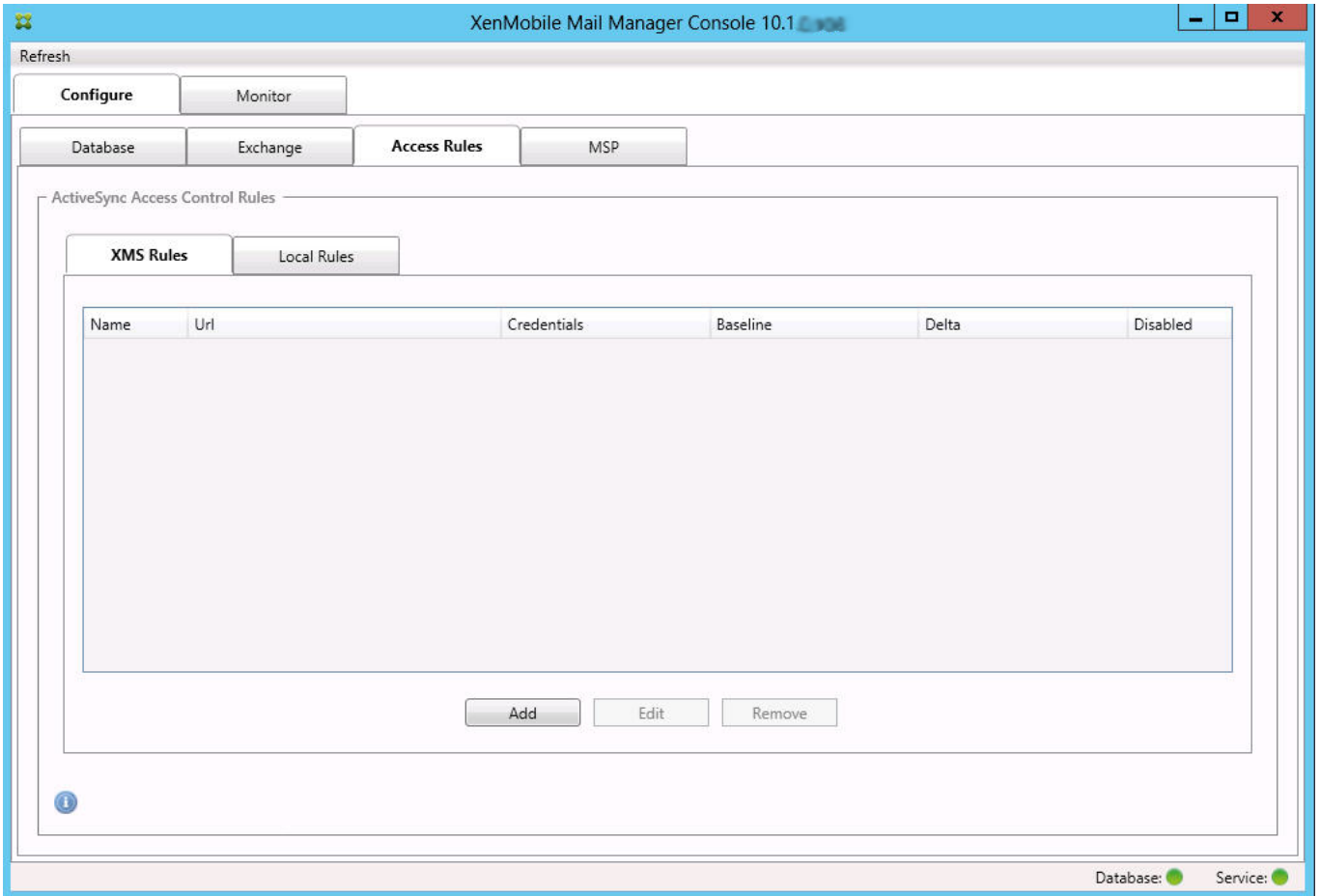
3. Click **Add**.
4. Select the type of Exchange Server environment: **On Premise** or **Office 365**.

5. If you select **On Premise**, enter the name of the Exchange Server that will be used for Remote PowerShell commands.
6. Enter the user name of a Windows identity that has appropriate rights on the Exchange Server as specified within the Requirements section.
7. Enter the **Password** for the user.
8. Select the schedule for running Major snapshots. A major snapshot detects every Exchange ActiveSync partnership.
9. Select the schedule for running Minor snapshots. A minor snapshot detects newly created Exchange ActiveSync partnerships.
10. Select the Snapshot Type: **Deep** or **Shallow**. Shallow snapshots are typically much faster and are sufficient to perform all the Exchange ActiveSync Access Control functions of XenMobile Mail Manager. Deep snapshots may take significantly longer and are only needed if the Mobile Service Provider is enabled for ActiveSync; this allows XenMobile to query for unmanaged devices.
11. Select the Default Access: **Allow**, **Block**, or **Unchanged**. This controls how all devices other than those identified by explicit XenMobile or Local rules are treated. If you select Allow, ActiveSync access to all such devices will be allowed; if you select Block, access will be denied; if you select Unchanged, no change will be made.
12. Select the ActiveSync Command Mode: **PowerShell** or **Simulation**.
  - In PowerShell mode, XenMobile Mail Manager will issue PowerShell commands to enact the desired access control.
  - In Simulation mode, XenMobile Mail Manager will not issue PowerShell commands, but will log the intended command and intended outcomes to the database. In Simulation mode, the user can then use the Monitor tab to see what would have happened if PowerShell mode was enabled.
13. Select **View Entire Forest** to configure XenMobile Mail Manager to view the entire Active Directory forest in the Exchange environment.
14. Select the authentication protocol: **Kerberos** or **Basic**. XenMobile Mail Manager supports Basic authentication for on-premises deployments. This enables XenMobile Mail Manager to be used when the XenMobile Mail Manager server is

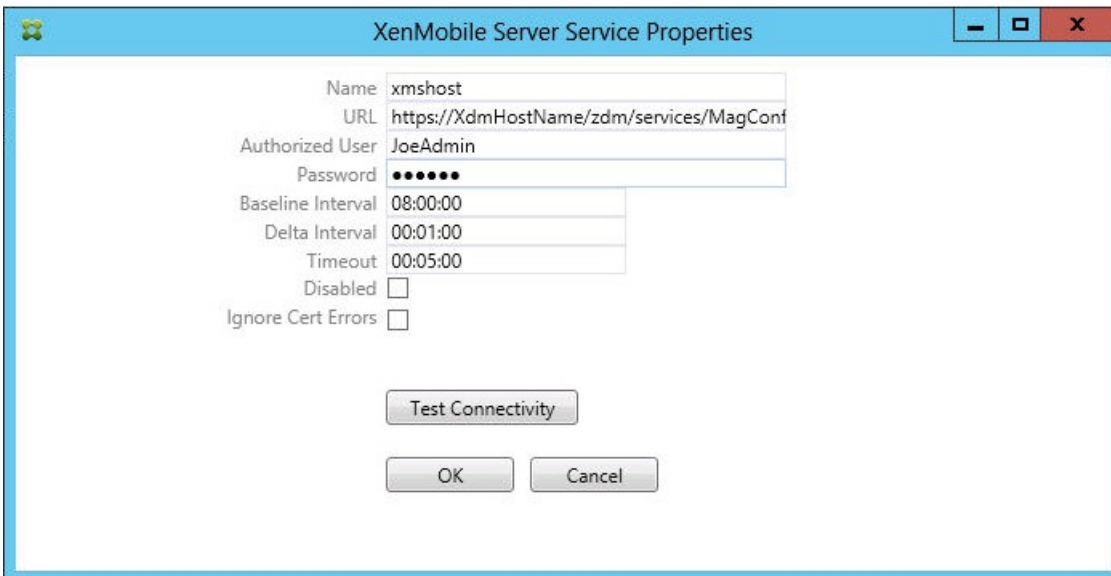


not a member of the domain in which the Exchange server resides.

15. Click **Test Connectivity** to check that a connection can be made to the Exchange Server and then click **Save**.
  16. A message prompts you to restart the service. Click **Yes**.
6. Configure the access rules:
1. Select the **Configure > Access Rules** tab.
  2. Click the **XDM Rules** tab.

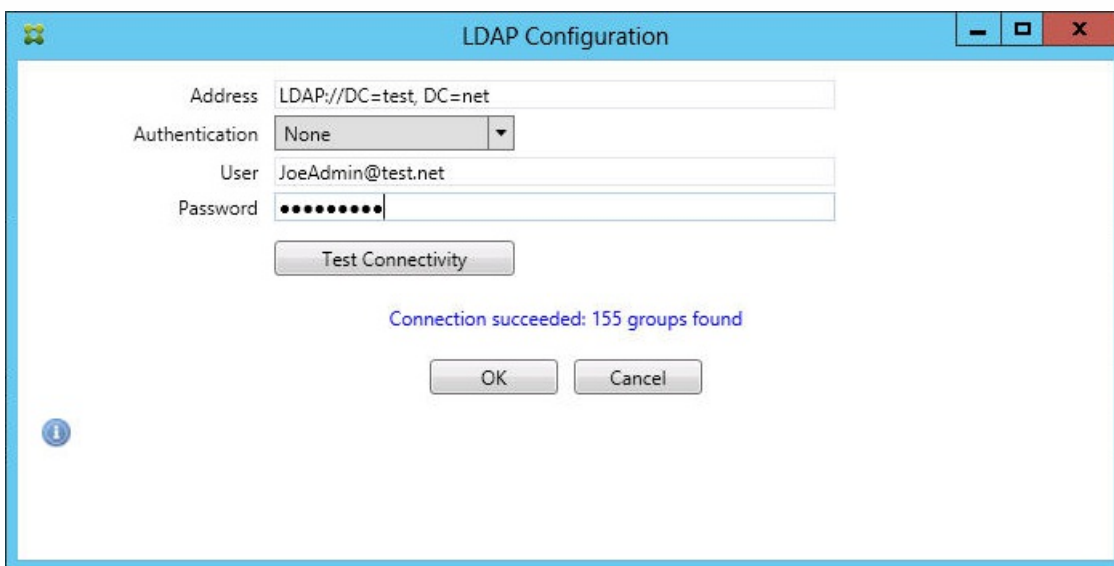


3. Click **Add**.



4. Enter a name for the XenMobile server rules, such as XdmHost.
5. Modify the URL string to refer to the XenMobile server; for example, if the server name is XdmHost, enter `http://XdmHostName/zdm/services/MagConfigService`.
6. Enter an authorized user on the server.
7. Enter the password of the user.
8. Keep the default values for the **Baseline Interval**, **Delta Interval**, and **Timeout values**.
9. Click **Test Connectivity** to check the connection to the server.
 

**Note:** If the Disabled check box is checked, the XenMobile Mail Service will not collect policy from the XenMobile server.
10. Click **OK**.
7. Click the **Local Rules** tab.
  1. If you want to construct local rules that operate on Active Directory Groups, click **Configure LDAP** and then configure the LDAP connection properties.



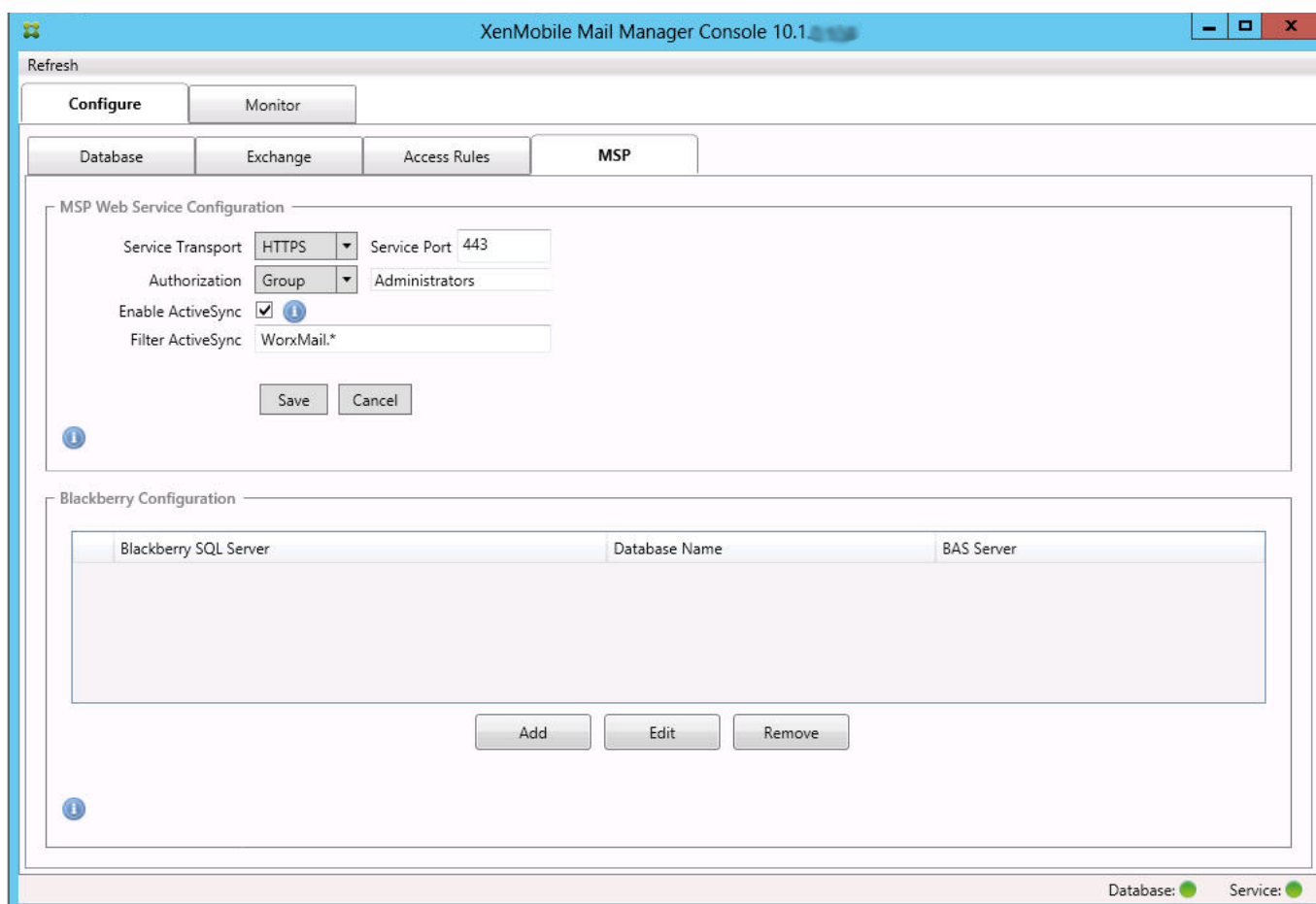
2. You can add local rules based on **ActiveSync Device ID**, **Device Type**, **AD Group**, **User**, or device **UserAgent**. In the list, select the appropriate type. For details, see [XenMobile Mail Manager Access Control Rules](#).
3. Enter text or text fragments in the text box. Optionally, click the query button to view the entities that match the fragment.
 

**Note:** For all types other than **Group**, the system relies on the devices that have been found in a snapshot. Therefore, if you are just starting and haven't completed a snapshot, no entities will be available.
4. Select a text value and then click **Allow** or **Deny** to add it to the **Rule List** pane on the right side. You can change the order of rules or remove them using the buttons to the right of the **Rule List** pane. The order is important because, for a given user and device, rules are evaluated in the order shown and a match on a higher rule (nearer the top) will cause subsequent rules to have no effect. For example, if you have a rule allowing all iPad devices and a subsequent rule blocking the user "Matt", Matt's iPad will still be allowed because the "iPad" rule has a higher effective priority than the "Matt" rule.
5. To perform an analysis of the rules within the rules list to find any potential overrides, conflicts, or supplemental constructs, click **Analyze**.
6. Click **Save**.
8. Configure the Mobile Service Provider.
 

**Note:** The Mobile Service Provider is optional and is necessary only if XenMobile is also configured to use the Mobile

Service Provider interface to query unmanaged devices.

1. Select the **Configure > MSP** tab.



2. Set the Service Transport type as **HTTP** or **HTTPS** for the Mobile Service Provider service.
3. Set the Service port (typically 80 or 443) for the Mobile Service Provider service.  
**Note:** If you use port 443, the port requires an SSL certificate bound to it in IIS.
4. Set the Authorization Group or User. This sets the user or set of users who will be able to connect to the Mobile Service Provider service from XenMobile.
5. Set whether ActiveSync queries are enabled or not.  
**Note:** if ActiveSync queries are enabled for the XenMobile server, the Snapshot type for one or more Exchange Servers must be set to **Deep**; this may have significant performance costs for taking snapshots.
6. By default, ActiveSync devices that match the regular expression Secure Mail.\* will not be sent to XenMobile. To change this behavior, alter the **Filter ActiveSync** field as necessary  
**Note:** Blank means that all devices will be forwarded to XenMobile.
7. Click **Save**.
9. Optionally, configure one or more BlackBerry Enterprise Server (BES):
  1. Click **Add**.
  2. Enter the server name of the BES SQL Server.

The screenshot shows the 'BES Properties' dialog box. It is divided into two main sections. The top section, 'BES Sql Server', includes fields for Server (BesServer), Database (BesMgmt), Authentication (Sql), User name (JoeAdmin), and Password (masked with dots). Below these fields is a 'Test Connectivity' button and a 'Sync Schedule' dropdown menu set to 'Every 30 Minutes'. The bottom section, 'Blackberry Device Administration from XMS', includes an 'Enabled' checkbox (checked), 'BAS Server' (BAServer), 'BAS Port' (443), 'Domain\User' (ServerName\JoeAdmin), and 'Password' (masked with dots). Below these fields is another 'Test Connectivity' button. At the bottom of the dialog are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons.

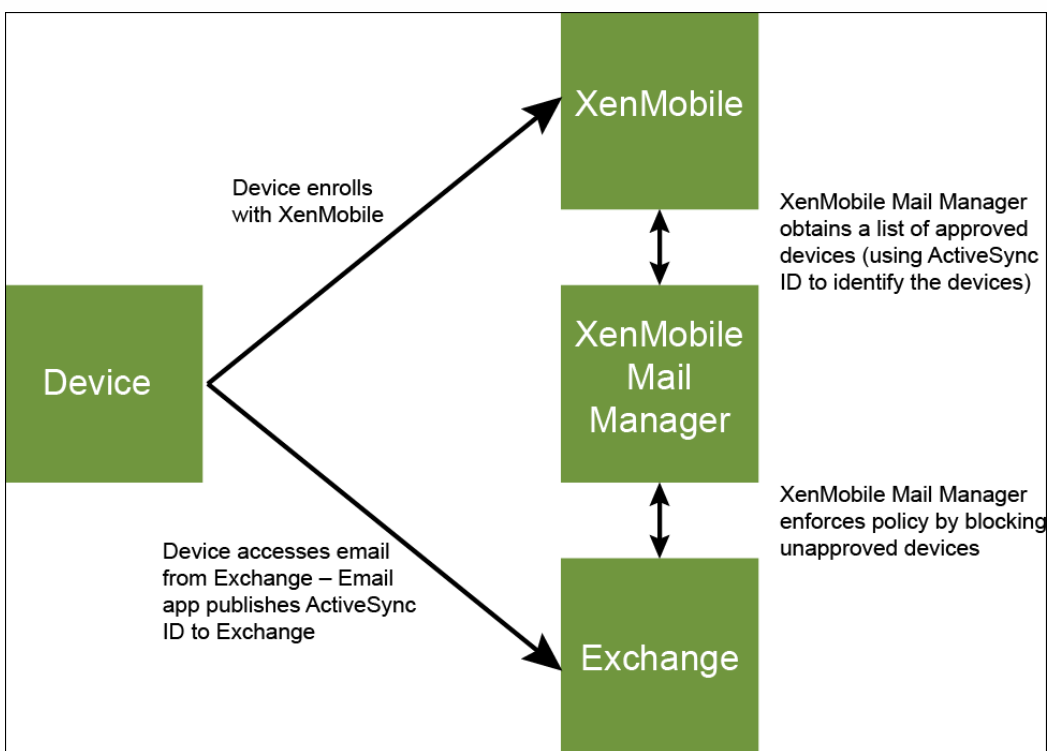
3. Enter the database name of the BES management database.
4. Select the Authentication mode. If you select Windows Integrated authentication, the user account of the XenMobile Mail Manager service is the account that is used to connect to the BES SQL Server.  
**Note:** If you also choose Windows Integrated for the XenMobile Mail Manager database connection, the Windows account specified here must also be given access to the XenMobile Mail Manager database.
5. If you select **SQL authentication**, enter the user name and password.
6. Set the **Sync Schedule**. This is the schedule used to connect to the BES SQL Server and checks for any device updates.
7. Click **Test Connectivity** to check connectivity to the SQL Server.  
**Note:** If you select Windows Integrated, this test uses the current logged on user and not the XenMobile Mail Manager service user and therefore does not accurately test SQL authentication.
8. If you want to support remote Wipe and/or ResetPassword of BlackBerry devices from XenMobile, check the **Enabled** check box.
  1. Enter the BES fully qualified domain name (FQDN).
  2. Enter the BES port used for the admin web service.
  3. Enter the fully qualified user and password required by the BES service.
  4. Click **Test Connectivity** to test the connection to the BES.
  5. Click **Save**.

# Enforce email policies with ActiveSync IDs

Feb 27, 2017

Your corporate email policy may dictate that certain devices are not approved for corporate email use. To comply with this policy, you want to ensure that employees cannot access corporate email from such devices. XenMobile Mail Manager and XenMobile work together to enforce such an email policy. XenMobile sets the policy for corporate email access and, when an unapproved device enrolls with XenMobile, XenMobile Mail Manager enforces the policy.

The email client on a device advertises itself to Exchange Server (or Office 365) using the device ID, also known as the ActiveSync ID, which is used to uniquely identify the device. Secure Hub obtains a similar identifier and sends the identifier to XenMobile when the device is enrolled. By comparing the two device IDs, XenMobile Mail Manager can determine whether a specific device should have corporate email access. The following figure illustrates this concept:



If XenMobile sends XenMobile Mail Manager an ActiveSync ID that is different from the ID the device publishes to Exchange, XenMobile Mail Manager cannot indicate to Exchange what to do with the device.

Matching ActiveSync IDs works reliably on most platforms; however, Citrix has found that on some Android implementations, the ActiveSync ID from the device is different from the ID that the mail client advertises to Exchange. To mitigate this problem, you can do the following:

- On the Samsung SAFE platform, push the device ActiveSync configuration from XenMobile.
- On all other Android platforms, push both the Touchdown app and the Touchdown ActiveSync configuration from XenMobile.

This does not, however, prevent an employee from installing an email client other than Touchdown on an Android device. To guarantee that your corporate email access policy is enforced properly, you can adopt a defensive security stance and

configure XenMobile Mail Manager to block emails by setting the static policy to Deny by default. This means that if an employee does configure an email client on an Android device other than Touchdown, and if ActiveSync ID detection does not work properly, the employee is denied corporate email access.

# Access control rules

Feb 27, 2017

XenMobile Mail Manager provides a rule-based approach for dynamically configuring access control for Exchange ActiveSync devices. A XenMobile Mail Manager access control rule consists of two parts: a matching expression and a desired access state (Allow or Block). A rule may be evaluated against a given Exchange ActiveSync device to determine if the rule applies to, or matches the device. There are multiple kinds of matching expressions; for example, a rule may match all devices of a given Device Type, or a specific Exchange ActiveSync device ID, or all devices of a specific user, and so on. At any point during the adding, removing, and rearranging of the rules in the rule list, clicking the **Cancel** button will revert the rules list back to the state at which it was when first opened. Unless you click **Save**, any changes made to this window are lost if you close the Configure tool.

XenMobile Mail Manager has three types of rules: local rules, XenMobile server rules (also known as XDM rules), and the default access rule.

**Local rules.** Local rules have the highest priority: If a device is matched by a local rule, rule evaluation stops. Neither XenMobile server rules nor the default access rule will be consulted. Local rules are configured locally to XenMobile Mail Manager via the Configure>Access Rules>Local Rules tab. Support matching is based upon a user's membership within a given Active Directory group. Support matching is based upon regular expressions for the following fields:

- Active Sync Device ID
- ActiveSync Device Type
- User Principal Name (UPN)
- ActiveSync User Agent (typically the device platform or email client)

As long as a major snapshot has completed and found devices, you should be able to add either a normal or regular expression rule. If a major snapshot has not completed, you can only add regular expression rules.

**XenMobile server rules.** XenMobile server rules are references to an external XenMobile server that provides rules about managed devices. The XenMobile server can be configured with its own high-level rules that identify the devices to be allowed or blocked based on properties known to XenMobile, such as whether the device is jailbroken or whether the device contains forbidden apps. XenMobile evaluates the high-level rules and produces a set of allowed or blocked ActiveSync Device IDs, which are then delivered to XenMobile Mail Manager.

**Default access rule.** The default access rule is unique in that it can potentially match every device and is always evaluated last. This rule is the catch-all rule, which means that if a given device does not match a local or XenMobile server rule, the desired access state of the device is determined by the desired access state of the default access rule.

- **Default Access – Allow.** Any device that is not matched by either a local or XenMobile server rule will be allowed.
- **Default Access – Block.** Any device that is not matched by either a local or XenMobile server rule will be blocked.
- **Default Access - Unchanged.** Any device that is not matched by either a local or XenMobile server rule will not have its access state modified in any way by XenMobile Mail Manager. If a device has been placed into Quarantine mode by Exchange, no action is taken; for example, the only way to remove a device from Quarantine mode is to have an explicitly Local or XDM rule override the quarantine.

## About Rule Evaluations

For each device that Exchange reports to XenMobile Mail Manager, the rules are evaluated in sequence, from highest to lowest priority as follows:

- Local rules
- XenMobile server rules
- Default access rule

When a match is found, evaluation stops. For example, if a local rule matches a given device, the device will not be evaluated against any of the XenMobile server rules or the default access rule. This holds true within a given rule type as well. For example, if there's more than a single match for a given device in the local rule list, as soon as the first match is encountered, evaluation stops.

XenMobile Mail Manager reevaluates the currently defined set of rules when device properties change, or when devices are added or removed, or when the rules themselves change. Major snapshots pick up device property changes and removals at configurable intervals. Minor Snapshots pick up new devices at configurable intervals.

Exchange ActiveSync has rules governing access as well. It is important to understand how these rules work in the context of XenMobile Mail Manager. Exchange may be configured with three levels of rules: personal exemptions, device rules, and organization settings. XenMobile Mail Manager automates access control by programmatically issuing Remote PowerShell requests to affect the personal exemptions lists. These are lists of allowed or blocked Exchange ActiveSync device IDs associated with a given mailbox. When deployed, XenMobile Mail Manager effectively takes over management of the exemption lists capability within Exchange. For details, see this [Microsoft article](#).

Analyzing is particularly useful in situations in which multiple rules for the same field have been defined. You can troubleshoot the relationships between rules. You perform analysis from the perspective of rule fields; for example, rules are analyzed in groups based upon the field that is being matched, such as ActiveSync device ID, ActiveSync device type, User, User Agent, and so on.

#### Rule terminology:

- **Overriding rule.** An override occurs when more than a single rule could apply to the same device. Because rules are evaluated by priority in the list, the later rule instance(s) which might apply might never be evaluated.
- **Conflicting rule.** A conflict occurs when more than a single rule could apply to the same device but the access (Allow/Block) does not match. If the conflicting rules are not regular expression rules, a conflict always implicitly connotes an override
- **Supplemental rule.** A supplement occurs when more than one rule is a regular expression rule and hence there might be a need to ensure that the two (or more) regular expressions can either be combined into a single regular expression rule, or are not duplicating functionality. A supplementary rule may also conflict in its access (Allow/Block).
- **Primary rule.** The primary rule is the rule that has been clicked within the dialog box. The rule is indicated visually by a solid border line that surrounds it. The rule will also have one or two green arrows pointing up or down. If an arrow points up, the arrow indicates that there are ancillary rules that precede the primary rule. If an arrow points down, this indicates that there are ancillary rules that come after the primary rule. Only a single primary rule can be active at any time.
- **Ancillary rule.** An ancillary rule is related in some way to the primary rule either through override, conflict, or a supplementary relationship. The rules are indicated visually by a dashed border that surrounds them. For each primary rule, there can be one to many ancillary rules. When clicking on any underlined entry, the ancillary rule or rules that are highlighted are always from the perspective of the primary rule. For example, the ancillary rule will be overridden by the primary rule, and/or the ancillary rule will conflict in its access with the primary rule, and/or the ancillary rule will supplement the primary rule.

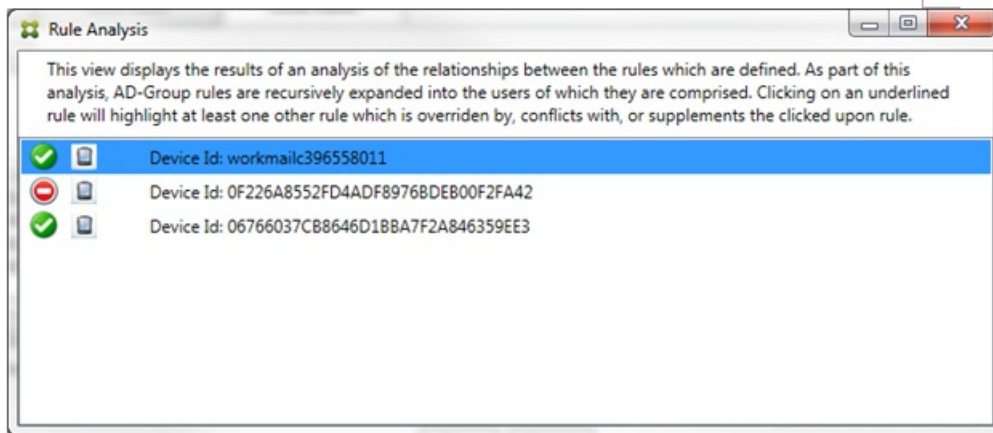
#### The Appearance of the Types of Rules in the Rule Analysis Dialog Box

When there are no conflicts, overrides, or supplements, the Rule Analysis dialog box has no underlined entries. Clicking on

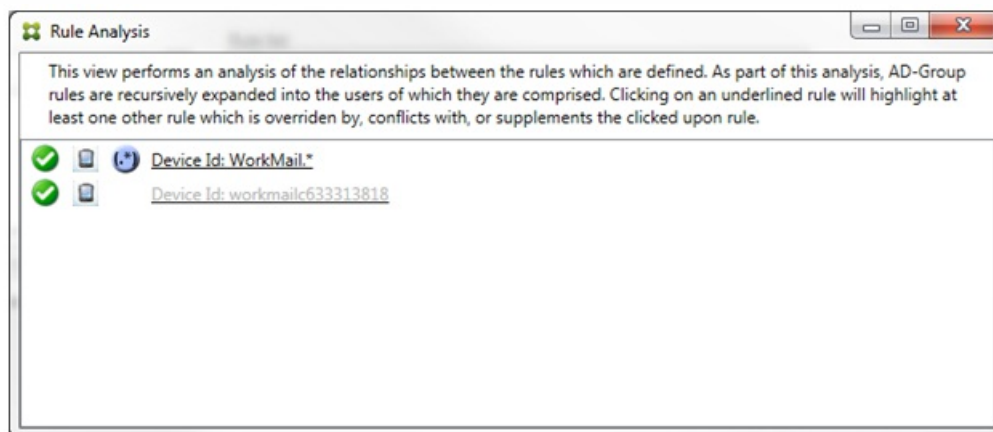


any of the items has no impact; for example, normal selected item visuals will occur.

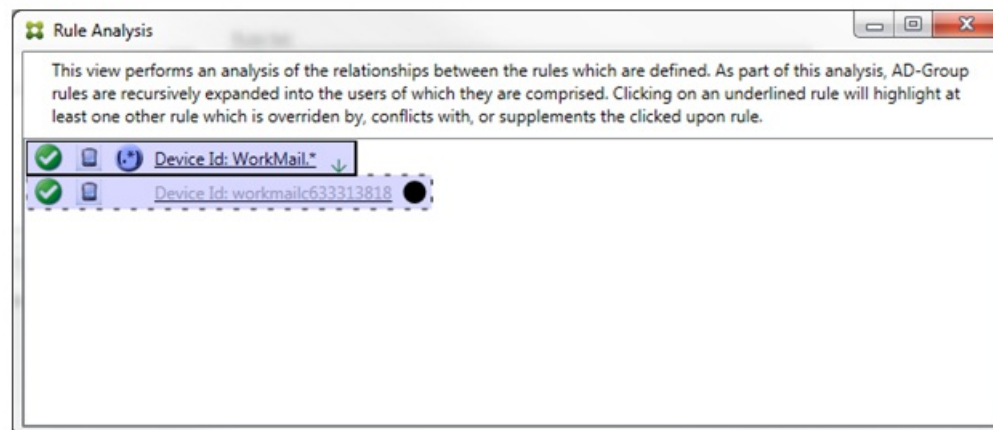
The Rule Analysis window has a check box which, when selected, displays only those rules which are conflicts, overrides, redundancies, or supplements.



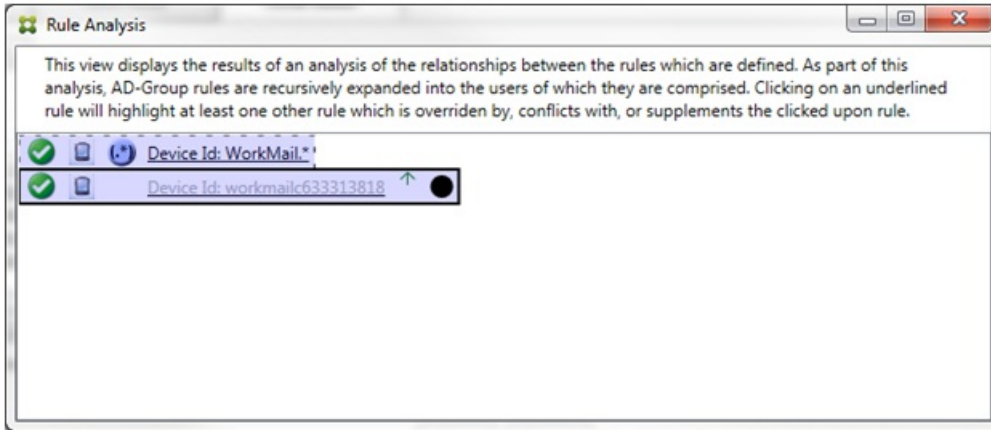
When an override occurs, at least two rules will be underlined: the primary rule and the ancillary rule or rules. At least one ancillary rule will appear in a lighter font to indicate that the rule has been overridden by a higher priority rule. You can click on the overridden rule to find out which rule or rules have overridden the rule. Any time an overridden rule has been highlighted either as a result of the rule being the primary or ancillary rule, a black circle will appear next to it as a further visual indication that the rule is inactive. For example, before clicking on the rule, the dialog box appears as follows:



When you click the highest-priority rule, the dialog box appears as follows:

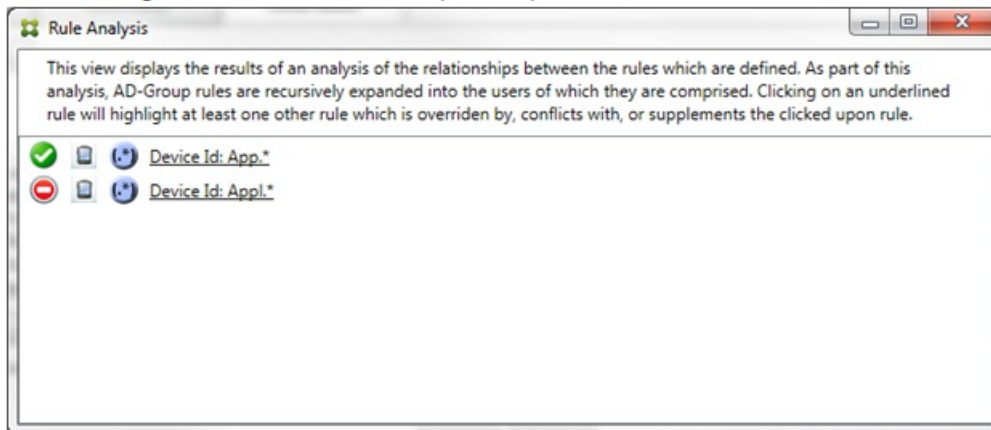


In this example, the regular expression rule WorkMail.\* is the primary rule (indicated by the solid border) and the normal rule workmail633313818 is an ancillary rule (indicated by the dashed border). The black dot next to the ancillary rule is a visual cue that further indicates that the rule is inactive (will never be evaluated) due to the higher-priority regular expression rule that precedes it. After clicking on the overridden rule, the dialog box appears as follows:

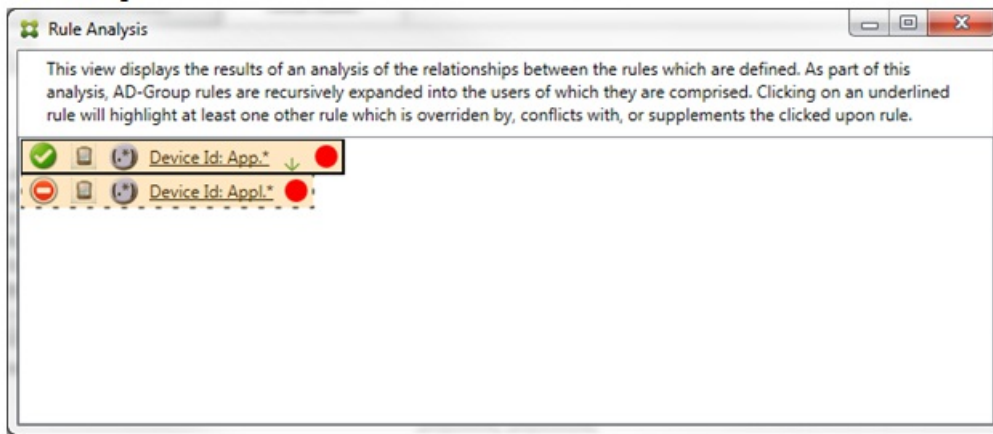


In the preceding example, the regular expression rule WorkMail.\* is the ancillary rule (indicated by the dashed border) and the normal rule workmail633313818 is a primary rule (indicated by the solid border). For this simple example, there's not much difference. For a more complicated example, see the complex expression example later in this topic. In a scenario with many rules defined, clicking the overridden rule would quickly identify which rule or rules had overridden it.

When a conflict occurs, at least two rules will be underlined, the primary rule and the ancillary rule or rules. The rules in conflict are indicated by a red dot. Rules that only conflict with one another are only possible with two or more regular expression rules defined. In all other conflict scenarios, there will not only be a conflict, but an override at play. Prior to clicking on either of the rules in a simple example, the dialog box appears as follows:

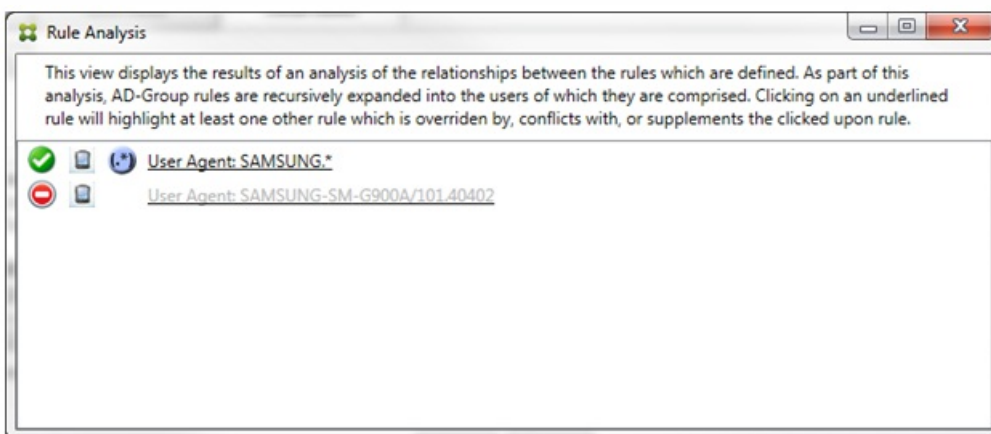


By inspecting the two regular expression rules, it's evident that the first rule allows all devices with a device ID that contains "App" and that the second rule denies all devices with a device ID that contains Appl. In addition, even though the second rule denies all devices with a device ID that contains Appl, no devices with that match criteria will ever be denied because of the higher precedence of the allow rule. After clicking on the first rule, the dialog box appears as follows:



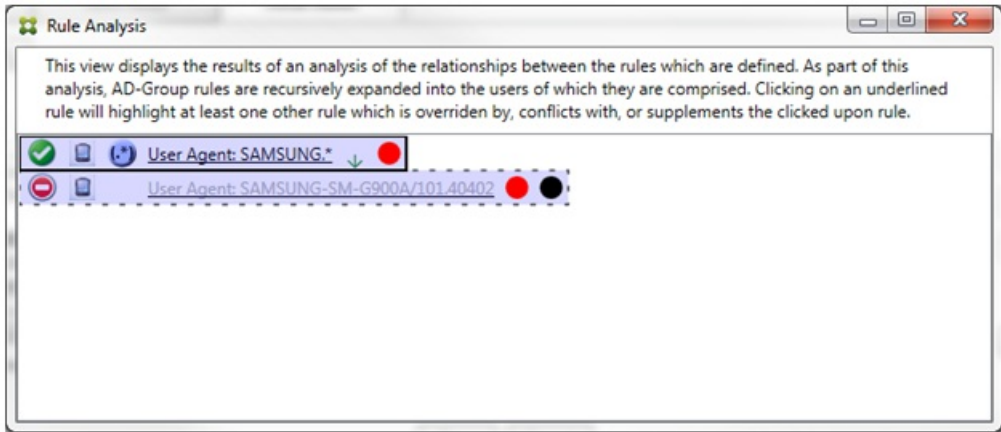
In the preceding scenario, both the primary rule (regular expression rule App.\*) and the ancillary rule (regular expression rule Appl.\*) are both highlighted in yellow. This is simply a visual warning to alert you to the fact that you have applied more than a single regular expression rule to a single matchable field, which could mean a redundancy issue or something more serious.

In a scenario with both a conflict and override, both the primary rule (regular expression rule App.\*) and the ancillary rule (regular expression rule Appl.\*) are highlighted in yellow. This is simply a visual warning to alert you to the fact that you have applied more than a single regular expression rule to a single matchable field, which could mean a redundancy issue or something more serious.



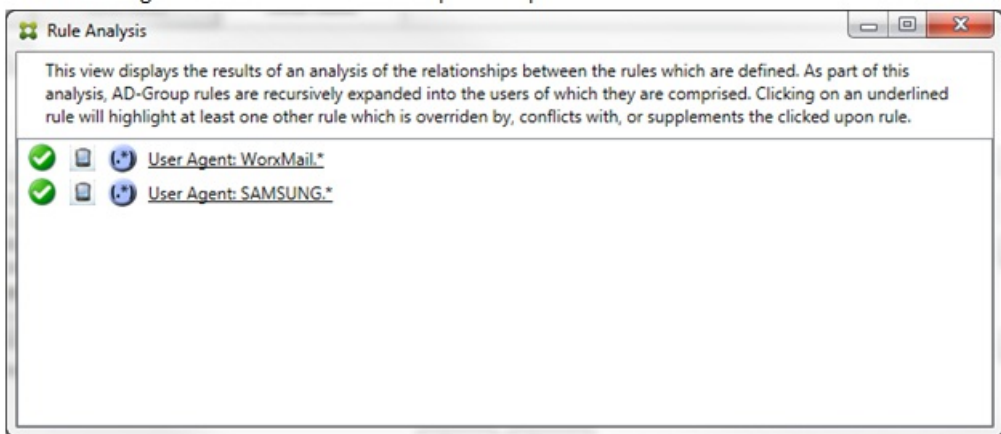
It is easy to see in the preceding example that the first rule (regular expression rule SAMSUNG.\*) not only overrides the next rule (normal rule SAMSUNG-SM-G900A/101.40402), but that the two rules differ in their access (primary specifies Allow, ancillary specifies Block). The second rule (normal rule SAMSUNG-SM-G900A/101.40402) is displayed in lighter text to indicate that it has been overridden and is therefore inactive.

After clicking on the regular expression rule, the dialog box appears as follows:

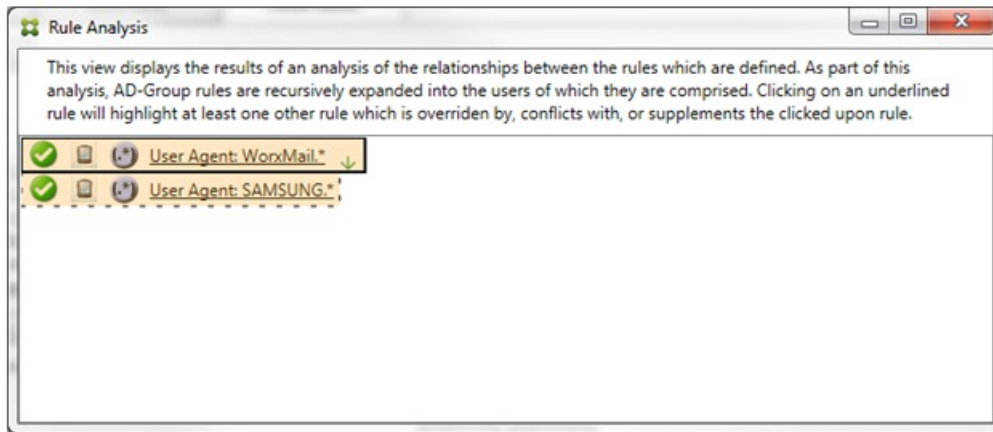


The primary rule (regular expression rule SAMSUNG.\*) is followed by a red dot to indicate that its access state conflicts with one or more ancillary rules. The ancillary rule (normal rule SAMSUNG-SM-G900A/101.40402) is followed by a red dot to indicate that its access state conflicts with the primary rule, as well as with a black dot to further indicate that it has been overridden and is therefore inactive.

At least two rules will be underlined, the primary rule and the ancillary rule or rules. Rules that only supplement one another will only involve regular expression rules. When rules supplement one another they are indicated with a yellow overlay. Prior to clicking on either of the rules, in a simple example, the dialog box appears as follows:




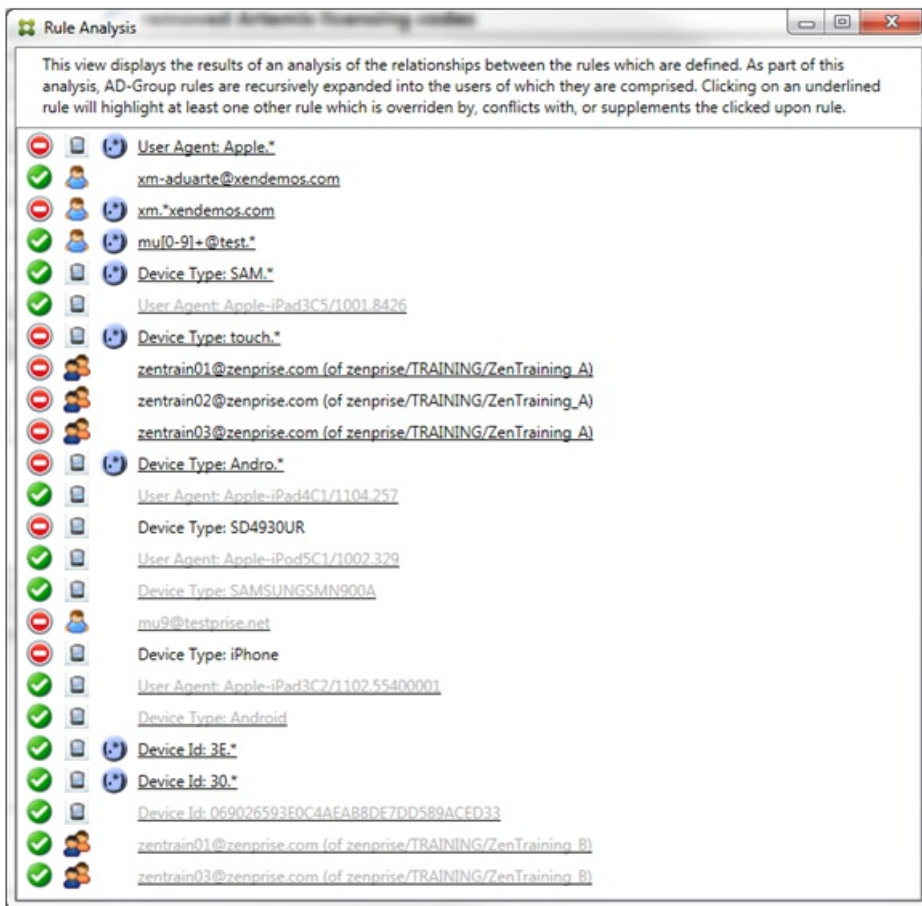
Visual inspection easily reveals that both rules are regular expression rules which have both been applied to the ActiveSync device ID field in XenMobile Mail Manager. After clicking on the first rule, the dialog box looks as follows:



The primary rule (regular expression rule WorkMail.\*) is highlighted with a yellow overlay to indicate that there exists at least one additional ancillary rule which is a regular expression. The ancillary rule (regular expression rule SAMSUNG.\*) is highlighted with a yellow overlay to indicate that both it and the primary rule are regular expression rules being applied to the same field within XenMobile Mail Manager; in this case, the ActiveSync device ID field. The regular expressions may or may not overlap. It is up to you to decide if your regular expressions are properly crafted.

### Example of a Complex Expression

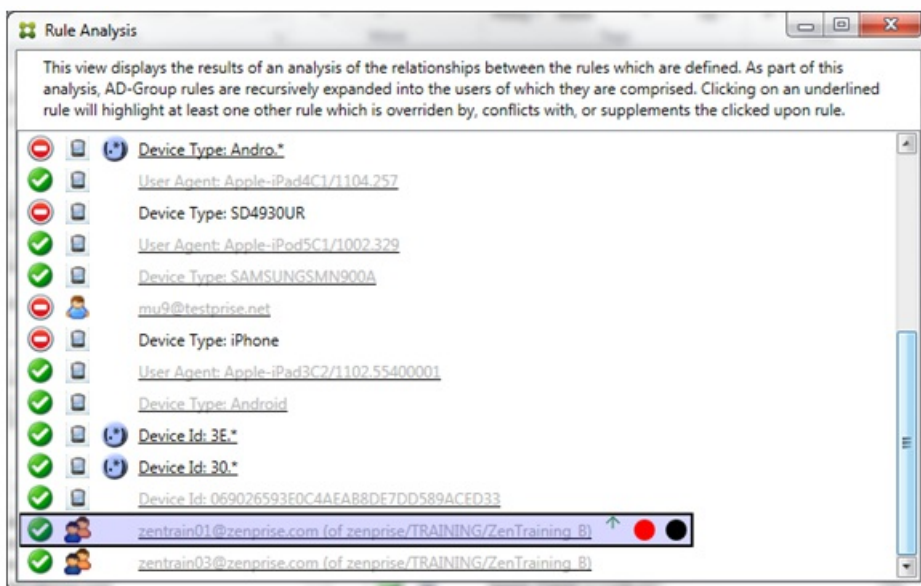
Many potential overrides, conflicts, or supplements can occur, making it impossible to give an example of all possible scenarios. The following example discusses what not to do, while also serving to illustrate the full power of the rule analysis visual construct. Most of the items are underlined in the following figure. Many of the items render in a lighter font, which indicates that the rule in question has been overridden by a higher priority rule in some manner. A number of regular expression rules are included in the list as well, as indicated by the  icon.



## How to Analyze an Override

To see which rule or rules have overridden a particular rule, you click the rule.

**Example 1:** This example examines why zentrain01@zenprise.com has been overridden.

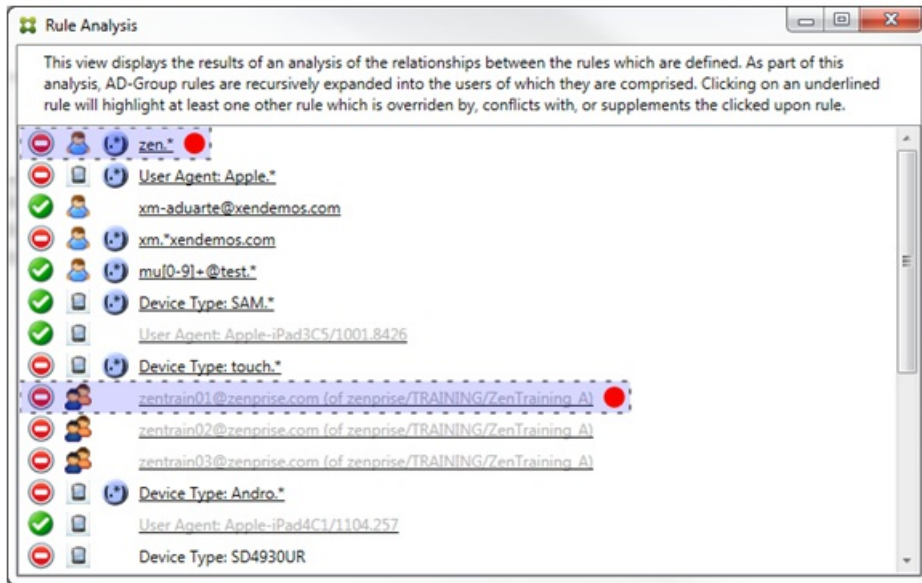


The primary rule (AD-Group rule zenprise/TRAINING/ZenTraining B, of which zentrain01@zenprise.com is a member) has the

following characteristics:

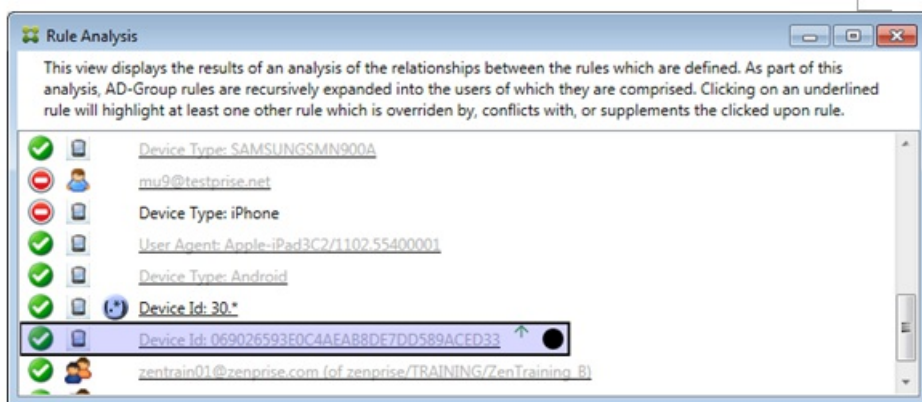
- Is highlighted in blue and has a solid border.
- Has an upwards pointing green arrow (to indicate that the ancillary rule or rules are all to be found above it).
- Is followed by both a red circle and black circle to indicate respectively that one or more ancillary rule conflicts with its access and that the primary rule has been overridden and is hence inactive.

When you scroll up, you see the following:



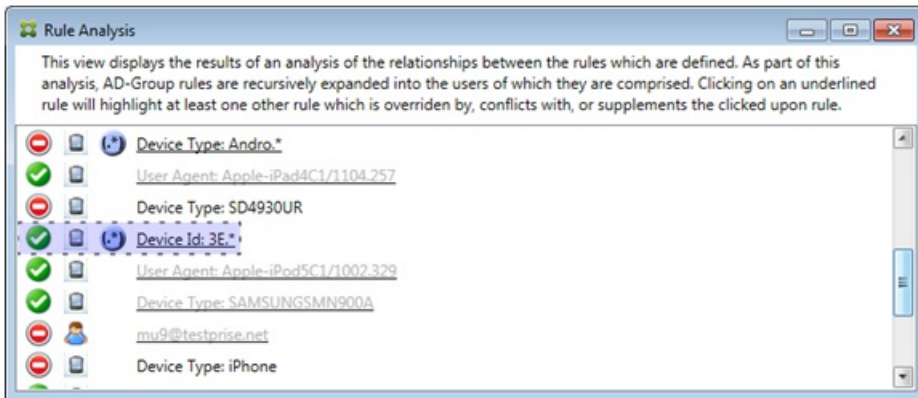
In this case, there are two ancillary rules that override the primary rule: the regular expression rule zen.\* and the normal rule zentrain01@zenprise.com (of zenprise/TRAINING/ZenTraining A). In the case of the latter ancillary rule, what has occurred is that the Active Directory Group rule ZenTraining A contains the user zentrain01@zenprise.com, and the Active Directory Group rule ZenTraining B also contains the user zentrain01@zenprise.com. Because the ancillary rule has a higher precedence than the primary rule, however, the primary rule has been overridden. The primary rule's access is Allow, and because both of the ancillary rule's access is Block, all are followed with a red circle to further indicate an access conflict.

**Example 2:** This example shows why the device with an ActiveSync device ID of 069026593E0C4AEAB8DE7DD589ACED33 has been overridden:



The primary rule (normal device ID rule 069026593E0C4AEAB8DE7DD589ACED33) has the following characteristics:

- Is highlighted in blue and has a solid border.
- Has an upwards pointing green arrow (to indicate that the ancillary rule is to be found above it).
- Is followed by a black circle to indicate an ancillary rule has overridden the primary rule and is hence inactive.

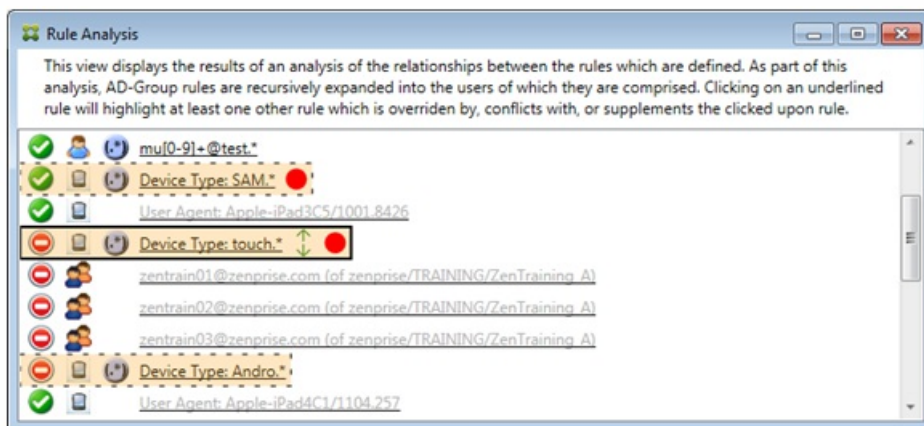


In this case, a single ancillary rule overrides the primary rule: the regular expression ActiveSync device ID rule 3E.\* Because the regular expression 3E.\* would match 069026593E0C4AEAB8DE7DD589ACED33, the primary rule will never be evaluated.

### How to Analyze a Supplement and Conflict

In this case, the primary rule is the regular expression ActiveSync device type rule touch.\* The characteristics are as follows:

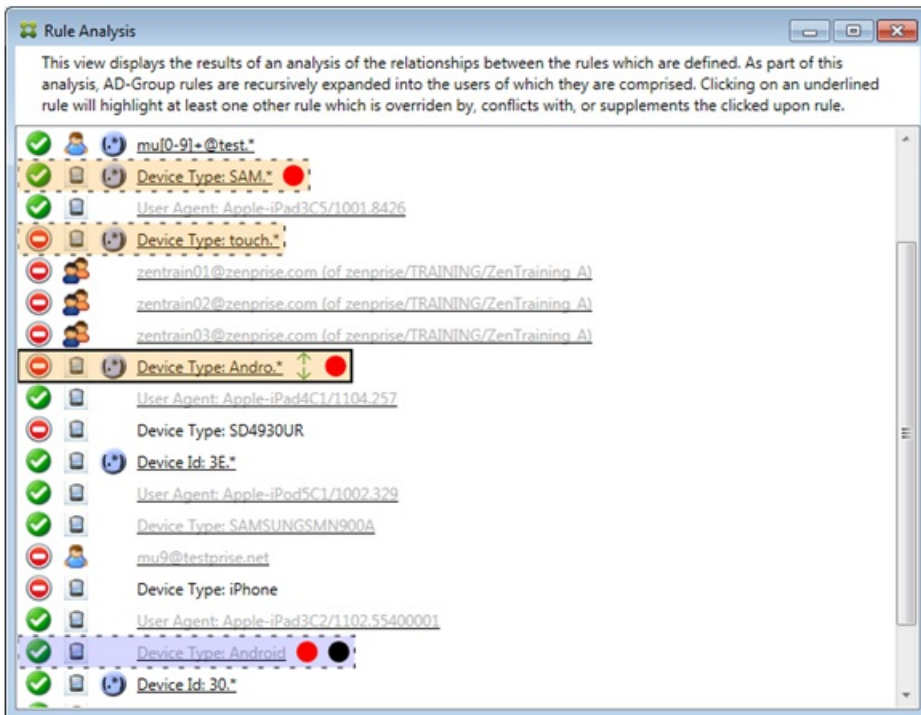
- Is indicated by a solid border with a yellow overlay as a warning that there is more than a single regular expression rule operating against a particular rule field, in this case ActiveSync device type.
- Two arrows are pointing up and down respectively, indicating that there is at least one ancillary rule with higher priority and at least one ancillary rule with lower priority.
- The red circle next to it indicates that at least one ancillary rule has its access set to Allow which conflicts with the primary rule's access of Block
- There are two ancillary rules: the regular expression ActiveSync device type rule SAM.\* and the regular expression ActiveSync device type rule Andro.\*
- Both of the ancillary rules are bordered with dashes to indicate that they are ancillary.
- Both of the ancillary rules are overlaid with yellow to indicate that they are supplementally being applied to the rule field of ActiveSync device type.
- You should ensure in such scenarios that their regular expression rules are not redundant.





## How to Further Analyze the Rules

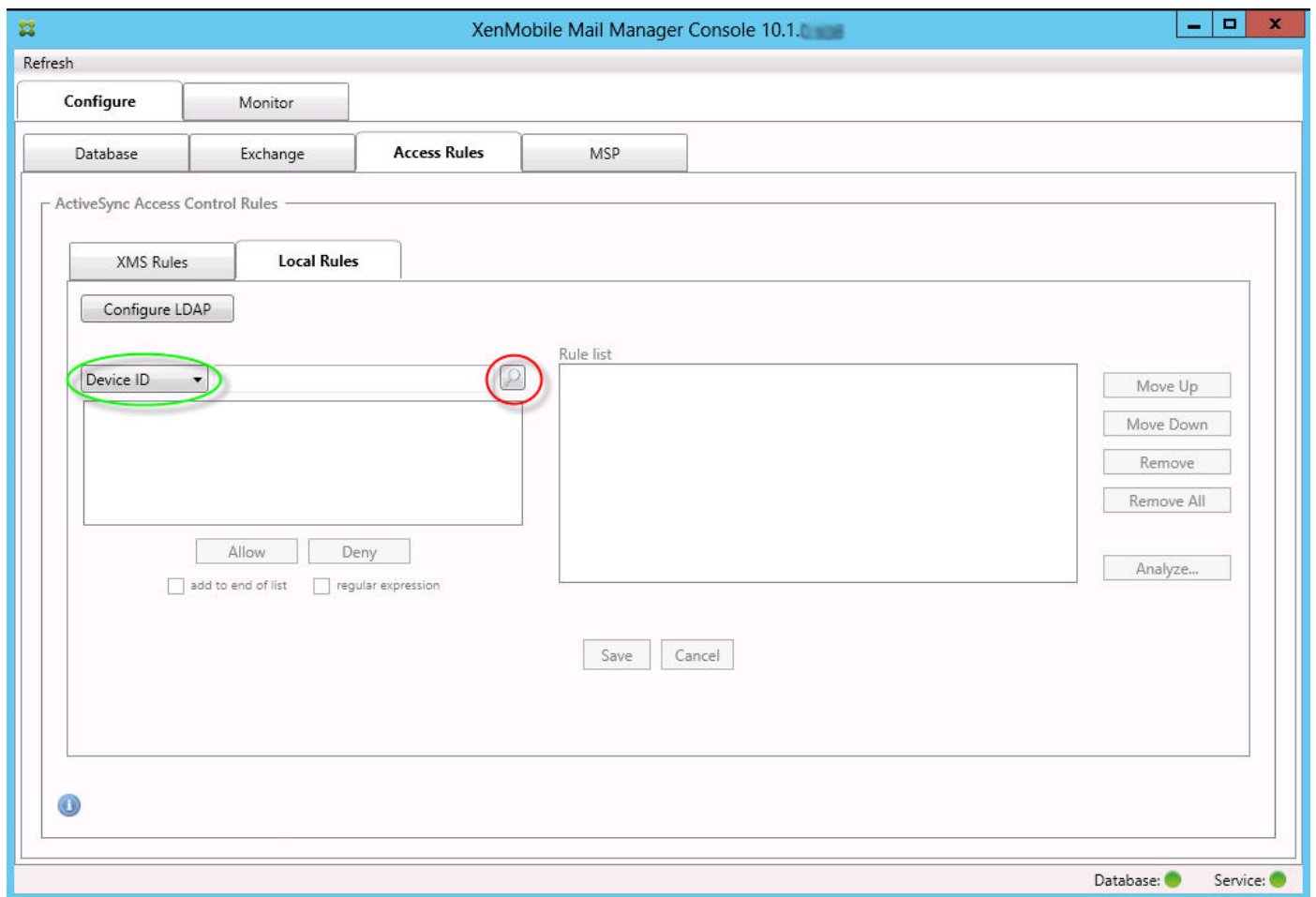
This example explores how rule relationships are always from the perspective of the primary rule. The preceding example showed how a click on the regular expression rule applied to the rule field of device type with a value of touch.\* Clicking on the ancillary rule Andro.\* shows a different set of ancillary rules highlighted.



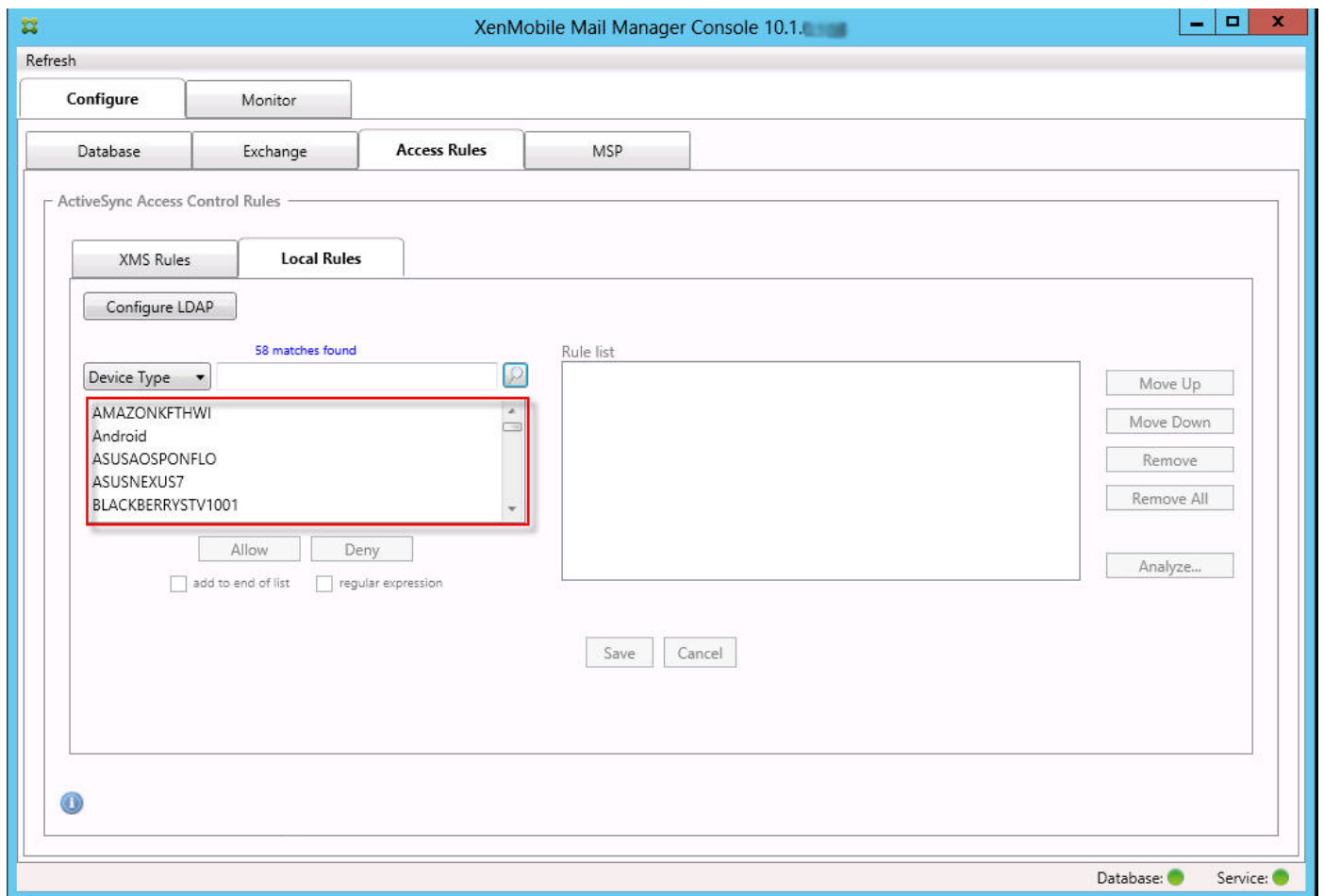
The example shows an overridden rule that is included in the rule relationship. This rule is the normal ActiveSync device type rule Android, which is overridden (indicated by the lightened font and the black circle next to it) and also conflicts in its access with the primary rule regular expression ActiveSync device type rule Andro.\*; that rule was formerly an ancillary rule prior to being clicked. In the preceding example, the normal ActiveSync device type rule Android, was not displayed as an ancillary rule because, from the perspective of the then primary rule (the regular expression ActiveSync device type rule touch.\*), it was not related to it.

To configure a normal expression local rule

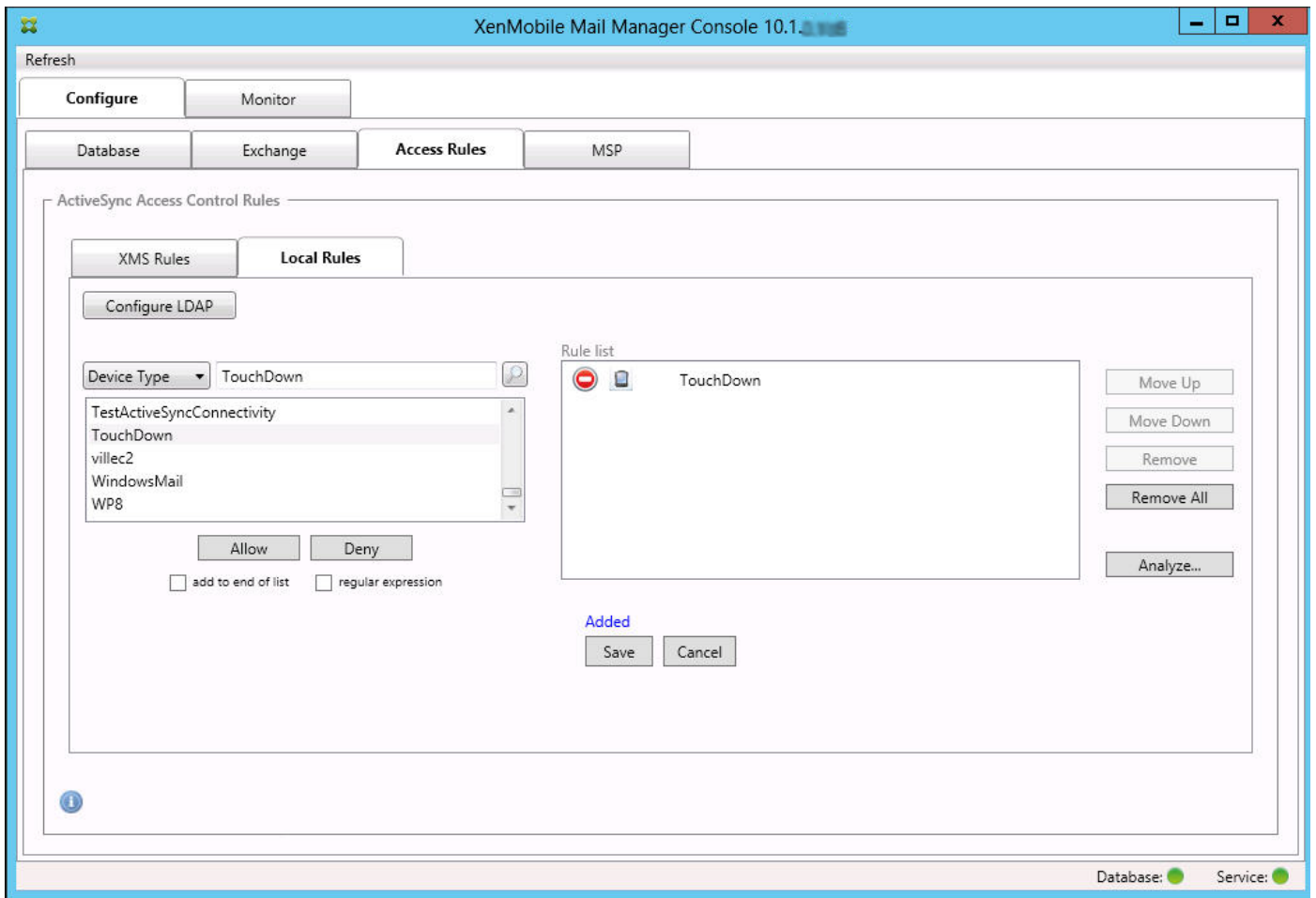
1. Click the Access Rules tab.




2. In the Device ID list, select the field for which you want to create a Local Rule.
3. Click on the magnifying glass icon to display all of the unique matches for the chosen field. In this example, the field Device Type has been chosen and the choices are shown below in the list box.



4. Click one of the items in the results list box and then click one of the following options:
- Allow means that Exchange will be configured to allow ActiveSync traffic for all matching devices.
  - Deny means that Exchange will be configured to deny ActiveSync traffic for all matching devices.
- In this example, all devices that have a device type of TouchDown are denied access.

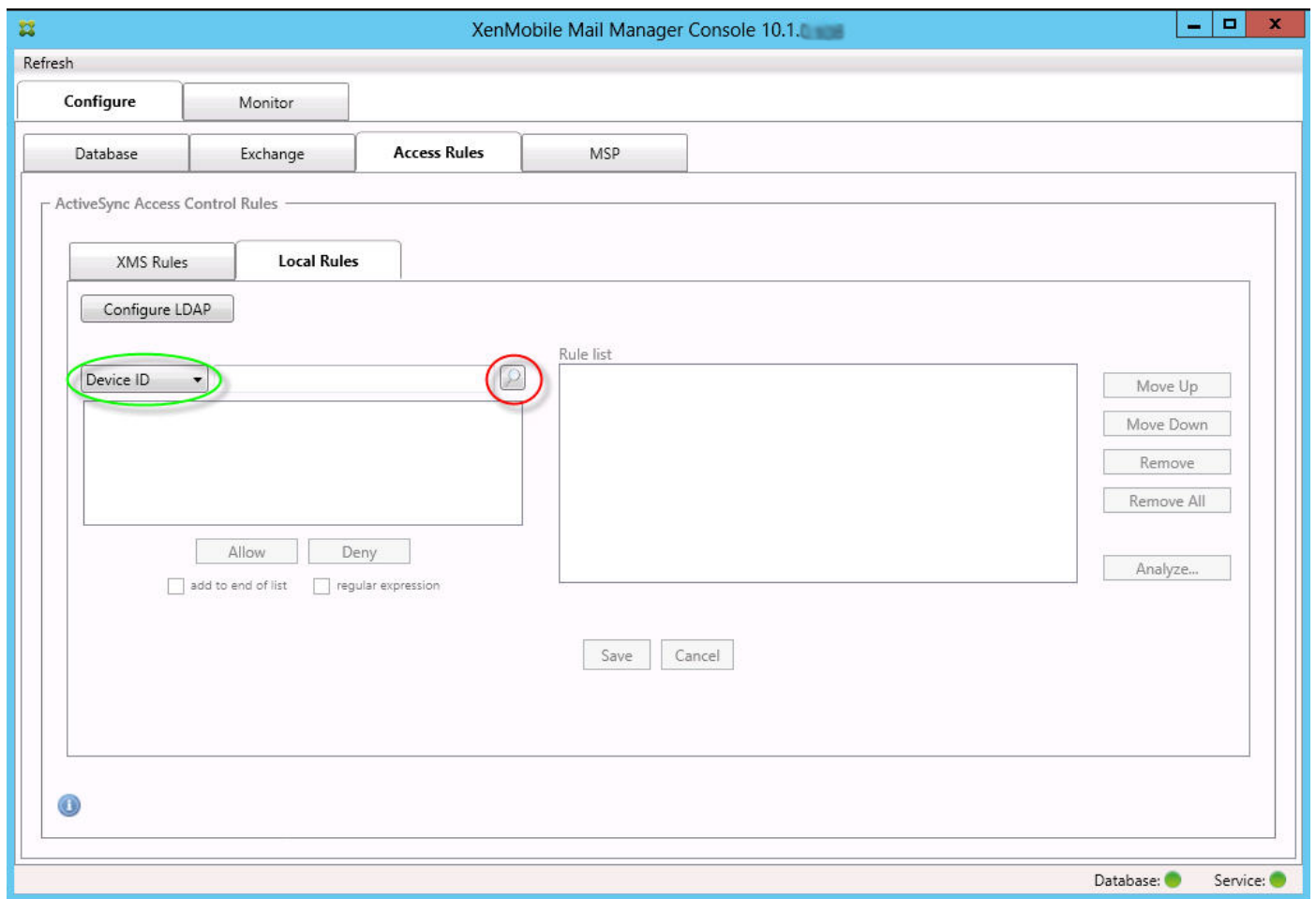


## To add a regular expression

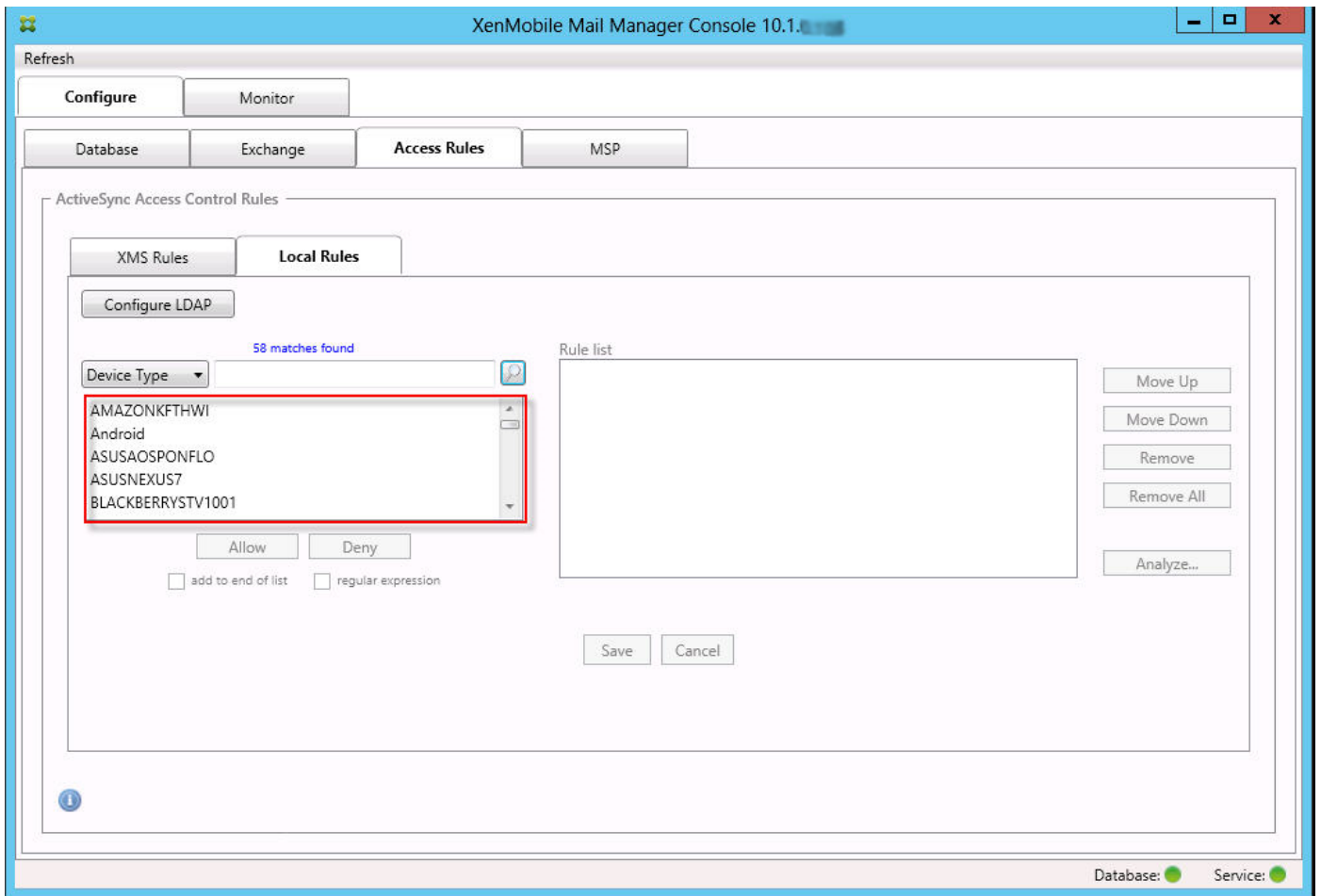
Regular expression local rules can be distinguished by the icon which appears next to them - . To add a regular expression rule, you can either build a regular expression rule from an existing value from the results list for a given field (as long as a major snapshot has completed), or you can simply type in the regular expression that you want.

### To build a regular expression from an existing field value

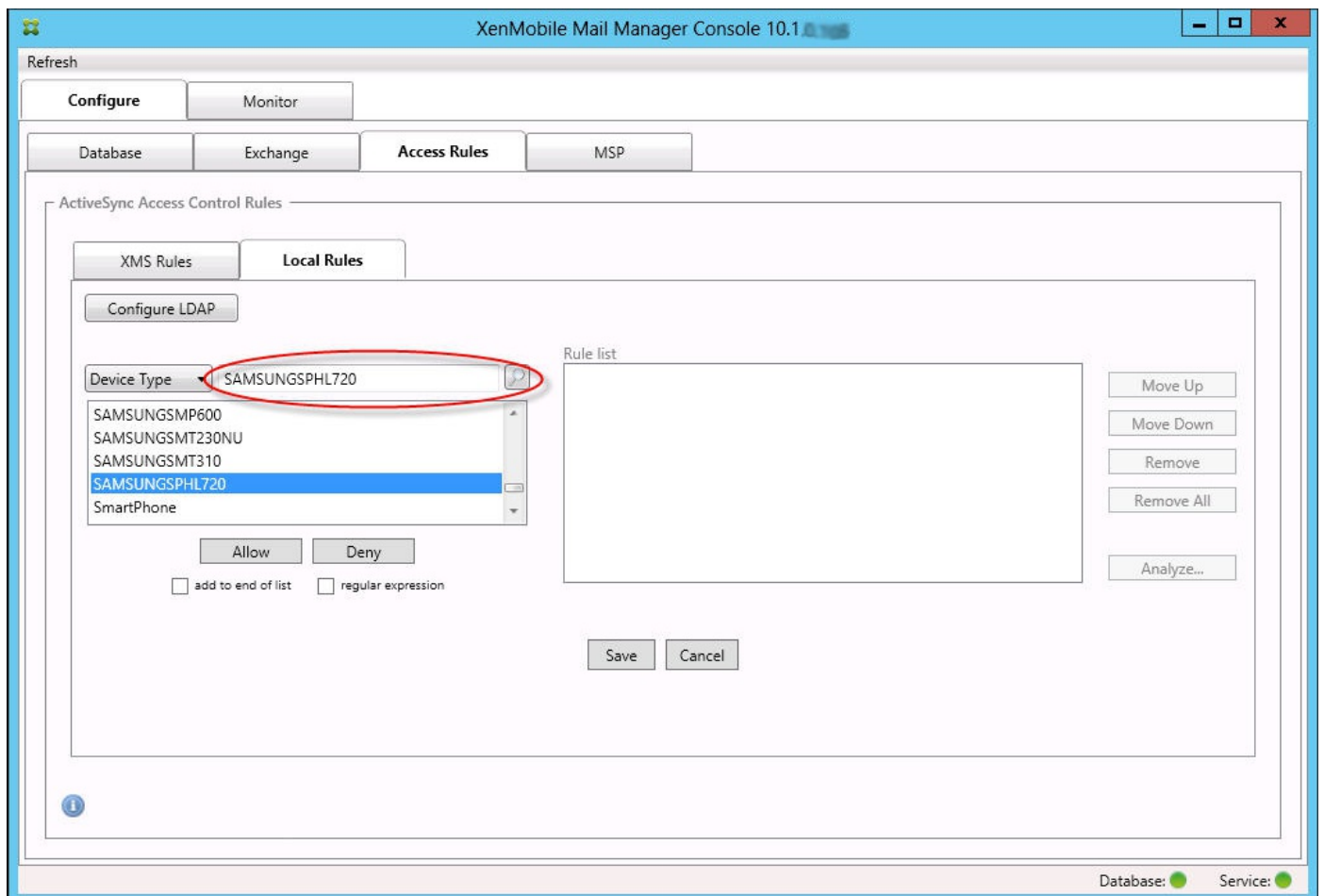
1. Click the Access Rules tab.



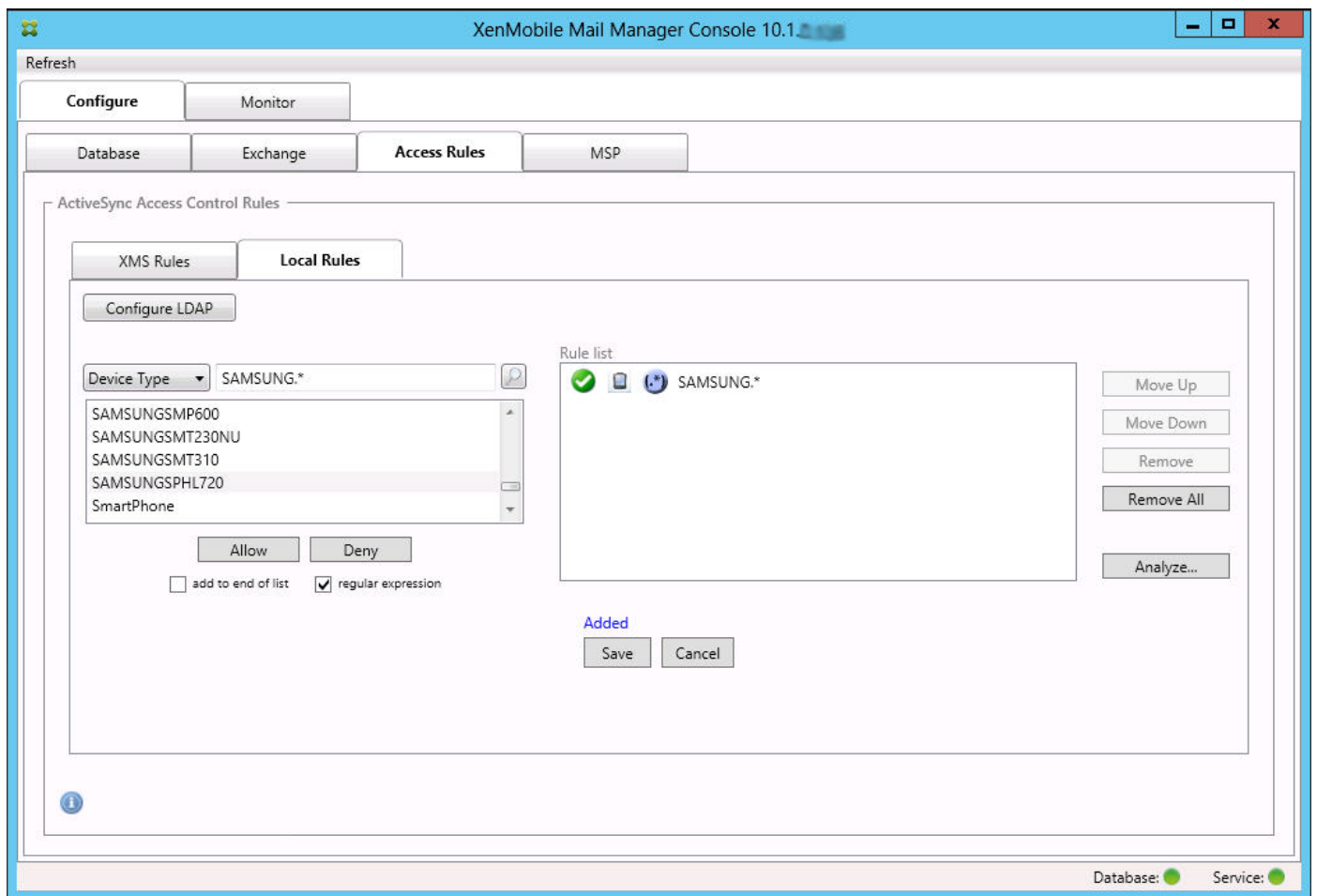
2. In the Device ID list, select the field for which you want to create a regular expression Local Rule.
3. Click on the magnifying glass icon to display all of the unique matches for the chosen field. In this example, the field Device Type has been chosen and the choices are shown below in the list box.



4. Click one of the items in the results list. In this example, SAMSUNGSPHL720 has been selected and appears in the text box adjacent to Device Type.



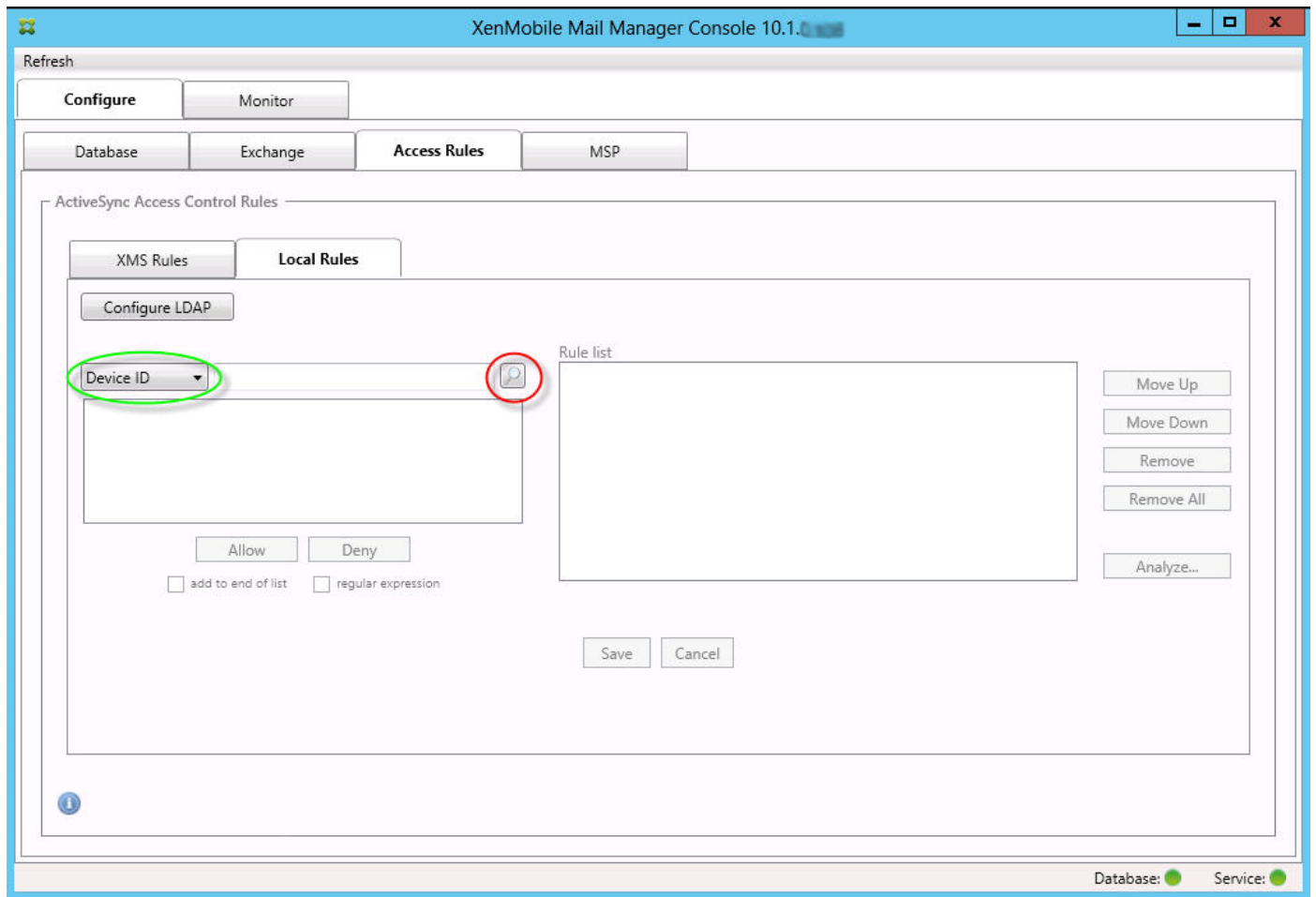
5. To allow all device types that have "Samsung" in their device type value, add a regular expression rule by following these steps:
  1. Click within the selected item text box.
  2. Change the text from SAMSUNGPHL720 to SAMSUNG.\*
  3. Make sure that the regular expression check box is selected.
  4. Click Allow.



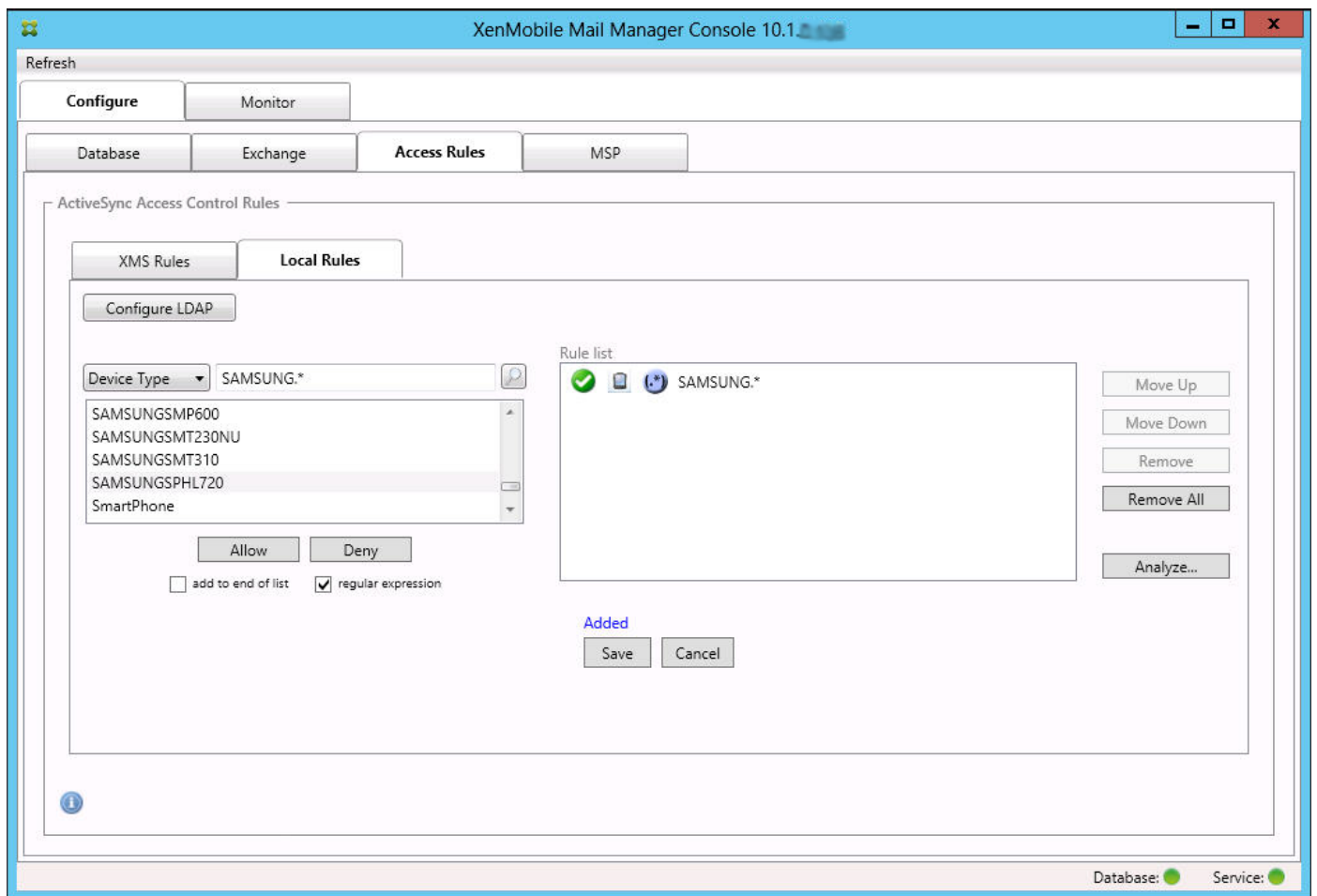
To build an access rule

1. Click the Local Rules tab.
2. To enter the regular expression, you need to make use of both the Device ID list and the selected item text box.





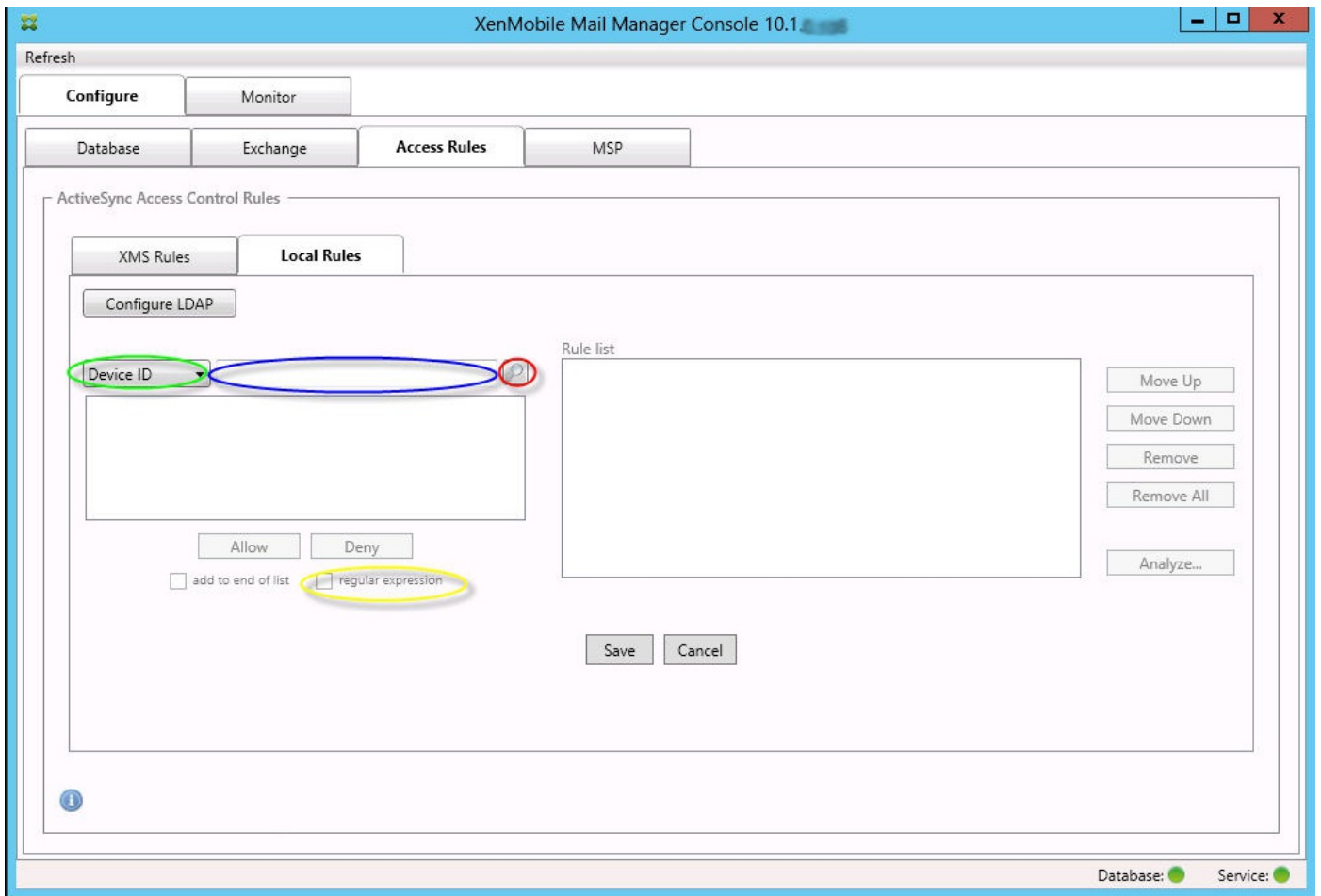
3. Select the field you want to match against. This example uses Device Type.
4. Type in the regular expression. This example uses `samsung.*`
5. Ensure that the regular expression check box is selected and then click Allow or Deny. In this example, the choice is Allow so that the final result is as follows:



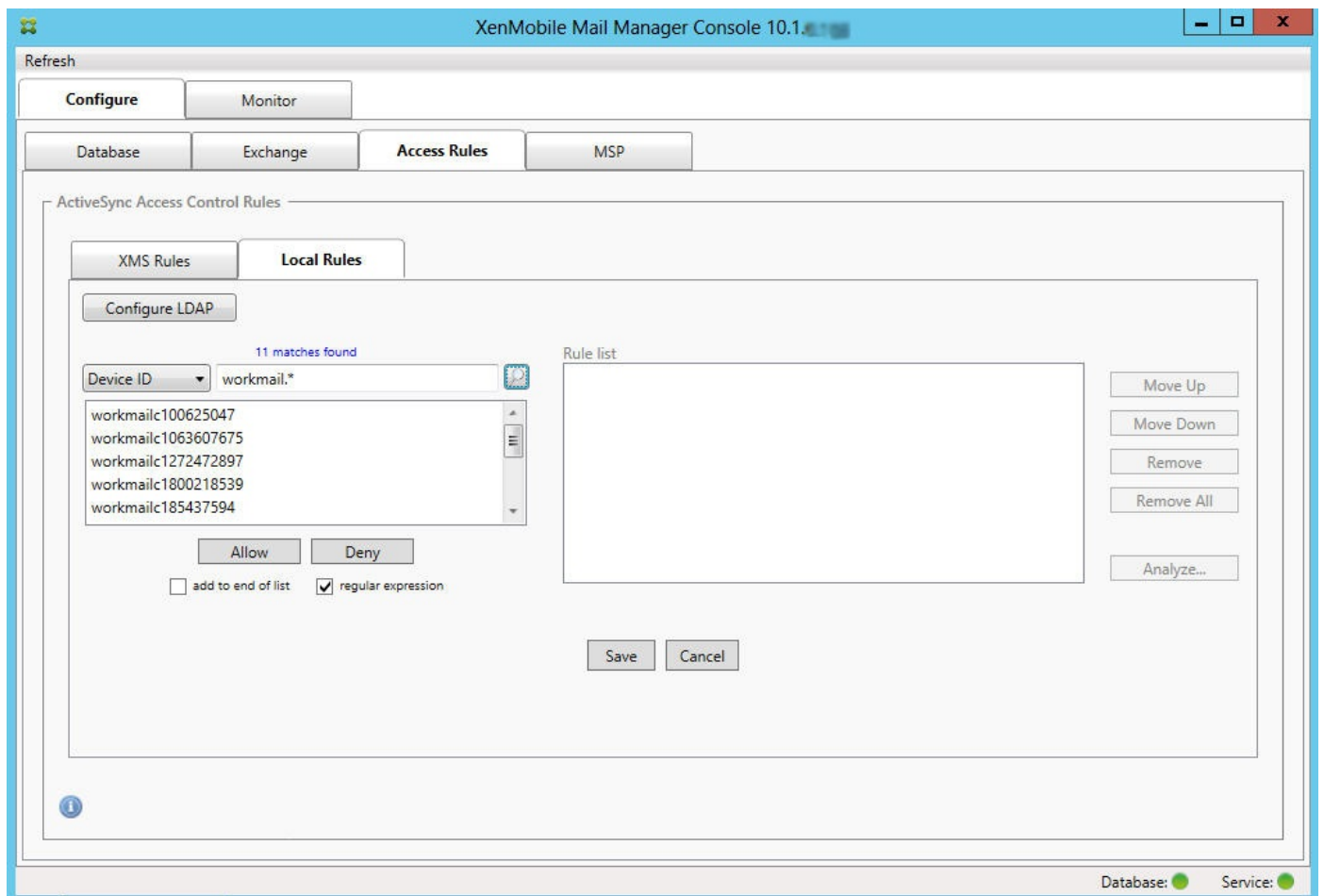
## To find devices

By selecting the regular expression check box, you can run searches for specific devices that match the given expression. This feature is only available if a major snapshot has successfully completed. You can use this feature even if there is no plan to use regular expression rules. For example, assume that you want to find all devices that have the text "workmail" in their ActiveSync device ID. To do so, follow this procedure.

1. Click the Access Rules tab.
2. Ensure that the device match field selector is set to Device ID (the default).



3. Click within the selected item text box (as shown in blue in the preceding figure) and then type workmail.\*.
4. Make sure the regular expression check box is selected and then click the magnifying glass icon to display matches as shown in the following figure.



To add an individual user, device, or device type to a static rule

You can add static rules based on user, device ID, or device type on the ActiveSync Devices tab.

1. Click the ActiveSync Devices tab.
2. In the list, right-click a user, device, or device type and select whether to allow or deny your selection.

The following image shows the Allow/Deny option when user1 is selected.

XenMobile Mail Manager Console 10.1

Refresh

Configure    **Monitor**

ActiveSync Devices    Blackberry Devices    Automation History

Selection

All Devices    Anytime    User: user    Device:    Go    Export...

Reported State	Requested State	User	Device ID	Type	Model
✓	?	auser1@xmlab.net	workmailc1800218539	MOTOROLAXT1528	XT1528
User Agent: WorkMail/10.3.0.225 (MOT Identity: xmlab.net/XM1/Lorna J Chan Last snapshot: 8/10/2016 1:49:52 PM First Sync: 4/12/2016 2:28:49 PM					
✓	?	auser1@xmlab.net	A182EB4483E64A99B4CED20444A63C7	iPad	iPad
✓	?	auser101@xmlab.net	96D3D564B5EA4EF28E891EE1D987817A	iPad	iPad
✓	?	auser101@xmlab.net	E4562615700543C58C68E5125D67DFBD	iPad	iPad
✓	?	auser101@xmlab.net	38939C2CE9254CE5A0A2ED18E906F9C1	iPhone	iPhone
✓	?	auser101@xmlab.net	workmailc680977375	MOTOROLAXT1068	XT1068
✓	?	auser101@xmlab.net	workmailc1929821768	MOTOROLANEXUS6	Nexus 6
✓	?	auser101@xmlab.net	0BD6E5254A6348FC9E3BF3EAF8FD8901	iPhone	iPhone
✓	?	auser101@xmlab.net	580D5785F02F48669457BD7E680DB38B	iPhone	iPhone
✓	?	auser101@xmlab.net	7DA7ED6B6ACE43C3928C6C357F6D7B97	iPhone	iPhone
✓	?	auser101@xmlab.net	workmailc185437594	HTCNEXUS9	Nexus 9
✓	?	auser101@xmlab.net	workmailc100625047	SAMUNGSM230NU	SM-T230NU
✓	?	auser101@xmlab.net	2FAFE4CF00794BA18AB4647F581C0148	iPhone	iPhone

70 records read, 39 records displayed

Database: ● Service: ●

# Device monitoring

Feb 27, 2017

The Monitor tab in XenMobile Mail Manager lets you browse the Exchange ActiveSync and BlackBerry devices that have been detected and the history of automated PowerShell commands that have been issued. The Monitor tab has the following three tabs:

- ActiveSync Devices:
  - You can export the displayed ActiveSync device partnerships by clicking the Export button.
  - You can add Local (static) rules by right-clicking the User, Device ID, or Type columns and selecting the appropriate allow or block rule type.
  - To collapse an expanded row, Ctrl-click the expanded row.
- Blackberry Devices
- Automation History

The Configure tab shows the history of all snapshots. Snapshot history shows when the snapshot took place, how long it took, how many devices were detected and any errors that occurred:

- On the Exchange tab, click the Info icon for the desired Exchange Server.
- Under the MSP tab, click the Info icon for the desired BlackBerry Server.

# Troubleshooting and diagnostics

Feb 27, 2017

XenMobile Mail Manager logs errors and other operational information to its log file: <Install Folder>\log\XmmWindowsService.log. XenMobile Mail Manager also logs significant events to the Windows Event Log.

## Common Errors

The following list includes common errors:

### **XenMobile Mail Manager service doesn't start**

Check the log file and the Windows Event Log for errors. Typical causes are as follows:

- The XenMobile Mail Manager service cannot access the SQL Server. This may be caused by these issues:
  - The SQL Server service is not running.
  - Authentication failure.

If Windows Integrated authentication is configured, the user account of the XenMobile Mail Manager service must be an allowed SQL logon. The account of the XenMobile Mail Manager service defaults to Local System, but may be changed to any account that has local administrator privileges. If SQL authentication is configured, the SQL logon must be properly configured in SQL.

- The port configured for the Mobile Service Provider (MSP) is not available. A listening port must be selected that is not used by another process on the system.

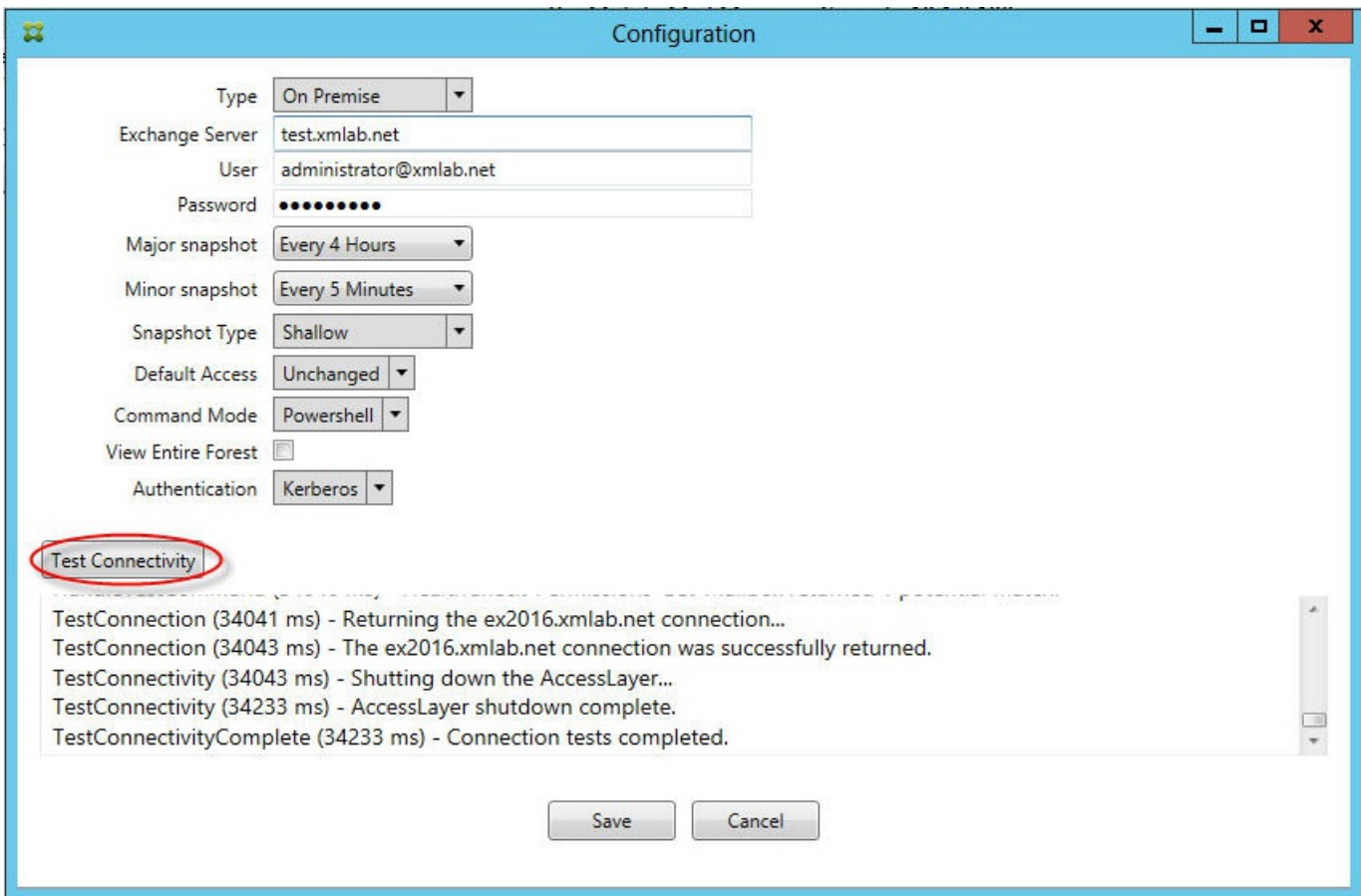
### **XenMobile cannot connect to the MSP**

Check that the MSP service port and transport is properly configured in the Configure> MSP tab of the XenMobile Mail Manager console. Check that the Authorization Group or User is set properly.

If HTTPS is configured, a valid SSL server certificate must be installed. If IIS is installed, IIS Manager can be used to install the certificate. If IIS is not installed, see <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms733791.aspx> for details on installing certificates.

XenMobile Mail Manager contains a utility program to test connectivity to the MSP service. Run the <InstallFolder>MspTestServiceClient.exe program and set the URL and credentials to a URL and credentials that will be configured in the XenMobile and then click Test Connectivity. This simulates the web service requests that XenMobile service issues. Note that if HTTPS is configured, you must specify the actual host name of the server (the name specified in the SSL certificate).

**Note:** When using **Test Connectivity**, be sure to have at least one ActiveSyncDevice record or the test may fail.



## Troubleshooting Tools

A set of PowerShell utilities for troubleshooting is available in the Support\PowerShell folder.

A troubleshooting tool performs in-depth analysis of user mailboxes and devices, detecting error conditions and potential areas of failure, and in-depth RBAC analysis of users. It can save raw output of all cmdlets to a text file.



# XenMobile NetScaler Connector

Feb 27, 2017

XenMobile NetScaler Connector provides a device-level authorization service of ActiveSync clients to NetScaler acting as a reverse proxy for the Exchange ActiveSync protocol. Authorization is controlled by a combination of policies that you define within XenMobile and by rules defined locally by XenMobile NetScaler Connector.

For more information, see the following articles:

- [XenMobile NetScaler Connector](#)
- [ActiveSync Gateway in XenMobile](#)

For a detailed reference architecture diagram, see the XenMobile Deployment Handbook article, [Reference Architecture for On-Premises Deployments](#).

# Advanced Concepts

Jul 06, 2017

# On-premises XenMobile interaction with Active Directory

Siddartha Vuppala | Jul 06, 2017

This article explains the interaction between XenMobile Server and Active Directory. XenMobile Server interacts with Active Directory both inline and in the background. The following sections provide more information on the inline and the background operations that involve Active Directory interaction.

## Note

This article is an overview of the interaction and does not cover the granular details. For more information about configuring Active Directory and LDAP in the XenMobile console, see [Domain or domain plus security token authentication](#).

## Inline interactions

XenMobile Server communicates with Active Directory by using the LDAP settings that an administrator configures. The settings retrieve information about users and groups. Following are the operations that result in interaction between XenMobile Server and Active Directory.

1. **LDAP configuration.** Configuration of Active Directory itself results in an interaction with Active Directory. XenMobile Server attempts to validate the information by authenticating the information with Active Directory. The server does so by using the internet protocol, port, and service account credentials provided. A successful bind indicates that the connection is configured correctly.
2. **Group-based interactions.**
  - a. Search for one or more groups during the Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) and delivery group definition creation. The XenMobile Server administrator inputs a search text string in the XenMobile console. XenMobile Server searches the selected domain for all groups that contain the substring that is provided. Then, XenMobile Server retrieves the objectGUID, sAMAccountName, and Distinguished Name attributes of the groups identified in the search.

## Note

This information is not stored in the XenMobile Server database.

- b. RBAC and deployment group definition add or update. The XenMobile Server administrator selects the Active Directory groups of interest based on the previous search and includes them in the deployment group definition. XenMobile Server searches for the specific group, one at a time, in Active Directory. XenMobile Server searches for the objectGUID attribute and retrieves selected attributes, including membership information. Group membership information helps determine membership between the group retrieved and existing users or groups in the XenMobile Server database. Changes to group membership result in the RBAC and deployment group derivation for the affected user members, which results in user entitlements.

## Note

Changes to the deployment group definition can lead to change in app or policy entitlements for affected users.

c. **One-time PIN (OTP) invitations.** The XenMobile Server administrator selects a group from the list of Active Directory groups present in the XenMobile Server database. For this group, all the users, both direct and indirect, are retrieved from Active Directory. OTP invitations are sent to the users who were identified in the preceding step.

## Note

The preceding three interactions imply that group-based interactions are triggered based on XenMobile Server configuration changes. When there are no changes to the configuration, the interactions imply that there are no interactions with Active Directory. They also imply that there are no requirement for background jobs to capture the group side of changes on a periodic basis.

### 3. User-based interaction.

a. User authentication. User authentication workflow results in two interactions with Active Directory:

- Used to authenticate the user with the credentials provided.
- Add or update select user attributes to the XenMobile Server database, including objectGUID, Distinguished Name, sAMAccountName, and direct membership to groups. Changes to group membership result in the re-evaluation of the app, policy, and access entitlements.

The user can authenticate either from the device or from the XenMobile Server console. In both the scenarios, interaction with Active Directory adheres to the same behavior.

b. App Store access and refresh. A refresh of the store results in a refresh of user attributes, including direct group memberships. This action allows for a re-evaluation of user entitlements.

c. Device check-ins. Administrators can configure in the XenMobile console the device check-ins on a periodic basis. Every time a device is checked-in, the corresponding user attributes are refreshed, including direct group memberships. These check-ins allow for a re-evaluation of user entitlements.

d. OTP invitations by Group. The XenMobile Server administrator selects a group from the list of Active Directory groups present in the XenMobile Server database. User members, both direct and indirect (due to nesting), are retrieved from Active Directory and saved in XenMobile Server database. OTP invitations are sent to the user members identified in the preceding step.

e. OTP invitations by user. The administrator inputs a search text string within the XenMobile console. XenMobile Server queries Active Directory and returns user records that match the input text string. The administrator then selects the user to send the OTP invitation. XenMobile Server retrieves the user details from Active Directory and updates the same details in the database before sending out the invitation to the user.

### Background interactions

One conclusion from inline communication with Active Directory is that group-based interactions are triggered upon select

changes to the XenMobile Server configuration. When there are no changes to the configuration, it implies that there are no interactions with Active Directory for groups.

This interaction requires background jobs that periodically sync with Active Directory and update relevant changes to the interested groups.

Following are the background jobs that interact with Active Directory.

1. **Group sync job.** The purpose of this job is to query Active Directory, one group at a time, on interested groups for changes to distinguished name or sAMAccountName attributes. The search query to Active Directory uses the objectGUID of the interested group to get the current values of distinguished name and sAMAccountName attributes. Changes in distinguished name or sAMAccountName values for interested groups are updated to the database.

## Note

This job does not update user to group membership information.

2. **Nested group sync job.** This job updates changes in the nesting hierarchy of interested groups. XenMobile Server allows both direct and indirect members of an interested group to get entitlements. The direct membership of the users is updated during user-based inline interactions. Running in the background, this job tracks indirect memberships. Indirect memberships are when a user is a member of a group that is a member of an interested group.

This job gathers the list of Active Directory groups from XenMobile Server database. These groups are a part of either the deployment group or the RBAC definition. For each group in this list, XenMobile Server gets the members of the group. Members of a group are a list of distinguished names that represent both users and groups. XenMobile Server makes another query back to Active Directory to get only the user members of the interested group. The difference between the two lists gives only the group members for the interested group. Changes in member groups are updated to the database. The same process is repeated for all the groups in the hierarchy.

Changes to nesting results in processing the affected users for entitlement changes.

3. **Disabled user check.** This job runs only when the XenMobile administrator creates an action to check for disabled users. The job runs within the scope of a group sync job. The job queries Active Directory to check for the disabled status of interested users, one user at a time.

## FAQ

[What is the frequency of background jobs run, by default?](#)

[Why is a group sync job required?](#)

[Can a group sync job be turned off?](#)

[Why is a nested group processing background job required?](#)

[Can a nested group processing job be turned off?](#)

# On-premises XenMobile interaction with Active Directory

Siddartha Vuppala | Jul 06, 2017

This article explains the interaction between XenMobile Server and Active Directory. XenMobile Server interacts with Active Directory both inline and in the background. The following sections provide more information on the inline and the background operations that involve Active Directory interaction.

## Note

This article is an overview of the interaction and does not cover the granular details. For more information about configuring Active Directory and LDAP in the XenMobile console, see [Domain or domain plus security token authentication](#).

## Inline interactions

XenMobile Server communicates with Active Directory by using the LDAP settings that an administrator configures. The settings retrieve information about users and groups. Following are the operations that result in interaction between XenMobile Server and Active Directory.

1. **LDAP configuration.** Configuration of Active Directory itself results in an interaction with Active Directory. XenMobile Server attempts to validate the information by authenticating the information with Active Directory. The server does so by using the internet protocol, port, and service account credentials provided. A successful bind indicates that the connection is configured correctly.
2. **Group-based interactions.**
  - a. Search for one or more groups during the Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) and delivery group definition creation. The XenMobile Server administrator inputs a search text string in the XenMobile console. XenMobile Server searches the selected domain for all groups that contain the substring that is provided. Then, XenMobile Server retrieves the objectGUID, sAMAccountName, and Distinguished Name attributes of the groups identified in the search.

## Note

This information is not stored in the XenMobile Server database.

- b. RBAC and deployment group definition add or update. The XenMobile Server administrator selects the Active Directory groups of interest based on the previous search and includes them in the deployment group definition. XenMobile Server searches for the specific group, one at a time, in Active Directory. XenMobile Server searches for the objectGUID attribute and retrieves selected attributes, including membership information. Group membership information helps determine membership between the group retrieved and existing users or groups in the XenMobile Server database. Changes to group membership result in the RBAC and deployment group derivation for the affected user members, which results in user entitlements.

## Note

Changes to the deployment group definition can lead to change in app or policy entitlements for affected users.

c. **One-time PIN (OTP) invitations.** The XenMobile Server administrator selects a group from the list of Active Directory groups present in the XenMobile Server database. For this group, all the users, both direct and indirect, are retrieved from Active Directory. OTP invitations are sent to the users who were identified in the preceding step.

## Note

The preceding three interactions imply that group-based interactions are triggered based on XenMobile Server configuration changes. When there are no changes to the configuration, the interactions imply that there are no interactions with Active Directory. They also imply that there are no requirement for background jobs to capture the group side of changes on a periodic basis.

### 3. User-based interaction.

a. User authentication. User authentication workflow results in two interactions with Active Directory:

- Used to authenticate the user with the credentials provided.
- Add or update select user attributes to the XenMobile Server database, including objectGUID, Distinguished Name, sAMAccountName, and direct membership to groups. Changes to group membership result in the re-evaluation of the app, policy, and access entitlements.

The user can authenticate either from the device or from the XenMobile Server console. In both the scenarios, interaction with Active Directory adheres to the same behavior.

b. App Store access and refresh. A refresh of the store results in a refresh of user attributes, including direct group memberships. This action allows for a re-evaluation of user entitlements.

c. Device check-ins. Administrators can configure in the XenMobile console the device check-ins on a periodic basis. Every time a device is checked-in, the corresponding user attributes are refreshed, including direct group memberships. These check-ins allow for a re-evaluation of user entitlements.

d. OTP invitations by Group. The XenMobile Server administrator selects a group from the list of Active Directory groups present in the XenMobile Server database. User members, both direct and indirect (due to nesting), are retrieved from Active Directory and saved in XenMobile Server database. OTP invitations are sent to the user members identified in the preceding step.

e. OTP invitations by user. The administrator inputs a search text string within the XenMobile console. XenMobile Server queries Active Directory and returns user records that match the input text string. The administrator then selects the user to send the OTP invitation. XenMobile Server retrieves the user details from Active Directory and updates the same details in the database before sending out the invitation to the user.

### Background interactions

One conclusion from inline communication with Active Directory is that group-based interactions are triggered upon select

changes to the XenMobile Server configuration. When there are no changes to the configuration, it implies that there are no interactions with Active Directory for groups.

This interaction requires background jobs that periodically sync with Active Directory and update relevant changes to the interested groups.

Following are the background jobs that interact with Active Directory.

1. **Group sync job.** The purpose of this job is to query Active Directory, one group at a time, on interested groups for changes to distinguished name or sAMAccountName attributes. The search query to Active Directory uses the objectGUID of the interested group to get the current values of distinguished name and sAMAccountName attributes. Changes in distinguished name or sAMAccountName values for interested groups are updated to the database.

## Note

This job does not update user to group membership information.

2. **Nested group sync job.** This job updates changes in the nesting hierarchy of interested groups. XenMobile Server allows both direct and indirect members of an interested group to get entitlements. The direct membership of the users is updated during user-based inline interactions. Running in the background, this job tracks indirect memberships. Indirect memberships are when a user is a member of a group that is a member of an interested group.


This job gathers the list of Active Directory groups from XenMobile Server database. These groups are a part of either the deployment group or the RBAC definition. For each group in this list, XenMobile Server gets the members of the group. Members of a group are a list of distinguished names that represent both users and groups. XenMobile Server makes another query back to Active Directory to get only the user members of the interested group. The difference between the two lists gives only the group members for the interested group. Changes in member groups are updated to the database. The same process is repeated for all the groups in the hierarchy.

Changes to nesting results in processing the affected users for entitlement changes.

3. **Disabled user check.** This job runs only when the XenMobile administrator creates an action to check for disabled users. The job runs within the scope of a group sync job. The job queries Active Directory to check for the disabled status of interested users, one user at a time.

## FAQ

[What is the frequency of background jobs run, by default?](#) 

[Why is a group sync job required?](#) 

[Can a group sync job be turned off?](#) 

[Why is a nested group processing background job required?](#) 

[Can a nested group processing job be turned off?](#) 